Contents

Chapter 1. Introduction.............................................................................................................1

Chapter 2. Getting Started........................................................................................................2
  What is Oxygen XML Developer plugin...............................................................................2
  Getting Familiar with the Interface....................................................................................2
  Supported Document Types...............................................................................................3
  Resources to Help You Get Started Using Oxygen XML Developer plugin....................4
  Your First Document or Project..........................................................................................6
    Creating a New Project......................................................................................................6
  Getting Help......................................................................................................................7
    Help Menu.....................................................................................................................8
  Accessibility Support in Oxygen.......................................................................................10

Chapter 3. Installation.............................................................................................................13
  Installing Oxygen as an Eclipse Plugin............................................................................14
  Site-Wide Deployment.......................................................................................................16
  Licensing............................................................................................................................16
    Choosing a License Type.................................................................................................16
    Obtaining a License Key.................................................................................................17
    Register a Named-User or Subscription License...........................................................17
    Floating Licenses...........................................................................................................18
    Transferring a License Key............................................................................................22
  License Servers................................................................................................................22
    Setting up an HTTP License Server (Floating or Named-User Licenses).......................23
    Setting up TCP Floating License Server (Deprecated) in 32-bit Windows.....................32
    Setting up TCP Floating License Server (Deprecated) All-Platforms..............................34
    Common Problems: License Server Errors.....................................................................36
  Upgrading..........................................................................................................................39
    Upgrading Oxygen XML Developer plugin on Windows/Linux..................................39
    Upgrading Oxygen XML Developer plugin on OS X....................................................40
  Uninstalling......................................................................................................................41
Chapter 4. Configuration

Preferences .................................................................................................................. 42
   Oxygen XML Developer plugin License ................................................................. 44
   Archive Preferences ............................................................................................... 44
   CSS Validator Preferences ..................................................................................... 45
   Custom Editor Variables Preferences .................................................................... 46
   Data Sources Preferences ....................................................................................... 47
   DITA Preferences .................................................................................................... 53
   Document Type Association Preferences .............................................................. 55
   Editor Preferences .................................................................................................... 84
   Fonts Preferences ..................................................................................................... 120
   Network Connection Settings Preferences ............................................................ 120
   Scenarios Management Preferences ....................................................................... 122
   View Preferences ..................................................................................................... 123
   XML Preferences ..................................................................................................... 124
   XML Structure Outline Preferences ........................................................................ 158
   Configuring Options ............................................................................................... 159
   Customizing Default Options ................................................................................. 159
   Importing/Exporting/Resetting Global Options .................................................... 161
   Import/Export Transformation or Validation Scenarios .......................................... 161
   Editor Variables ...................................................................................................... 162
   Custom Editor Variables ......................................................................................... 169
   Custom System Properties ....................................................................................... 170
   Localizing of the User Interface ............................................................................. 174

Chapter 5. Perspectives ............................................................................................... 176
   Oxygen XML Perspective ........................................................................................ 176
   Oxygen XSLT Debugger Perspective ....................................................................... 178
   Oxygen XQuery Debugger Perspective .................................................................... 179
   Oxygen DB Perspective ........................................................................................... 181

Chapter 6. Editing Modes ........................................................................................... 184
   Text Editing Mode ................................................................................................... 184
Navigating the Document Content in Text Mode ......................................................... 185
Smart Editing in Text Mode ....................................................................................... 187
Shortcut Actions in Text Mode .................................................................................. 188
Editing XML Markup in Text Mode ........................................................................... 189
Folding XML Elements in Text Mode ....................................................................... 194
Drag and Drop in Text Mode .................................................................................... 195
Selecting Content in Text Mode ............................................................................... 196
Content Completion Assistant in Text Mode ............................................................. 197
Text Mode Views ....................................................................................................... 210
Syntax Highlighting in XML Documents ................................................................... 228
Syntax Highlight Depending on Namespace Prefix .................................................. 229
Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode ............................................................... 229
Formatting and Indenting XML Documents ............................................................... 232
Quick Assist Support for IDs and IDREFS ............................................................... 239
Highlight ID Occurrences in Text Mode .................................................................. 240
Contextual Menu Actions in Text Mode .................................................................. 240
Grid Editing Mode ..................................................................................................... 251
  Layouts: Grid and Tree ............................................................................................ 252
  Grid Mode Navigation .......................................................................................... 252
  Special Character Support in Grid Mode ............................................................... 254
  Editing Actions in Grid Mode .............................................................................. 255
  Drag and Drop in the Grid Editing Mode .............................................................. 257
  Copy and Paste in the Grid Editing Mode ............................................................. 258
  Content Completion Assistant in Grid Mode ....................................................... 260
  Exporting XML Content to Excel ......................................................................... 260
Design Editing Mode (XML Schema Diagram Editor) .............................................. 261
  Navigation in the XML Schema Design Mode ..................................................... 262
  XML Schema Outline View .................................................................................. 263
  XML Schema Attributes View ............................................................................. 266
  XML Schema Facets View .................................................................................... 268
  XML Schema Palette View .................................................................................. 269
Chapter 7. Working with Documents.................................................................305

Creating and Working with Documents......................................................305
Creating New Documents and Templates....................................................305
Opening Documents.......................................................................................317
Saving Documents.........................................................................................318
Working with Remote Documents...............................................................318
Closing Documents.........................................................................................324
Contextual Menu of the Current Editor Tab.................................................325
Viewing File Properties..................................................................................325
Simple Text Editor..........................................................................................326
Using Projects to Group Documents...........................................................327
Creating a New Project..................................................................................327
Navigator View...............................................................................................328
Master Files Support......................................................................................337
Finding and Replacing Text...........................................................................340
Find All Elements Dialog Box.......................................................................340
Regular Expressions Syntax.........................................................................341
Spell Checking................................................................................................342
Spell Check Dictionaries and Term Lists.....................................................344
Learned Words...............................................................................................351
Ignored Words (Elements)............................................................................351
Automatic Spell Check..................................................................................352
Spell Check Multiple Files............................................................................353
Working with Special Characters and Encoding..........................................354
Unicode Support............................................................................................355
Opening and Saving Documents with Unsupported Characters................355
Contents | vi

Unicode Fallback Font Support................................................................. 356
Special Character Support in Grid Mode.................................................. 357
Inserting Special Characters with the Character Map.................................. 358
Handling Read-Only Files............................................................................ 361
Viewing Status Information.......................................................................... 362
Editor Highlights.......................................................................................... 362

Chapter 8. Editing Documents...................................................................... 364

Editing XML Documents................................................................................ 364
  Editing XML Documents in Text Mode......................................................... 365
  Editing XML Documents in Grid Mode......................................................... 413
  Validating XML Documents........................................................................ 420
  XML Quick Fixes........................................................................................ 447
  Associating a Schema to XML Documents................................................ 449
  Working with XML Catalogs....................................................................... 460
  Working with Modular XML Files in the Master Files Context..................... 463
  Search and Refactoring Actions for IDs and IDREFS..................................... 464
  XML Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View............................................. 467
  Combining XML Content Using DTD Entities and XInclude.......................... 470
  Refactoring XML Documents...................................................................... 475
  XML Digital Signatures.............................................................................. 509

Editing XSLT Stylesheets.............................................................................. 518
  Editing XSLT Stylesheets in the Master Files Context................................... 519
  Validating XSLT Stylesheets....................................................................... 519
  XSLT Quick Fix Support............................................................................ 522
  Content Completion in XSLT Stylesheets.................................................... 525
  Syntax Highlighting in XSLT........................................................................ 532
  XSLT Outline View..................................................................................... 532
  XSLT Input View....................................................................................... 537
  XSLT Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View............................................ 539
  XSLT Component Dependencies View....................................................... 541
  Highlight Component Occurrences............................................................ 543
XML Schema 1.1......................................................................................................................... 651
Setting the XML Schema Version............................................................................................ 653
Editing XQuery Documents.................................................................................................... 654
XQuery Validation................................................................................................................... 655
Content Completion in XQuery............................................................................................... 655
Syntax Highlighting in XQuery.................................................................................................. 656
Formatting and Indenting XQuery Documents......................................................................... 657
Folding in XQuery Documents............................................................................................... 657
XQuery Outline View................................................................................................................ 658
XQuery Builder View............................................................................................................... 660
XQuery Input View.................................................................................................................. 663
Generating HTML Documentation for an XQuery Document.................................................. 666
Transforming XML Documents Using XQuery........................................................................ 667
Editing WSDL Documents..................................................................................................... 672
Editing WSDL Documents in the Master Files Context......................................................... 673
Validating WSDL Documents................................................................................................. 673
Content Completion Assistance in WSDL Documents........................................................... 674
WSDL Syntax Highlighting....................................................................................................... 675
WSDL Outline View................................................................................................................ 675
WSDL Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View in WSDL Documents.................................... 680
WSDL Component Dependencies View.................................................................................. 683
Highlight Component Occurrences in WSDL Documents..................................................... 684
Searching and Refactoring Operations in WSDL Documents................................................ 685
Quick Assist Support in WSDL Documents............................................................................ 687
Generating Documentation for WSDL Documents............................................................... 688
WSDL SOAP Analyzer........................................................................................................... 694
Editing CSS Stylesheets.......................................................................................................... 697
Validating CSS Stylesheets.................................................................................................... 697
Content Completion in CSS Stylesheets.................................................................................. 698
Syntax Highlighting in CSS Files............................................................................................ 699
CSS Outline View................................................................................................................... 699
## Editing Relax NG Schemas
- Folding in CSS Stylesheets
- Formatting and Indenting CSS Stylesheets (Pretty Print)
- Minifying CSS Stylesheets
- Validating Relax NG Schema Documents
- Content Completion in Relax NG Schemas
- Syntax Highlighting in Relax NG Schemas
- Quick Fixes for DTD, XSD, and Relax NG Errors
- Relax NG Outline View
- RNG Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View
- Relax NG Schema Component Dependencies View
- Searching and Refactoring Actions in RNG Schemas
- RNG Quick Assist Support
- Configuring a Custom Datatype Library for a RELAX NG Schema

## Editing NVDL Schemas
- NVDL Schema Diagram
- Validating NVDL Schema Documents
- Content Completion in NVDL Schemas
- Syntax Highlighting in NVDL Schemas
- NVDL Outline View
- NVDL Schema Component Dependencies View
- Searching and Refactoring Actions in NVDL Schemas

## Editing JSON Documents
- Editing JSON Documents in Text Mode
- Editing JSON Documents in Grid Mode
- Validating JSON Documents
- Content Completion Assistant in JSON
- Syntax Highlighting in JSON Documents
- Folding in JSON
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JSON Outline View</td>
<td>746</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON to XML Converter</td>
<td>749</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XML to JSON Converter</td>
<td>752</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contextual Menu Actions in JSON Documents</td>
<td>755</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transforming and Querying JSON Documents</td>
<td>755</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing JSON Schema Documents</td>
<td>758</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validating JSON Schema Documents</td>
<td>758</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing StratML Documents</td>
<td>759</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing XLIFF Documents</td>
<td>759</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing JavaScript Documents</td>
<td>760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JavaScript Editing Actions</td>
<td>760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validating JavaScript Files</td>
<td>762</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content Completion in JavaScript Documents</td>
<td>763</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntax Highlighting in JavaScript Documents</td>
<td>764</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JavaScript Outline View</td>
<td>764</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing XProc Scripts</td>
<td>765</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing Schematron Schemas</td>
<td>767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing Schematron Schema in the Master Files Context</td>
<td>769</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presenting Schematron Validation Issues</td>
<td>770</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integrating Schematron Rules in a Framework and Sharing Them</td>
<td>771</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validating Schematron Documents</td>
<td>772</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content Completion in Schematron Documents</td>
<td>773</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntax Highlighting in Schematron</td>
<td>773</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embedding Schematron Rules in XML Schema or RELAX NG</td>
<td>774</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schematron Outline View</td>
<td>776</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schematron Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View</td>
<td>778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlight Component Occurrences in Schematron Documents</td>
<td>780</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Searching and Refactoring Operations in Schematron Documents</td>
<td>781</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick Assist Support in Schematron Documents</td>
<td>783</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schematron Unit Test (XSpec)</td>
<td>784</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing Schematron Quick Fixes</td>
<td>786</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Schematron Quick Fixes (SQF)........................................................................................................ 786
Defining Schematron Quick Fixes................................................................................................. 787
Integrating SQF in a Framework and Sharing Them................................................................. 797
Validating Schematron Quick Fixes............................................................................................. 799
Content Completion in SQF........................................................................................................ 800
Highlight Quick Fix Occurrences in SQF.................................................................................... 800
Searching and Refactoring Operations in SQF.......................................................................... 801
Embedding Schematron Quick Fixes in Relax NG or XML Schema......................................... 802

Editing HTML Documents........................................................................................................ 803
HTML Editor............................................................................................................................. 804
HTML Validation....................................................................................................................... 805
HTML Content Completion Assistant...................................................................................... 805
Syntax Highlighting in HTML Documents................................................................................ 806
Folding in HTML....................................................................................................................... 806
HTML Outline View.................................................................................................................. 806

Editing Markdown Documents.................................................................................................. 807
Markdown Editor....................................................................................................................... 807
Creating New Markdown Documents....................................................................................... 810
Actions Available in the Markdown Editor.............................................................................. 810
Syntax Highlighting in the Markdown Editor........................................................................... 813
Automatic Validation in Markdown Documents.................................................................... 813
Working with Markdown Documents in DITA........................................................................ 814
Markdown Editor Syntax Rules and Specifications................................................................. 815

Chapter 9. Built-in XML Frameworks (Document Types)....................................................... 830
DocBook 4 Document Type (Framework).................................................................................. 830
Inserting an Olink in DocBook Documents............................................................................ 831
DocBook 5 Document Type (Framework)................................................................................ 835
Inserting an Olink in DocBook Documents............................................................................ 837
DocBook 5.1 Assembly.............................................................................................................. 840
DocBook 5.1 Topic.................................................................................................................... 842
DocBook Targetset Document Type (Framework).................................................................... 843
Chapter 12. Working with Archives ................................................................. 1401
  Browsing Archives .................................................................................. 1401
  Working with Archive Files .................................................................... 1403
    Creating an Archive ............................................................................. 1405
    Editing and Saving Files Inside an Archive ....................................... 1405
    Migrating Archives to DITA or TEI .................................................... 1405

Chapter 13. Databases and SharePoint ...................................................... 1407
  Working with Databases ......................................................................... 1407
    Data Source Explorer View ............................................................... 1408
    Table Explorer View .......................................................................... 1409
    Database Connection Support ......................................................... 1412
    WebDAV Connections ....................................................................... 1463
    SQL Execution Support ..................................................................... 1466
    XQuery and Databases ....................................................................... 1469
    Integration with Microsoft SharePoint ........................................... 1477
      How to Configure a SharePoint Connection ................................ 1478
      SharePoint Contextual Menu Actions ....................................... 1479

Chapter 14. Importing Data ........................................................................ 1482
  Import from Text Files .......................................................................... 1482
  Import from MS Excel Files ................................................................. 1484
    Import Data from MS Excel 2007 or Newer ..................................... 1487
  Import Database Data as an XML Document ..................................... 1488
  Import from HTML Files ....................................................................... 1491
  Import Content Dynamically ............................................................. 1491

Chapter 15. XSLT/XQuery Debugging .......................................................... 1495
  Debugger Layout .................................................................................. 1496
  Control Toolbar .................................................................................... 1497
  Debugging Information Views ........................................................... 1500
  Multiple Output Documents in XSLT 2.0 and XSLT 3.0 ......................... 1513
Steps in a Typical Debugging Process ................................................................. 1513
Identify the XSLT / XQuery Expression that Generated Particular Output .................. 1514
Using Breakpoints ................................................................................................. 1516
Performance Profiling of XSLT Stylesheets and XQuery Documents .......................... 1518
  Invocation Tree View ......................................................................................... 1519
  Hotspots View ................................................................................................. 1521
Debugging XSLT that Call Java Extensions ................................................................ 1522
  Debugging Java Extensions ............................................................................... 1523
Supported Processors for XSLT / XQuery Debugging ............................................. 1523

Chapter 16. Extension Points for Oxygen XML Developer plugin ................................. 1525

Chapter 17. Tools .................................................................................................. 1526

  XML Refactoring ............................................................................................... 1526
  Built-in Refactoring Operations ........................................................................... 1529
  Custom Refactoring Operations .......................................................................... 1539
  Storing and Sharing Refactoring Operations ...................................................... 1554
  Localizing XML Refactoring Operations ........................................................... 1554
  Generate Sample XML Files ............................................................................. 1555
  Schema Tab (Generate Sample XML Files Tool) .................................................. 1556
  Options Tab (Generate Sample XML Files Tool) .................................................. 1557
  Advanced Tab (Generate Sample XML Files Tool) .............................................. 1560
  Generate Sample JSON Files ............................................................................ 1561
  Generate/Convert Schema .................................................................................. 1563
  Convert DB Structure to XML Schema .............................................................. 1566
  JSON to XML ..................................................................................................... 1567
  XML to JSON ..................................................................................................... 1570
  Compile XSL Stylesheet for Saxon ...................................................................... 1573
  Generate Documentation .................................................................................... 1575
  XML Schema Documentation ............................................................................. 1575
  XSLT Stylesheet Documentation .......................................................................... 1579
  XQuery Documentation ....................................................................................... 1583
  WSDL Documentation ....................................................................................... 1584
Canonicalize.................................................................................................................. 1588
Sign............................................................................................................................... 1589
Verify Signature........................................................................................................... 1591
WSDL SOAP Analyzer............................................................................................... 1592
  Testing Remote WSDL Files................................................................................... 1594
  UDDI Registry Browser......................................................................................... 1594
XML Schema Regular Expressions Builder.............................................................. 1595

Chapter 18. Common Problems................................................................................ 1598
Performance Problems and Solutions...................................................................... 1598
  Out of Memory on External Processes.................................................................... 1598
  Performance Issues with Large Documents........................................................... 1599
Misc Problems and Solutions.................................................................................... 1599
  ‘Address Family Not Supported by Protocol Family; Connect’ Error...................... 1599
  Application Takes Several Minutes to Start......................................................... 1600
  Compatibility Issue Between Java and Certain Graphics Card Drivers................ 1601
  Damaged File Associations on OS X...................................................................... 1601
  Details to Submit in a Request for Technical Support Using the Online Form .......... 1602
  DITA Map Transformation Fails (Cannot Connect to External Location).............. 1603
  DITA Map WebHelp Transformation Fails (Duplicate Topic References Found)....... 1603
  DITA OT Transformation Takes a Long Time to Process........................................ 1604
  DITA PDF Transformation Fails.............................................................................. 1605
  DITA PDF Processing Common Errors................................................................. 1606
  DITA to CHM Transformation Fails - Cannot Open File......................................... 1607
  DITA to CHM Transformation Fails - Compilation Failed..................................... 1607
  Error After Switching Oxygen Products in Eclipse.............................................. 1608
  Hunspell Spell Checker is Unusable on Your Platform Error............................... 1609
  High Resolution Scaling Issues............................................................................ 1610
  Images Appear Stretched Out in the PDF Output................................................. 1610
  Increasing the Memory for the Ant Process......................................................... 1611
  Mac Touch Bar Function Keys Do Not Work....................................................... 1611
  Machine Signature Mismatch Error................................................................. 1612
Chapter 19. Glossary................................................................. 1619

Active Cell.............................................................................. 1619
Anchor.................................................................................... 1619
Apache Ant............................................................................. 1619
Block Element......................................................................... 1619
Bookmap................................................................................ 1619
Callout.................................................................................... 1619
Canonicalize.......................................................................... 1620
Content Completion Assistant............................................. 1620
Dockable................................................................................ 1620
Document Fragment.............................................................. 1620
Document Type Association................................................. 1621
DITA Map............................................................................. 1621
DITA Open Toolkit................................................................. 1621
DITA-OT-DIR......................................................................... 1622
Foldable Element................................................................. 1622
Framework............................................................................ 1622
IDML..................................................................................... 1622
Inline Element....................................................................... 1622
Java Archive.......................................................................... 1623
Key Space............................................................................. 1623
Keystore............................................................................... 1623
Master File............................................................................ 1623
Named User.................................................................................................................. 1623
Perspective................................................................................................................... 1624
Plugin.............................................................................................................................. 1625
Pretty-Print.................................................................................................................... 1625
QName............................................................................................................................. 1625
Quick Assist.................................................................................................................... 1625
Quick Fix.......................................................................................................................... 1626
Root Map......................................................................................................................... 1626
Space-Preserved Element............................................................................................... 1626
Subject Scheme Map...................................................................................................... 1626
WebHelp Output Directory.............................................................................................. 1627
Working Set..................................................................................................................... 1627
XML Catalog................................................................................................................... 1627
Index.................................................................................................................................. a
Copyright........................................................................................................................ 41
1. Introduction


Oxygen XML Developer plugin is a cross-platform application designed to accommodate all of your XML editing, authoring, developing, and publishing needs. It is the best XML editor available for document development using structured mark-up languages such as XML, XSD, Relax NG, XSL, DTD.

It offers developers a powerful Integrated Development Environment and the intuitive Graphical User Interface of Oxygen XML Developer plugin is easy to use and provides robust functionality for content editing, project management, and validation of structured mark-up sources. Coupled with XSLT and FOP transformation technologies, Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers support for generating output to multiple target formats, including: PDF, PS, TXT, HTML, JavaHelp, WebHelp, and XML.

This user guide is focused on describing features, functionality, the application interface, and to help you quickly get started. It also includes a vast amount of advanced technical information and instructional topics that are designed to teach you how to use Oxygen XML Developer plugin to accomplish your tasks. It is assumed that you are familiar with the use of your operating system and the concepts related to XML technologies and structured mark-up.
2. Getting Started

This section provides a variety of resources to help you get the most out of the application. Typically, the first step of getting started with Oxygen XML Developer plugin would be to install the software. For detailed information about that process, see the Installation chapter (on page 13).

After installation, when you launch Oxygen XML Developer plugin for the first time, you are greeted with a Welcome dialog box. It presents upcoming events, useful video demonstrations, helpful resources, the tip of the day, and also gives you easy access to recently used files and projects and to create new ones.

What is Oxygen XML Developer plugin

Oxygen XML Developer plugin is the best XML editor available and is a complete XML development and authoring solution. It is designed to accommodate a large number of users, ranging from beginners to XML experts. It is the only XML tool that supports all of the XML schema languages and provides a large variety of powerful tools for editing and publishing XML documents.

You can use Oxygen XML Developer plugin to work with most XML-based standards and technologies. It is a cross-platform application available on all the major operating systems (Windows, Mac OS X, Linux, Solaris) and can be used either as a standalone application or as an Eclipse plugin.

For a list of many of the features and technologies that are included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, see the Oxygen Website.

Getting Familiar with the Interface

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes several perspectives (on page 1624) and editing modes (on page 184) to help you accomplish a wide range of tasks. Each perspective and editing mode also includes a large variety of helper view, menu actions, toolbars, and contextual menu functions.

Regardless of the perspective (on page 1624) or editing mode (on page 184) that you are working with, the default layout consists of the following areas:

- **Menus**

  Menu driven access to all the features and functions available in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. Most of the menus are common for all types of documents, but Oxygen XML
Developer plugin also includes some context-sensitive and framework-specific menus and actions that are only available for a specific context or type of document.

**Toolbars**

Easy access to common and frequently used functions. Each icon is a button that acts as a shortcut to a related function. Some of the toolbars are common for all perspectives, editing modes, and types of documents, while others are specific to the particular perspective or mode. Some toolbars are also framework-specific, depending on the type of document that is being edited.

**Helper Views**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a large variety of dockable views to assist you with editing, viewing, searching, validating, transforming, and organizing your documents. Many of the views also contain useful contextual menu actions, toolbar buttons, or menus. The most commonly used views for each perspective and editing mode are displayed by default and you can choose to display others to suit your specific needs.

**Editor Pane**

The main editing area in the center of the application. Each editing mode provides a main editor pane where you spend most of your time reading, editing, applying markup, and validating your documents. The editor pane in each editing mode also includes a variety of contextual menu actions and other features to help streamline your editing tasks. Each file that has been opened has a tab at the top of the editing pane.

**Perspectives**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes several different perspectives that you can use to work with your documents. The Oxygen XML perspective is the most commonly used perspective used for displaying and editing the content of your XML documents, and it is the default perspective when you start Oxygen XML Developer plugin for the first time. Oxygen XML Developer plugin also includes a Database perspective that allows you to manage databases and their connections and a few debugging perspectives that allow you to detect problems in XSLT or XQuery transformations.

**Supported Document Types**

You can use the main editing pane in Oxygen XML Developer plugin to edit a large variety of document types. You can see the type of document association by the special icons displayed in the tabs of the editor title bar.
The supported document types include the following:

- XML documents
- XSLT stylesheets
- XML Schemas
- DTD (Document Type Definition) schemas
- RELAX NG full syntax schemas
- RELAX NG compact syntax schemas
- NVDL (Namespace-based Validation Dispatching Language) schemas
- XSL:FO documents
- XQuery documents
- WSDL documents
- Schematron documents
- JavaScript documents
- Python documents
- CSS documents
- XProc scripts
- SQL documents
- JSON documents
- Ant build scripts
- Markdown documents

Resources to Help You Get Started Using Oxygen XML Developer plugin

Configuring Oxygen XML Developer plugin

There are numerous ways that you can configure Oxygen XML Developer plugin to accommodate your specific needs.

See the Configuring Oxygen section (on page 42) for details on the various ways that you can configure the application and its features.

Video Tutorials

The Oxygen XML Developer plugin website includes numerous video demonstrations and webinars that present many of the features that are available in Oxygen XML Developer plugin and show you how to complete specific tasks or how to use the various features.
Go to the Oxygen XML Developer plugin Videos Page to see the list of video tutorials and webinars.

**Oxygen XML Developer plugin Documentation**

The Oxygen XML Developer plugin documentation includes a plethora of sections and topics to provide you with a variety of information, ranging from basic authoring tasks to advanced developer techniques. You can, of course, search through the documentation using standard search mechanisms, but you can also place the cursor in any particular position in the interface and use the F1 key to open a dialog box that presents a section in the documentation that is appropriate for the context of the current cursor position. Aside from the other topics in this Getting Started section, the following are links to other sections of the documentation that might be helpful for your specific needs:

- Text Editing Mode Section *(on page 184)* - Provides information about the Text editor.
- XML Schema Diagram Editor *(on page 261)* - Provides information about the schema design mode.
- Editing Specific Document Types Chapter *(on page 364)* - Includes information about editing numerous different types of documents.
- Publishing Chapter *(on page 857)* - Provides information about the various ways that you can publish content.
- Importing Data Chapter *(on page 1482)* - Provides information about importing data from text files, MS Excel files, database data, and HTML files.
- Tools Chapter *(on page 1526)* - Details about the various built-in tools that are available in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

**Sample Documents**

Your installation of Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a large variety of sample documents and projects that you can use as templates to get started and to experiment with the various features and technologies. They are located in the samples folder that is located in the installation directory of Oxygen XML Developer plugin. You will find files and folders for various types of documents, including the following:

- Sample project file *(sample.xpr)* - A sample project file that will allow you to experiment with how projects can be structured and used. When you open this project file, you will be able to see all the sample files and folders in the Navigator view *(on page 210).*
- Sample files *(personal.xml, etc.)* - A collection of interrelated sample files that will allow you to experiment with the structure and relationship between XML files, stylesheets, and schemas.
- Various document type folders - The various folders contain sample files for numerous document types, such as CSS, DITA, DocBook, ePub, TEI, XHTML, and many others.
Other Resources

The following list includes links to various other resources that will help you get started using the features of Oxygen XML Developer plugin:

• See the Oxygen XML Developer plugin Blog Site for a large variety of current and archived blogs regarding numerous features, requests, and instructional topics.
• Take advantage of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin Forum to see various announcements and learn more about specific issues that other users have experienced.
• If you are using DITA, see the incredibly helpful DITA Style Guide Best Practices for Authors.
• To learn about the WebHelp features in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, see the Publishing DITA and DocBook to WebHelp section of the website.
• For more information about various additional tools that are integrated into Oxygen XML Developer plugin, see the Tools section (on page 1526).
• See the External Resource Page for links to various other helpful resources, such as discussion lists, external tutorials, and more.
• See the Oxygen SDK section for details about the SDK that allows you to extend and develop Oxygen XML Developer plugin frameworks (on page 1622) and plugins (on page 1625), and to integrate Eclipse plugins.
• For a list of new features that were implemented in the latest version of Oxygen XML Developer plugin, see the What's New Section of the Website

Your First Document or Project

This section includes several topics that will help you get started with your first document or project.

Creating a New Project

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to organize your XML-related files into projects. This helps you manage and organize your files and also allows you to perform batch operations (such as validation and transformation) over multiple files. Use the Navigator view (on page 210) to manage projects, and the files and folders contained within.

Creating a New Project

To create a new project, select New > XML Project or New > Sample XML Project from the contextual menu or File menu. This opens a dialog box that allows you to create and customize a new project and adds it to the structure of the project in the Navigator view (on page 210).
Adding Items to the Project

To add items to the project, select the desired document type or folder from the New menu of the contextual menu, when invoked from the Navigator view (or from the File menu). You can also create a document from a template by selecting New > New from Templates from the contextual menu.

Using Linked Folders (Shortcuts)

Another easy way to organize your XML working files is to place them in a directory and then to create a corresponding linked folder in your project. If you add new files to that folder, you can simply use the Refresh (F5) action from the toolbar or contextual menu and the Navigator view (on page 210) will display the existing files and subdirectories. If your files are scattered among several folders, but represent the same class of files, you might find it useful to combine them in a logical folder.

You can create linked folders (shortcuts) by dragging and dropping folders from the Windows Explorer (Mac OS X Finder) to the project tree, or by using the contextual menu from the location in the project tree where you want it added and selecting New > Folder > Advanced. The linked folders presented in the Navigator view (on page 210) are marked with a special icon. To create a file inside a linked folder, use the contextual menu and select New > File (you can use the Advanced button to link to a file in the local file system).

Note: Files may have multiple instances within the folder system, but cannot appear twice within the same folder.

For more information on managing projects and their content, see Navigator View (on page 210).

Related Information:

- Using Projects to Group Documents (on page 327)

Getting Help

If you run into specific problems while using Oxygen XML Developer plugin you can take advantage of a variety of support related resources. Those resources include the following:

- The Oxygen XML Developer plugin Support Section of the Website
- The Oxygen XML Developer plugin Forum
- The Oxygen XML Developer plugin Video Tutorials
- The Common Problems and Solutions Section of the User Manual (on page 1598)
• The Online Technical Support Form

The application also includes various specific help-related resources in the Help menu.

Help Menu

The Oxygen XML Developer plugin Help menu provides various resources to assist you with your tasks.

This menu includes the following actions or options:

Welcome

This option opens the Welcome screen that includes some resources to assist you with using Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Help Contents

Use this action to open a dialog box that presents Eclipse help topics and it includes a section that is specific to Oxygen XML Developer plugin. Also, you can use the F1 key to open a Help view that presents a section in the User Manual that is appropriate for the context of the current cursor position.

Report Oxygen problem

You can use this option to open a dialog box that allows you to write the description of a problem that was encountered while using the application. You can also select additional information to be sent to the technical support team in the five tabs:

• General info - You can edit your contact details in case you want to be contacted for further details or to be notified of a resolution.
• Class Loader URLs - You can choose whether or not to include the listed Class Loader URLs with your report.
• System properties - You can choose whether or not to include the listed system property details with your report.

Tip: You are able to change the URL where the reported problem is sent by using the com.oxygenxml.report.problems.url system property. The report is sent in XML format through the report parameter of the POST HTTP method.
• Plugins - You can choose whether or not to include details about your installed plugins (on page 1625) with your report.
• Frameworks - You can choose whether or not to include details about your installed frameworks (on page 1622) with your report.

Support Tools > Randomize XML text content
Use this action when you need to send samples to the Oxygen support team and you want to keep the text content confidential. It opens a dialog box that allows you to select the resources for which the text content will be randomized. You can then save the resources and send them to the Oxygen support team without fear of compromising sensitive or private data. For more information, see Randomize XML Text Content (on page 9).

⚠️ Warning: Before using this action, it is highly recommended that you copy the XML resources to be processed, save them in a separate folder, and then process this operation on the copies instead of the original files. Otherwise, you may lose your original content.

About Eclipse

Use this option and then click the Oxygen XML Developer plugin icon to open a dialog box that contains information about Oxygen XML Developer plugin and the installed version.

Related Information:

- Details to Submit in a Request for Technical Support Using the Online Form (on page 1602)

Randomize XML Text Content

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes an action that randomizes the text content of an XML document. This action is available in the Help > Support Tools menu. It is helpful if you need to send XML samples to the Oxygen support team and you want to keep the text content confidential. It opens a dialog box that allows you to select the resources for which the text content will be randomized. You can then save the resources and send them to the Oxygen support team without fear of compromising sensitive or private data.

⚠️ Warning: Before using this action, it is highly recommended that you copy the XML resources to be processed, save them in a separate folder, and then perform this operation on the copies instead of the original files. Otherwise, you may lose your original content.

Figure 1. Randomize XML Text Content Dialog Box
The Randomize XML Text Content dialog box includes the following options:

**Scope**

Allows you to select the set of files whose text content will be randomized by the operation. You can select from predefined resource sets (such as the current file, your whole project, the current DITA map (on page 1621) hierarchy for DITA projects, etc.) or you can define your own set of resources by creating a working set (on page 1627).

**Filters**

This section includes the following options:

- **Include files** - Allows you to filter the selected resources by using a file pattern. For example, to restrict the operation to only analyze build files you could use build*.xml for the file pattern.
- **Restrict only to known XML file types** - When selected, only resources with a known XML file type will be affected by the operation.

**Accessibility Support in Oxygen**

The Oxygen team is dedicated to developing software products that are usable for everyone, including those with physical challenges and disabilities. Oxygen XML Developer plugin was designed to adhere to the U.S. Government Section 508 accessibility standards: https://www.oxygenxml.com/xml_editor/section508.html
Adjusting Fonts and Colors

If you have low vision, go to Options > Preferences > Appearance > Fonts where you can adjust the font styles and sizes used in the entire application, both for the editing areas and UI labels. If you have color blindness, you can also adjust most of the colors used in Oxygen XML Developer plugin by going to Options > Preferences > Appearance and changing the current color theme. You can also search for other color-related setting in the Preferences dialog box.

Text to Speech Narrators (JAWS)

If you are using a text to speech narrator, Oxygen XML Developer plugin support this since it is a Java application and it is periodically tested on Windows using the JAWS screen reader: http://www.freedomscientific.com/Products/Blindness/JAWS.

For JAWS to work, you need to enable the Java access bridge in Oxygen XML Developer plugin: http://docs.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/technotes/guides/access/enable_and_test.html

Since Oxygen XML Developer plugin comes bundled with its own Java VM, you need to open a console in the jre folder bundled with Oxygen XML Developer plugin and run the following command:

```
D:\PATH\TO\OXYGEN_INSTALLATION_FOLDER\jre>bin\jabswitch -enable
```

You will receive a notification in the console that the access bridge has been enabled.

Once the Java access bridge is enabled and if the JAWS narrator is active, when Oxygen XML Developer plugin starts, the narrator will start reading content from Oxygen XML Developer plugin and you can interact with the application, read menus, content from opened XML documents, and UI components from dialog boxes and side views.

Hints for the Visually Impaired

Here are a few hints for using Oxygen XML Developer plugin if you are visually impaired:

- The top main menu should contain most of the actions that you need to open, save, and close documents, switch between opened documents, or switch between the various editing modes for XML documents that are already opened.
  - The File menu contains actions to open, save, or close the currently edited XML document.
  - The Edit menu contains actions to undo/redo or cut/copy/paste content. They also have the usual shortcuts that can be used instead of directly invoking the actions from the menu.
  - The Find menu contains an action to show the Find/Replace dialog box. Sometimes the JAWS narrator overloads the CTRL-F shortcut and presents its own find/replace window but
the Oxygen XML Developer plugin **Find/Replace** dialog box provides the ability to perform complex find/replace operations in the opened file.

- In the **Options** menu, you have access to the **Preferences** dialog box that contains global application settings and access to the **Menu Shortcut Keys** table where you can configure shortcuts for the most commonly used actions.
- The **Window** menu includes actions to switch between opened XML documents. Also, you can use the **Show view** submenu open a particular side view and move the focus to that view.

• An opened XML document can be edited with accessibility support either in the **Text** editing mode (where the XML tags are accessible in the edited content) or in the visual **Author** editing mode (where the XML tags are hidden and only the text content is shown). You can switch between these editing modes by using the **Document > Edit Mode** menu.
  - **Text** mode provides access to the entire source document with all of its **XML** content, just like you have in any text editing application. In addition, using the **Window > Show view** submenu, you can change focus to the **Attributes**, **Elements**, or **Outline** view. The **Attributes** view presents the existing and possible attributes that can be inserted in an XML tag. The **Elements** view shows you the list of XML elements that can be inserted at cursor position (also, pressing F2 on a selected element presents its annotation). The **Outline** view shows the current path in the XML structure.
  - **Author** mode is useful for reviewing written XML content because it has support for change tracking and for adding comments. Editing in the **Author** visual editing mode, you have access only to the text content in the XML document. Pressing **Shift-F2** will read to you the location in the XML structure. Again, you can also use the **Outline** view for this. In the **Author** editing mode, you can also use the **Attributes** and **Elements** views similar to using them in the **Text** editing mode. Pressing **ENTER** in the **Author** visual editing mode can also be used to present a list of allowed elements at the current position.
3.

Installation

Oxygen XML Developer plugin is available on Windows, Linux, and Mac OS X and there are a variety of methods and options for installing and running Oxygen XML Developer plugin on your system or server. This section also includes information about registering, transferring, or releasing licenses, upgrading, installing add-ons, and uninstalling.

Choosing How Oxygen XML Developer plugin Runs

You can install Oxygen XML Developer plugin to run in several ways:

- As a desktop application (running standalone or as an Eclipse plugin) on Windows, Linux, or Mac OS X.
- As a desktop application (running standalone or as an Eclipse plugin) on a Unix or Linux server or on Windows Terminal Server.

Choosing an Installer

You also have a choice of several different installers:

- The native installer for your platform (Windows, Linux, or Mac OS X).
- On Windows and Linux, the native installer can also run in unattended mode.
- The Update Site installer (on page 15).
- The Zip archive installer (on page 15).

Choosing a License Option

You must obtain and register a license key (on page 16) to run Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

You can choose from two types of licenses:

- A named-user license, which can be used by a single person on multiple computers.
- A floating license, which can be used by different people at different times. Only one person can use a floating license at a time.
Upgrading, transferring, and uninstalling.

You can also upgrade (on page 39) Oxygen XML Developer plugin, transfer a license (on page 22), or uninstall (on page 41) Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Getting help with installation

If you need help, email support at: support@oxygenxml.com.

Installing Oxygen as an Eclipse Plugin

System Requirements

Operating Systems

- OS X version 10.8 64-bit or later
- Any Unix/Linux distribution with an available Java SE Runtime Environment version 1.8 from Oracle

CPU

- Minimum - 1 GHz processor
- Recommended - Dual Core class processor

Memory

- Minimum - 2 GB of RAM
- Recommended - 4 GB of RAM

Storage

- Minimum - 400 MB free disk space
- Recommended - 1 GB free disk space

Java

Java 1.8 from Oracle
On Eclipse, Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the same Java Virtual Machine as the copy of Eclipse it is running in.

**Eclipse**

The following Eclipse versions are officially supported: 3.6-3.8, 4.2-4.10.

**Update Site Method**

To install the Eclipse plugin using the *Update Site* method, follow this procedure:

1. Start Eclipse.
2. Go to Help > Install New Software > Available Software.
3. Click Add in the Available Software dialog box.
5. Click OK.
6. Select the Oxygen XML Developer plugin checkbox.
7. Click Next and continue with the rest of the installation wizard.
8. Restart Eclipse when prompted.
9. Verify that Oxygen XML Developer plugin is installed correctly by creating a new XML Project. Go to File > New > Other and choose Oxygen XML Developer plugin > XML Project.
10. When prompted for a license key, enter the license information received in the registration email.

**Note:** If you already have a native version of Oxygen XML Developer plugin installed on your computer, you will not be prompted for a license key for the Eclipse version. The existing license key will be used automatically.

**Zip Archive Method**

To install the Eclipse plugin using the *Zip Archive* method, follow this procedure:

1. Download the zip archive with the Eclipse plugin.
2. Unzip the downloaded zip archive in the dropins subdirectory of the Eclipse installation directory.
3. Restart Eclipse.
4. Verify that Oxygen XML Developer plugin is installed correctly by creating a new XML Project. Go to File > New > Other and choose Oxygen XML Developer plugin > XML Project.
5. When prompted for a license key, enter the license information received in the registration email.

**Note:** If you already have a native version of Oxygen XML Developer plugin installed on your computer, you will not be prompted for a license key for the Eclipse version. The existing license key will be used automatically.
Site-Wide Deployment

If you are deploying Oxygen XML Developer plugin for a group, there are various things you can do to customize Oxygen XML Developer plugin for your users and to make the deployment more efficient.

**Creating custom default options**

You can create a custom set of default options (on page 159) for Oxygen XML Developer plugin. These will become the default options for each of your users, replacing the normal default settings. Users can still set options to suit themselves in their own copies of Oxygen XML Developer plugin, but if they choose to reset their options to defaults, the custom defaults that you set will be used.

**Creating default project files**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin project files (on page 327) are used to configure a project. You can create and deploy default project files (on page 6) for your projects so that your users will have a preconfigured project file to begin work with.

**Using floating licenses**

If you have a number of people using Oxygen XML Developer plugin on a part-time basis or in different time zones, you can use a floating license (on page 18) so that multiple people can share a license.

Licensing

Oxygen XML Developer plugin is not free software. To activate and use Oxygen XML Developer plugin, you need a license.

For demonstration and evaluation purposes, a time limited license is available upon request at [https://www.oxygenxml.com/register.html](https://www.oxygenxml.com/register.html). This license is supplied at no cost for a period of 30 days from the date of issue. During this period, the software is fully functional, enabling you to test all its functionality. To continue using the software after the trial period, you must purchase a permanent license.

Choosing a License Type

You can use one of the following license types with Oxygen XML Developer plugin:

1. A **Named-User License** (on page 17) may be used by a single **Named User** (on page 1623) on one or more computers. Named-user licenses are not transferable to a new **Named User**. If you order multiple named-user licenses, you will receive a single license key good for a specified
number of named users. It is your responsibility to keep track of the named users that each license is assigned to.

2. A Floating License (on page 18) may be used by any user on any machine. However, the total number of copies of Oxygen XML Developer plugin in use at one time must not be more than the number of floating licenses available. A user who runs two different distributions of Oxygen XML Developer plugin (for example, Standalone and Eclipse Plugin) at the same time on the same computer, consumes a single floating license.

3. A Subscription license (on page 17) that allows you to use the application for a specific period of time (either 6 months or 1 year). This type of license is user-based and is covered by a Support and Maintenance Pack, which means that during the subscription period you will get free upgrades to all major and minor releases and priority technical support.

For definitions and legal details of the license types, consult the End User License Agreement available at https://www.oxygenxml.com/eula_developer.html.

Obtaining a License Key

You can obtain a license key for Oxygen XML Developer plugin in one of the following ways:

- You can purchase one or more licenses from the Oxygen XML Developer plugin website at https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy.html or through one of the authorized resellers. A license key will be sent to you by email.
- If your company or organization has already purchased licenses, contact your license administrator to obtain a license key or configuration details to connect to a license server.
- If you purchased a subscription and you received a registration code, you can use it to obtain a license key from https://www.oxygenxml.com//registerCode.html. A license key will be sent to you by email.
- If you want to evaluate the product, you can obtain a trial license key for 30 days from the Oxygen XML Developer plugin website at https://www.oxygenxml.com/register.html.

Register a Named-User or Subscription License

To register a Named-User License or Subscription License on a machine owned by the Named User (on page 1623), follow these steps:

1. Purchase a license from the Oxygen XML Developer plugin website. You will receive an email that contains your license key.
2. Save a backup copy of your email message that contains the new license key.
If this is a new install of Oxygen XML Developer plugin, the registration dialog box is displayed. If the registration dialog box is not displayed, go to Window (Eclipse on Mac OSX) and choose Preferences > Oxygen XML Developer plugin and click the Register button.

Figure 2. License Registration Dialog Box

4. Select **Use a license key** as the licensing method.

   ![License Registration Dialog Box](image)

   **Note:** If your license key has 20 or more licenses, you must use a license server (on page 22) instead.

5. Paste your license key into the registration dialog box. The license key is composed of nine lines of text between two text markers.

6. Press **OK**.

**Related Information:**
- [Oxygen XML Developer plugin End-User License Agreement](#)

**Floating Licenses**

The floating license type is commonly used by organizations that have a large number of infrequent users who do not need to use Oxygen XML Developer plugin all at the same time. Instead of each user having their own individual license key to use at their discretion, there are a pool of licenses that are used one at a time by various users upon request.
To use floating licenses, a license server is required and the license key needs to be activated. Your system administrator will most likely be responsible for setting up the license server (on page 22). Then you will need to request a floating license from the server (on page 19). This process is designed to help you comply with the Oxygen End User License Agreement (EULA). This means that the license key will be locked to a particular license server deployment, and the same license key cannot be used with any other license server.

For information about releasing and returning a floating license to the pool for other users, see Releasing a Floating License (on page 21).

For information about reserving (or locking) a floating license so that it does not get returned to the pool, see Reserving a Floating License (on page 22).

Requesting a Floating License from an HTTP License Server

**How to Request a Floating License**

To request a floating license from an HTTP license server, follow this procedure:

1. Contact your server administrator to make sure the license server has already been set up and get network address and login details for the license server.
2. Start the Eclipse platform.
3. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and click the Register button.
   
   **Step Result:** The license registration dialog box is displayed.
4. Choose Use a license server as licensing method.
5. Select HTTP/HTTPS Server as server type.
6. In the URL field, enter the address of the license server. The URL address has the following format: http://hostName:port/oXygenLicenseServlet/license-servlet .
7. Complete the User and Password fields.
8. Click the OK button.

**Result:** If a floating license is available, it is registered in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. To display the license details, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42). If a floating license is not available, you will get a message listing the users currently using floating licenses.

**How to Register Floating Licenses for Additional Users**

If you are an administrator and you want to register floating licenses for multiple users without having to open Oxygen XML Developer plugin on each machine to manually configure the registration details one by one, you can use the following procedure:
1. Reset the registration details in Oxygen XML Developer plugin:
   a. Select Register from the Help menu.
   b. Click OK without entering any information in this dialog box.
   c. Click Reset and restart the application.

2. Register the license using one of the floating license registration procedures (on page 18).

3. Copy the license.xml file from the preferences directory (on page 44) and place it in the installation folder on each machine to be registered.

Related Information:

- Setting up an HTTP License Server (Floating or Named-User Licenses) (on page 23)

Requesting a Floating License from a TCP License Server (Deprecated)

Use this procedure if your company uses an Oxygen XML Developer plugin TCP license server and the license server has already been set up by your server administrator:

1. Contact your server administrator to get network address and login details for the license server.

2. Start the Eclipse platform.

3. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and click the Register button.
   The license registration dialog box is displayed.

4. Choose Use a license server as licensing method.

5. Select TCP server as server type.

6. In the Host field, enter the host name or IP address of the license server.

7. In the Port field, enter the port number used to communicate with the license server.

8. Click the OK button.

If a floating license is available, it is registered in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. To display the license details, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42). If a floating license is not available, you will get a message listing the users currently using floating licenses.

Related Information:

- Setting up TCP Floating License Server (Deprecated) in 32-bit Windows (on page 32)
Releasing a Floating License

The floating license you are using will be released and returned to the pool if any of the following occur:

- The connection with the license server is lost.
- The Oxygen XML Developer plugin will consume one license from the server's pool of licenses if at least one Oxygen editor window is opened (not necessarily focused). In other words, if a user wants to release a license, all Oxygen editor windows must be closed.
- You exit the application running on your machine, and no other copies of Oxygen XML Developer plugin running on your machine are using your floating license.
- You register a Named User (on page 1623) license with your copy of Oxygen XML Developer plugin, and no other copies of Oxygen XML Developer plugin running on your machine are using your floating license.
- Your computer idles for more than 2 hours.
- Your system administrator manually revokes the license (on page 28).

Tip: To prevent your floating license from being released, you can use the Lock floating license action available in the Preferences dialog box (go to Window (Eclipse on Mac OSX) and choose Preferences > Oxygen XML Developer plugin. You can use the same action to unlock the license. Note that your system administrator also has the ability to unlock your license (on page 28).

To release a floating license on demand, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and click Register.
   The license registration dialog box is displayed.

2. The license key field should be empty (this is normal). If it is not empty, delete any text in the field.

3. Make sure the Use a license key option is selected.

4. Click OK.
   A dialog box is displayed asking if you want to reset your license key.

5. Select between:
   - Use the last one - Falls back to your previous license key. Use this option if you want to release a floating license and revert to a Named User (on page 1623) license.
   - Reset - Removes your license key from your user account on the current computer.
   The Reset button erases all the licensing information. To complete the reset operation, close and restart Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
Reserving a Floating License

There are instances where you might want to reserve or lock a floating license. For example, you could lock a floating license if you want to use your floating license offline while traveling.

To reserve/lock a floating license, follow these steps:

1. Select **Lock floating license** from the **Preferences** dialog box (go to **Window (Eclipse on Mac OSX)** and choose **Preferences > Oxygen XML Developer plugin**.

2. Click **OK**.
   
   Your floating license is now locked. You can use the same action to unlock the license or you can contact your system administrator to unlock it.

Transferring a License Key

If you want to transfer your Oxygen XML Developer plugin license key to another computer (for example, if you are disposing of your old computer or transferring it to another person), you must first unregister your license. You can then **register your license** (on page 16) on the new computer in the normal way.

To unregister a license, prior to transferring it, follow this procedure:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box  *(on page 42)* and click **Register**.
   
   The license registration dialog box is displayed.

2. The license key field should be empty (this is normal). If it is not empty, delete any text in the field.

3. Make sure the **Use a license key** option is selected.

4. Click **OK**.
   
   A dialog box is displayed asking if you want to reset your license key.

5. Select between:
   
   - **Use the last one** - Falls back to your previous license key, if applicable.
   - **Reset** - Removes your license key from your user account on the current computer.

   The **Reset** button erases all the licensing information. To complete the reset operation, close and restart Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
License Servers

Installing a License Server to Manage Licenses

If you are using floating licenses or a large number of user-based licenses (20 or more) for Oxygen XML Developer plugin, you must set up an Oxygen XML Developer plugin license server. A license server can be installed as one of the following:

• An HTTP server (on page 23). This is the recommended method.
• A TCP server (on page 32) (deprecated).

Note: Oxygen XML Developer plugin version 17 or higher requires a license server version 17 or higher. License servers version 20.1 or higher can be used with any version of a floating or named-user license key.

Activating License Keys

To help you comply with the Oxygen XML Developer plugin EULA (terms of licensing), all floating or named-user licenses require activation. This means that the license key will be locked to a particular license server deployment and no multiple uses of the same license key are possible.

During the activation process, a code that uniquely identifies your license server deployment is sent to the Oxygen XML Developer plugin servers, which in turn will sign the license key.

Split or Combine License Keys to Work with Your License Servers

A license server can only manage one license key. If you have multiple license keys for the same Oxygen XML Developer plugin version and you want to have all of them managed by the same server, or if you have a multiple-user floating license and you want to split it between two or more license servers, contact the Oxygen support team and ask for a new license key.

Setting up an HTTP License Server (Floating or Named-User Licenses)

The HTTP License Server is available in several distributions, tailored for covering a variety of deployment configurations:

• Windows installer (on page 24) - Easy-to-use Windows installation wizard. Requires elevated permissions to run it.
• All-platform distribution (on page 24) - Script-based deployment that does not require elevated permissions to run it. Provides scripts for Windows, Mac, and Linux.
• **Web Archive (WAR) distribution (on page 25)** - Provides more flexibility in your deployment configuration, but it requires an existing HTTP server (such as Apache Tomcat).

### Installation Steps for the HTTP License Server Installer Distribution for Windows

1. Download the HTTP license server installer from the [HTTP License Server website](#).
2. Run the installer and follow the on-screen instructions.
3. You need to configure two sets of credentials:
   a. **Administrator credentials** - Used for accessing the Oxygen XML Developer plugin license server administrative interface.
   b. **Standard user credentials** - Used by an Oxygen XML Developer plugin application to connect to the license server.
4. You can choose to change the default 8080 port the server will run on. If you need to change the port after the installation, you can do it by editing the following `vmoptions` file: `oXygen HTTP License Server\Windows Service\oXygenHTTPLicenseServer.vmoptions`.
5. Optionally, you can choose to install the server as a Windows service. In this case, you can choose the name of the Windows service.

   **Tip:** In case you run into issues, the license server log file is located in: `[Installation_Directory]\temp\logs\oXygenLicenseServlet.log`.

### Installation Steps for the HTTP License Server All-Platform Distribution

1. Download the HTTP license server all-platform archive from the [HTTP License Server website](#).
2. Unpack the archive.
3. Run the license server scripts suitable for your operating system (`licenseServer.bat` for Windows or `licenseServer.sh` for Linux and Mac).

   **Note:** To specify a different port (other than the default 8080), you can pass the new port number as an argument to the scripts (for example, `licenseServer.bat 8082`). You can also change the port by editing the following `vmoptions` file: `oXygen HTTP License Server \Windows Service\oXygenHTTPLicenseServer.vmoptions`.
4. On the first run, you will be prompted to set two sets of credentials:
   a. **Administrator credentials** - Used for accessing the Oxygen XML Developer plugin license server administrative interface.
   b. **Standard user credentials** - Used by an Oxygen XML Developer plugin application to connect to the license server.

   **Tip:** If you want to manually install, start, stop, or uninstall the server as a Windows service, run the following scripts from a command line as an Administrator:
• `installWindowsService.bat [serviceName]` - Installs the server as a Windows service with the name `serviceName`. The parameters for the license key folder and the server port can be set in the `oXygenLicenseServer.vmoptions` file.
• `startWindowsService.bat [serviceName]` - Starts the Windows service.
• `stopWindowsService.bat [serviceName]` - Stops the Windows service.
• `uninstallWindowsService.bat [serviceName]` - Uninstalls the Windows service.

If you do not provide the `serviceName` argument, the default name `oXygenLicenseServer` is used.

If the license server is installed as a Windows service, the output and error messages are automatically redirected to the following log files that are created in the install folder:
• `outLicenseServer.log` - Standard output stream of the server.
• `errLicenseServer.log` - Standard error stream of the server.

Installation Steps for the HTTP License Server WAR Distribution

1. Make sure that you have Java Servlet Container installed on the machine you have selected to be the license server. Apache Tomcat 5.5 or higher is recommended (available at `http://tomcat.apache.org`).

   **Important:** By default, the license server stores the statistics database and other data in the Java Servlet Container’s temporary directory. If you are not using Apache Tomcat, this directory may be deleted when the server is stopped or restarted. However, you can set the `oxygen.license.server.work.dir` system property to specify a different path for the directory where the database is stored.

2. Download the HTTP license server Web Archive (.war) from the HTTP License Server website.

3. Configure three user roles in your installation of the Java Servlet Container (such as Apache Tomcat):
   a. One user with the role `user`, used by an Oxygen XML Developer plugin application to connect to the license server. In the subsequent example, this user name is `John`.
   b. Another user with the role `admin`, used for accessing the HTTP License Server administrative interface and the management interface. In the subsequent example, this user name is `Mary`.
   c. Another user with the role `manager`, used for accessing the HTTP License Server main page and the statistics pages. In the subsequent example, this user name is `Henry`.

   For example, in Apache Tomcat, a typical way to achieve this is to edit the `tomcat-users.xml` file from your Tomcat installation (if using a Tomcat `zip/tar.gz` distribution, by default this configuration file is found in the `/TomcatInstallFolder/conf/` directory). After adding the three users, the configuration file might look like this:

   ```xml
   <tomcat-users xmlns="http://tomcat.apache.org/xml">
   ```
4. Deploy the WAR file.

For example, in Apache Tomcat, go to the Web Application Manager page and log in with the user you configured with the admin role (Mary in the example above). In the WAR file to deploy section, choose the WAR file and click the Deploy button. The oXygenLicenseServlet application is now up and running, but the license key is not yet registered.

5. Go to the HTTP License Server administration page. By default, the address of this page is http://<server-address>/oXygenLicenseServlet. In Apache Tomcat, you can also open this page by clicking the oXygenLicenseServlet link in the manager page.

You will need to authenticate with the user configured with the admin role (Mary in the example above).

6. **Activate the license key.** This process involves binding your license key to your license server deployment. The browser used in the activation process needs to have Internet access.

   **Note:** If you cannot access the internet during the deployment, you can manually activate the license key (on page 27).

Once the process is completed you cannot activate the license on another license server. Follow these steps to activate the license:

   a. Paste your license key into the form and press Register/Activate.

   **Result:** You will be redirected to an online form hosted on the Oxygen XML Developer plugin website. This form is pre-filled with an activation code that uniquely identifies your license server deployment, and your license key.

   b. Press Register/Activate.

   If the activation process is successfully completed, your license server is running. Follow the on-screen instructions to configure the Oxygen XML Developer plugin client applications.

7. The application's log file location is specified by the log4j.appender.R2.File property from the WEB-INF/lib/log4j.properties configuration file.
For example, in Apache Tomcat, the configuration file is located at `TomcatInstallDir/webapps/oXygenLicenseServlet/WEB-INF/lib/log4j.properties` and the default log file location is `TomcatInstallDir/logs/oxygenLicenseServlet.log`.

**Manual License Activation Procedure (For Users Whose License Server is Offline)**

If your license server is not connected to the internet, and hence the license cannot be activated automatically during the installation, you can manually activate the license by following these steps:

1. Access the HTTP license server management page in a web browser.
2. Copy the license server machine signature code.
4. Enter or paste the license server machine signature code and the license key, then click **Activate**.

   **Step Result:** The activated license key is displayed on-screen.

5. Copy the activated license key and paste it in the license registration page of the HTTP server.

**Backup License Server Information**

If you want to use a backup license server, the setup instructions are the same as the procedures for a main license server, but it will require its own separate license key. You do not need to purchase the separate license if it is to be used for a backup server, but you will need to request a separate license key by contacting the Oxygen support team.

**Related Information:**

- Troubleshooting: Machine Signature Mismatch Errors *(on page 36)*

**License Server Management and Statistics Pages**

A system administrator can manage and access information about the license server at: `http://hostName:port/oXygenLicenseServlet`.

This page provides access to several statistics reports and management tasks. It also shows the current status of the server and provides additional instructions for using the license server with Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

This page includes the following links for accessing statistics or managing tasks:

- **Current Allocated Licenses** - Opens the Allocated License Report page *(on page 28).*
• **Usage Statistics** - Available only for floating licenses. Opens the License Usage Statistics page (on page 28).

• **View License Key** - Use this link to view details about the license key.

• **Replace/Remove License Key** - Use this link if you need to replace or remove the current license key (on page 30).

• **Configuration** - Opens a page where you can configure notification settings and specify whether or not users are allowed to lock licenses. This page can be used for setting up the mail server used for sending emails whenever license requests from users are rejected.

• **Users management** - Available only for named-user licenses. Opens a page where you can manage the list of users who are entitled to use the license key.

**Allocated License Report Page**

This report page provides a system administrator the ability to revoke or unlock current running instances of licenses and includes the following information:

• **License load** - A graphical indicator that shows how many licenses are available.

• **License server status** - General information about the license server status, such as start time, license counts, rejected and acknowledged requests, average usage time, license refresh and timeout intervals, location of the license key, and the server version.

• **Current running instances** - Lists all currently acknowledged users, including user name, date and time when the license was granted, IP and MAC address of the computer where Oxygen XML Developer plugin runs, and lock status.
  - **Revoke** - A system administrator can click on the Revoke icon next to a user name to release that particular license and return it to the pool.
  - **Unlock** - If a user has locked their license, the system administrator can also unlock it from this page.

**Note:** This report is also available in XML format at: `http://hostName:port/oXygenLicenseServlet/license-servlet/report-xml`.

**License Usage Statistics Page (Floating License Only)**

This report page provides some usage statistics for the floating licenses. It is helpful for determining the number of licenses that are needed and monitoring times when licenses are consumed. It includes the following information:

• **Maximum number of concurrent licenses** - Shows the maximum number of floating licenses that can be consumed at any given time.

• **Concurrent license consumption per day** - A chart that shows the peak number of licenses that were consumed and the total number of users that were rejected, on a daily basis. This chart can
be used to detect the amount of concurrent licenses that are needed to avoid having rejected users.

**Tip:** You can click on any bar to see the license consumption per hour for that particular day.

Figure 3. Concurrent License Consumption per Day Chart

- **Concurrent license consumption per hour** - A chart that shows the peak number of licenses that were consumed per hour throughout that particular month. This is useful for identifying the time of day when the most licenses were consumed.

Figure 4. Concurrent License Consumption per Hour Chart
Users Management Page (Named-User License Only)

When using a named-user license key, the license server allocates available licenses on a *first come first served* basis until the maximum number is reached. Further users attempting to get a license key will be rejected.

This page provides access to the list of registered users and allows the server admin to:

- Revoke a user's right to use a license.
- Reactivate a previously deactivated user.

Figure 5. Users List Management Page

```
<oXygen/> XML License Server User Management

License server status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Total licenses</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Used licenses</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available licenses</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Users: 6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Name</th>
<th>Deactivated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>andrel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bogdan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bogdan_d</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mihaela</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mircea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teodor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Replacing or Removing a License Key in an HTTP License Server

The following procedure assumes that your Oxygen XML Developer plugin HTTP license server contains a previously activated license key (on page 26) and provides instructions for replacing it with another one or removing it completely.

This is useful if, for instance, you want to upgrade your existing license to the latest version or if you receive a new license key that accommodates a different number of users (on page 23).
Replacing a License Key

To replace a license key that is activated on your HTTP license server with a new one, follow these steps:

1. Access the license server by following the link provided by the Tomcat Web Application Manager page using your admin credentials.
2. Click the Replace/Remove license key link. This will open a page that contains details about the license currently in use.
3. Click the Replace button to begin the replacement procedure.
4. Paste the new license key in the displayed form, then click Register/Activate. The browser used in the process needs to have Internet access.

You will be redirected to an online form hosted on the Oxygen XML Developer plugin website. This form is pre-filled with an activation code that uniquely identifies your license server deployment and your license key.

Note: If you cannot access the online activation form, you can manually activate the license key (on page 27).
5. Press Register/Activate.

If the activation process is completed successfully, your license server is now running using the new license key. You can click View license key to inspect the key currently used by the license server.

Removing a License Key

To remove a license key that is activated on your HTTP license server, follow these steps:

1. Access the license server by following the link provided by the Tomcat Web Application Manager page using your admin credentials.
2. Click the Replace/Remove license key link. This will open a page that contains details about the license currently in use.
3. Click the Remove button to begin the license deletion procedure.
4. Click the Remove button in the confirmation page.

Important: The removal process is irreversible. Once the process is complete, you cannot restore the license key.
Upgrading Your HTTP License Server

The goal of the following procedure is to help you minimize the downtime when you upgrade the HTTP License Server to its latest version.

Follow this procedure:

1. Access the license server by following the link provided by the Tomcat Web Application Manager page. If prompted for authentication, use the **admin** credentials.
2. Click the **View license key** link and copy the displayed license key to a file for later use.
3. Go to the Tomcat Web Application Manager page, log in with the user you configured with the **admin** role, and **Undeploy** the license server.
4. **Download the Web Archive (WAR) distribution of HTTP license server.**
5. Deploy the downloaded license server.
6. Access the license server by following the link provided by the Tomcat Web Application Manager page. If prompted for authentication, use the credentials configured for the **admin** user.
7. Paste the license key into the form and register it.

Setting up TCP Floating License Server (Deprecated) in 32-bit Windows

This section contains information about setting up the TCP floating license server as a Windows process.

Figure 6. TCP Floating License Server (Process in Windows)

Installation Steps

1. Download the license server installation kit for Windows from the Oxygen XML Developer plugin website.
2. Run the downloaded installer and follow the on-screen instructions.
By default, the installer installs the license server as a Windows service. Optionally, you have the ability to start the Windows service automatically at Windows startup or create shortcuts on the Start menu for starting and stopping the Windows service manually.

**Tip:** If you want to manually install, start, stop, or uninstall the server as a Windows service, run the following scripts from a command line as an Administrator:

- `installWindowsService.bat [serviceName]` - Installs the server as a Windows service with the name `serviceName`. The parameters for the license key folder and the server port can be set in the `oXygenLicenseServer.vmoptions` file.
- `startWindowsService.bat [serviceName]` - Starts the Windows service.
- `stopWindowsService.bat [serviceName]` - Stops the Windows service.
- `uninstallWindowsService.bat [serviceName]` - Uninstalls the Windows service.

If you do not provide the `serviceName` argument, the default name `oXygenLicenseServer` is used.

If the license server is installed as a Windows service, the output and error messages are automatically redirected to the following log files that are created in the install folder:

- `outLicenseServer.log` - Standard output stream of the server.
- `errLicenseServer.log` - Standard error stream of the server.

3. Manually add the `oXygenLicenseServer.exe` file in the Windows Firewall list of exceptions. Go to Control Panel > System and Security > Windows Firewall > Allow a program or feature through Windows Firewall > Allow another program and browse for `oXygenLicenseServer.exe` from the Oxygen XML Developer plugin License Server installation folder.

4. Floating licenses require activation prior to use. More details are available either on-screen (if the license server is started in a command-line interface) or in the `outLicenseServer.log` log file.

   **Note:** A license server can only manage one license key. If you have multiple license keys for the same Oxygen XML Developer plugin version and you want to have all of them managed by the same server, or if you have a multiple-user floating license and you want to split it between two or more license servers, contact the Oxygen support team and ask for a new license key.

Replacing Floating License Key in TCP Floating License Server (Deprecated)

The following procedure assumes that your Oxygen XML Developer plugin TCP floating license server contains a previously activated license key (on page 26) and provides instructions for replacing the activated license key with another one. The goal of the procedure is to minimize the license server downtime during the activation step of the new license key.
This is useful if, for instance, you want to upgrade your existing license to the latest version or if you receive a new license key that accommodates a different number of users (on page 23).

To replace a floating license key that is activated on your floating license server with a new one, follow these steps:

1. Stop the service that runs the floating license server.
2. Locate the folder that holds the previous activated license key (by default, it is named license and it is located in the installation directory of the license server).
3. Remove the license.txt file and try to restart the server. Since the file that stores the license key is missing, the server will fail to start (on page 38).
4. Find the license activation procedure in the on-screen instructions (if the license server is started in a command-line interface) or in the outLicenseServer.log log file.
5. After you copy the activated license key in the license.txt file, restart the license server.

Upgrading Your TCP Floating License Server (Deprecated)

The goal of the following procedure is to help you minimize the downtime generated when you upgrade the Oxygen XML Developer plugin floating license server to its newest version.

Follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Oxygen XML Developer plugin website and download the latest floating license server.
2. Run the installation kit.
3. Leave the default Update the existing installation option selected. This will ensure that some options set in the previous version (namely the installation folder, port number, and the floating license key in use) of the license server will be preserved.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the installation process.

Setting up TCP Floating License Server (Deprecated) All-Platforms

This installation method can be used for running the TCP license server on any platform where a Java virtual machine can run (OS X, Linux/Unix, Windows).

Figure 7. TCP Floating License Server (All-Platforms Distribution)
Installation Steps

1. Ensure that a Java runtime version 6 or later is installed on the server machine.

2. Download the license server installation kit for your platform from the Oxygen XML Developer plugin website.

3. Unzip the installation kit into a new folder.

4. Start the server using the startup script from a command-line console.
   The startup script is called licenseServer.sh for OS X and Unix/Linux or licenseServer.bat for Windows. The following parameters are accepted:
   • licenseDir - The path of the directory where the license files will be placed. The default value is license.
   • port - The TCP port number used to communicate with Oxygen XML Developer plugin instances. The default value is 12346.

   Example: The following is an example of the command line for starting the license server on Unix/Linux and OS X:

   ```bash
   sh licenseServer.sh myLicenseDir 54321
   ```

5. Floating licenses require activation prior to use. Follow the on-screen instruction to complete the license activation process.

Replacing Floating License Key in TCP Floating License Server (Deprecated)

The following procedure assumes that your Oxygen XML Developer plugin TCP floating license server contains a previously activated license key (on page 26) and provides instructions for replacing the activated license key with another one. The goal of the procedure is to minimize the HTTP license server downtime during the activation step of the new license key.
This is useful if, for instance, you want to upgrade your existing license to the latest version or if you receive a new license key that accommodates a different number of users (on page 23).

To replace a floating license key that is activated on your floating license server with a new one, follow these steps:

1. Stop the process that runs the floating license server.
2. Locate the folder that holds the previous activated license key (by default, it is named license and it is located in the installation directory of the license server).
3. Remove the license.txt file and try to restart the server. Since the file that stores the license key is missing, the server will fail to start.
4. Find the license activation procedure in the on-screen instructions.
5. After you copy the activated license key in the license.txt file, restart the license server.

Upgrading Your TCP Floating License Server (Deprecated)

The goal of the following procedure is to help you minimize the downtime generated when you upgrade the Oxygen XML Developer plugin TCP floating license server to its newest version.

Follow this procedure:

1. Stop the current license server process.
2. Locate and open the floating server startup script. It should look like this:

   ```
   sh licenseServer.sh pathToLicenseDir 54321
   ```

3. Make a note of the path to the license directory (in the example above, it is pathToLicenseDir ) and the port number (in the example above, it is 54321 ).
4. Go to the license directory and copy the license key file (license.txt) for later use.
5. Go to the Oxygen XML Developer plugin website and download the all-platforms floating license server installation kit.
6. Unzip the archive and overwrite the content of your current floating license server installation.
7. Copy the license key file (license.txt) saved in step 4 to license directory of the floating license server installation.
8. Edit the floating server startup script and configure with the info you made note of in step 3.
9. Start the floating license server process.

Common Problems: License Server Errors

This section includes some common problems that may appear when setting up a floating license server.
Machine Signature Mismatch Error

**Problem**

I receive an error indicating that *the current license was already activated on a License Server* or that *the License Server’s Machine Signature does not match*.

During the license activation process, the license key becomes bound to a particular license server deployment. This means that a code that uniquely identifies your license server deployment (called *Machine Signature*) is sent to the Oxygen XML Developer plugin servers, which in turn will sign the license key. The *Machine Signature* is computed from the list of network interfaces of the machine where you deployed the license.

When starting the license server, if you receive an error stating that your server’s Machine Signature does not match, there are several possible causes:

**Possible Cause 1**

The license key was moved to a new machine that hosts your license server.

**Solution**

Revert to your previous configuration.

**Possible Cause 2**

A new network interface was changed, added, or activated in the machine that hosts your license server.

*Note*: A specific example of when this could happen is if the Bluetooth or the WiFi module is activated/deactivated.

**Solution**

If reverting is not possible, contact the Oxygen support team.

**Possible Cause 3**

The license server was restarted from a different location as the previous restart. For example, some server configurations will have the Apache Tomcat server installed in a versioned folder (`/usr/local/apache-tomcat-V.V.V`) with a symbolic link to the typical folder (`/usr/local/tomcat`).
The server can be restarted from either location, but it is recommended to always restart from the typical folder (/usr/local/tomcat) and always restart from the same location.

**Solution**

The server simply needs to always be restarted from the same location.

**Windows Service Reports Incorrect Function Error When Starting (TCP Server)**

**Problem**

My TCP floating license server reports an "Incorrect Function" error message when starting the Windows service.

**Cause**

This usually appears because the Windows service launcher cannot locate a Java virtual machine on your system.

**Solution**

Make sure that you have installed a 32-bit Java SE from Oracle (or Sun) on the system: [http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html](http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html).

**Windows Service Reports Process Terminated Unexpectedly Error (TCP Server)**

**Problem**

My TCP floating license server reports a "Process Terminated Unexpectedly" error message for the Windows service.

**Cause**

This error message appears if the Windows service launcher quits immediately after being started. This problem usually happens because the license key has not been correctly deployed (license.txt file in the license folder).
Solution

Re-deploy your license key. For more information, see the Setting up a Floating License Server section (on page 32).

Upgrading

From time to time, upgrades and patch versions of Oxygen XML Developer plugin are released to provide enhancements that fix problems and add new features.

Upgrading Oxygen XML Developer plugin on Windows/Linux

What is Preserved During an Upgrade?

When you install a new version of Oxygen XML Developer plugin, some data is preserved and some is overwritten. If there is a previous version of Oxygen XML Developer plugin already installed on your computer, it can coexist with the new one, which means you do not have to uninstall it.

If you install over a previously installed version:

- All the files from its install directory will be removed, including any modification in framework (on page 1622) files, XSLT stylesheets, XML Catalogs (on page 1627), and templates.
- All global user preferences are preserved in the new version.
- All project preferences will be preserved in their project files.
- Any custom frameworks (on page 1622) that were stored outside the installation directory (as configured in Document type associations > Locations (on page 57)) will be preserved and will be found by the new installation.

If you install in a new directory:

- All the files from the old install directory will be preserved, including any modification in framework (on page 1622) files, XSLT stylesheets, XML Catalogs (on page 1627), and templates. However, these modifications will not be automatically imported into the new installation.
- All global user preferences are preserved in the new version.
- All project preferences will be preserved in their project files.
- Any custom frameworks (on page 1622) that were stored outside the installation directory (as configured in Document type associations > Locations (on page 57)) will be preserved and will be found by the new installation.
How to Upgrade Oxygen XML Developer plugin on Windows or Linux

1. Uninstall the current version of Oxygen XML Developer plugin (on page 41).
2. Download and install the new version according to the instructions for your platform and the type of installer you selected.
4. If you are upgrading from a minor version to a major version (for example, from 16.1 to 17.0) and you did not purchase a Maintenance Pack that covers the new major version, you will need to enter a new license for the new version into the registration dialog box that is displayed when the plugin is started.

Upgrading Oxygen XML Developer plugin on OS X

What is Preserved During an Upgrade?

When you install a new version of Oxygen XML Developer plugin, first you need to remove or rename the old installation directory. By renaming the directory, it can coexist with the new installation and the following data will be preserved:

- All the files from the old install directory will be preserved, including any modification in framework (on page 1622) files, XSLT stylesheets, XML Catalogs (on page 1627), and templates. However, these modifications will not be automatically imported into the new installation.
- All global user preferences are preserved in the new version.
- All project preferences will be preserved in their project files.
- Any custom frameworks (on page 1622) that were stored outside the installation directory (as configured in Document type associations > Locations (on page 57)) will be preserved and will be found by the new installation.

How to Upgrade Oxygen XML Developer plugin on OS X

1. Uninstall the current version of Oxygen XML Developer plugin (on page 41) or rename the installation directory (for example, Oxygen XML Editor.old).
2. Download and install the new version in an empty folder according to the instructions for your platform and the type of installer you selected.
4. If you are upgrading from a minor version to a major version (for example, from 16.1 to 17.0) and you did not purchase a Maintenance Pack that covers the new major version, you will need to
enter a new license for the new version into the registration dialog box that is displayed when the plugin is started.

Uninstalling

How to Uninstall Oxygen XML Developer plugin

⚠️ **CAUTION:** The following procedure will remove Oxygen XML Developer plugin from your system. It will not remove the Eclipse platform. If you want to uninstall Eclipse, refer to its uninstall instructions.

1. Choose the menu option **Help > About > Installation Details**.
2. Select Oxygen XML Developer plugin from the list of plugins.
3. Choose **Uninstall**.
4. Accept the Eclipse restart.
5. If you want to remove the user preferences:
   - **Windows** - Remove the directory: `%APPDATA%\com.oxygenxml.developer` (usually `%APPDATA%` has the value: `[user-home-dir]\Application Data`). Note that this directory is hidden.
   - **OS X** - Remove the directory: `Library/Preferences/com.oxygenxml.developer` of the user home folder.
   - **On Linux**, remove the directory: `.com.oxygenxml.developer` from the user home directory.
4. Configuring Oxygen XML Developer plugin

This chapter presents all the user preferences and options that allow you to configure various features and aspects of the application itself. It also includes information about storing and sharing options, importing and exporting options or scenarios, customizing system properties, setting startup parameters, and the editor variables (on page 162) that are available for customizing user-defined commands.

Preferences

You can configure Oxygen XML Developer plugin options using the Preferences dialog box.

To open the preferences dialog box, go to Window (Eclipse on Mac OSX) and choose Preferences > Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Figure 8. Eclipse Preferences Dialog Box
Press `Ctrl` or `F1` for help on any preferences page.

You can restore options to their default values by pressing the **Restore Defaults** button, available in each preferences page.

A filtered version of the **Preferences** dialog box is available by selecting **Options** from the contextual menu in the editor. It displays an appropriate preferences page according to the context where the action was invoked and filters the tree on the left according to where the preference page is located in the hierarchy.

Figure 9. Eclipse Preferences Dialog Box - Filtered Version
Preferences Directory Location

A variety of resources (such as global options, license information, and history files) are stored in a preferences directory (`com.oxygenxml`) that is in the following locations:

- **Windows (Vista, 7, 8, 10)** - `\user_home_directory\AppData\Roaming\com.oxygenxml`
- **Windows XP** - `\user_home_directory\Application Data\com.oxygenxml`
- **Mac OS X** - `\user_home_directory\Library\Preferences\com.oxygenxml`
- **Linux/Unix** - `\user_home_directory\com.oxygenxml`

Oxygen XML Developer plugin License

To configure the license options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42). This preferences page presents the details of the license key that enables the Oxygen XML Developer plugin, such as registration name, category and number of purchased licenses, and encrypted signature of the license key. Clicking the Register button opens the Oxygen XML Developer plugin License dialog box that allows you to insert a new license key.

Archive Preferences

To configure Archive options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Archive.

The following options are available in the Archive preferences page:

**Archive backup options**

Controls if the application makes backup copies of the modified archives. The following options are available:

- **Always create backup copies of modified archives** - When you modify an archive, its content is backed up.
- **Never create backup copies of modified archives** - No backup copy is created.
- **Ask for each archive once per session** - Once per application session for each modified archive, user confirmation is required to create the backup. This is the default setting.

Note: Backup files have the name `originalArchiveFileName.bak` and are located in the same folder as the original archive.

**Show archive backup dialog box**

Select this option if you want to be notified for backup when modifying in archives. The last backup option you chose will always be used as the default one.
Archive types

This table contains all known archive extensions mapped to known archive formats. Each row maps a list of extensions to an archive type supported in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. You can use the Edit button at the bottom of the table to edit an existing mapping or the New button to create a new one and associate your own list of extensions to an archive format.

Figure 10. Edit Archive Extension Mappings

⚠️ Important: You have to restart Oxygen XML Developer plugin after removing an extension from the table for that extension to not be recognized as an archive extension.

Store Unicode file names in Zip archives

Use this option when you archive files that contain international (non-English) characters in file names or file comments. If this option is selected and an archive is modified in any way, UTF-8 characters are used in the names of all files in the archive.

CSS Validator Preferences

To configure the CSS Validator preferences, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to CSS Validator.

You can configure the following options for the built-in CSS Validator of Oxygen XML Developer plugin:

- **Profile** - Selects one of the available validation profiles: CSS 1, CSS 2, CSS 2.1, CSS 3, CSS 3 with Oxygen extensions, SVG, SVG Basic, SVG Tiny, Mobile, TV Profile, ATSC TV Profile. The CSS 3 with Oxygen extensions profile includes all the CSS 3 standard properties and the CSS extensions specific for Oxygen. That means all Oxygen-specific extensions are accepted in a CSS stylesheet by the built-in CSS validator (on page 697) when this profile is selected.
- **Media type** - Selects one of the available mediums: all, aural, braille, embossed, handheld, print, projection, screen, tty, tv, presentation, oxygen.
- **Warning level** - Sets the minimum severity level for reported validation warnings. Can be one of: All, Normal, Most Important, No Warnings.
• **Ignore properties** - You can type comma separated patterns that match the names of CSS properties that will be ignored at validation. The following vendor extensions are specified as ignored by default: `-ro-*` (PDFreactor), `-ah-*` (Antenna House), `prince-*` (Prince). As wildcards you can use:
  ◦ `*` to match any string.
  ◦ `?` to match any character.

• **Recognize browser CSS extensions (also applies to content completion)** - If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin recognizes browser-specific CSS properties (no validation is performed). The *Content Completion Assistant*(on page 1620) lists these properties at the end of its list, prefixed with the following particles:
  ◦ `-moz-` for *Mozilla*.
  ◦ `-ms-` for *Internet Explorer* or *Edge*.
  ◦ `-o-` for *Opera*.
  ◦ `-webkit-` for *Safari/Webkit*.

**Custom Editor Variables Preferences**

An **editor variable***(on page 162)* is useful for making a transformation scenario, validation scenario, or other tool independent of its file path. An editor variable is specified as a parameter in a transformation scenario, validation scenario, or command line of an external tool. Such a variable is defined by a name, a string value, and a text description. A custom editor variable is defined by the user and can be used in the same expressions as the **built-in editor variables***(on page 162)*.

Custom editor variables are created and configured in the **Custom Editor Variables** preferences page. To access this page, open the **Preferences dialog box***(on page 42)* and go to **Custom Editor Variables**.

This preferences page displays a table of all the custom editor variables that have been defined. The table includes three columns for the editor variable **Name**, its **Value**, and its **Description**. The create a new variable, click the **New** button at the bottom of the table and define your custom editor variable in the subsequent dialog box. To edit an existing custom editor variable, click the **Edit** button and configure the variable in the subsequent dialog box. You can also use the **Delete** button to remove custom editor variables that are no longer needed.

**Figure 11. Custom Editor Variables Table**
Data Sources Preferences

To configure the Data Sources preferences, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources. This preferences page allows you to configure data sources and connections to relational and native XML databases. For a list of drivers that are available for the major database servers, see Download Links for Database Drivers (on page 52).

Connection Wizards Section

Create eXist-db XML connection

Click this link to open the dedicated Create eXist-db XML connection dialog box (on page 1439) that provides a quick way to create an eXist connection.

Data Sources Section

This section allows you to add and configure data sources.

Figure 12. Data Sources Preferences Panel
The following buttons are available at the bottom of the Data Sources panel:

+ New

Opens the Data Sources Drivers dialog box that allows you to configure a new database driver.

Figure 13. Data Sources Drivers Dialog Box

The following options are available in the Data Source Drivers dialog box:

- **Name** - The name of the new data source driver that will be used for creating connections to the database.
- **Type** - Selects the data source type from the supported driver types.
- **Help button** - Opens the User Manual at the list of the sections (on page 52) where the configuration of supported data sources is explained and the URLs for downloading the database drivers are specified.
- **Driver files (JAR, ZIP)** - Lists download links for database drivers (on page 52) that are necessary for accessing databases in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
- **Add Files** - Adds the driver class library.
- **Add Recursively** - Adds driver files recursively.
- **Remove** - Removes the selected driver class library from the list.
- **Detect** - Detects driver file candidates.
- **Stop** - Stops the detection of the driver candidates.
- **Driver class** - Specifies the driver class for the data source driver.
Edit
Opens the Data Sources Drivers dialog box for editing the selected driver. See above the specifications for the Data Sources Drivers dialog box. To edit a data source, there must be no connections using that data source driver.

Duplicate
Creates a copy of the selected data source.

Delete
Deletes the selected driver. To delete a data source, there must be no connections using that data source driver.

Connections Section
This section allows you to add and configure data source connections.

Figure 14. Connections Preferences Panel

The following buttons and options are available at the bottom of the Connections panel:

New
Opens the Connection dialog box that allows you to configure a new database connection.

Figure 15. Connection Dialog Box
The following options are available in the Connection dialog box:

- **Name** - The name of the new connection that will be used in transformation scenarios and validation scenarios.
- **Data Source** - Allows selecting a data source defined in the Data Source Drivers dialog box.

Depending upon the selected data source, you can set some of the following parameters in the Connection details area:

- **URL** - The URL for connecting to the database server.
- **User** - The user name for connecting to the database server.
- **Password** - The password of the specified user name.
- **Host** - The host address of the server.
- **Port** - The port where the server accepts the connection.
- **XML DB URI** - The database URI.
- **Database** - The initial database name.
- **Collection** - One of the available collections for the specified data source.
- **Environment home directory** - Specifies the home directory (only for a Berkeley database).
- **Verbosity** - Sets the verbosity level for output messages (only for a Berkeley database).
- **Use a secure HTTPS connection (SSL)** - Allows you to establish a secure connection to an eXist database through the SSL protocol.
Edit

Opens the Connection dialog box, allowing you to edit the selected connection. See above the specifications for the Connection dialog box.

Duplicate

Creates a copy of the selected connection.

Delete

Deletes the selected connection.

Move Up

Moves the selected connection up one row in the list.

Move Down

Moves the selected connection down one row in the list.

Limit the number of cells

For performance issues, you can set the maximum number of cells that will be displayed in the Table Explorer view (on page 1409) for a database table. Leave this field empty if you want the entire content of the table to be displayed. By default, this field is set to 2000. If a table that has more cells than the value set here is displayed in the Table Explorer view (on page 1409), a warning dialog box will inform you that the table is only partially shown.

Maximum number of children for container nodes

In Oracle XML, a container can hold millions of resources. If the node corresponding to such a container in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) would display all the contained resources at the same time, the performance of the view would be very slow. To prevent this, only a limited number of the contained resources is displayed as child nodes of the container node. You can navigate to other contained resources from the same container by using the Up and Down buttons in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408). This limited number is set in the field. The default value is 200 nodes.

Show warning when expanding other database schema

Controls if a warning message will be displayed when expanding another database schema and there are tables selected in the current expanded one. This applies to the Select database table dialog box in the Import Database Data wizard (on page 1488) and the Select database table section of the Convert DB Structure to XML Schema dialog box (on page 646).
Table Filters Preferences

The **Table Filters** preferences page allows you to choose the types of tables to be shown in the [Data Source Explorer](on page 1408). To open this preferences page, open the **Preferences** dialog box (on page 42) and go to **Data Sources > Table Filters**.

You can choose to display the following types of tables:

- Alias
- Global Temporary
- Local Temporary
- Synonym
- System Table
- Table
- View

Download Links for Database Drivers

For a list of major relational databases and the drivers that are available for them, see [https://www.oxygenxml.com/database_drivers.html](https://www.oxygenxml.com/database_drivers.html).

In addition, the following is a list of other popular databases along with instructions for getting the drivers that are necessary to access the databases in Oxygen XML Developer plugin:

- **Berkeley DB XML database** - Copy the *jar* files from the Berkeley database install directory into the Oxygen XML Developer plugin install directory as described in the [procedure for configuring a Berkeley DB data source](on page 1433).
- **IBM DB2 Pure XML database** - Go to the [IBM website](https://www.ibm.com) and in the **DB2 Clients and Development Tools** category select the **DB2 Driver for JDBC and SQLJ** download link. Fill out the download form and download the zip file. Unzip the zip file and use the *db2jcc.jar* and *db2jcc_license_cu.jar* files in Oxygen XML Developer plugin for [configuring a DB2 data source](on page 1414).
- **eXist database** - Copy the *jar* files from the eXist database install directory to the Oxygen XML Developer plugin install directory as described in the [procedure for configuring an eXist data source](on page 1439).
- **MarkLogic database** - Download the MarkLogic driver from [MarkLogic Community site](https://www.marklogic.com).
- **Microsoft SQL Server 2005 / 2008 database** - Download the appropriate MS SQL JDBC driver from the [Microsoft website](https://www.microsoft.com).
• **PostgreSQL 8.3 database** - Go to [http://jdbc.postgresql.org/download.html](http://jdbc.postgresql.org/download.html) and download the PostgreSQL 8.3 JDBC3 driver.

**DITA Preferences**

To access the DITA Preferences page, open the Preferences dialog box *on page 42* and go to DITA. This preferences page includes the following sections and options:

**DITA Open Toolkit section**

This section allows you to specify the default directory of the DITA Open Toolkit distribution (bundled with the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation) to be used for validating and publishing DITA content. You can select from the following:

**Built-in DITA-OT 3.x**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin comes bundled with DITA-OT 3.3.1. By default, all defined DITA transformation/validation scenarios will run with this version. This also provides access to DITA 1.3 features (including document templates). The default DITA OT 3.3.1 directory is: 

```
{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/dita/DITA-OT3.x.
```

**Custom**

Allows you to specify a custom directory for your DITA-OT distribution.

**Location**

You can either provide a new file path for the specific DITA OT that you want to use or select a previously used one from the drop-down list. You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables *on page 162* button, or the Browse button.

**DITA New Topics Preferences**

To access the DITA New Topics preferences page, open the Preferences dialog box *on page 42* and go to DITA > New topics. This preferences page includes the following options:

**Use the title to generate the file name**

This option (and its sub-options) pertain to the rules that will be used to generate file names in the . Select this option to use the text entered in the Title field to automatically generate a file name (the generated name can be seen in the Save as field). By default, the generated name will replace spaces with underscores (_), all illegal characters will...
be removed, and all upper case characters changed to lower case, but you can use the sub-options to change this.

**Replace spaces with**

If selected, the file name generation mechanism will replace spaces in the title with the character entered in this option.

**Lower case only**

If selected, the file name generation mechanism will only use lower case letters.

**Use camel case**

If selected, the file name generation mechanism will convert the title to a file name using the *camel case* convention where the first word starts with a lower case letter and all subsequent words begin with upper case (for example, `myFileName`).

**Upper case first letter**

Select this option if you want the file name generation mechanism to convert the title to a file name using the *camel case* convention but with an upper case letter for the first word (for example, `MyFileName`).

**Use the file name as the value of the root ID attribute**

Select this option to use the file name (as seen in the *Save as* field but without the file extension) as the value of the root `id` attribute for the new topic.

**DITA Publishing Preferences**

To access the DITA Publishing preferences page, open the *Preferences* dialog box *(on page 42)* and go to **DITA > Publishing**. You can also open this page by clicking the *Configure Publishing Templates Gallery* link in the *Templates* tab of the transformation scenario dialog box for *WebHelp Responsive* transformations.

You can use this preferences page to specify additional directories where custom publishing templates are stored. The templates stored in these directories will appear in the preview pane in the *Templates* tab of the transformation scenario dialog box, along with all the built-in templates.

**DITA Logging Preferences**

To access the DITA Logging preferences page, open the *Preferences* dialog box *(on page 42)* and go to **DITA > Logging**. This preferences page includes the following sections and options:
Show console output

Allows you to specify when to display the console output log in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. The following options are available:

- **When build fails** - Displays the console output log only if the build fails.
- **Always** - Displays the console output log, regardless of whether or not the build fails.

Show the following types of messages in a new tab

This section allows you to specify which types of messages will be displayed in separate tabs in the message panel at the bottom of the editor if a DITA transformation results in errors or warnings. You can choose whether or not to display the following types of messages:

- DITA-OT errors
- DITA-OT warnings
- DITA-OT info
- FOP errors
- FOP warnings
- FOP info
- XSLT problems

Document Type Association Preferences

Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses document type associations (on page 1621) to associate a document type (on page 830) with a set of functionality provided by a framework (on page 1622).

To configure the Document Type Association options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Document Type Association.

The following actions are available in this preferences page:

**Discover more frameworks by using add-ons update sites**

Click on this link to specify URLs for framework add-on update sites.

**Document Type Table**

This table presents the currently defined frameworks (on page 1622) (document type associations (on page 1621)), sorted by priority and alphabetically. Each edited document type has a set of association rules (on page 59) (used by the application to detect the proper document type association to use for an opened XML document).
Opens a **Document type** configuration dialog box ([on page 57](#)) that allows you to add a new framework.

**Edit**

Opens a **Document type** configuration dialog box ([on page 57](#)) that allows you to edit an existing framework.

**Note:** If you try to edit an existing framework when you do not have write permissions to its storage location, a dialog box will be shown asking if you want to extend it.

**Duplicate**

Opens a **Document type** configuration dialog box ([on page 57](#)) that allows you to duplicate the configuration of an existing framework. This will create a snapshot of the framework in its current form. It is merely a copy of the document type and will not evolve along with the base document type like the **Extend** action does.

**Extend**

Opens a **Document type** configuration dialog box ([on page 57](#)) that allows you to extend an existing framework. You can add or remove functionality starting from a base document type. All of these changes will be saved as a patch. When the base document type is modified and evolves (for example, from one application version to another) the extension will evolve along with the base document type, allowing it to use the new actions added in the base document type.

**Delete**

Deletes the selected framework (document type).

**Enable DTD/XML Schema processing in document type detection**

When this option is selected (default value), the matching process also examines the DTD/XML Schema associated with the document. For example, the fixed attributes declared in the DTD for the root element are also analyzed, if this is specified in the association rules. This is especially useful if you are writing DITA customizations. DITA topics and maps are also matched by looking for the DITAArchVersion attribute of the root element. This attribute is specified as default in the DTD and it is detected in the root element, helping Oxygen XML Developer plugin to correctly match the DITA customization.

**Only for local DTDs/XML Schemas**

When this option is selected (default value), only the local DTDs / XML Schemas will be processed.

**Enable DTD/XML Schema caching**
When this option is selected (default value), the associated DTDs or XML Schema are cached when parsed for the first time, improving performance when opening new documents with similar schema associations.

Locations Preferences

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to change the location where frameworks (on page 1622) (document types) are stored, and to specify additional framework directories. The Locations preferences page allows you to specify the main frameworks folder location. You can choose between the Default directory (\OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\frameworks) or a Custom specified directory. You can also change the current frameworks folder location value using the com.oxygenxml.editor.frameworks.url system property.

A list of additional frameworks directories can also be specified. The application will look in each of those folders for additional document type configurations to load. Use the Add, Edit and Delete buttons to manage the list of folders.

A document type configuration (framework) can be loaded from the following locations:

- **Internal preferences** - The document type configuration is stored in the application Internal preferences (on page 58).
- **Additional framework directories** - The document type configuration is loaded from one of the specified Additional frameworks directories list.
- **The frameworks folder** - The main folder containing framework configurations.

All loaded document type configurations are first sorted by priority, then by document type name and then by load location (in the exact order specified above). When an XML document is opened, the application chooses the first document type configuration from the sorted list that matches the specific document.

All loaded document type configurations are first sorted by priority, then by document type.

Document Type Configuration Dialog Box

The Document Type Configuration dialog box allows you to create or edit a framework (on page 1622) (document type). It is displayed when you use the New, Edit, Duplicate, or Extend buttons in the Document Type Association preferences page (on page 55) (open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Document Type Association).

Figure 16. Document Type Configuration Dialog Box
The configuration dialog box includes the following fields and sections:

**Name**

The name of the framework. This will be displayed as its name in the Document Type column in the Document Type Association preferences page (on page 55).

**Priority**

Depending on the priority level, Oxygen XML Developer plugin establishes the order in which the existing frameworks are evaluated to determine the type of a document you are opening. It can be one of the following: Lowest, Low, Normal, High, or Highest. You can set a higher priority for frameworks you want to be evaluated first.

Note: The built-in document types are set to Low priority by default. Frameworks that have the same priority are sorted alphabetically.

**Description**

The document type description displayed as a tool tip in the Document Type Association preferences page (on page 55).

**Storage**

The location where the document type is saved. If you select the External storage option, the document type is saved in the specified file with a mandatory framework extension, located in a subdirectory of the current frameworks directory. If you select the Internal storage option, the document type data is saved in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin internal options file.

**Initial edit mode**
Sets the default edit mode when you open a document for the first time: **Editor specific**, **Text**, **Grid** and **Design** (available only for the W3C XML Schema editor). If the **Editor specific** option is selected, the initial editing mode is determined based upon the editor type. You can find the mapping between editors and edit modes in the **Edit modes preferences page.** *(on page 94)* You can impose an initial mode for opening files that match the association rules of the document type. For example, if the files are usually edited in the **Author** mode you can set it in the **Initial edit mode** combo box.

**Note:** You can also customize the initial mode for a document type in the **Edit modes** preferences page. **Open the Preferences dialog box** *(on page 42)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes.**

**Configuration Tabs**

The bottom section of the dialog box includes various tabs where you can configure numerous options for the framework.

**Association Rules Tab**

To open the **Association Rules** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box, **open the Preferences dialog box** *(on page 42)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New, Edit, Duplicate, or Extend button** *(on page 55)*, and click on the **Association Rules** tab.

In the **Association rules** tab, you can perform the following actions:

**New**

Opens the **Document type rule** dialog box allowing you to create **association rules**.

**Edit**

Opens the **Document type rule** dialog box allowing you to edit the properties of the currently selected **association rule**.

**Delete**

Deletes the currently selected **association rules** from the list.

**Move Up**

Moves the selected **association rule** up one spot in the list.

**Move Down**

Moves the selected **association rule** down one spot in the list.

By combining multiple association rules you can instruct Oxygen XML Developer plugin to identify the type of a document. Oxygen XML Developer plugin identifies the type of a document when the document matches at least one of the **association rules**. This tab give you access to a **Document type**
rule dialog box that you can use to create association rules that activate on any document matching all the criteria defined in the dialog box.

To create a new association rule, click the New button at the bottom of the Association Rules tab, or to edit an existing rule, click the Edit button.

Figure 17. Document Type Rule Dialog Box

The Document type rule dialog box includes the following fields and options:

- **Namespace**
  Specifies the namespace of the root element from the association rules set (* (any) by default). If you want to apply the rule only when the root element has no namespace, leave this field empty (remove the ANY.VALUE string).

- **Root local name**
  Specifies the local name of the root element (* (any) by default).

- **File name**
  Specifies the name of the file (* (any) by default).

- **Public ID**
  Represents the Public ID of the matched document.

- **Attribute Local name**
  Specifies the local name of the attributes for the root element (* (any) by default).

- **Attribute Namespace**
  Specifies the namespace of the attributes for the root element (* (any) by default).

- **Attribute Value**
  Specifies the value of the attributes for the root element (* (any) by default).
Java class

Presents the name of the Java class that is used to determine if a document matches the rule. This Java class should implement the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.DocumentTypeCustomRuleMatcher` interface.

Tip: You can use wildcards (? and *) or editor variables (on page 162) in the Document Type Rule dialog box, and you can enter multiple values by separating them with a comma.

Schema Tab

In the Schema tab, you can specify a default schema for Oxygen XML Developer plugin to use if an XML document does not contain a schema declaration and no default validation scenario is associated with it.

To open the Schema tab of the Document type configuration dialog box, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Document Type Association, use the New, Edit, Duplicate, or Extend button (on page 55), and click on the Schema tab.

This tab includes the following options for defining a schema to be used if no schema is detected in the XML file:

- **Schema type**
  
  Use this drop-down list to select the type of schema.

- **Schema URI**
  
  You can specify the URI of the schema file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

  Tip: It is a good practice to store all resources in the framework directory and use the `${framework}` editor variable (on page 167) to reference them. This is a recommended approach to designing a self-contained document type that can be easily maintained and shared between multiple users.

Classpath Tab

The Classpath tab displays a list of folders and JAR (on page 1623) libraries that hold implementations for API extensions, implementations for custom Author mode operations, various resources (such as stylesheets), and framework (on page 1622) translation files. Oxygen XML Developer plugin loads the resources looking in the folders in the order they appear in the list.
To open the **Classpath** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box, open the **Preferences** dialog box (on page 42), go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New, Edit, Duplicate, or Extend button (on page 55)**, and click on the **Classpath** tab.

The **Classpath** tab includes the following actions:

**New**

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a resource to the table in the **Classpath** tab. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables (on page 162)** button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

**Tip:** The path can also contain wildcards (for example, `${framework}/lib/*.jar`).

**Edit**

Opens a dialog box that allows you to edit a resource in the **Classpath** tab. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables (on page 162)** button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

**Tip:** The path can also contain wildcards (for example, `${framework}/lib/*.jar`).

**Delete**

Deletes the currently selected resource from the list.

**Move Up**

Moves the selected resource up one spot in the list.

**Move Down**

Moves the selected resource down one spot in the list.

**Related Information:**

- **Extensions Tab (on page 84)**
- **Author Tab (on page 62)**
Author Tab

The Author tab is a container that holds information regarding the CSS file used to render a document in the Author mode, and regarding framework (on page 1622)-specific actions, menus, contextual menus, toolbars, and content completion list of proposals.

To open the Author tab of the Document type configuration dialog box, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Document Type Association, use the New, Edit, Duplicate, or Extend button (on page 55), and click on the Author tab.

The options that you configure in the Author tab are grouped in subtabs.

CSS Subtab

The CSS subtab contains the CSS files that Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses to render a document in the Author mode. In this subtab, you can set main and alternate CSS files. When you are editing a document in the Author mode, you can switch between these CSS files from the Styles drop-down menu on the Author Styles toolbar.

To open the CSS subtab, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Document Type Association, use the New, Edit, Duplicate, or Extend button (on page 55), click on the Author tab, and then the CSS subtab.

The following actions are available in the CSS subtab:

- **New**
  
  Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a CSS file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

- **Edit**
  
  Opens a dialog box that allows you to edit the current selection.

- **Delete**
  
  Deletes the currently selected CSS file.

- **Move Up**
  
  Moves the selected CSS file up in the list.

- **Move Down**
  
  Moves the selected CSS file down in the list.

Enable multiple selection of alternate CSSs
Allows users to apply multiple alternate styles, as layers, over the main CSS style. This option is selected by default for DITA document types.

If there are CSSs specified in the document then

You can choose between the following options for controlling how the CSS files that are set in this subtab will be handled if a CSS is specified in the document itself:

- **Ignore CSSs from the associated document type** - The CSS files set in this CSS subtab are overwritten by the CSS files specified in the document itself.
- **Merge them with CSSs from the associated document type** - The CSS files set in this CSS subtab are merged with the CSS files specified in the document itself.

**Actions Subtab**

The **Actions** subtab contains a sortable table that includes all the framework-specific actions. Each action has a unique ID, a name, a description, and a shortcut key.

To open the **Actions** subtab, open the **Preferences** dialog box (on page 42), go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New, Edit, Duplicate, or Extend** button (on page 55), click on the **Author** tab, and then the **Actions** subtab.

The following actions are available in this subtab:

- **New**

  Opens the **Action** dialog box (on page 64) that allows you to add an action.

- **Duplicate**

  Duplicates the currently selected action.

- **Edit**

  Opens the **Action** dialog box (on page 64) that allows you to edit the existing action.

- **Delete**

  Deletes the currently selected action.

**Author Action Dialog Box**

To edit an existing document type action or create a new one, open the **Preferences** dialog box (on page 42), go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New, Edit, Duplicate, or Extend** button (on page 55), click on the **Author** tab, and then the **Actions** subtab. At the bottom of this subtab, click **New** to create a new action, or **Edit** to modify an existing one.

Figure 18. Action Dialog Box
The following options are available in the Action dialog box:

**ID**
Specifies a unique action identifier.

**Name**
Specifies the name of the action. This name is displayed as a tooltip or as a menu item.

Tip: You can use the $\{i18n('key')\} editor variable (on page 168) to allow for multiple translations of the name.

**Menu access key**
In Windows, you can access menus by holding down Alt and pressing the keyboard key that corresponds to the Letter that is underlined in the name of the menu. Then, while still holding down Alt, you can select submenus and menu action the same way by pressing subsequent corresponding keys. You can use this option to specify the Letter in the name of the action that can be used to access the action.

**Description**
A description of the action. This description is displayed as a tooltip when hovering over the action.

Tip: You can use the $\{i18n('key')\} editor variable (on page 168) to allow for multiple translations of the description.

**How to translate frameworks link**
Use this link to see more information about Localizing Frameworks (on page 168).

**Large icon**

Allows you to select an image for the icon that Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses for the toolbar action.

**Tip:** A good practice is to store the image files inside the `framework` directory and use the `$variables` editor variable (on page 168) to make the image relative to the `framework` location. If the images are bundled in a jar archive (for instance, along with some Java operations implementation), it is convenient to reference the images by their relative path location in the `class-path`.

**Small icon**

Allows you to select an image for the icon that Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses for the contextual menu action.

**Shortcut key**

This field allows you to configure a shortcut key for the action that you are editing. The `+` character separates the keys.

**Enable platform-independent shortcut keys**

If this checkbox is selected, the shortcut that you specify in this field is platform-independent and the following modifiers are used:

- M1 represents the **Command** key on MacOS X, and the **Ctrl** key on other platforms.
- M2 represents the **Shift** key.
- M3 represents the **Option** key on MacOS X, and the **Alt** key on other platforms.
- M4 represents the **Ctrl** key on MacOS X, and is undefined on other platforms.

**Operations section**

In this section of the **Action** dialog box, you configure the functionality of the action that you are editing. An action has one or more operation modes. The evaluation of an XPath expression activates an operation mode. The first selected operation mode is activated when you trigger the action. The scope of the XPath expression must consist only of element nodes and attribute nodes of the edited document. Otherwise, the XPath expression does not return a match and does not fire the action. For more details see: Activate Multiple Functions for Actions using XPath Expressions (on page 67).

The following options are available in this section:
Activation XPath

An XPath 2.0 expression that applies to elements and attributes. For more details see: Activate Multiple Functions for Actions using XPath Expressions (on page 67).

Operation

Specifies the invoked operation.

Arguments

Specifies the arguments of the invoked operation. The Edit at the bottom of the table allows you to edit the arguments of the operation.

Operation priority

Increases or decreases the priority of an operation. The operations are invoked in the order of their priority. If multiple XPath expressions are true, the operation with the highest priority is invoked.

- Add - Adds an operation.
- Remove - Removes an operation.
- Duplicate - Duplicates an operation.

Evaluate activation XPath expressions even in read-only contexts

If this checkbox is selected, the action can be invoked even when the cursor is placed in a read-only location.

Activate Multiple Functions for Actions using XPath Expressions

An Author mode action can have multiple functions, each function invoking an Author mode operation with certain configured parameters. Each function of an action has an XPath 2.0 expression for activating it.

For each function of an action, the application will check if the XPath expression is fulfilled (when it returns a not empty nodes set or a true result). If it is fulfilled, the operation defined in the function will be executed.

The following special XPath extension functions are provided:

- oxy:allows-child-element() (on page 68) - Use this function to check whether or not an element is valid child element in the current context, according to the associated schema.
- oxy:allows-global-element() (on page 69) - Use this function to check whether or not an element is a valid global element for the current framework (on page 1622), according to the associated schema.
• **oxy:current-selected-element() (on page 71)** - Use this function to get the currently selected element.

• **oxy:selected-elements() (on page 71)** - Use this function to get the selected elements.

• **oxy:is-required-element() (on page 72)** - Use this function to check if the element returned by the given XPath expression is required (based on the rules declared in the schema).

• **oxy:platform() (on page 72)** - Use this function to get the current platform in cases where you want to enable or disable an action depending on the platform.

oxy:allows-child-element() Function

The **oxy:allows-child-element()** function allows you to check whether or not an element that matches the arguments of the function is valid as a child of the element at the current cursor position, according to the associated schema. It is evaluated at the cursor position and has the following signature:

oxy:allows-child-element($childName, ($attributeName, $defaultAttributeValue, $contains?)?)

The following parameters are supported:

**childName**

The name of the element that you want to check if it is valid in the current context. Its value is a string that supports the following forms:

• The child element with the specified local name that belongs to the default namespace.

  oxy:allows-child-element("para")

  The above example verifies if the *para* element (of the default namespace) is allowed in the current context.

• The child element with the local name specified by any namespace.

  oxy:allows-child-element("*:para")

  The above example verifies if the *para* element (of any namespace) is allowed in the current context.

• A prefix-qualified name of an element.

  oxy:allows-child-element("prefix:para")

  The prefix is resolved in the context of the element where the cursor is located. The function matches on the element with the *para* local name from the previous resolved namespace. If the prefix is not resolved to a namespace, the function returns a value of false.
• A specified namespace-URI-qualified name of an element.

```xml
oxy:allows-child-element("{namespaceURI}para")
```

The `namespaceURI` is the namespace of the element. The above example verifies if the `para` element (of the specified namespace) is allowed in the current context.

• Any element.

```xml
oxy:allows-child-element("*")
```

The above function verifies if any element is allowed in the current context.

**Note:** A common use case of `oxy:allows-child-element("*")` is in combination with the `attributeName` parameter.

**attributeName**

The attribute of an element that you want to check if it is valid in the current context. Its value is a string that supports the following forms:

• The attribute with the specified name from no namespace.

```xml
oxy:allows-child-element("", "class", " topic/topic ")
```

The above example verifies if an element with the `class` attribute and the default value of this attribute (that contains the `topic/topic` string) is allowed in the current context.

• The attribute with the local name specified by any namespace.

```xml
oxy:allows-child-element("", "*:localname", " topic/topic ")
```

• A qualified name of an attribute.

```xml
oxy:allows-child-element("", "prefix:localname", " topic/topic ")
```

The prefix is resolved in the context of the element where the cursor is located. If the prefix is not resolved to a namespace, the function returns a value of `false`.

**defaultAttributeValue**

A string that represents the default value of the attribute. Depending on the value of the next parameter, the default value of the attribute must either contain this value or be equal with it.

**contains**

An optional boolean. The default is `true`. For the `true` value, the default value of the attribute must contain the `defaultAttributeValue` parameter. If the value is `false`, the two values must be the same.
oxy:allows-global-element() Function

The oxy:allows-global-element() function allows you to check whether or not an element that matches the arguments of the function is valid for the current framework (on page 1622), according to the associated schema. It has the following signature:

oxy:allows-global-element($elementName, ($attributeName, $defaultAttributeValue, $contains?)?)

The following parameters are supported:

**elementName**

The name of the element that you want to check if it is valid in the current framework. Its value is a string that supports the following forms:

- The element with the specified local name that belongs to the default namespace.

  oxy:allows-global-element("para")

  The above example verifies if the para element (of the default namespace) is allowed in the current framework.

- The element with the local name specified by any namespace.

  oxy:allows-global-element("*:para")

  The above example verifies if the para element (of any namespace) is allowed in the current framework.

- A prefix-qualified name of an element.

  oxy:allows-global-element("prefix:para")

  The prefix is resolved in the context of the framework. The function matches on the element with the para local name from the previous resolved namespace. If the prefix is not resolved to a namespace, the function returns a value of false.

- A specified namespace-URI-qualified name of an element.

  oxy:allows-global-element("{namespaceURI}para")

  The namespaceURI is the namespace of the element. The above example verifies if the para element (of the specified namespace) is allowed in the current framework.

- Any element.

  oxy:allows-global-element("*")

  The above function verifies if any element is allowed in the current framework.
attributeName

The attribute of an element that you want to check if it is valid in the current framework. Its value is a string that supports the following forms:

- The attribute with the specified name from no namespace.

  \( \text{oxy:allows-global-element}("\star\star", \"class\", \" topic/topic \") \)

  The above example verifies if an element with the class attribute and the default value of this attribute (that contains the topic/topic string) is allowed in the current framework.

- The attribute with the local name specified by any namespace.

  \( \text{oxy:allows-global-element}("\star\star", \"*:localname\", \" topic/topic \") \)

  The prefix is resolved in the context of the framework. If the prefix is not resolved to a namespace, the function returns a value of false.

- A qualified name of an attribute.

  \( \text{oxy:allows-global-element}("\star\star", \"prefix:localname\", \" topic/topic \") \)

defaultAttributeValue

A string that represents the default value of the attribute. Depending on the value of the next parameter, the default value of the attribute must either contain this value or be equal with it.

contains

An optional boolean. The default is true. For the true value, the default value of the attribute must contain the defaultAttributeValue parameter. If the value is false, the two values must be the same.

oxy:current-selected-element() Function

This function returns the fully selected element. If no element is selected, the function returns an empty sequence.

Example: oxy:current-selected-element Function

\( \text{oxy:current-selected-element}()[\text{self::p}]/\text{b} \)

This example returns the b elements that are children of the currently selected p element.

oxy:selected-elements() Function

This function returns the selected elements from Author mode.
Example: oxy:selected-elements Function

oxy:selected-elements()[self::para][@audience="novice"]

This example would activate an action when at least one of the selected elements is a `<para>` element with the `@novice` attribute defined.

oxy:is-required-element() Function

This function checks if the element returned by the given XPath expression is required (based on the rules declared in the schema). It has only one argument, an XPath expression, and the XPath expression must be written in such a way that it returns a single element.

Example: oxy:is-required-element Function

oxy:is-required-element(.)

This example would check to see if the current element is required by the schema.

oxy:is-editable-element() Function

This function checks if the element returned by the given XPath expression is editable (content can be inserted in it), meaning both that the entire XML file is editable and that the current context where the element is placed is editable. For example, if the element is inside an `xi:included` section, it is not editable.

It only has one argument, an XPath expression, and the XPath expression must be written in such a way that it returns a single element.

Example: oxy:is-editable-element Function

oxy:is-editable-element(ancestor-or-self::table)

This example would return `true` if the cursor is placed inside a table and it is editable or `false` if it is not editable.

oxy:platform() Function

This function returns the current platform. You can use this if you want to enable or disable an action depending on the platform. The possible values are: `standalone`, `eclipse`, or `webapp`.

Example: oxy:platform Function

oxy:platform()="standalone"
This example would keep the action activated for the standalone distribution of Oxygen XML Developer plugin, but disable it for the Eclipse and Web Author distributions.

Localizing Frameworks

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports framework (on page 1622) localization (translating framework actions, buttons, and menu entries to various languages). This lets you develop and distribute a framework to users that speak other languages without changing the distributed framework.

To localize the content of a framework, create a translation.xml file that contains all the translation (key, value) mappings. The translation.xml has the following format:

```xml
<translation>
    <languageList>
        <language description="English" lang="en_US"/>
        <language description="German" lang="de_DE"/>
        <language description="French" lang="fr_FR"/>
    </languageList>
    <key value="list">
        <comment>List menu item name.</comment>
        <val lang="en_US">List</val>
        <val lang="de_DE">Liste</val>
        <val lang="fr_FR">Liste</val>
    </key>
</translation>
```

Oxygen XML Developer plugin matches the GUI language with the language set in the translation.xml file. If this language is not found, the first available language declared in the languagelist tag for the corresponding framework is used.

Add the directory where this file is located to the Classpath list corresponding to the edited document type.

After you create this file, you can use the keys defined in it to customize the name and description of the following:

- Actions
- Menu entries
- Contextual menus
- Toolbars
- Static CSS content
For example, if you want to localize the bold action, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Document Type Association. Use the New or Edit button to open the Document type configuration dialog box (on page 57), go to Author > Actions, and rename the bold action to $\{i18n(translation_key)\}. Actions with a name format other than $\{i18n(translation_key)\}$ are not localized. Translation_key corresponds to the key from the translation.xml file.

Now open the translation.xml file and edit the translation entry if it exists or create one if it does not exist. This example presents an entry in the translation.xml file:

```xml
<key value="translation_key">
    <comment>Bold action name.</comment>
    <val lang="en_US">Bold</val>
    <val lang="de_DE">Bold</val>
    <val lang="fr_FR">Bold</val>
</key>
```

To use a description from the translation.xml file in the Java code used by your custom framework, use the new `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess.getAuthorResourceBundle()` API method to request the associated value for a certain key. This allows all the dialog boxes that you present from your custom operations to have labels translated in multiple languages.

You can also reference a key directly in the CSS content:

```css
title:before{
    content:"$\{i18n(title.key)\} : ";
}
```

**Note:** You can enter any language you want in the `lang` tag and any number of keys.

The translation.xml file for the DocBook framework is located here: 

```
/OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/foundations/docbook/i18n/translation.xml.
```

In the Classpath list corresponding to the DocBook document type the following entry was added: $\{framework}/i18n/.

To see how the DocBook actions are defined to use these keys for their name and description, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Document Type Association > Author > Actions. If you look in the Java class `ro.sync.ecssextensions.docbook.table.SADocbookTableCustomizerDialog` available in the `oxygen-sample-framework` module of the Oxygen SDK Maven archetype, you can see how the new `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorResourceBundle` API is used to retrieve localized descriptions for various keys.
Menu Subtab

In the **Menu** subtab, you can configure which actions will appear in the framework-specific menu. The subtab is divided in two sections: **Available actions** and **Current actions**.

To open the **Menu** subtab, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Document Type Association, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button (on page 55), click on the **Author** tab, and then the **Menu** subtab.

The **Available actions** section presents a table that displays the actions defined in the Actions subtab, along with their icon, ID, and name. The **Current actions** section holds the actions that are displayed in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin menu. To add an action in this section as a sibling of the currently selected action, use the **Add as sibling** button. To add an image in this section as a child of the currently selected action use the **Add as child** button.

The following actions are available in the **Current actions** section:

- **Edit**
  - Edits an item.

- **Remove**
  - Removes an item.

- **Move Up**
  - Moves an item up.

- **Move Down**
  - Moves an item down.

Contextual Menu Subtab

In the **Contextual menu** subtab you configure what framework-specific action the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) proposes. The subtab is divided in two sections: **Available actions** and **Current actions**.

To open the **Contextual Menu** subtab, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Document Type Association, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button (on page 55), click on the **Author** tab, and then the **Contextual Menu** subtab.

Figure 19. Contextual Menu Subtab
The **Available actions** section presents a table that displays the actions defined in the **Actions** subtab, along with their icon, ID, and name. The **Current actions** section contains the actions that are displayed in the contextual menu for documents that belong to the edited framework.

The following actions are available in this subtab:

- **Add as sibling**
  
  Adds the selected action or submenu from the **Available actions** section to the **Current actions** section as a sibling of the selected action.

- **Add as child**

  Adds the selected action or submenu from the **Available actions** section to the **Current actions** section as a child of the selected action.

- **Edit**

  This option is available for container (submenu) items that are listed in the **Current actions** section. It opens a configuration dialog box that allows you to edit the selected container (submenu).

Figure 20. Menu Action Configuration Dialog Box

The following options are available in this dialog box:

**Name**

Specifies the name of the action. This name is displayed as a tooltip or as a menu item.
Tip: You can use the $i18n(key) editor variable (on page 168) to allow for multiple translations of the name.

Menu access key

In Windows, you can access menus by holding down Alt and pressing the keyboard key that corresponds to the Letter that is underlined in the name of the menu. Then, while still holding down Alt, you can select submenus and menu action the same way by pressing subsequent corresponding keys. You can use this option to specify the Letter in the name of the action that can be used to access the action.

Menu icon

Allows you to select an image for the icon that Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses for the container (submenu).

Promote items when in a table context

If this option is selected, when invoking the contextual menu from within a table, all the actions in this container (submenu) will be promoted to the main level in the contextual menu. Actions and submenus that are not promoted are still available in the Other actions submenu when invoking the contextual menu within a table.

× Remove

Removes the selected action or submenu from the Current actions section.

⇅ Move Up

Moves the selected item up in the list.

⇅ Move Down

Moves the selected item down in the list.

Toolbar Subtab

In the Toolbar subtab you configure what framework (on page 1622)-specific action the Oxygen XML Developer plugin toolbar holds. The subtab is divided in two sections: Available actions and Current actions.

To open the Toolbar subtab, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Document Type Association, use the New, Edit, Duplicate, or Extend button (on page 55), click on the Author tab, and then the Toolbar subtab.

The Available actions section presents a table that displays the actions defined in the Actions subtab, along with their icon, ID, and name. The Current actions section holds the actions that are displayed
in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin toolbar when you work with a document belonging to the edited
framework. To add an action in this section as a sibling of the currently selected action, use the
Add as sibling button. To add an action in this section as a child of the currently selected action
use the Add as child button.

The following actions are available in the Current actions section:

- **Edit**
  Edits an item.

- **Remove**
  Removes an item.

- **Move Up**
  Moves an item up.

- **Move Down**
  Moves an item down.

Content Completion Subtab

In the Content Completion subtab you configure what framework (on page 1622)-specific the Content
Completion Assistant (on page 1620) proposes. The subtab is divided in two sections: Available
actions and Current actions.

To open the Content Completion subtab, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to
Document Type Association, use the New, Edit, Duplicate, or Extend button (on page 55), click on
the Author tab, and then the Content Completion subtab.

Available and Current Actions

The Available actions section presents a table that displays the actions defined in the Actions subtab,
along with their icon, ID, and name. The Current actions section holds the actions that the Content
Completion Assistant proposes when you work with a document belonging to the edited framework.

To add an action in this section as a sibling of the currently selected action, use the Add as sibling
button. To add an action in this section as a child of the currently selected action use the Add as
child button.

The following actions are available in the Current actions section:

- **Edit**
  Edits an item.

- **Remove**
Removes an item.

**Move Up**

Moves an item up.

**Move Down**

Moves an item down.

Filter Table

The Filter section presents a table that allows you to add elements to be filtered from the Content Completion Assistant or from some specific helper views or menus. Use the **Add** button to add more filters to the table, the **Edit** button to modify an existing item in the table, or the **Remove** button to remove a filtered item. The **Add** and **Edit** buttons open a Remove item dialog box.

Figure 21. Remove Item Dialog Box

![Remove Item Dialog Box](image)

Use this dialog box to add or configure the elements that will be filtered:

**Item name**

Use this text field to enter the name of the element to be filtered. The drop-down list also includes a few special content completion actions that can be filtered (**<SPLIT>** and **<ENTER>**).

**Remove item from**

You can choose to filter the element from any of the following:

- **Content Completion Window** - The element will not appear in the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620).
- **Elements View** - The element will not appear in the Elements view (on page 224).
- **Element Insert Menus** - The element will not appear in the Append Child, Insert Before, or Insert After menus that are available in certain contextual menus (for example, the contextual menu of the Outline view (on page 217)).
- **Entities View** - The element will not appear in the Entities view (on page 225).
Templates Tab

The **Templates** tab specifies a list of directories where new document templates are located for this particular framework. These directories, along with the document templates that are saved inside them, will appear in the **New from templates wizard (on page 311)** inside the **Framework templates** category according to your framework and the directory path you specify in this tab.

To open the **Templates** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box, open the **Preferences dialog box (on page 42)**, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New, Edit, Duplicate, or Extend button (on page 55)**, and click on the **Templates** tab.

The **Templates** tab includes the following actions:

- **New**
  
  Opens a dialog box that allows you to specify the path to a directory that contains document templates for this framework. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables (on page 162)** button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

  **Tip:** The path can also contain wildcards. For example, using `${frameworkDir}/templates/*` would add all the template folders found inside the `templates` directory.

- **Edit**
  
  Opens a dialog box that allows you to edit the path of a directory that contains document templates for this framework. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables (on page 162)** button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

  **Tip:** The path can also contain wildcards. For example, using `${frameworkDir}/templates/*` would add all the template folders found inside the `templates` directory.

- **Delete**
  
  Deletes the currently selected template directory from the list.

- **Move Up**
  
  Moves the selected template directory up one spot in the list.

- **Move Down**
  
  Moves the selected template directory down one spot in the list.
Catalogs Tab

The **Catalogs** tab specifies a list of *XML Catalogs (on page 460)*, specifically for the edited *framework (on page 1622)*, that are added to list of catalogs that Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses to resolve resources.

To open the **Catalogs** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box, open the **Preferences** dialog box (on page 42), go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New, Edit, Duplicate, or Extend** button (on page 55), and click on the **Catalogs** tab.

You can perform the following actions:

**Add**

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a catalog to the list. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables (on page 162)** button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

**Edit**

Opens a dialog box that allows you to edit the path of an existing catalog.

**Delete**

Deletes the currently selected catalog from the list.

**Move Up**

Moves the selected catalog up one spot in the list.

**Move Down**

Moves the selected catalog down one spot in the list.

Transformation Tab

In the **Transformation** tab, you can configure the transformation scenarios associated with the particular *framework (on page 1622)* you are editing. These transformation scenarios are presented
in the **Configure Transformation Scenarios** dialog box *(on page 976)* when transforming a document and you can specify which scenarios will be used by default for a particular document type.

To open the **Transformation** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 42)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New, Edit, Duplicate, or Extend button** *(on page 55)*, and click on the **Transformation** tab.

The **Transformation** tab offers the following options:

**Default checkbox**

You can set one or more of the scenarios listed in this tab to be used as the default transformation scenario when another specific scenario is not specified. The scenarios that are set as default are rendered bold in the **Configure Transformation Scenarios** dialog box *(on page 976)*.

**New**

Opens the **New scenario** dialog box allowing you to create a new transformation scenario for the particular document type *(on page 890)*.

**Duplicate**

Allows you to duplicate the configuration of an existing transformation scenario. It opens the **Edit scenario** dialog box where you can configure the properties of the duplicated scenario *(on page 974)*.

**Edit**

Opens the **Edit scenario** dialog box allowing you to edit the properties of the currently selected transformation scenario *(on page 972)*.

**Delete**

Deletes the currently selected transformation scenario.

**Import scenarios**

Imports transformation scenarios.

**Export selected scenarios**

Export transformation scenarios.

**Move Up**

Moves the selection to the previous scenario.

**Move Down**

Moves the selection to the next scenario.
Validation Tab

In the Validation tab, you can configure the validation scenarios associated with the particular framework (on page 1622) you are editing. These validation scenarios are presented in the Configure Validation Scenarios dialog box when validating a document and you can specify which scenarios will be used by default for a particular document type.

**Note:** If a master file is associated with the current file, the validation scenarios defined in the master file, along with any Schematron schema defined in the default scenarios for that particular framework, are used for the validation. These take precedence over other types of validation units defined in the default scenarios for the particular framework. For more information on master files, see Master Files Support (on page 337) or Working with Modular XML Files in the Master Files Context (on page 463).

To open the Validation tab of the Document type configuration dialog box, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Document Type Association, use the New, Edit, Duplicate, or Extend button (on page 55), and click on the Validation tab.

The Validation tab offers the following options:

**Default checkbox**

You can set one or more of the scenarios listed in this tab to be used as the default validation scenario when another specific scenario is not specified in the validation process. The scenarios that are set as default are rendered bold in the Configure Validation Scenarios dialog box.

**New**

Opens the New scenario dialog box allowing you to create a new validation scenario (on page 433).

**Duplicate**

Allows you to duplicate the configuration of an existing validation scenario. It opens the Edit scenario dialog box where you can configure the properties of the duplicated scenario (on page 438).

**Edit**

Opens the Edit scenario dialog box allowing you to edit the properties of the currently selected validation scenario (on page 438).

**Delete**

Deletes the currently selected validation scenario.

**Import scenarios**

Imports validation scenarios.
**Export selected scenarios**

Export validation scenarios.

**Move Up**

Moves the selected scenario up one spot in the list.

**Move Down**

Moves the selected scenario down one spot in the list.

**Extensions Tab**

The Extensions tab specifies implementations of Java interfaces used to provide advanced functionality to the document type.

To open the Extensions tab of the Document type configuration dialog box, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Document Type Association, use the New, Edit, Duplicate, or Extend button (on page 55), and click on the Extensions tab.

Libraries containing the implementations must be present in the classpath (on page 61) of your document type. The Javadoc available at https://www.oxygenxml.com/InstData/Editor/SDK/javadoc/ contains details about how each API implementation functions.

**Editor Preferences**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin lets you configure the appearance of various components and features of the main editor. To access these options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor (or right-click in the editor window and choose Preferences).

The following options are available:

**Editor background**

Allows you to set the background color for text editors.

**Completion proposal background**

Allows you to set the background color of the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620).

**Completion proposal foreground**

Allows you to set the color of the text in the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620).

**Documentation window background**

Allows you to set the background color of the documentation of elements suggested by the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620).
Documentation window foreground

Allows you to set the color of the text for the documentation of elements suggested by the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620).

Line wrap

If selected, long lines are automatically wrapped in edited documents. The line wrap does not alter the document content since the application does not use new-line characters to break long lines.

Enable folding when opening a new editor

If selected (default value), the vertical stripe that holds the folding markers (on page 375) is displayed in Text mode.

Beep on operation finished

Oxygen XML Developer plugin emits a short beep when a validation, check well-formedness, or transformation action has ended.

Note: When the validation or the transformation process of a document is successful, the beep signal has a higher audio frequency, as opposed to when the validation fails, and the beep signal has a lower audio frequency. On the Windows platform, for other operations, the default system sound (Asterisk) is used. You can configure it by changing the sound theme.

Display quick-assist and quick-fix side hints

Displays the Quick Assist (on page 1625) icon ( öde ) and Quick Fix (on page 1626) icon ( çö ) in the line number stripe on the left side of the editor.

Highlight matching tag

If you place the cursor on a start or end tag, Oxygen XML Developer plugin highlights the corresponding member of the pair.

Tip: You can configure the colors and how various types of highlights are shown from the Eclipse Annotations preferences page (Window ('Eclipse' on Mac OSX) > Preferences > General > Editors > Text Editors > Annotations).

Minimum fold range

You can specify the minimum number of lines in a block for which the folding (on page 1622) support becomes active. If you modify this value, the change takes effect next time you open the editor.
Content Completion Preferences

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides a Content Completion Assistant that provides a list of available options at any point in a document and can auto-complete structures, elements, and attributes. To configure the Content Completion preferences, open the Preferences dialog box and go to Editor > Content Completion. These options control how the Content Completion Assistant works.

The following options are available:

Auto close the last opened tag
When selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically closes the last open tag when you type </.

Automatically rename/delete/comment matching tags
If you rename, delete, or comment out a start tag, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically renames, deletes, or comments out the matching end tag.

Note: If you select Toggle comment for multiple starting tags and the matching end tags are on the same line as other start tags, the end tags are not commented.

Enable content completion
Toggles the content completion feature on or off.

Close the inserted element
When you choose an entry from the Content Completion Assistant list of proposals, Oxygen XML Developer plugin inserts both start and end tags. The following additional options are available with regard to closing the element:

• If it has no matching tag - The end tag of the inserted element is automatically added only if it is not already present in the document.

• Add element content - Oxygen XML Developer plugin inserts the required elements specified in the DTD, XML Schema, or RELAX NG schema that is associated with the edited XML document.
  ◦ Add optional content - If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin inserts the optional elements specified in the DTD, XML Schema, or RELAX NG schema.
  ◦ Add first Choice particle - If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin inserts the first choice particle specified in the DTD, XML Schema, or RELAX NG schema.

Case sensitive search
When selected, the search in the Content Completion Assistant is case-sensitive when you type a character ('a' and 'A' are different characters).
Note: This option is ignored when the current language itself is not case-sensitive. For example, the case is ignored in the CSS language.

Position cursor between tags

When selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically moves the cursor between the start and end tag after inserting the element. This only applies to:

- Elements with only optional attributes or no attributes at all.
- Elements with required attributes, but only when the Insert the required attributes option (on page 87) is not selected.

Show all entities

Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays a list with all the internal and external entities declared in the current document when you type the start character of an entity reference (for example, &).

Insert the required attributes

Oxygen XML Developer plugin inserts automatically the required attributes taken from the DTD or XML Schema.

Insert the fixed attributes

If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically inserts any FIXED attributes from the DTD or XML Schema for an element inserted with the help of the Content Completion Assistant.

Show recently used items

When selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin remembers the last inserted items from the Content Completion Assistant window. The number of items to be remembered is limited by the Maximum number of recent items shown list box. These most frequently used items are displayed on the top of the content completion window and their icons are decorated with a small red square..

Maximum number of recent items shown

Specifies the limit for the number of recently used items presented at the top of the Content Completion Assistant window.

Learn attributes values

When selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin learns the attribute values used in a document.

Learn on open document

Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically learns the document structure when the document is opened.
Learn words (Dynamic Abbreviations, available on Ctrl+Space (Command+Space on OS X))

When selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin learns the typed words and makes them available in a content completion fashion by pressing Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X) on your keyboard;

Note: For the words to be learned, they need to be separated by space characters.

Activation delay of the proposals window (ms)

Delay in milliseconds from last key press until the Content Completion Assistant is displayed.

Annotations Preferences

Certain types of schemas (XML Schema, DTDs, Relax NG) can include annotations that document the various elements and attributes that they define. Oxygen XML Developer plugin can display these annotations when offering content completion suggestions. To configure the Annotations preferences, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Content Completion > Annotations.

The following options are available:

Show annotations in Content Completion Assistant

If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the schema annotations of an element, attribute, or attribute value currently selected in the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) proposals list.

Show annotations in tooltip

If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the annotation of elements and attributes as a tooltip when you hover over them with the cursor in the editing area or in the Elements view (on page 224). If not selected, tooltips are disabled in all modes.

Show annotation in HTML format, if possible

This option allows you to view the annotations associated with an element or attribute in HTML format. It is available when editing XML documents that have associated an XML Schema or Relax NG schema. If this option is not selected, the annotations are converted and displayed as plain text.

Prefer DTD comments that start with "doc:" as annotations

To address the lack of dedicated annotation support in DTD documents, Oxygen XML Developer plugin recommends prefixing with the doc: particle all comments intended to be shown to the developer who writes an XML validated against a DTD schema.
If this option is selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the following mechanism to collect annotations:

- If at least one `doc: comment` is found in the entire DTD, only comments of this type are displayed as annotations.
- If no `doc: comment` is found in the entire DTD, all comments are considered annotations and displayed as such.

If not selected, all comments, regardless of their type, are considered annotations and displayed as such.

**Use all Relax NG annotations as documentation**

If selected, any element outside the Relax NG namespace, that is http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0, is considered annotation and is displayed in the annotation window next to the `Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620)` window and in the `Model view (on page 223)`. When this option is not selected, only elements from the Relax NG annotations namespace, that is http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0 are considered annotations.

**Related Information:**

- Schema Annotations in Text Mode (on page 381)

**XPath Preferences**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides content-completion support for XPath expressions. To configure the options for the content completion in XPath expressions, open the `Preferences dialog box (on page 42)` and go to `Editor > Content Completion > XPath`.

The following options are available:

- **Enable content completion for XPath expressions** - Enables the `Content Completion Assistant in XPath expressions (on page 527)` that you enter in the `match`, `select`, and `test` XSL attributes.
  - **Include XPath functions** - When this option is selected, XPath functions are included in the content completion suggestions.
  - **Include XSLT functions** - When this option is selected, XSLT functions are included in the content completion suggestions.
  - **Include axes** - When this option is selected, XSLT axes are included in the content completion suggestions.
Show signatures of XSLT / XPath functions - Makes the editor indicate the signature of the XPath function located at the cursor position in a tooltip. See the XPath Tooltip Helper (on page 530) section for more information.

XSD Preferences

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides content completion assistance when you are writing XML Schema (XSD). To configure XSD preferences, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Content Completion > XSD. The option in this preferences page allows you to define additional elements to be suggested by the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) in xs:appinfo elements (in addition to the elements defined in the XML Schema).

The following option is available:

When in "xs:appinfo" context, also include elements declared in the schema

You can choose between the following:

- **None** - The Content Completion Assistant offers only the XML Schema schema information.
- **ISO Schematron** - The Content Completion Assistant also includes ISO Schematron elements in xs:appinfo.
- **Schematron 1.5** - The Content Completion Assistant also includes Schematron 1.5 elements in xs:appinfo.
- **Other** - The Content Completion Assistant also includes elements from an XML Schema identified by a URL in xs:appinfo elements.

XSLT Preferences

XSLT stylesheets are often used to create output in XHTML or XSL-FO. In addition to suggesting content completion options for XSLT stylesheet elements, Oxygen XML Developer plugin can suggest elements from these vocabularies. To configure the XSLT content completion options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Content Completion > XSLT.

The following options are available:

Include elements declared in the schema section

This section includes options with regard to detecting elements from the declared schema.

Automatically detect HTML or Formatting Objects

Detects if the output being generated is HTML or FO and provides content completion for those vocabularies. Oxygen XML Developer plugin analyzes
the namespaces declared in the root element to find an appropriate schema.

If the detection fails, Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses one of the following options:

- **None** - The Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) suggests only XSLT elements.
- **HTML** - The Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) includes HTML elements, including HTML5 elements (such as video, canvas, etc.).
- **Formatting objects** - The Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) includes Formatting Objects (XSL-FO) elements as substitutes for xsi:element.
- **Custom schema** - If you want content completion hints for another output vocabulary, you can use this option to specify the path to the schema for that vocabulary. The supported schema types are DTD, XML Schema, RNG schema, or NVDL schema for inserting elements from the target language of the stylesheet.

**Documentation schema section**

This section specifies an additional schema that will be used for documenting XSL stylesheets. You can choose between the following:

- **Built-in schema** - Uses the built-in schema for documentation.
- **Custom schema** - Allows you to specify a custom schema for documentation. The supported schema types are XSD, RNG, RNC, DTD, and NVDL.

**Custom Validation Engines Preferences**

As the name implies, the Custom Validation Engines preferences page displays the list of custom validation engines that can be associated to a particular editor and used for validating documents. To access this page, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Document Validation > Custom Validation Engines.

If you want to add a new custom validation tool or edit the properties of an existing one, you can use the Custom Validator dialog box displayed by pressing the + New or Edit button.

Figure 22. Custom Validator Dialog Box
The **Custom Validator** dialog box allows you to configure the following parameters:

**Name**

Name of the custom validation engine that will be displayed in the **Validation** toolbar drop-down menu.

**Executable path**

Path to the executable file of the custom validation tool. You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the Browse button.

**Working directory**

The working directory of the custom validation tool. You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the Browse button.

**Associated editors**

The editors that can perform validation with the external tool (XML editor, XSL editor, XSD editor, etc.)

**Command-line arguments for detected schemas**

Command-line arguments used in the commands that validate the currently edited file against various types of schema (XML Schema, Relax NG full syntax, Relax NG compact...
syntax, NVDL, Schematron, DTD, etc.) The arguments can include any custom switch (such as -rng) and the following editor variables (on page 162):

- `${cf}` - Current file as file path, that is the absolute file path of the current edited document.
- `${currentFileURL}` - Current file as URL, that is the absolute file path of the current edited document represented as URL.
- `${ds}` - The path of the detected schema as a local file path for the current validated XML document.
- `${dsu}` - The path of the detected schema as a URL for the current validated XML document.

Related Information:

- Editor Variables (on page 162)

Increasing the Stack Size for Validation Engines

To prevent the appearance of a StackOverflowException error, use one of the following methods:

- Use the `com.oxygenxml.stack.size.validation.threads` property to increase the size of the stack for validation engines. The value of this property is specified in bytes. For example, to set a value of one megabyte specify 1x1024x1024=1048576.
- Increase the value of the `-Xss` parameter.

Note: Increasing the value of the `-Xss` parameter affects all the threads of the application.

Document Validation Preferences

To configure document validation options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Document Validation. This page contains preferences for configuring how a document is checked for both well-formedness and validation errors.

The following options are available:

**Maximum number of validation highlights**

If a validation generates more errors than the number specified in this option, only the errors up to this number are highlighted in the editor panel and on the stripe that is displayed at the right side of the editor panel. This option applies to both automatic validation (on page 423) and manual validation (on page 423).
Clear validation markers on close

If this option is selected, all the error markers added in the Problems view for that document are removed when the Oxygen XML Developer plugin plugin is closed.

Enable automatic validation

This causes the validation to be automatically executed in the background as the document is modified in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Delay after the last key event (s)

The period of keyboard inactivity before starting a new validation (in seconds).

Edit Modes Preferences

Oxygen XML Developer plugin lets you configure which edit mode (on page 184) a file is opened in the first time it is opened. This setting only applies the first time a file is opened. The current editing mode of each file is saved when the file is closed and restored the next time it is opened. To configure the options for editing modes, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Edit Modes.

Allow Document Type specific edit mode setting to override the general mode setting

If selected, the initial edit mode setting set in the Document Type configuration dialog box (on page 57) overrides the general edit mode setting from the table below.

Select the initial edit mode (page) for each editor

This table specifies the default editing mode that will be opened for each type of document when the Allow Document Type specific edit mode setting to override the general mode setting option is not selected. Use the Edit button to change the initial edit mode for each type of document (editor). The initial edit mode can be one of the following:

- Text (on page 184)
- Grid (on page 251)
- Design (available only for the XSD editor).
Grid Preferences

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides a Grid view (on page 251) of an XML document. To configure the Grid options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Edit modes > Grid.

The following options are available:

**Compact representation**

If selected, the compact representation of the grid is used: a child element is displayed beside the parent element. In the non-compact representation, a child element is nested below the parent.

**Format and indent when passing from grid to text or on save**

If selected, the content of the document is formatted and indented (on page 395) each time you switch from the Grid view to the Text view.

**Default column width (characters)**

Sets the default width (in characters) of a table column of the grid. A column may contain the following:

- Element names
- Element text content
- Attribute names
- Attribute values

If the total width of the grid structure is too large you can resize any column by dragging the column margins with the mouse pointer, but the change is not persistent. To make it persistent, set the new column width with this option.

**Active cell color**
Allows you to set the background color for the active cell (on page 1619) of the grid. The keyboard input always goes to the active cell and the selection always contains it.

**Selection color**

Allows you to set the background color for the selected cells of the grid except the active cell (on page 1619).

**Border color**

Allows you to set the color used for the lines that separate the grid cells.

**Background color**

Allows you to set the background color of grid cells that are not selected.

**Foreground color**

Allows you to set the text color of the information displayed in the grid cells.

**Row header colors**

- **Background color**
  
  Allows you to set the background color of row headers that are not selected.

- **Active cell color**
  
  Allows you to set the background color of the row header cell that is currently active.

- **Selection color**
  
  Allows you to set the background color of the header cells corresponding to the currently selected rows.

**Column header colors**

The column headers are painted with two color gradients, one for the upper 1/3 part of the header and the other for the lower 2/3 part. The start and end colors of the first gradient are set with the first two color buttons. The start and end colors of the second gradient are set with the last two color buttons.

- **Background color**
  
  Allows you to set the background color of column headers that are not selected.

- **Active cell color**
  
  Allows you to set the background color of the column header cell that is currently active.

- **Selection color**
 Allows you to set the background color of the header cells corresponding to the currently selected columns.

**Schema Design Preferences**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides a graphical schema design editor (on page 261) to make editing XML Schema easier. To configure the Schema Design options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Edit modes > Schema Design.

The following options are available in the Schema Design preferences page:

**Show annotation in the diagram**

When selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the content of xs:documentation elements in schema diagrams.

**When trying to edit components from another schema**

The schema diagram editor will combine schemas imported by the current schema file into a single schema diagram. You can choose what happens if you try to edit a component from an imported schema. The options are:

- **Always go to its definition** - Oxygen XML Developer plugin opens the imported schema file so that you can edit it.
- **Never go to its definition** - The imported schema file is not opened and the component cannot be edited in place.
- **Always ask** - Oxygen XML Developer plugin asks if you want to open the imported schema file.

**Properties Preferences**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin lets you control which properties to display for XML Schema components in the XML Schema Design view (on page 261). To configure the schema design properties displayed, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Edit modes > Schema Design > Properties.

This preferences page contains the following:

**Show additional properties in the diagram**

If this option is selected, the properties selected in the property table are shown in the XML Schema Design mode. This option is selected by default.

**Properties Table**

- **Show**
Use this column in the table to select the properties that you want to be displayed in the XML Schema Design mode.

**Only if specified**

Use this column to select if you want the property to be displayed only if it is defined in the schema.

---

**Text Diagram Preferences**

For certain XML languages, Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides a diagram view as part of the text mode editor. To configure the Diagram preferences, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Edit modes / Pages > Text Diagram.

The following options are available in this preference page:

**Show Full Model XML Schema diagram**

When this option is selected, the Text mode editor for XML Schemas includes a split screen view that shows a diagram of the schema structure. This is useful for seeing the effects of schema changes you make. For editing a schema using a diagram instead of text, use the schema Design view (on page 261).

**Note:** When handling very large schemas, displaying the schema diagram might affect the performance of your system. In such cases, disabling the schema diagram view improves the speed of navigation through the edited schema.

**Enable Relax NG diagram and related views**

Enables the Relax NG schema diagram and synchronization with the related views (Attributes (on page 221), Model (on page 223), Elements (on page 224), Outline (on page 710)).

**Show Relax NG diagram**

Displays the Relax NG schema diagram in the split screen views (Full Model View (on page 703) and Logical Model View (on page 704)).

**Enable NVDL diagram and related views**

Enables the NVDL schema diagram and synchronization with the related views (Attributes (on page 221), Model (on page 223), Elements (on page 224), Outline (on page 727)).

**Show NVDL diagram**

Displays the NVDL schema diagram in the split screen views (Full Model View (on page 722) and Logical Model View (on page 723)).

---

**Location relative to editor**
Allows you to specify the location of the schema diagram panel relative to the diagram Text editor.

**Show/Hide Annotations link**

Use this link to navigate to the Schema Design preferences page (on page 97) where you can choose to show or hide annotations in schema diagrams.

**Format Preferences**

This preferences page contains various formatting options that influence editing and formatting in the Text mode.

**Note:** These settings apply to the formatting of source documents. The formatting of output documents is determined by the transformation scenarios that create them (on page 857).

To configure the Format options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Format.

The following options are available:

**Detect indent on open**

If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin detects how a document is indented when it is opened. Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses a heuristic method of detection by computing a weighted average indent value from the initial document content. You can deselect this setting if the detected value does not work for your particular case and you want to use a fixed-size indent for all the edited documents. If this option is selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin detects the following:

- When TAB characters are used to indent content, the size of the TAB characters is used for the indent size.
- Otherwise, the detected size of SPACE characters is used for the indent size.

**Tip:** If you want to minimize the formatting differences created by the Format and Indent operation in a document edited in the Text edited mode, make sure that both the Detect indent on open and Detect line width on open (on page 100) options are selected.

**Use zero-indent, if detected**

By default, if no indent was detected in the document, the fixed-size indent is used. Select this option if all of your documents have no indentation and you want to keep them that way.

**Indent with tabs**
If selected, indents are created using TAB characters. If unchecked, lines are indented using space characters. Selecting this option automatically disables the Detect indent on open (on page 99) option.

**Indent size**

The meaning of this setting depends on the following:

- If the Detect indent on open option (on page 99) is selected and TAB characters are detected at the beginning of the line, the indent size is the width of a TAB character. Otherwise, the indent size value is ignored and Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the number of detected SPACE characters.
- If the Indent with tabs option (on page 99) is selected, the indent size is the width of a TAB character.
- If neither of these options are selected, the indent size is the number of SPACE characters used for indenting the text lines.

For additional information about changing the indent size, see Setting an Indent Size to Zero (on page 399).

For information about when this setting is used, see Where Indent Size and Line Width Settings are Used in Oxygen XML Developer plugin (on page 101).

**Indent on enter**

If selected, when you press Enter to insert a line break in the Text editing mode, an indentation will be added to the new line.

**Enable smart enter**

If selected, when you press the Enter key between a start and an end XML tag in the Text editing mode, the cursor is placed in an indented position on the empty line formed between the start and end tag.

**Format and indent the document on open**

If selected, an XML document is formatted and indented before opening it in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

**Note:** Some specialized types of XML documents do not benefit from this feature, including Relax NG, XSD, XSL, and Ant. However, the feature is available for some non-XML types of documents, such as CSS and JSON.

**Detect line width on open**

If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically detects the line width when the document is opened.
Hard line wrap (Limit to "Line width - Format and Indent")

If selected, when typing content in the Text editing mode and the maximum line width is reached, a line break is automatically inserted.

Line width - Format and Indent

Defines the number of characters after which the Format and Indent (pretty-print) action performs hard line-wrapping. For example, if set to 100, after a Format and Indent action, the longest line will have a maximum of 100 characters. This setting is also used when saving XML content edited in the Author editing mode.

Note: To avoid having an indent that is longer than the line width setting and without having sufficient space available for the text content, the indent limit is actually set at half the value of the Line width - Format and Indent setting. The remaining space is reserved for text.

For information about when this setting is used, see Where Indent Size and Line Width Settings are Used in Oxygen XML Editor (on page 101).

Clear undo buffer before Format and Indent

The Format and Indent operation can be undone, but if used intensively, a considerable amount of the memory allocated for Oxygen XML Developer plugin will be used for storing the undo states. If this option is selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin empties the undo buffer before doing a Format and Indent operation. This means you will not be able to undo any changes you made before the format and indent operation. Select this option if you encounter out of memory problems (OutOfMemoryError) when performing the Format and Indent operation.

Where Indent Size and Line Width Settings are Used in Oxygen XML Developer plugin

The values set in the Indent Size and Line Width - Format and Indent options are used in various places in the application, including the following:

- When the Format and Indent action is used in the Text editing mode.
- When you press Enter to break a line in the Text editing mode.
- When the Hard line wrap (Limit to "Line width - Format and Indent") option is selected and the maximum line width is reached while editing in the Text mode.

For more information about the formatting options offered by Oxygen XML Developer plugin, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/1plmdN0Cfso
CSS Preferences

Oxygen XML Developer plugin can format and indent your CSS files. To configure the CSS formatting options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Format > CSS.

The following options control how your CSS files are formatted and indented:

- **Class body on new line**
  
  If selected, the class body (including the curly brackets) is placed on a new line. This option is not selected by default.

- **Indent class content**
  
  When selected (default state), the class content is indented.

- **Add space before the value of a CSS property**
  
  When selected (default state), whitespaces are added between the : (colon) and the value of a style property.

- **Add new line between classes**
  
  If selected, an empty line is added between two classes. This option is not selected by default.

- **Preserve empty lines**
  
  When selected (default state), the empty lines from the CSS content are preserved.

- **Allow formatting embedded CSS**
  
  When selected (default state), CSS content that is embedded in XML is also formatted when the XML content is formatted.

JavaScript Preferences

To configure the JavaScript format options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Format > JavaScript.

The following options control the behavior of the Format and Indent action:

- **Start curly brace on new line** - Opening curly braces start on a new line.
- **Preserve empty lines** - Empty lines in the JavaScript code are preserved. This option is selected by default.
- **Allow formatting embedded JavaScript** - Applied only to XHTML documents, this option allows Oxygen XML Developer plugin to format embedded JavaScript code, taking precedence over the Schema aware format and indent (on page 105) option. This option is selected by default.
XML Preferences

To configure the XML Formatting options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Format > XML.

The following options are available:

**Format and Indent Section**

This section includes the following drop-down boxes:

- **Preserve empty lines**
  
  The Format and Indent operation preserves all empty lines found in the document.

- **Preserve text as it is**
  
  The Format and Indent operation preserves text content as it is, without removing or adding any white space.

- **Preserve line breaks in attributes**
  
  Line breaks found in attribute values are preserved.

  ![Note:](image) When this option is selected, the Break long attributes option (on page 103) is automatically disabled.

- **Break long attributes**

  The Format and Indent operation breaks long attribute values.

- **Indent inline elements**

  The inline elements are indented on separate lines if they are preceded by white spaces and they follow another element start or end tag. For example:

  Original XML:

  ```xml
  <root>
  text <parent> <child></child> </parent>
  </root>
  ```

  Indent inline elements selected:

  ```xml
  <root> text <parent>
  <child/>
  </parent>
  </root>
  ```
Indent inline elements not selected:

```
<root> text <parent> <child/> </parent> </root>
```

**Expand empty elements**

If not selected (default), the **Format and Indent** operation results in an empty XML element being serialized in a compact form (`<a atr1="v1"/>`). If selected, the same operation results in empty XML elements being serialized in expanded form (for example, `<a atr1="v1"/></a>`).

**Note:** When using the **Format and Indent** operation in **Text** mode, if the **Schema aware format and indent option (on page 105)** is enabled, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will use information from the associated schema and avoid expanding tags for elements that are defined as empty in the schema.

**Sort attributes**

The **Format and Indent** operation sorts the attributes of an element lexicographically.

**Add space before slash in empty elements**

Inserts a space character before the trailing `/` and `>` of empty elements.

**Break line before an attribute name**

The **Format and Indent** operation breaks the line before the attribute name.

**Element Spacing Section**

This section controls how the application handles whitespaces found in XML content. You can **Add** or **Remove** element names or simplified XPath expressions in the various tabs.

The XPath expressions can accept multiple attribute conditions and inside each condition you can use **AND/OR** boolean operators and parentheses to override the priority.

You can use one or more of the following attribute conditions (default attribute values are not taken into account):

- `element[@attr]` - Matches all instances of the specified element that include the specified attribute.
- `element[not(@attr)]` - Matches all instances of the specified element that do not include the specified attribute.
- `element[@attr = "value"]` - Matches all instances of the specified element that include the specified attribute with the given value.
• **element [@attr != "value"]** - Matches all instances of the specified element that include the specified attribute and its value is different than the one given.

**Example:** The following is an example of how you could use multiple boolean operators and parentheses inside an attribute condition:

```
*[a and b or c and d]
*[a and (b or c) and d]
```

The following are just examples of how simplified XPath expressions might look like:

- `elementName`
- `//elementName`
- `/elementName1/elementName2/elementName3`
- `//xs:localName` **Note:** The namespace prefixes (such as `xs`) are treated as part of the element name without taking its binding to a namespace into account.

- `//xs:documentation[@lang="en"]`

The tabs are as follows:

**Preserve space**

List of elements for which the **Format and Indent** operation preserves the whitespaces (such as blanks, tabs, and newlines).

**Default space**

List of elements for which the content is normalized (multiple contiguous whitespaces are replaced by a single space), before applying the **Format and Indent** operation.

**Mixed content**

The elements from this list are treated as mixed content when applying the **Format and Indent** operation. The lines are split only when whitespaces are encountered.

**Line break**

List of elements for which line breaks will be inserted, regardless of their content. You can choose to break the line **before** the element, **after**, or both.

**Schema aware format and indent**

The **Format and Indent** operation takes the schema information into account with regard to the **space preserve**, **mixed**, or **element only** properties of an element.

**Indent Section**

Includes the following options:
Indent (when typing) in preserve space elements

Normally, the Preserve space elements (identified by the xml:space attribute set to preserve or by their presence in the Preserve space tab of the Element Spacing list (on page 104)) are ignored by the Format and Indent operation. When this option is selected and you edit one of these elements, its content is formatted.

Indent on paste - sections with number of lines less than 300

When you paste a chunk of text that has fewer than 300 lines, the inserted content is indented. To keep the original indent style of the document you copy content from, deselect this option.

Whitespaces Preferences

When Oxygen XML Developer plugin formats and indents XML documents, a whitespace normalization process is applied, thus replacing whitespace sequences with single space characters. Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to configure which Unicode characters are treated as spaces during the normalization process.

To configure the Whitespace preferences, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Format > XML > Whitespaces.

This table lists the Unicode whitespace characters. Select any that you want to have treated as whitespace when formatting and indenting an XML document.

The whitespaces are normalized when the Format and Indent action is applied on an XML document.

Note: The whitespace normalization process replaces any sequence of characters declared as whitespaces in the Whitespaces table with a single space character (U+0020). If you want to be sure that a certain whitespace character will not be removed in the normalization process, deselect it in the Whitespaces table.

Important: The characters with the codes U+0009 (TAB), U+000A (LF), U+000D (CR) and U+0020 (SPACE) are always considered to be whitespace characters and cannot be deselected.

XPath Preferences

To configure the XPath Formatting options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Format > XPath.

The following option is available:

Format XPath code embedded in XSLT, XSD and Schematron files
If selected, the **Format and Indent** action applied on an XSD, XSLT, or Schematron document will perform an XPath-specific formatting on the values of the attributes that accept XPath expressions.

**Note:** For XSLT documents, the formatting is not applied to *attribute value templates*.

### XQuery Preferences

To configure the **XQuery** Formatting options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 42)* and go to **Editor > Format > XQuery**.

The following options are available:

- **Preserve line breaks** - All initial line breaks are preserved.
- **Break line before an attribute name** - Each attribute of an XML element is written on a new line and properly indented.

### Mark Occurrences Preferences

This preferences page specifies which types of files will have the **Highlight IDs Occurrences** *(on page 402)* feature activated. To configure these options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 42)* and go to **Editor > Mark Occurrences**:

The following options are available in this preferences page:

**Highlight component occurrences in the current file for:**

- **XML files** - Activates the **Highlight IDs Occurrences** *(on page 402)* feature in XML files.
- **XSLT files** - Activates the **Highlight Component Occurrences** *(on page 543)* feature in XSLT files.
- **XML Schema files** - Activates the **Highlight Component Occurrences** *(on page 622)* feature in XSD files.
- **WSDL files** - Activates the **Highlight Component Occurrences** *(on page 622)* feature in WSDL files.
- **RNG files** - Activates the highlight component occurrences feature in RNG files.
- **Schematron files** - Activates the **Highlight Component Occurrences** *(on page 780)* feature in Schematron files.
Open/Save Preferences

Oxygen XML Developer plugin lets you control how files are opened and saved. To configure the options for opening and saving documents, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Open/Save.

The following options are available:

**Open section**

Format document when longest line exceeds

Oxygen XML Developer plugin will create line breaks if the characters in a line exceed the specified value. You can choose one of the following:

- Always format
- Never format
- Always ask

**Save section**

Check errors on save

If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin runs a validation that checks your document for errors before saving it.

Save all files before transformation or validation

Saves all opened files before validating or transforming an XML document. This ensures that any dependencies are resolved when modifying the XML document and its XML Schema.

**Performance section**

Clear undo buffer on save

If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin clears its undo buffer when you save a document. Thus, modifications made prior to saving the document cannot be undone. Select this option if you frequently encounter out of memory errors when editing large documents.

Spell Check Preferences

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for spell checking in the Text (on page 184) editing mode. To configure the Spell Check options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Spell Check.

The following options are available:
Automatic spell check

This option is not selected by default. When selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically checks the spelling as you type and highlights misspelled words in the document.

Select editors

You can select which editors (and therefore which file types) will automatically be spell checked. File types (such as CSS and DTD), in which automatic spell checking is not usually helpful, are excluded by default.

Language options section

This section includes the following language options:

Default language

The default language list allows you to choose the language used by the spell check engine when the language is not specified in the source file.

You can add additional dictionaries to the spell check engines (on page 342).

Use "lang" and "xml:lang" attributes

When this option is selected, the contents of an element with one of the lang or xml:lang attributes is checked in that language. Choose between the following two options for instances when these attributes are missing:

- Use the default language - If the lang and xml:lang attributes are missing, the selection in the Default language list (on page 109) is used.
- Do not check - If the lang and xml:lang attributes are missing, the element is not checked.

XML spell checking in section

You can choose to check the spelling inside the following XML items:

- Comments
- Attribute values
- Text
- CDATA

Options section

This section includes the following other options:
Check capitalization

When selected, the spell checker reports detected capitalization errors.

**Note:** This option will not have any effect on words stored in dictionaries, term lists, and the list of learned words because they are not handled as case-sensitive.

Check punctuation

When selected, the spell checker checks punctuation. Misplaced white space and unusual sequences, such as a period following a comma, are highlighted as errors.

Ignore mixed case words

When selected, the spell checker does not check words containing mixed case characters (for example, SpellChecker).

Ignore acronyms

Available only for the Hunspell Spell Checker. When selected, acronyms are not reported as errors.

Ignore words with digits

When selected, the spell checker does not check words containing digits (for example, b2b).

Ignore duplicates

When selected, the spell checker does not signal two successive identical words as an error.

Ignore URL

When selected, the spell checker ignores words recognized as URLs or file names (for example, www.oxygenxml.com or c:\boot.ini).

Allow compounds words

When selected, all words formed by concatenating two legal words with a hyphen (hyphenated compounds) are accepted. If recognized by the language, two words concatenated without hyphen (closed compounds) are also accepted.

Allow file extensions

When selected, the spell checker accepts any word ending with recognized file extensions (for example, myfile.txt or index.html).

Ignore elements section
You can use the **Add** and **Remove** buttons to configure a list of element names or XPath expressions to be ignored by the spell checker. The following restricted set of XPath expressions are supported:

- ‘/’ and ‘/’ separators
- ‘*’ wildcard

An example of an allowed XPath expression is: `/a/*/b`.

To change the color used by the spell check engine to highlight spelling errors, go to **Window (Eclipse on Mac OSX)** and choose **Preferences**. Then go to **General > Editors > Text Editors > Annotations** and change the color in the **Spell Check Annotation** option.

**Spell Check Dictionaries Preferences**

To set the Dictionaries preferences, open the **Preferences** dialog box (on page 42) and go to **Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries**. This page allows you to configure the dictionaries (.dic files) and term lists (.tdi files) that Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses and to choose where to save new learned words.

The following options are valid when Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the Hunspell spell checking engine:

**Dictionaries and term lists default folder**

Displays the default location where the dictionaries and term lists that Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses are stored.

**Include dictionaries and term list from**

Selecting this option allows you to specify a location where you have stored dictionaries and term lists that you want to include, along with the default ones.

**Important:** Consider the following notes regarding this option:

- The spell checker takes into account dictionaries and term lists collected both from the default and custom locations and multiple dictionaries and term lists from the same language are merged (for example, `en_UK.dic` from the default location is merged with `en_US.dic` from a custom location).
- If you have a generic dictionary file (one that just has a two letter language code for its file name, such as `en.dic`) saved in either the default or custom location, the other more specific dictionaries (for example, `en_UK.dic` and `en_US.dic`) will not be merged and the existing generic dictionary will simply be used instead.
• If the additional location contains a file with the same name as one from the default location, the file in the additional location takes precedence over the file from the default location.

**How to add more dictionaries and term lists link**

Use this link to open a topic in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin User Guide that explains how to [add more dictionaries and term lists](on page 346).

**Save learned words in the following location**

Specifies the target where the newly learned words are saved. By default, the target is the application preferences folder, but you can also choose a custom location.

**Delete learned words**

Opens the list of learned words, allowing you to select the items you want to remove, without deleting the dictionaries and term lists.

**Note:** Words stored in dictionaries, term lists, and the list of learned words are not handled as case-sensitive. Therefore, you do not need to include both uppercase and lowercase versions of the words.

**Related Information:**

- [Adding Custom Spell Check Dictionaries](on page 346)
- [Adding Custom Spell Check Term Lists](on page 349)

**Syntax Highlight Preferences**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports syntax highlighting in the **Text** mode editors for numerous types of documents, including XML, XHTML, JavaScript, XQuery, XPath, PHP, CSS, LESS, Markdown, Text, DTD, RNC, Java, JSON, and more.

To configure syntax highlighting, open the **Preferences** dialog box [on page 42] and go to **Editor > Syntax Highlight**.

To set syntax colors for a language, expand the listing for that language in the top panel to show the list of syntax items for that type of document. Use the color and style selectors to change how each syntax item is displayed. The results of your changes are displayed in the **Preview** panel. If you do not know the name of the syntax token that you want to configure, click that token in the **Preview** area to select it.
**Note:** All default color sets come with a high-contrast variant that is automatically used when you switch to a black-background or white-background high-contrast theme in your Windows operating system settings. The high-contrast theme will not overwrite any default color you set in **Editor > Syntax Highlight** preferences page.

The settings for XML documents are also used in XSD, XSL, RNG documents and the **Preview** area has a separate tab for each of them when **XML** is selected in the top pane.

The **Enable nested syntax highlight** option controls whether or not content types that are nested in the same file (such as PHP, JS, or CSS scripts inside an HTML file) are highlighted according to the color schemes defined for each content type.

**Elements/Attributes by Prefix Preferences**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to specify syntax highlighting colors for XML elements and attributes with specific namespace prefixes. To configure the **Elements/Attributes by Prefix** preferences, open the **Preferences** dialog box (on page 42) and go to **Editor > Syntax Highlight > Elements/Attributes by Prefix**.

To change the syntax coloring for a specific namespace prefix, choose the prefix from the list, or add a new one using the **New** button, and use the color and style selectors to set the syntax highlighting style for that namespace prefix.

**Note:** Syntax highlighting is based on the literal namespace prefix, not the namespace that the prefix is bound to in the document.

If you only want the prefix (and not the whole element or attribute name) to be styled with a particular color, select the **Draw only the prefix with a separate color** option.

**Templates Preferences**

This page simply allows you to navigate to the preference pages for code templates or document templates.

**Code Templates Preferences**

**Code templates** (on page 389) are code fragments that can be inserted at the current editing position. Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a set of built-in templates for CSS, Schematron, XSL, XQuery, and XML Schema document types. You can also define your own code templates (on page 389) for any type of file and share them with your colleagues (on page 390) using the template export and import functions.

To configure **Code Templates**, open the **Preferences** dialog box (on page 42) and go to **Editor > Templates > Code Templates**.
This preferences page contains a list of all the available code templates (both built-in and custom created ones) and a code preview area. You can disable any code template by deselecting it.

The following actions are available:

**New**

Opens the [Code template](#) dialog box that allows you to define a new code template. You can define the following fields:

- **Name** - The name of the code template.
- **Description** - [Optional] The description of the code template that will appear in the [Code Templates](#) preferences page and in the tooltip message when selecting it from the [Content Completion Assistant](#). HTML markup can be used for better rendering.
- **Associate with** - You can choose to set the code template to be associated with a specific type of editor or for all editor types.
- **Shortcut key** - [Optional] If you want to assign a shortcut key that can be used to insert the code template, place the cursor in the **Shortcut key** field and press the desired key combination on your keyboard. Use the [Clear](#) button if you make a mistake. If the [Enable platform-independent shortcut keys](#) checkbox is selected, the shortcut is platform-independent and the following modifiers are used:
  - \(M_1\) represents the **Command** key on MacOS X, and the **Ctrl** key on other platforms.
  - \(M_2\) represents the **Shift** key.
  - \(M_3\) represents the **Option** key on MacOS X, and the **Alt** key on other platforms.
  - \(M_4\) represents the **Ctrl** key on MacOS X, and is undefined on other platforms.
- **Content** - Text box where you define the content that is used when the code template is inserted. An [editor variable](#) can be inserted in the text box using the [Insert Editor Variables](#) button.

**Edit**

Opens the [Code template](#) dialog box and allows you to edit an existing code template. You can edit the following fields:

- **Description** - [Optional] The description of the code template that will appear in the [Code Templates](#) preferences page and in the tooltip message when selecting it from the [Content Completion Assistant](#). HTML markup can be used for better rendering.
- **Shortcut key** - [Optional] If you want to assign a shortcut key that can be used to insert the code template, place the cursor in the **Shortcut key** field and press the desired key combination on your keyboard. Use the [Clear](#) button if you make a
mistake. If the **Enable platform-independent shortcut keys** checkbox is selected, the shortcut is platform-independent and the following modifiers are used:

- $\text{M1}$ represents the **Command** key on MacOS X, and the **Ctrl** key on other platforms.
- $\text{M2}$ represents the **Shift** key.
- $\text{M3}$ represents the **Option** key on MacOS X, and the **Alt** key on other platforms.
- $\text{M4}$ represents the **Ctrl** key on MacOS X, and is undefined on other platforms.

- **Content** - Text box where you define the content that is used when the code template is inserted. An editor variable *(on page 162)* can be inserted in the text box using the 📝 **Insert Editor Variables** button.

**Duplicate**

Creates a duplicate of the currently selected code template.

**Delete**

Deletes the currently selected code template. This action is not available for the built-in code templates.

**Export**

Exports a file with code templates.

**Import**

Imports a file with code templates that was created by the **Export** action.

You can use the following editor variables *(on page 162)* when you define a code template in the **Content** text box:

- **${caret}** - The position where the cursor is located. This variable can be used in a code template, in **Author** mode operations, or in a **selection plugin**.
- **${selection}** - The current selected text content in the current edited document. This variable can be used in a code template, in **Author** mode operations, or in a **selection plugin**.
- **${ask('message', type, ('real_value1':rendered_value1'; 'real_value2':rendered_value2'; ...), 'default_value', @id)}** - To prompt for values at runtime, use the ask('message', type, ('real_value1':rendered_value1'; 'real_value2':rendered_value2'; ...), 'default_value') editor variable. You can set the following parameters:
  - **message** - The displayed message. Note the quotes that enclose the message.
  - **default_value** - Optional parameter. Provides a default value.
  - **@id** - Optional parameter. Used for identifying the variable to reuse the answer using the ${answer(@id)} editor variable.
  - **type** - Optional parameter, with one of the following values:
**Note:** The title of the dialog box will be determined by the type of parameter and as follows:

- For `url` and `relative_url` parameters, the title will be the name of the parameter and the value of the `'message'`.
- For the other parameters listed below, the title will be the name of that respective parameter.
- If no parameter is used, the title will be "Input".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Format: ${ask('message', parameter, 'default_value')}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| `url`        | **Description:** Input is considered a URL. Oxygen XML Developer plugin checks that the provided URL is valid. **Example:**
  - `{ask('Input URL', url)}` - The displayed dialog box has the name *Input URL*. The expected input type is URL.
  - `{ask('Input URL', url, 'http://www.example.com')}` - The displayed dialog box has the name *Input URL*. The expected input type is URL. The input field displays the default value `http://www.example.com`. |
| `password`   | **Description:** The input is hidden with bullet characters. **Example:**
  - `{ask('Input password', password)}` - The displayed dialog box has the name *Input password* and the input is hidden with bullet symbols.
  - `{ask('Input password', password, 'abcd')}` - The displayed dialog box has the name *Input password* and the input hidden with bullet symbols. The input field already contains the default `abcd` value. |
| `generic`    | **Description:** The input is considered to be generic text that requires no special handling. **Example:**
  - `{ask('Hello world!')}` - The dialog box has a *Hello world!* message displayed.
  - `{ask('Hello world!', generic, 'Hello again!')}` - The dialog box has a *Hello world!* message displayed and the value displayed in the input box is *Hello again!*. |
| `relative_url` | **Description:** Input is considered a URL. Oxygen XML Developer plugin tries to make the URL relative to that of the document you are editing. **Format:** \${ask('message', relative_url, 'default_value')} |
### Parameter

| Note: If the $ask editor variable is expanded in content that is not yet saved (such as an *untitled* file, whose path cannot be determined), then Oxygen XML Developer plugin will transform it into an absolute URL. |

#### Example:

```
${ask('File location', relative_url, 'C:/example.txt')}
```

- The dialog box has the name 'File location'. The URL inserted in the input box is made relative to the current edited document location.

### combobox

| Format: ${ask('message', combobox, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1';...;'real_valueN':'rendered_valueN'), 'default}) |

| Description: Displays a dialog box that offers a drop-down menu. The drop-down menu is populated with the given rendered_value values. Choosing such a value will return its associated value (real_value). |

| Note: The 'default' parameter specifies the default selected value and can match either a key or a value. |

#### Example:

```
${ask('Operating System', combobox, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'osx':'Mac OS X';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'osx')}
```

- The dialog box has the name 'Operating System'. The drop-down menu displays the three given operating systems. The associated value will be returned based upon your selection.

| Note: In this example, the default value is indicated by the osx key. However, the same result could be obtained if the default value is indicated by Mac OS X, as in the following example: ${ask('Operating System', combobox, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'osx':'Mac OS X';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'Mac OS X') |

```
${ask('Mobile OS', combobox, ('win':'Windows Mobile';'ios':'iOS';'and':'Android'), 'Android')}
```

### editable_combobox

| Format: ${ask('message', editable_combobox, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1';...;'real_valueN':'rendered_valueN'), 'default'}) |

<p>| Description: Displays a dialog box that offers a drop-down menu with editable elements. The drop-down menu is populated with the given rendered_value values. Choosing such a value will return its associated real value (real_value) or the value inserted when you edit a list entry. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Note: The ‘default’ parameter specifies the default selected value and can match either a key or a value.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>${ask('Operating System', editable_combobox, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'osx':'Mac OS X';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'osx')} - The dialog box has the name ‘Operating System’. The drop-down menu displays the three given operating systems and also allows you to edit the entry. The associated value will be returned based upon your selection or the text you input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radio</td>
<td>Format: ${ask('message', radio, ('real_value1':rendered_value1';...;'real_valueN':rendered_valueN), 'default'})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Description: Displays a dialog box that offers a series of radio buttons. Each radio button displays a rendered_value and will return an associated real_value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: The ‘default’ parameter specifies the default selected value and can match either a key or a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>${ask('Operating System', radio, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'osx':'Mac OS X';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'osx')} - The dialog box has the name ‘Operating System’. The radio button group allows you to choose between the three operating systems.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- `${timestamp}` - Time stamp, that is the current time in Unix format. For example, it can be used to save transformation results in multiple output files on each transformation.
- `${uuid}` - Universally unique identifier, a unique sequence of 32 hexadecimal digits generated by the Java UUID class.
- `${id}` - Application-level unique identifier. It is a short sequence of 10-12 letters and digits that is not guaranteed to be universally unique.
- `${cf}` - Current file name as file path, that is the absolute file path of the current edited document.
• \${cfd} - Current file folder as file path, that is the path of the current edited document up to the name of the parent folder.
• \${frameworksDir} - The path (as file path) of the frameworks directory.
• \${pd} - The file path to the folder that contains the current project file (.xpr).
• \${oxygenInstallDir} - Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation folder as file path.
• \${homeDir} - The path (as file path) of the user home folder.
• \${pn} - Current project name.
• \${env(VAR_NAME)} - Value of the VAR_NAME environment variable. The environment variables are managed by the operating system. If you are looking for Java System Properties, use the \${system(var.name)} editor variable.
• \${system(var.name)} - Value of the var.name Java System Property. The Java system properties can be specified in the command-line arguments of the Java runtime as -Dvar.name=var.value. If you are looking for operating system environment variables, use the \${env(VAR_NAME)} editor variable instead.
• \${date(pattern)} - Current date. The allowed patterns are equivalent to the ones in the Java SimpleDateFormat class. Example: yyyy-MM-dd,

Note: This editor variable supports both the xs:date and xs:datetime parameters. For details about xs:date, go to: http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#date. For details about xs:datetime, go to: http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#dateTime.

Related Information:

• Code Templates (on page 389)

Document Templates Preferences

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides a variety of built-in document templates that make it easier to create new documents in various formats. The list of available templates is presented in the New Document wizard (on page 305) when you create a new document ( New toolbar button or File > New > New from Templates).

You can also create your own templates (on page 312) and share them with others. You can store your custom document templates in the existing templates folder in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation directory or store them in a custom directory. If you store them in a custom directory, you need to use this Document Templates preferences page to add that directory to the list of template directories that Oxygen XML Developer plugin makes available in the New Document wizard.

To add a template directory, follow these steps:
1. **open the Preferences dialog box** (on page 42) and go to **Editor > Templates > Document Templates**.
2. Use the **New** button to select a location of the new document template folder.
3. You can also use the **Edit** or **Delete** buttons to manage folders in the list, and you can alter the order in which Oxygen XML Developer plugin looks in these directories by using the **Up** and **Down** buttons.

**Result:** This will add the folder to the list in this preferences page and it will now appear in the **New from templates wizard** (on page 311) in a category based upon the folder path you specified.

**Note:** For DITA templates, they will also appear in the dialog box for creating new DITA topics, but if you **customize the template** (on page 313), you need to set the **type** property to **dita** in the corresponding properties file.

### Fonts Preferences

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to choose the fonts to be used in the **Text**, **Design**, and **Grid** editor modes. To configure the font options, **open the Preferences dialog box** (on page 42) and go to **Fonts**.

The following options are available:

**Text**

This option allows you to choose the font used in **Text** mode. There are two options available:

- **Map to text font** - Uses the same font for the basic text editor as the one set in **General > Appearance > Colors and Fonts**.
- **Customize** - Allows you to configure various font-related options.

**Schema**

Allows you to configure various font-related options that will be used in:

- **The Design** mode of the **XML Schema editor** (on page 569).
- Images with schema diagram fragments that are included in the HTML documentation generated from an XML Schema.

**Note:** You must restart the application for your changes to be applied.

### Network Connection Settings Preferences

This section presents the options available in the **Network Connection Settings** preferences pages.
(S)FTP Preferences

To configure the (S)FTP options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Network Connection Settings > (S)FTP. You can customize the following options:

![Figure 24. (S)FTP Configuration Preferences Panel](image)

- **Encoding for FTP control connection** - The encoding used to communicate with FTP servers: either ISO-8859-1 or UTF-8. If the server supports the UTF-8 encoding Oxygen XML Developer plugin will use it for communication. Otherwise, it will use ISO-8859-1.
- **Public known hosts file** - File containing the list of all SSH server host keys that you have determined are accurate. The default value is `${homeDir}/.ssh/known_hosts`.
- **Private key file** - The path to the file containing the private key used for the private key method of authentication of the secure FTP (SFTP) protocol.
- **Passphrase** - The passphrase used for the private key method of authentication of the secure FTP (SFTP) protocol.
- **Show SFTP certificate warning dialog** - If selected, a warning dialog box will be displayed each time when the authenticity of the host cannot be established.

HTTP(S)/WebDAV Preferences

To set the HTTP(S)/WebDAV preferences, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Network Connection Settings > HTTP(S)/WebDAV. The following options are available:

**Enable the HTTP(S)/WebDAV Protocols**

Activates the HTTP(S)/WebDAV protocols bundled with Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Any adjustment to this option requires a restart of the application.

**Read Timeout (seconds)**

The period (in seconds) after which the application considers that an HTTP server is unreachable if it does not receive any response from that server.

**Automatically accept a security certificate, even if invalid**
When selected, the HTTPS connections that Oxygen XML Developer plugin attempts to establish with will accept all security certificates, even if they are invalid.

⚠️ Important: By accepting an invalid certificate, you accept (at your own risk) a potential security threat, since you cannot verify the integrity of the certificate's issuer.

Lock WebDAV files on open

If selected, the files opened through WebDAV are locked on the server so that they cannot be edited by other users while the lock placed by the current user still exists on the server.

Trusted Hosts Preferences

This preferences page contains a list of domains that have been identified as trusted. You can add or remove domains from the list and Oxygen XML Developer plugin will allow connections to the listed hosts without requesting user confirmation.

To configure the Trusted Hosts options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Network Connection Settings > Trusted Hosts. The following options are available:

- **New** - Allows you to manually add a new entry to the list of trusted hosts.

  📘 Tip: You can specify a specific port at the end of the URL (for instance, `www.example.com:8080`). Otherwise, if no port is specified, connections will be allowed on all ports for the particular host.

- **Delete** - Allows you to remove an entry from the list of trusted hosts.

Scenarios Management Preferences

To configure Scenarios Management options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Scenarios Management. This allows you to share the global transformation scenarios with other users by exporting them to an external file that can also be imported in this preferences panel.

Figure 25. Scenarios Management Preferences Panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scenarios Management</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Import Global Transformation Scenarios</td>
<td>🔗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export Global Transformation Scenarios</td>
<td>🔗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import Global Validation Scenarios</td>
<td>🔗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export Global Validation Scenarios</td>
<td>🔗</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The actions available in this panel are as follows:
• **Import Global Transformation Scenarios** - Allows you to import all transformation scenarios from a file created with the export scenario action. The names of the imported scenarios will appear in the Configure Transformation Scenario dialog box followed by (import). This way there are no scenario name conflicts.

• **Export Global Transformation Scenarios** - Allows you to export all global transformation scenarios available in the Configure Transformation Scenario dialog box.

• **Import Global Validation Scenarios** - Allows you to import all validation scenarios from a file created with the export scenario action. The names of the imported scenarios will appear in the Configure Validation Scenario dialog box followed by (import). This way there are no scenario name conflicts.

• **Export Global Validation Scenarios** - Allows you to export all global validation scenarios available in the Configure Validation Scenario dialog box.

### View Preferences

The View preferences page allows you to configure some options regarding certain views. To edit these options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to View.

The following options are available:

**Console section**

- **Enable Oxygen consoles**
  
  If selected, various messages will be contributed to the Console view (on page 362) when certain events are triggered (such as schema detection, validation, or transformation events).

- **Fixed width console**
  
  If selected, a line in the Console view (on page 362) will be hard wrapped after the specified maximum numbers of characters allowed on a line is reached.

- **Limit console output**
  
  If selected, the content of the Console view (on page 362) will be limited to a configurable number of characters.

- **Console buffer**
  
  If the Limit console output option is selected, this specifies the maximum number of characters that can be written in the Console view (on page 362).

- **Tab width**
Specifies the number of spaces used for depicting a tab character.

XML Preferences

This section describes the panels that contain the user preferences related with XML.

Import Preferences

To configure importing options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > Import. This page allows you to configure how empty values and null values are handled when they are encountered in imported database tables or Excel sheets. Also you can configure the format of date / time values recognized in the imported database tables or Excel sheets.

The following options are available:

- **Create empty elements for empty values**
  If selected, an empty value from a database column or from a text file is imported as an empty element.

- **Create empty elements for null values**
  If selected, null values from a database column are imported as empty elements.

- **Escape XML content**
  Selected by default, this option instructs Oxygen XML Developer plugin to escape the imported content to an XML-safe form.

- **Add annotations for generated XML Schema**
  If selected, the generated XML Schema contains an annotation for each of the imported table columns. The documentation inside the annotation tag contains the remarks of the database columns (if available) and also information about the conversion between the column type and the generated XML Schema type.

- **Date / Time Format section**
  Specifies the format used for importing date and time values from Excel spreadsheets or database tables, and in the generated XML schemas. You can choose from the following format types:

  - **Unformatted** - The date and time formats specific to the database are used for import. When importing data from Excel a string representation of date or time values are used. The type used in the generated XML Schema is xs:string.
  - **XML Schema date format** - The XML Schema-specific format ISO8601 is used for imported date / time data (yyyy-MM-dd'T'HH:mm:ss for datetime, yyyy-MM-dd for
date and HH:mm:ss for time). The types used in the generated XML Schema are xs:datetime, xs:date and xs:time.

- **Custom format** - If selected, you can define a custom format for timestamp, date, and time values or choose one of the predefined formats. A preview of the values is presented when a format is used. The type used in the generated XML Schema is xs:string.

### Table 1. Pattern Letters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Date or Time Component</th>
<th>Presentation</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Era designator</td>
<td>Text</td>
<td>AD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>1996; 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Month in year</td>
<td>Month</td>
<td>July; Jul; 07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>Week in year</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>Week in month</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Day in year</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>Day in month</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Day of week in month</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Day in week</td>
<td>Text</td>
<td>Tuesday; Tue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>Am / pm marker</td>
<td>Text</td>
<td>PM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Hour in day (0-23)</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Hour in day (1-24)</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Hour in am / pm (0-11)</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>Hour in am / pm (1-12)</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>Minute in hour</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>Second in minute</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Millisecond</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>978</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>Time zone</td>
<td>General time zone</td>
<td>PST; GMT-08:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td>Time zone</td>
<td>RFC 822 time zone</td>
<td>-0800</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pattern letters are usually repeated, as their number determines the exact presentation:

- **Text** - If the number of pattern letters is 4 or more, the full form is used. Otherwise, a short or abbreviated form is used if available.
- **Number** - The number of pattern letters is the minimum number of digits, and shorter numbers are zero-padded to this amount.
- **Year** - If the number of pattern letters is 2, the year is truncated to 2 digits. Otherwise, it is interpreted as a number.
- **Month** - If the number of pattern letters is 3 or more, the month is interpreted as text. Otherwise, it is interpreted as a number.
• **General time zone** - Time zones are interpreted as text if they have names. For time zones representing a GMT offset value, the following syntax is used:
  ◦ **GMTOffsetTimeZone** - GMT Sign Hours: Minutes
  ◦ **Sign** - one of + or -
  ◦ **Hours** - one or two digits
  ◦ **Minutes** - two digits
  ◦ **Digit** - one of 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

  Hours must be between 0 and 23, and Minutes must be between 00 and 59. The format is locale independent and digits must be taken from the Basic Latin block of the Unicode standard.

• **RFC 822 time zone**: The RFC 822 4-digit time zone format is used:
  ◦ **RFC822TimeZone**
  ◦ **TwoDigitHours** (must be between 00 and 23)

PDF Output Preferences

The **PDF Output** preferences page simply includes links to sub-pages for configuring PDF output options.

FO Processors Preferences

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in formatting objects processor (Apache FOP), but you can also configure other external processors and use them in the transformation scenarios for processing XSL-FO documents.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides an easy way to add two of the most commonly used commercial FO processors: **RenderX XEP** and **Antenna House Formatter**. You can easily add **RenderX XEP** as an external FO processor if you have the XEP installed. Also, if you have the **Antenna House Formatter**, Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the environment variables set by the XSL formatter installation to detect and use it for XSL-FO transformations. If the environment variables are not set for the XSL formatter installation, you can browse and choose the executable file just as you would for XEP. You can use these two external FO processors for **DITA OT transformations scenarios** *(on page 919)* and **XML with XSLT transformation scenarios** *(on page 890)*.

To configure the options for the FO Processors, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 42)* and go to **XML > PDF Output > FO Processors**. This preferences page includes the following options:

**Apache FOP Section**

In this section you can configure options for the built-in Apache processor. The following options are available:
Use built-in Apache FOP

Instructs Oxygen XML Developer plugin to use the built-in Apache FO processor. To see the version of the built-in XSL-FO processor for your installation, go to Help > About > Libraries and search for Apache FOP.

Use other Apache FOP

Instructs Oxygen XML Developer plugin to use another Apache FO processor that is installed on your computer. You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the Browse button.

Enable the output of the built-in FOP

All Apache FOP output is displayed in a results pane at the bottom of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin window, including warning messages about FO instructions not supported by Apache FOP.

Memory available to the built-in FOP

If your Apache FOP transformations fail with an Out of Memory error (OutOfMemoryError), use this combo box to select a bigger value for the amount of memory reserved for FOP transformations.

Configuration file for the built-in FOP

Use this option to specify the path to an Apache FOP configuration file (for example, to render to PDF a document containing Unicode content using a special true type font). You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the Browse button.

Generates PDF/A-1b output

When selected, PDF/A-1b output is generated.

Note: All fonts have to be embedded, even the implicit ones. More information about configuring metrics files for the embedded fonts can be found in Add a font to the built-in FOP (on page 955).

Note: You cannot use the <filterList> key in the configuration file since the FOP would generate the following error: The Filter key is prohibited when PDF/A-1 is active.

External FO Processors Section

In this section you can manage the external FO processors you want to use in transformation scenarios. You can use the two options at the bottom of the section to use the RenderX XEP or Antenna House Formatter commercial FO processors.

Add ‘XEP’ FO processor (executable file is needed)
If **RenderX XEP** is already installed on your computer, you can use this button to choose the XEP executable script (*xep.bat* for Windows, *xep* for Linux).

**Add 'Antenna House' FO processor (executable file is needed)**

If **Antenna House Formatter** is already installed on your computer, you can use this button to choose the Antenna House executable script (*AHFCmd.exe* or *XSLCmd.exe* for Windows, and *run.sh* for Linux/Mac OS).

**Note:** The built-in **Antenna House Formatter GUI** transformation scenario requires that you configure an external FO processor that runs *AHFormatter.exe* (Windows only). In the external FO Processor configuration dialog box (on page 128), you could use `"${env(AHF63_64_HOME)}\AHFormatter.exe" -d ${fo} -s` for the value in the Command line field, although the environment variable name changes for each version of the AH Formatter and for each system architecture (you can install multiple versions side-by-side). For more information, see [https://github.com/AntennaHouse/focheck/wiki/focheck](https://github.com/AntennaHouse/focheck/wiki/focheck).

You can also add external processors or configure existing ones. Press the **New** button to open a configuration dialog box that allows you to add a new external FO processor. Use the other buttons (**Edit**, **Duplicate**, **Delete**) to configure existing external processors.

**Figure 26. External FO Processor Configuration Dialog Box**

![External FO Processor Configuration Dialog Box](image)

The external FO Processor configuration dialog box includes the following options:

**Name**

The name that will be displayed in the list of available FO processors on the FOP tab of the transformation scenario dialog box.
Description

A textual description of the FO processor that will be displayed in the FO processors table and in tooltips of UI components where the processor is selected.

Working directory

The directory where the intermediate and final results of the processing is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the Browse button. You can use one of the following editor variables (on page 162):

- ${homeDir} - The path to the user home directory.
- ${cfd} - The path of the current file directory. If the current file is not a local file, the target is the user desktop directory.
- ${pd} - The project directory.
- ${oxygenInstallDir} - The Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation directory.

Command line

The command line that starts the FO processor, specific to each processor. You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the Browse button. You can use one of the following editor variables (on page 162):

- ${(method)} - The FOP transformation method: pdf, ps, or txt.
- ${(fo)} - The input FO file.
- ${(out)} - The output file.
- ${(pd)} - The project directory.
- ${(frameworksDir)} - The path of the frameworks subdirectory of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation directory.
- ${(oxygenInstallDir)} - The Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation directory.
- ${(ps)} - The platform-specific path separator. It is used between the library files specified in the class path of the command line.

Output Encoding

The encoding of the FO processor output stream that is displayed in a Results panel (on page 226) at the bottom of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin window.

Error Encoding

The encoding of the FO processor error stream that is displayed in a Results panel (on page 226) at the bottom of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin window.
CSS-based Processors Preferences

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in XML to PDF transformation with CSS scenario type for generating PDF output using a CSS-based processor.

To configure the options for the CSS-based processors, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > PDF Output > CSS-based Processors. This preferences page includes the following options:

Oxygen PDF Chemistry Section

Auto-detect

If selected, the directory of the Chemistry processor will be automatically detected. This is based on the system's PATH environmental variable. If none is detected, it will use the path of the built-in distribution.

Custom installation directory

Use this option to select an external directory of a custom installation of the Chemistry processor.

Memory available to the processor (MB)

Specifies the maximum amount of memory that is available for the transformation. If your transformations fail with an Out of Memory error (OutOfMemoryError), you can use this option to select a bigger value for the amount of memory reserved for the process.

Generates PDF/UA-1 output

Use this option to produce output that conforms with the PDF/UA-1 accessibility standards.

Note: This mode has some special requirements. For example, all fonts have to be embedded and the title of documents must be marked using the metadata. For more information, see Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide: Fully Accessible PDF (PDF/UA1).

Show console output

Allows you to specify when to display the console output log in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. The following options are available:

- When build fails - Displays the console output log only if the build fails.
- Always - Displays the console output log, regardless of whether or not the build fails.
Sample XML Files Generator Preferences

The Generate Sample XML Files tool (on page 625) (available on the XML Tools menu) allows you to generate XML instance documents based on an XML Schema. There are various options that can be configured within the tool and these options are also available in the Sample XML Files Generator preferences page. This allows you to set default values for these options. To configure the options for generating the XML files, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > Sample XML Files Generator.

The following options are available:

**Generate optional elements**

When selected, all elements are generated, including the optional ones (having the minOccurs attribute set to 0 in the schema).

**Generate optional attributes**

When selected, all attributes are generated, including the optional ones (having the use attribute set to optional in the schema).

**Values of elements and attributes**

Controls the content of generated attribute and element values. The following choices are available:

- **None** - No content is inserted.
- **Default** - Inserts a default value depending on the data type descriptor of the particular element or attribute. The default value can be either the data type name or an incremental name of the attribute or element (according to the global option from the Sample XML Files Generator preferences page). Note that type restrictions are ignored when this option is selected. For example, if an element is of a type that restricts an xs:string with the xs:maxLength facet to allow strings with a maximum length of 3, the XML instance generator tool may generate string element values longer than 3 characters.
- **Random** - Inserts a random value depending on the data type descriptor of the particular element or attribute.

⚠️ Important: If all of the following are true, the Generate Sample XML Files tool outputs invalid values:
- At least one of the restrictions is a regexp.
- The value generated after applying the regexp does not match the restrictions imposed by one of the facets.

**Preferred number of repetitions**
Allows you to set the preferred number of repeating elements related to `minOccurs` and `maxOccurs` facets defined in the XML Schema.

- If the value set here is between `minOccurs` and `maxOccurs`, then that value is used.
- If the value set here is less than `minOccurs`, then the `minOccurs` value is used.
- If the value set here is greater than `maxOccurs`, then `maxOccurs` is used.

**Maximum recursion level**

If a recursion is found, this option controls the maximum allowed depth of the same element.

**Type alternative strategy**

Used for the `xs:alternative` element from XML Schema 1.1. The possible strategies are:

- **First** - The first valid alternative type is always used.
- **Random** - A random alternative type is used.

**Choice strategy**

Used for `xs:choice` or `substitutionGroup` elements. The possible strategies are:

- **First** - The first branch of `xs:choice` or the head element of `substitutionGroup` is always used.
- **Random** - A random branch of `xs:choice` or a substitute element or the head element of a `substitutionGroup` is used.

**Generate the other options as comments**

If selected, generates the other possible choices or substitutions (for `xs:choice` and `substitutionGroup`). These alternatives are generated inside comments groups so you can uncomment and use them later. Use this option with care (for example, on a restricted namespace and element) as it may generate large result files.

**Use incremental attribute / element names as default**

If selected, the value of an element or attribute starts with the name of that element or attribute. For example, for an `a` element the generated values are: `a1`, `a2`, `a3`, and so on. If not selected, the value is the name of the type of that element / attribute (for example: `string`, `decimal`, etc.)

**Maximum length**

The maximum length of string values generated for elements and attributes.

**Discard optional elements after nested level**
The optional elements that exceed the specified nested level are discarded. This option is useful for limiting deeply nested element definitions that can quickly result in very large XML documents.

Related Information:

- Generating Sample XML Files (on page 625)

XML Catalog Preferences

To configure options that pertain to XML Catalogs (on page 1627), open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XML Catalog.

The following options are available:

**Prefer**

Determines whether public identifiers specified in the catalog are used in favor of system identifiers supplied in the document. Suppose you have an entity in your document for which both a public identifier and a system identifier has been specified, and the catalog only contains a mapping for the public identifier (for example, a matching public catalog entry). You can choose between the following:

- **system** - If selected, the system identifier in the document is used.
- **public** - If selected, the URI supplied in the matching public catalog entry is used. Generally, the purpose of catalogs is to override the system identifiers in XML documents, so public should usually be used for your catalogs.

**Note:** If the catalog contains a matching system catalog entry giving a mapping for the system identifier, that mapping would have been used, the public identifier would never have been considered, and this setting would be irrelevant.

**Verbosity**

When using catalogs, it is sometimes useful to see what catalog files are parsed, if they are valid, and what identifiers are resolved by the catalogs. This option selects the detail level of such logging messages of the XML catalog resolver that will be displayed in the Catalogs table at the bottom of the window. You can choose between the following:

- **None** - No message is displayed by the catalog resolver when it tries to resolve a URI reference, a SYSTEM one or a PUBLIC one with the XML catalogs specified in this panel.
• **Unresolved entities** - Only the logging messages that track the failed attempts to resolve references are displayed.
• **All messages** - The messages of both failed attempts and successful ones are displayed.

**Resolve schema locations also through system mappings**

If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin analyzes both uri and system mappings to resolve the location of schema.

**Note:** This option is not applicable for DTD schemas since the public and system catalog mappings are always considered.

**Process "schemaLocation" namespaces through URI mappings for XML Schema**

If selected, the target namespace of the imported XML Schema is resolved through the uri mappings. The namespace is taken into account only when the schema specified in the schemaLocation attribute was not resolved successfully. If not selected, the system IDs are used to resolve the schema location.

**Use default catalog**

If this option is selected and Oxygen XML Developer plugin cannot resolve the catalog mapping with any other means, the default global catalog (listed below this checkbox) is used. For more information, see How Oxygen XML Developer plugin Determines which Catalog to Use (on page 462).

**Catalogs table**

You can use this table to add or manage global user-defined catalogs. The following actions are available at the bottom of the table:

**Add**

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a catalog to the list. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

**Edit**

Opens a dialog box that allows you to edit an existing catalog. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

**Delete**
Deletes the currently selected catalog from the list.

**Up**

Moves the selection to the previous resource.

**Down**

Moves the selection to the following resource.

**Note:** When you add, delete, or edit a catalog in this table, you need to reopen the currently edited files that use the modified catalog or run a manual Validate action (on page 423) so that the changes take full effect.

You can also add or configure catalogs at framework level from the Catalogs tab (on page 81) in the Document Type configuration dialog box (on page 57).

### Related Information:

- Controlling the Catalog Resolver
- Working with XML Catalogs (on page 460)

### XML Parser Preferences

To configure the XML Parser options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XML Parser.

The configurable options of the built-in XML parser are as follows:

**Enable parser caching (validation and content completion)**

Enables re-use of internal models when validating and provides content completion in opened XML files that reference the same schemas (grammars) such as DTD, XML Schema, or RelaxNG.

**Ignore the DTD for validation if a schema is specified**

Forces validation against a referenced schema (XML Schema, Relax NG schema) even if the document includes also a DTD DOCTYPE declaration. This option is useful when the DTD declaration is used only to declare DTD entities and the schema reference is used for validation against an XML Schema or a Relax NG schema.

**Note:** Schematron schemas are treated as additional schemas. The validation of a document associated with a DTD and referencing a Schematron schema is executed...
against both the DTD and the Schematron schema, regardless of the value of the **Ignore the DTD for validation if a schema is specified** option.

**Enable XInclude processing**

Enables XInclude processing. If selected, the XInclude support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin is turned on for validation and transformation of XML documents.

**Base URI fix-up**

According to the specification for XInclude, processors must add an `xml:base` attribute to elements included from locations with a different base URI. Without these attributes, the resulting infoset information would be incorrect.

Unfortunately, these attributes make XInclude processing to not be transparent to Schema validation. One solution to this is to modify your schema to allow `xml:base` attributes to appear on elements that might be included from different base URIs.

If the addition of `xml:base` and / or `xml:lang` is not desired by your application, you can deselect this option.

**Language fix-up**

The processor will preserve language information on a top-level included element by adding an `xml:lang` attribute if its included parent has a different [language] property. If the addition of `xml:lang` is not allowed by your application, you can deselect this option.

**DTD post-validation**

Select this option to validate an XML file against the associated DTD, after all the content merged to the current XML file using XInclude was resolved. If you deselect this option, the current XML file is validated against the associated DTD before all the content merged to the current XML file using XInclude is resolved.

**Relax NG Preferences**

To configure options regarding Relax NG, open the **Preferences** dialog box (on page 42) and go to **XML > XML Parser > Relax NG**.

The following options are available in this page:

**Check feasibly valid**

Checks if Relax NG documents can be transformed into valid documents by inserting any number of attributes and child elements anywhere in the tree.

**Note:** Selecting this option disables the **Check ID/IDREF** option.

**Check ID/IDREF**
Checks the ID/IDREF matches when a Relax NG document is validated.

Add default attribute values

Default values are given to the attributes of documents validated using Relax NG. These values are defined in the Relax NG schema.

Ignore "data-" attributes in XHTML

This option is selected by default, which means that when XHTML documents are validated with an RNG schema, any data- attributes detected in the document will not be taken into account by the validation engine.

Schematron Preferences

To configure options regarding Schematron, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XML Parser > Schematron.

The following options are available in this preferences page:

ISO Schematron Section

Optimize (visit-no-attributes)

If your ISO Schematron assertion tests do not contain the attributes axis, you should select this option for faster ISO Schematron validation.

Allow foreign elements (allow-foreign)

Enables support for allow-foreign on ISO Schematron. This option is used to pass non-Schematron elements to the generated stylesheet.

Use associated XML Schema to expand default attribute values

When selected (default value), if the validated XML document has an XML Schema associated that contains default values for attributes defined in the XML content, the Schematron will be able to match on those default attributes.

Use Saxon EE (schema aware) for xslt2/xslt3 query language binding

When selected, Saxon EE is used for xslt2 / xslt3 query binding. If this option is not selected, Saxon PE is used.

Enable Schematron Quick Fixes (SQF) support

Allows you to enable or disable the support for Quick Fixes (on page 1626) in Schematron files. This option is selected by default.

Embedded rules query language binding

You can control the query language binding used by the ISO Schematron embedded rules. You can choose between: xslt1, xslt2, or xslt3.
Note: To control the query language binding for standalone ISO Schematron, you need to set the query language to be used with a `queryBinding` attribute on the schema root element.

**Message language**

This option allows you to specify the language to be used in Schematron validation messages. You can choose between the following:

- **Use the language defined in the application** - The language that is specified in the application (on page 174) will be used and only the validation messages that match that language will be presented. You can use the Change application language link to navigate to the preferences page where you can specify the language to be used in the application.
- **Use the "xml:lang" attribute set on the Schematron root** - The language specified in the `xml:lang` attribute from the Schematron root will be used and only the validation message that match that language will be presented.
- **Ignore the language and show all message** - All messages are displayed in whatever language is defined within the Schematron schema.
- **Custom** - Use this option to specify a custom language to be used and only the messages that match the specified language will be presented.

Note: In all cases, if the selected language is not available for a validation error or warning, all messages will be displayed in whatever language is defined within the Schematron schema.

**Schematron 1.5 Section**

**XPath Version**

Allows you to select the version of XPath for the expressions that are allowed in Schematron assertion tests. You can choose between: 1.0, 2.0, or 3.0. This option is applied in both standalone Schematron 1.5 schemas and embedded Schematron 1.5 rules.

**XML Schema Preferences**

To configure options regarding XML Schema, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XML Parser > XML Schema.
This preferences page allows you to configure the following options:

**Default XML Schema version**

Allows you to select the version of XML Schema to be used as the default. You can choose XML Schema 1.0 or XML Schema 1.1.

**Note:** You are also able to set the XML Schema version using the Customize option in the New document wizard (on page 305).

**Default XML Schema validation engine**

Allows you to select the default validation engine to be used for XML Schema. You can choose Xerces or Saxon EE.

**Xerces validation features section**

**Enable full schema constraint checking**

Sets the schema-full-checking feature to true. This enables a validation of the parsed XML document against a schema (XML Schema or DTD) while the document is parsed.

**Enable honour all schema location feature**

Sets the honour-all-schema-location feature to true. All the files that declare XML Schema components from the same namespace are used to compose the validation model. If this option is not selected, only the first XML Schema file that is encountered in the XML Schema import tree is taken into account.

**Enable full XPath 2.0 for alternative types**

When selected (default value), you can use the full XPath support in assertions and alternative types. Otherwise, only the XPath support offered by the Xerces engine is available.

**Assertions can see comments and processing instructions**

Controls whether or not comments and processing instructions are visible to the XPath expression used for defining an assertion in XSD 1.1.

**Saxon EE validation features section**

**Multiple schema imports**

Forces xs:import to fetch the referenced schema document. By default, the xs:import fetches the document only if no schema document for the given namespace has already been loaded. With this option in effect, the referenced schema document is loaded unless the absolute URI is the same as a schema document already loaded.
Assertions can see comments and processing instructions

Controls whether or not comments and processing instructions are visible to the XPath expression used to define an assertion. By default, they are not made visible (unlike Saxon 9.3).

XML Refactoring Preferences

To specify a folder for loading the custom XML refactoring operations, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XML Refactoring. The following option is available in this preferences page:

Load additional refactoring operations from

Use this text box to specify a folder for loading custom XML refactoring operations. You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables button, or the Browse button. Oxygen XML Developer plugin looks for XML refactoring operations recursively in the specified folder, so they can be stored in descendant folders.

XML Signing Certificates Preferences

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides two types of keystores (on page 1623) for certificates that are used for digital signatures of XML documents: Java Keystore (JKS) and Public-Key Cryptography Standards version 12 (PKCS-12). A keystore file is protected by a password. To configure a certificate keystore, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XML Signing Certificates. You can customize the following parameters of a keystore:

Figure 27. Certificates Preferences Panel

- **Keystore type** - The type of keystore (on page 1623) that Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses (JKS or PKCS-12).
- **Keystore file** - The location of the imported file.
- **Keystore password** - The password that is used for protecting the privacy of the stored keys.
• **Certificate alias** - The alias used for storing the key entry (the certificate or the private key) inside the *keystore (on page 1623)*.

• **Private key password** - The private key password of the certificate (required only for JKS *keystores (on page 1623)*).

• **Validate** - Press this button to verify the configured *keystore (on page 1623)* and the validity of the certificate.

**XProc Preferences**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a bundled version of the *Calabash XProc engine* that can be used for XProc transformations and validation, but you also have several ways to integrate other external XProc engines.

If the external engine is Java-based, or it has validation support, or it has the ability to receive parameters or ports passed from the transformation, you need to **integrate the external XProc engine using a plugin extension procedure (on page 962)**.

If you do not need the engine to be used for automatic validation or pass parameters/ports and it is not Java-based, you can add an external XProc engine by using the XProc preferences page. Open the **Preferences dialog box (on page 42)** and go to XML > XProc.

To add an external engine, click the **New** button. To configure an existing engine, click the **Edit** button. This opens the **Custom Engine** dialog box that allows you to configure an external engine.

![Custom Engine dialog box](image)

The following options can be configure in this custom engine configuration dialog box:
• **Name** - The value of this field will be displayed in the XProc transformation scenario and in the command line that will start it.

• **Description** - A textual description that will appear as a tooltip where the XProc engine will be used.

• **Working directory** - The working directory for resolving relative paths. You can specify the path by using the text field, the ![Insert Editor Variables](on page 162) button, or the ![Browse](button.

• **Command line** - The command line that will run the XProc engine as an external process. You can specify the path by using the text field, the ![Insert Editor Variables](on page 162) button, or the ![Browse](button.

• **Output encoding** - The encoding for the output stream of the XProc engine, used for reading and displaying the output messages.

• **Error encoding** - The encoding for the error stream of the XProc engine, used for reading and displaying the messages from the error stream.

**Note:** You can configure the built-in Calabash processor by using the `calabash.config` file. This file is located in `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]\lib\xproc\calabash\lib`. If that file does not exist, you have to create it.

The **Show XProc messages** option at the bottom of the XProc preferences page can be selected if you want all messages emitted by the XProc processor during a transformation to be presented in dedicated XProc **Results view** (on page 226).

**XSLT-XQuery Preferences**

To configure options regarding XSLT and XQuery processors, open the **Preferences** dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XSLT-XQuery. This panel contains only the most generic options for working with XSLT or XQuery processors. The more specific options are grouped in other panels linked as child nodes of this panel in the tree of this **Preferences** page.

There is only one generic option available:

**Create transformation temporary files in system temporary directory**

It should be selected only when the temporary files necessary for performing transformations are created in the same folder as the source of the transformation (the default behavior when this option is not selected) and this breaks the transformation. An example of breaking the transformation is when the transformation processes all the files located in the same folder as the source of the transformation (including the temporary files) and the result is incorrect or the transformation fails because of this.
Custom Engines Preferences

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to configure custom processors to be used for running XSLT and XQuery transformations.

To configure the Custom Engines preferences, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XSLT-XQuery > Custom Engines.

The table in this preferences page displays the custom engines that have been defined. Use the + New or Edit button at the bottom of the table to open a dialog box that allows you to add or configure a custom engine.

Figure 29. Parameters of a Custom Engine

The following parameters can be configured for a custom engine:

**Engine type**

Specifies the transformer type. You can choose between XSLT and XQuery engines.

**Name**

The name of the transformer displayed in the dialog box for editing transformation scenarios.

**Description**

A textual description of the transformer.

**Working directory**
The start directory of the executable program for the transformer. The following editor variables (on page 162) are available for making the path to the working directory independent of the location of the input files:

- \${homeDir} - The user home directory in the operating system.
- \${cfd} - The path to the directory of the current file.
- \${pd} - The path to the directory of the current project.
- \${oxygenInstallDir} - The Oxygen XML Developer plugin install directory.

Command line

The command line that must be executed by Oxygen XML Developer plugin to perform a transformation with the engine. The following editor variables (on page 162) are available for making the parameters in the command line (the transformer executable, the input files) independent of the location of the input files:

- \${xml} - The XML input document as a file path.
- \${xmlu} - The XML input document as a URL.
- \${xsl} - The XSL / XQuery input document as a file path.
- \${xslu} - The XSL / XQuery input document as a URL.
- \${out} - The output document as a file path.
- \${outu} - The output document as a URL.
- \${ps} - The platform separator that is used between library file names specified in the class path.

Output Encoding

The encoding of the transformer output stream.

Error Encoding

The encoding of the transformer error stream.

Debugger Preferences

To configure the Debugger preferences, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XSLT-XQuery > Debugger.

The following options are available:

Show xsl:result-document output

If selected, the debugger presents the output of xsl:result-document instructions into the debugger output view.

Infinite loop detection
Select this option to receive notifications when an infinite loop occurs during transformation.

**Enable Saxon optimizations**

This option is not selected by default and this means that the optimization for the debugging process is suppressed. This is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

**Maximum depth in templates stack**

Allows you to set how many `xsl:template` instructions can appear on the current stack. This setting is used by the infinite loop detection.

**Debugger layout**

If you select the **Horizontal** layout, the stack of XML editors is presented on the left half of the editing area while the stack of XSL editors is on the right half. If you select the **Vertical** layout, the stack of XML editors is presented on the upper half of the editing area while the stack of XSL editors is on the lower half.

**XWatch evaluation timeout (seconds)**

Allows you to specify the maximum time that Oxygen XML Developer plugin allocates to the evaluation of XPath expressions while debugging.

**Profiler Preferences**

This section explains the settings available for the XSLT/XQuery Profiler. To access and modify these settings, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XSLT-XQuery > Profiler (see Debugger Preferences (on page 144)).

The following profiler settings are available:

**Show time**

Shows the total time that was spent in the call.

**Show inherent time**

Shows the inherent time that was spent in the call. The inherent time is defined as the total time of a call minus the time of its child calls.

**Show invocation count**

Shows how many times the call was called in this particular call sequence.

**Time scale**

Determines the unit of time measurement. You can choose between milliseconds or microseconds.
Hotspot threshold

Hotspots are ignored below this specified amount (in milliseconds). For more information, see Hotspots View (on page 1521).

Ignore invocation less than

Invocations are ignored below this specified amount (in microseconds). For more information, see Invocation Tree View (on page 1519).

Percentage calculation

The percentage base that determines what time span percentages are calculated against. You can choose between the following:

- **Absolute** - Percentage values show the contribution to the total time.
- **Relative** - Percentage values show the contribution to the calling call.

XPath Preferences

To configure XPath options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XSLT-XQuery > XPath.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to customize the following options:

**Unescape XPath expression**

If selected, the entities of an XPath expression that you type in the XPath/XQuery Builder (on page 1394) are unescaped during their execution. For example, the expression:

```
//varlistentry[starts-with(@os,'&#x73;')]
```

is equivalent to:

```
//varlistentry[starts-with(@os,'s')]
```

**XPath Default Namespace (only for XPath version 2.0)**

Specifies the default namespace to be used for unprefixed element names. You can choose between the following four options:

- **No namespace** - If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin considers unprefixed element names of the evaluated XPath expressions as belonging to no namespace.
- **Use the default namespace from the root element** (default selection) - Oxygen XML Developer plugin considers unprefixed element names of the evaluated XPath expressions as belonging to the default namespace declared on the root element of the XML document you are querying.
• **Use the namespace of the root** - If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin considers unprefixed element names of the evaluated XPath expressions as belonging to the same namespace as the root element of the XML document you are querying.

• **This namespace** - If selected, you can use the corresponding text field to enter the namespace of the unprefixed elements.

**Default prefix-namespace mappings**

You can use this table to associate prefixes with namespaces. Use these mappings when you want to define them globally (not for each document). Use the **New** button to add mappings to the list and the **Delete** button to remove mappings.

**XQuery Preferences**

To configure the XQuery options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to **XML > XSLT-XQuery > XQuery**.

The following generic XQuery preferences are available:

**Validation engine**

Allows you to select the processor that will be used to validate XQuery documents. If you are validating an XQuery file that has an associated validation scenario, Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the processor specified in the scenario. If no validation scenario is associated, but the file has an associated transformation scenario, the processor specified in the scenario is used. If the processor does not support validation or if no scenario is associated, then the value from this combo box will be used as validation processor.

**Size limit of Sequence view (MB)**

When the result of an XQuery transformation is set as a sequence (Present as a sequence option (on page 915)) in the transformation scenario, the size of one chunk of the result that is fetched from the database in lazy mode in one step is set in this option. If this limit is exceeded, go to the **Sequence view (on page 668)** and click **More results available** to extract more data from the database.

**Format transformer output**

Specifies whether or not the output of the transformer is formatted and indented (pretty-print (on page 1625)).

**Note:** This option is ignored if you choose Present as a sequence (on page 915) (lazy extract data from a database) from the associated transformation scenario.

**Create structure indicating the type nodes**
If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin takes the results of a query and creates an XML document containing copies of all items in the sequence, suitably wrapped.

**Note:** This option is ignored if you choose **Present as a sequence** *(on page 915)* (lazy extract data from a database) from the associated transformation scenario.

**Saxon-HE/PE/EE Preferences**

To configure global options for XQuery transformation and validation scenarios that use the Saxon HE/PE/EE engine, open the Preferences dialog box *(on page 42)* and go to XML > XSLT-XQuery > XQuery > Saxon-HE/PE/EE.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to configure the following XQuery options for the Saxon 9.8.0.12 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE), and Enterprise Edition (EE):

**Use a configuration file** *("-config")*

Sets a Saxon 9.8.0.12 configuration file that is used for XQuery transformation and validation scenarios.

**Enable Optimizations** *("-opt")*

This option is selected by default, which means that optimization is enabled. If not selected, the optimization is suppressed, which is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

**Use linked tree model** *("-tree:linked")*

This option activates the linked tree model.

**Recoverable errors** *("-warnings")*

Specifies how dynamic errors are handled. The following options can be selected:

- **Recover silently** *("silent")* - Continues processing without reporting the error.
- **Recover with warnings** *("recover")* - Issues a warning but continues processing.
- **Signal the error and do not attempt recovery** *("fatal")* - Issues an error and stops processing.

**Strip whitespaces** *("-strip")*

Specifies how the strip whitespaces operation is handled. You can choose one of the following values:

- **All** *("all")* - Strips all whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any xml:space attributes in the source document.
• **Ignore** ("ignoreable") - Strips all *ignorable* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `xml:space` attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.

• **None** ("none") - Strips *no* whitespace before further processing.

The following option is available for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Professional Edition (PE) and Enterprise Edition (EE) only:

**Allow calls on extension functions** ("-ext")

If selected, calls on external functions are allowed. Selecting this option is recommended in an environment where untrusted stylesheets may be executed. It also disables user-defined extension elements and the writing of multiple output files, both of which carry similar security risks.

The options available specifically for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

**Validation of the source file** ("-val")

Requests schema-based validation of the source file and of any files read using `document()` or similar functions. It can have the following values:

• **Schema validation** ("strict") - This mode requires an XML Schema and allows for parsing the source documents with strict schema-validation enabled.

• **Lax schema validation** ("lax") - If an XML Schema is provided, this mode allows for parsing the source documents with schema-validation enabled but the validation will not fail if, for example, element declarations are not found.

• **Disable schema validation** - This specifies that the source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.

**Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings** ("-outval")

Normally, if validation of result documents is requested, a validation error is fatal. Selecting this option causes such validation failures to be treated as warnings.

**Write comments for non-fatal validation errors of the result document**

The validation messages for non-fatal errors are written (wherever possible) as a comment in the result document itself.

**Enable XQuery update** ("-update:(on|off)")

This option controls whether or not XQuery update syntax is accepted. The default value is off.

**Backup files updated by XQuery** ("-backup:(on|off)")
If selected, backup versions for any XML files updated with an XQuery Update are generated. This option is available when the Enable XQuery update option is selected.

Saxon HE/PE/EE Advanced Preferences

To configure Saxon HE/PE/EE Advanced preferences, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XSLT-XQuery > XQuery > Saxon-HE/PE/EE > Advanced.

The advanced XQuery options that can be configured for the Saxon 9.8.0.12 XQuery transformer (all editions: Home Edition, Professional Edition, Enterprise Edition) are as follows:

- **URI Resolver class name** - Allows you to specify a custom implementation for the URI resolver used by the XQuery Saxon 9.8.0.12 transformer (the -r option when run from the command line). The class name must be fully specified and the corresponding JAR or class extension must be configured from the dialog box for configuring the XQuery extension (on page 894) for the particular transformation scenario.

  **Note:** If your URIResolver implementation does not recognize the given resource, the resolve(String href, String base) method should return a null value. Otherwise, the given resource will not be resolved through the XML Catalog (on page 460).

- **Collection URI Resolver class name** - Allows you to specify a custom implementation for the Collection URI resolver used by the XQuery Saxon 9.8.0.12 transformer (the -cr option when run from the command line). The class name must be fully specified and the corresponding JAR or class extension must be configured from the dialog box for configuring the XQuery extension (on page 894) for the particular transformation scenario.

XSLT Preferences

To configure the XSLT options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XSLT-XQuery > XSLT.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers the possibility of using an XSLT transformer implemented in Java (other than the XSLT transformers that come bundled with Oxygen XML Developer plugin). To use another XSLT transformer, specify the name of the transformer factory class. Oxygen XML Developer plugin sets this transformer factory class as the value of the Java property: javax.xml.transform.TransformerFactory.

The XSLT preferences page allows you to customize the following options:

- **JAXP XSLT Transformer - Value**

  Allows you to set the value of the TransformerFactory Java class.

- **Validation engine - XSLT 1.0**
Allows you to select the XSLT engine to be used for validation of XSLT 1.0 documents.

**Validation engine - XSLT 2.0**

Allows you to select the XSLT engine to be used for validation of XSLT 2.0 documents.

**Validation engine - XSLT 3.0**

Allows you to select the XSLT engine to be used for validation of XSLT 3.0 documents.

**Note:** Saxon-HE does not implement any XSLT 3.0 features. Saxon-PE implements a selection of XSLT 3.0 (and XPath 3.1) features, with the exception of schema-awareness and streaming. Saxon-EE implements additional features relating to streaming (processing of a source document without constructing a tree in memory. For further details about XSLT 3.0 conformance, go to [http://www.saxonica.com/documentation/index.html#!conformance/xslt30](http://www.saxonica.com/documentation/index.html#!conformance/xslt30).

**XSLT Editor Content Completion Options link**

Use this link to switch to the XSLT Content Completion preferences page (on page 90), where you can configure the XSLT content completion options.

**MSXML Preferences**

To configure the MSXML options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XSLT-XQuery > XSLT > MSXML.

The options in this preferences page for the MSXML 3.0 and 4.0 processors are as follows:

**Validate documents during parse phase**

If selected, and either the source or stylesheet document has a DTD or schema that its content can be checked against, validation is performed.

**Do not resolve external definitions during parse phase**

By default, MSXML instructs the parser to resolve external definitions such as document type definition (DTD), external subsets or external entity references when parsing the source and style sheet documents. If this option is selected, the resolution is disabled.

**Strip non-significant whitespaces**

If selected, strips non-significant white space from the input XML document during the load phase. Selecting this option can lower memory usage and improve transformation performance while, in most cases, creating equivalent output.

**Show time information**

If selected, the relative speed of various transformation steps can be measured, including:
• The time to load, parse, and build the input document.
• The time to load, parse, and build the stylesheet document.
• The time to compile the stylesheet in preparation for the transformation.
• The time to execute the stylesheet.

**Start transformation in this mode**

Although stylesheet execution usually begins in the empty mode, this default behavior may be changed by specifying another mode. Changing the start mode allows execution to jump directly to an alternate group of templates.

**MSXML.NET Preferences**

To configure the **MSXML.NET** options, open the **Preferences** dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XSLT-XQuery > XSLT > MSXML.NET.

The options in this preferences page for the MSXML.NET processor are as follows:

**Enable XInclude processing**

If selected, XInclude references will be resolved when MSXML.NET is used as the transformer in the XSLT transformation scenario (on page 857).

**Validate documents during parse phase**

If selected, and either the source or stylesheet document has a DTD or schema that its content can be checked against, validation is performed.

**Do not resolve external definitions during parse phase**

By default, MSXML instructs the parser to resolve external definitions such as document type definition (DTD), external subsets or external entity references when parsing the source and style sheet documents. If this option is selected, the resolution is disabled.

**Strip non-significant whitespaces**

If selected, strips non-significant white space from the input XML document during the load phase. Selecting this option can lower memory usage and improve transformation performance while, in most cases, creating equivalent output.

**Show time information**

If selected, the relative speed of various transformation steps can be measured, including:

• The time to load, parse, and build the input document.
• The time to load, parse, and build the stylesheet document.
• The time to compile the stylesheet in preparation for the transformation.
• The time to execute the stylesheet.
Forces ASCII output encoding

There is a known problem with the .NET 1.X XSLT processor (System.Xml.Xsl.XsltTransform class). It does not support escaping of characters as XML character references when they cannot be represented in the output encoding. This means that it will be outputted as ‘?’ . Usually this happens when output encoding is set to ASCII. If this option is selected, the output is forced to be ASCII encoded and all non-ASCII characters get escaped as XML character references ( &#nnnn; form).

Allow multiple output documents

This option allows you to create multiple result documents using the exsl:document extension element.

Use named URI resolver class

This option allows you to specify a custom URI resolver class to resolve URI references in xsl:import and xsl:include instructions (during XSLT stylesheet loading phase) and in document() functions (during XSL transformation phase).

Assembly file name for URI resolver class

This option specifies a file name of the assembly where the specified resolver class can be found. The Use named URI resolver class option (on page 153) specifies a partially or fully qualified URI resolver class name (for example, Acme.Resolvers.CacheResolver). Such a name requires additional assembly specification using this option or the Assembly GAC name for URI resolver class option (on page 153), but fully qualified class name (which always includes an assembly specifier) is all-sufficient. See MSDN for more info about fully qualified class names.

Assembly GAC name for URI resolver class

This option specifies partially or fully qualified name of the assembly in the global assembly cache (GAC) where the specified resolver class can be found. See MSDN for more info about partial assembly names.

List of extension object class names

This option allows to specify extension object classes, whose public methods then can be used as extension functions in an XSLT stylesheet. It is a comma-separated list of namespace-qualified extension object class names. Each class name must be bound to a namespace URI using prefixes, similar to providing XSLT parameters.

Use specified EXSLT assembly

MSXML.NET supports a rich library of the EXSLT and EXSLT.NET extension functions embedded or in a plugin EXSLT.NET library. EXSLT support is enabled by default and cannot be disabled in this version. Use this option if you want to use an external EXSLT.NET implementation instead of a built-in one.
Credential loading source xml

This option allows you to specify user credentials to be used when loading XML source documents. The credentials should be provided in the username:password@domain format (all parts are optional).

Credential loading stylesheet

This option allows you to specify user credentials to be used when loading XSLT stylesheet documents. The credentials should be provided in the username:password@domain format (all parts are optional).

Saxon-HE/PE/EE Preferences

To configure global options for XSLT transformation and validation scenarios that use the Saxon HE/PE/EE engine, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XSLT-XQuery > XSLT > Saxon > Saxon-HE/PE/EE.

Saxon-HE/PE/EE Options

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to configure the following XSLT options for the Saxon 9.8.0.12 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE), and Enterprise Edition (EE):

Use a configuration file (“-config”)

Select this option if you want to use a Saxon 9.8.0.12 configuration file that will be executed for the XSLT transformation and validation processes. You can specify the path to the configuration file by entering it in the URL field, or by using the Insert Editor Variables button, or using the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

Debugger trace into XPath expressions (applies to debugging sessions)

Instructs the XSLT Debugger (on page 1513) to step into XPath expressions.

Enable Optimizations (“-opt”)

This option is selected by default, which means that optimization is enabled. If not selected, the optimization is suppressed, which is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

Line numbering (“-l”)

Line numbers where errors occur are included in the output messages.

Expand attributes defaults (“-expand”)

Specifies whether or not the attributes defined in the associated DTD or XML Schema are expanded in the output of the transformation you are executing.
DTD validation of the source ("-dtd")

Specifies whether or not the source document will be validated against their associated DTD. You can choose from the following:

- **On** - Requests DTD validation of the source file and of any files read using the `document()` function.
- **Off** - (default setting) Suppresses DTD validation.
- **Recover** - Performs DTD validation but treats the errors as non-fatal.

**Note:** Any external DTD is likely to be read even if not used for validation, since DTDs can contain definitions of entities.

Recoverable errors ("-warnings")

Specifies how dynamic errors are handled. The following options can be selected:

- **Recover silently** ("silent") - Continues processing without reporting the error.
- **Recover with warnings** ("recover") - Issues a warning but continues processing.
- **Signal the error and do not attempt recovery** ("fatal") - Issues an error and stops processing.

Strip whitespaces ("-strip")

Specifies how the `strip whitespaces` operation is handled. You can choose one of the following values:

- **All** ("all") - Strips all whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `xml:space` attributes in the source document.
- **Ignore** (" ignorable") - Strips all ignorable whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `xml:space` attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.
- **None** ("none") - Strips no whitespace before further processing.

Saxon-PE/EE Options

The following options are available for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Professional Edition (PE) and Enterprise Edition (EE) only:

**Register Saxon-JS extension functions and instructions**

Registers the Saxon-CE extension functions and instructions when compiling a stylesheet using the Saxon 9.8.0.12 processors.
Note: Saxon-CE, being JavaScript-based, was designed to run inside a web browser. This means that you will use Oxygen XML Developer plugin only for developing the Saxon-CE stylesheet, leaving the execution part to a web browser. See more details about executing such a stylesheet on Saxonica’s website.

Allow calls on extension functions ("-ext")

If selected, the stylesheet is allowed to call external Java functions. This does not affect calls on integrated extension functions, including Saxon and EXSLT extension functions. This option is useful when loading an untrusted stylesheet (such as from a remote site using http://[URL]). It ensures that the stylesheet cannot call arbitrary Java methods and thus gain privileged access to resources on your machine.

Enable assertions ("-ea")

In XSLT 3.0, you can use the xsl:assert element to make assertions in the form of XPath expressions, causing a dynamic error if the assertion turns out to be false. If this option is selected, XSLT 3.0 xsl:assert instructions are enabled. If it is not selected (default), the assertions are ignored.

Saxon-EE Options

The options available specifically for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Validation of the source file ("-val")

Requests schema-based validation of the source file and of any files read using document() or similar functions. It can have the following values:

- **Schema validation ("strict")** - This mode requires an XML Schema and allows for parsing the source documents with strict schema-validation enabled.
- **Lax schema validation ("lax")** - If an XML Schema is provided, this mode allows for parsing the source documents with schema-validation enabled but the validation will not fail if, for example, element declarations are not found.
- **Disable schema validation** - This specifies that the source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.

Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings ("-outval")

Normally, if validation of result documents is requested, a validation error is fatal. Selecting this option causes such validation failures to be treated as warnings.

Write comments for non-fatal validation errors of the result document

The validation messages for non-fatal errors are written (wherever possible) as a comment in the result document itself.
Saxon-HE/PE/EE Advanced Preferences

To configure the Saxon HE/PE/EE Advanced preferences, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XSLT-XQuery > XSLT > Saxon > Saxon-HE/PE/EE > Advanced.


- **URI Resolver class name** ("-r") - Specifies a custom implementation for the URI resolver used by the XSLT Saxon 9.8.0.12 transformer (the -r option when run from the command line). The class name must be fully specified and the corresponding jar or class extension must be configured from the dialog box for configuring the XSLT extension (on page 894) for the particular transformation scenario.

- **Collection URI Resolver class name** ("-cr") - Specifies a custom implementation for the Collection URI resolver used by the XSLT Saxon 9.8.0.12 transformer (the -cr option when run from the command line). The class name must be fully specified and the corresponding jar or class extension must be configured from the dialog box for configuring the XSLT extension (on page 894) for the particular transformation scenario.

Saxon6 Preferences

To configure the Saxon 6 options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XSLT-XQuery > XSLT > Saxon > Saxon6.

The built-in Saxon 6 XSLT processor can be configured with the following options:

- **Line numbering** - Specifies whether or not line numbers are maintained and reported in error messages for the XML source document.

- **Disable calls on extension functions** - If selected, external function calls are not allowed. Selecting this option is recommended in an environment where untrusted stylesheets may be executed. It also disables user-defined extension elements and the writing of multiple output files, since they carry similar security risks.

- **Handling of recoverable stylesheet errors** - Allows you to choose how dynamic errors are handled. One of the following options can be selected:
  - **recover silently** - Continue processing without reporting the error.
  - **recover with warnings** - Issue a warning but continue processing.
  - **signal the error and do not attempt recovery** - Issue an error and stop processing.

XSLTProc Preferences

To configure XSLTProc options, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XSLT-XQuery > XSLT > XSLTProc.
The following options are available in this preferences page:

- **Enable XInclude processing** - If selected, XInclude references will be resolved when XSLTProc is used as transformer in XSLT transformation scenarios (on page 857).
- **Skip loading the document's DTD** - If selected, the DTD specified in the DOCTYPE declaration will not be loaded.
- **Do not apply default attributes from document's DTD** - If selected, the default attributes declared in the DTD and not specified in the document are not included in the transformed document.
- **Do not use Internet to fetch DTD's, entities or docs** - If selected, the remote references to DTD's and entities are not followed.
- **Maximum depth in templates stack** - If this limit of maximum templates depth is reached the transformation ends with an error.
- **Verbosity** - If selected, the transformation will output detailed status messages about the transformation process in the **Warnings** view.
- **Show version of libxml and libxslt used** - If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will display in the **Warnings** view the version of the libxml and libxslt libraries invoked by XSLTProc.
- **Show time information** - If selected, the **Warnings** view will display the time necessary for running the transformation.
- **Show debug information** - If selected, the **Warnings** view will display debug information about what templates are matched, parameter values, and so on.
- **Show all documents loaded during processing** - If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will display in the **Warnings** view the URL of all the files loaded during transformation.
- **Show profile information** - If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will display in the **Warnings** view a table with all the matched templates, and for each template will display: the match XPath expression, the template name, the number of template modes, the number of calls, the execution time.
- **Show the list of registered extensions** - If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will display in the **Warnings** view a list with all the registered extension functions, extension elements and extension modules.
- **Refuses to write to any file or resource** - If selected, the XSLTProc processor will not write any part of the transformation result to an external file on disk. If such an operation is requested by the processed XSLT stylesheet the transformation ends with a runtime error.
- **Refuses to create directories** - If selected, the XSLTProc processor will not create any directory during the transformation process. If such an operation is requested by the processed XSLT stylesheet the transformation ends with a runtime error.

**XML Structure Outline Preferences**

To configure options regarding the Outline view (on page 217), open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML Structure Outline. It contains the following options:
**Preferred attribute names for display**

The preferred attribute names when displaying the attributes of an element in the **Outline** view. If there is no preferred attribute name specified, the first attribute of an element is displayed.

**Enable outline drag and drop**

Drag and drop is disabled for the tree displayed in the **Outline** view only if there is a possibility to accidentally change the structure of the document by such operations.

---

**Configuring Options**

A set of options controls the behavior of Oxygen XML Developer plugin, allowing you to configure most of the features. To offer you the highest degree of flexibility in customizing the application to fit the needs of your organization, Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes several distinct layers of option values.

The option layers are as follows (sorted from high priority to low):

- **Global Options** ([on page 42](page:42))

  Allows individual users to personalize Oxygen XML Developer plugin according to their specific needs.

- **Customized Default Options** ([on page 159](page:159))

  Designed to customize the initial option values for a group of users, this layer allows an administrator to deploy the application preconfigured with a standardized set of option values.

  **Note**: Once this layer is set, it represents the initial state of Oxygen XML Developer plugin when an end-user selects the **Restore defaults** ([on page 43](page:43)) or **Reset Global Options** ([on page 161](page:161)) actions.

- **Default Options**

  The predefined default values, tuned so that Oxygen XML Developer plugin behaves optimally in most working environments.

  **Important**: If you set a specific option in one of the layers, but it is not applied in the application, make sure that one of the higher priority layers does not overwrite it.
Customizing Default Options

Oxygen XML Developer plugin has an extensive set of options that you can configure. When Oxygen XML Developer plugin in installed, these options are set to default values. You can provide a different set of default values for an installation using an XML options file.

Creating an XML Options File

To create an options file, follow these steps:

1. It is recommended that you use a fresh install for this procedure, to make sure that you do not copy personal or local preferences.
2. Open Oxygen XML Developer plugin and open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42).
3. Go through the options and set them to the desired defaults.
4. Go to back to the main preferences page and click Export Global Options to create an XML options file.

Configuring an Installation to Use Customized Default Options

There are several methods that you can use to configure an Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation to use the customized default options from the created XML options file.

The possible methods for using customized default options during an installation include:

- **Copy the XML Options File to the Installation Directory**

  In the `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}`, create a folder called `preferences` and copy the created XML options file into it (for example: `{ECLIPSE-INSTALL-DIR}/plugins/com.oxygenxml.developer/preferences/default.xml`, or if the plugin was installed as a drop-in: `{ECLIPSE-INSTALL-DIR}/dropins/com.oxygenxml.developer/plugins/com.oxygenxml.developer/preferences/default.xml`).

- **Specify a Path to the XML Options File in a Startup Parameter**

  Set the path to the XML options file as the value of the `com.oxygenxml.default.options` system property in the Eclipse configuration file (`{ECLIPSE-INSTALL-DIR}/configuration/config.ini`). The path can be specified with any of the following:

  - A URL or file path relative to the application installation folder. For example:

    ```
    com.oxygenxml.default.options=file:\default.xml
    ```

  This will make Oxygen XML Developer plugin look for `default.xml` inside the installation folder (for example: `{ECLIPSE-INSTALL-DIR}/plugins/com.oxygenxml.developer/preferences/default.xml`, or if the plugin was installed...

* A system variable that specifies the file path. For example:

```
com.oxygenxml.default.options=file:${system(CONFIG)}/default.xml
```

* An environmental variable that specifies the file path. For example:

```
com.oxygenxml.default.options=file:${env(CONFIG)}/default.xml
```

**Note:** In the Eclipse configuration file, the backslash (\) is considered a special character. Therefore, use forward slashes for separators inside the file path.

### Importing/Exporting/Resetting Global Options

Actions for importing, exporting, and resetting global options are available in the preferences page of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin. To open this page, open the **Preferences** dialog box (on page 42). The export operation allows you to save global preferences as an XML options file and the import operation allows you to load the options file. You can use this file to reload the options on your computer or to share with others.

The following buttons are available at the bottom of the preferences page:

**Reset Global Options**

Restores the preference to the factory defaults or to customized defaults (on page 159). This action also resets the transformation and validation scenarios to the default scenarios and clears recently used document templates.

**Import Global Options**

Allows you to import a set of **Global Options** from an exported XML properties file. You can also select a project file (.xpr) to import all the **Global Options** that are set in that project file. After you select a file, the **Import Global Options** dialog box is displayed, and it informs you that the operation will only override the options that are included in the imported file. You can select the **Reset all other options to their default values** option to reset all options to the default values before the file is imported.

**Export Global Options**

Allows you to export **Global Options** to an XML properties file. Some user-specific options that are private are not included. For example, passwords and the name of the **Review Author** is not included in the export operation.
Import/Export Transformation or Validation Scenarios

You can export global transformation and validation scenarios into specialized scenarios files. You can import transformation and validation scenarios from various sources (such as project files, framework option files, or exported scenario files). To access these import and export actions, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Scenarios Management. The following actions are available:

- **Import Global Transformation Scenarios**
  - Loads a set of transformation scenarios from a project file, framework options file, or exported scenarios file.

- **Export Global Transformation Scenarios**
  - Stores a set of global transformation scenarios in a specialized scenarios file.

- **Import Global Validation Scenarios**
  - Loads a set of validation scenarios from a project file, framework options file, or exported scenarios file.

- **Export Global Validation Scenarios**
  - Stores a set of global validation scenarios in a specialized scenarios file.

The Export Global Transformation Scenarios and Export Global Validation Scenarios options are used to store all the scenarios in a separate file. Associations between document URLs and scenarios are also saved in this file. You can load the saved scenarios using the Import Global Transformation Scenarios and Import Global Validation Scenarios actions. To distinguish the existing scenarios and the imported ones, the names of the imported scenarios contain the word import.

Editor Variables

An editor variable is a shorthand notation for context-dependent information, such as a file or folder path, a time-stamp, or a date. It is used in the definition of a command (for example, the input URL of a transformation, the output file path of a transformation, or the command line of an external tool) to make a command or a parameter generic and re-usable with other input files. When the same command is applied to multiple files, the notation is expanded at the execution of the command so that the same command has different effects depending on the actual file.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a variety of built-in editor variables. You can also create your own custom editor variables (on page 169) by using the Custom Editor Variables preferences page (on page 46).
You can use the following editor variables in Oxygen XML Developer plugin commands of external engines or other external tools, and in various places in the application, such as in transformation scenarios, and validation scenarios:

- **${activeConditionSet}** - Current active profiling condition set name. If there is no active condition set, the variable will be replaced with an *empty string*.
- **${af}** - The local file path of the ZIP archive that includes the current edited document.
- **${afd}** - The local directory path of the ZIP archive that includes the current edited document.
- **${afdu}** - The URL path of the directory of the ZIP archive that includes the current edited document.
- **${afn}** - The file name (without parent directory and without file extension) of the zip archive that includes the current edited file.
- **${afne}** - The file name (with file extension, for example .zip or .epub, but without parent directory) of the zip archive that includes the current edited file.
- **${afu}** - The URL path of the ZIP archive that includes the current edited document.
- **${answer(@id)}** - Used in conjunction with the **${ask}** editor variable. The @id parameter is required and identifies the answer from the **${ask}** editor variable with the same ID.

Example:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE topic PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DITA Topic//EN" "topic.dtd">
<topic id="topic_lcf_1c4_tdb">
  <title></title>
  <body>
    <data name="${ask('Set a data name', String, 'name', @name)}"></data>
    <p>The name is: ${answer(@name)}</p>
  </body>
</topic>
```

- **${ask('message', type, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1'; 'real_value2':'rendered_value2'; ...), 'default_value', @id)}** - To prompt for values at runtime, use the ask('message', type, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1'; 'real_value2':'rendered_value2'; ...), 'default-value') editor variable. You can set the following parameters:
  - **message** - The displayed message. Note the quotes that enclose the message.
  - **default-value** - Optional parameter. Provides a default value.
  - **@id** - Optional parameter. Used for identifying the variable to reuse the answer using the **${answer(@id)}** editor variable.
  - **type** - Optional parameter, with one of the following values:

  **Note:** The title of the dialog box will be determined by the type of parameter and as follows:
For *url* and *relative_url* parameters, the title will be the name of the parameter and the value of the *message*.

For the other parameters listed below, the title will be the name of that respective parameter.

If no parameter is used, the title will be "Input".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Format: ${ask('message', parameter, 'default_value')}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>url</td>
<td>${ask('message', url, 'default_value')}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Description:** Input is considered a URL. Oxygen XML Developer plugin checks that the provided URL is valid.

**Example:**
- $\{ask('Input URL', url)\} - The displayed dialog box has the name *Input URL*. The expected input type is URL.
- $\{ask('Input URL', url, 'http://www.example.com')\} - The displayed dialog box has the name *Input URL*. The expected input type is URL. The input field displays the default value *http://www.example.com*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Format: ${ask('message', password, 'default')}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>${ask('message', password, 'default')}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Description:** The input is hidden with bullet characters.

**Example:**
- $\{ask('Input password', password)\} - The displayed dialog box has the name *Input password* and the input is hidden with bullet symbols.
- $\{ask('Input password', password, 'abcd')\} - The displayed dialog box has the name *Input password* and the input hidden with bullet symbols. The input field already contains the default *abcd* value.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Format: ${ask('message', generic, 'default')}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>generic</td>
<td>${ask('message', generic, 'default')}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Description:** The input is considered to be generic text that requires no special handling.

**Example:**
- $\{ask('Hello world!')\} - The dialog box has a *Hello world!* message displayed.
- $\{ask('Hello world!', generic, 'Hello again!')\} - The dialog box has a *Hello world!* message displayed and the value displayed in the input box is *Hello again!*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Format: ${ask('message', relative_url, 'default')}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>relative_url</td>
<td>${ask('message', relative_url, 'default')}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Description:** Input is considered a URL. Oxygen XML Developer plugin tries to make the URL relative to that of the document you are editing.

**Note:** If the $\textit{ask}$ editor variable is expanded in content that is not yet saved (such as an *untitled* file, whose path cannot be determined),
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>then Oxygen XML Developer plugin will transform it into an absolute URL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>${ask('File location', relative_url, 'C:/example.txt')}) - The dialog box has the name 'File location'. The URL inserted in the input box is made relative to the current edited document location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>combobox</td>
<td><strong>Format:</strong> ${ask('message', combobox, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1';...;'real_valueN':'rendered_valueN'), 'default'))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description:</td>
<td>Displays a dialog box that offers a drop-down menu. The drop-down menu is populated with the given rendered_value values. Choosing such a value will return its associated value (real_value).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>The 'default' parameter specifies the default selected value and can match either a key or a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■</td>
<td>${ask('Operating System', combobox, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'osx':'Mac OS X';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'osx'}) - The dialog box has the name 'Operating System'. The drop-down menu displays the three given operating systems. The associated value will be returned based upon your selection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>In this example, the default value is indicated by the osx key. However, the same result could be obtained if the default value is indicated by Mac OS X, as in the following example: ${ask('Operating System', combobox, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'osx':'Mac OS X';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'Mac OS X'})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■</td>
<td>${ask('Mobile OS', combobox, ('win':&quot;Windows Mobile&quot;;'ios':&quot;iOS&quot;;'and':&quot;Android&quot;), 'Android'})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>editable_combobox</td>
<td><strong>Format:</strong> ${ask('message', editable_combobox, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1';...;'real_valueN':'rendered_valueN'), 'default'))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description:</td>
<td>Displays a dialog box that offers a drop-down menu with editable elements. The drop-down menu is populated with the given rendered_value values. Choosing such a value will return its associated real value (real_value) or the value inserted when you edit a list entry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>The 'default' parameter specifies the default selected value and can match either a key or a value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Parameter | Example:
--- | ---

`$\{ask('Operating System', editable_combobox, ('win': 'Microsoft Windows'; 'osx': 'Mac OS X'; 'lnx': 'Linux/UNIX'), 'osx')\}` - The dialog box has the name ‘Operating System’. The drop-down menu displays the three given operating systems and also allows you to edit the entry. The associated value will be returned based upon your selection or the text you input.

**radio**

| Format: | `$\{ask('message', radio, ('real_value1': 'rendered_value1'; ...; 'real_valueN': 'rendered_valueN'), 'default')\}` |
| Description: | Displays a dialog box that offers a series of radio buttons. Each radio button displays a ‘rendered_value’ and will return an associated `real_value`. |
| Note: | The ‘default’ parameter specifies the default selected value and can match either a key or a value. |

**Example:**

`$\{ask('Operating System', radio, ('win': 'Microsoft Windows'; 'osx': 'Mac OS X'; 'lnx': 'Linux/UNIX'), 'osx')\}` - The dialog box has the name ‘Operating System’. The radio button group allows you to choose between the three operating systems.

| Note: | In this example, Mac OS X is the default selected value and if selected, it would return `osx` for the output. |

- `$\{caret\}` - The position where the cursor is located. This variable can be used in a code template, in Author mode operations, or in a selection plugin.
- `$\{cf\}` - Current file as file path, that is the absolute file path of the current edited document.
- `$\{cfd\}` - Current file folder as file path, that is the path of the current edited document up to the name of the parent folder.
- `$\{cfdu\}` - Current file folder as URL, that is the path of the current edited document up to the name of the parent folder, represented as a URL.
- `$\{cfm\}` - Current file name without extension and without parent folder. The current file is the one currently opened and selected.
- `$\{cfne\}` - Current file name with extension. The current file is the one currently opened and selected.
- `$\{comma\}` - Used to display a comma when the actual comma symbol would be considered part of some sort of instruction or delimiter.
- `$\{configured.ditaot.dir\}` - The default directory of the DITA Open Toolkit distribution, as configured in the DITA preferences page (on page 53).
- ${cp} - Current page number. Used to display the current page number on each printed page in the Editor / Print Preferences page.

- ${currentFileURL} - Current file as URL, that is the absolute file path of the current edited document represented as URL.

- ${date(pattern)} - Current date. The allowed patterns are equivalent to the ones in the Java SimpleDateFormat class. Example: yyyy-MM-dd,

  Note: This editor variable supports both the xs:date and xs:datetime parameters. For details about xs:date, go to: http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#date. For details about xs:datetime, go to: http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#dateTime.

- ${dbgXML} - The local file path to the XML document that is current selected in the Debugger source combo box (for tools started from the XSLT/XQuery Debugger).

- ${dbgXSL} - The local file path to the XSL/XQuery document that is current selected in the Debugger stylesheet combo box (for tools started from the XSLT/XQuery Debugger).

- ${dita.dir.url} - A special local contextual editor variable that gets expanded only in the Libraries dialog box that is accessible from the Advanced tab of DITA transformation scenarios. The Libraries dialog box allows you to specify additional libraries (JAR (on page 1623) files or additional class paths) to be used by the transformer. This ${dita.dir.url} editor variable gets expanded to the value of the dita.dir parameter from the Parameters tab of the DITA transformation scenario.

- ${ds} - The path of the detected schema as a local file path for the current validated XML document.

- ${dsu} - The path of the detected schema as a URL for the current validated XML document.

- ${env(VAR_NAME)} - Value of the VAR_NAME environment variable. The environment variables are managed by the operating system. If you are looking for Java System Properties, use the ${system(var.name)} editor variable.

- ${framework(fr_name)} - The path (as URL) of the fr_name framework.

- ${framework} - The path (as URL) of the current framework directory.

- ${frameworkDir(fr_name)} - The path (as file path) of the fr_name framework.

  Note: Since multiple frameworks might have the same name (although it is not recommended), for both ${framework(fr_name)} and ${frameworkDir(fr_name)} editor variables Oxygen XML Developer plugin employs the following algorithm when searching for a given framework name:

  ◦ All frameworks are sorted, from high to low, according to their Priority (on page 58) setting from the Document Type configuration dialog box (on page 57). Only frameworks that have the Enabled checkbox selected are taken into account.

  ◦ Next, if the two or more frameworks have the same name and priority, a further sorting based on the Storage setting is made, in the exact following order:

      ■ Frameworks stored in the internal Oxygen XML Developer plugin options.

      ■ Additional frameworks added in the Locations preferences page (on page 57).
Frameworks installed using the add-ons support.

Frameworks found in the main framework location (on page 57) (Default or Custom).

- \$\{frameworkDir\} - The path (as file path) of the current framework directory.
- \$\{frameworks\} - The path (as URL) of the frameworks directory.
- \$\{frameworksDir\} - The path (as file path) of the frameworks directory.
- \$\{home\} - The path (as URL) of the user home folder.
- \$\{homeDir\} - The path (as file path) of the user home folder.
- \$\{i18n(key)\} - Editor variable used only at framework-level to allow translating names and descriptions of Author mode actions in multiple actions.
- \$\{id\} - Application-level unique identifier. It is a short sequence of 10-12 letters and digits that is not guaranteed to be universally unique.
- \$\{makeRelative(base,location)\} - Takes two URL-like paths as parameters and tries to return a relative path. A use-case would be to insert content references to a certain reusable component when defining code templates.

Example:

\${makeRelative($\{currentFileURL\}, $\{dictionaryURL\}#gogu)}

- \$\{oxygenHome\} - Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation folder as URL.
- \$\{oxygenInstallDir\} - Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation folder as file path.
- \$\{pd\} - The file path to the folder that contains the current project file (.xpr).
- \$\{pdu\} - The URL path to the folder that contains the current project file (.xpr).
- \$\{pluginDir(pluginID)\} - Each plugin has an ID specified in its plugin.xml file. This editor variable expands to the file path of the folder that contains the plugin.xml file where that specific plugin ID is located.
- \$\{pluginDirURL(pluginID)\} - Each plugin has an ID specified in its plugin.xml file. This editor variable expands to the URL path of the folder that contains the plugin.xml file where that specific plugin ID is located.
- \$\{pn\} - Current project name.
- \$\{ps\} - Path separator, which is the separator that can be used on the current platform (Windows, OS X, Linux) between library files specified in the class path.
- \$\{rootMapDir\} - Will be expanded to the current root map parent directory file path.
- \$\{rootMapDirURL\} - Will be expanded to the current root map parent directory URL.
- \$\{rootMapFile\} - Will be expanded to the current root map file path.
- \$\{rootMapURL\} - Will be expanded to the current root map URL.
- \$\{selection\} - The current selected text content in the current edited document. This variable can be used in a code template, in Author mode operations, or in a selection plugin.
- \$\{system(var.name)\} - Value of the var.name Java System Property. The Java system properties can be specified in the command-line arguments of the Java runtime as -Dvar.name=var.value. If you are looking for operating system environment variables, use the \$\{env(VAR_NAME)\} editor variable instead.
- `${timeStamp}` - Time stamp, that is the current time in Unix format. For example, it can be used to save transformation results in multiple output files on each transformation.
- `${tp}` - Total number of pages in the document. Used to display the total number of pages on each printed page in the Editor / Print Preferences page.
- `${tsf}` - The transformation result file path. If the current opened file has an associated scenario that specifies a transformation output file, this variable expands to it.
- `${uuid}` - Universally unique identifier, a unique sequence of 32 hexadecimal digits generated by the Java UUID class.
- `${xmlCatalogFilesList}` - A list of file paths that point to all known XML catalog files, separated by semi-colons (;).
- `${xpath_eval(expression)}` - Evaluates an XPath expression. Depending on the context, the expression can be:
  - static - When executed in a non-XML context. For example, you can use such static expressions to perform string operations on other editor variables for composing the name of the output file in a transformation scenario's Output tab.

  Example:

  ```
  ${xpath_eval(upper-case(substring('${cfn}', 1, 4)))}
  ```

  - dynamic - When executed in an XML context. For example, you can use such dynamic expression in a code template or as a value of a parameter of an Author mode operation.

  Example:

  ```
  ${ask('Set new ID attribute', generic, '${xpath_eval(@id)}')}
  ```

### Custom Editor Variables

An editor variable (on page 162) can be created and included in any user-defined expression where a built-in editor variable is also allowed. For example, a custom editor variable may be necessary for configuring the command line of an external tool, the working directory of a custom validator, the command line of a custom XSLT engine, or a custom FO processor.

You can create or configure custom editor variables in the Custom Editor Variables preferences page (on page 46). To create a custom editor variable, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Custom Editor Variables.
2. Click the ✪ New button at the bottom of the table.
3. Use the subsequent dialog box to specify the Name, Value, and Description for the new editor variable.
4. Click OK to save your configuration.
Custom System Properties

A variety of Java system properties can be set in the application to influence its behavior.

**com.oxygenxml.disable.http.protocol.handlers**

- **Allowed Values:** true or false
- **Default Value:** false
- **Purpose:** By default, Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the open source Apache HTTP Client software for HTTP(S) connections. If set to true, the default Java Sun HTTP(S) will be used instead. You will also lose WebDAV support and possibly other related features.

**com.oxygenxml.present.license.reminders**

- **Allowed Values:** true or false
- **Default Value:** true
- **Purpose:** When set to false, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will not display the messages that remind you to renew your Support and Maintenance Pack that covers your current license.

**com.oxygenxml.enable.content.reference.caching**

- **Allowed Values:** true or false
- **Default Value:** true
- **Purpose:** Enables content reference caching.

**com.oxygenxml.eclipse.remove.grid.editing.mode**

- **Allowed Values:** true or false
- **Default Value:** false
- **Purpose:** When set to false, Oxygen XML Developer plugin does not show the Grid editing mode when opening an XML document.

**com.oxygenxml.default.java.accessibility**
• **Allowed Values:** true or false
• **Default Value:** false
• **Purpose:** System property that can be set to true to force the default detection of java accessibility. If com.sun.java.accessibility.AccessBridge cannot be loaded, Oxygen XML Developer plugin forces the Java accessibility to be disabled.

**com.oxygenxml.floating.license.timeout**

• **Allowed Values:** An integer (minutes)
• **Default Value:** 120
• **Purpose:** Stores the time interval (in minutes) before floating licenses are released in case of application's inactivity.

**com.oxygenxml.language**

• **Allowed Values:** Language code (for example, en-us)
• **Default Value:** N/A
• **Purpose:** Property that holds the language code set during installation.

**com.oxygenxml.default.options**

• **Allowed Values:** A URL-type relative or absolute path.
• **Default Value:** N/A
• **Purpose:** Provides the path to an XML file containing default application options. For more details, see Customizing Default Options (on page 159).

**com.oxygenxml.customOptionsDir**

• **Allowed Values:** A file system absolute path pointing to a folder.
• **Default Value:** N/A
• **Purpose:** Sets a folder to be used by the application to load and save preference files. The default location where the options are saved varies according to the operating system. For more details, see Importing/Exporting/Resetting Global Options (on page 161).

**com.oxygenxml.ApplicationDataFolder (Windows only)**

• **Allowed Values:** A file system absolute path pointing to a folder.
• **Default Value:** %APPDATA%
• **Purpose:** When the application runs on Windows, you can set this property to change the location where the application considers that the APPDATA folder is located.
com.oxygenxml.editor.frameworks.url

- **Allowed Values:** A URL-type absolute path.
- **Default Value:** OXYGEN_DIR \Frameworks
- **Purpose:** Changes the folder where the application considers that the main frameworks are installed. It has the same effect as changing the custom frameworks directory value in the Location preferences page (on page 57).

com.oxygenxml.MultipleInstances

- **Allowed Values:** true or false
- **Default Value:** false
- **Purpose:** If set to true, multiple instances of the application are allowed to be started.

com.oxygenxml.xep.location

- **Allowed Values:** A file system absolute path pointing to a folder.
- **Default Value:** N/A
- **Purpose:** Points to a folder where RenderX XEP is installed. Has the same effect as configuring XEP in the FO Processors preferences page (on page 126).

com.oxygenxml.additional.classpath

- **Allowed Values:** A list of JAR (on page 1623)-type resources separated by a classpath separator.
- **Default Value:** N/A
- **Purpose:** An additional list of libraries to be used in the application's internal class loader in addition to the libraries specified in the lib folder.

com.oxygenxml.user.home (Windows only)

- **Allowed Values:** A file system absolute path pointing to a folder.
- **Default Value:** USERPROFILE folder
- **Purpose:** Overwrites the user home directory that was implicitly detected for the application.

com.oxygenxml.use.late.delegation.for.author.extensions

- **Allowed Values:** true or false
- **Default Value:** true
- **Purpose:** All Java extensions in a framework configuration are instantiated in a separate class loader. When true, the JAR libraries used in a certain document type
will have priority to resolve classes before delegating to the parent class loader. When `false`, the parent class loader will take precedence.

**com.oxygenxml.stack.size.validation.threads**

- **Allowed Values:** The number of bytes used for validation threads.
- **Default Value:** `5*1024*1024`
- **Purpose:** Some parts of the application (validation, content completion) that use the Relax NG parser sometimes require a larger `Thread` stack size to parse complex schemas. The default value should be more than enough.

**com.oxygenxml.jing.skip.validation.xhtml.data.attrs**

- **Allowed Values:** `true` or `false`
- **Default Value:** `true`
- **Purpose:** By default, the Relax NG validation was configured to skip validation for XHTML attributes that start with "data-", which should be skipped from validation according to the XHTML 5 specification.

**com.oxygenxml.report.problems.url**

- **Allowed Values:** User-defined URL
- **Default Value:** N/A
- **Purpose:** The URL where a problem reported through the `Report Problem` dialog box is sent. The report is sent in XML format using the `report` parameter with the POST HTTP method.

**com.oxygenxml.parallel.title.computing.threads**

- **Allowed Values:** Integers
- **Default Value:** `4`
- **Purpose:** The number of parallel threads that will be used to compute referenced topic titles. Increasing this value reduces the amount of time it takes to compute topic titles in the DITA Maps Manager view.

**com.oxygenxml.hidpi.scaling**

- **Allowed Values:** Numerical values between 1 and 2 (1, 1.5, and 2 have been tested, and for example, 1.5 is for 150% scaling)
- **Default Value:** N/A
• **Purpose:** Used to override the HiDPI scaling detection to force a specific scaling setting. This is helpful if you encounter scaling detection issues in Windows or Linux.

`com.oxygenxml.prefer.plugin.classloader.context.loader`

- **Allowed Values:** `true` or `false`
- **Default Value:** `true`
- **Purpose:** Used to instruct the application to use the plugin class loader when there is code that loads content (usually Xerces code) using the thread's class loader. For instance, if you have a plugin that specifies a certain Xerces version and you want to load that version instead of the one from Oxygen's `lib` directory.

### Localizing of the User Interface

To localize the Oxygen XML Developer plugin, you can use one of the following methods:

- **Localization through the update site:**

  Start Eclipse, go to **Help > Install New Software**. Press Add Site in the **Available Software** tab of the **Software Updates** dialog box. Enter `https://www.oxygenxml.com/InstData/Developer/Eclipse/site.xml` in the location field of the **Add Site** dialog box. Press OK. Select the language pack checkbox.

- **Localization through the zip archive:**

  Go to `https://www.oxygenxml.com/download.html` and download the zip archive with the plugin language pack. Unzip the downloaded zip archive in the `dropins` subdirectory of the Eclipse install directory. Restart Eclipse.

If your operating system is running in the language you want to start Eclipse in (for example, you are using Japanese version of Windows, and you want to start Eclipse in Japanese), Oxygen XML Developer plugin matches the appropriate language from the language pack. However, if your operating system is running in a language other than the one you want to start Eclipse in (for example, you are using the English version of Windows, and you want to start Eclipse in Japanese, if you have the required operating system language support including the keyboard layouts and input method editors installed), specify the `-nl <locale>` command-line argument when you launch Eclipse. Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the translation file that matches the specified `<locale>`.

You can also localize the Eclipse plugin to a different language than the initial languages in the language pack. Duplicate the `plugin.properties` file from the Oxygen XML Developer
plugin plugin installation directory, translate all the keys in the file and change its name to
plugin_<locale>.properties.
5. Perspectives

An Oxygen XML Developer plugin perspective (on page 1624) is an interface layout geared towards a specific use. The Oxygen XML Developer plugin interface uses standard interface conventions and components to provide a familiar and intuitive editing environment across all operating systems. There are several perspectives that you can use to work with documents in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. You can change the perspective by selecting the perspective from the Window > Open Perspective menu.

Oxygen XML Perspective

The Oxygen XML perspective (on page 1624) is the most commonly used perspective and it is the default perspective when you start Oxygen XML Developer plugin for the first time. It is the perspective that you will use to edit the content of your XML documents.

To switch the focus to this perspective, select Oxygen XML from the Window > Open Perspective menu.

The layout of this perspective is composed of the following components:

   Menus

   Provides menu driven access to all the features and functions available in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. Most of the menus are common for all types of documents. However, Oxygen XML Developer plugin also includes some context-sensitive and framework (on page 1622)-specific menus that are only available for a specific context or type of document.

   Toolbars

   Provides easy access to common and frequently used functions. Each icon is a button that acts as a shortcut to a related function.

   Editor Pane

   The main editing pane where you spend most of your time reading, editing, applying markup, and validating your documents.

   Views

   Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a large variety of dockable (on page 1620) views to assist you with editing, viewing, searching, validating, transforming, and organizing
your documents. The most commonly used views are displayed by default and you can choose to display others by selecting them from the **Window > Show View** menu.

When two or more views are displayed, the application provides divider bars. Divider bars can be dragged to a new position increasing the space occupied by one panel while decreasing it for the other.

As the majority of the work process centers around the Editor area, other views can be hidden using the toggle controls located on the top corner of the view (≡).

Some of the most helpful views in the **Oxygen XML perspective** include the following:

- **Navigator view (on page 210)** - Enables the definition of projects and logical management of the documents they contain.
- **Outline view (on page 217)** - It provides an XML tag overview and offers a variety of functions, such as modifications follow-up, document structure change, document tag selection, and elements filtering.
- **Results view (on page 226)** - Displays the messages generated as a result of user actions such as validations (on page 420), transformation scenarios (on page 857), spell checking in multiple files (on page 353), search operations, and others. Each message is a link to the location related to the event that triggered the message.
- **Attributes view (on page 221)** - Presents all possible attributes of the current element and allows you to edit attribute values. You can also use this view to insert attributes in Text mode.
- **Model view (on page 223)** - Presents the current edited element structure model and additional documentation as defined in the schema.
- **Elements view (on page 224)** - Presents a list of all defined elements that you can insert at the current cursor position according to the document's schema.
- **Entities view (on page 225)** - Displays a list with all entities declared in the current document as well as built-in ones.
- **Transformation Scenarios view (on page 981)** - Displays a list with all currently configured transformation scenarios.
- **XPath/XQuery Builder view (on page 1394)** - Displays the results from running an XPath expression.
- **Text view (on page 903)** - Displays the text output that is produced in XSLT transformations.
- **Browser view (on page 902)** - Displays HTML output from XSLT transformations.
- **Problems view** - A general Eclipse view that displays system-generated errors, warnings, or information associated with a resource.
- **Console view (on page 362)** - Status information generated by the Schema detection, validation, and transformation threads.
- **WSDL SOAP Analyzer view (on page 694)** - Provides a tool that helps you test if the messages defined in a Web Service Descriptor (WSDL) are accepted by a Web Services server.

**Related Information:**
- Editing Documents (on page 364)
- Editing Modes (on page 184)

**Oxygen XSLT Debugger Perspective**

The **XSLT Debugger perspective (on page 1624)** allows you to detect problems in an XSLT transformation by executing the process step by step in a controlled environment. To switch the focus to this perspective, select **Window > Open Perspective > Other > Oxygen XSLT Debugger**.

The workspace in this perspective is organized as an editing area assisted by special helper views. The editing area contains editor panels that you can **split horizontally or vertically (on page 144)** in a stack of XML editor panels and a stack of XSLT editor panels. The XML files and XSL files can be edited in **Text mode (on page 184)** only.

The layout of this perspective is composed of the following components:

**Menus**

Provides menu driven access to all the features and functions available in the XSLT Debugger.

**Toolbars**

Contains all actions needed to configure and control the debugging process.

**XML Source Pane**

The editing pane where you can display and edit data or document-oriented XML documents.

**XSL Source Pane**

The editing pane where you can display and edit XSL stylesheets.

**Output View**
Displays the transformed output that results from the input of a selected document (XML) and selected stylesheet (XSL) to the transformer. The result of transformation is dynamically written as the transformation is processed. There are three types of views for the output: a text view (with XML syntax highlight), an XHTML view, and one text view for each `xsl:result-document` element used in the stylesheet (if it is an XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 stylesheet).

**Debugging Information Views (on page 1500)**

Presented in two panes, they display various types of information that can be used to understand the transformation process. For each information type there is a corresponding tab. While running a transformation, relevant events are displayed in the various information views. This allows you to obtain a clear view of the transformation progress. See the Debugging Information Views (on page 1500) topic for a list of all the information views (and links to more details on each view).

Note: You can add XPath expression automatically in the XWatch view using the Watch expression action from the contextual menu. In case you select an expression or a fragment of it and then click Watch expression in the contextual menu, the entire selection is presented in the XWatch view. Using Watch expression without selecting an expression displays the value of the attribute from the cursor position in the XWatch view. Variables detected at the cursor position are also displayed. Expressions displayed in the XWatch view are normalized (unnecessary white spaces are removed from the expression).

For more information about the XSLT debugging capabilities in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/m9d8c4V-LJw

Related Information:

- [Debugging XSLT Stylesheets and XQuery Documents (on page 1495)]

- [Oxygen XQuery Debugger Perspective (on page 179)]

**Oxygen XQuery Debugger Perspective**

The XQuery Debugger perspective (on page 1624) allows you to detect problems in an XQuery transformation process by executing the process step by step in a controlled environment and
inspecting the information provided in the special views. To switch the focus to this perspective, select Window > Open Perspective > Other > Oxygen XQuery Debugger.

The workspace in this perspective is organized as an editing area assisted by special helper views. The editing area contains editor panels that you can split horizontally or vertically (on page 144) in a stack of XML editor panels and a stack of XQuery editor panels. The XML files and XQuery files can be edited in Text mode (on page 184) only.

The layout of this perspective is composed of the following components:

**Menus**
- Provides menu driven access to all the features and functions available in the XQuery Debugger.

**Toolbars**
- Contains all actions needed to configure and control the debugging process.

**XML Source Pane**
- The editing pane where you can display and edit data or document-oriented XML documents.

**XQuery Source Pane**
- The editing pane where you can display and edit XQuery files.

**Output View**
- Displays the transformed output that results from the input of a selected document (XML) and selected XQuery document to the XQuery transformer. The result of transformation is dynamically written as the transformation is processed. There are two types of views for the output: a text view (with XML syntax highlight) and an XHTML view.

**Debugging Information Views (on page 1500)**
- Presented in two panes, they display various types of information that can be used to understand the transformation process. For each information type there is a corresponding tab. While running a transformation, relevant events are displayed in the various information views. This allows you to obtain a clear view of the transformation progress. See the Debugging Information Views (on page 1500) topic for a list of all the information views (and links to more details on each view).

**Note:** You can add XPath expression automatically in the XWatch view using the Watch expression action from the contextual menu. If you select an expression, or a fragment of it, and then click Watch expression in the contextual menu, the entire selection is presented in the XWatch view. Expressions displayed in the XWatch view are normalized (unnecessary white spaces are removed from the expression).
For more information about the XQuery debugging capabilities in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/o5_M2kbyipU

Related Information:

- Debugging XSLT Stylesheets and XQuery Documents (on page 1495)
- Oxygen XSLT Debugger Perspective (on page 178)

Oxygen DB Perspective

The Database perspective (on page 1624) allows you to manage databases. To switch the focus to this perspective, select Oxygen DB from the Window > Open perspective menu.

The Database perspective offers various helpful features, including:

- Support for browsing multiple connections at the same time.
- Support for both Relational and Native XML databases.
- Browsing the structure of databases.
- Viewing tables from databases.
- Inspecting or modifying data.
- Specifying XML Schemas for XML fields.
- SQL execution.
- XQuery execution.
- Data export to XML.

Supported Databases

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports numerous types of databases, including:

- Oracle Berkeley DB XML Database
- eXist XML Database
- IBM DB2 (Enterprise edition only)
- JDBC-ODBC Bridge
- MarkLogic (Enterprise edition only)
- Microsoft SQL Server 2005 and Microsoft SQL Server 2008 (Enterprise edition only)
- MySQL
- Oracle 11g (Enterprise edition only)
• PostgreSQL 8.3 (Enterprise edition only)
• SharePoint (CMS)

**Note:** For the databases marked with "Enterprise edition only", the XML capabilities are only available in the Enterprise edition of Oxygen XML Developer plugin. For a detailed feature matrix that compares the Academic, Professional, and Enterprise editions of Oxygen XML Developer plugin go to the Oxygen XML Developer plugin website.

**Supported Capabilities**

The supported non-XML capabilities are as follows:

• Browsing the structure of the database instance.
• Opening a database table in the **Table Explorer view (on page 1409)**.
• Handling the values from **XML Type** columns as String values.

**Note:** The non-XML capabilities are available in the Enterprise, Academic, and Professional editions of Oxygen XML Developer plugin by registering the database driver as a **Generic JDBC** type driver when defining the data source for accessing the database. For more information, see **Database Connection Support (on page 1412)**.

The supported XML capabilities are as follows:

• Displaying an XML Schema node in the tree of the database structure (for databases with an XML-specific structure) with actions for opening, editing, and validating the schemas in an Oxygen XML Developer plugin editor panel.
• Handling the values from **XML Type** columns as XML instance documents that can be opened and edited in an Oxygen XML Developer plugin editor panel.
• Validating an XML instance document added to an XML Type (column of a table, etc.)

**Tip:** Connections configured on relational data sources can be used to import data to XML or to generate XML schemas.

**Layout of the Database Perspective**

The layout of this **perspective** is composed of the following components:

**Menus**

Provides menu driven access to all the features and functions available in the **XQuery Debugger**.

**Toolbars**

Contains all actions needed to configure and control the debugging process.
Editor Pane

The main editing pane where you spend most of your time reading, editing, applying markup, and validating your documents.

Data Source Explorer View (on page 1408)

Provides browsing support for the configured connections.

Table Explorer View (on page 1409)

Provides table content editing support for inserting new rows, deleting table rows, editing cell values, exporting to an XML file, and more.

Related Information:

- Working with Databases (on page 1407)
- Data Source Explorer View (on page 1408)
- Table Explorer View (on page 1409)
6. Editing Modes

The main editing area in Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes several editing modes to suit the type of editing that you want to perform. You can easily switch between modes by clicking on the desired mode at the bottom of the main editing pane. Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers the following editing modes:

- **Text (on page 184)** - This mode presents the source of an XML document.
- **Grid (on page 251)** - This mode displays an XML document as a structured grid of nested tables.
- **Design (on page 261)** - This mode is found in the schema editor and represents the schema as a diagram.

The default editing mode that will be initially opened for each type of document can be set in two ways:

- If the **Allow Document Type specific edit mode setting to override the general mode setting option (on page 94)** is selected in the **Edit Modes** preferences page, then the edit mode specified in the **Document Type configuration dialog box (on page 57)** is used when that particular type of document is initially opened.

- If the **Allow Document Type specific edit mode setting to override the general mode setting option (on page 94)** is not selected, then the edit mode specified in the table in the **Edit Modes preferences page (on page 94)** is used when that particular type of document is initially opened.

Text Editing Mode

The **Text** mode editor in Oxygen XML Developer plugin is designed to be a simple, yet powerful, XML source editor. It provides support to help you edit, transform, and debug XML-based documents. It is similar to other common text editors, but Oxygen XML Developer plugin also includes specialized editing actions, a powerful **Content Completion Assistant (on page 378)**, a helpful **Outline view (on page 217)**, and many other unique features.

To switch to this mode, select **Text** at the bottom of the editing area.
Navigating the Document Content in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes some useful features to help you navigate XML documents in Text mode.

**Navigation Keyboard Shortcuts**

- **Ctrl + CloseBracket (Command + CloseBracket on OS X)**
  Navigate to the next XML node.

- **Ctrl + OpenBracket (Command + OpenBracket on OS X)**
  Navigate to the previous XML node.

- **Ctrl + RightArrow (Command + RightArrow on OS X)**
  Navigate one word forward.

- **Ctrl + LeftArrow (Command + LeftArrow on OS X)**
  Navigate one word backward.

- **Ctrl + Home (Command + Home on OS X)**
  Position the cursor at the beginning of the document.

- **Ctrl + End (Command + End on OS X)**
  Position the cursor at the end of the document.

**Navigating to a Modification**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes some actions to help you quickly navigate to a particular modification. They can be invoked using keyboards shortcuts or from the Navigation menu:

- **Last Edit Location (Ctrl+Q)**
  Navigates to the last modification in any opened tab.

- **Back (Alt+LeftArrow (Command+OpenBracket on OS X))**
  Navigates to the last selected editor tab or to the last selected element/content in the current tab. You can also go back after clicking on links.

- **Forward (Alt+RightArrow (Command+CloseBracket on OS X))**
  Available after you use the Back button at least once, and it navigates in the opposite direction as the Back button.
Navigating with the Outline View

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes an Outline view (on page 217) that displays a hierarchical tag overview of the currently edited XML Document.

You can use this view to quickly navigate through the current document by selecting nodes in the outline tree. It is synchronized with the editor area, so when you make a selection in the Outline view, the corresponding nodes are highlighted in the editor area.

Figure 30. Outline View Navigation in Text Mode

Using the Breadcrumb to Navigate

A breadcrumb on the top stripe indicates the path from the document root element to the current element. It can also be used as a helpful tool to navigate to specific elements throughout the structure of the document.

Figure 31. Breadcrumb in Text Mode

The last element listed in the breadcrumb is the element at the current cursor position. Clicking an element from the breadcrumb selects the entire element and navigates to it in the editor area.

Navigating with the Go To Dialog Box

In Text mode, you can navigate precisely to a location in the document you are editing by pressing Ctrl +L (Command+L on OS X) or selecting Go To Line from the Navigation menu.

Navigating with Bookmarks

By using bookmarks, you can mark positions in an edited document so that you can return to it later. This is especially helpful for navigating through large documents or while editing multiple documents.

To insert a bookmark in Text mode, right-click the desired location in the vertical stripe on the left side of the editor and select Add Bookmark (you can remove it by selecting Remove Bookmark from the same contextual menu).
To navigate to any of the bookmarks, click their corresponding markers in the vertical stripe on the right side of the editor.

Tip: You can configure the color and how the bookmarks are shown from the Eclipse Annotations preferences page (Window ('Eclipse' on Mac OSX) > Preferences > General > Editors > Text Editors > Annotations).

Smart Editing in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes smart editing features to help you edit XML documents in Text mode. The following smart editing features are included:

• **Closing tag auto-expansion** - This feature helps save some keystrokes by automatically inserting a closing tag when you insert a complete start tag and the cursor is automatically placed in between the start and end tags. For instance, after entering a start `<tag>`, the corresponding closing `</tag>` is automatically inserted and the cursor is placed between the two (`<tag> | </tag>`).

• **Auto-rename matching tag** - When you edit the name of a start tag, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will mirror-edit the name of the matching end tag. This feature can be controlled from the Content Completion option page (on page 86).

• **Auto-breaking the edited line** - The Hard line wrap option (on page 101) automatically breaks the edited line when its length exceeds the maximum line length defined for the format and indent operation (on page 101).

• **Indent on Enter** - The Indent on Enter option (on page 100) indents the new line inserted when you press Enter.

• **Smart Enter** - The Smart Enter option (on page 100) inserts an empty line between the start and end tags. If you press Enter between a start and end tag, the action places the cursor in an indented position on the empty line between the lines that contain the start and end tag.

• **Double-click** - A double-click selects certain text, depending on the position of the click in the document:
  - If the click position is on a start tag or end tag, then the element name is selected.
  - If the click position is after a start tag or before an end tag, then the entire content of the element without the start and end tags is selected.
  - If the click position is before a start tag or after an end tag, then the entire tag is selected, including the start and end tags, and the content in between.
  - If the click position is immediately before an attribute, then the entire attribute and its value is selected.
  - If the click position is immediately after the opening quote or immediately before the closing quote of an attribute value, then the entire attribute value is selected.
  - Otherwise, a double-click selects contiguous text.

• **Triple-click** - A triple-click selects the entire current line of text.
Shortcut Actions in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes numerous shortcut actions to help you edit content in the Text editing mode.

**Undo/Redo Actions**

The typical undo and redo actions are available with shortcuts or in the Edit menu:

**Undo (Ctrl + Z (Command + Z on OS X))**

Reverses a maximum of 200 editing actions to return to the preceding state.

*Note:* Complex operations such as Replace All or Indent selection count as single undo events.

**Redo (Ctrl + Y (Command + Shift + Z on OS X, Ctrl + Shift + Z on Linux/Unix))**

Recreates a maximum of 100 editing actions that were undone by the Undo function.

**Copy and Paste Actions**

The typical copying and pasting actions are available with shortcuts or in the contextual menu (or the Edit menu):

**Cut (Ctrl + X (Command + X on OS X))**

Removes the current selected content from the document and places it in the clipboard.

**Copy (Ctrl + C (Command + C on OS X))**

Places a copy of the current selected content in the clipboard.

**Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on OS X))**

Inserts the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.

**Select All (Ctrl + A (Command + A on OS X))**

Selects the entire content of the current document.

**Moving XML Nodes**

You can use the following shortcuts to move XML elements or XSLT variables up or down in Text mode:

**Ctrl + Alt + UpArrow (Command + Alt + UpArrow on OS X)**

Moves the node up one line.
**Ctrl + Alt + DownArrow (Command + Alt + DownArrow on OS X)**

Moves the node down one line.

**Note:** The requirements for these node moving actions to work are as follows:

- The mechanism is designed to work without a selection. If you use these actions on a selection of content, it moves the entire selection. To make this mechanism work as intended, simply position the cursor somewhere on the line that you want to move.
- A start tag must be the first text occurrence on the line where the cursor is positioned.
- On the line where the element ends, only whitespaces are allowed after the end tag.

**Miscellaneous Shortcut Actions in Text Mode**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin also includes the following other miscellaneous shortcut actions in **Text mode**:

**Ctrl + Delete (Command + Delete on OS X)**

Deletes the next word.

**Ctrl + Backspace (Command + Backspace on OS X)**

Deletes the previous word.

**Ctrl + W (Command + W on OS X)**

Cuts the previous word.

**Ctrl + K (Command + K on OS X)**

Cuts to end of line.

**Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on OS X)**

Use this shortcut to open any of the following:

- Any absolute URL (URLs that have a protocol), regardless of their location in the document.
- URI attributes such as: `schemaLocation`, `noNamespaceSchemaLocation`, `href` and others.
- Processing instructions used for associating resources, xml-models, xml-stylesheets.

**Ctrl + Shift + Y (Command + Shift + Y on OS X) (Document > Edit > Toggle Line Wrap)**

Enables or disables line wrapping. When enabled, if text exceeds the width of the displayed editor, content is wrapped so that you do not have to scroll horizontally.
Editing XML Markup in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes some useful actions that allow you to easily edit XML markup in Text mode. These actions are available in the Refactoring submenu of the contextual menu, and many of the actions can also be done with simple keyboard shortcuts.

Using the Breadcrumb

A breadcrumb on the top stripe indicates the path from the document root element to the current element. It can also be used as a helpful tool to insert and edit specific elements in the document structure.

Figure 32. Breadcrumb in Text Mode

The last element listed in the breadcrumb is the element at the current cursor position. Clicking an element in the breadcrumb selects the entire element in the editor area. Also, each element provides a contextual menu with access to the following actions:

Append Child

Allows you to select an element (from a drop-down list) that is allowed by the associated schema and inserts it as a child of the current element.

Insert Before

Allows you to select an element (from a drop-down list) that is allowed by the associated schema and inserts it immediately before the current element, as a sibling.

Insert After

Allows you to select an element (from a drop-down list) that is allowed by the associated schema and inserts it immediately after the current element, as a sibling.

Edit Attributes

Opens an editing window that allows you to edit the attributes of the currently selected element.

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected element in an XML comment, if the element is not already commented. If it is already commented, this action will remove the comment.

Cut

Removes the selected element and copies it to the clipboard.

Copy

Copies the selected element to the clipboard.
**Delete**

Deletes the currently selected element.

**Move Nodes**

You can easily move XML nodes in the current document by using the following shortcut keys:

- **Alt + UpArrow**
  
  Moves the current node or selected nodes in front of the previous node.

- **Alt + DownArrow**
  
  Moves the current node or selected nodes after the subsequent node.

**Rename Elements**

You can rename elements by using the following actions in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

- ** Rename Element**

  The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

- ** Rename Prefix (Alt + Shift + P (Command + Shift + P on OS X))**

  The prefix of the element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same prefix, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

  - If you select the **Rename current element prefix** option, the application will recursively traverse the current element and all its children. For example, to change the `xmlns:p1="ns1"` association in the current element to `xmlns:p5="ns1"`, if the `xmlns:p1="ns1"` association is applied on the parent element, then Oxygen XML Developer plugin will introduce `xmlns:p5="ns1"` as a new declaration in the current element and will change the prefix from `p1` to `p5`. If `p5` is already associated with another namespace in the current element, then the conflict will be displayed in a dialog box. By pressing **OK**, the prefix is modified from `p1` to `p5` without inserting a new declaration.

  - If you select the **Rename current prefix in all document** option, the application will apply the change on the entire document.

  - To also apply the action inside attribute values, select the **Rename also attribute values that start with the same prefix** checkbox.
Surround Content with Tags (Wrap)

You can surround a selection of content with tags (wrap the content) by using the following action in the Refactoring submenu of the contextual menu:

Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)

Allows you to choose a tag that encloses a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the Position cursor between tags option (on page 87) is selected in the Content Completion preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
- If the Position cursor between tags option (on page 87) is not selected in the Content Completion preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with [tag] (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Surround with <![CDATA]]> (Alt + Shift + C (Command + Alt + C on OS X))

Surround the selected content with a CDATA tag so that the parser will interpret it as textual data rather than markup.

Unwrap the Content of Elements

You can unwrap the content of an element by using the following action in the Refactoring submenu of the contextual menu:

Delete element tags (Alt + Shift + Comma)

Deletes the start and end tag of the current element.

Join or Split Elements

You can join or split elements in the current document by using the following actions in the Refactoring submenu of the contextual menu:

Join elements (Alt + Shift + F (Command + Alt + F on OS X))

Joins the left and right elements relative to the current cursor position. The elements must have the same name, attributes, and attribute values.

Split element
Split the element from the cursor position into two identical elements. The cursor must be inside the element.

**Other Refactoring Actions**

You can also manage the structure of the markup by using the other specific XML refactoring actions that are available in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

**Attributes Refactoring Actions**

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

- **Add/Change attribute**
  
  Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

- **Convert attribute to element**
  
  Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

- **Delete attribute**
  
  Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

- **Rename attribute**
  
  Allows you to rename an attribute.

- **Replace in attribute value**
  
  Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

**Comments Refactoring Actions**

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

- **Delete comments**
  
  Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

**Elements Refactoring Actions**

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

- **Delete element**
  
  Allows you to delete elements.

- **Delete element content**
  
  Allows you to delete the content of elements.
**Insert element**

Allows you to insert new elements.

**Rename element**

Allows you to rename elements.

**Unwrap element**

Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

**Wrap element**

Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

**Wrap element content**

Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

**Fragments Refactoring Actions**

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

**Insert XML fragment**

Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

**Replace element content with XML fragment**

Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

**Replace element with XML fragment**

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

**Related Information:**

- Refactoring XML Documents *(on page 475)*
- Contextual Menu Actions in Text Mode *(on page 403)*

**Folding XML Elements in Text Mode**

When working with a large document, the folding *(on page 1622)* support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin can be used to collapse some element content leaving only those that you need to edit in focus. Expanding and collapsing works on individual elements. Expanding an element leaves the child elements unchanged.
Folding Actions in Text Mode

Element folds are marked with a small icon (≡/≡) in the left stripe. To toggle the fold, simply click the icon. Also, if you right-click the icon, the following actions are available in the Folding sub-menu:

- **Toggle Fold**
  Toggles the state of the current fold.

- **Collapse Other Folds (Ctrl + NumPad/ (Command + NumPad/ on OS X))**
  Folds all the elements except the current element.

- **Collapse Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad- (Command + NumPad- on OS X))**
  Folds the child elements that are indented one level inside the current element.

- **Expand Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad+ (Command + NumPad+ on OS X))**
  Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

- **Expand All (Ctrl + NumPad* (Command + NumPad* on OS X))**
  Unfolds all elements in the current document.

For more information about the folding support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, watch our video demonstration:

[https://www.youtube.com/embed/eR9HfN_peAE](https://www.youtube.com/embed/eR9HfN_peAE)
Drag and Drop in Text Mode

To move a whole region of text to other location in the same edited document, just select the text, drag the selection by holding down the left mouse button and drop it to the target location.

You can also copy content from other applications and paste it into the document.

Selecting Content in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a variety of keyboard shortcuts that allow you to select content in Text mode. These include numerous standard continuous selection possibilities that are common to many text editors.

Standard Continuous Selection Shortcuts

- **Ctrl + A (Meta + A on Mac OS X)**
  Selects all content in the document.

- **Shift + Left/Right Arrow Keys**
  Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it one character at a time in the direction that you press the arrow keys.

- **Shift + Up/Down Arrow Keys**
  Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it one line at a time in the direction that you press the arrow keys.

- **Ctrl + Shift + Left/Right Arrow Keys (Meta + Shift + Left/Right Arrow Keys on Mac OS X)**
  Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it one word at a time in the direction that you press the arrow keys.

- **Shift + Home**
  Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the beginning of the current line (on Mac OS X, it extends to the beginning of the document).

- **Shift + End**
  Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the end of the current line (on Mac OS X, it extends to the end of the document).

- **Ctrl + Shift + Home**
  Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the beginning of the document.

- **Ctrl + Shift + End**
Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the end of the document.

**Shift + PageUp**

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it up one screen page.

**Shift + PageDown**

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it down one screen page.

**Double-Click**

Selects certain text, depending on the position of the click in the document. See Smart Editing: Double-Click *(on page 368)* for the specifics.

**Triple-Click**

Selects entire regions of text, depending on the position of the click in the document. See the Smart Editing: Triple-Click *(on page 368)* for the specifics.

**Right-Click > Select > Element**

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

**Right-Click > Select > Content**

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

**Right-Click > Select > Attributes**

Selects all the attributes of the element at the current cursor position.

**Right-Click > Select > Parent**

Selects the entire parent element at the current cursor position.

### Content Completion Assistant in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes an intelligent Content Completion Assistant *(on page 1620)* that offers proposals for inserting structured language elements, attributes, and attribute values that are valid in the current editing context.

The Content Completion Assistant is enabled by default. To disable it, open the Preferences dialog box *(on page 42)*, go to Editor > Content Completion, and deselect the Enable content completion option *(on page 86)*.

Figure 34. Content Completion Assistant
Content Completion and the Associated Schema

The Content Completion Assistant feature is schema-driven and the list of proposals in the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) depend on the associated schemas (DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG, or NVDL schema). For information about the various ways to associate a schema and the order of their precedence, see the Associating a Schema to XML Documents (on page 449) section.

Using the Content Completion Assistant in Text Mode

The feature is activated in Text mode in the following situations:

- After you press the `<` character when inserting an element, it is automatically activated after a short delay. You can adjust the activation delay with the Activation delay of the proposals window (ms) option (on page 88) from the Content Completion preferences page.
- After typing a partial element or attribute name, you can manually activate it by pressing Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X) or Alt + ForwardSlash (Command + Alt + ForwardSlash on OS X). If there is only one valid proposal at the current location, it is inserted without displaying the list of proposals.

You can navigate through the list of proposals by using the Up and Down keys on your keyboard. In some cases, the Content Completion Assistant displays a documentation window with information about the particular proposal and some of them have links to additional information (for example, DITA elements might have a link to the DITA Style Guide). You can also change the size of the documentation window by dragging its top, right, and bottom borders.

To insert the selected proposal in Text mode, do one of the following:

- Press Enter or Tab to insert both the start and end tags and position the cursor inside the start tag in a position suitable for inserting attributes.
- Press Ctrl + Enter (Command + Enter on OS X) to insert both the start and end tags and positions the cursor between the tags in a position where you can start typing content.
Note: When the DTD, XML Schema or RELAX NG schema specifies required child elements for the newly added element, they are inserted automatically only if the Add Element Content option (on page 86) (in the Content Completion preferences page) is selected. The Content Completion Assistant can also add optional content and first choice particle, as specified in the DTD, XML Schema, or RELAX NG schema. To activate these features, select the Add optional content (on page 86) and Add first Choice particle (on page 86) options in the Content Completion preferences page.

After inserting an element, the cursor is positioned:

- Before the > character of the start tag, if the element allows attributes, to allow rapid insertion of any of the attributes supported by the element. Pressing the space bar displays the Content Completion list once again. This time it contains the list of allowed attribute names. If the attribute supports a fixed set of parameters, the assistant list displays the list of valid parameters. If the parameter setting is user-defined and therefore variable, the assistant is closed to allow manual insertion. The values of the attributes can be learned from the same elements in the current document.
- After the > character of the start tag, if the element has no attributes.

Where the Content Completion Assistant is Displayed

The Content Completion Assistant is displayed:

- Anywhere within a tag name or at the beginning of a tag name in an XML document, XML Schema, DTD, or Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema.
- Anywhere within an attribute name or at the beginning of an attribute name in any XML document with an associated schema.
- Within attribute values or at the beginning of attribute values in XML documents where lists of possible values have been defined for that element in the schema associated with the document.

Types of Proposals Listed in the Content Completion Assistant

The following things are considered for determining the proposals that are listed in the content completion window:

Element Structure Specified in DTD or Schema

The proposals that populate the Content Completion Assistant depend on the element structure specified in the DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema, or NVDL schema associated with the edited document.

Note: The Content Completion Assistant is able to offer elements defined both by XML Schemas version 1.0 and 1.1.
Current Cursor Position

The number and type of elements displayed by the Content Completion Assistant is dependent on the cursor's current position in the structured document. The child elements displayed within a given element are defined by the structure of the specified DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema, or NVDL schema.

Unique ID Attribute Values

A schema may declare certain attributes as ID or IDREF/IDREFS. When the document is validated, Oxygen XML Developer plugin checks the uniqueness and correctness of the ID attributes. It also collects the attribute values declared in the document to prepare the list of proposals. This is available for documents that use DTD, XML Schema, and Relax NG schema.

Values for xml:id Attributes

Values of all the xml:id attributes are handled as ID attributes. They are collected and displayed by the Content Completion Assistant as possible values for anyURI attributes defined in the schema of the edited document. This works only for XML Schema and Relax NG schemas.

Links/References in DITA

When entering values for the various types of links and references in DITA (for example, values for href or conref elements), the Content Completion Assistant will propose potential targets when you use the forward slash key (/).

ID Values for DITA Key References

In DITA, when inserting key references (keyref) or content key references (conkeyref), the ID values that are defined in the key reference are presented as possible targets. The Content Completion Assistant will only propose targets that are valid in the current context.

Element and Attribute Values

For documents that use an XML Schema or Relax NG schema, the Content Completion Assistant offers proposals for attribute and element values as long as the allowed values are defined in the schema. Also, if a default value or fixed value is defined in the schema, then that value is offered in the Content Completion Assistant.

Related Information:
Schema Annotations in Text Mode

A schema annotation is a documentation snippet associated with the definition of an element or attribute in a schema. If such a schema is associated with an XML document, the annotations are displayed in:

- The Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620).
- A small tooltip window shown when the mouse hovers over an element or attribute.

The schema annotations support is available if the schema type is one of the following:

- XML Schema
- Relax NG
- NVDL schema
- DTD

This feature is enabled by default, but you can disable it by deselecting the Show annotations in Content Completion Assistant (on page 88) option in the Annotations preferences page.

Styling Annotations with HTML

You can use HTML format in the annotations you add in an XML Schema or Relax NG schema. This improves the visual appearance and readability of the documentation window displayed when editing XML documents validated against such a schema. An annotation is recognized and displayed as HTML if it contains at least one HTML element (such as div, body, p, br, table, ul, or ol).

The HTML rendering is controlled by the Show annotations using HTML format, if possible (on page 88) option in the Annotations preferences page. When this option is deselected, the annotations are converted and displayed as plain text and if the annotation contains one or more HTML tags (p, br, ul, li), they are rendered as an HTML document loaded in a web browser. For example, p begins a new paragraph, br breaks the current line, ul encloses a list of items, and li encloses an item of the list.

Collecting Annotations from XML Schemas

In an XML Schema, the annotations are specified in an <xs:annotation> element like this:

```xml
<xs:annotation>
  <xs:documentation>
    Description of the element.
  </xs:documentation>
</xs:annotation>
```
If an element or attribute does not have a specific annotation, then Oxygen XML Developer plugin looks for an annotation in the type definition of that element or attribute.

**Collecting Annotations from Relax NG Schemas**

For Relax NG schema, element and attribute annotations are made using the `<documentation>` element from the http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0 namespace like this:

```xml
<define name="person">
  <element name="person">
    <a:documentation xmlns:a="http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0">
      Information about a person.
    </a:documentation>
    <ref name="name"/>
    <zeroOrMore>
      <ref name="email"/>
    </zeroOrMore>
  </element>
</define>
```

However, any element outside the Relax NG namespace (http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0) is handled as annotation and the text content is displayed in the annotation window. To activate this behavior, select the **Use all Relax NG annotations as documentation** (on page 89) option in the Annotations preferences page.

**Collecting Annotations from Relax NG Compact Syntax Schemas**

For Relax NG Compact Syntax schema, annotations are made using comments like this:

```xml
## Information about a person.
element person { name, email*}
```

**Collecting Annotation from DTDs**

For DTD, Oxygen XML Developer plugin defines a custom mechanism for annotations using comments enabled by the **Prefer DTD comments that start with "doc:" as annotations** (on page 88) option in the Annotations preferences page. The following is an example of a DTD annotation:

```xml
<!--doc:Description of the element. -->
```
Content Completion Helper Views

Information about the current element being edited is also available in various *dockable (on page 1620)* views, such as the **Model view (on page 223)**, **Attributes view (on page 221)**, **Elements view (on page 224)**, and **Entities view (on page 225)**. By default, they are located on the right-hand side of the main editor window. These views, along with the powerful **Outline view (on page 217)**, provide spatial and insight information about the edited document and the current element. If any particular view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

**Model View**

The **Model** view presents the structure of the currently selected tag, and its documentation, defined as annotation in the schema of the current document. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

*Figure 35. Model View*

The **Model** view is comprised of two sections, an element structure panel and an annotations panel.
**Element Structure Panel**

The element structure panel displays the structure of the currently edited or selected tag in a tree-like format. The information includes the name, model, and attributes of the current tag. The allowed attributes are shown along with imposed restrictions, if any.

![Element Structure Panel](image)

**Annotation Panel**

The **Annotation** panel displays the annotation information for the currently selected element. This information is collected from the XML schema.

![Annotation panel](image)

**Attributes View in Text Mode**

The **Attributes** view presents all the attributes of the current element determined by the schema of the document. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened from the **Window > Show View** menu.

You can use the **Attributes** view to insert attributes, edit their values, or add values to existing attributes.
The attributes are rendered differently depending on their state:

- The names of the attributes are rendered with a bold font, and their values with a plain font.
- Default values are rendered with a plain font, painted gray.
- Empty values display the text "[empty]", painted gray.
- Invalid attributes and values are painted red.

To edit the value of the corresponding attribute, double-click a cell in the Value column. If the possible values of the attribute are specified as list in the schema of the edited document, the Value column acts as a combo box that allows you to either select the value from a list or manually enter it.

You can sort the attributes table by clicking the Attribute column header. The table contents can be sorted as follows:

- By attribute name in ascending order.
- By attribute name in descending order.
- Custom order, where the used attributes are displayed at the beginning of the table sorted in ascending order, followed by the rest of the allowed elements sorted in ascending order.

Figure 38. Attributes View

Contextual Menu Actions in the Attributes View

The following actions are available in the contextual menu of the Attributes view when editing in Text mode:

Add

Allows you to insert a new attribute.

Set empty value
Specifies the current attribute value as empty.

Remove

Removes the attribute (action available only if the attribute is specified). You can invoke this action by pressing the (Delete) or (Backspace) keys.

Copy

Copies the attrName="attrValue" pair to the clipboard. The attrValue can be:

- The value of the attribute.
- The value of the default attribute, if the attribute does not appear in the edited document.
- Empty, if the attribute does not appear in the edited document and has no default value set.

Paste

Depending on the content of the clipboard, the following cases are possible:

- If the clipboard contains an attribute and its value, both of them are introduced in the Attributes view. The attribute is selected and its value is changed if they exist in the Attributes view.
- If the clipboard contains an attribute name with an empty value, the attribute is introduced in the Attributes view and you can start editing it. The attribute is selected and you can start editing it if it exists in the Attributes view.
- If the clipboard only contains text, the value of the selected attribute is modified.

Elements View in Text Mode

The Elements view presents a list of all defined elements that are valid at the current cursor position according to the schema associated to the document. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Double-clicking any of the listed elements inserts that element into the edited document, at the current cursor position. Pressing F2 with an element selected will display information about that particular element.

Figure 39. Elements View in Text Mode
Entities View

Entities provide abbreviated entries that can be used in XML files when there is a need of repeatedly inserting certain characters or large blocks of information. An entity is defined using the ENTITY statement either in the DOCTYPE declaration or in a DTD file associated with the current XML file.

There are three types of entities:

- **Predefined** - Entities that are part of the predefined XML markup (`, `&gt;, `&amp;, `&apos;, `&quot;).
- **Internal** - Defined in the DOCTYPE declaration header of the current XML.
- **External** - Defined in an external DTD module included in the DTD referenced in the XML DOCTYPE declaration.

**Note:** If you want to add internal entities, you would need to switch to the Text editing mode and manually modify the DOCTYPE declaration. If you want to add external entities, you need to open the DTD module file and modify it directly.

The Entities view displays a list with all entities declared in the current document, as well as built-in ones. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Double-clicking one of the entities will insert it at the current cursor position in the XML document. You can also sort entities by name and value by clicking the column headers.

Figure 40. Entities View
The view features a filtering capability that allows you to search an entity by name, value, or both. Also, you can choose to display the internal or external entities.

**Note:** When entering filters, you can use the ? and * wildcards. Also, you can enter multiple filters by separating them with a comma.

### Code Templates

Code templates are code fragments that can be inserted quickly at the current editing position. Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a set of built-in code templates for CSS, Schematron, XSL, XQuery, JSON, and XML Schema document types. You can also define your own code templates for any type of file and share them with others.

Code templates are displayed with a .ct symbol in the content completion list (Enter in Author mode or Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X) in Text mode). Also, in Text mode you can press Ctrl + Shift + Space to see a complete list of the available code templates. To enter the code template at the cursor position, select it from the content completion list or type its code and press Enter. If a shortcut key has been assigned to the code template, you can also use the shortcut key to enter it.

### How to Create Code Templates

To create a code template, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Templates > Code Templates.
2. Click New to open a code template configuration dialog box.
Tip: You can use one of the existing code templates as a starting point by selecting that template and clicking Duplicate.

Figure 41. Code Template Configuration Dialog Box

3. Configure your template using the fields in the code template configuration dialog box:
   - **Name** - The name of the code template.
   - **Description** - [Optional] The description of the code template that will appear in the Code Templates preferences page and in the tooltip message when selecting it from the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620). HTML markup can be used for better rendering.
   - **Associate with** - You can choose to set the code template to be associated with a specific type of editor or for all editor types.
   - **Shortcut key** - [Optional] If you want to assign a shortcut key that can be used to insert the code template, place the cursor in the Shortcut key field and press the desired key combination on your keyboard. Use the Clear button if you make a mistake. If the Enable platform-independent shortcut keys checkbox is selected, the shortcut is platform-independent and the following modifiers are used:
     - M1 represents the Command key on MacOS X, and the Ctrl key on other platforms.
     - M2 represents the Shift key.
     - M3 represents the Option key on MacOS X, and the Alt key on other platforms.
     - M4 represents the Ctrl key on MacOS X, and is undefined on other platforms.
   - **Content** - Text box where you define the content that is used when the code template is inserted. An editor variable (on page 162) can be inserted in the text box using the Insert Editor Variables button.

4. Click OK to save your new code template.

Result: Your code template can now be selected using the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) (Enter in Author mode or Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X) in Text mode). The code templates are displayed with a symbol.
How to Share Code Templates

There are two ways to easily share all of your code templates with other members of your team:

Method 1: Export/Import

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Templates > Code Templates.
2. Click the Export button to export all of your code templates into an XML file.
3. Save the XML file.
4. Share the XML file with other members of your team.
5. Instruct them to open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Editor > Templates > Code Templates, click the Import button, and select the file you sent them.

Result: The code templates will be now available in their content completion list.

Method 2: Share Project

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Templates > Code Templates.
2. Select Project Options at the bottom of the dialog box. This stores the preferences in the project file (.xpr).
3. Share the project file with the other members of your team. For example, you can commit it to your version control system and have them update their working copy.

Result: When they open the updated project file in their , the code templates will be available in their content completion list.

Text Mode Views

There is a variety of dockable (on page 1620) helper views that are displayed by default in Text mode. There are also a large selection of additional views available in the Window > Show View menu. This section presents some of the most helpful views for editing in Text mode.

Navigator View

The Navigator view is designed to assist you with organizing and managing related files grouped in the same XML project. The actions available in the contextual menu and on the toolbar associated to this panel allows you to create XML projects and provide shortcuts to various operations for the project documents.

Tip: You can also use the Project Explorer view for many of the same purposes as the Navigator view.
By default, the view is positioned on the left side of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin window, above the Outline view (on page 217). If the view has been closed, it can be reopened at any time from the Window > Show View menu (the Project Explorer view is in the Other submenu).

Project View Toolbar

The following actions are grouped in the upper right corner:

- **Collapse All**
  
  Collapses all project tree folders. You can also collapse/expand a project tree folder if you select it and press the Enter key or Left Arrow to collapse and Right Arrow to expand.

- **Link with Editor**
  
  When selected, the project tree highlights the currently edited file, if it is found in the project files.

  **Note:** This button is disabled automatically when you move to the Debugger perspective (on page 1624).

View Menu

Drop-down menu that contains various settings contributed by the Eclipse plugin.
File Explorer Area

The rest of the view is basically a file explorer similar to most other commonly used file explorers. The XML project (.xpr file) is a logical container with a collection of resources (folders and files). The types of resources displayed include:

- **Logical folders with Linked folders/files** - This folder type is used as containers for linked resources (shortcuts). The icons for file shortcuts include a shortcut symbol (%). The linked folders/files are added using New > Folder > Advanced or New > File > Advanced, or by dragging and dropping files/folders from the view or the system file explorer. ✗ Delete can be used to remove them from the project.

- **Physical folders and files** - Marked with the operating system-specific icon for folders (usually a yellow icon on Windows and a blue icon on Mac OS X). These folders and files are mirrors of real folders or files that exist in the local file system. They are created or added to the project by using contextual menu actions (such as New > File, New > Folder, Copy, and Paste) or by dragging and dropping files/folders from the view or the system file explorer. Also, the contextual menu action ✗ Delete can be used to remove them from the project and local file system.

Figure 43. Navigator View with Both Types of Resources

Creating New Projects

The following actions are available from the New menu when right-clicking any item, or the File > New menu:

- **XML Project**
  
  Opens the New XML Project dialog box that allows you to create a new project and adds it to the project structure in the Navigator view.

- **Sample XML Project**
Opens the **New sample XML project** dialog box that allows you to customize sample resources in a new project and adds it to the project structure in the **Navigator** view.

**Managing Project Contents**

There are various contextual menu actions, shortcuts, and ways to organize the folders and files inside the project:

**Creating New Folders and Files**

- **Right-click any item > New > 📖 File**
  
  Opens a **New Document Wizard** *on page 305* that helps you create a new file and adds it to the project structure.

- **Right-click any item > New > 📄 New from Templates**
  
  Opens a wizard where you can create a new document based on a *template* *on page 311* and adds it to the project structure.

- **Right-click any item > New > 🗂️ Folder**
  
  Opens a **New Folder** dialog box that allows you to specify a name for a new folder and adds it to the structure of the project.

**Adding Resources**

You can add resources by using drag and drop (or 📖 Copy and 📖 Paste) actions from within the **Navigator** view or dragging them from the system file explorer. Files may have multiple instances within the folder system, but cannot appear twice within the same folder.

**Removing Folders and Files**

To remove logical folders or the linked resources inside them from the project, use ✗ **Delete** from the contextual menu (or press **Delete** on your keyboard) and confirm by clicking **OK** in the resulting dialog box.

To remove folders or files from both the project and the local file system, use ✗ **Delete** from the contextual menu (or press **Delete** on your keyboard) and confirm by clicking **OK** in the resulting dialog box.

**Moving Folders and Files**

You can move the resources by using drag and drop actions from within the **Navigator** view.
You can also use the usual Copy and Paste actions (or the Move action) from the contextual menu to move resources in the project.

You can also move certain types of files (such as XML, XML Schema, Relax NG, WSDL, and XSLT) by using the Refactoring > Move resource action from the contextual menu. This action opens the Move resource dialog box that includes the following options:

- **Destination** - Presents the path to the current location of the resource you want to move and gives you the option to introduce a new location.
- **New name** - Presents the current name of the moved resource and gives you the option to change it.
- **Update references of the moved resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are moving, based upon the selected scope. You can select or configure the scope (on page 466) by using the button.

### Renaming Folders and Files

There are several ways to rename a folder or file in the project (this works for both physical and linked resources):

- Select Rename from the contextual menu.
- Press F2 on your keyboard.

You also can rename certain types of files (such as XML, XML Schema, Relax NG, WSDL, and XSLT) by using the Refactoring > Rename resource action from the contextual menu. This action opens the Rename resource dialog box that includes the following options:

- **New name** - Presents the current name of the edited resource and allows you to modify it.
- **Update references of the renamed resource** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are renaming. You can select or configure the scope (on page 466) by using the button.

### Opening Files

There are several ways to open a file:

- Double-click the file.
- Select it and press Enter on your keyboard.
- Right-click the file and select Open.
- Drag the file from the project tree and drop it in the editor area.
• If you want to choose the application or location where to open it, you can right-click the file and select Open with.

**Saving the Project**

The project file is automatically saved every time the content of the Navigator view is saved or modified by actions such as adding or removing files and drag and drop.

**Other Contextual Menu Actions**

Numerous other actions are available in the contextual menu, depending on the type of file or folder where it is invoked from (some actions are available for multiple selected files):

**Refactoring submenu**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes some refactoring operations that help you manage the structure of your documents. The following actions are available from the contextual menu in the Refactoring submenu:

- **Rename resource (Available for certain types of XML documents)**
  
  Opens the Rename resource dialog box (on page 335) where you can change the name of a resource. It also includes an option to update the references to the renamed resource and you can choose between various scopes for the operation.

- **Move resource (Available for certain types of XML documents)**
  
  Opens the Move resource dialog box (on page 335) where you can choose a destination and change the name of a resource. It also includes an option to update the references to the moved resource and you can choose between various scopes for the operation.

- **XML Refactoring**
  
  Opens the XML Refactoring tool wizard (on page 475) that presents refactoring operations to assist you with managing the structure of your XML documents.

**Show Resource Hierarchy**

Opens the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view (on page 467) that allows you to see the resource hierarchy for an XML document.

**Show Resource Dependencies**

Opens the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view (on page 467) that allows you to see the resource dependencies for an XML document.

**Refresh**
Refreshes the content and the dependencies between the resources in the Master Files directory.

**XPath in Files**

Opens the XPath/XQuery Builder view that allows you to compose XPath and XQuery expressions and execute them over the currently edited XML document.

**Check Spelling in Files**

Allows you to check the spelling of multiple files.

**Format and Indent Files**

Opens the Format and Indent Files dialog box that allows you to configure the format and indent (pretty-print) action that will be applied on the selected documents.

**Transform submenu**

The currently selected files associated with the Oxygen XML Developer plugin in the Package Explorer view or in the Navigator view can be transformed in one step with one of the following actions available from contextual menu in the Transform submenu:

- **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)**
  Obtains the output with one of the built-in scenarios.

- **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)**
  Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure predefined transformation scenarios.

- **Transform with**
  Allows you to select a transformation scenario to be applied to the currently selected files.

**Validate submenu**

The currently selected files associated with the Oxygen XML Developer plugin in the Package Explorer view or in the Navigator view can be checked to be XML well-formed or validated against a schema (DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG, Schematron or NVDL) with one of the following contextual menu actions found in the Validate submenu:

- **Check Well-Formedness**
  Checks if the selected file or files are well-formed.

- **Validate**
Validates the selected file or files against their associated schema.
For EPUB files, this action triggers an **EPUB Validate and Check for Completeness** (on page 1403) operation.

**Validate with Schema**
Validates the selected file of files against a specified schema.

✓ **Configure Validation Scenario(s)**
Allows you to configure and run a validation scenario (on page 432).

✗ **Clear Validation Markers**
Clears all the error markers from the main editor and **Problems** view.

**Generate XML Schema Documentation**
Opens the **XML Schema Documentation Dialog Box** (on page 631).

**Generate Stylesheet Documentation**
Opens the **XSLT Stylesheet Documentation Dialog Box** (on page 557).

**Generate XQuery Documentation**
Opens the **XQuery Documentation Dialog Box** (on page 666).

**Generate WSDL Documentation**
Opens the **WSDL Documentation Dialog Box** (on page 688).

🔍 **Properties**
Displays the properties of the current file in a **Properties** dialog box.

**Enable Master Files Support (Available from the project container)**
Allows you to enable the **Master Files Support** (on page 338) for each project you are working on.

🔍 **Detect Master Files (Available from the project container when Master Files Support is enabled)**
Opens the **Detect Master Files wizard** (on page 338) that enables the automatic detection of master files.

Ŭ **Add to Master Files (Available when Master Files Support is enabled)**
Adds the selected files to the Master Files folder (on page 339).

**Outline View for XML Documents**
The **Outline** view displays a general tag overview of the currently edited XML Document. When you edit a document, the **Outline** view dynamically follows the changes that you make, displaying the node
that you modify. This functionality gives you great insight on the location of your modifications in the current document. It also shows the correct hierarchical dependencies between elements. This makes it easy for you to be aware of the document structure and the way element tags are nested.

Outline View Features

The Outline view allows you to:

- Quickly navigate through the document by selecting nodes in the Outline tree.
- Insert or delete nodes using contextual menu actions.
- Move elements by dragging them to a new position in the tree structure.
- Highlight elements in the editor area. It is synchronized with the editor area, so when you make a selection in the editor area, the corresponding nodes are highlighted in the Outline view, and vice versa.
- View document errors, as they are highlighted in the Outline view. A tooltip also provides more information about the nature of the error when you hover over the faulted element.

Outline View Interface

By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

The upper part of the Outline view contains a filter box that allows you to focus on the relevant components. Type a text fragment in the filter box and only the components that match it are presented. For advanced usage you can use wildcard characters (such as *, ?) and separate multiple patterns with commas.

It also includes a View menu in the top-right corner that presents a variety of options to help you filter the view even further.

Drop and Drop Actions in the Outline View

Entire XML elements can be moved or copied in the edited document using only the mouse in the Outline view with drag-and-drop operations. Several drag and drop actions are possible:

- If you drag an XML element in the Outline view and drop it on another node, then the dragged element will be moved after the drop target element.
- If you hold the mouse pointer over the drop target for a short time before the drop then the drop target element will be expanded first and the dragged element will be moved inside the drop target element after its opening tag.
• You can also drop an element before or after another element if you hold the mouse pointer towards the upper or lower part of the targeted element. A marker will indicate whether the drop will be performed before or after the target element.

• If you hold down the (Ctrl (Command on OS X)) key after dragging, a copy operation will be performed instead of a move.

Figure 44. Outline View

Outline View Filters

The upper part of the **Outline** view contains a filter box that allows you to focus on the relevant components. Type a text fragment in the filter box and only the components that match it are presented. For advanced usage you can use wildcard characters (such as *, ?) and separate multiple patterns with commas.

The following actions are available in the **View menu** of the **Outline** view:

- **Filter returns exact matches**
  
  The text filter of the **Outline** view returns only exact matches.

- **Selection update on cursor move (Available in Text mode)**
  
  Controls the synchronization between **Outline** view and source document. The selection in the **Outline** view can be synchronized with the cursor moves or the changes in the editor. Selecting one of the components from the **Outline** view also selects the corresponding item in the source document.

- **Flat presentation mode of the filtered results**
  
  When active, the application flattens the filtered result elements to a single level.
Show comments and processing instructions

Show/hide comments and processing instructions in the Outline view.

Show element name

Show/hide element name.

Show text

Show/hide additional text content for the displayed elements.

Show attributes

Show/hide attribute values for the displayed elements. The displayed attribute values can be changed from the Outline preferences panel (on page 158).

Configure displayed attributes

Displays the XML Structured Outline preferences page (on page 158).

Outline View Contextual Menu Actions

The contextual menu of the Outline view contains the following actions:

Edit Attributes

Displays an in-place attributes editor that allows you to edit the attributes of a selected node.

Append Child

Invokes a content completion list with the names of all the elements that are allowed by the associated schema and inserts your selection as a child of the current element.

Insert Before

Invokes a content completion list with the names of all the elements that are allowed by the associated schema and inserts your selection immediately before the current element, as a sibling.

Insert After

Invokes a content completion list with the names of all the elements that are allowed by the associated schema and inserts your selection immediately after the current element, as a sibling.

Cut, Copy, Paste, Delete common editing actions

Executes the typical editing actions on the currently selected elements. The Cut and Copy operations preserve the styles of the copied content.

Toggle Comment
Encloses the currently selected element in an XML comment, if the element is not already commented. If it is already commented, this action will remove the comment.

Expands the structure tree of the currently selected element.

Collapse All

Collapses all of the structure tree of the currently selected node.

Tip: You can copy, cut or delete multiple nodes in the Outline by using the contextual menu after selecting multiple nodes in the tree.

Attributes View in Text Mode

The Attributes view presents all the attributes of the current element determined by the schema of the document. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened from the Window > Show View menu.

You can use the Attributes view to insert attributes, edit their values, or add values to existing attributes.

The attributes are rendered differently depending on their state:

- The names of the attributes are rendered with a bold font, and their values with a plain font.
- Default values are rendered with a plain font, painted gray.
- Empty values display the text "[empty]", painted gray.
- Invalid attributes and values are painted red.

To edit the value of the corresponding attribute, double-click a cell in the Value column. If the possible values of the attribute are specified as list in the schema of the edited document, the Value column acts as a combo box that allows you to either select the value from a list or manually enter it.

You can sort the attributes table by clicking the Attribute column header. The table contents can be sorted as follows:

- By attribute name in ascending order.
- By attribute name in descending order.
- Custom order, where the used attributes are displayed at the beginning of the table sorted in ascending order, followed by the rest of the allowed elements sorted in ascending order.

Figure 45. Attributes View
Contextual Menu Actions in the Attributes View

The following actions are available in the contextual menu of the Attributes view when editing in Text mode:

**Add**

Allows you to insert a new attribute.

**Set empty value**

Specifies the current attribute value as empty.

**Remove**

Removes the attribute (action available only if the attribute is specified). You can invoke this action by pressing the (Delete) or (Backspace) keys.

**Copy**

Copies the `attrName="attrValue"` pair to the clipboard. The `attrValue` can be:

- The value of the attribute.
- The value of the default attribute, if the attribute does not appear in the edited document.
- Empty, if the attribute does not appear in the edited document and has no default value set.

**Paste**

Depending on the content of the clipboard, the following cases are possible:

- If the clipboard contains an attribute and its value, both of them are introduced in the Attributes view. The attribute is selected and its value is changed if they exist in the Attributes view.
• If the clipboard contains an attribute name with an empty value, the attribute is introduced in the **Attributes** view and you can start editing it. The attribute is selected and you can start editing it if it exists in the **Attributes** view.
• If the clipboard only contains text, the value of the selected attribute is modified.

**Model View**

The **Model** view presents the structure of the currently selected tag, and its documentation, defined as annotation in the schema of the current document. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

**Figure 46. Model View**

The **Model** view is comprised of two sections, an element structure panel and an annotations panel.
Element Structure Panel

The element structure panel displays the structure of the currently edited or selected tag in a tree-like format. The information includes the name, model, and attributes of the current tag. The allowed attributes are shown along with imposed restrictions, if any.

Figure 47. Element Structure Panel

Annotation Panel

The Annotation panel displays the annotation information for the currently selected element. This information is collected from the XML schema.

Figure 48. Annotation panel

Elements View in Text Mode

The Elements view presents a list of all defined elements that are valid at the current cursor position according to the schema associated to the document. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.
Double-clicking any of the listed elements inserts that element into the edited document, at the current cursor position. Pressing F2 with an element selected will display information about that particular element.

Figure 49. Elements View in Text Mode

Entities View

Entities provide abbreviated entries that can be used in XML files when there is a need of repeatedly inserting certain characters or large blocks of information. An entity is defined using the ENTITY statement either in the DOCTYPE declaration or in a DTD file associated with the current XML file.

There are three types of entities:

- **Predefined** - Entities that are part of the predefined XML markup (`, `, `&`, `apos;`, `quot;).
- **Internal** - Defined in the DOCTYPE declaration header of the current XML.
- **External** - Defined in an external DTD module included in the DTD referenced in the XML DOCTYPE declaration.

**Note:** If you want to add internal entities, you would need to switch to the Text editing mode and manually modify the DOCTYPE declaration. If you want to add external entities, you need to open the DTD module file and modify it directly.

The Entities view displays a list with all entities declared in the current document, as well as built-in ones. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Double-clicking one of the entities will insert it at the current cursor position in the XML document. You can also sort entities by name and value by clicking the column headers.

Figure 50. Entities View
The view features a filtering capability that allows you to search an entity by name, value, or both. Also, you can choose to display the internal or external entities.

**Note:** When entering filters, you can use the `?` and `*` wildcards. Also, you can enter multiple filters by separating them with a comma.

**Results View**

The **Results** view displays the messages generated as a result of user actions such as validations, transformations, search operations, and others. Each message is a link to the location related to the event that triggered the message. Double-clicking a message opens the file containing the location and positions the cursor at the location offset. The **Results** view is automatically opened when certain actions generate result messages.

The actions that contribute messages to this view include:

- **Validation** actions ([on page 423](#))
- **Transformation** actions ([on page 857](#))
- **Check Spelling in Files** action ([on page 353](#))
- **Search References** action ([on page 543](#))
- SQL results ([on page 1468](#))

Figure 51. Results View
Results View Toolbar Actions

The view includes a toolbar with the following actions:

- **Grouping Mode toggle options**
  
  You can choose to group the result messages in a **Hierarchical** or **Flat** arrangement.

- **Next**
  
  Navigates to the message below the current selection.

- **Previous**
  
  Navigates to the message above the current selection.

- **Remove selected**
  
  Removes the current selection from the view. This can be helpful if you want to reduce the number of messages, or remove those that have already been addressed or not relevant to your task.

- **Remove all**
  
  Removes all messages from the view.

Results View Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available when the contextual menu is invoked in this view:

- **Learn Word(s) (Available when spelling errors are reported in the Results view)**
  
  Adds the word(s) to a list of learned words to instruct the spell checker engine to not report the word(s) as spelling errors in the future.

- **Remove**
  
  Removes selected messages from the view.

- **Remove all**
Removes all messages from the view.

**Copy**

Copies information associated with the selected messages. For example:

- The file path of the document that triggered the output message.
- Error severity (error, warning, info message, etc.)
- Name of validating processor.
- The line and column in the file that triggered the message.

**Copy Description**

Copies the description values for all selected items.

**Show message**

Opens a dialog box that displays the details of the message.

**Save Results**

Saves the complete list of messages in a file in text format. For each message, the included details are the same as the ones for the **Copy action (on page 228)**.

**Save Results as XML**

Saves the complete list of messages in a file in XML format. For each message, the included details are the same as the ones for the **Copy action (on page 228)**.

**Save Results as HTML**

Saves the complete list of messages in a file in HTML format. For each message, the included details are the same as the ones for the **Copy action (on page 228)**.

**Expand All**

Available when **Hierarchical** mode is selected. Expands all the nodes of the tree, which is useful when the messages are presented in a hierarchical mode.

**Collapse All**

Available when **Hierarchical** mode is selected. Collapses all the nodes of the tree, which is useful when the messages are presented in a hierarchical mode.

**Syntax Highlighting in XML Documents**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports syntax highlighting in **Text** mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for XML files, follow these steps:
1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42).
2. Go to Editor > Syntax Highlight (on page 112).
3. Select and expand the XML section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.
5. Select the XML tab in the Preview pane to see the effects of your changes.

Tip: Oxygen XML Developer plugin also allows you to specify syntax highlighting colors for specific XML elements and attributes with specific namespace prefixes. This can be done in the Editor > Syntax Highlight > Elements/Attributes by Prefix preferences page (on page 113).

Related Information:
- Customize Syntax Highlight colors (on page 112)

Syntax Highlight Depending on Namespace Prefix

The syntax highlight scheme of an XML file type (on page 112) allows the configuration of a color per each type of token that can appear in an XML file. Distinguishing between the XML tag tokens based on the namespace prefix brings additional visual help in editing some XML file types. For example, in XSLT stylesheets, elements from various namespaces (such as XSLT, XHTML, XSL:FO, or XForms) are inserted in the same document and the editor panel can become cluttered. Marking tags with different colors based on the namespace prefix (on page 113) allows easier identification of the tags.

Figure 52. Example of Coloring XML Tags by Prefix

```
<xl:template match="name">
  <fo:list-item>
    <fo:list-item-label end-indent="label-end()"></fo:list-item-label>
    <fo:block text-align="end" font-weight="bold">Full Name:</fo:block>
  </fo:list-item>
  <fo:list-item-body start-indent="body-start()">
    <fo:block text-align="start" color="red">
      <xsl:apply-templates select="*"/>
    </fo:block>
  </fo:list-item-body>
</fo:list-item>
</xl:template>
```

Related Information:
- Changing the colors displayed in the Text Mode Editor (on page 112)
Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode

By default, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically validates documents (on page 423) while editing in the Text mode, and actions are also available to manually validate documents (on page 423) on-request.

Figure 53. Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode

Validation Marker Locations

In Text mode, validation issues are marked in the following locations:

- In the main editing pane, with the issue underlined in a color according to the type of issue.
- In the right-side vertical stripe, with a marker that is colored according to the type of issue.
- For attributes with detected issues, in the Attributes view (on page 221), with the attribute and its value colored according to the type of issue.

Validation Marker Colors

The colors for each type of issue are as follows:

- **Validation Errors** [Red] - By default, the underline in the editing pane, the marker in the right vertical stripe, and the foreground color of the attribute in the Attributes view are colored in red.
- **Validation Warnings** [Yellow] - By default, the underline in the editing pane, the marker in the right vertical stripe, and the foreground color of the attribute in the Attributes view are colored in yellow.
- **Validation Info** [Blue] - By default, the underline in the editing pane, the marker in the right vertical stripe, and the foreground color of the attribute in the Attributes view are colored in blue.
You can configure the colors and how the various types of validation problems are rendered from the Eclipse Annotations preferences page (Window ("Eclipse" on Mac OSX) > Preferences > General > Editors > Text Editors > Annotations).

**Validation Markers in the Right-Side Stripe**

Also, the stripe on the right side of the editor panel is designed to display the issues found during the validation process and to help you locate them in the document. The stripe contains the following:

**Upper Part of the Stripe**

A success indicator square will turn green if the validation is successful or only info messages are found, red if validation errors are found, or yellow if only validation warnings are found. More details about the issues are displayed in a tool tip when you hover over indicator square. If there are numerous problems, only the first three are presented in the tool tip.

**Middle Part of the Stripe**

Errors are presented with red markers, warnings with yellow markers, and info message with blue markers. If you want to limit the number of markers that are displayed, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Editor > Document checking, and specify the desired limit in the Maximum number of validation highlights option (on page 93).

Clicking a marker will highlight the corresponding text area in the editor. The validation message is also displayed both in a tool tip (when hovering over the marker) and in the message area on the bottom of the application.

**Bottom Part of the Stripe**

Two navigation arrows (↩) allow you to jump to the next or previous issue. The same actions can be triggered from Document > Automatic validation > Next error (Ctrl + Period (Command + Period on OS X)) and Document > Automatic validation > Previous error (Ctrl + Comma (Command + Comma on OS X)).

**Hovering Over Validation Issues**

Hovering over a validation issue presents a tooltip message with more details about the problem and possible quick fixes (on page 447) (if available for that issue). Also, when hovering over an issue, pressing F2 will change the focus to the tooltip where you can use Tab and Shift + Tab to navigate between quick fixes and Space to trigger them.
Details About Validation Issues

- Information about the issue is also displayed in the message area on the bottom of the editor panel (clicking the Document checking options button opens the Document Checking preferences page (on page 93) where you can configure some validation options.
- Status messages from every validation action are logged in the Console view (on page 362) (the Enable Oxygen consoles option (on page 123) must be selected in the View preferences page).
- If you want to see all the validation messages grouped in the Results view (on page 226), you should use the Validate action from the toolbar or XML menu. This action also collects the validation messages and displays them in the Problems view if the validated file is in the current workspace or in a custom Errors view if the validated file is outside the workspace.

Related Information:

- Validating XML Documents Against a Schema (on page 422)
- Presenting Schematron Validation Issues (on page 770)

Formatting and Indenting XML Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin creates XML documents using several edit modes (on page 184). In Text mode (on page 184), you as the author decide how the XML file is formatted and indented. In the other modes, and when you switch between modes, Oxygen XML Developer plugin must decide how to format and indent the XML. Oxygen XML Developer plugin will also format and indent your XML for you in Text mode if you use one of the Format and Indent options:

- Document > Source >  Format and Indent - Formats and indents the whole document.
- Document > Source >  Indent Selection - Indents the current selection (but does not add line breaks). This action is also available in the Source submenu of the contextual menu.
- Document > Source >  Format and Indent Element - Formats and indents the current element (the inmost nested element that currently contains the cursor) and its child-elements. This action is also available in the Source submenu of the contextual menu.

A number of settings affect how Oxygen XML Developer plugin formats and indents XML. Many of these settings have to do with how whitespace is handled.
**Significant and insignificant whitespace in XML**

XML documents are text files that describe complex documents. Some of the white space (spaces, tabs, line feeds, etc.) in the XML document belongs to the document it describes (such as the space between words in a paragraph) and some of it belongs to the XML document (such as a line break between two XML elements). Whitespace belonging to the XML file is called *insignificant whitespace*. The meaning of the XML would be the same if the insignificant whitespace were removed. Whitespace belonging to the document being described is called *significant whitespace*.

Knowing when whitespace is significant or insignificant is not always easy. For instance, a paragraph in an XML document might be laid out like this:

```xml
<p>NO Free man shall be taken or imprisoned, or be stripped of his Freedom, or Liberties, or free Customs, or be outlawed, or exiled, or any otherwise destroyed; nor will we not pass upon him, nor condemn him, but by lawful judgment of his Peers, or by the <xref href="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Law_of_the_land" format="html" scope="external">Law of the land</xref>. We will sell to no man, we will not deny to any man either Justice or Right.</p>
```

By default, XML considers a single whitespace between words to be significant, and all other whitespace to be insignificant. The paragraph above could have been written on one line because the XML parser would see it as exactly the same paragraph since all multiple consecutive whitespaces will be replaced with a single whitespace. Removing the insignificant space in markup like this is called *normalizing space*.

In some cases, all the spaces inside an element should be treated as significant. For example, in a code sample:

```xml
<codeblock>
class HelloWorld
{
    public static void main(String args[])
    {
        System.out.println("Hello World");
    }
}
</codeblock>
```

Here every whitespace character between the `codeblock` tags should be treated as significant.
How Oxygen XML Developer plugin determines when whitespace is significant

When Oxygen XML Developer plugin formats and indents an XML document, it introduces or removes insignificant whitespace to produce a layout with reasonable line lengths and elements indented to show their place in the hierarchy of the document. To correctly format and indent the XML source, Oxygen XML Developer plugin needs to know when to treat whitespace as significant and when to treat it as insignificant. However it is not always possible to tell this from the XML source file alone. To determine what whitespace is significant, Oxygen XML Developer plugin assigns each element in the document to one of four categories:

Ignore space

In the ignore space category, all whitespace is considered insignificant. This generally applies to content that consists only of elements nested inside other elements, with no text content.

Normalize space

In the normalize space category, a single whitespace character between character strings is considered significant and all other spaces are considered insignificant. Therefore, all consecutive whitespaces will be replaced with a single space. This generally applies to elements that contain text content only.

Mixed content

In the mixed content category, a single whitespace between text characters is considered significant and all other spaces are considered insignificant. However,

• Whitespace between two child elements embedded in the text is normalized to a single space (rather than to zero spaces as would normally be the case for a text node with only whitespace characters, or the space between elements generally).
• The lack of whitespace between a child element embedded in the text and either adjacent text or another child element is considered significant. That is, no whitespace can be introduced here when formatting and indenting the file.

For example:

```xml
<p>The file is located in <i>HOME</i>/USER/hello.
   This is a <strong>big</strong> deal.</p>
```
In this example, whitespace should not be introduced around the \textit{\textit{i}} tags as it would introduce extra significant whitespace into the document. The space between the end \textit{\textit{</strong>}} tag and the beginning \textit{\textit{<emphasis>}} tag should be normalized to a single space, not zero spaces.

**Preserve space**

In the preserve space category, all whitespace in the element is regarded as significant. No changes are made to the spaces in elements in this category. However, child elements may be in another category, and may be treated differently.

Attribute values are always in the preserve space category. The spaces between attributes in an element tag are always in the default space category.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin consults several pieces of information to assign an element to one of these categories. An element is always assigned to the most restrictive category (from Ignore to Preserve) that it is assigned to by any of the sources Oxygen XML Developer plugin consults. For instance, if the element is named on the Default elements list (as described below) but it has an \texttt{xml:space=“preserve”} attribute in the source file, it will be assigned to the preserve space category. If an element has the \texttt{xml:space=“default”} attribute in the source, but is listed on the Mixed content elements list, it will be assigned to the mixed content category.

To assign elements to these categories, Oxygen XML Developer plugin consults information from the following sources:

**xml:space**

If the XML element contains the \texttt{xml:space} attribute, the element is promoted to the appropriate category based on the value of the attribute.

**Schema aware formatting**

If a schema is available for the XML document, Oxygen XML Developer plugin can use information from the schema to promote the element to the appropriate category. For example:

- If the schema declares an element to be of type \texttt{xs:string}, the element will be promoted to the preserve space category because the string built-in type has the whitespace facet with the value preserve.
- If the schema declares an element to be mixed content, it will be promoted to the mixed content category.

Schema aware formatting can be turned on and off.
• To turn it on or off for the Text editing mode, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Editor > Format > XML, and select/deselect the Schema aware format and indent option (on page 105).

**Preserve space elements list**

If an element is listed in the Preserve space tab of the Element Spacing list (on page 104) in the XML formatting preferences (on page 102), it is promoted to the preserve space category.

**Default space elements list**

If an element is listed in the Default space tab of the Element Spacing list (on page 104) in the XML formatting preferences (on page 102), it is promoted to the default space category.

**Mixed content elements list**

If an element is listed in the Mixed content tab of the Element Spacing list (on page 104) in the XML formatting preferences (on page 102), it is promoted to the mixed content category.

**Element content**

If an element contains mixed content, that is, a mix of text and other elements, it is promoted to the mixed content category. (Note that, in accordance with these rules, this happens even if the schema declares the element to have element only content.) If an element contains text content, it is promoted to the default space category.

**Text node content**

If a text node contains any non-whitespace characters then the text node is promoted to the normalize space category.

**How Oxygen XML Developer plugin formats and indents XML**

You can control how Oxygen XML Developer plugin formats and indents XML documents. This can be particularly important if you store your XML document in a version control system, as it allows you to limit the number of trivial changes in spacing between versions of an XML document. The following preference pages include options that control how XML documents are formatted:

- Format preferences page (on page 99)
- XML Formatting preferences page (on page 102)
- Whitespaces preferences page (on page 106)
When Oxygen XML Developer plugin formats and indents XML

Oxygen XML Developer plugin formats and indents a document, or part of it, on the following occasions:

- In **Text** mode when you select one of the format and indent actions (**Document > Source > Format and Indent**, **Document > Source > Indent Selection**, or **Document > Source > Format and Indent Element**).
- When saving documents in **Design** mode.
- When switching from **Design** mode to another mode.
- When saving or switching to **Text** mode from **Grid** mode, if the **Format and indent when passing from grid to text or on save** option (**on page 95**) is selected in the **Grid** preferences page.

Setting an Indent Size to Zero

Oxygen XML Developer plugin will automatically format and indent (**on page 395**) documents at certain times. This includes indenting the content from the margin to reflect its structure. In some cases, you may not want your content indented. To avoid your content being indented, you can set an indent size of zero.

**Note:** Changing the indent size does not override the rules that Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses for handling whitespace when formatting and indenting XML documents. Therefore, changing the indent size will have no effect on elements that require whitespaces to be maintained.

There are two cases to consider.

**Maintaining zero indent in documents with zero indent**

If you have existing documents with zero indent and you want Oxygen XML Developer plugin to maintain a zero indent when editing or formatting those documents:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box (**on page 42**) and go to **Editor > Format** (**on page 99**).
2. Select **Detect indent on open**.
3. Select **Use zero-indent if detected**.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin will examine the indent of each document as it is opened and if the indent is zero for all lines, or for nearly all lines, a zero indent will be used when formatting and indenting the document. Otherwise, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will use the indent closest to what it detects in the document.

**Enforcing zero indent for all documents**
If you want all documents to be formatted with zero indent, regardless of their current indenting:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Format (on page 99).
2. Deselect Detect indent on open.
3. Set Indent size to 0.

All documents will be formatted and indented with an indent of zero.

⚠ Warning: Setting the indent size to zero can change the meaning of some file types, such as Python source files.

Format and Indent (Pretty-Print) Multiple Files

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for formatting and indenting (pretty-print (on page 1625)) multiple files at once. This action is available for any document in XML format, as well as for XQuery, CSS, JavaScript, and JSON documents.

To format and indent multiple files, use the Format and Indent Files action that is available in the contextual menu of the Navigator view (on page 210). This opens the Format and Indent Files dialog box that allows you to configure options for the action.

Figure 54. Format and Indent Files Dialog Box

The Scope section allows you choose from the following scopes:

- **All opened files** - The pretty-print (on page 1625) is performed in all opened files.
• **Directory of the current file** - All the files in the folder of the current edited file.
• **Project files** - All files from the current project.
• **Selected project files** - The selected files from the current project.
• **Specified path** - the *pretty-print (on page 1625)* is performed in the files located at a specified path.

The **Options** section includes the following options:

• **File filter** - Allow you to filter the files from the selected scope.
• **Recurse subdirectories** - When selected, the *pretty-print (on page 1625)* is performed recursively for the specified scope. The one exception is that this option is ignored if the scope is set to **All opened files**.
• **Include hidden files** - When selected, the *pretty-print (on page 1625)* is also performed in the hidden files.
• **Make backup files with extension** - When selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin makes backup files of the modified files. The default extension is `.bak`, but you can change the extension as you prefer.

**Quick Assist Support for IDs and IDREFS**

The *Quick Assist support (on page 1625)* is activated automatically when you place the cursor inside an ID or IDREF in **Text** mode. To access it, click the yellow bulb help marker placed on the current line, in the line number stripe of the editor. You can also invoke the *Quick Assist* menu from the contextual menu or by pressing **Ctrl+1 (Command+1 on Mac OS X)** on your keyboard.

The following actions are available:

ℹ️ **Rename in**

Rename the ID and all its occurrences. Selecting this action opens the *Rename XML ID* dialog box. This dialog box lets you insert the new ID value and choose the scope of the rename operation (on page 466). For a preview of the changes you are about to make, click **Preview**. This opens the **Preview** dialog box, which presents a list with the files that contain changes and a preview zone of these changes.

🔍 **Search Declarations**

Searches for the declaration of the ID reference. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the *Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations (on page 466)* dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

🔍 **Search References**
Searches for the references of the ID. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the *Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations* (on page 466) dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

**Change scope**

Opens the *Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations* (on page 466) dialog box.

**Rename in File**

 Renames the ID you are editing and all its occurrences from the current file.

**Search Occurrences**

Searches for the declaration an references of the ID located at the cursor position in the current document.

Related Information:

**Highlight ID Occurrences in Text Mode**

To see the occurrences of an ID in an XML document in the *Text* mode, place the cursor inside the ID declaration or reference. The occurrences are marked in the vertical side bar at the right of the editor. Click a marker on the side bar to jump to the occurrence that it corresponds to. The occurrences are also highlighted in the editing area.

**Note:** Highlighted ID declarations are rendered with a different color than highlighted ID references. To customize these colors or disable this feature, open the *Preferences* dialog box (on page 42) and go to *Editor > Mark Occurrences* (on page 107).

Related Information:

**Contextual Menu Actions in Text Mode**

When editing XML documents in *Text* mode, Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides the following actions in the contextual menu (many of them also appear in the submenus of the *Document* menu):

**Cut, Copy, Paste**

Executes the typical editing actions on the currently selected content.

**Copy XPath**
Copies the XPath expression of the current element or attribute (or property for JSON documents) from the current editor to the clipboard.

**Toggle Comment (Ctrl + Shift + Comma (Command + Shift + Comma on OS X))**

Comments the current selection of the current editor. If the selection already contains a comment, the action removes the comment from around the selection. If there is no selection in the current editor and the cursor is not positioned inside a comment, the current line is commented. If the cursor is positioned inside a comment, then the commented text is uncommented.

**Go to submenu**

This submenu includes the following actions:

- **Go to Matching Tag (Ctrl + Shift + G)**
  
  Moves the cursor to the end tag that matches the start tag, or vice versa.

- **Go after Next Tag (Ctrl + CloseBracket (Command + CloseBracket on OS X))**
  
  Moves the cursor to the end of the next tag.

- **Go after Previous Tag (Ctrl + OpenBracket (Command + OpenBracket on OS X))**
  
  Moves the cursor to the end of the previous tag.

**Select submenu**

This submenu allows you to select the following:

- **Element**
  
  Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

- **Content**
  
  Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

- **Attributes**
  
  Selects all the attributes of the element at the current cursor position.

- **Parent**
  
  Selects the parent element at the current cursor position.

**Source submenu**

This submenu includes the following actions:

- **Shift Right**
Shifts the currently selected block to the right.

**Shift Left**
Shifts the currently selected block to the left.

**Indent selection (Ctrl + I (Command + I on OS X))**
Corrects the indentation of the selected block of lines if it does not follow the current indenting preferences (on page 99).

**Escape Selection**
Escapes a range of characters by replacing them with the corresponding character entities.

**Unescape Selection**
Replaces the character entities with the corresponding characters.

**Format and Indent Element (Ctrl + Shift + I (Command + Shift + I on OS X))**
Pretty-prints (on page 1625) the element that surrounds the current cursor position.

**Convert Hexadecimal Sequence to Character (Ctrl + Shift + H (Command + Shift + H on OS X))**
Converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character (on page 355). The action can be invoked if there is a selection containing a valid hexadecimal sequence or if the cursor is placed at the right side of a valid hexadecimal sequence. A valid hexadecimal sequence can be composed of 2 to 4 hexadecimal characters and may or may not be preceded by the 0x or 0X prefix. Examples of valid sequences and the characters they will be converted to:

- 0x0045 will be converted to E
- 0X0125 to #
- 265 to #
- 2190 to #

**Note:** For more information about finding the hexadecimal value of a character, see Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent (on page 359).

**Base64 Encode/Decode submenu**
This submenu include the following actions for encoding or decoding base 64 schemes:
Import File to Encode and Insert

Encodes a file and then inserts the encoded content into the current document at the cursor position.

Decode Selection and Export to File

Decodes a selection of text from the current document and then exports (saves) the result to another file.

Encode Selection

Replaces a selection of text with the result of encoding that selection.

Decode Selection

Replaces a selection of text with the result of decoding that selection.

Modify All Matches

Use this option to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content (or the contiguous fragment where the cursor is located). When you use this option, a thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

Base32 Encode/Decode submenu

This submenu include the following actions for encoding or decoding base32 schemes:

Import File to Encode and Insert

Encodes a file and then inserts the encoded content into the current document at the cursor position.

Decode Selection and Export to File

Decodes a selection of text from the current document and then exports (saves) the result to another file.

Encode Selection

Replaces a selection of text with the result of encoding that selection.

Decode Selection
Replaces a selection of text with the result of decoding that selection.

**Modify All Matches**

Use this option to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content (or the contiguous fragment where the cursor is located). When you use this option, a thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

**Hex Encode/Decode submenu**

This submenu include the following actions for encoding or decoding hex schemes:

- **Import File to Encode and Insert**
  
  Encodes a file and then inserts the encoded content into the current document at the cursor position.

- **Decode Selection and Export to File**
  
  Decodes a selection of text from the current document and then exports (saves) the result to another file.

- **Encode Selection**
  
  Replaces a selection of text with the result of encoding that selection.

- **Decode Selection**
  
  Replaces a selection of text with the result of decoding that selection.

- **Modify All Matches**
  
  Use this option to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content (or the contiguous fragment where the cursor is located). When you use this option, a thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

**Join and Normalize Lines**
For the current selection, this action joins the lines by replacing the 
*line separator* with a single space character. It also normalizes the 
whitespaces by replacing a sequence of such characters with a single 
space.

**Insert XInclude**

Displays a dialog box that allows you to browse and select the content 
to be included and automatically generates the corresponding XInclude 
instruction.

*Note:* In the **Author** mode, this dialog box presents a preview of the 
inserted document as an author page in the **Preview** tab and as a text page 
in the **Source** tab. In the **Text** mode, the **Source** tab is presented.

**Import entities list**

Displays a dialog box that allows you to select a list of files as sources 
for external DTD entities. The internal subset of the DOCTYPE declaration 
of your document will be updated with the chosen entities. For instance, 
choosing the files `chapter1.xml` and `chapter2.xml` inserts the 
following section in the DOCTYPE:

```xml
<!ENTITY chapter1 SYSTEM "chapter1.xml">
<!ENTITY chapter2 SYSTEM "chapter2.xml">
```

**Canonicalize**

Opens the **Canonicalize** dialog box that allows you to select a 
*canonicalization (on page 1620)* algorithm to standardize the format of 
the document.

**Sign**

Opens the **Sign** dialog box that allows you to configure a digital signature 
for the document.

**Verify Signature**

Allows you to specify the location of a file to verify its digital signature.

**Manage Highlighted Content submenu**

This submenu is available from the contextual menu when it is invoked from a highlight 
after you perform a search operation or apply an XPath expression that highlights more 
than one result. The following options are available in this submenu:

**Modify All**
Allows you to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content. A thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

**Surround All**

Surround the highlighted content with a specific tag. This option opens the Tag dialog box. The Specify the tag drop-down menu presents all the available elements that you can choose from.

**Remove All**

Removes all the highlighted content.

**Modify All Matches**

Use this option to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content (or the contiguous fragment where the cursor is located). When you use this option, a thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

**Go to Definition (Ctrl + Shift + Enter)**

Navigates to the definition of the current element or attribute in the schema (DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG schema) associated with the edited XML document. If the current attribute is a `type` belonging to the `http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance` namespace, the cursor is moved in the XML schema to the definition of the type referenced in the value of the attribute. For JSON documents, it navigates to the definition of the current JSON property in the associated JSON Schema.

**Refactoring submenu**

This submenu includes the following actions:

**Rename Element**

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the Rename dialog box.

**Rename Prefix (Alt + Shift + P (Command + Shift + P on OS X))**

The prefix of the element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same prefix, can be renamed according with the options from the Rename dialog box.
• If you select the **Rename current element prefix** option, the application will recursively traverse the current element and all its children. *For example,* to change the `xmlns:p1="ns1"` association in the current element to `xmlns:p5="ns1"`, if the `xmlns:p1="ns1"` association is applied on the parent element, then Oxygen XML Developer plugin will introduce `xmlns:p5="ns1"` as a new declaration in the current element and will change the prefix from `p1` to `p5`. If `p5` is already associated with another namespace in the current element, then the conflict will be displayed in a dialog box. By pressing **OK**, the prefix is modified from `p1` to `p5` without inserting a new declaration.

• If you select the **Rename current prefix in all document** option, the application will apply the change on the entire document.

• To also apply the action inside attribute values, select the **Rename also attribute values that start with the same prefix** checkbox.

---

**Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)**

Allows you to choose a tag that encloses a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

• If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 87)* is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.

• If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 87)* is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

---

**Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)**

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

---

**Surround with <![CDATA[]]> (Alt + Shift + C (Command + Alt + C on OS X))**

Surround the selected content with a **CDATA** tag so that the parser will interpret it as textual data rather than markup.

---

**Delete element tags (Alt + Shift + Comma)**

Deletes the start and end tag of the current element.

---

**Split element**
Split the element from the cursor position into two identical elements. The cursor must be inside the element.

Join elements \((\text{Alt} + \text{Shift} + F (\text{Command} + \text{Alt} + F \text{ on OS X}))\)

Joins the left and right elements relative to the current cursor position. The elements must have the same name, attributes, and attributes values.

**Attributes Refactoring Actions**
Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

- **Add/Change attribute**
  Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

- **Convert attribute to element**
  Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

- **Delete attribute**
  Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

- **Rename attribute**
  Allows you to rename an attribute.

- **Replace in attribute value**
  Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

**Comments Refactoring Actions**
Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

- **Delete comments**
  Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

**Elements Refactoring Actions**
Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

- **Delete element**
  Allows you to delete elements.
Delete element content
Allows you to delete the content of elements.

Insert element
Allows you to insert new elements.

Rename element
Allows you to rename elements.

Unwrap element
Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

Wrap element
Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

Wrap element content
Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

Fragments Refactoring Actions
Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Insert XML fragment
Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

Replace element content with XML fragment
Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

Replace element with XML fragment
Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

Manage IDs submenu
This submenu is available for XML documents that have an associated DTD, XML Schema, or Relax NG schema (not available for DITA). It includes the following actions:

Rename in
Renames the ID and all its occurrences. Selecting this action opens the Rename XML ID dialog box. This dialog box lets you insert the new ID value and choose the scope of the rename operation (on page 466). For a preview of the changes you are about to make, click Preview. This opens
the Preview dialog box, which presents a list with the files that contain changes and a preview zone of these changes.

**Rename in File**

Renames the ID you are editing and all its occurrences from the current file.

**Search References**

Searches for the references of the ID. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 466)* dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

**Search References in**

Searches for the references of the ID. Selecting this action opens the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 466)*.

**Search Declarations**

Searches for the declaration of the ID reference. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 466)* dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

**Search Declarations in**

Searches for the declaration of the ID reference. Selecting this action opens the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 466)*.

**Search Occurrences in file**

Searches for the declaration and references of the ID in the current document.

**Quick Assist (Ctrl + 1 (Command + 1 on OS X))**

Available when the cursor is inside an ID or IDREF, this action opens the **Quick Assist** *(on page 1625)* window that allows you to select some search and refactoring actions for the selected ID or IDREF.

**Open File at Cursor**

Opens the file at the cursor position in a new panel. If the file path represents a directory path, it will be opened in system file browser. If the file at the specified location does not exist, an error dialog box is displayed and it includes a **Create new file** button that starts the **New document** wizard. This allows you to choose the type or the template for the
file. If the action succeeds, the file is created with the referenced location and name and is opened in a new editor panel.

**Resource Hierarchy**

Opens the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view (on page 467) that allows you to see the resource hierarchy for an XML document.

**Resource Dependencies**

Opens the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view (on page 467) that allows you to see the resource dependencies for an XML document.

**Grid Editing Mode**

The Oxygen XML Developer plugin Grid editing mode displays the XML document as a structured grid of nested tables where the text content can be modified without directly interacting with the XML markup. This is helpful for non-technical users who want to edit text content without modifying the XML markup. You can easily expand or collapse elements within the table and the document structure can be changed with simple drag/drop or copy/paste operations.

To switch to this mode, select Grid at the bottom of the editing area.

Figure 55. Grid Editing Mode

For more information about some of the features available in the Grid editor, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/PoYm2VqisWk

Related Information:
Layouts: Grid and Tree

The Grid editor offers two layout modes. The default one is the grid layout. This smart layout detects the recurring elements in the XML document and creates tables having the children (including the attributes) of these elements as columns. This way, it is possible to have tables nested in other tables, reflecting the structure of your document.

![Figure 56. Grid Layout](image)

The other layout mode is tree-like. It does not create any tables and it only presents the structure of the document.

![Figure 57. Tree Layout](image)

To switch between the two modes, select **Grid mode/Tree mode** from the contextual menu.

Grid Mode Navigation

When you first open a document in **Grid** mode, the content is collapsed. Only the root element and its attributes are displayed. An arrow sign (►) displayed at the left of the node name indicates that this node has child nodes. To display the children, click this arrow sign. To collapse a node, click the reverse arrow sign (◄). The expand/collapse actions can also be invoked with the **NumPad+** and **NumPad-** keys, or from the **Expand/Collapse** submenu of the contextual menu.
Expand/Collapse Submenu

The following actions are available on the Expand/Collapse submenu:

- **Expand All**
  Expands the selection and all its children.

- **Collapse All**
  Collapses the selection and all its children.

**Expand Children**

Expands all the children of the selection but not the selection.

**Collapse Children**

Collapses all the children of the selection but not the selection.

**Collapse Others**

Collapses all the siblings of the current selection but not the selection.

Keyboard Shortcuts

A variety of other keyboard shortcuts are also available in Grid mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tab</td>
<td>Moves the cursor to the next editable value in a table row.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift + Tab</td>
<td>Moves the cursor to the previous editable value in a table row.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter</td>
<td>Begins editing and lets you insert a new value. Also commits the changes after you finish editing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UpArrow/PageUp</td>
<td>Navigates toward the beginning of the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DownArrow/PageDown</td>
<td>Navigates toward the end of the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift</td>
<td>Used in conjunction with the navigation keys to create a continuous selection area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl (Command on OS X key)</td>
<td>Used in conjunction with the mouse cursor to create discontinuous selection areas.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following key combinations can be used to scroll the grid:

- **Ctrl + UpArrow (Command + UpArrow on OS X)** - scrolls the grid upwards.
- **Ctrl + DownArrow (Command + DownArrow on OS X)** - scrolls the grid downwards.
- **Ctrl + LeftArrow (Command + LeftArrow on OS X)** - scrolls the grid to the left.
- **Ctrl + RightArrow (Command + RightArrow on OS X)** - scrolls the grid to the right.
Related Information:

- Editing Actions in Grid Mode (on page 413)

Special Character Support in Grid Mode

If you are editing documents with a bidirectional text orientation or other special characters (such as combining characters), you can change the way the text is rendered and edited in the grid cells by using the **Change Text Orientation** (**Ctrl + Shift + O** (**Command + Shift + O** on **OS X**)) action that is available from the **Edit** menu in the **Grid** editing mode. Use this action to switch from the default left to right text orientation to the right to left orientation, and vice versa.

**Note:** This change applies only to the text from the cells, and not to the layout of the grid editor.

---

**Figure 58. Default left to right text orientation**

```xml
<text>
  1. عربى
  2. Quan el món vol conversar, parla Unicode
  3. Ha a vila buxí dels alıs, ait Unicóde-un mónıııa
  4. Quando il mondo vuole comunicare, parla Unicode
  5. 世间を語るなら、Unicodeです。
  6. 世界に話すなら、Unicodeです。
  7. 世界を語るなら、Unicodeです。
  8. Når verden vil snakke, snakker den Unicode
  9. Når verden ønsker å snakke, taler ho Unicode
</text>
```

---

**Figure 59. Right to left text orientation**

```xml
<text>
  1. عربى
  2. Quan el món vol conversar, parla Unicode
  3. Ha a vila buxí dels alıs, ait Unicóde-un mónıııa
  4. Quando il mondo vuole comunicare, parla Unicode
  5. 世界を語るなら、Unicodeです。
  6. 世界に話すなら、Unicodeです。
  7. 世界を語るなら、Unicodeです。
  8. Når verden vil snakke, snakker den Unicode
  9. Når verden ønsker å snakke, taler ho Unicode
</text>
```
Editing Actions in Grid Mode

Since Grid mode presents XML content in a structured grid of nested tables, editing content in this mode can be done with a combination of the Content Completion Assistant (on page 419) and actions that allow you to work with the structure or content of the nested tables much like you would with any table. Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides ways to edit content in the cells of the nested tables or to edit the structure of the tables.

Tip: There are two different types of layouts available in Grid mode. Most people prefer to leave it on the default Grid mode layout, but there is also a Tree mode layout that presents the structure of the document in more of a vertical tree-like manner. You can switch between the two layouts to see which one works best for you particular situation from the Document > Grid Layout menu.

Expanding/Collapsing Nodes

An arrow sign (↑) displayed at the left of a node indicates that it has child nodes. To display the children, click this arrow sign. To collapse a node, click the reverse arrow sign (↓). The expand/collapse actions can also be invoked with the NumPad+ and NumPad- keys, or from the Expand/Collapse submenu of the contextual menu.

To expand all child nodes, right-click the cell that contains the parent node and select Expand All from the Expand/Collapse submenu. To collapse all node, right-click any cell and select Collapse All from the Expand/Collapse submenu.

Editing Elements or Attributes

To edit elements or attributes in Grid mode, simply double-click the cell that contains the element or attribute (or select the cell and press (Enter)) to invoke the Content Completion Assistant (on page 419). This opens a pop-up window that offers a list of proposals that are valid for that particular node.

Editing Text Content in Cells

To edit the text value of a cell, simply select the grid cell and press Enter (or double-click the cell), and start editing.

To stop editing a cell value, press Enter again.
To cancel the editing without saving the current changes in the document, press the `Esc` key.

**Editing the Structure of the Nested Tables**

To edit the structure of the nested tables in **Grid** mode, Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides the following actions in the contextual menu (many of them also appear in the submenus of the **Document** menu, or the toolbar):

- **Cut, Copy, Paste, Delete** common editing actions
  - Executes the typical editing actions on the currently selected elements. The **Cut** and **Copy** operations preserve the styles of the copied content.

- **Paste as Child**
  - Pastes the copied content as the last child of the current selection.

- **Duplicate**
  - Creates a new node by duplicating the currently selected one.

- **Insert Before**
  - Offers a list of valid nodes, depending on the context, and inserts your selection before the currently selected node, as a sibling.

- **Insert After**
  - Offers a list of valid nodes, depending on the context, and inserts your selection after the currently selected node, as a sibling.

- **Append Child**
  - Offers a list of valid nodes, depending on the context, and appends your selection as a child of the currently selected node.

- **Sort Ascending, Sort Descending**
  - The sorting result depends on the data type of the column content. It could be a numerical sorting for numbers or an alphabetical sorting for text information. The editor automatically analyzes the content and decides what type of sorting to apply. When a mixed set of values is present in the sorted column, a dialog box is displayed that allows you to choose the desired type of sorting between *numerical* and *alphabetical*.

- **Insert Row**
  - Inserts a new row below the current selection. To insert a new row, you could also select the row header (the zone to the left of the row that holds the row number) and press **Enter**.

- **Insert Column**
Inserts a column after the current selection.

**Clear Content**

Removes all content from the current cell.

**Expand/Collapse > Expand All**

Expands the selection and all its children.

**Expand/Collapse > Collapse All**

Collapses the selection and all its children.

**Expand/Collapse > Expand Children**

Expands all the children of the selection but not the selection.

**Expand/Collapse > Collapse Children**

Collapses all the children of the selection but not the selection.

**Expand/Collapse > Collapse Others**

Collapses all the siblings of the current selection but not the selection.

**Refresh Selected**

Forces the layout to be recomputed.

---

**Related Information:**

- Grid Mode Navigation ([on page 252](#))
- Copy and Paste in the Grid Editing Mode ([on page 417](#))
- Drag and Drop in the Grid Editing Mode ([on page 416](#))
- Content Completion Assistant in Grid Mode ([on page 419](#))

---

**Drag and Drop in the Grid Editing Mode**

You can easily arrange sections in your XML document in the Grid mode by using drag and drop actions.

You can do the following with drag and drop:

- Copy or move a set of nodes.
• Change the order of columns in the tables.
• Move the rows from the tables.

These operations are available for both single and multiple selections. To deselect one of the selected fragments, use Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on OS X).

While dragging, the editor paints guide-lines showing the locations where you can drop the nodes. You can also drag nodes outside the Grid editor and text from other applications into the Grid.

Tip: When using drag and drop to reorganize the document, the resulting layout can be different from what you expected. For instance, the layout can contain a set of sibling tables that can be joined together. To force the layout to be recomputed, you can use the Refresh Selected action that is available in the contextual menu and in the Document > Grid Edit menu.

Copy and Paste in the Grid Editing Mode

Selecting content in the Grid mode is similar to working with any table with a little more complexity. Specifically, depending on the type of node, when you select a cell, the selection may automatically include additional cells that are implied by the currently selected node. For example, if you click a node that contains any child nodes, all cells that contain the parent and child nodes will be selected. In this case, the currently selected cell is painted with a color that is different from the rest of the selection.

You can also select discontinuous regions of nodes and place them in the clipboard with the copy action. To deselect one of the selected fragments, use Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on OS X).

Pasting Content Within Grid Mode

You can paste copied nodes relative to the currently selected cell using one of the following actions (available in the contextual menu):

- ![Paste](Ctrl + V (Command + V on OS X)) - Pastes copied content, as a sibling, just below (after) the current selection.
- Paste as Child - Pastes copied content as the last child of the current selection.

Pasting Content from Grid Mode to Other Editors

Nodes that are copied from the Grid editor can also be pasted into Text mode or other external applications. When pasting copied content from Grid mode, the inserted string represents the nodes serialization. The nodes from tables can be copied using HTML or RTF in table format. The resulting cells contain only the concatenated values of the text nodes.
Pasting Content from Other Editors into Grid Mode

You can also paste well-formed XML content or tab-separated values from other editors into the Grid editor. If you paste XML content, the result will be the insertion of the nodes obtained by parsing this content.

If the pasted text contains multiple lines of tab-separated values, it can be considered as a matrix of values. By pasting this matrix of values into the Grid editor, the result will be a matrix of cells. If the operation is performed inside existing cells, the existing values will be overwritten and new cells will be created when needed.
If you need to add copied content to your existing content (rather than overwriting existing cells), you need to first insert new cells by using the **Insert row** or **Insert column** actions from the contextual menu. This is useful, for example, when trying to transfer data from spreadsheet-like editors to the **Grid** editor.

**Content Completion Assistant in Grid Mode**

If the edited document is associated with a schema (DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG, etc.), the **Grid** editing mode offers a **Content Completion Assistant** for the names and values of elements and attributes. If you choose to insert an element that has required content, the sub-tree of needed elements and attributes are also automatically included.

To display the content completion pop-up menu, simply double-click a cell that contains an element or attribute (or press **Enter** on your keyboard).

![Content Completion in Grid Editing Mode](image)

**Exporting XML Content to Excel**

For use-cases where you have XML content that needs to be exported to Excel (or any other spreadsheet application) but the content is not already in some sort of table format, **Grid** mode offers you a way to display the content of an XML document as a structured grid of nested tables and you can work with the cells in those tables much like you would with any spreadsheet application. This makes it possible to export content to Excel by copying cells that contain the specific content and then pasting the copied cells in Excel the same as you would when working with any table or spreadsheet.

To export XML content from **Grid** mode to Excel or other spreadsheet applications, follow this procedure:
1. Open the XML document in Oxygen XML Developer plugin and switch to **Grid** mode.

2. **Expand the nodes** *(on page 414)* to gain access to the particular nested table that contains the content you want to export.

3. Copy the cells that contain the content you want to export (同步 Copy from the contextual menu or **Ctrl+C**).

4. Switch to your spreadsheet application and paste the copied cells.

5. You may need to make some manual adjustments depending on the complexity of the structure in the original XML document.

Note that Oxygen XML Developer plugin also supports the reverse scenario (copying cells from a spreadsheet application and pasting them in **Grid** mode). For more information, see Import from MS Excel Files – Grid Mode Method *(on page 1484)*.

For more information about exchanging data between Oxygen XML Developer plugin and spreadsheet applications, watch our video demonstration:

[https://www.youtube.com/embed/8VwsF58zLkU](https://www.youtube.com/embed/8VwsF58zLkU)

**Related Information:**

- Import from MS Excel Files - Grid Mode Method *(on page 1484)*
- Pasting Content from Other Editors into Grid Mode *(on page 418)*

### Design Editing Mode (XML Schema Diagram Editor)

XML Schemas allow document designers to specify the allowed structure and content of an XML document and to check if an XML document is valid.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides a simple and expressive XML Schema diagram editor (**Design** mode) for editing XML Schemas. The schema diagram helps both the content authors who want to understand a schema and schema designers who develop complex schemas.

To switch to this mode, select **Design** at the bottom of the editing area.

Figure 64. XML Schema Diagram
For more information about designing XML Schemas, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/vz1eIZELQgc

Navigation in the XML Schema Design Mode

The following editing and navigation features work for all types of schema components in the XML Schema Design mode:

- Select consecutive components on the diagram (components from the same level) using the Shift key. You can also make discontinuous selections in the schema diagram using the Ctrl (Meta on...
Mac OS) key. To deselect one of the components, use Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on OS X).

- Use the arrow keys to navigate the diagram vertically and horizontally.
- Use Home/End keys to jump to the first/last component from the same level. Use Ctrl + Home (Command + Home on OS X) key combination to go to the diagram root and Ctrl + End (Command + End on OS X) to go to the last child of the selected component.
- You can easily go back to a previously visited component while moving from left to right. The path will be preserved only if you use the left arrow key or right arrow key. For example, if the current selection is on the second attribute from an attribute group and you press the left arrow key to jump to the attribute group, when you press the right arrow key, then the selection will be moved to the second attribute.
- Go back and forward between components viewed or edited in the diagram by selecting them in the Outline view (on page 263):
  - Back (go to previous schema component).
  - Forward (go to next schema component).
  - Go to Last Modification (go to last modified schema component).
- Copy, reference, or move global components, attributes, and identity constraints to another position and from one schema to another using the Cut/Copy and Paste/Paste as Reference actions.
- Go to the definition of an element or attribute with the Go to Definition action.
- You can expand and see the contents of the imports/includes/redefines in the diagram. To edit components from other schemas, the schema for each component will be opened as a separate file in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Tip: If an XML Schema referenced by the current opened schema was modified on disk, the change will be detected and you will be asked to refresh the current schema contents.

- Recursive references are marked with a recurse symbol (佝). Click this symbol to navigate between the element declaration and its reference.

Figure 65. Recursive Reference

XML Schema Outline View

The Outline view for XML Schemas presents all the global components grouped by their location, namespace, or type. By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.
The Outline view provides the following options in the View Menu on the Outline view action bar:

**Filter returns exact matches**

The text filter of the Outline view returns only exact matches;

**Selection update on cursor move**

Allows a synchronization between Outline view and schema diagram. The selected view from the diagram is also selected in the Outline view.

**Sort**

Allows you to sort alphabetically the schema components.

**Show all components**

Displays all components that were collected starting from the master files (on page 1623). Components that are not referable from the current file are marked with an orange underline. To reference them, add an import directive with the componentNS namespace.

**Show referable components**

Displays all components (collected starting from the master files (on page 1623)) that can be referenced from the current file. This option is set by default.
Show only local components

Displays the components defined in the current file only.

Group by location/namespace/type

These three operations allow you to group the components by location, namespace, or type. When grouping by namespace, the main schema target namespace is the first presented in the Outline view.

The following contextual menu actions are available in the Outline view:

Remove (Delete)

Removes the selected item from the diagram.

Search References

Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope, if any.

Search References in

Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the specified scope.

Component Dependencies

Opens the Component Dependencies view (on page 620) that allows you to see the dependencies for the current selected component.

Resource Hierarchy

Opens the Resource Hierarchy / Dependencies view (on page 467) that allows you to see the hierarchy for the current selected resource.

Resource Dependencies

Opens the Resource Hierarchy / Dependencies view (on page 467) that allows you to see the dependencies for the current selected resource.

Rename Component in

 Renames the selected component.

Generate Sample XML Files

Generate XML files using the current opened schema. The selected component is the XML document root.

The upper part of the Outline view contains a filter box that allows you to focus on the relevant components. Type a text fragment in the filter box and only the components that match it are presented. For advanced usage you can use wildcard characters (such as *, ?) and separate multiple patterns with commas.
Tip: The search filter is case insensitive. The following wildcards are accepted:

- * - any string
- ? - any character
- , - patterns separator

If no wildcards are specified, the string to search will be searched as a partial match.

The content of the Outline view and the editing area are synchronized. When you select a component in the Outline view, its definition is highlighted in the editing area.

Related Information:

- Searching and Refactoring Actions in XML Schemas (on page 622)
- XML Schema Component Dependencies View (on page 620)
- XML Schema Resource Hierarchy / Dependencies View (on page 617)
- Generating Sample XML Files (on page 625)
- Editing Relax NG Schema in the Master Files Context (on page 702)

XML Schema Attributes View

The Attributes view for XML Schemas presents the properties for the selected component in the schema diagram. By default, it is displayed on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Figure 67. Attributes View
The default value of a property is presented in the Attributes view with blue foreground. The properties that cannot be edited are rendered with gray foreground. A non-editable category that contains at least one child is rendered with bold. Bold properties are properties with values set explicitly to them.

Properties for components that do not belong to the current edited schema are read-only but if you double-click them you can choose to open the corresponding schema and edit them.

You can edit a property by double-clicking by pressing Enter. For most properties you can choose valid values from a list or you can specify another value. If a property has an invalid value or a warning, it will be highlighted in the table with the corresponding foreground color. By default, properties with errors are highlighted with red and the properties with warnings are highlighted with yellow. You can customize these colors from the Document checking user preferences (on page 93).

For imports, includes and redefines, the properties are not edited directly in the Attributes view. A dialog box will open that allows you to specify properties for them.

The schema namespace mappings are not presented in Attributes view. You can view/edit these by choosing Edit Schema Namespaces from the contextual menu on the schema root. See more in the Edit Schema Namespaces (on page 605) section.

The Attributes view has five actions available on the toolbar and also on the contextual menu:

**Add**

Allows you to add a new member type to an union's member types category.

**Remove**

Allows you to remove the value of a property.
Move Up

Allows you to move up the current member to an union's member types category.

Move Down

Allows you to move down the current member to an union's member types category.

Copy

Copy the attribute value.

Go to Definition

Shows the definition for the selected type.

Show Facets

Allows you to edit the facets for a simple type.

XML Schema Facets View

The Facets view for XML Schemas presents the facets for the selected component, if available. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Figure 68. Facets View

The default value of a facet is rendered in the Facets view with a blue color. The facets that can not be edited are rendered with a gray color. The grouping categories (for example: Enumerations and Patterns) are not editable. If these categories contain at least one child they are rendered with bold. Bold facets are facets with values set explicitly to them.

Important: Usually inherited facets are presented as default in the Facets view but if patterns are inherited from a base type and also specified in the current simple type only the current specified patterns will be presented. You can see the effective pattern value obtained by combining the inherited and the specified patterns as a tooltip on the Patterns category.
Facets for components that do not belong to the current edited schema are read-only but if you double-click them you can choose to open the corresponding schema and edit them.

You can edit a facet by double-clicking it or by pressing Enter, when that facet is selected. For some facets you can choose valid values from a list or you can specify another value. If a facet has an invalid value or a warning, it will be highlighted in the table with the corresponding foreground color. By default, facets with errors are presented with red and the facets with warnings with yellow. You can customize the error colors from the Document Checking user preferences (on page 93).

The Facets view provides the following actions in its toolbar and contextual menu:

- **Add**
  Allows you to add a new enumeration or a new pattern.

- **Remove**
  Allows you to remove the value of a facet.

- **Edit Annotations**
  Allows you to edit an annotation for the selected facet.

- **Move Up**
  Allows you to move up the current enumeration/pattern in Enumerations/Patterns category.

- **Move Down**
  Allows you to move down the current enumeration/pattern in Enumerations/Patterns category.

- **Copy**
  Copy the attribute value.

- **Open in Regular Expressions Builder**
  Rather than editing regular expressions manually, this action allows you to open the pattern in the XML Schema Regular Expressions Builder (on page 649) that guides you through the process of testing and constructing the pattern.

Facets can be fixed to prevent a derivation from modifying its value. To fix a facet value just press the Pin button.

**XML Schema Palette View**

The Palette view is designed to offer quick access to XML Schema components and to improve the usability of the XML Schema diagram builder. You can use the Palette to drag and drop components...
in the **Design** mode. The components offered in the **Palette** view depend on the XML schema version set in the XML Schema preferences page (on page 138). If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Figure 69. Palette View

Figure 70. Palette View

Components are organized functionally into 4 collapsible categories:

- **Basic components**: elements, group, attribute, attribute group, complex type, simple type, type alternative.
- **Compositors and Wildcards**: sequence, choice, all, any, any attribute, open content.
- **Directives**: import, include, redefine, override.
- **Identity constraints**: key, keyref, unique, selector, field, assert.

Note: The type alternative, open content, override, and assert components are available for XML Schema 1.1.

To add a component to the edited schema:

- Click and hold a graphic symbol from the **Palette** view, then drag the component into the **Design** view.
- A line dynamically connects the component with the XML schema structure.
- Release the component into a valid position.

Note: You cannot drop a component into an invalid position. When you hover the component into an invalid position, the mouse cursor changes its shape into ![cursor shape]. Also, the connector line changes its color from the usual dark gray to the color defined in the **Validation error highlight color option** (on page 93) (default color is red).
For more information about the Schema palette, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/KalHUXmpuAA

Schema Editing Actions

You can edit an XML schema using drag and drop operations or contextual menu actions.

Drag and drop is the easiest way to move the existing components to other locations in an XML schema. For example, you can quickly insert an element reference in the diagram with a drag and drop from the Outline view (on page 263) to a compositor in the diagram. Also, the components order in an xs:sequence can be easily changed using drag and drop.

If this property has not been set, you can easily set the attribute/element type by dragging over it a simple type or complex type from the diagram. If the type property for a simple type or complex type is not already set, you can set it by dragging over it a simple or complex type.

Depending on the drop area, various actions are available:

- **move** - Context dependent, the selected component is moved to the destination.
- **reference** - Context dependent, the selected component is referenced from the parent.
- **copy** - If (Ctrl (Meta on Mac OS)) key is pressed, a copy of the selected component is inserted to the destination.

Visual clues about the operation type are indicated by the mouse pointer shape:

- - When moving a component.
- - When referencing a component.
- - When copying a component.

You can edit some schema components directly in the diagram. For these components, you can edit the name and the additional properties presented in the diagram by double clicking the value you want to edit. If you want to edit the name of a selected component, you can also press (Enter). The list of properties that can be displayed for each component can be customized in the Preferences (on page 97).

When editing references, you can choose from a list of available components. Components from an imported schema for which the target namespace does not have an associated prefix is displayed in the list as componentName#targetNamespace. If the reference is from a target namespace that was not yet mapped, you are prompted to add prefix mappings for the inserted component namespace in the current edited schema.
You can also change the compositor by double-clicking it and choose the compositor you want from the proposals list.

There are some components that cannot be edited directly in the diagram: imports, includes, redefines. The editing action can be performed if you double-click or press \textit{(Enter)} on an import/include/redefine component. An edit dialog box is displayed, allowing you to customize the directives.

Related Information:

- Searching and Refactoring Actions in XML Schemas (on page 622)
- XML Schema Component Dependencies View (on page 620)
- XML Schema Resource Hierarchy / Dependencies View (on page 617)
- Generating Sample XML Files (on page 625)
- Schema Design Preferences (on page 97)

Contextual Menu Actions in the Design Mode

The contextual menu of the Design mode includes the following actions:

\textbullet \textbf{Go to Definition} (Ctrl + Shift + Enter)

Shows the definition for the current selected component. For references, this action is available by clicking the arrow displayed in its bottom right corner.

\textbullet \textbf{Open Schema} (Ctrl + Shift + Enter)

Opens the selected schema. This action is available for \textit{xsd:import}, \textit{xsd:include} and \textit{xsd:redefine} elements. If the file you try to open does not exist, a warning message is displayed and you have the possibility to create the file.

\textbullet \textbf{Edit Attributes} (Alt + Shift + Enter)

Allows you to edit the attributes of the selected component in a small in-place editor that presents the same attributes as in the Attributes view (on page 266) and the Facets view (on page 268). The actions that can be performed on attributes in this dialog box are the same actions presented in the two views.
Offers a list of valid components, depending on the context, and appends your selection as a child of the currently selected component. You can set a name for a named component after it has been added in the diagram.

**Insert before**

Offers a list of valid components, depending on the context, and inserts your selection before the selected component, as a sibling. You can set a name for a named component after it has been added in the diagram.

**Insert after**

Offers a list of valid components, depending on the context, and inserts your selection after the selected component, as a sibling. You can set a name for a named component after it has been added in the diagram.

**New global**

Inserts a global component in the schema diagram. This action does not depend on the current context. If you choose to insert an import you have to specify the URL of the imported file, the target namespace and the import ID. The same information, excluding the target namespace, is requested for an `xsd:include` or `xsd:redefine` element.

**Note:** If the imported file has declared a target namespace, the field **Namespace** is completed automatically.

**Edit Schema Namespaces**

When performed on the schema root, it allows you to edit the schema target namespace and namespace mappings. You can also invoke the action by double-clicking the target namespace property from Attributes view (on page 266) for the schema or by double-clicking the schema component.

**Edit Annotations**

Allows you to edit the annotation for the selected schema component in the Edit Annotations dialog box. You can perform the following operations in the dialog box:

- **Edit all appinfo/documentation items for a specific annotation** - All appinfo/documentation items for a specific annotation are presented in a table and can be easily edited. Information about an annotation item includes: type (documentation/appinfo), content, source (optional, specify the source of the documentation/appinfo element) and `xml:lang`. The content of a documentation/appinfo item can be edited in the **Content** area below the table.

- **Insert/Insert before/Remove documentation/appinfo**. The ✱ Add button allows you to insert a new annotation item (documentation/appinfo). You can add a new
item before the item selected in table by pressing the Insert Before button. Also, you can delete the selected item using the Remove button.

- **Move items up/down** - to do this use the Move up and Move down buttons.
- **Insert/Insert before/Remove annotation** - Available for components that allow multiple annotations such as schemas or redefines.
- **Specify an ID for the component annotation**. An optional identifier for the annotation.

Annotations are rendered by default under the graphical representation of the component. When you have a reference to a component with annotations, these annotations are also presented in the diagram below the referenced component. To edit the annotations, use the Edit Annotations action from the contextual menu. If the reference component does not have annotations, you can edit the annotations of the referenced component by double-clicking the annotations area. Otherwise, you can edit the referenced component annotations only if you go to the definition of the component.

**Note**: For imported/included components that do not belong to the currently edited schema, the Edit Annotations dialog box presents the annotation as read-only. To edit its annotation, open the schema where the component is defined.

**Extract Global Element**

Action that is available for local elements. A local element is made global and is replaced with a reference to the global element. The local element properties that are also valid for the global element declaration are kept.

Figure 71. Extracting a Global Element

If you use the Extract Global Element action on a name element, the result is:

Figure 72. Extracting a Global Element on a name Element
Extract Global Attribute

Action available for local attributes. A local attribute is made global and replaced with a reference to the global attribute. The properties of local attribute that are also valid in the global attribute declaration are kept.

Figure 73. Extracting a Global Attribute

If you use the **Extract Global Attribute** action on a `note` attribute, the result is:

Figure 74. Extracting a Global Attribute on a `note` Attribute
Extract Global Group

Action available for compositors (sequence, choice, all). This action extracts a global group and makes a reference to it. The action is available only if the parent of the compositor is not a group.

Figure 75. Extracting a Global Group

If you use the **Extract Global Group** action on the `sequence` element, the **Extract Global Component** dialog box is displayed and you can choose a name for the group. If you type `personGroup`, the result is:

Figure 76. Extracting a Global Group on a `sequence` Element
**Extract Global Type**

Action used to extract an anonymous simple type or an anonymous complex type as global. For anonymous complex types, the action is available on the parent element.

Figure 77. Extracting a Global Simple Type

[Diagram of extracting a global simple type]

If you use the action on the `union` component and choose `numericST` for the new global simple type name, the result is:

Figure 78. Extracting a Global Simple Type on a `union` Component

[Diagram of extracting a global simple type on a union component]

Figure 79. Extracting a Global Complex Type

[Diagram of extracting a global complex type]

If you use the action on a `person` element and choose `person_type` for the new complex type name, the result is:

Figure 80. Extracting a Global Complex Type on a `person` Element

[Diagram of extracting a global complex type on a person element]
Newsletter Component in

Rename the selected component.

Cut Ctrl + X (Command + X on OS X)

Cut the selected component(s).

Copy Ctrl + C (Command + C on OS X)

Copy the selected component(s).

Copy XPath

This action copies an XPath expression that identifies the selected element or attribute in an instance XML document of the edited schema and places it in the clipboard.

Paste Ctrl + V (Command + V on OS X)

Paste the component(s) from the clipboard as children of the selected component.

Paste as Reference

Create references to the copied component(s). If not possible a warning message is displayed.

Remove (Delete)

Remove the selected component(s).

Override component

Copies the overridden component in the current XML Schema. This option is available for xs:override components.

Redefine component
The referenced component is added in the current XML Schema. This option is available for `xs:redefine` components.

**Optional**

Can be performed on element/attribute/group references, local attributes, elements, compositors, and element wildcards. The `minOccurs` property is set to 0 and the `use` property for attributes is set to `optional`.

**Unbounded**

Can be performed on element/attribute/group references, local attributes, elements, compositors, and element wildcards. The `maxOccurs` property is set to `unbounded` and the `use` property for attributes is set to `required`.

**Search**

Can be performed on local elements or attributes. This action makes a reference to a global element or attribute.

- **Search References**
  
  Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope if any.

- **Search References in**
  
  Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the specified scope.

- **Search Occurrences in File**
  
  Searches all occurrences of the item found at current cursor position in the current file.

- **Component Dependencies**
  
  Opens the **Component Dependencies view** (on page 620) that allows you to see the dependencies for the current selected component.

- **Resource Hierarchy**
  
  Opens the **Resource Hierarchy / Dependencies view** (on page 617) that allows you to see the hierarchy for the current selected resource.

- **Flatten Schema**
  
  Recursively adds the components of included Schema files to the main one. It also flattens every imported XML Schema from the hierarchy.

- **Resource Dependencies**
  
  Allows you to see the dependencies for the current selected resource.
Recursively expands all sub-components of the selected component.

**Collapse All**

Recursively collapses all sub-components of the selected component.

**Save as Image**

Save the diagram as image, in JPEG, BMP, SVG or PNG format.

**Generate Sample XML Files**

Generate XML files using the current opened schema. The selected component is the XML document root. See more in the Generate Sample XML Files (on page 625) section.

**Options**

Show the Schema preferences panel (on page 97).

### XML Schema Components

A schema diagram contains a series of interconnected components. To quickly identify the relation between two connected components, the connection is represented as:

- A thick line to identify a connection with a required component (in the following image, `family` is a required element).

![Figure 81. Example: Required Component](image)

- A thin line to identify a connection with an optional component (in the following image, `email` is an optional element).

![Figure 82. Example: Optional Component](image)

The following topics explain in detail all available components and their symbols as they appear in an XML schema diagram.

**xs:schema**

Figure 83. The `xs:schema` Component
Defines the root element of a schema. A schema document contains representations for a collection of schema components, such as type definitions and element declarations, that have a common target namespace. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-schema](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-schema).

By default, it displays the `targetNamespace` property when rendered.

**Table 3. xs:schema Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Target Namespace</td>
<td>The schema target namespace</td>
<td>Any URI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element Form</td>
<td>Determining whether or not local element declarations will be namespace-qualified by default</td>
<td>qualified, unqualified, [Empty] (default value is unqualified)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>namespace-qualified by default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute Form</td>
<td>Determining whether or not local attribute declarations will be namespace-qualified by default</td>
<td>qualified, unqualified, [Empty] (default value is unqualified)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>namespace-qualified by default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block Default</td>
<td>Default value of the <code>block</code> attribute of <code>xs:element</code> and <code>xs:complexType</code></td>
<td>#all, extension, restriction, substitution, restriction extension, restriction substitution, restriction extension substitution, [Empty]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>attribute of <code>xs:element</code> and <code>xs:complexType</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final Default</td>
<td>Default value of the <code>final</code> attribute of <code>xs:element</code> and <code>xs:complexType</code></td>
<td>#all, restriction, extension, restriction extension, [Empty]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Attributes</td>
<td>Specifies a set of attributes that apply to every complex Type in a schema document</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XPath Default</td>
<td>The default namespace used when the XPath expression is evaluated</td>
<td>##defaultNamespace, ##targetNamespace, ##local</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>Schema version</td>
<td>Any token</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The schema ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SystemID</td>
<td>The schema system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 84. The `xs:element` Component
Defines an element. An element declaration is an association of a name with a type definition, either simple or complex, an (optional) default value and a (possibly empty) set of identity-constraint definitions. See more info at http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-element.

An element by default displays the following properties when rendered in the diagram: default, fixed, abstract and type. When referenced or declared locally, the element graphical representation also contains the value for the minOccurs and maxOccurs properties (for 0..1 and 1..1 occurs the values are implied by the connector style) and the connectors to the element are drawn using dotted lines if the element is optional.

Table 4. xs:element Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
<th>Mentions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The element name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName for global or local elements, any QName (on page 1625) for element references</td>
<td>If missing, will be displayed as 'element' in diagram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is Reference</td>
<td>When set, the local element is a reference to a global element</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>Appears only for local elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The element type</td>
<td>All declared or built-in types. In addition, the following anonymous types are available: [ST-restriction], [ST-union], [ST-list], [CT-anonymous], [CT-extension SC], [CT-restriction SC], [CT-restriction CC], [CT-extension CC].</td>
<td>For all elements. For references, the value is set in the referenced element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Type</td>
<td>The extended/restricted base type</td>
<td>All declared or built-in types</td>
<td>For elements with complex type, with simple or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Possible Values</td>
<td>Mentions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed</td>
<td>Defines if the complex type content model will be mixed</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For elements with complex type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content</td>
<td>The content of the complex type</td>
<td>simple/complex</td>
<td>For elements with complex type that extends/restricts a base type. It is automatically detected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content Mixed</td>
<td>Defines if the complex content model will be mixed true/false</td>
<td></td>
<td>For elements with complex type that has a complex content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default value of the element. A default value is automatically assigned to the element when no other value is specified</td>
<td>Any string</td>
<td>The fixed and default attributes are mutually exclusive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed</td>
<td>A simple content element may be fixed to a specific value using this attribute. A fixed value is also automatically assigned to the element and you cannot specify another value.</td>
<td>Any string</td>
<td>The fixed and default attributes are mutually exclusive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Min Occurs</td>
<td>Minimum number of occurrences of the element</td>
<td>A numeric positive value. Default value is 1</td>
<td>Only for references/local elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Occurs</td>
<td>Maximum number of occurrences of the element</td>
<td>A numeric positive value (default value is 1)</td>
<td>Only for references/local elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Possible Values</td>
<td>Mentions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Substitution Group</strong></td>
<td>Qualified name of the head of the substitution group that this element belongs to</td>
<td>All declared elements. For XML Schema 1.1 this property supports multiple values.</td>
<td>For global and reference elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abstract</strong></td>
<td>Controls whether or not the element may be used directly in instance XML documents. When set to true, the element may still be used to define content models, but it must be substituted through a substitution group in the instance document.</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For global elements and element references</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Form</strong></td>
<td>Defines if the element is &quot;qualified&quot; (belongs to the target namespace) or &quot;unqualified&quot; (doesn't belong to any namespace)</td>
<td>unqualified/qualified</td>
<td>Only for local elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nillable</strong></td>
<td>When this attribute is set to true, the element can be declared as nil using an xsi:nil attribute in the instance documents</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For global elements and element references</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Target Namespace</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the target namespace for local element and attribute declarations. The namespace URI may be different from the schema target namespace. This property is available for local elements only.</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Block</strong></td>
<td>Controls if the element can be subject to a type or substitution group substitution. '#all' blocks any substitution, 'substitution' blocks any substitution through substitution groups and 'extension'/'restriction' block any substitution (both through xsi:type and substitution groups) by elements or types, derived respectively by extension or restriction from the type of the element. Its default value is defined by the blockDefault attribute of the parent xs:schema.</td>
<td>#all, restriction, extension, substitution, extension restriction, restriction substitution</td>
<td>For global elements and element references</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Final</strong></td>
<td>Controls whether the element can be used as the head of a substitution group for elements whose types are derived by extension or restriction from the type of the element. Its default value is defined by the finalDefault attribute of the parent xs:schema.</td>
<td>#all, restriction, extension, restriction [Empty]</td>
<td>For global elements and element references</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Possible Values</td>
<td>Mentions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
<td>For all elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>The component namespace</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all elements</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**xs:attribute**

Figure 85. The *xs:attribute* Component

Defines an attribute. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-attribute](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-attribute).

An attribute by default displays the following properties when rendered in the diagram: *default*, *fixed*, *use* and *type*. Connectors to the attribute are drawn using dotted lines if the attribute use is optional. The attribute name is stroked out if prohibited.

**Table 5. *xs:attribute* Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Value</th>
<th>Mentions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Attribute name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName for global/local attributes, all declared attributes’ QName (<a href="#">page 1625</a>) for references</td>
<td>For all local or global attributes. If missing, will be displayed as '[attribute]' in the diagram.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is Reference</td>
<td>When set, the local attribute is a reference</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For local attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Qualified name of a simple type All global simple types and built-in simple types. In addition another 3 proposals are present: [anonymous restriction], [anonymous list], [anonymous union] for creating anonymous simple types more easily.</td>
<td>For all attributes. For references, the type is set to the referenced attribute.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Possible Value</td>
<td>Mentions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default value. When specified, an attribute is added by the schema processor (if it is missing from the instance XML document) and it is given this value. The default and fixed attributes are mutually exclusive.</td>
<td>Any string</td>
<td>For all local or global attributes. For references the value is from the referenced attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed</td>
<td>When specified, the value of the attribute is fixed and must be equal to this value. The default and fixed attributes are mutually exclusive.</td>
<td>Any string</td>
<td>For all local or global attributes. For references the value is from the referenced attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use</td>
<td>Possible usage of the attribute. Marking an attribute &quot;prohibited&quot; is useful to exclude attributes during derivations by restriction.</td>
<td>optional, required, prohibited</td>
<td>For local attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form</td>
<td>Specifies whether or not the attribute is qualified (must have a namespace prefix in the instance XML document). The default value for this attribute is specified by the attributeFormDefault attribute of the xs:schema document element.</td>
<td>unqualified/qualified</td>
<td>For local attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inheritable</td>
<td>Specifies if the attribute is inheritable. Inheritable attributes can be used by &lt;alternative&gt; element on descendant elements</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For all local or global attributes. The default value is false. This property is available for XML Schema 1.1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target Namespace</td>
<td>Specifies the target namespace for local attribute declarations. The namespace URI may be different from the schema target namespace.</td>
<td>Any URI</td>
<td>Setting a target namespace for local attribute is useful only when restricts attributes of a complex type that is declared in other schema with a different target</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### xs:attributeGroup

Figure 86. The `xs:attributeGroup` Component

Defines an attribute group to be used in complex type definitions. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-attributeGroup](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-attributeGroup).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
<th>Mentions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Attribute group name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName for global attribute groups, all declared attribute groups for reference</td>
<td>For all global or referenced attribute groups. If missing, will be displayed as '[attributeGroup]' in diagram.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
<td>For all attribute groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all attribute groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>The component namespace</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all attribute groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all attribute groups</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### xs:complexType

Figure 87. The `xs:complexType` Component
Defines a top-level complex type. Complex Type Definitions provide for: See more data at http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-complexType.

- Constraining element information items by providing Attribute Declarations governing the appearance and content of attributes.
- Constraining element information item children to be empty, or to conform to a specified element-only or mixed content model, or else constraining the character information item children to conform to a specified simple type definition.
- Using the mechanisms of Type Definition Hierarchy to derive a complex type from another simple or complex type.
- Specifying post-schema-validation infoset contributions for elements.
- Limiting the ability to derive additional types from a given complex type.
- Controlling the permission to substitute, in an instance, elements of a derived type for elements declared in a content model to be of a given complex type.

Tip: A complex type that is a base type to another type will be rendered with yellow background.

### Table 7. `xs:complexType` Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
<th>Mentions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the complex type (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName</td>
<td>Only for global complex types. If missing, will be displayed as <code>[complexType]</code> in diagram.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Type Definition</td>
<td>The name of the extended/restricted types</td>
<td>Any from the declared simple or complex types</td>
<td>For complex types with simple or complex content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derivation Method</td>
<td>The derivation method</td>
<td>restriction/extension</td>
<td>Only when base type is set. If the base type is a simple type, the derivation method is always extension.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Possible Values</td>
<td>Mentions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content</td>
<td>The content of the complex type</td>
<td>simple/complex</td>
<td>For complex types that extend/restrict a base type. It is automatically detected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content Mixed</td>
<td>Specifies if the complex content model will be mixed</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For complex contents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed</td>
<td>Specifies if the complex type content model will be mixed</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For global and anonymous complex types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td>When set to true, this complex type cannot be used directly in the instance documents and needs to be substituted using an xsi:type attribute</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For global and anonymous complex types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block</td>
<td>Controls if a substitution (either through a xsi:type or substitution groups) can be performed for a complex type, which is an extension or a restriction of the current complex type. This attribute can only block such substitutions (it cannot “unblock” them), which can also be blocked in the element definition. The default value is defined by the blockDefault attribute of xs:schema.</td>
<td>all, extension, restriction, [Empty]</td>
<td>For global complex types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final</td>
<td>Controls whether the complex type can be further derived by extension or restriction to create new complex types</td>
<td>all, extension, restriction, [Empty]</td>
<td>For global complex types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Attributes Apply</td>
<td>The schema element can carry a defaultAttributes attribute, which identifies an attribute group. Each complexType defined in the schema document then automatically includes that attribute group, unless this is overridden by the defaultAttributesApply attribute on the complexType element.</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>This property is available only for XML Schema 1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
<td>For all complex types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all complex types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Possible Values</td>
<td>Mentions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>The component namespace</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all complex types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all complex types</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

xs:simpleType

Figure 88. The xs:simpleType Component

Defines a simple type. A simple type definition is a set of constraints on strings and information about the values they encode, applicable to the normalized value of an attribute information item or of an element information item with no element children. Informally, it applies to the values of attributes and the text-only content of elements. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-simpleType](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-simpleType).

**Tip:** A simple type that is a base type to another type will be rendered with yellow background.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
<th>Scope</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Simple type name. Always required.</td>
<td>Any NCName</td>
<td>Only for global simple types. If missing, will be displayed as '[simpleType]' in diagram.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derivation</td>
<td>A simple type category</td>
<td>restriction, list, or union</td>
<td>For all simple types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Type</td>
<td>A simple type definition component. Required if derivation method is set to restriction.</td>
<td>All global simple types and built-in simple types.</td>
<td>For global and anonymous simple types with the derivation method set to restriction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8. xs:simpleType Properties
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
<th>Scope</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Item Type</strong></td>
<td>A simple type definition component. Required if derivation method is set to list.</td>
<td>All global simple types and built-in simple types (from schema for schema). In addition another 3 proposals are present: [anonymous restriction], [anonymous list], [anonymous union] for easily create anonymous simple types.</td>
<td>For global and anonymous simple types with the derivation method set to list. Derivation by list is the process of transforming a simple datatype (named the item type) into a whitespace-separated list of values from this datatype. The item type can be defined inline by adding a simpleType definition as a child element of the list element, or by reference, using the itemType attribute (it is an error to use both).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Member Types</strong></td>
<td>Category for grouping union members</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For global and anonymous simple types with the derivation method set to union</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Member</strong></td>
<td>A simple type definition component. Required if derivation method is set to union.</td>
<td>All global simple types and built-in simple types (from schema for schema). In addition another 3 proposals are present: [anonymous restriction], [anonymous list], [anonymous union] for easily create anonymous simple types.</td>
<td>For global and anonymous simple types with the derivation method set to union. Deriving a simple datatype by union merges the lexical spaces of several simple datatypes (called member types) to create a new simple datatype. The member types can be defined either by reference (through the memberTypes attribute) or embedded as simple datatype local definitions in the xs:union element. Both styles can be mixed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Final</strong></td>
<td>Blocks any further derivations of this datatype (by list, union, derivation or all)</td>
<td>#all, list, restriction, union, list restriction, list union, restriction union. In addition, [Empty] proposal is present for set empty string as value.</td>
<td>Only for global simple types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ID</strong></td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
<td>For all simple types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Component</strong></td>
<td>The name of the</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>Only for global and local simple types</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Editing Modes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
<th>Scope</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>edited</td>
<td>component</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Namespace</strong></td>
<td>The component namespace</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For global simple types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System ID</strong></td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>Not present for built-in simple types</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

xs:alternative

The *type alternatives* mechanism allows you to specify type substitutions on an element declaration.

> **Note**: xs:alternative is available for XML Schema 1.1.

Figure 89. The xs:alternative Component

#### Table 9. xs:alternative Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td>Specifies type substitutions for an element, depending on the value of the attributes</td>
<td>All declared or built-in types. In addition, the following anonymous types are available: [ST-restriction], [ST-union], [ST-list], [CT-anonymous], [CT-extension SC], [CT-restriction SC], [CT-restriction CC], [CT-extension CC]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Test</strong></td>
<td>Specifies an XPath expression. If the XPath condition is valid, the specified type is selected as the element type. The expressions allowed are limited to a subset of XPath 2.0. Only the attributes of the current element and inheritable attributes from ancestor elements are accessible in the XPath expression. When you edit this property, the content completion list of proposals offers XPath expressions.</td>
<td>An XPath expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>XPath Default Namespace</strong></td>
<td>The default namespace used when the XPath expression is evaluated</td>
<td>##defaultNamespace, ##targetNamespace, ##local</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 10. xs:group Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
<th>Mentions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The group name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName for global groups, all declared groups for reference</td>
<td>If missing, will be displayed as '[group]' in diagram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Min Occurs</td>
<td>Minimum number of occurrences of the group</td>
<td>A numeric positive value. Default value is 1</td>
<td>Appears only for reference groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Occurs</td>
<td>Maximum number of occurrences of the group</td>
<td>A numeric positive value. Default value is 1</td>
<td>Appears only for reference groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
<td>For all groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>The component namespace</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all groups</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

xs:include

Figure 91. The xs:include Component

Adds multiple schemas with the same target namespace to a document. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-include](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-include).
### Table 11. xs:include properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Schema Location</td>
<td>Included schema location</td>
<td>Any URI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Include ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### xs:import

Figure 92. The xs:import Component

![xs:import](http://www.renderx.com/XSLTExtensions/ixed.xml)

Adds multiple schemas with a different target namespace to a document. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-import](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-import).

### Table 12. xs:import Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Schema Location</td>
<td>Imported schema location</td>
<td>Any URI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>Imported schema namespace</td>
<td>Any URI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Import ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### xs:redefine

Figure 93. The xs:redefine Component

![xs:redefine](http://www.renderx.com/XSLTExtensions/xsdxml.xsd)

Redefines simple and complex types, groups, and attribute groups from an external schema. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-redefine](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-redefine).

### Table 13. xs:redefine Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Schema Location</td>
<td>Redefine schema location</td>
<td>Any URI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Redefine ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### xs:override

Figure 94. The xs:override Component

![xs:override](http://www.renderx.com/XSLTExtensions/invoicexsd.xml)

The override construct allows replacements of old components with new ones without any constraint. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-override](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-override).
Table 14. `xs:override` Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Schema Location</td>
<td>Redefine schema location</td>
<td>Any URI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Redefine ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`xs:notation`

Figure 95. The `xs:notation` Component

Describes the format of non-XML data within an XML document. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-notation](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-notation).

Table 15. `xs:notation` Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible values</th>
<th>Mentions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The notation name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName</td>
<td>If missing, will be displayed as '[notation]' in diagram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Identifier</td>
<td>The notation system identifier</td>
<td>Any URI</td>
<td>Required if public identifier is absent (otherwise, optional)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Identifier</td>
<td>The notation public identifier</td>
<td>A Public ID value</td>
<td>Required if system identifier is absent (otherwise, optional)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
<td>For all notations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all notations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>The component namespace</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all notations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all notations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`xs:sequence / xs:choice / xs:all`

Figure 96. `xs:sequence`

`xs:sequence` specifies that the child elements must appear in a sequence. Each child element can occur from 0 to any number of times. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-sequence](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-sequence).

Figure 97. `xs:choice`
**xs:choice** allows only one of the elements contained in the declaration to be present within the containing element. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-choice](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-choice).

Figure 98. **xs:all**

**xs:all** specifies that the child elements can appear in any order. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-all](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-all).

The compositor graphical representation also contains the value for the *minOccur* and *maxOccur* properties (for 0..1 and 1..1 occurs the values are implied by the connector style) and the connectors to the compositor are drawn using dotted lines if the compositor is optional.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
<th>Mentions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Compositor</strong></td>
<td>Compositor type</td>
<td>sequence, choice, all</td>
<td>'all' is only available as a child of a group or complex type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Min Occurs</strong></td>
<td>Minimum occurrences of compositor</td>
<td>A numeric positive value. Default is 1</td>
<td>The property is not present if compositor is 'all' and is child of a group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Max Occurs</strong></td>
<td>Maximum occurrences of compositor</td>
<td>A numeric positive value. Default is 1</td>
<td>The property is not present if compositor is 'all' and is child of a group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ID</strong></td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
<td>For all compositors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Component</strong></td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all compositors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System ID</strong></td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all compositors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**xs:any**

Figure 99. The **xs:any** Component

Enables the author to extend the XML document with elements not specified by the schema. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-any](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-any).

The graphical representation also contains the value for the *minOccur* and *maxOccur* properties (for 0..1 and 1..1 occurs the values are implied by the connector style) and the connectors to the wildcard are drawn using dotted lines if the wildcard is optional.
Table 17. `xs:any` Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>The list of allowed namespaces. The namespace attribute expects a list of namespace URIs. In this list, two values have a specific meaning: ‘##targetNamespace’ stands for the target namespace, and ‘##local’ stands for local attributes (without namespaces).</td>
<td>##any, ##other, ##targetNamespace, ##local or anyURI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>notNamespace</code></td>
<td>Specifies the namespace that extension elements or attributes cannot come from</td>
<td>##local, ##targetNamespace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>notQName</code></td>
<td>Specifies an element or attribute that is not allowed</td>
<td>##defined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process</td>
<td>Type of validation required on the elements allowed for this wildcard</td>
<td>skip, lax, strict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Min Occurs</td>
<td>Minimum occurrences of any</td>
<td>A numeric positive value. Default is 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Occurs</td>
<td>Maximum occurrences of any</td>
<td>A numeric positive value. Default is 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The name of the edited component</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`xs:anyAttribute`

Figure 100. The `xs:anyAttribute` Component

Enables the author to extend the XML document with attributes not specified by the schema. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-anyAttribute](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-anyAttribute).

Table 18. `xs:anyAttribute` Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>The list of allowed namespaces. The namespace attribute expects a list of namespace URIs. In this list, two values have a specific meaning: ‘##targetNamespace’ stands for the target namespace, and ‘##local’ stands for local attributes (without namespaces).</td>
<td>##any, ##other, ##targetNamespace, ##local or anyURI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process</td>
<td>Type of validation required on the elements allowed for this wildcard</td>
<td>skip, lax, strict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The name of the edited component</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 19. `xs:unique` Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The unique name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>The component namespace</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`xs:unique`

Figure 101. The `xs:unique` Component

Defines that an element or an attribute value must be unique within the scope. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-unique](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-unique).

Table 20. `xs:key` Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The key name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`xs:key`

Figure 102. The `xs:key` Component

Specifies an attribute or element value as a key (unique, non-nullable and always present) within the containing element in an instance document. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-key](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-key).
Table 21. xs:KeyRef Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The keyref name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Referenced Key</td>
<td>The name of referenced key</td>
<td>Any declared element constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>The component namespace</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 22. xs:Selector Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XPath</td>
<td>Relative XPath expression identifying the element that the constraint applies to</td>
<td>An XPath expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Possible Values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**xs:field**

Figure 105. The `xs:field` Component

Specifies an XPath expression that specifies the value used to define an identity constraint. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-field](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-field).

**Table 23. xs:field Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XPath</td>
<td>Relative XPath expression identifying the field(s) composing the key, key</td>
<td>An XPath expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reference, or unique constraint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**xs:assert**

Assertions provide a flexible way to control the occurrence and values of elements and attributes available in an XML Schema.

**Note:** `xs:assert` is available for XML Schema 1.1.

Figure 106. The `xs:assert` Component

**Table 24. xs:assert Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>Specifies an XPath expression. If the XPath condition is valid, the specified type is selected as the element type. The expressions allowed are limited to a subset of XPath 2.0. Only the attributes of the current element and inheritable attributes from ancestor</td>
<td>An XPath expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Possible Values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XPath</td>
<td>The default namespace used when the XPath expression is evaluated</td>
<td>##defaultNamespace, ##targetNamespace, ##local</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Namespace</td>
<td>Specifies the component name</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

xs:openContent

Figure 107. The xs:openContent Component

The openContent element enables instance documents to contain extension elements to be inserted amongst the elements declared by the schema. You can declare open content for your elements at one place (within the complexType definition) or at the schema level.

For further details about the openContent component, go to [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-openContent](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-openContent).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Specifies where the extension elements can be inserted</td>
<td>The value can be: &quot;interleave&quot;, &quot;suffix&quot; or &quot;none&quot;. The default value is &quot;interleave&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: This component is available for XML Schema 1.1 only. To change the version of the XML Schema, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XML Parser > XML Schema.

Constructs Used to Group Schema Components

This section explains the components that can be used for grouping other schema components.
Attributes

Figure 108. Attributes Construct

Groups all attributes and attribute groups belonging to a complex type.

**Table 26. attributes Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The element for which the attributes are displayed</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Constraints

Figure 109. Constraints Construct

Groups all constraints (*xs:key* (on page 600), *xs:keyRef* (on page 600), or *xs:unique* (on page 599)) belonging to an element.

**Table 27. constraints Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The element for which the constraints are displayed</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Substitutions

Figure 110. Substitutions Construct
Groups all elements that can substitute the current element.

**Table 28. substitutions Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The element for which the substitutions are displayed</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Schema Validation**

Validation for the **Design** mode is seamlessly integrated in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin. 

XML documents validation *(on page 420)* capability.

**Figure 111. XML Schema Validation**

A schema validation error is presented by highlighting the invalid component:

- In the **Attributes View (on page 266)**.
- In the diagram by surrounding the component that has the error with a red border.

Invalid facets for a component are highlighted in the **Facets View (on page 268)**.
Components with invalid properties are rendered with a red border. This is a default color, but you can customize it in the Document checking user preferences (on page 93). When hovering an invalid component, the tooltip will present the validation errors associated with that component.

When editing a value that is supposed to be a qualified or unqualified XML name, the application provides automatic validation of the entered value. This proves to be very useful in avoiding setting invalid XML names for the given property.

If you validate the entire schema using the Validate action from the XML menu or from the Validation toolbar drop-down menu, all validation errors will be presented in the Errors tab. To resolve an error, just click it (or double-click for errors located in other schemas) and the corresponding schema component will be displayed as the diagram root so that you can easily correct the error.

⚠️ Important: If the schema imports only the namespace of other schema without specifying the schema location and a catalog is set up (on page 460) that maps the namespace to a certain location both the validation and the diagram will correctly identify the imported schema.

💡 Tip: If the validation action finds that the schema contains unresolved references, the application will suggest the use of validation scenarios, but only if the current edited schema is an XML Schema module.

**Edit Schema Namespaces**

You can use the XML Schema Namespaces dialog box to easily set a target namespace and define namespace mappings for a newly created XML Schema. In the Design mode these namespaces can be modified anytime by choosing Edit Schema Namespaces from the contextual menu. You can also do this by double-clicking the schema root in the diagram.

The XML Schema Namespaces dialog box allows you to edit the following information:

- **Target namespace** - The target namespace of the schema.
- **Prefixes** - The dialog box displays a table with namespaces and the mapped prefixes. You can add a new prefix mapping or remove an already existing one.
7.
Working with Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a variety of general features that can be used when working with any type of document. More specialized features are available when working with specific type of documents, such as the various types of XML documents, CSS, JavaScript, Markdown, and more. For details about those specialized features for specific types of documents, see Editing Documents (on page 364).

This chapter includes information about how to create and work with documents, working with projects, and various editing features that are provided in Oxygen XML Developer plugin for all document types. This chapter also includes information about some of the special tools that are included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, such as the file and directory comparison tools.

Creating and Working with Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes various features, actions, and wizards to assist you with creating new files and working with existing files. This section explains many of these features, including information on creating new documents, opening, saving, and closing existing files, searching documents, viewing file properties, and more.

Creating New Documents and Templates

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a helpful New Document wizard that allows you to customize and create new files from a large list of document types and built-in templates. You can also create your own templates (on page 312) and share them with others (on page 317).

To quickly create a new document:

1. Click the New button on the toolbar or select File > New > Other > Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
2. Select the type of document that you want to create.

   Tip: You can use the text filter field at the top of the dialog box to search for a specific template.
3. Click the Next button, then Finish.
New Document Wizard

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports a wide range of document types. The New Document wizard presents the default associations between a file extension and the type of editor that opens the file. The New Document wizard creates a skeleton document that may contain a root element, the document prolog, and possibly other child elements depending on options that are specific for each schema type. The wizard also provides access to the New from Templates option (on page 311) that opens a wizard where you can create a document based upon built-in templates or custom templates.

New Document Wizard

To create a new document in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, follow these steps:

1. Click the button on the toolbar or select File > New > Other > Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

   Result: The New Document wizard is displayed with all the supported document types.

2. Select the type of document that you want to create. Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a series of Eclipse wizards that help you create the new document based upon the type you choose.

   Tip: You can use the text filter field at the top of the dialog box to search for a specific template.

3. Click Next.

   Result: The next wizard page allows you to select a path where you want to store the new file and for some document types it includes some customization options. If you selected XML File or XML Schema (XSD) File for the type of document, you need to select the storage path and click Next again to reach customization options.

   Note: For DITA documents, the dialog box includes some additional options for generating a title, file name, and root ID attribute.

4. After configuring the options for the particular type of document, click Finish to create the file. If the Open file for editing when done option is selected, the new file will be opened in the appropriate editor.

New XML Document Wizard

Figure 112. New XML File Configuration Options
If you selected XML File for the type of document you want to create, the wizard will include the following options:

**URL**

Specifies the path to the schema file. When you select a file, Oxygen XML Developer plugin analyzes its content and tries to fill in the rest of the dialog box.

**Schema Type**

Allows you to select the schema type. The following options are available: XML Schema, DTD, RelaxNG XML syntax, RelaxNG compact syntax, and NVDL.

**Public ID**

Specifies the PUBLIC identifier declared in the document prolog.

**Namespace**

Specifies the document namespace.

**Prefix**

Specifies the prefix for the namespace of the document root.

**Root Element**

Populated with elements defined in the specified schema, enables selection of the element used as document root.
Description pane

A small description of the selected document root.

Add Optional Content

If you select this option, the elements and attributes defined in the XML Schema as optional are generated in the skeleton XML document.

Add First Choice Particle

If you select this option, Oxygen XML Developer plugin generates the first element of an `xs:choice` schema element in the skeleton XML document. Oxygen XML Developer plugin creates this document in a new editor panel when you click Finish.

XSL Document Wizard

Figure 113. New XSL Document Configuration Options

If you selected Stylesheet (XSL) File for the type of file you want to create, the wizard will include the following options:

Stylesheet version

Allows you to select the Stylesheet version number. You can select from: 1.0, 2.0, and 3.0.

Add documentation annotations
Select this option to generate the stylesheet annotation documentation.

**XML Schema (XSD) Document Wizard**

Figure 114. New XML Schema Configuration Options

If you selected **XML Schema (XSD) File** for the type of file you want to create, the wizard will include the following options:

**Default XML Schema version**

Select this option to use the XML Schema version defined in the XML Schema preferences page (on page 138).

**XML Schema 1.0**

Sets the minVersion attribute to 1.0 and the maxVersion attribute to 1.1.

**XML Schema 1.1**

Sets the minVersion attribute to 1.1.

**Target namespace**

Allows you to specify the schema target namespace.

**Namespace prefix declaration table**
This table contains namespace prefix declarations. Table information can be managed using the **New** and **Delete** buttons.

**Tip:** For further details on how you can set the version of an XML Schema, go to Setting the XML Schema Version *(on page 653)*.

### Schematron Document Wizard

**Figure 115. New Schematron Configuration Options**

If you selected **Schematron File** for the type of file you want to create and selected the **Customize** option, the configuration dialog box will include the following option:

**Schematron version**

Specifies the Schematron version. Possible options: **1.5 (deprecated)** and **ISO**.

**Note:** Starting with version 16.0 of Oxygen XML Developer plugin, the support for Schematron 1.5 is deprecated. It is recommended to use ISO Schematron instead.

### JSON Document Configuration Page

**Figure 116. New JSON Configuration Wizard Page**
If you select JSON for the type of file you want to create and select the Customize option, the configuration dialog box will include the following options:

**Schema URL**

Specifies the path to a JSON Schema file that will be used to generate key-value pairs.

**Associate Schema in the Document**

If you select this option, the JSON instance will be generated with the JSON Schema associated directly in the document.

**Generate Optional Properties**

If you select this option, the JSON instance will be generated with optional properties that are defined in the JSON schema. Otherwise, only the required properties will be generated.

**Generate Additional Content**

If you select this option, the JSON instance will be generated with additional properties that are defined in the JSON schema as `additionalProperties` and additional items that are defined as `additionalItems` (in the case of an Array).

Creating New Documents Based on Templates

The New from Templates wizard *(on page 305)* allows you to select built-in templates or custom templates that you or other users created in previous sessions. You can access this wizard by selecting the New from Templates option in the New Document wizard *(on page 305)*.

The categories of templates presented in the wizard include:

- **User-defined template directory** - You can add your own custom templates by creating template files *(on page 312)* in a directory and then add that directory to the list of template directories.
that Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses in the Document Templates preferences page (on page 119). This user-defined directory will appear in the New from templates wizard.

- **Global templates** - Contains a list of built-in templates as well as any user-defined custom templates (on page 312) that are saved in the templates directory of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation folder ({OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/templates).
- **Framework templates** - Contains the list of templates defined in the Document Type configuration dialog box (Templates tab) (on page 80) for each framework (on page 1622).

### New from Templates Wizard

To create a new document using this wizard, follow these steps:

1. Click the ☐ New button on the toolbar and select New from Templates (or select File > New > Other > Oxygen XML Developer plugin > New From Templates).

   **Result:** The New from Templates wizard is displayed where you to select various types of document templates.

2. Select the type of document that you want to create and click Next.

3. Choose the storage path and a file name for the new document.

4. Click the Finish button.

   **Result:** The new file is created and if the Open file for editing when done option is selected, the new file will be opened in the appropriate type of editor.

### Creating New Document Templates

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to create your own custom document templates and they will appear in the New from templates wizard (on page 311).

### Creating a New Document Template

To create your own custom document template and have it appear in the new document wizard, follow these steps:

1. Create a new file (whatever type of document you need) and customize it to become a starting point for creating new files of this type.

   **Tip:** You can use editor variables (on page 162) in the template file content and they will be expanded when the files are opened. Also, see Customizing Document Templates (on page 313) for other template customization tips (for example, you could add placeholders or hints (on page 316) to assist authors).
2. Save the new document template and reference that location in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. There are several options for doing this:

- **Saving the new template in a specific framework's directory** - Save the new template in a directory (for example, called `templates`) within that specific framework directory. Then open the Document Type configuration dialog box (*on page 57*) for that specific framework, go to the Templates tab (*on page 80*), and click the `+` button in the bottom-right corner to add your new directory to the list. It is recommended that the reference be made relative to the framework directory (for example, `${frameworkDir}/templates`). You can also remove any existing entries in the list that aren't applicable or won't be used in your custom framework. Click OK to close the configuration dialog box and then OK or Apply to save your changes.

- **Saving the new template in the Oxygen installation directory** - Save the new template in the `templates` directory of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation directory (`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/templates`). Document templates saved in this directory will appear in the Global templates category in the New from templates wizard (*on page 311*).

- **Saving the new template in a custom directory** - Save the new template in any directory of your choice and then add that directory to the list of templates in the Document Templates preferences page (*on page 119*). This user-defined directory will appear in the New from templates wizard (*on page 311*) along with all the new document templates that you save inside it. Click OK or Apply to save your changes.

⚠️ **Attention:** The name that you use to save the template will be the name that appears in the new document wizard, including capitalization, space, and characters (for example, `My Custom Template1.xml` will appear in the new file wizard as `My Custom Template1`). You can also configure the displayed name in a properties file by following the procedure found in the Configure the Displayed Names for Document Templates (*on page 315*) section.

3. Open the new document wizard ( "$New" toolbar button or File > New > New from Templates) and you should see your custom template in the appropriate folder.

⚠️ **Note:** For DITA templates, they will also appear in the dialog box for creating new DITA topics, but if you customize the template (*on page 313*), you need to set the `type` property to `dita` in the corresponding properties file.

---

**Related Information:**

- Customizing Document Templates (*on page 313*)

- Sharing Custom Document Templates (*on page 317*)
Customizing Document Templates

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to customize certain aspects of built-in or custom document templates. For example, you can customize the icons or specify a prefix/suffix that will be used for the proposed file name in the **New from templates wizard (on page 311).**

**Customizing the Icons for a Document Template**

If you want to customize the icons to be used for document templates, use a properties file to specify the icons using the following procedure:

1. Create a new properties file or edit an existing one following these guidelines:
   a. If you want to create a new properties file, you can use the **Properties** template found in the **New Document** folder in the **New from templates wizard (on page 311).** If you want to edit an existing template, you can find them within the subfolders in the **templates** folder for each framework (for example, the DITA topic properties file is located in: `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/frameworks/dita/templates/topic/topic.properties`).
   b. Use the same name as your custom template file except with a `.properties` extension (for example, `MyTemplate.properties`).
   c. In this properties file, specify the paths to the icons that will be used in the new file wizard. The properties file should look like this:

```
type=general
smallIcon=../icons/Article_16.png
bigIcon=../icons/Article_48.png
```

- **Tip:** For DITA files, the `type` property needs to be set to **dita**. Otherwise, the template will not appear in the dialog box for creating new DITA topics. For all other types of files, set it to **general**. The icons specified in this properties file will only be used for the new file wizards and not in any other part of the interface.

- **Important:** If you created a new template and chose to use a custom directory for the new template (in **step 2 of the new template procedure (on page 313)**), make sure the path to the icons is relative to that directory.

2. Save the properties file in the same directory as your custom template.

3. Open the new file wizard (**File > New > New from Templates**) and you should see your custom icons next to the document template in the appropriate folder.
Add a Prefix or Suffix to File Names for a Document Template

You can use a properties file for each document template to add a prefix or suffix to the file name that is proposed in certain dialog boxes when you create a new file from that template. This applies to the following new document dialog boxes:

- The new document dialog box that appears when you click the New button on the toolbar (or File > New > Other > Oxygen XML Developer plugin). The prefix or suffix is added to the name of the file in the File field.
- The new document dialog box that appears when you select New > New from Templates > [Template Name] > Next from the contextual menu in the Navigator view (on page 210). The prefix or suffix is added to the name of the file in the File field.

To add a prefix or suffix to the file names for a document template, follow these steps:

1. Create a new properties file or edit an existing one.
   - If you create a new properties file, use the same name as the template file except with a .properties extension (for example, MyTemplate.properties). This properties file will specify the prefix/suffix that will be used to propose the file name in the new file wizards.

   When defining the prefix/suffix, the properties file should look something like this:

   ```
   type=general
   filenamePrefix=prod_
   filenameSuffix=_test
   ```

   **Important:** For DITA files, the type property needs to be set to dita. For all other types of files, set it to general.

   - If you edit an existing template, simply define the prefix/suffix as specified above (on page 315).

2. Save the properties file in the same directory as the document template.
3. Open the new document wizard (using the methods described above (on page 315)) and when you select the appropriate template, you should see your prefix or suffix in the file name that is proposed in that dialog box.

Configure the Displayed Names for Document Templates

To change the name that is displayed for a document template, use the following procedure:

1. Create a new properties file or edit an existing one. If you create a new properties file, use the same name as the template file except with a .properties extension (for example, MyTemplate.properties).
2. Add a `displayName` property in the properties file:

```properties
displayName=My Template Name
```

**Tip:** The names for framework (on page 1622)-specific document templates (such as DITA Topic or DocBook Article, as you would see in the Framework templates folder in the New file wizard) can be translated via the internationalization support. In this case, the properties file should contain something like:

```properties
displayName=${i18n(tag)}
```

where `tag` refers to an entry in the translation.xml file for that specific framework (for example, `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/frameworks/dita/i18n/translation.xml` for DITA).

3. Save the properties file in the same directory as the document template.

4. Open the new file wizard (File > New > New from Templates) and you should see the new name for the template.

### Adding Placeholders or Hints in a Document Template

Document templates sometimes contain empty elements and it may not be clear to the Author what should be inserted. You can define placeholders in document templates that provide hints for Authors to help them understand what type of content should be added in any particular empty element within the document. The placeholder text is specified using a processing instruction and the placeholders are removed when the Author inserts content in the corresponding element.

To define placeholders in a document template to provide authors with hints, follow this procedure:

1. Edit the document template.

2. Add placeholders in the form of processing instructions within the elements where you want hints to be displayed when an Author creates a document from the template. For example:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE topic PUBLIC "-/OASIS//DTD DITA Topic//EN" "topic.dtd">
<topic id="pi">
  <title><?oxy-placeholder content="Enter a title"?></title>
  <shortdesc><?oxy-placeholder content="Writing short descriptions induces the writer to clarify the main thesis of the topic. We recommended a 50 word limit."?></shortdesc>
  <body>
    <p><?oxy-placeholder content="A paragraph element should be a self-contained unit dealing with one idea or point."?></p>
  </body>
</topic>
```
3. Save the template file.
4. Use the **New from templates** wizard (*on page 311*) to create a new document using your customized template and you should see the hints in the opened document.

**Related Information:**

- Creating New Document Templates (*on page 312*)
- Sharing Custom Document Templates (*on page 317*)

**Sharing Custom Document Templates**

Your *custom document templates* (*on page 312*) can be shared with the other members of your team so that they all have access to the templates in the **New from templates** wizard (*on page 311*). The best way to share them is by integrating them in an extended *framework* (*on page 1622*) (document type) configuration and then sharing the whole framework with the other users.

**Sharing Custom Document Templates**

To share custom document templates with other members of your team:

1. Create a custom framework by extending an existing one, if you haven't already done so.
2. Create the new document template (*on page 312*), if you haven't already done so.
3. Save the new template in a directory (for example, called *templates*) within your custom framework directory. Then open the **Document Type** configuration dialog box (*on page 57*) for that specific framework, go to the **Templates** tab (*on page 80*), and click the ✨ button in the bottom-right corner to add your new directory to the list. It is recommended that the reference be made relative to the framework directory (for example, `${frameworkDir}/templates`). You can also remove any existing entries in the list that aren't applicable or won't be used in your custom framework.
4. Click **OK** to close the configuration dialog box and then **OK** or **Apply** to save your changes.
5. All that remains is to share the entire framework with anyone who needs to have access to the custom templates.

**Opening Documents**

To open a document in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, do one of the following:
• Go to File > Open File to display the Open File dialog box.
• Go to File > Open URL to display a dialog box where you can specify a URL (defined by a protocol, host, resource path, and an optional port) or use the browsing actions in the Browse for remote file drop-down menu.
• Select the Open or Open with action from the contextual menu of the Navigator view (on page 210).

Opening the Current Document in a System Application

To open the currently edited document in the associated system application, use the View in Browser/System Application action that is available in the XML menu. If you want to open XML files in a specific internet browser, instead of the associated system application, you can specify the internet browser to be used. To do so, go to Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser and specify it there. This will take precedence over the default system application settings.

Saving Documents

You can save the document you are editing with one of the following actions:

• File > Save.
• File > Save As - Displays the Save As dialog box, used either to name and save an open document to a file or to save an existing file with a new name.
• File > Save All - Saves all open documents.

Working with Remote Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports editing remote files, using the FTP, SFTP, and WebDAV protocols. You can edit remote files in the same way you edit local files.

You can open one or more remote files in the Open using FTP/SFTP dialog box (on page 319)

A WebDAV resource can be locked when it is opened in Oxygen XML Developer plugin by selecting the Lock WebDAV files on open option (on page 122) to prevent other users to modify it concurrently on the server. If a user tries to edit a locked file, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays an error message that contains the lock owner's name. The lock is released automatically when the editor for that resource is closed in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

To avoid conflicts with other users when you edit a resource stored on a SharePoint server, you can Check Out the resource.
To improve the transfer speed, the content exchanged between Oxygen XML Developer plugin and the HTTP / WebDAV server is compressed using the GZIP algorithm.

The current WebDAV Connection (on page 1463) details can be saved by switching to the Database perspective (on page 1624) and then you can browse and manage the connection in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408).

Open URL

To access the Open using FTP/SFTP/WebDAV dialog box, go to File > Open URL menu, then choose the Browse for remote file option from the drop-down action list.

Figure 117. Open URL Dialog Box

The displayed dialog box is composed of several parts:

- The editable URL combo box, in which you specify the URL to be opened or saved.

  Tip: If the file is accessible through an anonymous FTP, you can type a URL like: ftp://anonymous@some.site/home/test.xml.
This combo box also displays the current selection when you change selection by browsing the
tree of folders and files on the server.

- The **Identification** section contains the access credentials. If you want to browse for a file on
  a server, you have to specify the user and password. This information is bound to the selected
  URL and is also used in opening or saving the file. If the **Save** checkbox is selected, the user and
  password are saved between editing sessions. The password is encrypted and kept in the options
  file.

  **Note:** Your password is well protected. If the options file is used on another machine by a
  user with a different user name the password, it will become unreadable since the encryption is
  user-name dependent. This is also true if you add URLs to your project that include a user and
  password.

- The **Browse for remote file** section contains the **Server URL** combo box and **Autoconnect**
  checkbox. In the **Server URL** combo box, you can specify the protocol, the server host name, or
  server IP.

  **Tip:** When accessing a FTP server, you only need to specify the protocol and the host (such
  as ftp://server.com or if using a non-standard port ftp://server.com:7800/).

By pressing the **Browse** button, the directory listing will be shown in the component. When
**Autoconnect** is selected, every time the dialog box is displayed, the browse action will be
performed.

- The bottom part of the dialog box displays the tree view of the documents stored on the server.
  You can browse the directories and make multiple selections. Additionally, you can use the
  **Rename**, **Delete**, and **New Folder** actions to manage the file repository.

  The file names are sorted in a case-insensitive manner.

### Changing File Permissions on a Remote FTP Server

Some FTP servers allow the modification of permissions of the files served over the FTP protocol.
This protocol feature is accessible directly in the FTP file browser dialog box by right-clicking a tree
node and selecting the **Change permissions** menu item.

In this dialog box, the usual Unix file permissions **Read**, **Write**, and **Execute** are granted or denied
for the file owner, owner group, and the rest of the users. The aggregate number of permissions is
updated in the **Permissions** text field when it is modified with one of the checkboxes.
WebDAV over HTTPS

If you want to access a WebDAV repository across a non-secure network, Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to load and save the documents over the HTTPS protocol (if the server understands this protocol) so that any data exchange with the WebDAV server is encrypted.

When a WebDAV repository is first accessed over HTTPS, the server hosting the repository will present a security certificate as part of the HTTPS protocol, without any user intervention. Oxygen XML Developer plugin will use this certificate to decrypt any data stream received from the server. For the authentication to succeed you should make sure the security certificate of the server hosting the repository can be read by Oxygen XML Developer plugin. This means that Oxygen XML Developer plugin can find the certificate in the key store of the Java Runtime Environment in which it runs. You know the server certificate is not in the JRE key store if you get the error No trusted certificate found when trying to access the WebDAV repository.

Troubleshooting HTTPS

When Oxygen XML Developer plugin cannot connect to an HTTPS-capable server, most likely there is no certificate set in the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) that Oxygen XML Developer plugin runs into. The following procedure describes how to:

- Export a certificate to a local file using any HTTPS-capable Web browser (for example, Internet Explorer).
- Import the certificate file into the JRE using the keytool that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Tip: To make Oxygen XML Developer plugin accept a certificate even if it is invalid, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Network Connection settings > HTTP(S)/WebDAV, and select the Automatically accept a security certificate, even if invalid option.

Note: This Automatically accept a security certificate, even if invalid option does not influence the entire Eclipse workspace. It is limited to URLs that are opened directly by Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

1. Export the certificate into a local file
   a. Point your HTTPS-aware Web browser to the repository URL.
      
      If this is your first visit to the repository it will be displayed a security alert stating that the security certificate presented by the server is not trusted.

      Figure 118. Security alert - untrusted certificate
b. Go to menu **Tools > Internet Options**. 
   *Internet Options* dialog box is opened.

c. Select **Security** tab.

d. Select **Trusted sites** icon.

e. Press **Sites** button.
   This will open **Trusted sites** dialog box.

f. Add repository URL to **Websites** list.

g. Close the **Trusted sites** and **Internet Options** dialog boxes.

h. Try again to connect to the same repository URL in Internet Explorer. 
   The same error page as above will be displayed.

i. Select **Continue to this website** option.
   A clickable area with a red icon and text **Certificate Error** is added to Internet Explorer address bar.

j. Click the **Certificate Error** area.
   A dialog box containing a **View certificates** link is displayed.

k. Click the **View certificates** link.
   **Certificate** dialog box is displayed.

l. Select **Details** tab of **Certificate** dialog box.

m. Press **Copy to File** button.
Certificate Export Wizard is started.

n. Follow indications of wizard for DER encoded binary X.509 certificate. Save certificate to local file server.cer.

2. Import the local file into the JRE running Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

a. Open a text-mode console with administrative rights.

   If Oxygen XML Developer plugin has been installed in a user's home directory and includes a bundled JRE, administrative rights are not required. In all other cases administrative rights will be required.

b. Go to the lib/security directory of the JRE running Oxygen XML Developer plugin. You find the home directory of the JRE in the java.home property that is displayed in the About dialog box (Installation Details > Configuration).

   On OS X, for the distribution of Oxygen XML Developer plugin that bundles the JRE from Oracle, the JRE uses the .install4j/jre.bundle/Contents/Home/jre/lib/security/cacerts path within its installation directory.

c. Run the following command:

   ```bash
   ..\..\bin\keytool -import -trustcacerts -file server.cer -keystore cacerts
   ```

   The server.cer file contains the server certificate, created during the previous step. The keytool requires a password before adding the certificate to the JRE keystore (on page 1623). The default password is changeit. If someone changed the default password, then that person is the only one who can perform the import.

   **Tip:** If you need to import multiple certificates, you need to specify a different alias for each additional imported certificate with the -alias command-line argument, as in the following example:

   ```bash
   ..\..\bin\keytool -import -alias myalias1 -trustcacerts -file server1.cer -keystore cacerts
   ..\..\bin\keytool -import -alias myalias2 -trustcacerts -file server2.cer -keystore cacerts
   ```


Related Information:

- HTTP(S)/WebDAV Preferences (on page 121)
HTTP Authentication Schemes

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports the following HTTP authentication schemes:

- **Basic** - The *basic* authentication scheme defined in the RFC2617 specifications.
- **Digest** - The *digest* authentication scheme defined in the RFC2617 specifications.
- **NTLM** - The NTLM scheme is a proprietary Microsoft Windows Authentication protocol (considered to be the most secure among currently supported authentication schemes).

**Note:** For NTLM authentication, the user name must be preceded by the name of the domain it belongs to, as in the following example:

```
domain\username
```

- **Kerberos (on page 324)** - An authentication protocol that works on the basis of *tickets* to allow nodes communicating over a non-secure network to prove their identity to one another in a secure manner.

Single Sign-on

Oxygen XML Developer plugin implements the *Single sign-on* property (meaning that you can log on once and gain access to multiple services without being prompted to log on for each of them), based on the Kerberos protocol and relies on a *ticket-granting ticket (TGT)* that Oxygen XML Developer plugin obtains from the operating system.

**Restriction:** This *Single sign-on* support is not available for SharePoint integrations.

To turn on the Kerberos-based authentication, you need to add the following system property in the `eclipse.ini` configuration file (on a separate line after the `-vmargs` parameter):

```
-Djavax.security.auth.useSubjectCredsOnly=false
```

Closing Documents

To close open documents, use one of the following actions that are available in the contextual menu of the current editor tab (or from the File menu):

- **Close** *(Ctrl + F4 (Command + F4 on OS X))*
  Closes the currently selected editor.

- **Close Others**
  If multiple files are opened, this action is available to close all opened editors in the current group/stack of tabs except for the one you are currently viewing.

- **Close All** *(Ctrl + Shift + F4 (Command + Shift + F4 on OS X))*
If multiple files are opened, this action is available to close all opened editors in the current group/stack of tabs. If this action is selected from the File menu, it closes all opened editors in all groups/stacks of tabs.

Contextual Menu of the Current Editor Tab

A contextual menu is available when you right-click the current editor tab label.

The actions that are available depend on the context and the number of files that are opened. The menu includes the following actions:

**Close (Ctrl + F4 (Command + F4 on OS X))**

Closes the currently selected editor.

**Close Others**

If multiple files are opened, this action is available to close all opened editors in the current group/stack of tabs except for the one you are currently viewing.

**Close All (Ctrl + Shift + F4 (Command + Shift + F4 on OS X))**

If multiple files are opened, this action is available to close all opened editors.

Viewing File Properties

The Editor Properties view displays information about the currently edited document. The information includes:

- Character encoding.
- Full path on the file system.
- Schema used for content completion and document validation.
- Document type name and path.
- Associated transformation scenario.
- Read-only state of a file.
- Bidirectional text (left to right and right to left) state.
- Total number of characters in the document.
- Line width.
- Indent with tabs state.
- Indent size.

The view can be accessed from Window > Show View > Other > Editor Properties.
To copy a value from the Editor Properties view in the clipboard (for example, the full file path), use the Copy action available on the contextual menu of the view.

Simple Text Editor

While Oxygen XML Developer plugin specializes in XML-related technologies, you can also use it to create and edit various types of non-XML files. Non-XML files are opened in a simple text editor and many of the helpful features that are commonly used when editing XML files in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin Text editing mode (on page 365) are available in this simple editor.

Types of Non-XML Files That are Supported in the Simple Text Editor

The types of non-XML files that can be created and edited in the simple text editor include:

- Java
- C++
- C
- PHP
- Perl
- Properties
- SQL
- Shell executables
- Batch
- Python
- Text

Features Available in the Simple Text Editor

When editing files in the simple text editor, the features that are available include the following:

- **Project Support** - The unique features that are designed to help you work with projects (on page 327) are available for all types of files.
- **Shortcut Actions** - Many of the shortcut actions that are available in Text mode (on page 368) are also available in the simple text editor.
- **Drag and Drop** - The normal drag and drop support is available in the simple text editor.
- **Content Selection Features** - The content selection shortcuts (on page 376) that are available in Text mode are also available in the simple text editor.
- **Convert Hexadecimal Characters** - You can convert a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character (on page 404).
• **Encoding/Decoding Actions** - Contextual menu actions are available to encode or decode Base 64, Base 32, and Hex schemes (on page 405).

• **Code Templates** - You can define your own code templates (on page 389) for any type of file and use the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) to invoke them.

• **Syntax Highlighting** - Non-XML files also support syntax highlighting with dedicated coloring schemes. To customize them, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Syntax Highlight (on page 112). Select and expand the appropriate section in the top pane for the type of file you are editing and you can see the effects of your changes in the Preview pane.

---

### Using Projects to Group Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a **Navigator view** (on page 210) that helps you organize your projects. Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers a variety of helpful features for working with projects and makes it easy to share your projects with other members of your team. This section presents various unique features that will help you to create and work with projects.

#### Creating a New Project

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to organize your XML-related files into projects. This helps you manage and organize your files and also allows you to perform batch operations (such as validation and transformation) over multiple files. Use the **Navigator view** (on page 210) to manage projects, and the files and folders contained within.

**Creating a New Project**

To create a new project, select **New > XML Project** or **New > Sample XML Project** from the contextual menu or **File** menu. This opens a dialog box that allows you to create and customize a new project and adds it to the structure of the project in the **Navigator view** (on page 210).

**Adding Items to the Project**

To add items to the project, select the desired document type or folder from the **New** menu of the contextual menu, when invoked from the **Navigator view** (or from the **File** menu). You can also create a document from a template by selecting **New > New from Templates** from the contextual menu.

**Using Linked Folders (Shortcuts)**

Another easy way to organize your XML working files is to place them in a directory and then to create a corresponding linked folder in your project. If you add new files to that folder, you can simply use
the **Refresh (F5)** action from the toolbar or contextual menu and the **Navigator view (on page 210)** will display the existing files and subdirectories. If your files are scattered among several folders, but represent the same class of files, you might find it useful to combine them in a logical folder.

You can create linked folders (shortcuts) by dragging and dropping folders from the Windows Explorer (Mac OS X Finder) to the project tree, or by using the contextual menu from the location in the project tree where you want it added and selecting **New > Folder > Advanced**. The linked folders presented in the **Navigator view (on page 210)** are marked with a special icon. To create a file inside a linked folder, use the contextual menu and select **New > File** (you can use the **Advanced** button to link to a file in the local file system).

**Note:** Files may have multiple instances within the folder system, but cannot appear twice within the same folder.

For more information on managing projects and their content, see **Navigator View (on page 210)**.

**Related Information:**

- [Using Projects to Group Documents (on page 327)](#)

**Navigator View**

The **Navigator** view is designed to assist you with organizing and managing related files grouped in the same XML project. The actions available in the contextual menu and on the toolbar associated to this panel allows you to create XML projects and provide shortcuts to various operations for the project documents.

**Tip:** You can also use the **Project Explorer** view for many of the same purposes as the **Navigator** view.

Figure 119. Navigator View
By default, the view is positioned on the left side of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin window, above the Outline view (on page 217). If the view has been closed, it can be reopened at any time from the Window > Show View menu (the Project Explorer view is in the Other submenu).

**Project View Toolbar**

The following actions are grouped in the upper right corner:

- **Collapse All**
  
  Collapses all project tree folders. You can also collapse/expand a project tree folder if you select it and press the Enter key or Left Arrow to collapse and Right Arrow to expand.

- **Link with Editor**
  
  When selected, the project tree highlights the currently edited file, if it is found in the project files.

  **Note:** This button is disabled automatically when you move to the Debugger perspective (on page 1624).

**View Menu**

Drop-down menu that contains various settings contributed by the Eclipse plugin.

**File Explorer Area**

The rest of the view is basically a file explorer similar to most other commonly used file explorers. The XML project (.xpr file) is a logical container with a collection of resources (folders and files). The types of resources displayed include:
• **Logical folders with Linked folders/files** - This folder type is used as containers for linked resources (shortcuts). The icons for file shortcuts include a shortcut symbol (🔗). The linked folders/files are added using **New > Folder > Advanced** or **New > File > Advanced**, or by dragging and dropping files/folders from the view or the system file explorer. ✗ **Delete** can be used to remove them from the project.

• **Physical folders and files** - Marked with the operating system-specific icon for folders (usually a yellow icon on Windows and a blue icon on Mac OS X). These folders and files are mirrors of real folders or files that exist in the local file system. They are created or added to the project by using contextual menu actions (such as **New > File**, **New > Folder**, **Copy**, and **Paste**) or by dragging and dropping files/folders from the view or the system file explorer. Also, the contextual menu action ✗ **Delete** can be used to remove them from the project and local file system.

**Figure 120. Navigator View with Both Types of Resources**

Creating New Projects

The following actions are available from the **New** menu when right-clicking any item, or the **File > New** menu:

**XML Project**

Opens the **New XML Project** dialog box that allows you to create a new project and adds it to the project structure in the **Navigator** view.

**Sample XML Project**

Opens the **New sample XML project** dialog box that allows you to customize sample resources in a new project and adds it to the project structure in the **Navigator** view.
Managing Project Contents

There are various contextual menu actions, shortcuts, and ways to organize the folders and files inside the project:

Creating New Folders and Files

Right-click any item > New > File

Opens a New Document Wizard (on page 305) that helps you create a new file and adds it to the project structure.

Right-click any item > New > New from Templates

Opens a wizard where you can create a new document based on a template (on page 311) and adds it to the project structure.

Right-click any item > New > Folder

Opens a New Folder dialog box that allows you to specify a name for a new folder and adds it to the structure of the project.

Adding Resources

You can add resources by using drag and drop (or Copy and Paste) actions from within the Navigator view or dragging them from the system file explorer. Files may have multiple instances within the folder system, but cannot appear twice within the same folder.

Removing Folders and Files

To remove logical folders or the linked resources inside them from the project, use Delete from the contextual menu (or press Delete on your keyboard) and confirm by clicking OK in the resulting dialog box.

To remove folders or files from both the project and the local file system, use Delete from the contextual menu (or press Delete on your keyboard) and confirm by clicking OK in the resulting dialog box.

Moving Folders and Files

You can move the resources by using drag and drop actions from within the Navigator view.

You can also use the usual Copy and Paste actions (or the Move action) from the contextual menu to move resources in the project.
You can also move certain types of files (such as XML, XML Schema, Relax NG, WSDL, and XSLT) by using the **Refactoring > Move resource** action from the contextual menu. This action opens the **Move resource** dialog box that includes the following options:

- **Destination** - Presents the path to the current location of the resource you want to move and gives you the option to introduce a new location.
- **New name** - Presents the current name of the moved resource and gives you the option to change it.
- **Update references of the moved resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are moving, based upon the selected scope. You can **select or configure the scope (on page 466)** by using the button.

**Renaming Folders and Files**

There are several ways to rename a folder or file in the project (this works for both physical and linked resources):

- Select **Rename** from the contextual menu.
- Press **F2** on your keyboard.

You also can rename certain types of files (such as XML, XML Schema, Relax NG, WSDL, and XSLT) by using the **Refactoring > Rename resource** action from the contextual menu. This action opens the **Rename resource** dialog box that includes the following options:

- **New name** - Presents the current name of the edited resource and allows you to modify it.
- **Update references of the renamed resource** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are renaming. You can **select or configure the scope (on page 466)** by using the button.

**Opening Files**

There are several ways to open a file:

- Double-click the file.
- Select it and press **Enter** on your keyboard.
- Right-click the file and select **Open**.
- Drag the file from the project tree and drop it in the editor area.
- If you want to choose the application or location where to open it, you can right-click the file and select **Open with**.

**Saving the Project**
The project file is automatically saved every time the content of the Navigator view is saved or modified by actions such as adding or removing files and drag and drop.

Other Contextual Menu Actions

Numerous other actions are available in the contextual menu, depending on the type of file or folder where it is invoked from (some actions are available for multiple selected files):

Refactoring submenu

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes some refactoring operations that help you manage the structure of your documents. The following actions are available from the contextual menu in the Refactoring submenu:

**Rename resource (Available for certain types of XML documents)**

Opens the Rename resource dialog box (on page 335) where you can change the name of a resource. It also includes an option to update the references to the renamed resource and you can choose between various scopes for the operation.

**Move resource (Available for certain types of XML documents)**

Opens the Move resource dialog box (on page 335) where you can choose a destination and change the name of a resource. It also includes an option to update the references to the moved resource and you can choose between various scopes for the operation.

XML Refactoring

Opens the XML Refactoring tool wizard (on page 475) that presents refactoring operations to assist you with managing the structure of your XML documents.

Show Resource Hierarchy

Opens the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view (on page 467) that allows you to see the resource hierarchy for an XML document.

Show Resource Dependencies

Opens the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view (on page 467) that allows you to see the resource dependencies for an XML document.

Refresh

Refreshes the content and the dependencies between the resources in the Master Files directory (on page 337).

XPath in Files
Opens the **XPath/XQuery Builder view** *(on page 1394)* that allows you to compose XPath and XQuery expressions and execute them over the currently edited XML document.

**Check Spelling in Files**

Allows you to check the spelling of multiple files. *(on page 353)*

**Format and Indent Files**

Opens the **Format and Indent Files** dialog box *(on page 400)* that allows you to configure the format and indent *(pretty-print*(on page 1625))* action that will be applied on the selected documents.

**Transform submenu**

The currently selected files associated with the Oxygen XML Developer plugin in the **Package Explorer** view or in the **Navigator** view can be transformed in one step with one of the following actions available from contextual menu in the **Transform** submenu:

- **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)**
  Obtains the output with one of the **built-in scenarios** *(on page 858)*.

- **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)**
  Opens a **dialog box** *(on page 976)* that allows you to configure pre-defined transformation scenarios.

- **Transform with**
  Allows you to select a transformation scenario to be applied to the currently selected files.

**Validate submenu**

The currently selected files associated with the Oxygen XML Developer plugin in the **Package Explorer** view or in the **Navigator** view can be checked to be XML well-formed or validated against a schema (DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG, Schematron or NVDL) with one of the following contextual menu actions found in the **Validate** submenu:

- **Check Well-Formedness**
  Checks if the selected file or files are well-formed.

- **Validate**
  Validates the selected file or files against their associated schema.
  For EPUB files, this action triggers an **EPUB Validate and Check for Completeness** *(on page 1403)* operation.

**Validate with Schema**
Validates the selected file of files against a specified schema.

Configure Validation Scenario(s)

Allows you to configure and run a validation scenario (on page 432).

Clear Validation Markers

Clears all the error markers from the main editor and Problems view.

Generate XML Schema Documentation

Opens the XML Schema Documentation Dialog Box (on page 631).

Generate Stylesheet Documentation

Opens the XSLT Stylesheet Documentation Dialog Box (on page 557).

Generate XQuery Documentation

Opens the XQuery Documentation Dialog Box (on page 666).

Generate WSDL Documentation

Opens the WSDL Documentation Dialog Box (on page 688).

Properties

Displays the properties of the current file in a Properties dialog box.

Enable Master Files Support (Available from the project container)

Allows you to enable the Master Files Support (on page 338) for each project you are working on.

Detect Master Files (Available from the project container when Master Files Support is enabled)

Opens the Detect Master Files wizard (on page 338) that enables the automatic detection of master files.

Add to Master Files (Available when Master Files Support is enabled)

Adds the selected files to the Master Files folder (on page 339).

Moving/Renaming Resources in the Navigator View

The Refactoring submenu in the contextual menu of the Navigator view (on page 210) provides actions for moving or renaming resources in the current project while offering the option to update the references to the resources.
Moving Resources

You can move certain types of files (such as XML, XML Schema, Relax NG, WSDL, and XSLT) by using the Refactoring > Move resource action from the contextual menu. This action opens the Move resource dialog box that includes the following options:

- **Destination** - Presents the path to the current location of the resource you want to move and gives you the option to introduce a new location.
- **New name** - Presents the current name of the moved resource and gives you the option to change it.
- **Update references of the moved resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are moving, based upon the selected scope. You can select or configure the scope (on page 466) by using the button.

Renaming Resources

You can rename certain types of files (such as XML, XML Schema, Relax NG, WSDL, and XSLT) by using the Refactoring > Rename resource action from the contextual menu. This action opens the Rename resource dialog box that includes the following options:

- **New name** - Presents the current name of the edited resource and allows you to modify it.
- **Update references of the renamed resource** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are renaming. You can select or configure the scope (on page 466) by using the button.

Problems Updating References of Moved/Renamed Resources

In some cases, the references of a moved or a renamed resource cannot be updated. For example, when a resource is resolved through an XML Catalog (on page 1627) or when the path to the moved or renamed resource contains entities. For these cases, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays a warning dialog box.

Figure 121. Problems Dialog Box
Master Files Support

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to define Master Files (on page 1623) at project level. These master files are automatically used by Oxygen XML Developer plugin to determine the context for operations such as validation, transformation, content completion, refactoring, or searches for XML, XSD, XSL, WSDL, and RNG modules. Oxygen XML Developer plugin maintains the hierarchy of the master files, helping you to determine the editing context.

For more information about the Master Files support for XML documents, watch our video demonstrations:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/e2oo4RWNxW8

https://www.youtube.com/embed/UZwg385RKNw

https://www.youtube.com/embed/FQNSsg57S4E

https://www.youtube.com/embed/gn_YPD5xDCo
Master Files Benefits

Using the *Master Files* support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes the following benefits:

- When the *master file* is validated, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically identifies the modules included in the *master file* and validates all of them.
- When the *master file* is transformed, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically identifies the modules included in the *master file* and transforms them accordingly.
- The *Content Completion Assistant* ([on page 1620](#)) presents all the components that are collected from the *master files* for the modules they include.
- The *Outline view* ([on page 217](#)) displays all the components that are defined in the *master files* hierarchy.
- The *master files* that are defined for the current module determines the *scope of the search and refactoring actions* ([on page 466](#)). Oxygen XML Developer plugin performs the search and refactoring actions in the context that the *master files* determine, thus improving the speed of execution.

Enabling the Master Files Support

Oxygen XML Developer plugin stores the *master files* in a folder located in the *Navigator view* ([on page 210](#)), as the first child of the project root. The *Master Files Support* is disabled by default and Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to enable or disable the *Master Files Support* for each project you are working on.

To enable *Master Files* support, select **Enable Master Files Support** from the contextual menu of the project root folder in the *Navigator view* ([on page 210](#)).

Related Information:

- Detecting Master Files ([on page 338](#))
- Adding Files to the Master File Directory ([on page 339](#))

Detecting Master Files

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to detect the *master files* using the **Detect Master Files** option. This action applies to the folders you select in the project.

To detect *master files* over the entire project, do one of the following:

- Right-click the root of the project and select **Detect Master Files from Project**.
• Use the Detect Master Files from Project option, available in the contextual menu of the Master Files folder.

Both of these options display the Detect Master Files wizard. In the first panel you can select the type of master files you want Oxygen XML Developer plugin to detect. In the subsequent panel the detected master files are presented in a tree-like fashion. The resources are grouped into three categories:

• Possible master files - The files presented on the first level in this category are not imported or included from other files. These files are most likely to be set as master files.

  Note: For DITA projects, only DITA Maps (on page 1621) are reported as possible master files.

• Cycles - The files that are presented on the first level have circular dependencies between them. Any file presented on the first level of a cycle is a possible master file.

• Standalone - Files that do not include or import other files and are also not included or imported themselves. It is not necessary to set them as master files.

To set them as master files, simply select their checkboxes. Oxygen XML Developer plugin marks all the children of a master file as modules. Modules are rendered in gray and their tool-tip presents a list of their master files. A module can be accessed from multiple master files.

The master files that are already defined in the project are automatically marked in the tree and cannot be removed. The only way to disable a master file is to delete it from the Master Files folder.

The next panel displays a list with the selected master files. Click the Finish button to add the master files in the Master Files folder.

You can use the Select Master Files option to automatically mark all master files. This action sets all the resources from the Possible Master Files category and the first resource of each Cycle as master files. The Deselect All button simply removes all of your selections.

Tip: It is recommended that you only add top-level files (files that are at the root of the include/import graph) in the Master Files directory.

Related Information:

• Enabling the Master Files Support (on page 338)

• Adding Files to the Master File Directory (on page 339)
Adding Files to the Master File Directory

The Master Files directory only contains logical folders and linked files. To add files in the Master Files directory, use one of the following methods:

- Right-click a file from your project and select Add to Master Files from the contextual menu.
- Drag and drop files into the Master Files directory.
- From the contextual menu of the Resource Hierarchy Dependencies view (on page 467), use the Add to Master Files action.

You can view the master files for the currently edited resource in the Editor Properties view (on page 325).

Related Information:

- Enabling the Master Files Support (on page 338)
- Detecting Master Files (on page 338)

Finding and Replacing Text

This section includes topics with regard to the find and replace features available in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Find All Elements Dialog Box

To open the Find All Elements dialog box, go to Edit > Find All Elements. It assists you in defining XML element / attribute search operations in the current document.

Figure 122. Find All Elements Dialog Box
The dialog box can perform the following actions:

- Find all the elements with a specified name.
- Find all the elements that contain, or does not contain, a specified string in their text content.
- Find all the elements that have a specified attribute.
- Find all the elements that have an attribute with, or without, a specified value.

You can combine all of these search criteria to filter your results.

The following fields are available in the dialog box:

- **Element name** - The qualified name of the target element to search for. You can use the drop-down menu to find an element or enter it manually. It is populated with valid element names collected from the associated schema. To specify any element name, leave the field empty.

  **Note:** Use the qualified name of the element (\(<\)namespace prefix>:\<element name>\) when the document uses this element notation.

- **Element text** - The target element text to search for. The drop-down menu beside this field allows you to specify whether you are looking for an exact or partial match of the element text. For any element text, select contains from the drop-down menu and leave the field empty. If you leave the field empty but select equals from the drop-down menu, only elements with no text will be found. Select not contains to find all elements that do not include the specified text.

- **Attribute name** - The name of the attribute that must be present in the element. You can use the drop-down menu to select an attribute or enter it manually. It is populated with valid attribute names collected from the associated schema. For any or no attribute name, leave the field empty.

  **Note:** Use the qualified name of the attribute (\(<\)namespace prefix>:\<attribute name>\) when the document uses this attribute notation.

- **Attribute value** - The drop-down menu beside this field allows you to specify that you are looking for an exact or partial match of the attribute value. For any or no attribute value, select contains from the drop-down menu and leave the field empty. If you leave the field empty but select equals from the drop-down menu, only elements that have at least an attribute with an empty value will be found. Select not contains to find all elements that have attributes without a specified value.

- **Case sensitive** - When this option is selected, operations are case-sensitive.

When you press **Find All**, Oxygen XML Developer plugin tries to find the items that match all the search parameters. The results of the operation are presented as a list in the message panel.
Regular Expressions Syntax

Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the Java regular expression syntax. It is similar to that used in Perl 5, with several exceptions. Thus, Oxygen XML Developer plugin does not support the following constructs:

- The conditional constructs \( (?{X}) \) and \(?{condition}X|Y \).
- The embedded code constructs \(?{code} \) and \(?{code} \).
- The embedded comment syntax \(?#comment \).
- The preprocessing operations \( \_l, \_u, \_L, \) and \( \_U \).

When using regular expressions, note that some sets of characters from XPath/XML Schema/Schematron are slightly different than the ones used by Oxygen XML Developer plugin/Java in the text searches. The most common example is with the \( \_w \) and \( \_W \) set of characters. To ensure consistent results between the two, it is recommended that you use the following constructs:

- \( /w \) \( \#x0000-\#x10FFFF\)\( -\{p\{P\}\{p\{Z\}\{p\{C\} } \) instead of \( \_w \)
- \( /W \) \( \{p\{P\}\{p\{Z\}\{p\{C\} } \) instead of \( \_W \)

There are some other notable differences that may cause unexpected results, including the following:

- In Perl, \( \_1 \) through \( \_9 \) are always interpreted as back references. A backslash-escaped number greater than 9 is treated as a back reference if at least that many sub-expressions exist. Otherwise, it is interpreted, if possible, as an octal escape. In this class octal escapes must always begin with a zero. In Java, \( \_1 \) through \( \_9 \) are always interpreted as back references, and a larger number is accepted as a back reference if at least that many sub-expressions exist at that point in the regular expression. Otherwise, the parser will drop digits until the number is smaller or equal to the existing number of groups or it is one digit.
- Perl uses the \( g \) flag to request a match that resumes where the last match left off.
- In Perl, embedded flags at the top level of an expression affect the whole expression. In Java, embedded flags always take effect at the point where they appear, whether they are at the top level or within a group. In the latter case, flags are restored at the end of the group just as in Perl.
- Perl is forgiving about malformed matching constructs, as in the expression \( ^a, \) as well as dangling brackets, as in the expression \( abc)\), and treats them as literals. This class also accepts dangling brackets but is strict about dangling meta-characters such as \( +, , ? \) and \( * \).

Related Information:

- Comparison between the Java and Perl 5 regular expression syntax
Spell Checking

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes an automatic (as-you-type) spell checking feature (on page 352), as well as a manual spell checking action to open a Spelling dialog box that offers a variety of options.

To manually check spelling in the current document, use the Check Spelling action on the toolbar.

Figure 123. Check Spelling Dialog Box

The Spelling dialog box contains the following:

Unrecognized word

Displays the word that cannot be found in the selected dictionary. The word is also highlighted in the XML document.

Replace with

The character string that will replace the misspelled word.

Guess

Displays a list of suggested words to replace the unknown word. Double-click a word to automatically insert it in the document and resume the spell checking process.

Default language

Allows you to select the default language dictionary used by the spelling engine.

Paragraph language
In an XML document, you can mix content written in multiple languages. You can set the language code in the `lang` or `xml:lang` attribute for any particular section and Oxygen XML Developer plugin will automatically instruct the spell checker engine to apply the appropriate language dictionary for that section.

**Begin at cursor position**

Instructs the spell checker to begin checking the document starting from the current cursor position.

**Action Buttons**

- **Replace**
  
  Use this button to replace the unrecognized word with the selected word from the Replace with field.

- **Replace All**
  
  Use this button to replace all occurrences of the unrecognized word with the selected word from the Replace with field, starting from the cursor's position to the end of the document.

  **Note:** This action is case-sensitive.

- **Ignore**
  
  Ignores the first occurrence of the unrecognized word and allows you to continue checking the document. Oxygen XML Developer plugin skips the content of the XML elements marked to be ignored (on page 351).

- **Ignore All**
  
  Ignores all instances of the unrecognized word in the current document.

- **Learn**
  
  Adds the unrecognized word to the list of valid words.

- **Options**
  
  Opens the Spell Check preferences page (on page 108) where you can configure various options regarding the feature.

**Spell Check Dictionaries and Term Lists**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the Hunspell engine for the spell checking feature. The Hunspell spell checking engine is open source and has an LGPL license. It is designed for languages with rich morphology and complex compounding or character encoding. Each language-country variant combination have their own specific dictionaries. Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes the following built-in dictionaries for the spell checker:
Other Hunspell Dictionaries

You can also download Hunspell dictionaries for other languages and add them to the Oxygen XML Developer plugin spell checker. An example of a website that includes numerous dictionary files is: http://extensions.services.openoffice.org/dictionary.

If you cannot find a Hunspell dictionary that is already built for your language, you can build the dictionary you need. To build a full Hunspell dictionary, follow these instructions and then add the dictionary to the Oxygen XML Developer plugin spell checker by following this procedure (on page 346).

Personalized Term Lists

Authoring in certain areas of expertise (for example, the pharmaceutical or automobile industries) might require the use of specific terms that are not part of the standard spell checker dictionary. To avoid marking these terms as errors, Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides a way of adding personalized term lists (on page 349) to the spell check engine. This involves creating a term list file that the spell checker will recognize and it is similar to the file Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses for storing learned words (on page 351).

The term list files are specific for each language and can be specific to each domain or area of expertise (for example, legal, medical, automotive). They can also be used to control forbidden words.

Related Information:

• Adding Custom Spell Check Dictionaries (on page 346)

• Adding Custom Spell Check Term Lists (on page 349)

• Building and Testing Hunspell Dictionaries
Adding Custom Dictionaries and Term Lists

The Oxygen XML Developer plugin spell checker allows you to add customized Hunspell dictionaries and personalized term lists. The Hunspell dictionary mechanism requires a dictionary file (with a .dic file extension) and an affix file (with the .aff file extension). The personalized term lists are custom files (with the .tdi file extension) that you can create to include specialized terms or specify forbidden words in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin spell checker.

You can add dictionaries (on page 346) and personalized term lists (on page 349) to the default folder where they are stored or specify your own custom locations. You can view the default storage location in the Spell Check Dictionaries preferences page (on page 111) and the Include dictionaries and term list from option (on page 111) allows you to choose a custom storage location. All the dictionaries and term lists for a particular language that are found in either location are merged and used by the spell checker in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Related Information:

- Replacing a Spell Check Dictionary (on page 350)

Adding Custom Spell Check Dictionaries

There are three possible scenarios for adding Hunspell dictionaries to the Oxygen XML Developer plugin spell checker:

- You can download a pre-built Hunspell dictionary and add it to the spell checking mechanism.
- You can create a custom Hunspell dictionary file that defines your own list of words and add it to the spell checking mechanism.
- You can build your own full Hunspell dictionary and add it to the spell checking mechanism.

Download and Add a Pre-Built Hunspell Dictionary

To add a downloaded pre-built dictionary, follow these steps:

1. Download the files needed for your dictionary. You will need a dictionary file (with a .dic file extension) and an affix file (with the .aff file extension). If the dictionary does not include an affix file (.aff), you can create one and leave it empty, but it is needed for the mechanism to work properly. An example of a website that includes numerous dictionary files is: http://extensions.services.openoffice.org/dictionary.

⚠️ Important: The name of the files should begin with a two letter prefix for the language code, followed by an underscore or hyphen, then two letters that indicate the country code, followed by
another underscore or hyphen, and then a descriptive name (for example, `en_US_medical.dic` for a medical dictionary in the US version of the English language, or for a less specific English medical dictionary, you could omit the country code like this: `en_medical.dic`). For a list of language codes, see [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_ISO_639-1_codes](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_ISO_639-1_codes).

2. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries (on page 111).

3. Choose one of the following two options for adding the downloaded files.
   a. Copy both files (.dic and .aff) to the default directory displayed in the Dictionaries and term lists default folder option (on page 111).
   b. Copy both files (.dic and .aff) to any other directory, select the Include dictionaries and term list from option (on page 111), and select that directory. If you choose this option, make sure you read this important note (on page 111).

4. Restart the application for the spell checker to start using the new dictionary.

Create a Custom Hunspell Dictionary that Defines a List of Words

To create a custom Hunspell dictionary that defines your own list of words, follow these steps:

1. Create a dictionary file (with a .dic file extension) and an affix file (with the .aff file extension). The affix file (.aff) can be left empty, but it is needed for the mechanism to work properly.

   **Important:** The name of the files should begin with a two letter prefix for the language code, followed by an underscore or hyphen, then two letters that indicate the country code, followed by another underscore or hyphen, and then a descriptive name (for example, `en_US_medical.dic` for a medical dictionary in the US version of the English language, or for a less specific English medical dictionary, you could omit the country code like this: `en_medical.dic`). For a list of language codes, see [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_ISO_639-1_codes](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_ISO_639-1_codes).

2. In the dictionary file (.dic extension), add the words you want to be included in your custom dictionary. Add one word per row and the first line needs to contain the number of words, as in the following example:

   ```
   2
   parabola
   asimptotic
   ```

   **Tip:** Words stored in dictionaries are not handled as case-sensitive. Therefore, you do not need to include both uppercase and lowercase versions of the words.

   **Note:** If you save the .dic file using UTF-8 encoding, then the corresponding .aff file should specify the encoding as a property inside it (if you do not specify the encoding, the default platform encoding will be used):
3. Open the Preferences dialog box  (on page 42) and go to Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries (on page 111).

4. Choose one of the following two options for saving the files.
   a. Save both files (.dic and .aff) to the default directory displayed in the Dictionaries and term lists default folder option (on page 111).
   b. Save both files (.dic and .aff) to any other directory, select the Include dictionaries and term list from option (on page 111), and select that directory. If you choose this option, make sure you read this important note (on page 111).

5. Restart the application for the spell checker to start using the new dictionary.

**Build and Add a Full Hunspell Dictionary**

To build and add a full Hunspell dictionary, follow these steps:

1. Follow these instructions: Building and Testing Hunspell Dictionaries.

   **Result:** You should end up with a dictionary file (with a .dic file extension) and an affix file (with an .aff file extension). The affix file (.aff) can be empty, but it is needed for the mechanism to work properly.

   !important: The name of the files should begin with a two letter prefix for the language code, followed by an underscore or hyphen, then two letters that indicate the country code, followed by another underscore or hyphen, and then a descriptive name (for example, en_US_medical.dic for a medical dictionary in the US version of the English language, or for a less specific English medical dictionary, you could omit the country code like this: en_medical.dic). For a list of language codes, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_ISO_639-1_codes.

2. Open the Preferences dialog box  (on page 42) and go to Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries (on page 111).

3. Choose one of the following two options for saving the files.
   a. Save both files (.dic and .aff) to the default directory displayed in the Dictionaries and term lists default folder option (on page 111).
   b. Save both files (.dic and .aff) to any other directory, select the Include dictionaries and term list from option (on page 111), and select that directory. If you choose this option, make sure you read this important note (on page 111).

4. Restart the application for the spell checker to start using the new dictionary.

Related Information:

- Adding Custom Spell Check Term Lists (on page 349)
Adding Custom Spell Check Term Lists

You can create personalized term lists that are used to store specialized terms or control forbidden words. They can then be added to one of the directories that store the spell check dictionaries, and the spell checker will merge them with all the dictionaries and other term lists for a particular language.

Create and Add Personalized Term Lists

To create and add a personalized term list, follow these steps:

1. Create a term list file (with the .tdi file extension). The name of the file must begin with a two letter prefix that indicates the language it should be attached to, followed by an underscore or hyphen, and then a descriptive name (for example, en_US_myterms.tdi for term list in the US version of the English language or en_myterms.tdi for a less specific English term list). For a list of language codes, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_ISO_639-1_codes.

2. In the term list file (.tdi extension), add the terms you want to be included in your custom dictionary. If you need to specify forbidden terms, those words simply need to be preceded by an asterisk. Add one word per row, as in the following example:

   parabola
   asimptotic
   *hyperbola

   **Note:** Words stored in term lists are not handled as case-sensitive. Therefore, you do not need to include both uppercase and lowercase versions of the words.

3. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries (on page 111).

4. Choose one of the following two options for saving the file.
   a. Save the file (.tdi) to the default directory displayed in the Dictionaries and term lists default folder option (on page 111).
   b. Save the file (.tdi) to any other directory, select the Include dictionaries and term list from option (on page 111), and select that directory. If you choose this option, make sure you read this important note (on page 111).

5. Restart the application for the spell checker to start using the new term list.
Replacing a Spell Check Dictionary

There are several possible scenarios for replacing an existing Hunspell dictionary for the Oxygen XML Developer plugin spell checker:

• You can download a pre-built Hunspell dictionary and replace an existing dictionary with it.
• You can build your own full Hunspell dictionary and replace an existing dictionary with it.

Download a Pre-Built Hunspell Dictionary and Replace an Existing One

To replace an existing dictionary with a downloaded pre-built dictionary, follow these steps:

1. Download the files needed for your dictionary. You will need a dictionary file (with a .dic file extension) and an affix file (with the .aff file extension). If the dictionary does not include an affix file (.aff), you can create one and leave it empty, but it is needed for the mechanism to work properly. An example of a website that includes numerous dictionary files is: http://extensions.services.openoffice.org/dictionary.

2. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries (on page 111).

3. Choose one of the following two options to replace existing files.
   a. Replace the existing files (.dic and .aff) for the particular language in the default directory displayed in the Dictionaries and term lists default folder option (on page 111). Leave the Include dictionaries and term list from option deselected.
   b. Replace existing files (.dic and .aff) for the particular language in a directory specified in the Include dictionaries and term list from option (on page 111). If you choose this option, make sure you read this important note (on page 111).

   Important: Do not alter the naming convention. The name of the files must begin with a two letter prefix that indicates the language it should be attached to (for example, en_US.dic for a US English dictionary or en.dic for a less specific English dictionary). For a list of language codes, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_ISO_639-1_codes.

4. Restart the application for the spell checker to start using the new dictionary.

Build a Full Hunspell Dictionary and Replace an Existing One

To replace an existing dictionary with a full Hunspell dictionary that you build, follow these steps:

1. Follow these instructions: Building and Testing Hunspell Dictionaries.
Result: You should end up with a dictionary file (with a .dic file extension) and an affix file (with the .aff file extension). The affix file (.aff) can be empty, but it is needed for the mechanism to work properly.

2. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries (on page 111).

3. Choose one of the following two options to replace existing files.
   a. Replace the existing files (.dic and .aff) for the particular language in the default directory displayed in the Dictionaries and term lists default folder option (on page 111). Leave the Include dictionaries and term list from option deselected.
   b. Replace existing files (.dic and .aff) for the particular language in a directory specified in the Include dictionaries and term list from option (on page 111). If you choose this option, make sure you read this important note (on page 111).

4. Restart the application for the spell checker to start using the new dictionary.

Related Information:

- Adding Custom Dictionaries and Term Lists (on page 345)

Learned Words

Spell checker engines rely on dictionaries to decide if a word is spelled correctly. To instruct the spell checker engine that an unknown word is actually correctly spelled, you need to add that word to a list of learned words. There are two ways to do this:

- Invoke the contextual menu on an unknown word, then select Learn word.
- Press the Learn button from the Spelling dialog box (on page 342) that is invoked by using the Check Spelling action on the toolbar.

Note: To delete items from the list of learned words, use the Delete learned words option in the Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries preferences page (on page 111).

Related Information:

- Adding Custom Spell Check Term Lists (on page 349)
Ignored Words (Elements)

There are certain XML elements (such as `programlisting`, `codeblock`, `codeph`, `filepath`, or `screen`) in which you may want the content to always be skipped during the spell check process. This can be done in one of several ways:

- You can skip through them manually, word by word, using the Ignore button in the Spelling dialog box (on page 342) that is invoked by using the Check Spelling action on the toolbar.
- You can automatically skip the content of certain elements by maintaining a set of known element names that should never be checked. You can manage this set of element names by using the Ignore elements section (on page 110) in the Spell Check preferences page.

Automatic Spell Check

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes an option to automatically check the spelling as you type. This feature is disabled by default, but it can be enabled and configured in the Spell Check preferences page (on page 108). When the Automatic Spell Check option (on page 109) is selected, unknown words are underlined and some actions are available in the contextual menu to help you correct the word or prevent the word from being reported in the future.

**Tip:** You can configure the color and how spelling errors are shown from the Eclipse Annotations preferences page (Window ('Eclipse' on Mac OSX) > Preferences > General > Editors > Text Editors > Annotations).

The contextual menu includes the following actions:

**Delete Repeated Word**

Allows you to delete words that were repeated in consecutive order.

**List of Suggestions**

A list of words suggested by the spell checking engine as possible replacements for the unknown word.
Learn Word

Allows you to add the current unknown word to the persistent dictionary of learned words (on page 351).

Other actions

This submenu give you access to all the usual contextual menu actions.

Related Information:

- Learned Words (on page 351)

Spell Check Multiple Files

The Check Spelling in Files action allows you to check the spelling on multiple local or remote documents. This action is available in the following locations:

- The contextual menu of the Navigator view (on page 210).

This action opens the Check Spelling in Files dialog box that allows you to define the scope and several other options. After you configure the settings for the operation, click the Check All button to check the spelling in all specified files. The spelling corrections are displayed in the Results view (on page 226) at the bottom of the editor and you can group the reported errors as a tree with two levels.

Tip: If you want to instruct the spell checking engine to not report a particular word as being a spelling error in the future, use the Learn Word(s) action from the contextual menu in the Results view.

The following scopes are possible, depending on where the action was invoked:

- All opened files - The spell check is performed in all opened files.
- Current file directory - All the files in the folder of the current edited file.
- Current DITA map hierarchy - Option available when the dialog is invoked from the DITA Maps Manager view. Checks the spelling in all references contained in the DITA map.
- Project - All files from the current project.
- Selected project resources - The selected files from the current project.
- Specified path - Checks the spelling in the files located at a path that you specify.

The Options section includes the following options:

- File filter - Allows you to filter the files from the selected scope.
• **Recurse subdirectories** - When selected, the spell check is performed recursively for the specified scope. The one exception is that this option is ignored if the scope is set to All opened files.

• **Include hidden files** - When selected, the spell check is also performed in the hidden files.

• **Spell Check Options** - The spell check processor uses the options available in the Spell Check preferences page (on page 108).

### Working with Special Characters and Encoding

While regular characters make up the English and European alphabets and the corresponding basic set of figures and symbols, there are many other special characters that belong to various other language representations, such as Arabic, Indian, Japanese, Chinese, or Korean. Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for special characters in various ways:

#### Opening and Saving Documents

The Unicode standard provides support for all the character symbols in all known languages and Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for all Unicode characters (on page 355). There are various encoding options and features to help determine how to handle documents with unsupported characters (on page 355).

#### Fonts

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides the ability to choose the fonts to be used in the various editing modes (on page 120). In some cases, changing the font may be a solution when special characters are not rendered as expected.

For special characters that are not included in any of the default fonts, Oxygen XML Developer plugin tries to find that symbol in a fallback font (on page 356).

**Tip:** For documents written in languages that use special characters (such as Japanese or Chinese), change the font to one that supports the specific characters (a Unicode font). For the Windows platform, Arial Unicode MS or MS Gothic is recommended. To change the font in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Fonts. You can select a font for each editing mode in this preferences page.

#### Navigation and Layout

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports bidirectional text, such as Arabic, Hebrew, and certain Asian languages, or other special characters that are combined into a single glyph.

#### Editing
Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a contextual menu action that converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character (on page 404).

If you do not have a special way of inserting special characters using your keyboard, you can insert special characters using the Character Map feature (on page 358).

Unicode Support

Unicode is a standard for providing consistent encoding, representation, and handling of text. There is a unique Unicode number for every character, independent of the platform and language. Unicode is internationally recognized and is required by modern standards (such as XML, Java, JavaScript, LDAP, CORBA 3.0, WML, etc.).

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for the Unicode standard, enabling your XML application to be targeted across multiple platforms, languages, and countries without re-engineering. Internally, the Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses 16-bit characters covering the Unicode Character set.

**Note:** Oxygen XML Developer plugin may not be able to display characters that are not supported by the operating system (either not installed or unavailable).

**Tip:** On windows, you can enable the support for CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) languages from Control Panel / Regional and Language Options / Languages / Install files for East Asian languages.

Related Information:

- Unicode Fallback Font Support (on page 356)
- Inserting Special Characters with the Character Map (on page 358)

Opening and Saving Documents with Unsupported Characters

When loading documents, Oxygen XML Developer plugin receives the encoding of the document from the Eclipse platform. This encoding is then used to instruct the Java Encoder to load support for and to save the document using the specified code chart.
Saving Documents with Unsupported Characters

When saving a document with UTF-16 encoding, the saved document has a Byte Order Mark (BOM) that specifies the byte order of the document content. The default byte order is platform-dependent. That means that a UTF-16 document created on a Windows platform (where the default byte order mark is UnicodeLittle) has a different BOM than one created on a Mac OS platform (where the byte order mark is UnicodeBig). The byte order and the BOM of an existing document are preserved when the document is edited and saved.

Unicode Fallback Font Support

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides fonts for most common Unicode ranges. However, if you use special symbols or characters (on page 358) that are not included in the default fonts, they will be rendered as small rectangles. A fallback font is a reserve typeface that contains symbols for as many Unicode characters (on page 355) as possible. When a display system encounters a character that is not part of the range of any of the available fonts, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will try to find that symbol in a fallback font.

Example of a Scenario Where a Fallback Font is Needed

Suppose that you need to insert the wheelchair symbol (ꆳ - U+267F) into your content in a Windows operating system. By default, Oxygen XML Developer plugin does not render this symbol correctly since it is not included in any of the default fonts. It is included in Segoe UI Symbol, but this font is not part of the default fonts that come with Oxygen XML Developer plugin. To allow Oxygen XML Developer plugin to recognize and render the symbol correctly, you can add Segoe UI Symbol as a fallback font.

Adding a Fallback Font in Windows (7 or Later)

To add a fallback font to the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation, use the following procedure:

1. Start Windows Explorer and browse to the [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/jre/lib/fonts directory.
2. Create a directory called fallback (if it is not already there).
3. Copy a font file (True Type Font - TTF) that includes the special characters into this directory.

   Tip: You could, for example, copy the Segoe UI Symbol Regular font from C:\Windows \Fonts.

4. Restart Oxygen XML Developer plugin for the changes to take full effect.
Result: Whenever Oxygen XML Developer plugin finds a character that cannot be rendered using its standard fonts, it will look for the glyph in the fonts stored in the fallback folder.

Adding a Fallback Font in Other Platforms

For Mac OS X or other platforms, you could use the following approach:

1. Use a font editor (such as FontForge) to combine multiple true type fonts into a single custom font.
2. Install the font file into the dedicated font folder of your operating system.
3. In Oxygen XML Developer plugin, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Fonts.
4. Click the Change button for the particular editing mode and select your custom font from the drop-down list in the subsequent dialog box.
5. Restart Oxygen XML Developer plugin for the font changes to take full effect.

Related Information:

- Unicode Support (on page 355)
- Inserting Special Characters with the Character Map (on page 358)

Special Character Support in Grid Mode

If you are editing documents with a bidirectional text orientation or other special characters (such as combining characters), you can change the way the text is rendered and edited in the grid cells by using the Change Text Orientation (Ctrl + Shift + O (Command + Shift + O on OS X)) action that is available from the Edit menu in the Grid editing mode. Use this action to switch from the default left to right text orientation to the right to left orientation, and vice versa.

Note: This change applies only to the text from the cells, and not to the layout of the grid editor.

Figure 125. Default left to right text orientation
Inserting Special Characters with the Character Map

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a Character Map for inserting special characters. It can also be used to find the decimal, hexadecimal, or character entity equivalent for a particular character or symbol.

Inserting Special Characters

To insert a special character at the current location within a document, follow these steps:

1. Open the Character Map dialog box (on page 359) by Edit > ? Insert from Character Map.
2. Find the symbol you want to insert and double-click it (or select it and click Insert).
Tip: The most recently used characters and some of the most common characters are listed when you click the 💾 Symbols drop-down button so you can easily insert any of those characters by simply selecting it from the drop-down.

Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent

You can see the hexadecimal value for any character that is already inserted in your document by placing the cursor right after the character and you can see its value in the status bar at the bottom of the application.

For other characters, or to find the decimal equivalent, or even the character entity equivalent, following these steps:

1. Open the Character Map dialog box (on page 359) by Edit > 💾 Insert from Character Map.
2. Find the symbol and select it. You can use the filters and the Search field at the top of the dialog box to narrow the search.
3. Click the Details tab on top of the preview window to see the decimal, hexadecimal, and description of the character. The character entity equivalent (both its decimal and hexadecimal values) are displayed at the bottom of the dialog box.

Character Map Dialog Box

Figure 127. Character Map Dialog Box
The **Character Map** dialog box allows you to visualize all characters that are available in a particular font, pick the character you need, and insert it in the document you are editing. It includes the following fields and sections:

**Font**

Use this drop-down list to choose the font for which you want to display characters.

**Unicode Block**

Use this drop-down list to only see a certain range of characters. This will filter the number of characters displayed, showing only a contiguous range of characters corresponding to the selected block. Unassigned characters are displayed as empty squares.

**Search**

Use this filter to search for a character by one of the following attributes:

- hexadecimal
- decimal
- description

**Note:** Selecting **description** opens the **Details** tab (on page 361). If you enter a character description in the **Search** field, the **description** is selected automatically.
Character Table Section

The characters that are available to be inserted are listed in two tabs:

- **Compact** - Matrix-like table that displays a visual representation of the characters.
- **Details** - Displays the available characters in a tabular format, presenting their decimal and hexadecimal value along with their description.

Recently Used Characters Section

Displays the symbols that you have used recently and you can also select one from there to insert it in the current document.

Character Mode Section

The next section of the dialog box allows you to select how you want the character to appear in your document. You can choose between the following:

- **Character**
- **Character entity - decimal**
- **Character entity - hexadecimal**

You can see the character or code that will be inserted in your document next to the selections in this section. You can also see the name and range name of a character either at the bottom of the dialog box, or in a tooltip when hovering the cursor over the character.

Press the **Insert** button to insert the selected character in the current editor at cursor position. You will see the character in the editor if the editor font (on page 120) is able to render it. The **Copy** button copies it to the clipboard without inserting it in the editor.

**Note:** The **Character Map** dialog box is not available in the **Grid editor (on page 251)**.

Related Information:

- Working with Special Characters and Encoding (on page 354)

Handling Read-Only Files

The default workbench behavior applies when editing read-only files in the **Text mode**. For all other modes no modification is allowed provided that the file remains read-only.
You can check out the read-only state of the file by looking in the Properties view (on page 325). If you modify the file properties from the operating system and the file becomes writable, you can modify it on the spot without having to reopen it.

Viewing Status Information

Status information generated by operations such as schema detection, manual validation, automatic validation, and transformations are fed into the Console view, allowing you to monitor how the operation is being executed (the Enable Oxygen consoles option (on page 123) must be selected in the View preferences page (on page 123)).

Figure 128. Console View Messages

Messages contain a timestamp, the name of the thread that generated it and the actual status information. The number of displayed messages can be controlled with the Limit console output option in the View (on page 123) preference page.

To make the view visible, select Window > Show View > Console.

Editor Highlights

An editor highlight is a text fragment emphasized by a colored background.

Highlights are generated when the following actions generate results:

- Find All Elements (on page 340)
- XPath in Files (on page 216)
- Search References (on page 412)
- Search Declarations (on page 412)

By default, Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses a different color for each type of highlight (XPath in Files, Find/Replace, Search References, Search Declarations, etc.) You can customize these colors and the maximum number of highlights displayed in a document on the Editor preferences page (on page 84). The default maximum number of highlights is 10000.
You can navigate the highlights in the current document by using the following methods:

- Clicking the markers from the range ruler, located at the right side of the editor pane.
- Clicking the **Next** and **Previous** buttons (⇥) from the bottom of the range ruler, located at the right side of the editor pane.

[Note: When there are multiple types of highlights in the document, the **Next** and **Previous** buttons (⇥) navigate through highlights of the same type.]
- Clicking the messages displayed in the **Results view** *(on page 226)* at the bottom of the editor.

To remove the highlights, you can do the following:

- Click the **Remove all** button from bottom of the range ruler, located at the right side of the editor pane.
- Close the results tab at the bottom of the editor that contains the output of the action that generated the highlights.
- Click the **Remove all** button on the right side of the **Results panel** *(on page 226)* at the bottom of the editor.
8.

Editing Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes built-in frameworks for the most popular XML document types (DITA, DocBook, TEI, XHTML, JATS) *(on page 830)* with a full set of features (full editing support, document templates, enhanced CSS rendering, specific actions, validation, content completion, transformation scenarios, and more). In addition, Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for editing numerous other types of documents (all XML document types and even some non-XML formats).

Each type of document has unique features and options and this chapter includes a large amount of information about editing numerous types of documents and various editing features that are provided in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, including general information about editing XML documents in **Text mode** *(on page 365)*, and **Grid mode** *(on page 413).*

Related Information:

* Built-in XML Frameworks (Document Types) *(on page 830)*

---

Editing XML Documents

The structure of an XML document and the required restrictions on its elements and their attributes are defined with an XML schema. For more information about schema association, see **Associating a Schema to XML Documents** *(on page 449).*

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes fully supported built-in frameworks *(on page 1622)* for the most popular XML document types (DITA, DocBook, TEI, XHTML, JATS) *(on page 830)* with a full set of features. These built-in frameworks are defined according to a set of rules and a variety of settings that improve editing capabilities for its particular file type.

This section includes information about the user interface components and actions that are available in the various editing modes and numerous features to help you edit XML documents in any mode.

Related Information:

* Text Editing Mode *(on page 184)*
Editing XML Documents in Text Mode

The Oxygen XML Developer plugin Text editing mode is designed to be a simple, yet powerful, XML source editor. You can use this mode to edit XML code, markup, and text and it provides support to help you transform, and debug XML-based documents. It is similar to other common text editors, but Oxygen XML Developer plugin also includes specialized editing actions, a powerful Content Completion Assistant (on page 378), a helpful Outline view (on page 217), and many other unique features.

To switch to this mode, select Text at the bottom of the editing area.

Navigating the Document Content in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes some useful features to help you navigate XML documents in Text mode.

**Navigation Keyboard Shortcuts**

- **Ctrl + CloseBracket (Command + CloseBracket on OS X)**
  
  Navigate to the next XML node.

- **Ctrl + OpenBracket (Command + OpenBracket on OS X)**
  
  Navigate to the previous XML node.

- **Ctrl + RightArrow (Command + RightArrow on OS X)**
  
  Navigate one word forward.

- **Ctrl + LeftArrow (Command + LeftArrow on OS X)**
  
  Navigate one word backward.

- **Ctrl + Home (Command + Home on OS X)**
  
  Position the cursor at the beginning of the document.

- **Ctrl + End (Command + End on OS X)**
  
  Position the cursor at the end of the document.
Navigating to a Modification

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes some actions to help you quickly navigate to a particular modification. They can be invoked using keyboards shortcuts or from the Navigation menu:

**Last Edit Location (Ctrl+Q)**

Navigates to the last modification in any opened tab.

**Back (Alt+LeftArrow (Command+OpenBracket on OS X))**

Navigates to the last selected editor tab or to the last selected element/content in the current tab. You can also go back after clicking on links.

**Forward (Alt+RightArrow (Command+CloseBracket on OS X))**

Available after you use the Back button at least once, and it navigates in the opposite direction as the Back button.

Navigating with the Outline View

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes an Outline view (on page 217) that displays a hierarchical tag overview of the currently edited XML Document.

You can use this view to quickly navigate through the current document by selecting nodes in the outline tree. It is synchronized with the editor area, so when you make a selection in the Outline view, the corresponding nodes are highlighted in the editor area.

Figure 129. Outline View Navigation in Text Mode

Using the Breadcrumb to Navigate

A breadcrumb on the top stripe indicates the path from the document root element to the current element. It can also be used as a helpful tool to navigate to specific elements throughout the structure of the document.

Figure 130. Breadcrumb in Text Mode

The last element listed in the breadcrumb is the element at the current cursor position. Clicking an element from the breadcrumb selects the entire element and navigates to it in the editor area.
Navigating with the Go To Dialog Box

In Text mode, you can navigate precisely to a location in the document you are editing by pressing `Ctrl + L` (Command+L on OS X) or selecting Go To Line from the Navigation menu.

Navigating with Bookmarks

By using bookmarks, you can mark positions in an edited document so that you can return to it later. This is especially helpful for navigating through large documents or while editing multiple documents.

To insert a bookmark in Text mode, right-click the desired location in the vertical stripe on the left side of the editor and select Add Bookmark (you can remove it by selecting Remove Bookmark from the same contextual menu).

To navigate to any of the bookmarks, click their corresponding markers in the vertical stripe on the right side of the editor.

Tip: You can configure the color and how the bookmarks are shown from the Eclipse Annotations preferences page (Window ('Eclipse' on Mac OSX) > Preferences > General > Editors > Text Editors > Annotations).

Smart Editing in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes smart editing features to help you edit XML documents in Text mode. The following smart editing features are included:

- Closing tag auto-expansion - This feature helps save some keystrokes by automatically inserting a closing tag when you insert a complete start tag and the cursor is automatically placed in between the start and end tags. For instance, after entering a start `<tag>`, the corresponding closing `</tag>` is automatically inserted and the cursor is placed between the two (`<tag>` | `</tag>`).

- Auto-rename matching tag - When you edit the name of a start tag, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will mirror-edit the name of the matching end tag. This feature can be controlled from the Content Completion option page (on page 86).

- Auto-breaking the edited line - The Hard line wrap option (on page 101) automatically breaks the edited line when its length exceeds the maximum line length defined for the format and indent operation (on page 101).

- Indent on Enter - The Indent on Enter option (on page 100) indents the new line inserted when you press Enter.
• **Smart Enter** - The **Smart Enter option (on page 100)** inserts an empty line between the start and end tags. If you press **Enter** between a start and end tag, the action places the cursor in an indented position on the empty line between the lines that contain the start and end tag.

• **Double-click** - A double-click selects certain text, depending on the position of the click in the document:
  ◦ If the click position is on a start tag or end tag, then the element name is selected.
  ◦ If the click position is after a start tag or before an end tag, then the entire content of the element without the start and end tags is selected.
  ◦ If the click position is before a start tag or after an end tag, then the entire tag is selected, including the start and end tags, and the content in between.
  ◦ If the click position is immediately before an attribute, then the entire attribute and its value is selected.
  ◦ If the click position is immediately after the opening quote or immediately before the closing quote of an attribute value, then the entire attribute value is selected.
  ◦ Otherwise, a double-click selects contiguous text.

• **Triple-click** - A triple-click selects the entire current line of text.

**Shortcut Actions in Text Mode**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes numerous shortcut actions to help you edit content in the **Text** editing mode.

**Undo/Redo Actions**

The typical undo and redo actions are available with shortcuts or in the **Edit** menu:

**Undo (Ctrl + Z (Command + Z on OS X))**

Reverses a maximum of 200 editing actions to return to the preceding state.

![Note: Complex operations such as Replace All or Indent selection count as single undo events.](image)

**Redo (Ctrl + Y (Command + Shift + Z on OS X, Ctrl + Shift + Z on Linux/Unix))**

Recreates a maximum of 100 editing actions that were undone by the **Undo** function.

**Copy and Paste Actions**

The typical copying and pasting actions are available with shortcuts or in the contextual menu (or the **Edit** menu):

**Cut (Ctrl + X (Command + X on OS X))**
Removes the current selected content from the document and places it in the clipboard.

**Copy (Ctrl + C (Command + C on OS X))**
Places a copy of the current selected content in the clipboard.

**Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on OS X))**
Inserts the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.

**Select All (Ctrl + A (Command + A on OS X))**
Selects the entire content of the current document.

### Moving XML Nodes

You can use the following shortcuts to move XML elements or XSLT variables up or down in **Text** mode:

- **Ctrl + Alt + UpArrow (Command + Alt + UpArrow on OS X)**
  Moves the node up one line.

- **Ctrl + Alt + DownArrow (Command + Alt + DownArrow on OS X)**
  Moves the node down one line.

**Note:** The requirements for these node moving actions to work are as follows:

- The mechanism is designed to work without a selection. If you use these actions on a selection of content, it moves the entire selection. To make this mechanism work as intended, simply position the cursor somewhere on the line that you want to move.
- A start tag must be the first text occurrence on the line where the cursor is positioned.
- On the line where the element ends, only whitespaces are allowed after the end tag.

### Miscellaneous Shortcut Actions in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Developer plugin also includes the following other miscellaneous shortcut actions in **Text** mode:

- **Ctrl + Delete (Command + Delete on OS X)**
  Deletes the next word.

- **Ctrl + Backspace (Command + Backspace on OS X)**
  Deletes the previous word.

- **Ctrl + W (Command + W on OS X)**
  Cuts the previous word.
Ctrl + K (Command + K on OS X)

Cuts to end of line.

Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on OS X)

Use this shortcut to open any of the following:

- Any absolute URL (URLs that have a protocol), regardless of their location in the document.
- URI attributes such as: schemaLocation, noNamespaceSchemaLocation, href and others.
- Processing instructions used for associating resources, xml-models, xml-stylesheets.

Ctrl + Shift + Y (Command + Shift + Y on OS X) (Document > Edit > Toggle Line Wrap)

Enables or disables line wrapping. When enabled, if text exceeds the width of the displayed editor, content is wrapped so that you do not have to scroll horizontally.

Editing XML Markup in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes some useful actions that allow you to easily edit XML markup in Text mode. These actions are available in the Refactoring submenu of the contextual menu, and many of the actions can also be done with simple keyboard shortcuts.

Using the Breadcrumb

A breadcrumb on the top stripe indicates the path from the document root element to the current element. It can also be used as a helpful tool to insert and edit specific elements in the document structure.

Figure 131. Breadcrumb in Text Mode

The last element listed in the breadcrumb is the element at the current cursor position. Clicking an element in the breadcrumb selects the entire element in the editor area. Also, each element provides a contextual menu with access to the following actions:

Append Child

Allows you to select an element (from a drop-down list) that is allowed by the associated schema and inserts it as a child of the current element.

Insert Before
Allows you to select an element (from a drop-down list) that is allowed by the associated schema and inserts it immediately before the current element, as a sibling.

**Insert After**

Allows you to select an element (from a drop-down list) that is allowed by the associated schema and inserts it immediately after the current element, as a sibling.

**Edit Attributes**

Opens an editing window that allows you to edit the attributes of the currently selected element.

**Toggle Comment**

Encloses the currently selected element in an XML comment, if the element is not already commented. If it is already commented, this action will remove the comment.

**Cut**

Removes the selected element and copies it to the clipboard.

**Copy**

Copies the selected element to the clipboard.

**Delete**

Deletes the currently selected element.

**Move Nodes**

You can easily move XML nodes in the current document by using the following shortcut keys:

- **Alt + UpArrow**
  
  Moves the current node or selected nodes in front of the previous node.

- **Alt + DownArrow**
  
  Moves the current node or selected nodes after the subsequent node.

**Rename Elements**

You can rename elements by using the following actions in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

- **Rename Element**
  
  The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.
**Rename Prefix (Alt + Shift + P (Command + Shift + P on OS X))**

The prefix of the element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same prefix, can be renamed according to the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

- If you select the **Rename current element prefix** option, the application will recursively traverse the current element and all its children. **For example**, to change the `xmlns:p1="ns1"` association in the current element to `xmlns:p5="ns1"`, if the `xmlns:p1="ns1"` association is applied on the parent element, then Oxygen XML Developer plugin will introduce `xmlns:p5="ns1"` as a new declaration in the current element and will change the prefix from `p1` to `p5`. If `p5` is already associated with another namespace in the current element, then the conflict will be displayed in a dialog box. By pressing **OK**, the prefix is modified from `p1` to `p5` without inserting a new declaration.
- If you select the **Rename current prefix in all document** option, the application will apply the change on the entire document.
- To also apply the action inside attribute values, select the **Rename also attribute values that start with the same prefix** checkbox.

**Surround Content with Tags (Wrap)**

You can surround a selection of content with tags (wrap the content) by using the following action in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

- **Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)**
  
  Allows you to choose a tag that encloses a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

  - If the **Position cursor between tags** option (**on page 87**) is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
  - If the **Position cursor between tags** option (**on page 87**) is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

- **Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)**

  Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

- **Surround with `<![CDATA]>` (Alt + Shift + C (Command + Alt + C on OS X))**

  Surround the selected content with a **CDATA** tag so that the parser will interpret it as textual data rather than markup.
Unwrap the Content of Elements

You can unwrap the content of an element by using the following action in the Refactoring submenu of the contextual menu:

ؤمن.Delete element tags (Alt + Shift + Comma)

Deletes the start and end tag of the current element.

Join or Split Elements

You can join or split elements in the current document by using the following actions in the Refactoring submenu of the contextual menu:

ؤمن.Join elements (Alt + Shift + F (Command + Alt + F on OS X))

Joins the left and right elements relative to the current cursor position. The elements must have the same name, attributes, and attributes values.

ؤمن.Split element

Split the element from the cursor position into two identical elements. The cursor must be inside the element.

Other Refactoring Actions

You can also manage the structure of the markup by using the other specific XML refactoring actions that are available in the Refactoring submenu of the contextual menu:

Attributes Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

ؤمن.Add/Change attribute

Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

ؤمن.Convert attribute to element

Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

ؤمن.Delete attribute

Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

ؤمن.Rename attribute

Allows you to rename an attribute.

ؤمن.Replace in attribute value
Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

**Comments Refactoring Actions**

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

- **Delete comments**
  
  Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

**Elements Refactoring Actions**

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

- **Delete element**
  
  Allows you to delete elements.

- **Delete element content**
  
  Allows you to delete the content of elements.

- **Insert element**
  
  Allows you to insert new elements.

- **Rename element**
  
  Allows you to rename elements.

- **Unwrap element**
  
  Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

- **Wrap element**
  
  Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

- **Wrap element content**
  
  Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

**Fragments Refactoring Actions**

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

- **Insert XML fragment**
  
  Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

- **Replace element content with XML fragment**
  
  Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.
Replace element with XML fragment

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

Related Information:

- Refactoring XML Documents (on page 475)
- Contextual Menu Actions in Text Mode (on page 403)

Folding XML Elements in Text Mode

When working with a large document, the folding (on page 1622) support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin can be used to collapse some element content leaving only those that you need to edit in focus. Expanding and collapsing works on individual elements. Expanding an element leaves the child elements unchanged.

Figure 132. Folding of XML Elements in Text Mode

![XML elements with folding](image)

Folding Actions in Text Mode

Element folds are marked with a small icon (=/*) in the left stripe. To toggle the fold, simply click the icon. Also, if you right-click the icon, the following actions are available in the Folding sub-menu:

- **Toggle Fold**
  Toggles the state of the current fold.

- **Collapse Other Folds (Ctrl + NumPad/ (Command + NumPad/ on OS X))**
Folds all the elements except the current element.

 Collapse Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad- (Command + NumPad- on OS X))
 Folds the child elements that are indented one level inside the current element.

 Expand Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad+ (Command + NumPad+ on OS X))
 Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

 Expand All (Ctrl + NumPad* (Command + NumPad* on OS X))
 Unfolds all elements in the current document.

For more information about the folding support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/eR9HfN_peAE

Drag and Drop in Text Mode

To move a whole region of text to other location in the same edited document, just select the text, drag the selection by holding down the left mouse button and drop it to the target location.

You can also copy content from other applications and paste it into the document.

Selecting Content in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a variety of keyboard shortcuts that allow you to select content in Text mode. These include numerous standard continuous selection possibilities that are common to many text editors.

Standard Continuous Selection Shortcuts

 Ctrl + A (Meta + A on Mac OS X)
 Selects all content in the document.

 Shift + Left/Right Arrow Keys
 Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it one character at a time in the direction that you press the arrow keys.

 Shift + Up/Down Arrow Keys
 Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it one line at a time in the direction that you press the arrow keys.

 Ctrl + Shift + Left/Right Arrow Keys (Meta + Shift + Left/Right Arrow Keys on Mac OS X)
Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it one word at a time in the direction that you press the arrow keys.

**Shift + Home**
Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the beginning of the current line (on Mac OS X, it extends to the beginning of the document).

**Shift + End**
Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the end of the current line (on Mac OS X, it extends to the end of the document).

**Ctrl + Shift + Home**
Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the beginning of the document.

**Ctrl + Shift + End**
Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the end of the document.

**Shift + PageUp**
Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it up one screen page.

**Shift + PageDown**
Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it down one screen page.

**Double-Click**
Selects certain text, depending on the position of the click in the document. See Smart Editing: Double-Click *(on page 368)* for the specifics.

**Triple-Click**
Selects entire regions of text, depending on the position of the click in the document. See the Smart Editing: Triple-Click *(on page 368)* for the specifics.

**Right-Click > Select > Element**
Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

**Right-Click > Select > Content**
Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

**Right-Click > Select > Attributes**
Selects all the attributes of the element at the current cursor position.
Right-Click > Select > Parent

Selects the entire parent element at the current cursor position.

Content Completion Assistant in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes an intelligent Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) that offers proposals for inserting structured language elements, attributes, and attribute values that are valid in the current editing context.

The Content Completion Assistant is enabled by default. To disable it, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Editor > Content Completion, and deselect the Enable content completion option (on page 86).

Figure 133. Content Completion Assistant

<xs:sequence>
  <xs:element ref="name"/>
  <xs:element ref="email" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <xs:element ref="url" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</xs:sequence>

Content Completion and the Associated Schema

The Content Completion Assistant feature is schema-driven and the list of proposals in the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) depend on the associated schemas (DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG, or NVDL schema). For information about the various ways to associate a schema and the order of their precedence, see the Associating a Schema to XML Documents (on page 449) section.

Using the Content Completion Assistant in Text Mode

The feature is activated in Text mode in the following situations:

- After you press the ` character when inserting an element, it is automatically activated after a short delay. You can adjust the activation delay with the Activation delay of the proposals window (ms) option (on page 88) from the Content Completion preferences page.
- After typing a partial element or attribute name, you can manually activate it by pressing Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X) or Alt + ForwardSlash (Command + Alt + ForwardSlash on
OS X). If there is only one valid proposal at the current location, it is inserted without displaying the list of proposals.

You can navigate through the list of proposals by using the Up and Down keys on your keyboard. In some cases, the Content Completion Assistant displays a documentation window with information about the particular proposal and some of them have links to additional information (for example, DITA elements might have a link to the DITA Style Guide). You can also change the size of the documentation window by dragging its top, right, and bottom borders.

To insert the selected proposal in Text mode, do one of the following:

- Press Enter or Tab to insert both the start and end tags and position the cursor inside the start tag in a position suitable for inserting attributes.
- Press Ctrl + Enter (Command + Enter on OS X) to insert both the start and end tags and positions the cursor between the tags in a position where you can start typing content.

**Note:** When the DTD, XML Schema or RELAX NG schema specifies required child elements for the newly added element, they are inserted automatically only if the Add Element Content option (on page 86) (in the Content Completion preferences page) is selected. The Content Completion Assistant can also add optional content and first choice particle, as specified in the DTD, XML Schema, or RELAX NG schema. To activate these features, select the Add optional content (on page 86) and Add first Choice particle (on page 86) options in the Content Completion preferences page.

After inserting an element, the cursor is positioned:

- Before the > character of the start tag, if the element allows attributes, to allow rapid insertion of any of the attributes supported by the element. Pressing the space bar displays the Content Completion list once again. This time it contains the list of allowed attribute names. If the attribute supports a fixed set of parameters, the assistant list displays the list of valid parameters. If the parameter setting is user-defined and therefore variable, the assistant is closed to allow manual insertion. The values of the attributes can be learned from the same elements in the current document.
- After the > character of the start tag, if the element has no attributes.

**Where the Content Completion Assistant is Displayed**

The Content Completion Assistant is displayed:

- Anywhere within a tag name or at the beginning of a tag name in an XML document, XML Schema, DTD, or Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema.
- Anywhere within an attribute name or at the beginning of an attribute name in any XML document with an associated schema.
Within attribute values or at the beginning of attribute values in XML documents where lists of possible values have been defined for that element in the schema associated with the document.

Types of Proposals Listed in the Content Completion Assistant

The following things are considered for determining the proposals that are listed in the content completion window:

Element Structure Specified in DTD or Schema

The proposals that populate the Content Completion Assistant depend on the element structure specified in the DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema, or NVDL schema associated with the edited document.

Note: The Content Completion Assistant is able to offer elements defined both by XML Schemas version 1.0 and 1.1.

Current Cursor Position

The number and type of elements displayed by the Content Completion Assistant is dependent on the cursor’s current position in the structured document. The child elements displayed within a given element are defined by the structure of the specified DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema, or NVDL schema.

Unique ID Attribute Values

A schema may declare certain attributes as ID or IDREF/IDREFS. When the document is validated, Oxygen XML Developer plugin checks the uniqueness and correctness of the ID attributes. It also collects the attribute values declared in the document to prepare the list of proposals. This is available for documents that use DTD, XML Schema, and Relax NG schema.

Values for xml:id Attributes

Values of all the xml:id attributes are handled as ID attributes. They are collected and displayed by the Content Completion Assistant as possible values for anyURI attributes defined in the schema of the edited document. This works only for XML Schema and Relax NG schemas.

Links/References in DITA

When entering values for the various types of links and references in DITA (for example, values for href or conref elements), the Content Completion Assistant will propose potential targets when you use the forward slash key (/).

ID Values for DITA Key References

In DITA, when inserting key references (keyref) or content key references (conkeyref), the ID values that are defined in the key reference are presented as possible targets.
The Content Completion Assistant will only propose targets that are valid in the current context.

**Element and Attribute Values**

For documents that use an XML Schema or Relax NG schema, the Content Completion Assistant offers proposals for attribute and element values as long as the allowed values are defined in the schema. Also, if a default value or fixed value is defined in the schema, then that value is offered in the Content Completion Assistant.

**Related Information:**

Schema Annotations in Text Mode

A schema annotation is a documentation snippet associated with the definition of an element or attribute in a schema. If such a schema is associated with an XML document, the annotations are displayed in:

- The Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620).
- A small tooltip window shown when the mouse hovers over an element or attribute.

The schema annotations support is available if the schema type is one of the following:

- XML Schema
- Relax NG
- NVDL schema
- DTD

This feature is enabled by default, but you can disable it by deselecting the Show annotations in Content Completion Assistant (on page 88) option in the Annotations preferences page.

**Styling Annotations with HTML**

You can use HTML format in the annotations you add in an XML Schema or Relax NG schema. This improves the visual appearance and readability of the documentation window displayed when editing XML documents validated against such a schema. An annotation is recognized and displayed as HTML if it contains at least one HTML element (such as div, body, p, br, table, ul, or ol).

The HTML rendering is controlled by the Show annotations using HTML format, if possible (on page 88) option in the Annotations preferences page. When this option is deselected, the annotations are converted and displayed as plain text and if the annotation contains one or more HTML tags (p, br, ul, li), they are rendered as an HTML document loaded in a web browser. For example, p begins
a new paragraph, `br` breaks the current line, `ul` encloses a list of items, and `li` encloses an item of the list.

**Collecting Annotations from XML Schemas**

In an XML Schema, the annotations are specified in an `<xs:annotation>` element like this:

```xml
<xs:annotation>
  <xs:documentation>
    Description of the element.
  </xs:documentation>
</xs:annotation>
```

If an element or attribute does not have a specific annotation, then Oxygen XML Developer plugin looks for an annotation in the type definition of that element or attribute.

**Collecting Annotations from Relax NG Schemas**

For Relax NG schema, element and attribute annotations are made using the `<documentation>` element from the `http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0` namespace like this:

```xml
<define name="person">
  <element name="person">
    <a:documentation xmlns:a="http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0">
      Information about a person.
    </a:documentation>
    <ref name="name"/>
    <zeroOrMore>
      <ref name="email"/>
    </zeroOrMore>
  </element>
</define>
```

However, any element outside the Relax NG namespace (`http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0`) is handled as annotation and the text content is displayed in the annotation window. To activate this behavior, select the **Use all Relax NG annotations as documentation** (on page 89) option in the **Annotations** preferences page.

**Collecting Annotations from Relax NG Compact Syntax Schemas**

For Relax NG Compact Syntax schema, annotations are made using comments like this:

```xml
## Information about a person.

element person { name, email*}
```
Collecting Annotation from DTDs

For DTD, Oxygen XML Developer plugin defines a custom mechanism for annotations using comments enabled by the Prefer DTD comments that start with "doc:" as annotations (on page 88) option in the Annotations preferences page. The following is an example of a DTD annotation:

<!--doc:Description of the element. -->

Content Completion Helper Views

Information about the current element being edited is also available in various dockable (on page 1620) views, such as the Model view (on page 223), Attributes view (on page 221), Elements view (on page 224), and Entities view (on page 225). By default, they are located on the right-hand side of the main editor window. These views, along with the powerful Outline view (on page 217), provide spatial and insight information about the edited document and the current element. If any particular view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Model View

The Model view presents the structure of the currently selected tag, and its documentation, defined as annotation in the schema of the current document. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Figure 134. Model View
The Model view is comprised of two sections, an element structure panel and an annotations panel.

**Element Structure Panel**

The element structure panel displays the structure of the currently edited or selected tag in a tree-like format. The information includes the name, model, and attributes of the current tag. The allowed attributes are shown along with imposed restrictions, if any.

Figure 135. Element Structure Panel
Annotation Panel

The **Annotation** panel displays the annotation information for the currently selected element. This information is collected from the XML schema.

Figure 136. Annotation panel

Attributes View in Text Mode

The **Attributes** view presents all the attributes of the current element determined by the schema of the document. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened from the **Window > Show View** menu.

You can use the **Attributes** view to insert attributes, edit their values, or add values to existing attributes.

The attributes are rendered differently depending on their state:

- The names of the attributes are rendered with a bold font, and their values with a plain font.
- Default values are rendered with a plain font, painted gray.
- Empty values display the text "[empty]", painted gray.
- Invalid attributes and values are painted red.
To edit the value of the corresponding attribute, double-click a cell in the **Value** column. If the possible values of the attribute are specified as **list** in the schema of the edited document, the **Value** column acts as a combo box that allows you to either select the value from a list or manually enter it.

You can sort the attributes table by clicking the **Attribute** column header. The table contents can be sorted as follows:

- By attribute name in ascending order.
- By attribute name in descending order.
- Custom order, where the used attributes are displayed at the beginning of the table sorted in ascending order, followed by the rest of the allowed elements sorted in ascending order.

**Figure 137. Attributes View**

![Attributes View](http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema)

**Contextual Menu Actions in the Attributes View**

The following actions are available in the contextual menu of the **Attributes** view when editing in **Text** mode:

**Add**

Allows you to insert a new attribute.

**Set empty value**

Specifies the current attribute value as empty.

**Remove**

Removes the attribute (action available only if the attribute is specified). You can invoke this action by pressing the **(Delete)** or **(Backspace)** keys.

**Copy**

Copies the `attrName="attrValue"` pair to the clipboard. The `attrValue` can be:
• The value of the attribute.
• The value of the default attribute, if the attribute does not appear in the edited document.
• Empty, if the attribute does not appear in the edited document and has no default value set.

**Paste**

Depending on the content of the clipboard, the following cases are possible:

• If the clipboard contains an attribute and its value, both of them are introduced in the **Attributes** view. The attribute is selected and its value is changed if they exist in the **Attributes** view.
• If the clipboard contains an attribute name with an empty value, the attribute is introduced in the **Attributes** view and you can start editing it. The attribute is selected and you can start editing it if it exists in the **Attributes** view.
• If the clipboard only contains text, the value of the selected attribute is modified.

**Elements View in Text Mode**

The **Elements** view presents a list of all defined elements that are valid at the current cursor position according to the schema associated to the document. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Double-clicking any of the listed elements inserts that element into the edited document, at the current cursor position. Pressing **F2** with an element selected will display information about that particular element.

**Figure 138. Elements View in Text Mode**
Entities View

Entities provide abbreviated entries that can be used in XML files when there is a need of repeatedly inserting certain characters or large blocks of information. An entity is defined using the ENTITY statement either in the DOCTYPE declaration or in a DTD file associated with the current XML file.

There are three types of entities:

- **Predefined** - Entities that are part of the predefined XML markup (`, `&`, `

- **Internal** - Defined in the DOCTYPE declaration header of the current XML.

- **External** - Defined in an external DTD module included in the DTD referenced in the XML DOCTYPE declaration.

**Note:** If you want to add internal entities, you would need to switch to the Text editing mode and manually modify the DOCTYPE declaration. If you want to add external entities, you need to open the DTD module file and modify it directly.

The Entities view displays a list with all entities declared in the current document, as well as built-in ones. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Double-clicking one of the entities will insert it at the current cursor position in the XML document. You can also sort entities by name and value by clicking the column headers.

![Entities View](image)

The view features a filtering capability that allows you to search an entity by name, value, or both. Also, you can choose to display the internal or external entities.
**Note:** When entering filters, you can use the ? and * wildcards. Also, you can enter multiple filters by separating them with a comma.

### Code Templates

Code templates are code fragments that can be inserted quickly at the current editing position. Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a set of built-in code templates for CSS, Schematron, XSL, XQuery, JSON, and XML Schema document types. You can also define your own code templates for any type of file and share them with others.

Code templates are displayed with a `!!` symbol in the content completion list (Enter in Author mode or Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X) in Text mode). Also, in Text mode you can press Ctrl + Shift + Space to see a complete list of the available code templates. To enter the code template at the cursor position, select it from the content completion list or type its code and press Enter. If a shortcut key has been assigned to the code template, you can also use the shortcut key to enter it.

### How to Create Code Templates

To create a code template, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box *(on page 42)* and go to Editor > Templates > Code Templates.
2. Click New to open a code template configuration dialog box.

   **Tip:** You can use one of the existing code templates as a starting point by selecting that template and clicking Duplicate.

3. Configure your template using the fields in the code template configuration dialog box:
   - **Name** - The name of the code template.
   - **Description** - [Optional] The description of the code template that will appear in the Code Templates preferences page and in the tooltip message when selecting it from the Content Completion Assistant *(on page 1620)*. HTML markup can be used for better rendering.
- **Associate with** - You can choose to set the code template to be associated with a specific type of editor or for all editor types.
- **Shortcut key** - [Optional] If you want to assign a shortcut key that can be used to insert the code template, place the cursor in the **Shortcut key** field and press the desired key combination on your keyboard. Use the **Clear** button if you make a mistake. If the **Enable platform-independent shortcut keys** checkbox is selected, the shortcut is platform-independent and the following modifiers are used:
  - \texttt{M1} represents the **Command** key on MacOS X, and the **Ctrl** key on other platforms.
  - \texttt{M2} represents the **Shift** key.
  - \texttt{M3} represents the **Option** key on MacOS X, and the **Alt** key on other platforms.
  - \texttt{M4} represents the **Ctrl** key on MacOS X, and is undefined on other platforms.
- **Content** - Text box where you define the content that is used when the code template is inserted. An editor variable (on page 162) can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button.

4. Click **OK** to save your new code template.

**Result:** Your code template can now be selected using the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) (Enter in Author mode or **Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X)** in Text mode). The code templates are displayed with a \(\text{¥}!\) symbol.

**How to Share Code Templates**

There are two ways to easily share all of your code templates with other members of your team:

**Method 1: Export/Import**

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Templates > Code Templates.
2. Click the Export button to export all of your code templates into an XML file.
3. Save the XML file.
4. Share the XML file with other members of your team.
5. Instruct them to open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Editor > Templates > Code Templates, click the Import button, and select the file you sent them.

**Result:** The code templates will be now available in their content completion list.

**Method 2: Share Project**

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Templates > Code Templates.
2. Select Project Options at the bottom of the dialog box. This stores the preferences in the project file (.xpr).
3. Share the project file with the other members of your team. For example, you can commit it to your version control system and have them update their working copy.
Result: When they open the updated project file in their, the code templates will be available in their content completion list.

Syntax Highlighting in XML Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports syntax highlighting in Text mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for XML files, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42).
2. Go to Editor > Syntax Highlight (on page 112).
3. Select and expand the XML section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.
5. Select the XML tab in the Preview pane to see the effects of your changes.

Tip: Oxygen XML Developer plugin also allows you to specify syntax highlighting colors for specific XML elements and attributes with specific namespace prefixes. This can be done in the Editor > Syntax Highlight > Elements/Attributes by Prefix preferences page (on page 113).

Outline View for XML Documents

The Outline view displays a general tag overview of the currently edited XML Document. When you edit a document, the Outline view dynamically follows the changes that you make, displaying the node that you modify. This functionality gives you great insight on the location of your modifications in the current document. It also shows the correct hierarchical dependencies between elements. This makes it easy for you to be aware of the document structure and the way element tags are nested.

Outline View Features

The Outline view allows you to:

• Quickly navigate through the document by selecting nodes in the Outline tree.
• Insert or delete nodes using contextual menu actions.
• Move elements by dragging them to a new position in the tree structure.
• Highlight elements in the editor area. It is synchronized with the editor area, so when you make a selection in the editor area, the corresponding nodes are highlighted in the Outline view, and vice versa.
• View document errors, as they are highlighted in the Outline view. A tooltip also provides more information about the nature of the error when you hover over the faulted element.

Outline View Interface

By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

The upper part of the Outline view contains a filter box that allows you to focus on the relevant components. Type a text fragment in the filter box and only the components that match it are presented. For advanced usage you can use wildcard characters (such as *, ?) and separate multiple patterns with commas.

It also includes a View menu in the top-right corner that presents a variety of options to help you filter the view even further.

Drop and Drop Actions in the Outline View

Entire XML elements can be moved or copied in the edited document using only the mouse in the Outline view with drag-and-drop operations. Several drag and drop actions are possible:

• If you drag an XML element in the Outline view and drop it on another node, then the dragged element will be moved after the drop target element.
• If you hold the mouse pointer over the drop target for a short time before the drop then the drop target element will be expanded first and the dragged element will be moved inside the drop target element after its opening tag.
• You can also drop an element before or after another element if you hold the mouse pointer towards the upper or lower part of the targeted element. A marker will indicate whether the drop will be performed before or after the target element.
• If you hold down the Ctrl (Command on OS X) key after dragging, a copy operation will be performed instead of a move.

Figure 141. Outline View
Outline View Filters

The upper part of the Outline view contains a filter box that allows you to focus on the relevant components. Type a text fragment in the filter box and only the components that match it are presented. For advanced usage you can use wildcard characters (such as *, ?, ) and separate multiple patterns with commas.

The following actions are available in the View menu of the Outline view:

* Filter returns exact matches
  - The text filter of the Outline view returns only exact matches.

* Selection update on cursor move (Available in Text mode)
  - Controls the synchronization between Outline view and source document. The selection in the Outline view can be synchronized with the cursor moves or the changes in the editor. Selecting one of the components from the Outline view also selects the corresponding item in the source document.

* Flat presentation mode of the filtered results
  - When active, the application flattens the filtered result elements to a single level.

* Show comments and processing instructions
  - Show/hide comments and processing instructions in the Outline view.

* Show element name
  - Show/hide element name.

* Show text
Show/hide additional text content for the displayed elements.

Show attributes
Show/hide attribute values for the displayed elements. The displayed attribute values can be changed from the Outline preferences panel (on page 158).

Configure displayed attributes
Displays the XML Structured Outline preferences page (on page 158).

Outline View Contextual Menu Actions
The contextual menu of the Outline view contains the following actions:

Edit Attributes
Displays an in-place attributes editor that allows you to edit the attributes of a selected node.

Append Child
Invokes a content completion list with the names of all the elements that are allowed by the associated schema and inserts your selection as a child of the current element.

Insert Before
Invokes a content completion list with the names of all the elements that are allowed by the associated schema and inserts your selection immediately before the current element, as a sibling.

Insert After
Invokes a content completion list with the names of all the elements that are allowed by the associated schema and inserts your selection immediately after the current element, as a sibling.

Cut, Copy, Paste, Delete common editing actions
Executes the typical editing actions on the currently selected elements. The Cut and Copy operations preserve the styles of the copied content.

Toggle Comment
Encloses the currently selected element in an XML comment, if the element is not already commented. If it is already commented, this action will remove the comment.

Expands the structure tree of the currently selected element.

Collapse All
Collapses all of the structure tree of the currently selected node.
Tip: You can copy, cut or delete multiple nodes in the Outline by using the contextual menu after selecting multiple nodes in the tree.

Formatting and Indenting XML Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin creates XML documents using several edit modes (on page 184). In Text mode (on page 184), you as the author decide how the XML file is formatted and indented. In the other modes, and when you switch between modes, Oxygen XML Developer plugin must decide how to format and indent the XML. Oxygen XML Developer plugin will also format and indent your XML for you in Text mode if you use one of the Format and Indent options:

- **Document > Source > Format and Indent** - Formats and indents the whole document.
- **Document > Source > Indent Selection** - Indents the current selection (but does not add line breaks). This action is also available in the Source submenu of the contextual menu.
- **Document > Source > Format and Indent Element** - Formats and indents the current element (the inmost nested element that currently contains the cursor) and its child-elements. This action is also available in the Source submenu of the contextual menu.

A number of settings affect how Oxygen XML Developer plugin formats and indents XML. Many of these settings have to do with how whitespace is handled.

### Significant and insignificant whitespace in XML

XML documents are text files that describe complex documents. Some of the white space (spaces, tabs, line feeds, etc.) in the XML document belongs to the document it describes (such as the space between words in a paragraph) and some of it belongs to the XML document (such as a line break between two XML elements). Whitespace belonging to the XML file is called insignificant whitespace. The meaning of the XML would be the same if the insignificant whitespace were removed. Whitespace belonging to the document being described is called significant whitespace.

Knowing when whitespace is significant or insignificant is not always easy. For instance, a paragraph in an XML document might be laid out like this:

```xml
<p>NO Free man shall be taken or imprisoned, or be stripped of his Freedom, or Liberties, or free Customs, or be outlawed, or exiled, or any otherwise destroyed; nor will we not pass upon him, nor condemn him, but by lawful judgment of his Peers, or by the &lt;xref href="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Law_of_the_land" format="html" scope="external">Law of the land</xref>. We will sell to no man, we will not deny to any man either Justice or Right.&lt;/p&gt;
```
By default, XML considers a single whitespace between words to be significant, and all other whitespace to be insignificant. The paragraph above could have been written on one line because the XML parser would see it as exactly the same paragraph since all multiple consecutive whitespaces will be replaced with a single whitespace. Removing the insignificant space in markup like this is called normalizing space.

In some cases, all the spaces inside an element should be treated as significant. For example, in a code sample:

```xml
<codeblock>
   class HelloWorld
   {
       public static void main(String args[])
       {
           System.out.println("Hello World");
       }
   }
</codeblock>
```

Here every whitespace character between the codeblock tags should be treated as significant.

**How Oxygen XML Developer plugin determines when whitespace is significant**

When Oxygen XML Developer plugin formats and indents an XML document, it introduces or removes insignificant whitespace to produce a layout with reasonable line lengths and elements indented to show their place in the hierarchy of the document. To correctly format and indent the XML source, Oxygen XML Developer plugin needs to know when to treat whitespace as significant and when to treat it as insignificant. However it is not always possible to tell this from the XML source file alone. To determine what whitespace is significant, Oxygen XML Developer plugin assigns each element in the document to one of four categories:

**Ignore space**

In the ignore space category, all whitespace is considered insignificant. This generally applies to content that consists only of elements nested inside other elements, with no text content.

**Normalize space**

In the normalize space category, a single whitespace character between character strings is considered significant and all other spaces are considered insignificant. Therefore, all consecutive whitespaces will be replaced with a single space. This generally applies to elements that contain text content only.
**Mixed content**

In the mixed content category, a single whitespace between text characters is considered significant and all other spaces are considered insignificant. However,

- Whitespace between two child elements embedded in the text is normalized to a single space (rather than to zero spaces as would normally be the case for a text node with only whitespace characters, or the space between elements generally).
- The lack of whitespace between a child element embedded in the text and either adjacent text or another child element is considered significant. That is, no whitespace can be introduced here when formatting and indenting the file.

For example:

```xml
<p>The file is located in <i>HOME</i>/USER/hello.
   This is a <strong>big</strong> deal.</emphasis>

</p>
```

In this example, whitespace should not be introduced around the i tags as it would introduce extra significant whitespace into the document. The space between the end <strong>tag and the beginning <emphasis>tag should be normalized to a single space, not zero spaces.

**Preserve space**

In the preserve space category, all whitespace in the element is regarded as significant. No changes are made to the spaces in elements in this category. However, child elements may be in another category, and may be treated differently.

Attribute values are always in the preserve space category. The spaces between attributes in an element tag are always in the default space category.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin consults several pieces of information to assign an element to one of these categories. An element is always assigned to the most restrictive category (from Ignore to Preserve) that it is assigned to by any of the sources Oxygen XML Developer plugin consults. For instance, if the element is named on the Default elements list (as described below) but it has an xml:space="preserve" attribute in the source file, it will be assigned to the preserve space category. If an element has the xml:space="default" attribute in the source, but is listed on the Mixed content elements list, it will be assigned to the mixed content category.

To assign elements to these categories, Oxygen XML Developer plugin consults information from the following sources:
If the XML element contains the `xml:space` attribute, the element is promoted to the appropriate category based on the value of the attribute.

**Schema aware formatting**

If a schema is available for the XML document, Oxygen XML Developer plugin can use information from the schema to promote the element to the appropriate category. For example:

- If the schema declares an element to be of type `xs:string`, the element will be promoted to the preserve space category because the string built-in type has the whitespace facet with the value preserve.
- If the schema declares an element to be mixed content, it will be promoted to the mixed content category.

Schema aware formatting can be turned on and off.

- To turn it on or off for the Text editing mode, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Editor > Format > XML, and select/deselect the Schema aware format and indent option (on page 105).

**Preserve space elements list**

If an element is listed in the Preserve space tab of the Element Spacing list (on page 104) in the XML formatting preferences (on page 102), it is promoted to the preserve space category.

**Default space elements list**

If an element is listed in the Default space tab of the Element Spacing list (on page 104) in the XML formatting preferences (on page 102), it is promoted to the default space category.

**Mixed content elements list**

If an element is listed in the Mixed content tab of the Element Spacing list (on page 104) in the XML formatting preferences (on page 102), it is promoted to the mixed content category.

**Element content**

If an element contains mixed content, that is, a mix of text and other elements, it is promoted to the mixed content category. (Note that, in accordance with these rules, this happens even if the schema declares the element to have element only content.)
If an element contains text content, it is promoted to the default space category.

**Text node content**

If a text node contains any non-whitespace characters then the text node is promoted to the normalize space category.

### How Oxygen XML Developer plugin formats and indents XML

You can control how Oxygen XML Developer plugin formats and indents XML documents. This can be particularly important if you store your XML document in a version control system, as it allows you to limit the number of trivial changes in spacing between versions of an XML document. The following preference pages include options that control how XML documents are formatted:

- Format preferences page *(on page 99)*
- XML Formatting preferences page *(on page 102)*
- Whitespaces preferences page *(on page 106)*

### When Oxygen XML Developer plugin formats and indents XML

Oxygen XML Developer plugin formats and indents a document, or part of it, on the following occasions:

- In **Text** mode when you select one of the format and indent actions (**Document > Source > Format and Indent**, **Document > Source > Indent Selection**, or **Document > Source > Format and Indent Element**).
- When saving documents in **Design** mode.
- When switching from **Design** mode to another mode.
- When saving or switching to **Text** mode from **Grid** mode, if the **Format and indent when passing from grid to text or on save** option *(on page 95)* is selected in the **Grid** preferences page.

#### Setting an Indent Size to Zero

Oxygen XML Developer plugin will automatically format and indent *(on page 395)* documents at certain times. This includes indenting the content from the margin to reflect its structure. In some cases, you may not want your content indented. To avoid your content being indented, you can set an indent size of zero.

**Note:** Changing the indent size does not override the rules that Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses for handling whitespace when formatting and indenting XML documents. Therefore, changing the indent size will have no effect on elements that require whitespaces to be maintained.
There are two cases to consider.

**Maintaining zero indent in documents with zero indent**

If you have existing documents with zero indent and you want Oxygen XML Developer plugin to maintain a zero indent when editing or formatting those documents:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Format (on page 99).
2. Select Detect indent on open.
3. Select Use zero-indent if detected.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin will examine the indent of each document as it is opened and if the indent is zero for all lines, or for nearly all lines, a zero indent will be used when formatting and indenting the document. Otherwise, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will use the indent closest to what it detects in the document.

**Enforcing zero indent for all documents**

If you want all documents to be formatted with zero indent, regardless of their current indenting:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Format (on page 99).
2. Deselect Detect indent on open.
3. Set Indent size to 0.

All documents will be formatted and indented with an indent of zero.

⚠️ **Warning:** Setting the indent size to zero can change the meaning of some file types, such as Python source files.

**Format and Indent (Pretty-Print) Multiple Files**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for formatting and indenting (pretty-print (on page 1625)) multiple files at once. This action is available for any document in XML format, as well as for XQuery, CSS, JavaScript, and JSON documents.

To format and indent multiple files, use the Format and Indent Files action that is available in the contextual menu of the Navigator view (on page 210). This opens the Format and Indent Files dialog box that allows you to configure options for the action.

Figure 142. Format and Indent Files Dialog Box
The **Scope** section allows you choose from the following scopes:

- **All opened files** - The pretty-print (on page 1625) is performed in all opened files.
- **Directory of the current file** - All the files in the folder of the current edited file.
- **Project files** - All files from the current project.
- **Selected project files** - The selected files from the current project.
- **Specified path** - The pretty-print (on page 1625) is performed in the files located at a specified path.

The **Options** section includes the following options:

- **File filter** - Allow you to filter the files from the selected scope.
- **Recurs subdirectories** - When selected, the pretty-print (on page 1625) is performed recursively for the specified scope. The one exception is that this option is ignored if the scope is set to All opened files.
- **Include hidden files** - When selected, the pretty-print (on page 1625) is also performed in the hidden files.
- **Make backup files with extension** - When selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin makes backup files of the modified files. The default extension is `.bak`, but you can change the extension as you prefer.

**Quick Assist Support for IDs and IDREFS**

The **Quick Assist support** (on page 1625) is activated automatically when you place the cursor inside an ID or IDREF in **Text** mode. To access it, click the yellow bulb help marker placed on the current line,
in the line number stripe of the editor. You can also invoke the Quick Assist menu from the contextual menu or by pressing Ctrl+1 (Command+1 on Mac OS X) on your keyboard.

The following actions are available:

### Rename in

Renames the ID and all its occurrences. Selecting this action opens the Rename XML ID dialog box. This dialog box lets you insert the new ID value and choose the scope of the rename operation (on page 466). For a preview of the changes you are about to make, click Preview. This opens the Preview dialog box, which presents a list with the files that contain changes and a preview zone of these changes.

### Search Declarations

Searches for the declaration of the ID reference. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations (on page 466) dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

### Search References

Searches for the references of the ID. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations (on page 466) dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

### Change scope

Opens the Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations (on page 466) dialog box.

### Rename in File

Renames the ID you are editing and all its occurrences from the current file.

### Search Occurrences

Searches for the declaration an references of the ID located at the cursor position in the current document.

---

**Related Information:**

**Highlight ID Occurrences in Text Mode**

To see the occurrences of an ID in an XML document in the Text mode, place the cursor inside the ID declaration or reference. The occurrences are marked in the vertical side bar at the right of the editor. Click a marker on the side bar to jump to the occurrence that it corresponds to. The occurrences are also highlighted in the editing area.
Note: Highlighted ID declarations are rendered with a different color than highlighted ID references. To customize these colors or disable this feature, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Mark Occurrences (on page 107).

Related Information:

Contextual Menu Actions in Text Mode

When editing XML documents in Text mode, Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides the following actions in the contextual menu (many of them also appear in the submenus of the Document menu):

Cut, Copy, Paste

Executes the typical editing actions on the currently selected content.

Copy XPath

Copies the XPath expression of the current element or attribute (or property for JSON documents) from the current editor to the clipboard.

Toggle Comment (Ctrl + Shift + Comma (Command + Shift + Comma on OS X))

Comments the current selection of the current editor. If the selection already contains a comment the action removes the comment from around the selection. If there is no selection in the current editor and the cursor is not positioned inside a comment the current line is commented. If the cursor is positioned inside a comment then the commented text is uncommented.

Go to submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Go to Matching Tag (Ctrl + Shift + G)

Moves the cursor to the end tag that matches the start tag, or vice versa.

Go after Next Tag (Ctrl + CloseBracket (Command + CloseBracket on OS X))

Moves the cursor to the end of the next tag.

Go after Previous Tag (Ctrl + OpenBracket (Command + OpenBracket on OS X))

Moves the cursor to the end of the previous tag.

Select submenu

This submenu allows you to select the following:

Element

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.
Content

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

Attributes

Selects all the attributes of the element at the current cursor position.

Parent

Selects the parent element at the current cursor position.

Source submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

- **Shift Right**
  Shifts the currently selected block to the right.

- **Shift Left**
  Shifts the currently selected block to the left.

- **Indent selection** (Ctrl + I (Command + I on OS X))
  Corrects the indentation of the selected block of lines if it does not follow the current indenting preferences (on page 99).

- **Escape Selection**
  Escapes a range of characters by replacing them with the corresponding character entities.

- **Unescape Selection**
  Replaces the character entities with the corresponding characters.

- **Format and Indent Element** (Ctrl + Shift + I (Command + Shift + I on OS X))
  Pretty-prints (on page 1625) the element that surrounds the current cursor position.

- **Convert Hexadecimal Sequence to Character** (Ctrl + Shift + H (Command + Shift + H on OS X))
  Converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character (on page 355). The action can be invoked if there is a selection containing a valid hexadecimal sequence or if the cursor is placed at the right side of a valid hexadecimal sequence. A valid
hexadecimal sequence can be composed of 2 to 4 hexadecimal characters and may or may not be preceded by the 0x or 0X prefix. Examples of valid sequences and the characters they will be converted to:

- `0x0045` will be converted to `E`
- `0x0125` to `#`
- `265` to `#`
- `2190` to `#`

**Note:** For more information about finding the hexadecimal value of a character, see Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent (on page 359).

**Base64 Encode/Decode submenu**

This submenu include the following actions for encoding or decoding base 64 schemes:

**Import File to Encode and Insert**

Encodes a file and then inserts the encoded content into the current document at the cursor position.

**Decode Selection and Export to File**

Decodes a selection of text from the current document and then exports (saves) the result to another file.

**Encode Selection**

Replaces a selection of text with the result of encoding that selection.

**Decode Selection**

Replaces a selection of text with the result of decoding that selection.

**Modify All Matches**

Use this option to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content (or the contiguous fragment where the cursor is located). When you use this option, a thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.
**Base32 Encode/Decode submenu**

This submenu includes the following actions for encoding or decoding base32 schemes:

- **Import File to Encode and Insert**
  
  Encodes a file and then inserts the encoded content into the current document at the cursor position.

- **Decode Selection and Export to File**
  
  Decodes a selection of text from the current document and then exports (saves) the result to another file.

- **Encode Selection**
  
  Replaces a selection of text with the result of encoding that selection.

- **Decode Selection**
  
  Replaces a selection of text with the result of decoding that selection.

- **Modify All Matches**
  
  Use this option to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content (or the contiguous fragment where the cursor is located). When you use this option, a thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

**Hex Encode/Decode submenu**

This submenu includes the following actions for encoding or decoding hex schemes:

- **Import File to Encode and Insert**
  
  Encodes a file and then inserts the encoded content into the current document at the cursor position.

- **Decode Selection and Export to File**
  
  Decodes a selection of text from the current document and then exports (saves) the result to another file.

- **Encode Selection**
Replaces a selection of text with the result of encoding that selection.

**Decode Selection**

Replaces a selection of text with the result of decoding that selection.

**Modify All Matches**

Use this option to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content (or the contiguous fragment where the cursor is located). When you use this option, a thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

**Join and Normalize Lines**

For the current selection, this action joins the lines by replacing the `line separator` with a single space character. It also normalizes the whitespaces by replacing a sequence of such characters with a single space.

**Insert XInclude**

Displays a dialog box that allows you to browse and select the content to be included and automatically generates the corresponding XInclude instruction.

**Note:** In the Author mode, this dialog box presents a preview of the inserted document as an author page in the Preview tab and as a text page in the Source tab. In the Text mode, the Source tab is presented.

**Import entities list**

Displays a dialog box that allows you to select a list of files as sources for external DTD entities. The internal subset of the DOCTYPE declaration of your document will be updated with the chosen entities. For instance, choosing the files `chapter1.xml` and `chapter2.xml` inserts the following section in the DOCTYPE:

```xml
<!ENTITY chapter1 SYSTEM "chapter1.xml">
<!ENTITY chapter2 SYSTEM "chapter2.xml">
```

**Canonicalize**
Opens the **Canonicalize** dialog box that allows you to select a canonicalization (on page 1620) algorithm to standardize the format of the document.

**Sign**

Opens the **Sign** dialog box that allows you to configure a digital signature for the document.

**Verify Signature**

Allows you to specify the location of a file to verify its digital signature.

**Manage Highlighted Content submenu**

This submenu is available from the contextual menu when it is invoked from a highlight after you perform a search operation or apply an XPath expression that highlights more than one result. The following options are available in this submenu:

**Modify All**

Allows you to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content. A thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

**Surround All**

Surround the highlighted content with a specific tag. This option opens the **Tag** dialog box. The **Specify the tag** drop-down menu presents all the available elements that you can choose from.

**Remove All**

Removes all the highlighted content.

**Modify All Matches**

Use this option to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content (or the contiguous fragment where the cursor is located). When you use this option, a thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

**Go to Definition (Ctrl + Shift + Enter)**

Navigates to the definition of the current element or attribute in the schema (DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG schema) associated with the edited XML document. If the current attribute is a “type” belonging to the “http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance” namespace, the cursor is moved in the XML schema to the definition of the
type referenced in the value of the attribute. For JSON documents, it navigates to the definition of the current JSON property in the associated JSON Schema.

Refactoring submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

**Rename Element**

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the Rename dialog box.

**Rename Prefix (Alt + Shift + P (Command + Shift + P on OS X))**

The prefix of the element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same prefix, can be renamed according with the options from the Rename dialog box.

- If you select the Rename current element prefix option, the application will recursively traverse the current element and all its children. For example, to change the `xmlns:p1="ns1"` association in the current element to `xmlns:p5="ns1"`, if the `xmlns:p1="ns1"` association is applied on the parent element, then Oxygen XML Developer plugin will introduce `xmlns:p5="ns1"` as a new declaration in the current element and will change the prefix from `p1` to `p5`. If `p5` is already associated with another namespace in the current element, then the conflict will be displayed in a dialog box. By pressing OK, the prefix is modified from `p1` to `p5` without inserting a new declaration.
- If you select the Rename current prefix in all document option, the application will apply the change on the entire document.
- To also apply the action inside attribute values, select the Rename also attribute values that start with the same prefix checkbox.

**Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)**

Allows you to choose a tag that encloses a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the Position cursor between tags option (on page 87) is selected in the Content Completion preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
If the Position cursor between tags option (on page 87) is not selected in the Content Completion preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with ['tag'] (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)
Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Surround with <![CDATA[]]> (Alt + Shift + C (Command + Alt + C on OS X))
Surround the selected content with a CDATA tag so that the parser will interpret it as textual data rather than markup.

Delete element tags (Alt + Shift + Comma)
Deletes the start and end tag of the current element.

Split element
Split the element from the cursor position into two identical elements. The cursor must be inside the element.

Join elements (Alt + Shift + F (Command + Alt + F on OS X))
Joins the left and right elements relative to the current cursor position. The elements must have the same name, attributes, and attributes values.

Attributes Refactoring Actions
Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add/Change attribute
Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

Convert attribute to element
Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

Delete attribute
Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

Rename attribute
Allows you to rename an attribute.

Replace in attribute value
Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

Comments Refactoring Actions
Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

**Delete comments**
Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

**Elements Refactoring Actions**
Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

**Delete element**
Allows you to delete elements.

**Delete element content**
Allows you to delete the content of elements.

**Insert element**
Allows you to insert new elements.

**Rename element**
Allows you to rename elements.

**Unwrap element**
Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

**Wrap element**
Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

**Wrap element content**
Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

**Fragments Refactoring Actions**
Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

**Insert XML fragment**
Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

**Replace element content with XML fragment**
Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

**Replace element with XML fragment**

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

**Manage IDs submenu**

This submenu is available for XML documents that have an associated DTD, XML Schema, or Relax NG schema (not available for DITA). It includes the following actions:

**Rename in**

 Renames the ID and all its occurrences. Selecting this action opens the Rename XML ID dialog box. This dialog box lets you insert the new ID value and choose the scope of the rename operation *(on page 466)*. For a preview of the changes you are about to make, click **Preview**. This opens the **Preview** dialog box, which presents a list with the files that contain changes and a preview zone of these changes.

**Rename in File**

 Renames the ID you are editing and all its occurrences from the current file.

**Search References**

 Searches for the references of the ID. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 466)* dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

**Search References in**

 Searches for the references of the ID. Selecting this action opens the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 466)*.

**Search Declarations**

 Searches for the declaration of the ID reference. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 466)* dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

**Search Declarations in**

 Searches for the declaration of the ID reference. Selecting this action opens the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 466)*.
Search Occurrences in file

Searches for the declaration and references of the ID in the current document.

Quick Assist (Ctrl + 1 (Command + 1 on OS X))

Available when the cursor is inside an ID or IDREF, this action opens the Quick Assist (on page 1625) window that allows you to select some search and refactoring actions for the selected ID or IDREF.

Open File at Cursor

Opens the file at the cursor position in a new panel. If the file path represents a directory path, it will be opened in system file browser. If the file at the specified location does not exist, an error dialog box is displayed and it includes a Create new file button that starts the New document wizard. This allows you to choose the type or the template for the file. If the action succeeds, the file is created with the referenced location and name and is opened in a new editor panel.

Resource Hierarchy

Opens the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view (on page 467) that allows you to see the resource hierarchy for an XML document.

Resource Dependencies

Opens the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view (on page 467) that allows you to see the resource dependencies for an XML document.

Editing XML Documents in Grid Mode

The Grid mode in Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the XML document as a structured grid of nested tables where the text content can be modified without directly interacting with the XML markup. This is helpful for non-technical users who want to edit text content without modifying the XML markup. You can easily expand or collapse elements within the table and the document structure can be changed with simple contextual menu actions, drag/drop, or copy/paste operations. The text content can be modified simply by editing the value of cells that contain the text and a useful Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) is also available to help you edit or insert XML elements.

To switch to this mode, select Grid at the bottom of the editing area.

For more information about some of the features available in the Grid editor, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/PoYm2VqisWk
Editing Actions in Grid Mode

Since Grid mode presents XML content in a structured grid of nested tables, editing content in this mode can be done with a combination of the Content Completion Assistant (on page 419) and actions that allow you to work with the structure or content of the nested tables much like you would with any table. Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides ways to edit content in the cells of the nested tables or to edit the structure of the tables.

Tip: There are two different types of layouts available in Grid mode. Most people prefer to leave it on the default Grid mode layout, but there is also a Tree mode layout that presents the structure of the document in more of a vertical tree-like manner. You can switch between the two layouts to see which one works best for you particular situation from the Document > Grid Layout menu.

Expanding/Collapsing Nodes

An arrow sign (▼) displayed at the left of a node indicates that it has child nodes. To display the children, click this arrow sign. To collapse a node, click the reverse arrow sign (▲). The expand/collapse actions can also be invoked with the NumPad+ and NumPad- keys, or from the Expand/Collapse submenu of the contextual menu.

To expand all child nodes, right-click the cell that contains the parent node and select Expand All from the Expand/Collapse submenu. To collapse all node, right-click any cell and select Collapse All from the Expand/Collapse submenu.

Editing Elements or Attributes

To edit elements or attributes in Grid mode, simply double-click the cell that contains the element or attribute (or select the cell and press Enter) to invoke the Content Completion Assistant (on page 419). This opens a pop-up window that offers a list of proposals that are valid for that particular node.

Editing Text Content in Cells

To edit the text value of a cell, simply select the grid cell and press Enter (or double-click the cell), and start editing.

To stop editing a cell value, press Enter again.

To cancel the editing without saving the current changes in the document, press the Esc key.
Editing the Structure of the Nested Tables

To edit the structure of the nested tables in Grid mode, Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides the following actions in the contextual menu (many of them also appear in the submenus of the Document menu, or the toolbar):

- Cut, Copy, Paste, Delete common editing actions
  - Executes the typical editing actions on the currently selected elements. The Cut and Copy operations preserve the styles of the copied content.

- Paste as Child
  - Pastes the copied content as the last child of the current selection.

- Duplicate
  - Creates a new node by duplicating the currently selected one.

- Insert Before
  - Offers a list of valid nodes, depending on the context, and inserts your selection before the currently selected node, as a sibling.

- Insert After
  - Offers a list of valid nodes, depending on the context, and inserts your selection after the currently selected node, as a sibling.

- Append Child
  - Offers a list of valid nodes, depending on the context, and appends your selection as a child of the currently selected node.

- Sort Ascending, Sort Descending
  - The sorting result depends on the data type of the column content. It could be a numerical sorting for numbers or an alphabetical sorting for text information. The editor automatically analyzes the content and decides what type of sorting to apply. When a mixed set of values is present in the sorted column, a dialog box is displayed that allows you to choose the desired type of sorting between numerical and alphabetical.

- Insert Row
  - Inserts a new row below the current selection. To insert a new row, you could also select the row header (the zone to the left of the row that holds the row number) and press Enter.

- Insert Column
  - Inserts a column after the current selection.

Clear Content
Removes all content from the current cell.

**Expand/Collapse > Expand All**
Expands the selection and all its children.

**Expand/Collapse > Collapse All**
Collapses the selection and all its children.

**Expand/Collapse > Expand Children**
Expands all the children of the selection but not the selection.

**Expand/Collapse > Collapse Children**
Collapses all the children of the selection but not the selection.

**Expand/Collapse > Collapse Others**
Collapses all the siblings of the current selection but not the selection.

**Refresh Selected**
Forces the layout to be recomputed.

Related Information:

- Grid Mode Navigation *(on page 252)*
- Copy and Paste in the Grid Editing Mode *(on page 417)*
- Drag and Drop in the Grid Editing Mode *(on page 416)*
- Content Completion Assistant in Grid Mode *(on page 419)*

**Drag and Drop in the Grid Editing Mode**

You can easily arrange sections in your XML document in the **Grid** mode by using drag and drop actions.

You can do the following with drag and drop:

- Copy or move a set of nodes.
- Change the order of columns in the tables.
- Move the rows from the tables.
These operations are available for both single and multiple selections. To deselect one of the selected fragments, use **Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on OS X)**.

While dragging, the editor paints guide-lines showing the locations where you can drop the nodes. You can also drag nodes outside the **Grid** editor and text from other applications into the **Grid**.

**Tip:** When using drag and drop to reorganize the document, the resulting layout can be different from what you expected. For instance, the layout can contain a set of sibling tables that can be joined together. To force the layout to be recomputed, you can use the **Refresh Selected** action that is available in the contextual menu and in the **Document > Grid Edit** menu.

Copy and Paste in the Grid Editing Mode

Selecting content in the **Grid** mode is similar to working with any table with a little more complexity. Specifically, depending on the type of node, when you select a cell, the selection may automatically include additional cells that are implied by the currently selected node. For example, if you click a node that contains any child nodes, all cells that contain the parent and child nodes will be selected. In this case, the currently selected cell is painted with a color that is different from the rest of the selection.

You can also select discontinuous regions of nodes and place them in the clipboard with the copy action. To deselect one of the selected fragments, use **Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on OS X)**.

Pasting Content Within Grid Mode

You can paste copied nodes relative to the currently selected cell using one of the following actions (available in the contextual menu):

- **Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on OS X))** - Pastes copied content, as a sibling, just below (after) the current selection.
- **Paste as Child** - Pastes copied content as the last child of the current selection.

Pasting Content from Grid Mode to Other Editors

Nodes that are copied from the **Grid** editor can also be pasted into **Text** mode or other external applications. When pasting copied content from **Grid** mode, the inserted string represents the nodes serialization. The nodes from tables can be copied using HTML or RTF in table format. The resulting cells contain only the concatenated values of the text nodes.

Figure 143. Copying from Grid to Other Editors
Pasting Content from Other Editors into Grid Mode

You can also paste well-formed XML content or tab-separated values from other editors into the Grid editor. If you paste XML content, the result will be the insertion of the nodes obtained by parsing this content.

Figure 144. Pasting XML Data into Grid

If the pasted text contains multiple lines of tab-separated values, it can be considered as a matrix of values. By pasting this matrix of values into the Grid editor, the result will be a matrix of cells. If the operation is performed inside existing cells, the existing values will be overwritten and new cells will be created when needed.

Figure 145. Pasting Tab-Separated Values into Grid
If you need to add copied content to your existing content (rather than overwriting existing cells), you need to first insert new cells by using the Insert row or Insert column actions from the contextual menu. This is useful, for example, when trying to transfer data from spreadsheet-like editors to the Grid editor.

Content Completion Assistant in Grid Mode

If the edited document is associated with a schema (DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG, etc.), the Grid editing mode offers a Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) for the names and values of elements and attributes. If you choose to insert an element that has required content, the sub-tree of needed elements and attributes are also automatically included.

To display the content completion pop-up menu, simply double-click a cell that contains an element or attribute (or press Enter on your keyboard).

Exporting XML Content to Excel

For use-cases where you have XML content that needs to be exported to Excel (or any other spreadsheet application) but the content is not already in some sort of table format, Grid mode offers you a way to display the content of an XML document as a structured grid of nested tables and you can work with the cells in those tables much like you would with any spreadsheet application. This makes it possible to export content to Excel by copying cells that contain the specific content and then pasting the copied cells in Excel the same as you would when working with any table or spreadsheet.

To export XML content from Grid mode to Excel or other spreadsheet applications, follow this procedure:
1. Open the XML document in Oxygen XML Developer plugin and switch to Grid mode.
2. Expand the nodes (on page 414) to gain access to the particular nested table that contains the content you want to export.
3. Copy the cells that contain the content you want to export (Copy from the contextual menu or Ctrl+C).
4. Switch to your spreadsheet application and paste the copied cells.
5. You may need to make some manual adjustments depending on the complexity of the structure in the original XML document.

Note that Oxygen XML Developer plugin also supports the reverse scenario (copying cells from a spreadsheet application and pasting them in Grid mode). For more information, see Import from MS Excel Files – Grid Mode Method (on page 1484).

For more information about exchanging data between Oxygen XML Developer plugin and spreadsheet applications, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/8VwsF58zLkU

Related Information:

- Import from MS Excel Files - Grid Mode Method (on page 1484)
- Pasting Content from Other Editors into Grid Mode (on page 418)

Validating XML Documents

The W3C XML specification states that a program should not continue to process an XML document if it finds a validation error. The reason is that XML software should be easy to write and all XML documents should be compatible. With HTML, for example, it is possible to create documents with lots of errors (for instance, when you forget an end tag). One of the main reasons that various HTML browsers have performance and compatibility problems is that they have different methods of figuring out how to render a document when an HTML error is encountered. Using XML helps to eliminate such problems.

Even when creating XML documents, errors are easily introduced. When working with large projects or a large number of files, the probability that errors will occur is even greater. Preventing and solving errors in your projects can be time consuming and frustrating. Fortunately, Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides validation functions that allow you to easily identify errors and their location.

Related Information:
Checking XML Well-Formedness

A Well-formed XML document is a document that conforms to the XML syntax rules. A Namespace Well-Formed XML document is a document that is Well-formed XML and is also Namespace-wellformed and Namespace-valid.

Well-Formedness Rules

The XML Syntax rules for Well-formed XML include:

- All XML elements must have a closing tag.
- XML tags are case-sensitive.
- All XML elements must be properly nested.
- All XML documents must have a root element.
- Attribute values must always be quoted.
- With XML, whitespace is preserved.

The Namespace-wellformed rules include:

- All element and attribute names contain either zero or one colon.
- No entity names, processing instruction targets, or notation names contain any colons.

The Namespace-valid rules include:

- The xml prefix is by definition bound to the namespace name: http://www.w3.org/XML/1998/namespace. It MAY be declared, but MUST NOT be undeclared or bound to any other namespace name. Other prefixes MUST NOT be bound to this namespace name.
- The xmlns prefix is used only to declare namespace bindings and is by definition bound to the namespace name: http://www.w3.org/2000/xmlns/. It MUST NOT be declared or undeclared. Other prefixes MUST NOT be bound to this namespace name.
- All other prefixes beginning with the three-letter sequence x, m, l, in any case combination, are reserved. This means that users SHOULD NOT use them except as defined by later specifications and processors MUST NOT treat them as fatal errors.
- The namespace prefix (unless it is xml or xmlns) MUST have been declared in a namespace declaration attribute in either the start tag of the element where the prefix is used or in an ancestor element (for example, an element in whose content the prefixed markup occurs). Furthermore, the attribute value in the innermost such declaration MUST NOT be an empty string.
Check for Well-Formedness

To check if a document is *Namespace Well-Formed XML* and *Namespace-valid*:

- Select the **Check Well-Formedness** (Alt + Shift + V, W (Command + Alt + V, W on OS X)) action from the **Validation** drop-down menu on the toolbar (or the XML menu).
- A selection of files can be checked for well-formedness by selecting the **Check Well-Formedness** action from the **Validate** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in the **Navigator** view *(on page 210).*

**Result:** If any errors are found, the result is displayed in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. Each error is displayed as one record in the result list and is accompanied by an error message. Clicking the record will open the document containing the error and highlight its approximate location.

**Example: A non Well-formed XML Document**

```
<root><tag></root>
```

When **Check Well-Formedness** is performed the following error is raised:

```
The element type "tag" must be terminated by the matching end-tag "</tag>"
```

To resolve the error, click the record in the result list and it will locate and highlight the approximate position of the error. In this case, identify the tag that is missing an end tag and insert </tag>.

**Example: A non Namespace-wellformed Document**

```
<prefix:elem></prefix:elem>
```

When **Check document form** is performed the following error is raised:

```
The prefix "prefix" for element "prefix:elem" is not bound.
```

**Example: A non Namespace-valid Document**

```
<x:y></x:y>
```

When **Check document form** is performed the following error is raised:

```
The prefix "x" for element "x:y" is not bound.
```

Validating XML Documents Against a Schema

A **Valid** XML document is a **Well-Formed** XML document that also conforms to the rules of a schema that defines the legal elements of an XML document. The schema type can be: XML Schema, Relax
NG (full or compact syntax), Schematron, Document Type Definition (DTD), or Namespace-based Validation Dispatching Language (NVDL).

The purpose of the schema is to define the legal building blocks of an XML document. It defines the document structure with a list of legal elements.

This section contains topics that explain the automatic and manual validation possibilities in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, how validation errors are presented, and information about built-in and custom validation scenarios.

For information about how to associate a schema for the purposes of validation (and content completion), see the [Associating a Schema to XML Documents](on page 449) section.

**Automatic Validation**

By default, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically checks for validation errors in the document as you are editing. The [Enable automatic validation](on page 94) option in the [Document Checking preferences page](on page 93) controls whether or not all validation errors and warnings will automatically be highlighted in the editor panel.

The automatic validation starts parsing the document and marking the errors after a configurable delay (on page 94) from the last key typed. Errors are highlighted with underline markers in the main editor panel and small rectangles on the right side ruler of the editor panel. Hovering over a validation error presents a tooltip message with more details about the error.

**Related Information:**

- Manual Validation Actions (on page 423)
- Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode (on page 229)

**Manual Validation Actions**

You can choose to validate documents at any time by using the manual validation actions that are available in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

**Manual Validation Actions**

To manually validate the currently edited document, use one of the following actions:

- **Validate (Alt + Shift + V, V)**
Available from the ✔️ • Validation drop-down menu on the toolbar, the XML menu, or from the Validate submenu when invoking the contextual menu in the Navigator view (on page 210).

An error list is presented in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. Markup of the current document is checked to conform with the specified DTD, XML Schema, or Relax NG schema rules. This action also re-parses the XML Catalogs (on page 1627) and resets the schema used for content completion.

☑️ Validate (cached)

Available from the ✔️ • Validation drop-down menu on the toolbar or the XML menu.

This action caches the schema, allowing it to be reused for the next validation. Markup of the current document is checked to conform with the specified DTD, XML Schema, or Relax NG schema rules.

**Note:** Automatic validation also caches the associated schema.

Validate with

Available from the ✔️ • Validation drop-down menu on the toolbar, (or XML menu).

This action opens a dialog box that allows you to specify a schema for validating the current document (on page 453).

You can use this action to validate the current document using a schema of your choice (XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, NVDL, Schematron schema), other than the associated one. An error list is presented in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. Markup of current document is checked to conform with the specified schema rules.

Validate with Schema

Available from the Validate submenu when invoking contextual menu in the Navigator view (on page 210).

This action opens a dialog box that allows you to specify a schema for validating all selected files (on page 454).

Other Validation Options

To quickly open the schema used for validating the current document, select the ✔️ Open Associated Schema action from the toolbar (or XML menu).
To clear the error markers added to the Problems view in the last validation, select Clear Validation Markers from the Validate submenu when invoking the contextual menu in the Navigator view.

**Tip:** If a large number of validation errors are detected and the validation process takes too long, you can **limit the maximum number of reported errors in the Document Checking preferences page (on page 93).**

**Related Information:**

- Automatic Validation (on page 423)
- Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode (on page 229)

**Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode**

By default, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically validates documents (on page 423) while editing in the Text mode, and actions are also available to manually validate documents (on page 423) on-request.

**Figure 147. Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode**

![Validation Marker Locations](image)

**Validation Marker Locations**

In Text mode, validation issues are marked in the following locations:
• In the main editing pane, with the issue underlined in a color according to the type of issue.
• In the right-side vertical stripe, with a marker that is colored according to the type of issue.
• For attributes with detected issues, in the Attributes view (on page 221), with the attribute and its value colored according to the type of issue.

Validation Marker Colors

The colors for each type of issue are as follows:

• **Validation Errors** [Red] - By default, the underline in the editing pane, the marker in the right vertical stripe, and the foreground color of the attribute in the Attributes view are colored in red.
• **Validation Warnings** [Yellow] - By default, the underline in the editing pane, the marker in the right vertical stripe, and the foreground color of the attribute in the Attributes view are colored in yellow.
• **Validation Info** [Blue] - By default, the underline in the editing pane, the marker in the right vertical stripe, and the foreground color of the attribute in the Attributes view are colored in blue.

You can configure the colors and how the various types of validation problems are rendered from the Eclipse Annotations preferences page (Window ('Eclipse' on Mac OSX) > Preferences > General > Editors > Text Editors > Annotations).

Validation Markers in the Right-Side Stripe

Also, the stripe on the right side of the editor panel is designed to display the issues found during the validation process and to help you locate them in the document. The stripe contains the following:

**Upper Part of the Stripe**

A success indicator square will turn green if the validation is successful or only info messages are found, red if validation errors are found, or yellow if only validation warnings are found. More details about the issues are displayed in a tool tip when you hover over indicator square. If there are numerous problems, only the first three are presented in the tool tip.

**Middle Part of the Stripe**

Errors are presented with red markers, warnings with yellow markers, and info message with blue markers. If you want to limit the number of markers that are displayed, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Editor > Document checking, and specify the desired limit in the Maximum number of validation highlights option (on page 93).
Clicking a marker will highlight the corresponding text area in the editor. The validation message is also displayed both in a tool tip (when hovering over the marker) and in the message area on the bottom of the application.

**Bottom Part of the Stripe**

Two navigation arrows (⇦) allow you to jump to the next or previous issue. The same actions can be triggered from Document > Automatic validation > Next error (Ctrl + Period (Command + Period on OS X)) and Document > Automatic validation > Previous error (Ctrl + Comma (Command + Comma on OS X)).

**Hovering Over Validation Issues**

Hovering over a validation issue presents a tooltip message with more details about the problem and **possible quick fixes (on page 447)** (if available for that issue). Also, when hovering over an issue, pressing F2 will change the focus to the tooltip where you can use **Tab** and **Shift + Tab** to navigate between quick fixes and **Space** to trigger them.

**Details About Validation Issues**

- Information about the issue is also displayed in the message area on the bottom of the editor panel (clicking the **Document checking options** button opens the Document Checking preferences page (on page 93) where you can configure some validation options.
- Status messages from every validation action are logged in the Console view (on page 362) (the **Enable Oxygen consoles** option (on page 123) must be selected in the View preferences page).
- If you want to see all the validation messages grouped in the Results view (on page 226), you should use the Validate action from the toolbar or XML menu. This action also collects the validation messages and displays them in the Problems view if the validated file is in the current workspace or in a custom Errors view if the validated file is outside the workspace.

**Related Information:**

- Validating XML Documents Against a Schema (on page 422)
- Presenting Schematron Validation Issues (on page 770)

**Customizing Assert Error Messages**

To customize the error messages that the Xerces or Saxon validation engines display for the `assert` and `assertion` elements, set the `message` attribute on these elements.
• For Xerces, the `message` attribute has to belong to the `http://xerces.apache.org` namespace.
• For Saxon, the `message` attribute has to belong to the `http://saxon.sourceforge.net/` namespace.

The value of the `message` attribute is the error message displayed if the assertion fails.

Custom Validators

If you need to validate the edited document with a validation engine that is different from the built-in engine, you can configure external validators in the Custom Validation Engines preferences page (on page 91). After a custom validation engine is properly configured (on page 91), it can be applied on the current document by selecting it from the list of custom validation engines in the • Validation toolbar drop-down menu. The document is validated against the schema declared in the document.

Some validators are configured by default but there are third-party processors that do not support the output message format (on page 429) of Oxygen XML Developer plugin for linked messages:

• **Saxon-EE** - Included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. It is associated to XML Editor and XSD Editor. It is able to validate XML Schema schemas and XML documents against XML Schema schemas. The validation is done according to the W3C XML Schema 1.0 or 1.1. This can be configured in Preferences (on page 138).

• **MSXML 4.0** - Included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin (Windows edition only). It is associated to XML Editor, XSD Editor and XSL Editor. It is able to validate the edited document against XML Schema, internal DTD (included in the XML document), external DTD or a custom schema type.

• **MSXML.NET** - Included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin (Windows edition only). It is associated to XML Editor, XSD Editor and XSL Editor. It is able to validate the edited document against XML Schema, internal DTD (included in the XML document), external DTD or a custom schema type.

• **LIBXML** - Not included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin and, depending on your operating system, the libraries need to be downloaded and installed separately from [http://xmlsoft.org/downloads.html](http://xmlsoft.org/downloads.html). Afterwards, the `PATH` environment variable needs to be updated to contain the parent folder of the `xmllint` executable. Alternatively, you can go to Options > Preferences > Editor > Custom Validation Engines, edit the LIBXML validation engine and set a custom path to the `xmllint` executable.

The LIBXML validator is associated with the XML Editor. It is able to validate the edited document against XML Schema, Relax NG schema full syntax, internal DTD (included in the XML document) or a custom schema type. Support for XML Catalogs (on page 1627) (the `--catalogs` parameter) and XInclude processing (`--xinclude`) are enabled by default in the preconfigured LIBXML validator. The `--postvalid` parameter is also set by default and it allows LIBXML to validate correctly the main document even if the XInclude fragments contain IDREFS to ID's located in other fragments.
For validation against an external DTD specified by URI in the XML document, add the `--dtdvalid ${ds}` parameter manually to the DTD validation command line. `${ds}` represents the detected DTD declaration in the XML document.

⚠️ CAUTION: File paths containing spaces are not handled correctly in the LIBXML processor. For example, the built-in XML Catalog (on page 1627) files of the built-in document types (DocBook, TEI, DITA, etc.) are not handled by LIBXML if Oxygen XML Developer plugin is installed in the default location on Windows (`C:\Program Files`) because the built-in XML catalog files are stored in the frameworks subfolder of the installation folder and in this case, the file path contains at least one space character.

⚠️ Attention: On OS X, if the full path to the LIBXML executable file is not specified in the Executable path text field, some errors may occur during validation against a W3C XML Schema, such as:

```
Unimplemented block at ... xmlschema.c
```

To avoid these errors, specify the full path to the LIBXML executable file.

- **XSV** - Not included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. Windows and Linux distributions of XSV can be downloaded from [http://www.cogsci.ed.ac.uk/~ht/xsv-status.html](http://www.cogsci.ed.ac.uk/~ht/xsv-status.html). The executable path is already configured in Oxygen XML Developer plugin (on page 91) for the `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/xsv` installation folder. If it is installed in a different folder, the predefined executable path must be corrected in Preferences. (on page 91) It is associated to XML Editor and XSD Editor. It is able to validate the edited document against XML Schema or a custom schema type.

- **SQC (Schema Quality Checker from IBM)** - Not included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. It can be downloaded from [here](#) (it comes as a .zip file, at the time of this writing SQC2.2.1.zip is about 3 megabytes). The executable path and working directory are already configured for the SQC installation directory `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/sqc`. If it is installed in a different folder, the predefined executable path and working directory must be corrected in the Preferences page. (on page 91) It is associated to XSD Editor.

### Linked Output Messages of an External Engine

Validation engines display messages in an output view at the bottom of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin window. If such an output message (**warning**, **error**, **fatal error**, etc) spans between three to six lines of text and has the format specified below, then the message is linked to a location in the validated document. Clicking the message in the output view highlights the location of the message in an editor panel containing the file referenced in the message. This behavior is similar to the linked messages generated by the default built-in validator.

Linked messages have the following format:
• **Type**: [F|E|W] (the string *Type:* followed by a letter for the type of the message: fatal error, error, warning). This property is optional in a linked message.

• **SystemID**: A system ID of a file (the string *SystemID:* followed by the system ID of the file that will be opened for highlighting when the message is clicked in the output message - usually the validated file, the schema file or an included file).

• **Line**: A line number (the string *Line:* followed by the number of the line that will be highlighted).

• **Column**: A column number (the string *Column:* followed by the number of the column where the highlight will start on the highlighted line). This property is optional in a linked message.

• **EndLine**: A line number (the string *EndLine:* followed by the number of the line where the highlight ends). This property is optional in a linked message.

• **EndColumn**: A column number (the string *EndColumn:* followed by the number of the column where the highlight ends on the end line). This property is optional in a linked message.

• **AdditionalInfoURL**: The URL string pointing to a remote location where additional information about the error can be found - this line is optional in a linked message.

• **Description**: Message content (the string *Description:* followed by the content of the message that will be displayed in the output view).

**Note**: The Line/Column pair works in conjunction with the EndLine/EndColumn pair. Thus, if both pairs are specified, then the highlight starts at Line/Column and ends at EndLine/EndColumn. If the EndLine/EndColumn pair is missing, the highlight starts from the beginning of the line identified by the Line parameter and ends at the column identified by the Column parameter.

**Example:**

Example of how a custom validation engine can report an error using the format specified above:

```
Type: E
SystemID: file:///c:/path/to/validatedFile.xml
Line: 10
Column: 20
EndLine: 10
EndColumn: 35
AdditionalInfoURL: http://www.host.com/path/to/errors.html#errorID
Description: custom validator message
```

**Using Saxon Integrated Extension Functions**

Saxon, the transformation and validation engine used by Oxygen XML Developer plugin, can be customized by adding custom functions (called Integrated Extension Functions) that can be called from XPath.
To define such a function, follow these steps:

1. Create a file with a Java class that extends `net.sf.saxon.lib.ExtensionFunctionDefinition`. Here is an example:

```java
private static class ShiftLeft extends ExtensionFunctionDefinition {
    @Override
    public StructuredQName getFunctionQName() {
        return new StructuredQName("eg", "http://example.com/saxon-extension", "shift-left");
    }

    @Override
    public SequenceType[] getArgumentTypes() {
        return new SequenceType[] {SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER, SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER};
    }

    @Override
    public SequenceType getResultType(SequenceType[] suppliedArgumentTypes) {
        return SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER;
    }

    @Override
    public ExtensionFunctionCall makeCallExpression() {
        return new ExtensionFunctionCall() {
            public SequenceIterator call(SequenceIterator[] arguments, XPathContext context) throws XPathException {
                long v0 = ((IntegerValue)arguments[0].next()).longValue();
                long v1 = ((IntegerValue)arguments[1].next()).longValue();
                long result = v0<<v1;
                return Value.asIterator(Int64Value.makeIntegerValue(result));
            }
        };
    }
}
```

2. Compile the class and add it to a JAR file.
3. Add a file called `net.sf.saxon.lib.ExtensionFunctionDefinition` that contains the fully qualified name of the Java class in the `META-INF/services/` folder of the JAR file.

**Note:** To add more function definitions in the same JAR file, you need to add their fully qualified names on different lines.

To enable Oxygen XML Developer plugin to pick up your custom function definition, the JAR file should be added to the classpath of the transformer. Here are some possibilities:

- If you develop a framework, you just need to link the JAR file in the **Classpath** tab (on page 61).
- In a validation scenario (on page 433), you can use the **Extensions** button to open a dialog box where you can add libraries.
- In a transformation scenario, you can use the **Extensions** button in the **XSLT** tab (on page 892) to open a dialog box where you can add libraries.

**Validation Scenarios**

A complex XML document is split in smaller interrelated modules. These modules do not make much sense individually and cannot be validated in isolation due to interdependencies with other modules. Oxygen XML Developer plugin validates the main module of the document when an imported module is checked for errors.

A typical example is the chunking of a DocBook XSL stylesheet that has `chunk.xsl` as the main module and `param.xsl`, `chunk-common.xsl`, and `chunk-code.xsl` as imported modules. `param.xsl` only defines XSLT parameters. The module `chunk-common.xsl` defines an XSLT template with the name `chunk`. `chunk-code.xsl` calls this template. The parameters defined in `param.xsl` are used in the other modules without being redefined.

Validating `chunk-code.xsl` as an individual XSLT stylesheet generates misleading errors regarding parameters and templates that are used but undefined. These errors are only caused by ignoring the context in which this module is used in real XSLT transformations and in which it is validated. To validate such a module, define a validation scenario to set the main module of the stylesheet and the validation engine used to find the errors. Usually this engine applies the transformation during the validation process to detect the errors that the transformation generates.

You can validate a stylesheet with several engines to make sure that you can use it in various environments and have the same results. For example, an XSLT stylesheet may be applied with Saxon 6.5, Xalan, and MSXML 4.0 engines in different production systems.

Other examples of documents that can benefit from a validation scenario include:

- A complex XQuery file with a main module that imports modules developed independently but validated in the context of the main module of the query. In an XQuery validation scenario, the
default validator of Oxygen XML Developer plugin (Saxon 9) or any connection to a database that supports validation (Berkeley DB XML Database, eXist XML Database, MarkLogic version 5 or newer) can be set as a validation engine.

• An XML document in which the master file (on page 1623) includes smaller fragment files using XML entity references.

**Note:** If a master file is associated with the current file, the validation scenarios defined in the master file, along with any Schematron schema defined in the default scenarios for that particular framework, are used for the validation. These take precedence over other types of validation units defined in the default scenarios for the particular framework. For more information on master files, see Master Files Support (on page 337) or Working with Modular XML Files in the Master Files Context (on page 463).

For more information about how to use a validation scenario in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/9RMPcckVMJA

**Related Information:**

- Validating XML Documents Against a Schema (on page 422)
- Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode (on page 229)

**Creating a New Validation Scenario**

To create a validation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** from the toolbar, or from the XML menu (or the Validate submenu when invoking the contextual menu on a file in the Navigator view (on page 210)).

The **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** dialog box is displayed. It contains built-in and user-defined scenarios. The built-in scenarios are organized in categories depending on the type of file they apply to and you can identify them by a yellow key icon that marks them as read-only. The user-defined scenarios are organized under a single category. The default scenarios for the particular framework (on page 1622) are rendered in bold.

**Note:** If a master file is associated with the current file, the validation scenarios defined in the master file, along with any Schematron schema defined in the default scenarios for that particular framework, are used for the validation. These take precedence over other types of validation units defined in the default scenarios for the particular framework. For more information on master
files, see Master Files Support (on page 337) or Working with Modular XML Files in the Master Files Context (on page 463).

Figure 148. Configure Validation Scenario Dialog Box

The top section of the dialog box contains a filter that allows you to search through the scenarios list and the Settings button allows you to configure the following options:

**Show all scenarios**
Select this option to display all the available scenarios, regardless of the document they are associated with.

**Show only the scenarios available for the editor**
Select this option to only display the scenarios that Oxygen XML Developer plugin can apply for the current document type.

**Show associated scenarios**
Select this option to only display the scenarios associated with the document you are editing.

**Import scenarios**
This option opens the Import scenarios dialog box that allows you to select the scenarios file that contains the scenarios you want to import. If one of the scenarios you import is identical to an existing scenario, Oxygen XML Developer plugin ignores it. If a conflict appears (an imported scenario has the same name as an existing one), you can choose between two options:

- Keep or replace the existing scenario.
- Keep both scenarios.
Note: When you keep both scenarios, Oxygen XML Developer plugin adds imported to the name of the imported scenario.

Export selected scenarios

Use this option to export selected scenarios individually. Oxygen XML Developer plugin creates a scenarios file that contains the scenarios that you export. This is useful if you want to share scenarios with others or export them to another computer.

2. To add a scenario, click the New button.
   A validation scenario configuration dialog box is displayed and it lists all the validation units for the scenario.

Figure 149. Validation Scenario Configuration Dialog Box

This scenario configuration dialog box allows you to configure the following information and options:

Name

The name of the validation scenario.

URL of the file to validate

The URL of the main module that includes the current module. It is also the entry module of the validation process when the current one is validated. To edit the URL, click its cell and specify the URL of the main module by doing one of the following:

- Enter the URL in the text field or select it from the drop-down list.
- Use the Browse drop-down button to browse for a local, remote, or archived file.
Use the **Insert Editor Variable** button to insert an editor variable (on page 162) or a custom editor variable (on page 169).

![Figure 150. Insert an Editor Variable](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$(path-dir)</td>
<td>Short directory of custom validator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(standard-params)</td>
<td>List of standard parameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(fn)</td>
<td>The current file name without extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(currentFileURL)</td>
<td>The path of the currently edited file (URL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(cwd)</td>
<td>The path of current file directory (URL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(frameworks)</td>
<td>Oxygen frameworks directory (URL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(pdx-url)</td>
<td>ProXt directory (URL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(oxygen.home)</td>
<td>Oxygen installation directory (URL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(home)</td>
<td>The path to user home directory (URL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(proj)</td>
<td>Project name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(env:VAR, NAME)</td>
<td>Value of environment variable VAR_NAME</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(system:var, home)</td>
<td>Value of system variable var_name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**File type**

The type of the document that is validated in the current validation unit. Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically selects the file type depending on the value of the **URL of the file to validate** field.

**Validation engine**

You can select one of the engines available in Oxygen XML Developer plugin for validation of the particular document type.

**Default engine** means that the default engine is used to run the validation for the current document type, as specified in the preferences page for that type of document (for example, XSLT preferences page (on page 150), XQuery preferences page (on page 147), XML Schema preferences page (on page 138)).

The **DITA Validation** engine performs DITA-specific checks in the context of the specifications.

The **Table Layout Validation** engine looks for table layout problems.

**Automatic validation**

If this option is selected, the validation operation defined by this row is also applied by the automatic validation feature (on page 423). If the **Automatic validation** feature is disabled in the Document Checking preferences page (on page 93), then this option is ignored, as the preference setting has a higher priority.

**Schema**

This option becomes active when you set the **File type** to XML Document and allows you to specify the schema used for the validation unit.

![Specify Schema](image)
Opens the **Specify Schema** dialog box that allows you to set a schema to be used for validating XML documents.

Figure 151. Specify Schema Dialog Box

The **Specify Schema** dialog box contains the following options:

**Use detected schema**

Uses the schema detected for the particular document (on page 450).

**Use custom schema**

Allows you to specify the schema using the following options:

- **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S), FTP(S). You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, the ⌨️ Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the 🛠️ Browse drop-down list.

- **Schema type** - Select a possible schema type from this combo box that is populated based on the extension of the schema file that was entered in the URL field. The possible schema types are: XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, Relax NG Compact, Schematron, or NVDL.

- **Embedded Schematron rules** - If you have selected XML Schema or Relax NG schemas with embedded Schematron rules and you want to use those embedded rules, select this option.

- **Extensions** - Opens a dialog box that allows you to specify Java extension JARs (on page 1623) to be used during the validation.
• **Public ID** - Allows you to specify a public ID if you have selected a DTD.

• **Schematron phase** - If you select a Schematron schema, this drop-down list allows you to select a Schematron phase that you want to use for validation. The listed phases are defined in the Schematron document.

**Move Up**

Moves the selected scenario up one spot in the list.

**Move Down**

Moves the selected scenario down one spot in the list.

**Add**

Adds a new validation unit to the list.

**Remove**

Removes an existing validation unit from the list.

3. Configure any of the existing validation units according to the information above, and you can use the buttons at the bottom of the table to add, remove, or move validation units. Note that if you add a Schematron validation unit, you can also select the validation phase.

4. Press **OK**.

The newly created validation scenario will now be included in the list of scenarios in the Configure Validation Scenario(s) dialog box. You can select the scenario in this dialog box to associate it with the current document and press the **Apply associated** button to run the validation scenario.

**Editing a Validation Scenario**

To edit an existing validation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** from the toolbar, or from the XML menu (or the Validate submenu when invoking the contextual menu on a file in the Navigator view (on page 210)).

The Configure Validation Scenario(s) dialog box is displayed. It contains built-in and user-defined scenarios. The built-in scenarios are organized in categories depending on the type of file they apply to and you can identify them by a yellow key icon that marks them as read-only. The user-defined scenarios are organized under a single category. The default scenarios for the particular framework (on page 1622) are rendered in bold.
Note: If a master file is associated with the current file, the validation scenarios defined in the master file, along with any Schematron schema defined in the default scenarios for that particular framework, are used for the validation. These take precedence over other types of validation units defined in the default scenarios for the particular framework. For more information on master files, see Master Files Support (on page 337) or Working with Modular XML Files in the Master Files Context (on page 463).

Figure 152. Configure Validation Scenario Dialog Box

The top section of the dialog box contains a filter that allows you to search through the scenarios list and the Settings button allows you to configure the following options:

**Show all scenarios**
Select this option to display all the available scenarios, regardless of the document they are associated with.

**Show only the scenarios available for the editor**
Select this option to only display the scenarios that Oxygen XML Developer plugin can apply for the current document type.

**Show associated scenarios**
Select this option to only display the scenarios associated with the document you are editing.

**Import scenarios**
This option opens the Import scenarios dialog box that allows you to select the scenarios file that contains the scenarios you want to import. If one of the
scenarios you import is identical to an existing scenario, Oxygen XML Developer plugin ignores it. If a conflict appears (an imported scenario has the same name as an existing one), you can choose between two options:

- Keep or replace the existing scenario.
- Keep both scenarios.

**Note:** When you keep both scenarios, Oxygen XML Developer plugin adds imported to the name of the imported scenario.

**Export selected scenarios**

Use this option to export selected scenarios individually. Oxygen XML Developer plugin creates a scenarios file that contains the scenarios that you export. This is useful if you want to share scenarios with others or export them to another computer.

2. Select the scenario and press the **Edit** button. If you try to edit one of the read-only built-in scenarios, you will receive a warning message that Oxygen XML Developer plugin needs to creates customizable duplicate (you can also use the **Duplicate** button).

The **Edit scenario** dialog box is displayed and it lists all the validation units for the scenario.

![Edit Validation Scenario](image)

This scenario configuration dialog box allows you to configure the following information and options:

**Name**

The name of the validation scenario.

**URL of the file to validate**

The URL of the main module that includes the current module. It is also the entry module of the validation process when the current one is validated. To edit the URL, click its cell and specify the URL of the main module by doing one of the following:
• Enter the URL in the text field or select it from the drop-down list.

• Use the **Browse** drop-down button to browse for a local, remote, or archived file.

• Use the **Insert Editor Variable** button to insert an editor variable *(on page 162)* or a custom editor variable *(on page 169)*.

**Figure 154. Insert an Editor Variable**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$(start-dir)</td>
<td>Start directory of custom validator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(standard-param)</td>
<td>List of standard parameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(fn)</td>
<td>The current file name without extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(current-file URL)</td>
<td>The path of the currently edited file (URL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(cd)</td>
<td>The path of current file directory (URL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(framework)</td>
<td>Oxygen framework directory (URL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(tpl)</td>
<td>Project directory (URL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(oxygen-home)</td>
<td>Oxygen installation directory (URL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(home)</td>
<td>The path to user home directory (URL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(proj)</td>
<td>Project name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(env(VAR_NAME))</td>
<td>Value of environment variable VAR_NAME</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(system(VAR_NAME)</td>
<td>Value of system variable VAR_NAME</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**File type**

The type of the document that is validated in the current validation unit. Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically selects the file type depending on the value of the **URL of the file to validate** field.

**Validation engine**

You can select one of the engines available in Oxygen XML Developer plugin for validation of the particular document type.

**Default engine** means that the default engine is used to run the validation for the current document type, as specified in the preferences page for that type of document (for example, **XSLT preferences page (on page 150)**, **XQuery preferences page (on page 147)**, **XML Schema preferences page (on page 138)**).

The **DITA Validation** engine performs DITA-specific checks in the context of the specifications.

The **Table Layout Validation** engine looks for table layout problems.

**Automatic validation**

If this option is selected, the validation operation defined by this row is also applied by the automatic validation feature *(on page 423)*. If the **Automatic validation** feature is disabled in the Document Checking preferences page *(on page 93)*, then this option is ignored, as the preference setting has a higher priority.

**Schema**
This option becomes active when you set the **File type** to **XML Document** and allows you to specify the schema used for the validation unit.

**Specify Schema**

Opens the **Specify Schema** dialog box that allows you to set a schema to be used for validating XML documents.

![Figure 155. Specify Schema Dialog Box](image)

The **Specify Schema** dialog box contains the following options:

**Use detected schema**

Uses the *schema detected for the particular document (on page 450)*.

**Use custom schema**

Allows you to specify the schema using the following options:

- **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S), FTP(S). You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, the ![Insert Editor Variables](image) button, or the browsing actions in the ![Browse drop-down list](image).

- **Schema type** - Select a possible schema type from this combo box that is populated based on the extension of the schema file that was entered in the **URL** field. The possible schema types are: XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, Relax NG Compact, Schematron, or NVDL.
• **Embedded Schematron rules** - If you have selected XML Schema or Relax NG schemas with embedded Schematron rules and you want to use those embedded rules, select this option.

• **Extensions** - Opens a dialog box that allows you to specify *Java extension JARs (on page 1623)* to be used during the validation.

• **Public ID** - Allows you to specify a public ID if you have selected a DTD.

• **Schematron phase** - If you select a Schematron schema, this drop-down list allows you to select a Schematron phase that you want to use for validation. The listed phases are defined in the Schematron document.

**Move Up**

Moves the selected scenario up one spot in the list.

**Move Down**

Moves the selected scenario down one spot in the list.

**Add**

Adds a new validation unit to the list.

**Remove**

Removes an existing validation unit from the list.

3. Configure any of the existing validation units according to the information above, and you can use the buttons at the bottom of the table to add, remove, or move validation units. Note that if you add a Schematron validation unit, you can also select the **validation phase**.

4. When you are done configuring the scenario, press **OK**.

The modified validation scenario will now be included in the list of scenarios in the **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** dialog box. If you chose to duplicate an existing one, the modified scenario will be listed with the word **copy** at the end of its name.

**Sharing Validation Scenarios**

The validation scenarios and their settings can be shared with other users by exporting them to a **specialized scenarios file (on page 161)** that can then be imported.

**Resolving References to Remote Schemas with an XML Catalog**

When a reference to a remote schema must be used in the validated XML document for interoperability purposes, but a local copy of the schema should actually be used for performance
reasons, the reference can be resolved to the local copy of the schema with an *XML Catalog (on page 1627)*.

For example, if the XML document contains a reference to a remote schema `docbook.rng` like this:

```xml
<?xml-model href="http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/5.0/rng/docbook.rng"
type="application/xml" schematypens="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"?>
```

it can be resolved to a local copy with a catalog entry like this:

```xml
<uri name="http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/5.0/rng/docbook.rng"
     uri="rng/docbook.rng"/>
```

An *XML Catalog* can also be used to map an XML Schema specified with a URN in the `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute of an XML document to a local copy of the schema. For example, if the XML document specifies the schema with:

```xml
<topic xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
```

the URN can be resolved to a local schema file with a catalog entry like this:

```xml
<uri name="urn:oasis:names:tc:dita:xsd:topic.xsd:1.1"
     uri="topic.xsd"/>
```

Related Information:

- [Working with XML Catalogs (on page 460)]

**Validation Example - A DocBook Validation Error**

In the following DocBook 4 document, the content of the `listitem` element does not match the rules of the DocBook 4 schema (`docbookx.dtd`).

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE article PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.4//EN"
     "http://www.docbook.org/xml/4.4/docbookx.dtd">
<article>
  <title>Article Title</title>
  <sect1>
    <title>Section1 Title</title>
    <itemizedlist>
      <listitem>
```
```
The Validate Document action will return the following error:

```
<listitem>
  The content of the parent element type must match
  "(calloutlist|glosslist|bibliolist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|simplelist
  |variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|literallayout|programlisting
  |programlistingco|screen|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|cmdsyntax|funcsynopsis
  |classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis
  |formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco
  |informalequation|informalexample|informalfigure|informaltab|equation|example|figure
  |table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|task|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights
  |abstract|authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+".
```

This error message is a little more difficult to understand, so understanding of the syntax or processing rules for the DocBook XML DTD listitem element is recommended. However, the error message does offer a clue as to the source of the problem, indicating that “The content of element type must match”.

Fortunately, most standards-based DTDs, XML Schemas, and Relax NG schemas are supplied with reference documentation. This enables you to lookup the element and read about it. In this case, you should learn about the child elements of listitem and their nesting rules. Once you have correctly inserted the required child element and nested it in accordance with the XML rules, the document will become valid.

Embedding Schematron Rules in XML Schema or RELAX NG

Schematron rules can be embedded into an XML Schema through annotations (using the appinfo element), or in any element on any level of a RELAX NG Schema (taking into account that the RELAX NG validator ignores all elements that are not in the RELAX NG namespace).

Oxygen XML Developer plugin accepts such documents as Schematron validation schemas and it is able to extract and use the embedded rules.
Validating XML Documents with XML Schema and Embedded Schematron

To validate an XML document with XML Schema and its embedded Schematron, you can associate the document like this:

```xml
<?xml-model href="percent.xsd" type="application/xml"
schematypens="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"?>
```

Validating XML Documents with Relax NG and Embedded Schematron

To validate an XML document with RELAX NG schema and its embedded Schematron rules, you need to associate the document with both schemas like this:

```xml
<?xml-model href="percent.rng" type="application/xml"
schematypens="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"?>
<?xml-model href="percent.rng" type="application/xml"
schematypens="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"?>
```

The second association validates your document with Schematron rules extracted from the RELAX NG Schema.

**Note:** When you work with XML Schema or Relax NG documents that have embedded Schematron rules Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides two built-in validation scenarios: Validate XML Schema with embedded Schematron for XML schema, and Validate Relax NG with embedded Schematron for Relax NG. You can use one of these scenarios to validate the embedded Schematron rules.

Example: Embedded Schematron in XML Schema

```xml
<xsd:appinfo>
  <sch:pattern>
    <sch:rule context="...">
      <sch:assert test="...">Message.</sch:assert>
    </sch:rule>
  </sch:pattern>
</xsd:appinfo>
```

Example: Embedded Schematron in Relax NG Schema

```xml
<grammar
  xmlns="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"
```

```xml
<grammar xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron">
  <sch:pattern>
    <sch:rule context="...">
      <sch:assert test="...">Message.</sch:assert>
    </sch:rule>
  </sch:pattern>
</grammar>
```

Related Information:

- Embedding Schematron Quick Fixes in Relax NG or XML Schema (on page 802)

XML Quick Fixes

The Oxygen XML Developer plugin Quick Fix support (on page 1626) helps you resolve errors that appear in an XML document by offering Quick Fixes to problems such as missing required attributes or invalid elements. Quick Fixes are available in Text mode.

To activate this feature, hover over or place the cursor in the highlighted area of text where a validation error or warning occurs. If a Quick Fix is available for that particular error or warning, you can access the Quick Fix proposals with any of the following methods:

- When hovering over the error or warning, the proposals may be presented in a tooltip pop-up window and the available quick Quick Fixes include a link that can be used to perform the fix.

Figure 156. Quick Fix Presented in a Tooltip in Text Mode

- If you place the cursor in the highlighted area where a validation error or warning occurs, a Quick Fix icon (ë) is displayed in the stripe on the left side of the editor. If you click this icon, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the list of available fixes.
With the cursor placed in the highlighted area of the error or warning, you can also invoke the Quick Fix menu by pressing Ctrl + 1 (Command + 1 on OS X) on your keyboard.

Whenever you make a modification in the XML document or you apply a fix, the list of Quick Fixes is recomputed to ensure that you always have valid proposals.

Note: A Quick Fix that adds an element inserts it along with required and optional elements, and required and fixed attributes, depending on how the Content Completion preferences (on page 85) are configured.

Quick Fixes for DTD, XSD, and Relax NG Errors

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers Quick Fixes (on page 1626) for common errors that appear in XML documents that are validated against DTD, XSD, or Relax NG schemas.

Note: For XML documents validated against XSD schemas, the Quick Fixes are only available if you use the default Xerces validation engine.

Quick Fixes are available in Text mode.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides Quick Fixes for numerous types of problems, including the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem Type</th>
<th>Available Quick Fixes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A specific element is required in the current context</td>
<td>Insert the required element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An element is invalid in the current context</td>
<td>Remove the invalid element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The content of the element should be empty</td>
<td>Remove the element content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An element is not allowed to have child elements</td>
<td>Remove all child elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text is not allowed in the current element</td>
<td>Remove the text content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A required attribute is missing</td>
<td>Insert the required attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An attribute is not allowed to be set for the current element</td>
<td>Remove the attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The attribute value is invalid</td>
<td>Propose the correct attribute values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID value is already defined</td>
<td>Generate a unique ID value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References to an invalid ID</td>
<td>Change the reference to an already defined ID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Schematron Quick Fixes (SQF)

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for Schematron Quick Fixes (on page 1626) (SQF). They help you resolve issues that appear in XML documents that are validated against Schematron schemas by offering you solution proposals. The Schematron Quick Fixes are an extension of the Schematron language and they allow you to define fixes for Schematron validation messages. Specifically, they are associated with assert or report messages.

A typical use case is using Schematron Quick Fixes to assist content authors with common editing tasks. For example, you can use Schematron rules to automatically report certain validation warnings (or errors) when performing regular editing tasks, such as inserting specific elements or changing IDs to match specific naming conventions. For more details and examples, see the following blog post: http://blog.oxygenxml.com/2015/05/schematron-checks-to-help-technical.html.

Displaying the Schematron Quick Fix Proposals

The defined Schematron Quick Fixes are displayed on validation errors in Text mode.

Figure 158. Example of a Schematron Quick Fix

Related Information:

- Editing Schematron Quick Fixes (on page 786)
- Schematron Quick Fix Specifications
- Presenting Schematron Validation Issues (on page 770)
Associating a Schema to XML Documents

To provide as-you-type validation and to compute valid proposals for the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620), Oxygen XML Developer plugin requires a schema to be associated with the XML document. The schema specifies how the internal structure of the XML is defined.

Supported Types of Schema

The following schema types are supported:

- **W3C XML Schema 1.0 and 1.1** (with and without embedded Schematron rules) - The association with an XML Schema is added as an attribute of the root element with one of the following:
  - `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute, if the root element of the document is in the namespace.
  - `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attribute, if the root element is not in the namespace.
- **DTD** - The association with a DTD is added as a `DOCTYPE` declaration.
- **Relax NG - XML Syntax** (with and without embedded Schematron rules) - The association is added as an `xml-model` processing instruction.
- **Relax NG - Compact Syntax** - The association is added as an `xml-model` processing instruction.
- **NVDL** - The association is added as an `xml-model` processing instruction.
- **Schematron** (both ISO Schematron and Schematron 1.5) - The association is added as an `xml-model` processing instruction.

Detecting the Schema(s) for Validation

For validation, Oxygen XML Developer plugin tries to detect one or more schemas by searching multiple locations, in the following order:

1. The schema or multiple schemas referenced in validation stages from the validation scenario(s) (on page 451) associated with the current XML document.
2. If no validation scenario is selected to be used with the current XML document, then it falls back to the schema or multiple schemas defined in validation stages from the validation scenarios specified as default in the particular document type configuration (on page 455).
3. If a schema is still not detected, then it falls back to the schema or multiple schemas associated directly in the XML document (on page 457).

**Tip:** To quickly open the schema used for validating the current document, select the Open Associated Schema action from the toolbar (or XML menu).

4. If a schema is still not detected, then it falls back to the schema defined in the Schema tab of a framework (document type) configuration (on page 458).
Detecting a Schema for Content Completion

For content completion, Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses just one schema and tries to detect that schema by searching multiple locations, in the following order:

1. If no schema is detected in the document, then it falls back to the highest ranking schema defined in validation stages from the validation scenario(s) associated with the current document (on page 451).
2. If a schema is still not detecting, then it falls back to the highest ranking schema defined in validation stages from validation scenarios specified as default in the particular document type configuration (on page 455).
3. Oxygen XML Developer plugin determines the most appropriate or highest ranking schema that is associated directly in the XML document (on page 457) and uses it for content completion.
4. If a schema is still not detecting, then it falls back to the schema defined in the Schema tab of a framework (document type) configuration (on page 458).

Related Information:

• W3C: Associating Schemas with XML Documents

Associating a Schema Through a Validation Scenario

Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the rules defined in the detected schema to report errors and warnings during automatic and manual validations that help maintain the structural integrity of your XML documents. You can specify the schema to be used for validation directly in validation scenarios (on page 432) and there are several methods that can be used to do so.

Configure a Validation Scenario and Specify the Schema

To associate a schema to a validation scenario to be used whenever the scenario is invoked, follow these steps:

1. Select the Configure Validation Scenario(s) from the toolbar, or from the XML menu (or the Validate submenu when invoking the contextual menu on a file in the Navigator view (on page 210)).
2. Press the New button to create a new validation scenario or the Edit button to modify an existing one.
3. Add or configure validation units (on page 440) according to your needs and click the Specify Schema button.
Step Result: The **Specify Schema** dialog box is displayed:

Figure 159. Specify Schema Dialog Box

The **Specify Schema** dialog box contains the following options:

**Use detected schema**

Uses the schema detected for the particular document (on page 450).

**Use custom schema**

Allows you to specify the schema using the following options:

- **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S), FTP(S). You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, the ![Insert Editor Variables](on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

- **Schema type** - Select a possible schema type from this combo box that is populated based on the extension of the schema file that was entered in the **URL** field. The possible schema types are: XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, Relax NG Compact, Schematron, or NVDL.

- **Embedded Schematron rules** - If you have selected XML Schema or Relax NG schemas with embedded Schematron rules and you want to use those embedded rules, select this option.

- **Public ID** - Allows you to specify a public ID if you have selected a DTD.

- **Extensions** - Opens a dialog box that allows you to specify Java extension JARs (on page 1623) to be used during the validation.

- **Schematron phase** - If you select a Schematron schema, this drop-down list allows you to select a Schematron phase that you want to use for validation. The listed phases are defined in the Schematron document.
4. Select the schema to be associated with the validation unit and configure the rest of the options according to your preferences.
5. Click OK on both dialog boxes.

**Result:** The schema is now associated with that validation scenario whenever it is invoked.

**Use the Validate with Action to Specify a Schema for Validating the Current Document**

To validate the current document using a specified schema, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Validation with** action from the • **Validation** drop-down menu on the toolbar (or XML menu).

   **Step Result:** The **Validate with** dialog box is displayed:

   **Figure 160. Validate with Dialog Box**

   ![Validate with Dialog Box](image)

This dialog box contains the following options:

- **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S), FTP(S). You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, the • **Insert Editor Variables** (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the • **Browse** drop-down list.

- **Schema type** - Select a possible schema type from this combo box that is populated based on the extension of the schema file that was entered in the **URL** field. The possible schema types are: XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, Relax NG Compact, Schematron, or NVDL.

- **Embedded Schematron rules** - If you have selected XML Schema or Relax NG schemas with embedded Schematron rules and you want to use those embedded rules, select this option.

- **Public ID** - Allows you to specify a public ID if you have selected a DTD.

- **Extensions** - Opens a dialog box that allows you to specify **Java extension JARs** (on page 1623) to be used during the validation.

- **Schematron phase** - If you select a Schematron schema, this drop-down list allows you to select a Schematron phase that you want to use for validation. The listed phases are defined in the Schematron document.
2. Select the schema to be associated with the manual validation and configure the rest of the options according to your preferences.

3. Click OK.

**Result:** The current document is validated using the schema you specified.

**Tip:** To quickly open the schema used for validating the current document, select the Open Associated Schema action from the toolbar (or XML menu).

**Use the Validate with Schema Action to Specify a Schema for Validating all Selected Documents**

To validate multiple documents using a specified schema, follow these steps:

1. Select all the documents you want to validate in the Navigator view.
2. Invoke the contextual menu (right-click) and select the Validate with Schema action from the Validate submenu.

**Step Result:** The Validate with dialog box is displayed:

**Figure 161. Validate with Dialog Box**

This dialog box contains the following options:

- **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S), FTP(S). You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

- **Schema type** - Select a possible schema type from this combo box that is populated based on the extension of the schema file that was entered in the URL field. The possible schema types are: XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, Relax NG Compact, Schematron, or NVDL.

- **Embedded Schematron rules** - If you have selected XML Schema or Relax NG schemas with embedded Schematron rules and you want to use those embedded rules, select this option.

- **Public ID** - Allows you to specify a public ID if you have selected a DTD.
• **Extensions** - Opens a dialog box that allows you to specify Java extension JARs (on page 1623) to be used during the validation.

• **Schematron phase** - If you select a Schematron schema, this drop-down list allows you to select a Schematron phase that you want to use for validation. The listed phases are defined in the Schematron document.

3. Select the schema that you want to use to validate all selected documents and configure the rest of the options according to your preferences.

4. Click OK.

**Result:** The selected documents are validated using the schema you specified.

### Associating a Schema in Validation Scenarios Defined in the Document Type

To report errors and warnings during automatic and manual validations that help maintain the structural integrity of particular XML document types, Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses rules defined in the schema that is detected in the validation scenarios that are associated to each particular document type.

To associate a schema in validation scenarios defined in the framework (on page 1622) (document type) configuration, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Document Type Association.
2. Select your particular document type and click the Edit or Duplicate button to modify an existing framework (or use the New button to create a new one).

   **Step Result:** This opens a Document type configuration dialog box (on page 57).

3. Go to the Validation tab (on page 82).
4. Create or edit a validation scenario:
   a. To create a new validation scenario (on page 433), click the New button.
   b. To edit the properties of an existing validation scenario (on page 438), select it and click the Edit button (you can also use the Duplicate button to copy an existing scenario and edit its properties).

5. Add or configure validation units (on page 440) according to your needs and click the Specify Schema button.

   **Step Result:** The Specify Schema dialog box is displayed:

Figure 162. Specify Schema Dialog Box
The Specify Schema dialog box contains the following options:

**Use detected schema**

Uses the schema detected for the particular document (on page 450).

**Use custom schema**

Allows you to specify the schema using the following options:

- **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S), FTP(S). You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

- **Schema type** - Select a possible schema type from this combo box that is populated based on the extension of the schema file that was entered in the URL field. The possible schema types are: XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, Relax NG Compact, Schematron, or NVDL.

- **Embedded Schematron rules** - If you have selected XML Schema or Relax NG schemas with embedded Schematron rules and you want to use those embedded rules, select this option.

- **Public ID** - Allows you to specify a public ID if you have selected a DTD.

- **Extensions** - Opens a dialog box that allows you to specify Java extension JARs (on page 1623) to be used during the validation.

- **Schematron phase** - If you select a Schematron schema, this drop-down list allows you to select a Schematron phase that you want to use for validation. The listed phases are defined in the Schematron document.

6. Select the schema to be associated with the validation unit and configure the rest of the options according to your preferences.

7. Click **OK** on both dialog boxes.
**Result:** The schema is now associated with the validation scenario you just configured for that particular document type.

**Associating a Schema Directly in XML Documents**

The schema used by the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620)* and document validation engine can be directly associated with the current document by using the "**Associate Schema**" action. For most of the schema types, it uses the *xml-model processing instruction*, with the exceptions of:

- **W3C XML Schema** - The `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute or `xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attribute is used.
- **DTD** - The `DOCTYPE` declaration is used.

The association can specify a relative file path or a URL of the schema. The advantage of relative file path is that you can configure the schema at file level instead of *framework (on page 1622)* level.

To associate a schema to the current document, follow these steps:

1. Select the "**Associate Schema**" action from the toolbar (or *Document > Schema* menu).

   **Step Result:** The *Associate Schema* dialog box is displayed:

   **Figure 163. Associate Schema Dialog Box**

   ![Associate Schema Dialog Box](image)

   This dialog box contains the following options:

   - **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S), FTP(S).
• **Use path relative to file location** - Select this option if the XML instance document and the associated schema contain relative paths. The location of the schema file is inserted in the XML instance document as a relative file path. This practice allows you, for example, to share these documents with other users without running into problems caused by multiple project locations on physical disk.

• **Schema type** - Select a possible schema type from this combo box that is populated based on the extension of the schema file that was entered in the URL field. The possible schema types are: XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, Relax NG Compact, Schematron, or NVDL.

• **Add additional association for embedded Schematron rules** - If you have selected XML Schema or Relax NG schemas with embedded Schematron rules and you want to use those embedded rules, select this option.

• **Public ID** - Allows you to specify a public ID if you have selected a DTD.

• **Keep existing schema associations** - Select this option to use the existing schema associations of the currently edited document.

2. Select the schema that will be associated with the XML document and configure the rest of the options according to your preferences.

3. Click OK.

**Result:** The schema association is created based upon the specified type.

• **XML Schema** - The association with an XML Schema is added as an attribute of the root element with one of the following:
  - xsi:schemaLocation attribute, if the root element of the document is in the namespace.
  - xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation attribute, if the root element is not in the namespace.

• **DTD** - The association with a DTD is added as a `DOCTYPE` declaration.

• **Other** - The association with a Relax NG, Schematron, or NVDL schema is added as an `xml-model processing instruction`.

**Tip:** To quickly open the schema used for validating the current document, select the **Open Associated Schema** action from the toolbar (or **XML** menu).

**Related Information:**

- Validating XML Documents *(on page 420)*

- Content Completion Assistant in Text Mode *(on page 378)*
Associating a Schema in a Framework (Document Type) Configuration

The schema used to compute valid proposals in the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) and by the document validation engine to report errors and warnings can be defined in each particular framework (on page 1622) (document type). This schema will be used only if one is not detected in the current XML file (on page 457).

To associate a schema in a particular framework (document type), follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Document Type Association.
2. Select your particular document type and click the Edit (on page 56), Extend (on page 56), or Duplicate (on page 56) button to modify an existing framework (or use the New button to create a new one).

   **Step Result:** This opens a Document type configuration dialog box (on page 57).

3. Go to the Schema tab (on page 61).
4. Select the schema type and its URI.
5. Click OK.

**Result:** The schema is now associated with the particular document type and will be used by the Content Completion Assistant and validation engine if a schema is not detected in the current XML document.

Learn Document Structure when Schema is not Detected

When working with documents that do not specify a schema, or for which the schema is not known or does not exist, Oxygen XML Developer plugin is able to learn and translate the document structure to a DTD. You can choose to save the learned structure to a file to provide a DTD as an initialization source for content completion (on page 378) and document validation (on page 420). This feature is also useful for producing DTDs for documents that contain personal or custom element types.

When you open a document that is not associated with a schema, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically learns the document structure and uses it for content completion (on page 378). To disable this feature, deselect the Learn on open document option in the user preferences (on page 85).

**Related Information:**

- Detecting a Schema (on page 449)
Create a DTD from Learn Document Structure Option

When there is no schema associated with an XML document, Oxygen XML Developer plugin can learn the document structure by parsing the document internally. This feature is enabled by the Learn on open document option (on page 85) that is available in the user preferences.

To create a DTD from the learned structure, follow these steps:

1. Open the XML document for which a DTD will be created.

2. Go to XML > Learn Structure (Ctrl + Shift + L (Command + Shift + L on OS X)).
   The Learn Structure action reads the mark-up structure of the current document. The Learn completed message is displayed in the application status bar when the action is finished.

3. Go to XML > Save Structure (Ctrl + Shift + S (Command + Shift + S on OS X)) and enter the DTD file path.

4. Press the Save button.

Working with XML Catalogs

Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses XML Catalogs (on page 1627) to resolve references for validations and transformations and they are especially helpful for resolving external resources when internet access is not available or your connection is slow.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports any XML Catalog file that conforms to one of the following:

1. OASIS XML Catalogs Committee Specification v1.1.
2. OASIS Technical Resolution 9401:1997, including the plain-text flavor described in that resolution.

The version 1.1 of the OASIS XML Catalog specification introduces the possibility to map a system ID, public ID, or a URI to a local copy using only a suffix of the ID or URI used in the actual document. This is done using the catalog elements systemSuffix and uriSuffix.

Depending on the resource type, Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses different catalog mappings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Doc Type</th>
<th>Referenced Resource</th>
<th>Mappings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XML</td>
<td>DTD</td>
<td>system or public</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Prefer option (on page 133) controls which one of the mappings should be used.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Doc Type</th>
<th>Referenced Resource</th>
<th>Mappings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XML Schema</td>
<td>The following strategy is used (if one step fails to provide a resource, the next is applied):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relax NG</td>
<td>1. Resolve the schema using <em>URI</em> catalog mappings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schematron</td>
<td>2. Resolve the schema using <em>system</em> catalog mappings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NVDL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XSL</td>
<td>The following strategy is used (if one step fails to provide a resource, the next is applied):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XSL/ANY</td>
<td>1. Resolve schema reference using <em>URI</em> catalog mappings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSS</td>
<td>2. Resolve schema reference using <em>system</em> catalog mappings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XML Schema</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relax NG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Creating an XML Catalog with a Template

An *XML Catalog (on page 1627)* file can be created quickly in Oxygen XML Developer plugin starting from the two document templates called *OASIS XML Catalog 1.0* and *OASIS XML Catalog 1.1*. They are available when creating new document templates *(on page 311)*.

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE catalog
   PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD XML Catalogs V1.1//EN"
   "http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/entity/release/1.1/catalog.dtd">
<catalog xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog">
   <!-- Use "system" and "public" mappings when resolving DTDs -->
   <system
   ...>
```

This happens only if the Resolve schema locations also through system mappings option *(on page 134)* is selected (it is by default).

3. Resolve the root *namespace* using *URI* catalog mappings.

This happens only if the Process namespaces through URI mappings for XML Schema option *(on page 134)* is selected (it is not by default).
How Oxygen XML Developer plugin Determines which Catalog to Use

Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses XML Catalogs (on page 1627) to resolve references for validations and transformations and it maps such references to the built-in local copies of the schemas associated with the various frameworks (on page 1622) (DocBook, DITA, TEI, XHTML, SVG, etc.)

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes default global catalogs as well as default catalogs for each of the built-in frameworks, and you can also create your own.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin looks for catalogs in the following order:

- Global user-defined catalogs that are set in the XML Catalog preferences page (on page 133).
- User-defined catalogs that are set for each framework (on page 1622) in the Catalog tab (on page 81) of the Document Type configuration dialog box (on page 57).
- Default built-in catalogs.

Example:

An XML Catalog can be used to map an XML Schema specified with an URN in the xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation attribute of an XML document to a local copy of the schema.
Considering the following XML document code snippet:

```xml
<topic xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
</topic>
```

The URN can be resolved to a local schema file with a catalog entry like this:

```xml
<uri name="urn:oasis:names:tc:dita:xsd:topic.xsd:1.1"
     uri="topic.xsd"/>
```

Related Information:

- [XML Catalog Preferences](on page 133)

Resolving Schema Locations Through XML Catalogs

Schema locations can be mapped using an [XML Catalog](on page 1627). Oxygen XML Developer plugin resolves the location of a schema in the following order:

- First, it attempts to resolve the schema location as a URI ( `uri`, `uriSuffix`, `rewriteUri`, `delegateUri` mappings from the XML Catalog). If this succeeds, the process ends here.
- If the [Resolve schema locations also through system mappings](on page 134) option is selected, it attempts to resolve the schema location as a system ID ( `system`, `systemSuffix`, `rewriteSuffix`, `rewriteSystem` from the XML Catalog). If this succeeds, the process ends here.
- If the [Process "schemaLocation" namespaces through URI mappings for XML Schema](on page 134) option is selected, the target namespace of the imported XML Schema is resolved through URI mappings. If the schema specified in the `schemaLocation` attribute is not resolved successfully, the namespace of the root element is taken into account. If this succeeds, the process ends here.
- If none of these succeeds, the actual [schema location](on page 450) is used.

Related Information:

- [Working with XML Catalogs](on page 460)
Working with Modular XML Files in the Master Files Context

Smaller interrelated modules that define a complex XML modular structure cannot be correctly edited or validated individually, due to their interdependency with other modules. Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides the support for defining the main module (or modules), allowing you to edit any file from the hierarchy in the context of the master files (on page 1623).

You can set a main XML document either using the master files support from the Navigator view (on page 337), or using a validation scenario.

To set a master file using a validation scenario, add validation units that point to the main modules. Oxygen XML Developer plugin warns you if the current module is not part of the dependencies graph computed for the main XML document. In this case, it considers the current module as the main XML document.

The advantages of working with modular XML files in the context of a master file (on page 1623) include:

- Correct validation of a module in the context of a larger XML structure.
- Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) displays all collected entities and IDs starting from the master files.
- Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the schema defined in the master file when you edit a module that is included in the hierarchy through the External Entity mechanism.
- The master files defined for the current module determines the scope of the search and refactoring actions (on page 466) for ID/IDREFS values and for updating references when renaming/moving a resource. Oxygen XML Developer plugin performs the search and refactoring actions in the context that the master files determine, improving the speed of execution.

For more information about editing modular XML files in the master files context, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/e2oo4RWNxW8

Related Information:

- Master Files Support (on page 337)
- XML Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View (on page 467)
Search and Refactoring Actions for IDs and IDREFS

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to search for ID declarations and references (IDREFS) and to define the scope of the search and refactor operations (on page 466). These operations are available for XML documents that have an associated DTD, XML Schema, or Relax NG schema. These operations are available through the search and refactor actions in the contextual menu. In Text mode, these actions are also available in the Quick Assist (on page 401) menu.

The search and refactor actions from the contextual menu are grouped in the Manage IDs section:

**Rename in**

Renames the ID and all its occurrences. Selecting this action opens the Rename XML ID dialog box. This dialog box lets you insert the new ID value and choose the scope of the rename operation (on page 466). For a preview of the changes you are about to make, click Preview. This opens the Preview dialog box, which presents a list with the files that contain changes and a preview zone of these changes.

**Rename in File**

Renames the ID you are editing and all its occurrences from the current file.

| Note: Available in the Text mode only. |

**Search References**

Searches for the references of the ID. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations (on page 466) dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

**Search References in**

Searches for the references of the ID. Selecting this action opens the Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations (on page 466).

**Search Declarations**

Searches for the declaration of the ID reference. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations (on page 466) dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

| Note: Available in the Text mode only. |

**Search Declarations in**

Searches for the declaration of the ID reference. Selecting this action opens the Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations (on page 466).

| Note: Available in the Text mode only. |
Search Occurrences in file

Searches for the declaration and references of the ID in the current document.

Tip: A quick way to go to the declaration of an ID in Text mode is to move the cursor over an ID reference and use the Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on OS X) navigation.

Selecting an ID that you use for search or refactor operations differs between the Text and Author modes. In the Text mode, you position the cursor inside the declaration or reference of an ID. In the Author mode, Oxygen XML Developer plugin collects all the IDs by analyzing each element from the path to the root. If more IDs are available, you are prompted to choose one of them.

Figure 164. Selecting an ID in the Author Mode

Related Information:

Search and Refactor Operations Scope

The scope is a collection of documents that define the context of a search and refactor operation. To control it you can use the Change scope operation, available in the Quick Fix action set or on the Resource Hierarchy/Dependency View toolbar. You can restrict the scope to the current project or to one or multiple working sets (on page 1627). The Use only Master Files, if enabled checkbox allows you to restrict the scope of the search and refactor operations to the resources from the Master Files directory. Click read more for details about the Master Files support (on page 337).

Figure 165. Change Scope Dialog Box
The scope you define is applied to all future search and refactor operations until you modify it. Contextual menu actions allow you to add or delete files, folders, and other resources to the working set (on page 1627) structure.

XML Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View

The Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view displays the hierarchy or dependencies for an XML document. The tree structure presented in this view is built based on the Xinclude and External Entity mechanisms. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

If you want to see the hierarchy or dependencies of an XML document, select the document in the Navigator view (on page 210) and choose Resource Hierarchy or Resource Dependencies from the contextual menu.

Figure 166. Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View - Hierarchy for Syncro phone v1.xml
The following actions are available on the toolbar of the **Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies** view:

- **Refresh**
  Refreshes the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

- **Stop**
  Stops the hierarchy/dependencies computing.

- **Show Hierarchy**
  Allows you to choose a resource to compute the hierarchy structure.

- **Show Dependencies**
  Allows you to choose a resource to compute the dependencies structure.

- **Configure dependencies search scope**
  Allows you to configure a scope to compute the dependencies structure. There is also an option for automatically using the defined scope for future operations.

- **History**
  Provides access to the list of previously computed dependencies. Use the **Clear history** button to remove all items from this list.

The contextual menu for a resource listed in the **Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies** view contains the following actions:

- **Open**
  Opens the resource. You can also double-click a resource in the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure to open it.

- **Go to reference**
  Opens the source document where the resource is referenced.

- **Copy location**
  Copies the location of the resource.

- **Move resource**
  Moves the selected resource.

- **Rename resource**
  Renames the selected resource.

- **Show Resource Hierarchy**
  Shows the hierarchy for the selected resource.

- **Show Resource Dependencies**
Shows the dependencies for the selected resource.

**Add to Master Files**

Adds the currently selected resource in the Master Files directory (on page 337).

**Expand All**

Expands all the children of the selected resource from the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

**Collapse All**

Collapses all children of the selected resource from the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

**Tip:** When a recursive reference is encountered in the Hierarchy view, the reference is marked with a special icon 🔄.

**Note:** The Move resource or Rename resource actions give you the option to update the references to the resource (on page 469). Only the references made through the XInclude and External Entity mechanisms are handled.

**Related Information:**

- Search and Refactor Operations Scope (on page 466)

**Moving/Renaming XML Resources**

When you select the **Rename** action in the contextual menu of the Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies view, the Rename resource dialog box is displayed. The following fields are available:

- **New name** - Presents the current name of the edited resource and allows you to modify it.
- **Update references of the renamed resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are renaming. A Preview option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting Rename to process the operation.

When you select the **Move** action from the contextual menu of the Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies view, the Move resource dialog box is displayed. The following fields are available:

- **Destination** - Presents the path to the current location of the resource you want to move and gives you the option to introduce a new location.
- **New name** - Presents the current name of the moved resource and gives you the option to change it.
- **Update references of the moved resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are moving, in accordance with the new location and name. A Preview option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting Move to process the operation.

**Combining XML Content Using DTD Entities and XInclude**

When documenting large projects, it is likely that there are multiple people involved. In this case, it is usually more efficient to use a modular approach so that everyone involved in the project can work in parallel. Other advantages of modular documentation include: reusable content possibilities, smaller file units are easier to edit, and better version control.

Two possible solutions for this are to use DTD Entities or XInclude to combine XML content in a master file (on page 1623). A master document can be created with references to various document parts, users can edit those documents individually, and then apply an XSLT stylesheet over the master document to obtain the output files in various formats (for example, PDF or HTML).

**Combining XML Document Content Using DTD Entities**

There are two conditions for including a document fragment using DTD entities:

- The master document should declare the DTD to be used, while the external entities should declare the XML fragments to be referenced.
- The referenced documents that contain the fragments cannot also define the DTD because the main document will not be valid. If you want to validate the parts separately you have to use XInclude (on page 471) for assembling the parts together with the master file.

The master document looks like this:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE book SYSTEM "../xml/docbookx.dtd" [
<!ENTITY testing SYSTEM "testing.xml" > ]
>
<book>
  <chapter> ... 
```

The referenced document (testing.xml) looks like this:

```xml
<section> ... here is the section content ... </section>
```

**Note:**
The indicated DTD and the element names (section, chapter) are used here only for illustrating the inclusion mechanism. You can use any DTD and element names you need.

The content from the referenced file (in the example above, it is a section in the test.xml file) can be inserted somewhere in the master document:

```xml
... &testing; ...
```

To obtain output in various formats (for example, PDF or HTML), you simply need to apply an XSLT stylesheet over the master document using a transformation scenario.

**Viewing the Expanded Content in Oxygen XML Developer plugin**

When a transformation scenario is applied on the master file, an intermediary file combines all the referenced content and it will be expanded in the final output. If you want to see how the referenced content will be expanded before applying the transformation, create a minimal XSLT stylesheet that simply copies the XML content, then create a transformation scenario that applies the stylesheet over the XML. The XSLT stylesheet would look like this:

```xml
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
                xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
                xmlns:math="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/math"
                exclude-result-prefixes="xs math"
                version="3.0">
  <xsl:template match="node() | @*">
    <xsl:copy>
      <xsl:apply-templates select="node() | @*"/>
    </xsl:copy>
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

Combining XML Documents and Fragments Using XInclude

**XInclude** is a standard for assembling XML instances into another XML document through inclusion. A master file (on page 1623) can be dynamically created from smaller XML documents without having to physically duplicate the content of the smaller files. The advantage of using XInclude instead of the DTD Entities method (on page 470) is that each of the assembled documents is permitted to contain a Document Type Declaration (DOCTYPE). This means that each file is a valid XML instance and can be independently validated. It also means that the main document, which includes smaller instances, can be validated without having to remove or comment out the DOCTYPE (as is the case with External Entities).
Enabling XInclude Support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin

The XInclude support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin is enabled by default. It is controlled by the Enable XInclude processing option (on page 136) in the XML > XML Parser preferences page (on page 135). When enabled, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will be able to validate and transform documents comprised of parts added using XInclude.

Example: Using XInclude to Combine Files

A chapter file (introduction.xml) looks like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<chapter>
  <title>Getting started</title>
  <section>
    <title>Section title</title>
    <para>Para text</para>
  </section>
</chapter>
```

The main article (master file) looks like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE article PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.3//EN" "http://www.docbook.org/xml/4.3/docbookx.dtd"[
  <!ENTITY % xinclude SYSTEM "../frameworks/docbook/dtd/xinclude.mod">
%xinclude;
]>
<article>
  <title>Install guide</title>
  <para>This is the install guide.</para>
  <xi:include xmlns:xi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude"
               href="introduction.xml">
    <xi:fallback>
      <para><emphasis>FIXME: MISSING XINCLUDE CONTENT</emphasis></para>
    </xi:fallback>
  </xi:include>
</article>
```
In this example, note the following:

- The DOCTYPE declaration defines an entity that references a file containing the information to add the \textit{xi} namespace to certain elements defined by the DocBook DTD.
- The \texttt{href} attribute of the \texttt{xi:include} element specifies that the \texttt{introduction.xml} file will replace the \texttt{xi:include} element when the document is parsed.
- If the \texttt{introduction.xml} file cannot be found, the parser will use the value of the \texttt{xi:fallback} element - a \texttt{FIXME} message.

\textbf{Example: Using XInclude to Combine Fragments of Files}

If you want to include only a fragment of a file in the \textit{master file (on page 1623)}, the fragment must be contained in a tag having an \texttt{xml:id} attribute and you must use an XPointer expression pointing to the \texttt{xml:id} value.

\textbf{Note}: Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports the XPointer Framework and the XPointer element() Scheme, but it does NOT support the XPointer xpointer() Scheme.

For example, if the \textit{master file} is:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<?xml-model href="test.rng" type="application/xml"
    schematypens="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"?>
<test>
    <xi:include href="a.xml" xpointer="a1"
        xmlns:xi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude"/>
</test>
```

and the file (\texttt{a.xml}) is:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<test>
    <a xml:id="a1">test</a>
</test>
```

after resolving the XPointer reference, the document is:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<?xml-model href="test.rng" type="application/xml"
    schematypens="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"?>
<test>
```

```
Viewing the Expanded Content in Oxygen XML Developer plugin

When a transformation scenario is applied on the master file, an intermediary file combines all the referenced content and it will be expanded in the final output. If you want to see how the referenced content will be expanded before applying the transformation, create a minimal XSLT stylesheet that simply copies the XML content, then create a transformation scenario that applies the stylesheet over the XML. The XSLT stylesheet would look like this:

```xml
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns:math="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/math"
    exclude-result-prefixes="xs math"
    version="3.0">
    <xsl:template match="node() | @*">
        <xsl:copy>
            <xsl:apply-templates select="node() | @*"/>
        </xsl:copy>
    </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

XInclude 1.1 Features

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers partial support for XInclude 1.1 features. This includes support for fragment identifiers and attribute copying.

- **Fragment Identifiers**

  You can use `xi:include` a text file and specify the `@fragid` value so that you only get part of that text file in the main document. For some examples and to see how `xi:include` gets expanded when the `@fragid` specifies a line range or character range, see [Textual Inclusion Examples with RFC5147 Fragment Identifiers](#).

- **Attribute Copying**

  Any namespaced attribute defined on the `xi:include` element will be passed to the root element of the included content.

  For example, if you have this:

  ```xml
  <xi:include href="section2.xml" xmlns:xi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude"
  ```
and section2.xml looks like this:

```xml
<sect2 xmlns=http://docbook.org/ns/docbook" version="5.0"
       xmlns:xlink=http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink" xml:id="section2">
    <title>FS2</title>
    <para>P2</para>
</sect2>
```

then the final processed result will have the original `xml:id="section2"` replaced with the value specified in the `xi:included` section.

For more information, see Attribute Copying when Processing XML. Also, to see more examples, see Attribute Copying Examples.

### Related Information:

- W3C Specifications: XML Inclusions (XInclude) Version 1.1

### Refactoring XML Documents

In the life cycle of XML documents there are instances when the XML structure needs to be changed to accommodate various needs. For example, when an associated schema is updated, an attribute may have been removed, or a new element added to the structure.

These types of situations cannot be resolved with a traditional Find/Replace tool, even if the tool accepts regular expressions. The problem becomes even more complicated if an XML document is computed or referenced from multiple modules, since multiple resources need to be changed.

To assist you with these types of refactoring tasks, Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a specialized XML Refactoring tool that helps you manage the structure of your XML documents.

### XML Refactoring Tool

The XML Refactoring tool is presented in the form of an easy to use wizard that is designed to reduce the time and effort required to perform various structure management tasks. For example, you can insert, delete, or rename an attribute in all instances of a particular element that is found in all documents within your project.

To access the tool, select the XML Refactoring action from one of the following locations:
• The XML Tools menu.
• The Refactoring submenu from the contextual menu in the Navigator view (on page 210).

**Note:** The built-in refactoring operations are also available from the Refactoring submenu in the contextual menu of Text mode. This is useful because by selecting the operations from the contextual menu, Oxygen XML Developer plugin considers the editing context to skip directly to the wizard page of the appropriate operation and to help you by preconfiguring some of the parameter values.

### XML Refactoring Wizard

The XML Refactoring tool includes the following wizard pages:

**Refactoring operations**

The first wizard page presents the available operations, grouped by category. To search for an operation, you can use the filter text box at the top of the page.

![XML Refactoring Wizard](image)

**Configure Operation Parameters**
The next wizard page allows you to specify the parameters for the refactoring operation. The parameters are specific to the type of refactoring operation that is being performed. For example, to delete an attribute you need to specify the parent element and the qualified name of the attribute to be removed.

Figure 168. XML Refactoring 2nd Wizard Page (Delete Attribute Operation)

Scope and Filters

The last wizard page allows you to select the set of files that represent the input of the operation.

Figure 169. XML Refactoring - Scope and Filters Wizard Page

Scope section
In the **Scope** section, you can select from predefined resource sets (such as the current file, your whole project, the current **DITA map (on page 1621)** hierarchy for DITA projects, etc.) or you can define your own set of resources by creating a **working set (on page 1627)**.

**Filters**

The **Filters** section includes the following options:

- **Include files** - Allows you to filter the selected resources by using a file pattern. For example, to restrict the operation to only analyze build files you could use `build*.xml` for the file pattern.
- **Restrict only to known XML file types** - When selected, only resources with a known XML file type will be affected by the operation.

**Preview**

You can use the **Preview** button to open a comparison panel where you can review all the changes that will be made by the refactoring operation before applying the changes.

**Finish**

After clicking the **Finish** button, the operation will be processed and Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides no automatic means for reverting the operations. Any **Undo** action will only revert changes on the current document.

**Troubleshooting**: If an operation fails, a notification will be displayed in the **Results** panel with some information about the error. For example, if the operation was invoked on a read-only resource, the error will indicate that a read-only file cannot be converted.

**Tip**: If an operation takes longer than expected you can use the **Stop** button in the progress bar to cancel the operation.

**Restriction**: XML refactoring operations cannot preserve CDATA sections. If your document contains XML CDATA sections, the refactoring operations will convert them to plain text nodes.

**Built-in Refactoring Operations**

The XML Refactoring tool includes a variety of built-in operations that can be used for common refactoring tasks. They are grouped by category in the **Refactoring operations** wizard page. You can also access the operations from the **Refactoring** submenu in the contextual menu of **Text** mode. The operations are also grouped by category in this submenu. When selecting the operations from the contextual menu, Oxygen XML Developer plugin considers the editing context to get the names and
namespaces of the current element or attribute, and uses this information to preconfigure some of the parameter values for the selected refactoring operation.

**Tip:** Each operation includes a link in the lower part of the wizard that opens the XML / XSLT-FO-XQuery / XPath preferences page where you can configure XPath options and declare namespace prefixes.

The following built-in operations are available:

**Refactoring Operations for Attributes**

**Add/Change attribute**

Use this operation to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

**Parent element section**

- **Element**
  
  The parent element of the attribute to be changed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

**Attribute section**

- **Local name**
  
  The local name of the affected attribute.

- **Namespace**
  
  The namespace of the affected attribute.

- **Value**
  
  The value for the affected attribute.

**Options section**

You can choose between one of the following options for the Operation mode:

- **Add the attribute in the parent elements where it is missing**
  
  Adds the attribute to all instances of the specified parent element.

- **Change the value in the parent elements where the attribute already exists**
Replaces the value of the already existing attribute in all instance of the specified parent element.

**Both**

Adds the attributes to the instances where it is missing and replaces the value in instances where the attribute already exists.

**Convert attribute to element**

Use this operation to convert a specified attribute to an element. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

**Parent element section**

**Element**

The parent element of the attribute to be converted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

**Attribute section**

**Local name**

The local name of the affected attribute.

**Namespace**

The namespace of the affected attribute.

**New element section**

**Local name**

The local name of the new element.

**Namespace**

The namespace of the new element.

**Delete attribute**

Use this operation to remove one or more attributes. This operation requires you to specify the following parameters:

**Element**

The parent element of the attribute to be deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

**Attribute**
The name of the attribute to be deleted.

**Rename attribute**

Use this operation to rename an attribute. This operation requires you to specify the following parameters:

**Element**

The parent element of the attribute to be renamed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

**Attribute**

The name of the attribute to be renamed.

**New local name**

The new local name of the attribute.

**Replace in attribute value**

Use this operation to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

**Target attribute section**

**Element**

The parent element of the attribute to be modified, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

**Attribute**

The name of the attribute to be modified.

**Find / Replace section**

**Find**

The text fragments to find. You can use Perl-like regular expressions.

**Replace with**

The text fragment to replace the target with. This parameter can bind regular expression capturing groups ($1, $2, etc.) from the find pattern.
Refactoring Operations for Comments

Delete comments

Use this operation to delete comments from one or more elements. This operation requires you specify the following parameter:

Element

The target element (or elements) for which comments will be deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Note: Comments that are outside the root element will not be deleted because the serializer preserves the content before and after the root.

Refactoring Operations for DITA

Change topic ID to file name

Use this operation to change the ID of a topic to be the same as its file name.

Convert CALS tables to simple tables

Use this operation to convert DITA CALS tables to simple tables.

Convert conrefs to conkeyrefs

Use this operation to convert conref attributes to conkeyref attributes.

Convert simple tables to CALS tables

Use this operation to convert DITA simple tables to CALS tables.

Convert Nested Topics to New Topics

Use this operation on topics that contain nested <topic> elements to convert each nested topic to a new topic.

Convert Sections to New Topics

Use this operation on topics that contain multiple sections to convert each section to a new topic.

Convert to Concept

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Concept topic type (for example, Topic to Concept).

Convert to General Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA General Task topic type (for example, Task to General Task).
Convert to Reference

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Reference topic type (for example, Topic to Reference).

Convert to Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Task topic type (for example, Topic to Task).

Convert to Topic

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Topic (for example, Task to Topic).

Convert to Troubleshooting

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Troubleshooting topic type (for example, Topic to Troubleshooting).

Rename Key

Use this operation to rename a key. It also updates all references to it. Note that it does not work on DITA 1.3 key scopes.

All of these DITA refactoring actions allow you to choose a scope for the operation and some filters:

Scope

Select from a variety of options to define the scope for which resources will be affected by the operation. For example, you can choose to affect all resources in the Project, All opened files, Current DITA map hierarchy, or just the Current file.

Filters section

Include files

Specifies files to be excluded from the operation. You can specify multiple files by separating them with commas and the patterns can include wildcards (such as * or ?).

Restrict to known XML file types only

Excludes non-XML file types from the operation.

Refactoring Operations for Elements

Delete element

Use this operation to delete elements. This operation requires you to specify the following parameter:

Element
The target element to be deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

**Delete element content**

Use this operation to delete the content of elements. This operation requires you to specify the following parameter:

**Element**

The target element whose content is to be deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

**Insert element**

Use this operation to insert new elements. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

**Element section**

**Local name**

The local name of the element to be inserted.

**Namespace**

The namespace of the element to be inserted.

**Location section**

**XPath**

An XPath expression that identifies an existing element to which the new element is relative, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

**Position**

The position where the new element will be inserted, in relation to the specified existing element. The possible selections in the drop-down menu are: **After, Before, First child, or Last child.**

**Rename element**

Use this operation to rename elements. This operation requires you to specify the following parameters:
Target elements (XPath)

The target elements to be renamed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

New local name

The new local name of the element.

Unwrap element

Use this operation to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged. This operation requires you to specify the following parameter:

Target elements (XPath)

The target elements whose surrounding tags will be removed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

Wrap element

Use this operation to surround elements with element tags. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Target elements (XPath)

The target elements to be surrounded with tags, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

Wrapper element section

Local name

The local name of the Wrapper element.

Namespace

The namespace of the Wrapper element.

Wrap element content

Use this operation to surround the content of elements with element tags. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Target elements (XPath)

The target elements whose content will be surrounded with tags, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.
Wrapper element section

Local name
The local name of the Wrapper element that will surround the content of the target.

Namespace
The namespace of the Wrapper element that will surround the content of the target.

Refactoring Operations for Fragments

Insert XML fragment
Use this operation to insert an XML fragment. This operation allows you to specify the following:

XML Fragment
The XML fragment to be inserted.

Location section

XPath
An XPath expression that identifies an existing element to which the inserted fragment is relative, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

Position
The position where the fragment will be inserted, in relation to the specified existing element. The possible selections in the drop-down menu are: After, Before, First child, or Last child.

Replace element content with XML fragment
Use this operation to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Target elements (XPath)
The target elements whose content will be replaced, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

XML Fragment
The XML fragment with which to replace the content of the target element.

**Replace element with XML fragment**

Use this operation to replace elements with an XML fragment. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

**Target elements (XPath)**

The target elements to be replaced, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

**XML Fragment**

The XML fragment with which to replace the target element.

**Refactoring Operations for JATSKit**

**Add BITS DOCTYPE - NLM/NCBI Book Interchange 2.0**

Use this operation to add an NLM 'BITS' 2.0 DOCTYPE declaration.

**Add Blue DOCTYPE - NISO JATS Publishing 1.1**

Use this operation to add a JATS 'Blue' 1.1 DOCTYPE declaration.

**Normalize IDs**

Use this operation to normalize assigned IDs and assigned IDs to elements that are missing them.

All of these JATSKit refactoring actions allow you to choose a scope for the operation and some filters:

**Scope**

Select from a variety of options to define the scope for which resources will be affected by the operation. For example, you can choose to affect all resources in the **Project**, **All opened files**, or just the **Current file**.

**Filters section**

**Include files**

Specifies files to be excluded from the operation. You can specify multiple files by separating them with commas and the patterns can include wildcards (such as * or ?).

**Restrict to known XML file types only**

Excludes non-XML file types from the operation.
Refactoring Operations for Publishing Template

These operations are for those who use Oxygen Publishing Templates for WebHelp Responsive output customization.

Migrate HTML Page Layout Files to v21

Use this operation to convert custom HTML page layout files (on page 1121) that are included in a custom Publishing Template that was created in Oxygen XML Developer plugin version 20.0 or 20.1 so that they will be compatible with Oxygen XML Developer plugin version 21.0.

Update HTML Pages

⚠️ Attention: This operation is only used by Oxygen XML Developer plugin and should not be used manually.

Additional Notes

Note: There are some operations that allow `<ANY>` for the local name and namespace parameters. This value can be used to select an element or attribute regardless of its local name or namespace. Also, the `<NO_NAMESPACE>` value can be used to select nodes that do not belong to a namespace.

Note: Some operations have parameters that accept XPath expressions to match elements or attributes. In these XPath expressions you can only use the prefixes declared in the Options > Preferences > XML > XSLT-FO-XQUERY > XPath (on page 146) page. This preferences page can be easily opened by clicking the link in the note (Each prefix used in an XPath expression must be declared in the Default prefix-namespace mappings section) at the bottom of the Configure Operation Parameters wizard page.

Custom Refactoring Operations

While Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a variety of built-in XML refactoring operations to help you accomplish particular tasks, you can also create custom operations according to your specific needs. For example, you could create a custom refactoring operation to convert an attribute to an element and insert the element as the first child of the parent element.

An XML Refactoring operation is defined as a pair of resources:

- An XQuery Update script or XSLT stylesheet that Oxygen XML Developer plugin will run to refactor the XML files.
• An XML Operation Descriptor file that contains information about the operation (such as the name, description, and parameters).

Figure 170. Diagram of an XML Refactoring Operation

All the defined custom operations are loaded by the XML Refactoring Tool and presented in the Refactoring Operations wizard page (on page 476), along with the built-in operations.

After the user chooses an operation and specifies its parameters, Oxygen XML Developer plugin processes an XQuery Update or XSLT transformation over the input file. This transformation is executed in a safe mode, which implies the following:

• When loading the document:
  ◦ The XInclude mechanism is disabled. This means that the resources included by using XInclude will not be visible in the transformation.
  ◦ The DTD entities will be processed without being expanded.
  ◦ The associated DTD will be not loaded, so the default attributes declared in the DTD will not be visible in the transformation.

• When saving the updated XML document:
  ◦ The DOCTYPE will be preserved.

  Note: This can be changed using Saxon extension functions in XSLT (on page 505).
  ◦ The DTD entities will be preserved as they are in the original document when the document is saved.
  ◦ The attribute values will be kept in their original form without being normalized.
The spaces between attributes are preserved. Basically, the spaces are lost by a regular XML serialization since they are not considered important.

The result of this transformation overrides the initial input file.

**Note:** To achieve some of the previous goals, the XML Refactoring mechanism adds several attributes that are interpreted internally. The attributes belong to the `http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/xmlRefactoring/additional_attributes` namespace. These attributes should not be taken into account when processing the input XML document since they are discarded when the transformed document is serialized.

**Restriction:** *Comments or processing instructions* that are in any node before or after the root element cannot be modified by an XML Refactoring operation. In other words, XML Refactoring operations can only be applied on the root element and the nodes inside it. However, as a work around to this limitation, you can use Saxon extension functions and the XSLT stylesheet method (*on page 505*) to implement the new custom XML refactoring operation.

### Creating a Custom Refactoring Operation

To create a custom refactoring operation, follow these steps:

1. Create an [XQuery Update script (*on page 496*)](on page 496) or [XSLT stylesheet file (*on page 500*)](on page 500).
2. Create an [XML Refactoring Operation Descriptor](on page 498) file contains the path to the XQuery Update script (*on page 496*) or XSLT stylesheet (*on page 503*).
3. Store both files in one of the locations that Oxygen XML Developer plugin (*on page 507*) scans when loading the custom operations.

**Result:** Once you run the XML Refactoring tool again, the custom operation appears in the [Refactoring Operations wizard page (*on page 476*)](on page 476).

**Related Information:**

- *Storing and Sharing Refactoring Operations (*on page 507*)

**Custom Refactoring Script**

The first step in creating a custom refactoring operation is to create an [XQuery Update script (*on page 496*)](on page 496) or [XSLT stylesheet (*on page 500*)](on page 500) that is needed to process the refactoring operations. The easiest way to create this script file is to use the **New** document wizard to create a new **XQuery** or **XSLT** file and you can use the [XQuery method example (*on page 496*)](on page 496) or [XSLT method example (*on page 500*)](on page 500) to help you with the content.
There are cases when it is necessary to add parameters in the XQuery script (on page 496) or XSLT stylesheet (on page 500). For instance, if you want to rename an element, you may want to declare an external parameter associated with the name of the element to be renamed. To allow you to specify the value for these parameters, they need to be declared in the refactoring operation descriptor file that is associated with this operation.

**Note:** The XQuery Update processing is disabled by default in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. Thus, if you want to create or edit an XQuery Update script you have to enable this mechanism by creating an XQuery transformation scenario (on page 963) and choose Saxon EE as the transformation engine. Also, you need to make sure the Enable XQuery update option is selected in the Saxon processor advanced options (on page 914).

**Note:** If you are using an XSLT file, XPath expressions that are passed as parameters will automatically be rewritten to conform with the mapping of the namespace prefixes declared in the XML /XSLT-FO-XQuery / XPath preferences page (on page 146).

The next step in creating a custom refactoring operation is to create an XML Refactoring Operation Descriptor file contains the path to the XQuery Update script (on page 498) or XSLT stylesheet (on page 503).

**Related Information:**

- XQuery Update Script for Creating a Custom Operation (on page 496)
- XSLT Stylesheet for Creating a Custom Operation (on page 500)

**Custom Refactoring Operation Descriptor File**

The second step in creating a custom refactoring operation is to create an operation descriptor file. The easiest way to do this is to use the New document wizard and choose the XML Refactoring Operation Descriptor template.

**Introduction to the Descriptor File**

This file contains information (such as name, description, and id) that is necessarily when loading an XML Refactoring operation. It also contains the path to the XQuery Update script (on page 496) or XSLT stylesheet (on page 500) that is associated with the particular operation through the script element.
You can specify a category for your custom operations to logically group certain operations. The category element is optional and if it is not included in the descriptor file, the default name of the category for the custom operations is Other operations.

The descriptor file is edited and validated against the following schema: frameworks/xml_refactoring/operation_descriptor.xsd.

### Declaring Parameters in the Descriptor File

If the XQuery Update script or XSLT stylesheet includes parameters, they should be declared in the parameters section of the descriptor file. All the parameters specified in this section of the descriptor file will be displayed in the XML Refactoring tool within the Configure Operation Parameters wizard page (on page 476) for that particular operation.

The value of the first description element in the parameters section will be displayed at the top of the Configure Operation Parameters wizard page (on page 476).

To declare a parameter, specify the following information:

- **label** - This value is displayed in the user interface for the parameter.
- **name** - The parameter name used in the XQuery Update script or XSLT stylesheet and it should be the same as the one declared in the script.
- **type** - Defines the type of the parameter and how it will be rendered. There are several types available:
  - TEXT - Generic type used to specify a simple text fragment.
  - XPATH - Type of parameter whose value is an XPATH expression. For this type of parameter, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will use a text input with corresponding content completion and syntax highlighting.

  **Note:** The value of this parameter is transferred as plain text to the XQuery Update or XSLT transformation without being evaluated. You should evaluate the XPath expression inside the XQuery Update script or XSLT stylesheet. For example, you could use the saxon:evaluate Saxon extension function.

  **Note:** A relative XPath expression is converted to an absolute XPath expression by adding // before it ( //XPathExp ). This conversion is done before transferring the XPath expression to the XML refactoring engine.

  **Note:** When writing XPath expressions, you can only use prefixes declared in the Options > Preferences > XML > XSLT-FO-XQUERY > XPath (on page 146) options page.

- NAMESPACE - Used for editing namespace values.
- REG_EXP_FIND - Used when you want to match a certain text by using Perl-like regular expressions.
• REG_EXP_REPLACE - Used along with REG_EXP_FIND to specify the replacement string.
• XML_FRAGMENT - This type is used when you want to specify an XML fragment. For this type, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will display a text area specialized for inserting XML documents.
• NC_NAME - The parameter for NC_NAME values. It is useful when you want to specify the local part of a QName (on page 1625) for an element or attribute.
• BOOLEAN - Used to edit boolean parameters.
• TEXT_CHOICE - It is useful for parameters whose value should be from a list of possible values. Oxygen XML Developer plugin renders each possible value as a radio button option.

• description - The description of the parameter. It is used by the application to display a tooltip when you hover over the parameter.
• possibleValues - Contains the list with possible values for the parameter and you can specify the default value, as in the following example:

```xml
<possibleValues onlyPossibleValuesAllowed="true">
    <value name="before">Before</value>
    <value name="after" default="true">After</value>
    <value name="firstChild">First child</value>
    <value name="lastChild">Last child</value>
</possibleValues>
```

### Specialized Parameters to Match Elements or Attributes

If you want to match elements or attributes, you can use some specialized parameters, in which case Oxygen XML Developer plugin will propose all declared elements or attributes based on the schema associated with the currently edited file. The following specialized parameters are supported:

**elementLocation**

This parameter is used to match elements. For this type of parameter, the application displays a text field where you can enter the element name or an XPath expression. The text from the label attribute is displayed in the application as the label of the text field. The name attribute is used to specify the name of the parameter from the XQuery Update script or XSLT stylesheet. If the value of the useCurrentContext attribute is set to true, the element name from the cursor position is used as proposed values for this parameter.

Example of an elementLocation:

```xml
<elementLocation name="elem_loc" useCurrentContext="false">
    <element label="Element location">
        <description>Element location description.</description>
```
attributeLocation

This parameter is used to match attributes. For this type of parameter, the application displays two text fields where you can enter the parent element name and the attribute name (both text fields accept XPath expressions for a finer match). The text from the label attributes is displayed in the application as the label of the associated text fields. The name attribute is used to specify the name of the parameter from the XQuery Update script or XSLT stylesheet. The value of this parameter is an XPath expression that is computed by using the values of the expression from the element and attribute text fields. For example, if section is entered for the element and a title is entered for the attribute, the XPath expression would be computed as //section/@title. If the value of the useCurrentContext attribute is set to true, the element and attribute name from the cursor position is used as proposed values for the operation parameters.

Example of an attributeLocation:

```xml
<attributeLocation name="attr_xpath" useCurrentContext="true">
  <element label="Element path">
    <description>Element path description.</description>
  </element>
  <attribute label="Attribute">
    <description>Attribute path description.</description>
  </attribute>
</attributeLocation>
```

elementParameter

This parameter is used to specify elements by local name and namespace. For this type of parameter, the application displays two combo boxes with elements and namespaces collected from the associated schema of the currently edited file. The text from the label attribute is displayed in the application as label of the associated combo. The name attribute is used to specify the name of the parameter from the XQuery Update script or XSLT stylesheet. If you specify the allowsAny attribute, the application will propose <ANY> as a possible value for the Name and Namespace combo boxes. You can also use the useCurrentContext attribute and if its value is set to true, the element name and namespace from the cursor position is used as proposed values for the operation parameters.

Example of an elementParameter:
<elementParameter id="elemID" useCurrentContext="true">
  <localName label="Name" name="element_localName" allowsAny="true">
    <description>Local name of the parent element.</description>
  </localName>
  <namespace label="Namespace" name="element_namespace" allowsAny="true">
    <description>Local name of the parent element</description>
  </namespace>
</elementParameter>

attributeParameter

This parameter is used to specify attributes by local name and namespace. For this type of parameter, the application displays two combo boxes with attributes and their namespaces collected from the associated schema of the currently edited file. The text from the label attribute is displayed in the application as the label of the associated combo box. You can also use the useCurrentContext attribute and if its value is set to true, the attribute name and namespace from the cursor position is used as proposed values for the operation parameters.

Note: An attributeParameter is dependant upon an elementParameter. The list of attributes and namespaces are computed based on the selection in the elementParameter combo boxes.

Example of an attributeParameter:

<attributeParameter dependsOn="elemID" useCurrentContext="true">
  <localName label="Name" name="attribute_localName">
    <description>The name of the attribute to be converted.</description>
  </localName>
  <namespace label="Namespace" name="attribute_namespace" allowsAny="true">
    <description>Namespace of the attribute to be converted.</description>
  </namespace>
</attributeParameter>

Note: All built-in operations are loaded from the [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/refactoring folder.
XQuery Update Script for Creating a Custom Operation

To demonstrate creating a custom operation, suppose that you have a task where you need to convert an attribute into an element and insert it inside another element. A specific example would be if you have a project with a variety of `image` elements where a deprecated `alt` attribute was used for the description and you want to convert all instances of that attribute into an element with the same name and insert it as the first child of the `image` element.

Thus, the task is to convert this attribute into an element with the same name and insert it as the first child of the `image` element.

Figure 171. Example: Custom XML Refactoring Operation

```xml
<image
  href="../image/insertBattery.jpg"
  alt="Insert the battery into the battery compartment."
  placement="break"/>

<image
  href="../image/insertBattery.jpg"
  placement="break">
  <alt>Insert the battery into the battery compartment.</alt>
</image>
```

An XQuery Update script can be used to implement the new custom XML refactoring operation. The second requirement is an XML Refactoring operation descriptor file (on page 498) that contains the path to the XQuery Update script.

⚠️ **Restriction:** There is a limitation to using an XQuery script in that comments or processing instructions that are in any node before or after the root element cannot be modified by an XML Refactoring operation. In other words, XML Refactoring operations can only be performed on
comments or processing instructions that are inside the root element. However, as a work around to this limitation, you can use Saxon extension functions and the XSLT stylesheet method (on page 505) to implement the new custom XML refactoring operation.

Example of an XQuery Update Script for Creating a Custom Operation to Convert an Attribute to an Element

The XQuery Update script does the following:

- Iterates over all elements from the document that have the specified local name and namespace.
- Finds the attribute that will be converted to an element.
- Computes the QName (on page 1625) of the new element to be inserted and inserts it as the first child of the parent element.

```
(:
  XQuery document used to implement 'Convert attribute to element'
  operation from XML Refactoring tool.
:)

declare namespace output = "http://www.w3.org/2010/xslt-xquery-serialization";
declare option output:method   "xml";
declare option output:indent   "no";

(: Local name of the attribute's parent element. :)
declare variable $element_localName as xs:string external;

(: Namespace of the attribute's parent element. :)
declare variable $element_namespace as xs:string external;

(: The local name of the attribute to be converted :) 
declare variable $attribute_localName as xs:string external;

(: The namespace of the attribute to be converted :) 
declare variable $attribute_namespace as xs:string external;

(: Local name of the new element. :) 
declare variable $new_element_localName as xs:string external;

(: Namespace of the new element. :) 
declare variable $new_element_namespace as xs:string external;
```
Example of an Operation Descriptor File That References the XQuery Script for Creating a Custom Operation to Convert an Attribute to an Element

After you have developed the XQuery script, you have to create an XML Refactoring operation descriptor. This descriptor is used by the application to load the operation details such as name, description, or parameters.

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>

<refactoringOperationDescriptor xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/xmlRefactoring"
```
id="convert-attribute-to-element"
name="Convert attribute to element">
<description>Converts the specified attribute to an element. The new element will be inserted as first child of the attribute's parent element.</description>
<!-- For the XSLT stylesheet option uncomment the following line and comment the line referring the XQuery Update script -->
<!-- <script type="XSLT" href="convert-attribute-to-element.xsl"/> -->
<script type="XQUERY_UPDATE" href="convert-attribute-to-element.xq"/>
<parameters>
<description>Specify the attribute to be converted to element.</description>
<section label="Parent element">
<elementParameter id="elemID">
<localName label="Name" name="element_localName" allowsAny="true">
<description>Local name of the parent element.</description>
</localName>
<namespace label="Namespace" name="element_namespace" allowsAny="true">
<description>Local name of the parent element</description>
</namespace>
</elementParameter>
</section>
<section label="Attribute">
<attributeParameter dependsOn="elemID">
<localName label="Name" name="attribute_localName">
<description>Name of the attribute to be converted.</description>
</localName>
<namespace label="Namespace" name="attribute_namespace" allowsAny="true">
<description>Namespace of the attribute to be converted.</description>
</namespace>
</attributeParameter>
</section>
<section label="New element">
<elementParameter>
<localName label="Name" name="new_element_localName">
<description>The name of the new element.</description>
</localName>
<namespace label="Namespace" name="new_element_namespace">
<description>The namespace of the new element.</description>
</namespace>
</elementParameter>
</section>
Results

After you have created these files, copy them into a folder scanned by Oxygen XML Developer plugin when it loads the custom operation (on page 507). When the XML Refactoring tool is started again, you will see the created operation.

Since various parameters can be specified, this custom operation can also be used for other similar tasks. The following image shows the parameters that can be specified in the example of the custom operation to convert an attribute to an element:

Figure 172. Example: XML Refactoring Wizard for a Custom Operation

XSLT Stylesheet for Creating a Custom Operation

To demonstrate creating a custom operation, suppose that you have a task where you need to convert an attribute into an element and insert it inside another element. A specific example would be if you have a project with a variety of image elements where a deprecated alt attribute was used for the description and you want to convert all instances of that attribute into an element with the same name and insert it as the first child of the image element.

Thus, the task is to convert this attribute into an element with the same name and insert it as the first child of the image element.

Figure 173. Example: Custom XML Refactoring Operation
An XSLT stylesheet can be used to implement the new custom XML refactoring operation. The second requirement is an XML Refactoring operation descriptor file (on page 503) that contains the path to the XSLT stylesheet.

**Example of an XSLT Script for Creating a Custom Operation to Convert an Attribute to an Element**

The XSLT stylesheet does the following:

- Iterates over all elements from the document that have the specified local name and namespace.
- Finds the attribute that will be converted to an element.
- Adds the new element as the first child of the parent element.

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
    xmlns:xr="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/xmlRefactoring"
    version="2.0">

    <xsl:param name="element_localName" as="xs:string" required="yes"/>
    <xsl:param name="element_namespace" as="xs:string" required="yes"/>
    <xsl:param name="attribute_localName" as="xs:string" required="yes"/>
    <xsl:param name="attribute_namespace" as="xs:string" required="yes"/>
```
<xsl:param name="new_element_localName" as="xs:string" required="yes"/>
<xsl:param name="new_element_namespace" as="xs:string" required="yes"/>

<xsl:template match="node() | @*">
  <xsl:copy>
    <xsl:apply-templates select="node() | @*"/>
  </xsl:copy>
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template match="/*[xr:check-local-name($element_localName, ., true())
  and
  xr:check-namespace-uri($element_namespace, .)]">
  <xsl:variable name="attributeToConvert"
    select="@*[xr:check-local-name($attribute_localName, ., true())
    and
    xr:check-namespace-uri($attribute_namespace, .)]"/>
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="empty($attributeToConvert)">
      <xsl:copy>
        <xsl:apply-templates select="node() | @*"/>
      </xsl:copy>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:copy>
        <xsl:for-each select="@*[empty(. intersect $attributeToConvert)]">
          <xsl:copy-of select="."/>
        </xsl:for-each>
        <!-- The new element namespace -->
        <xsl:variable name="nsURI" as="xs:string">
          <xsl:choose>
            <xsl:when test="$new_element_namespace eq $xr:NO-NAMESPACE">
              <xsl:value-of select="''"/>
            </xsl:when>
            <xsl:otherwise>
              <xsl:value-of select="$new_element_namespace"/>
            </xsl:otherwise>
          </xsl:choose>
        </xsl:variable>
        <xsl:element name="{$new_element_localName}" namespace="{$nsURI}"/>
      </xsl:copy>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
Note: The XSLT stylesheet imports a module library that contains utility functions and variables. The location of this module is resolved via an XML Catalog (on page 1627) set in the XML Refactoring framework (on page 1622).

Example of an Operation Descriptor File That References the XSLT Stylesheet for Creating a Custom Operation to Convert an Attribute to an Element

After you have developed the XSLT stylesheet, you have to create an XML Refactoring operation descriptor. This descriptor is used by the application to load the operation details such as name, description, or parameters.

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<refactoringOperationDescriptor
   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
   xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/xmlRefactoring"
   id="convert-attribute-to-element"
   name="Convert attribute to element">
   <description>Converts the specified attribute to an element.
       The new element will be inserted as first child of the attribute's
       parent element.</description>
   <!-- For the XSLT stylesheet option uncomment the following line and comment
       the line referring the XQuery Update script -->
   <!-- <script type="XSLT" href="convert-attribute-to-element.xsl"/> -->
   <script type="XQUERY_UPDATE" href="convert-attribute-to-element.xq"/>
   <parameters>
       <description>Specify the attribute to be converted to element.</description>
       <section label="Parent element">
           <elementParameter id="elemID">
               <localName label="Name" name="element_localName" allowsAny="true"/>
               <description>Local name of the parent element.</description>
           </localName>
       </section>
   </parameters>
</refactoringOperationDescriptor>
```
Note: If you are using an XSLT file, the line with the script element would look like this:

```xml
<script type="XSLT" href="convert-attribute-to-element.xsl"/>
```

Results

After you have created these files, copy them into a folder scanned by Oxygen XML Developer plugin when it loads the custom operation (on page 507). When the XML Refactoring tool is started again, you will see the created operation.

Since various parameters can be specified, this custom operation can also be used for other similar tasks. The following image shows the parameters that can be specified in the example of the custom operation to convert an attribute to an element:
Using Saxon Extension Functions to Allow Custom Refactoring Operations to Read and Modify Content Outside the Root Node

One advantage to using an XSLT stylesheet is that there is limitation when using an XQuery Update script (on page 496) in that refactoring operations can only be performed on comments or processing instructions that are inside the root element. Thus, using the XQuery method, comments or processing instructions that are in any node before or after the root element cannot be modified by an XML Refactoring operation.

The XSLT stylesheet method offers a work-around to this limitation through the use of some Saxon extension functions.

To illustrate the use of these functions, consider the following sample XML file:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!-- comment before root -->
<?pi before root ?>
<root>
    <child/>
</root>
<!-- comment after root -->
<?pi after root ?>
```

The following Saxon extension functions can be used to read and modify content outside the root node:

Note: They belong to the http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/xmlRefactoring/functions namespace.
• **get-content-after-root()** - Returns the content after root as `xs:string`.

For the XML above, the call of this function will return the following string value:

```xml
<!-- comment after root -->
<?pi after root ?>
```

• **set-content-after-root(xs:string)** - Updates the content that will be serialized in the refactored document after the root node.

The function call `set-content-after-root('&lt;!-- Inserted comment --&gt;')` will result in replacing the nodes after the root element with the comment passed as string argument. The XML document will be modified as follows:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!-- comment before root -->
<?pi before root ?>
<root>
  <child/>
</root>
<!-- Inserted comment -->
```

• **get-content-before-root()** - Returns the content before root as `xs:string`.

For the XML above, the call of this function will return the following string value:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!-- comment before root -->
<?pi before root ?>
```

• **set-content-before-root(xs:string)** - Updates the content that will be serialized in the refactored document after the root node.

The function call `set-content-before-root('&lt;!-- Inserted comment --&gt;')` will result in replacing the nodes before the root element with the comment passed as string argument. The XML document will be modified as follows:

```xml
<!-- Inserted comment -->
<root>
  <child/>
</root>
<!-- comment after root -->
<?pi after root ?>
```

**XSLT Example:**

To process content after the root node, the XSLT would look like this:
Note: The above XSLT retrieves the nodes after the root element as string, appends a new comment, and then sets back the updated content into the XML document.

Storing and Sharing Refactoring Operations

Oxygen XML Developer plugin scans the following locations when looking for XML Refactoring operations to provide flexibility:

- A refactoring folder, created inside a directory that is associated to a framework you are customizing. To associate the parent directory to the framework, you need to add it in the Classpath tab of the Document type configuration dialog box (on page 61).
• A folder that you specify in the Load additional refactoring operations from text box (on page 140) in the XML Refactoring preferences page (on page 140).
• The refactoring folder from the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation directory ({OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/refactoring/).

Sharing Custom Refactoring Operations

The purpose of Oxygen XML Developer plugin scanning multiple locations for the XML Refactoring operations is to provide more flexibility for developers who want to share the refactoring operations with the other team members. Depending on your particular use case, you can attach the custom refactoring operations to other resources, such as framework (on page 1622) or projects.

After storing custom operations, you can share them with other users by sharing the resources.

Localizing XML Refactoring Operations

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes localization support for the XML refactoring operations.

The translation keys for the built-in refactoring operations are located in {OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/refactoring/i18n/translation.xml.

The localization support is also available for custom refactoring operations. The following information can be translated:

• The operation name, description, and category.
• The description of the parameters element.
• The label, description, and possibleValues for each parameter.

Translated refactoring information uses the following form:

$$\{i18n(translation_key)\}$$

Oxygen XML Developer plugin scans the following locations to find the translation.xml files that are used to load the translation keys:

• A refactoring/i18n folder, created inside a directory that is associated to a customized framework.
• A i18n folder, created inside a directory that is associated to a customized framework.
• An i18n folder inside any specified folder. In this case, you need to open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to XML > XML Refactoring, and specify the folder in the Load additional refactoring operations from text box.
• The refactoring/i18n folder from the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation directory ({OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/refactoring/i18n).
Example: Refactoring Operation Descriptor File with i18n Support

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>

<refactoringOperationDescriptor
   xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/xmlRefactoring" id="remove_text_content"
   name="$i18n(Remove_text_content)">
   <description>$i18n(Remove_text_content_description)</description>
   <script type="XQUERY_UPDATE" href="remove_text_content.xq"/>
   <parameters>
     <description>$i18n(parameters_description)</description>
     <parameter label="$i18n(Element_name)" name="element_localName"
                type="NC_NAME">
       <description>$i18n(Element_name_descriptor)</description>
       <possibleValues>
         <value default="true" name="value1">$i18n(value_1)</value>
         <value name="value2">$i18n(value_2)</value>
       </possibleValues>
     </parameter>
   </parameters>
</refactoringOperationDescriptor>

XML Digital Signatures

This chapter explains how to apply and verify digital signatures on XML documents.

Digital Signatures Overview

Digital signatures are widely used as security tokens, not just in XML. A digital signature provides a mechanism for assuring integrity of data, the authentication of its signer, and the non-repudiation of the entire signature to an external party:

- A digital signature must provide a way to verify that the data has not been modified or replaced to ensure integrity.
- The signature must provide a way to establish the identity of the data's signer for authentication.
- The signature must provide the ability for the data's integrity and authentication to be provable to a third party for non-repudiation.

A public key system is used to create the digital signature and it is also used for verification. The signature binds the signer to the document because digitally signing a document requires the originator to create a hash of the message and then encrypt that hash value with their own private
key. Only the originator has that private key and that person is the only one who can encrypt the hash so that it can be unencrypted using their public key. The recipient, upon receiving both the message and the encrypted hash value, can decrypt the hash value, knowing the originator’s public key. The recipient must also try to generate the hash value of the message and compare the newly generated hash value with the unencrypted hash value received from the originator. If the hash values are identical, it proves that the originator created the message, because only the actual originator could encrypt the hash value correctly.

XML Signatures can be applied to any digital content (data object), including XML (see W3C Recommendation, XML-Signature Syntax and Processing). An XML Signature may be applied to the content of one or more resources:

- Enveloped or enveloping signatures are applied over data within the same XML document as the signature
- Detached signatures are applied over data external to the signature element; the signature is “detached” from the content it signs. This definition typically applies to separate data objects, but it also includes the instance where the signature and data object reside within the same XML document but are sibling elements.

The XML Signature is a method of associating a key with referenced data. It does not normatively specify how keys are associated with persons or institutions, nor the meaning of the data being referenced and signed.

The original data is not actually signed. Instead, the signature is applied to the output of a chain of canonicalization (on page 1620) and transformation algorithms, which are applied to the data in a designated sequence. This system provides the flexibility to accommodate whatever “normalization” or desired preprocessing of the data that might be required or desired before subjecting it to being signed.

Since the signature is dependent on the content it is signing, a signature produced from a non-canonicalized document could possibly be different from one produced from a canonicalized (on page 1620) document. The canonical (on page 1620) form of an XML document is physical representation of the document produced by the method described in this specification. The XML canonicalization (on page 1620) method is the algorithm defined by this specification that generates the canonical form of a given XML document or document subset. XML canonicalization is designed to be useful for applications that require the ability to test whether or not the information content of a document or document subset has been changed. This is done by comparing the canonical form of the original document before application processing with the canonical form of the document result of the application processing.

A digital signature over the canonical (on page 1620) form of an XML document or document subset allows the signature digest calculations to be oblivious to changes in the original document’s physical
representation. During signature generation, the digest is computed over the canonical form of the document. The document is then transferred to the relying party, which validates the signature by reading the document and computing a digest of the canonical form of the received document. The equivalence of the digests computed by the signing and relying parties (hence, the equivalence of the canonical forms for which they were computed) ensures that the information content of the document has not been altered since it was signed.

The following canonicalization algorithms are used in Oxygen XML Developer plugin:

- **Canonical XML (or Inclusive XML Canonicalization)** (XMLC14N) - Used for XML where the context doesn't change. Inclusive Canonicalization copies all the declarations, even if they are defined outside of the scope of the signature, and all the declarations you might use will be unambiguously specified. Inclusive Canonicalization is useful when it is less likely that the signed data will be inserted in other XML document and it is the safer method from the security standpoint because it requires no knowledge of the data that are to be secured to safely sign them. A problem may occur if the signed document is moved into another XML document that has other declarations because the Inclusive Canonicalization will copy them and the signature will be invalid.

- **Exclusive XML Canonicalization** (EXCC14N) - Designed for canonicalization where the context might change. Exclusive Canonicalization just copies the namespaces you are actually using (the ones that are a part of the XML syntax). It does not look into attribute values or element content, so the namespace declarations required to process these are not copied. This is useful if you have a signed XML document that you want to insert into other XML documents (or you need self-signed structures that support placement within various XML contexts), as it will ensure the signature is verified correctly each time.

The **canonicalization** method can specify whether or not comments should be included in the canonical form output by the XML canonicalization method. If a canonical form contains comments corresponding to the comment nodes in the input node-set, the result is called canonical XML with comments. In an uncommented canonical form, comments are removed, including the delimiter for comments outside the document element.

The three operations, **Canonicalize (on page 512)**, **Sign (on page 514)**, and **Verify Signature (on page 516)**, are available from the Source submenu when invoking the contextual menu in Text mode or from the XML Tools menu.

**Related Information:**

- **Certificates (on page 512)**
Certificates

A certificate is a digitally signed statement from the issuer (an individual, an organization, a website or a firm), saying that the public key (and some other information) of some other entity has a particular value. When data is digitally signed, the signature can be verified to check the data integrity and authenticity. Integrity means that the data has not been modified. Authenticity means the data comes indeed from the entity that claims to have created and signed it. Certificates are kept in special repositories called keystores (on page 1623).

All keystore entries (key and trusted certificate entries) are accessed via unique aliases. An alias must be assigned for every new entry of either a key or certificate as a reference for that entity. No keystore can store an entity if its alias already exists in that keystore and cannot store trusted certificates generated with keys in its keystore.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides two types of keystores: Java Key Store (JKS) and Public-Key Cryptography Standards version 12 (PKCS-12). A keystore file is protected by a password. In a PKCS 12 keystore you should not store a certificate without alias together with other certificates, with or without alias, as in such a case the certificate without alias cannot be extracted from the keystore.

To configure the options for a certificate or to validate it, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XML Signing Certificates. This opens the certificates preferences page (on page 140).

Related Information:

• Digital Signatures Overview (on page 509)
Canonicalizing Files

You can select the canonicalization (on page 1620) algorithm to be used for a document from the dialog box that is displayed by using the Canonicalize action that is available from the Source submenu when invoking the contextual menu in Text mode or from the XML Tools menu.

Figure 175. Canonicalization Settings Dialog Box

![Canonicalization Settings Dialog Box](image)

The Canonicalize dialog box allows you to set the following options:

- **Input URL** - Available if the Canonicalize action was selected from the XML Tools menu. It allows you to specify the location of the input file.

- **Exclusive** - If selected, the exclusive (uncommented) canonicalization (on page 1620) method is used.

  **Note:** Exclusive Canonicalization just copies the namespaces you are actually using (the ones that are a part of the XML syntax). It does not look into attribute values or element content, so the namespace declarations required to process these are not copied. This is useful if you have a signed XML document that you want to insert into other XML documents (or you need self-signed structures that support placement within various XML contexts), as it will ensure the signature is verified correctly each time.

- **Exclusive with comments** - If selected, the exclusive with comments canonicalization (on page 1620) method is used.

- **Inclusive** - If selected, the inclusive (uncommented) canonicalization (on page 1620) method is used.

  **Note:** Inclusive Canonicalization copies all the declarations, even if they are defined outside of the scope of the signature, and all the declarations you might use will be unambiguously
specified. Inclusive Canonicalization is useful when it is less likely that the signed data will be inserted in other XML document and it is the safer method from the security standpoint because it requires no knowledge of the data that are to be secured to safely sign them. A problem may occur if the signed document is moved into another XML document that has other declarations because the Inclusive Canonicalization will copy them and the signature will be invalid.

- **Inclusive with comments** - If selected, the inclusive with comments canonicalization method is used.
- **XPath** - The XPath expression provides the fragments of the XML document to be signed.
- **Output** - Available if the Canonicalize action was selected from the XML Tools menu. It allows you to specify the output file path where the signed XML document will be saved.
- **Open in editor** - If selected, the output file will be opened in the editor.

**Related Information:**

- **Digital Signatures Overview (on page 509)**

**Signing Files**

You can select the type of signature to be used for documents from a signature settings dialog box. To open this dialog box, select the Sign action from the Source submenu when invoking the contextual menu in Text mode or from the XML Tools menu.

Figure 176. Signature Settings Dialog Box
The following options are available:

**Note:** If Oxygen XML Developer plugin could not find a valid certificate, a link is provided at the top of the dialog box that opens the XML Signing Certificates preferences page (on page 140) where you can configure a valid certificate.

- **Input** - Available if the Sign action was selected from the XML Tools menu. Specifies the location of the input URL.
- **Transformation Options** - See the Digital Signature Overview (on page 509) section for more information about these options.
  - **None** - If selected, no canonicalization (on page 1620) algorithm is used.
  - **Exclusive** - If selected, the exclusive (uncommented) canonicalization (on page 1620) method is used.

**Note:** Exclusive Canonicalization just copies the namespaces you are actually using (the ones that are a part of the XML syntax). It does not look into attribute values or element content, so the namespace declarations required to process these are not copied. This is useful if you have a signed XML document that you want to insert into other XML documents (or you need self-signed structures that support placement within various XML contexts), as it will ensure the signature is verified correctly each time.
• **Exclusive with comments** - If selected, the exclusive with comments canonicalization (on page 1620) method is used.

• **Inclusive** - If selected, the inclusive (uncommented) canonicalization (on page 1620) method is used.

**Note:** Inclusive Canonicalization copies all the declarations, even if they are defined outside of the scope of the signature, and all the declarations you might use will be unambiguously specified. Inclusive Canonicalization is useful when it is less likely that the signed data will be inserted in other XML document and it is the safer method from the security standpoint because it requires no knowledge of the data that are to be secured to safely sign them. A problem may occur if the signed document is moved into another XML document that has other declarations because the Inclusive Canonicalization will copy them and the signature will be invalid.

• **Inclusive with comments** - If selected, the inclusive with comments canonicalization (on page 1620) method is used.

• **XPath** - The XPath expression provides the fragments of the XML document to be signed.

• **ID** - Provides ID of the XML element to be signed.

• **Envelope** - If selected, the enveloped signature is used. See the Digital Signature Overview (on page 509) for more information.

• **Detached** - If selected, the detached signature is used. See the Digital Signature Overview (on page 509) for more information.

• **Append KeyInfo** - If this option is selected, the ds:KeyInfo element will be added in the signed document.

• **Signature algorithm** - The algorithm used for signing the document. The following options are available: RSA with SHA1, RSA with SHA256, RSA with SHA384, and RSA with SHA512.

• **Output** - Available if the Sign action was selected from the XML Tools menu. Specifies the path of the output file where the signed XML document will be saved.

• **Open in editor** - If selected, the output file will be opened in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

---

Related Information:

• Digital Signatures Overview (on page 509)

• Verifying Signature (on page 516)

• Example of How to Digitally Sign XML Files or Content (on page 517)
Verifying Signature

You can verify the signature of a file by selecting the **Verify Signature** action from the **Source** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in **Text** mode or from the **XML Tools** menu. The **Verify Signature** dialog box then allows you to specify the location of the file whose signature is verified.

If the signature is valid, a dialog box displays the name of the signer. Otherwise, an error shows details about the problem.

**Related Information:**

- Digital Signatures Overview *(on page 509)*
- Signing Files *(on page 514)*
- Example of How to Digitally Sign XML Files or Content *(on page 517)*

Example of How to Digitally Sign XML Files or Content

Suppose you want to digitally sign an XML document, but more specifically, suppose you have multiple instances of the same element in the document and you just want to sign a specific ID. Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a signature tool that allows you to digitally sign XML documents or specific content.

The Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation directory includes a **samples** folder that contains a file called *personal.xml*. For the purposes of this example, this file will be used to demonstrate how to digitally sign specific content. Notice that this file has multiple **person** elements inside the **personnel** element. Suppose you want to digitally sign the specific **person** element that contains the id=robert.taylor. To do this, follow this procedure:

1. Open the *personal.xml* file in Oxygen XML Developer plugin in **Text** editing mode.

2. Right-click anywhere in the editor and select the **Sign** action from the **Source** submenu. The **Sign** dialog box is displayed.

   **Tip:** If you want to sign a file but create a new output file so that the original file remains unchanged, use the **Sign** action from the **XML Tools** menu. Selecting the action from this menu will allow you to choose an input file and output file in the **Sign** dialog box.

3. If Oxygen XML Developer plugin cannot find a valid certificate, click the link at the top of the dialog box to **configure a valid certificate**. This opens the **XML Signing Certificates preferences page (on page 140)** that allows you to configure and validate a certificate.
4. Once a valid certificate is recognized, continue to configure the Sign dialog box.
   a. Select one of the Transformation Options (on page 515). For the purposes of this example, select the Inclusive with comments option.
   b. Specify the appropriate XPath expression for the specific element that needs to be signed. For this example, type /personnel/person in the XPath text box.
   c. Enter the specific ID that needs to be signed. For this example, type robert.taylor in the ID field.
   d. Select the Envelope option (on page 516) and leave the other options as their default values.

The digital signature is added at the end of the XML document, just before the end tag. It is always added at the end of the document, even if you only sign specific content within the document.

5. You can verify the signature by choosing the Verify Signature action from the Source submenu of the contextual menu.

Related Information:

- Digital Signatures Overview (on page 509)
- Signing Files (on page 514)
- Verifying Signature (on page 516)

Editing XSLT Stylesheets

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in editor for XSLT stylesheets. This section presents the features of the XSLT editor and how these features can be used. The features of the XSLT editor include:

- Create new XSLT files and templates - You can use the built-in new file wizards to create new XSLT documents or templates (on page 305).
- Open and Edit XSLT files - XSLT files can be opened and edited in the source editor (Text mode (on page 365)).
- Validation - Presents validation errors in XSLT files.
- Content completion - Offers proposals for properties and the values that are available for each property.
- Syntax highlighting - The syntax highlighting in Oxygen XML Developer plugin makes XSLT files more readable.
Editing XSLT Stylesheets in the Master Files Context

Smaller interrelated modules that define a complex stylesheet cannot be correctly edited or validated individually, due to their interdependency with other modules. For example, a function defined in a main stylesheet is not visible when you edit an included or imported module. Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides the support for defining the main module (or modules), allowing you to edit any of the imported/included files in the context of the larger stylesheet structure.

You can set a main XSLT stylesheet either using the master files support from the Navigator view (on page 337), or using a validation scenario.

To set a master file using a validation scenario, add validation units that point to the main modules. Oxygen XML Developer plugin warns you if the current module is not part of the dependencies graph computed for the main stylesheet. In this case, it considers the current module as the main stylesheet.

The advantages of editing in the context of master file (on page 1623) include:

- Correct validation of a module in the context of a larger stylesheet structure.
- Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) displays all components valid in the current context.
- The Outline view (on page 532) displays the components collected from the entire stylesheet structure.

For more information about editing XSLT stylesheets in the master files context, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/UZwg385RKNw

Related Information:

- XSLT Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View (on page 539)
- XSLT Component Dependencies View (on page 541)

Validating XSLT Stylesheets

 Numerous XSLT code quality assurance checks are done during automatic validation to help you keep your stylesheets valid and well formed. Oxygen XML Developer plugin performs the validation of XSLT
documents with the help of an XSLT processor that you can configure in the preferences pages (on page 150) according to the XSLT version.

For XSLT 1.0, the options are: Xalan, Saxon 6.5.5, Saxon 9.8.0.12 and a JAXP transformer specified by the main Java class. (on page 150) For XSLT 2.0, the options are: Saxon 9.8.0.12 and a JAXP transformer specified by the main Java class. (on page 150) For XSLT 3.0, the options are Saxon 9.8.0.12 and a JAXP transformer specified by the main Java class. (on page 150)

Creating a Validation Scenario for XSLT Stylesheets

You can validate an XSLT document using the engine defined in the transformation scenario, or a custom validation scenario. If you choose to validate using the engine from transformation scenario, and a transformation scenario is not associated with the current document or the engine has no validation support, the default engine is used. To set the default engine, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XSLT/FO/XQuery > XSLT.

You can also create new validation scenarios or edit existing ones, and you can add JARS (on page 1623) and classes that contain extension functions. To create or edit a validation scenario for an XSLT stylesheet, follow these steps:

1. With the XSLT file opened in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, select the Configure Validation Scenario(s) from the XML menu, or the toolbar, or from the Validate submenu when invoking the contextual menu on the XSLT file in the Navigator view (on page 210). The Configure Validation Scenario(s) dialog box is displayed. It contains the existing scenarios, organized in categories depending on the type of file they apply to. You can use the options in the Settings drop-down menu to filter which scenarios are shown.

2. To edit an existing scenario, select the scenario and press the Edit button. If you try to edit one of the read-only built-in scenarios, Oxygen XML Developer plugin creates a customizable duplicate (you can also use the Duplicate button).

3. To add a new scenario, press the New button. The New scenarios dialog box is displayed. It lists all validation units of the scenario.
4. Configure the following information in this dialog box:
   a. **Name** - The name of the validation scenario.
   b. **URL of the file to validate** - In most cases, leave this field as the default selection (the URL of the current file). If you want to specify a different URL, click its cell and enter the URL in the text field, select it from the drop-down list, or use the **Browse** drop-down menu or **Insert Editor Variable** (on page 162) button.
   c. **File type** - The file type should be **XSLT Document**.
   d. **Validation engine** - Click the cell to select a validation engine. You must select an engine to be able to add or edit extensions.
   e. **Automatic validation** - If this option is selected, the validation operation defined by this row is also used by the automatic validation feature.

5. To add or edit extensions, click the **Edit extensions** button. This button is only available if the **File type** is set as **XSLT Document** and a **Validation engine** is chosen.
   The **Libraries** dialog box is opened. It is used to specify the JARS and classes that contain extension functions called from the XSLT file of the current validation scenario. They will be searched, in the specified extensions, in the order displayed in this dialog box. To change the order of the items, select the item and press the **Move up** or **Move down** buttons.

6. Press **OK** to close the **New scenario** dialog box.
   The newly created validation scenario is now included in the list of scenarios in the **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** dialog box. You can select the scenario in this dialog box to associate it with the current XSLT document and press the **Apply associated** button to run the validation scenario.

---

**Validating XSLT Stylesheets with Custom Engines**

If you need to validate an XSLT stylesheet with a validation engine that is different from the built-in engine, you can configure external engines as custom XSLT validation engines in the Oxygen XML
Developer plugin preferences. After a custom validation engine is properly configured (on page 91), it can be applied on the current document by selecting it from the list of custom validation engines in the Validation toolbar drop-down menu. The document is validated against the schema declared in the document.

By default, there are two validators that are configured for XSLT stylesheets:

- **MSXML 4.0** - included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin (Windows edition). It is associated to the XSL Editor type in Preferences page. (on page 91)
- **MSXML.NET** - included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin (Windows edition). It is associated to the XSL Editor type in Preferences page. (on page 91)

Validating XSLT Stylesheets that Call Java Extensions

It is possible to validate XSLT that call Java extensions. This is achieved through a transformation scenario in which the Java extensions are specified, and the default validation will be processed using the parameters defined in the transformation scenario.

To validate XSLT with Java extensions, follow this procedure:

1. Create an XSLT transformation scenario (on page 937) for your XSLT document (select ✔ Configure Transformation Scenario(s) action from the toolbar, then click New, and select XSLT transformation).
2. In the New scenario dialog box, click the Extensions button (in the XSLT tab), specify the Java extensions (JAR libraries) that are needed, and click OK.
3. Once you are finished configuring the transformation scenario, click OK, then select Save and close.
4. Use the ✔ Validate button on the toolbar (or Alt + Shift + V, V) and the default validation will detect and use the transformation scenario profile you just configured and saved.

Related Information:

- Debugging XSLT that Call Java Extensions (on page 1522)

XSLT Quick Fix Support

The Oxygen XML Developer plugin Quick Fix support (on page 1626) helps you resolve various errors that appear in a stylesheet by proposing Quick Fixes to problems such as missing templates, misspelled template names, missing functions, or references to an undeclared variable or parameter.
To activate this feature, hover over or place the cursor in the highlighted area of text where a validation error or warning occurs. If a Quick Fix is available for that particular error or warning, you can access the Quick Fix proposals with any of the following methods:

- When hovering over the error or warning, the proposals are presented in a tooltip pop-up window.
- If you place the cursor in the highlighted area where a validation error or warning occurs, a Quick Fix icon (ë) is displayed in the stripe on the left side of the editor. If you click this icon, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the list of available fixes.
- With the cursor placed in the highlighted area of the error or warning, you can also invoke the Quick Fix menu by pressing **Ctrl + 1 (Command + 1 on OS X)** on your keyboard.

**Note:** The Quick Fixes are available only when validating an XSLT file with Saxon HE/PE/EE.

Figure 178. Example of an Undefined XSLT Functions Quick Fix

Figure 179. Example of an Undeclared XSLT Variables/Parameters Quick Fix

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides XSLT Quick Fixes for the following types of instances:

- **Template does not exist**, when the template name referenced in a `call-template` element does not exist. The following fixes are available:
  - *Create template "templateName"* - creates a template and generates its corresponding parameters. The template name and parameter names and types are collected from the `call-template` element.
  - *Change reference to "newTemplateName"* - changes the name of the missing template referenced in the `call-template` element. The proposed new names are the existing templates with names similar with the missing one.
- **Variable/Parameter not declared**, when a parameter or variable reference cannot be found. The following fixes are available:
- **Create global variable "varName"** - creates a global variable with the specified name in the current stylesheet. The new variable is added at the beginning of the stylesheet after the last global variable or parameter declaration.

- **Create global parameter "paramName"** - creates a global parameter with the specified name in the current stylesheet. The new parameter is added at the beginning of the stylesheet after the last global parameter or variable declaration.

- **Create local variable "varName"** - creates a local variable with the specified name before the current element.

- **Create template parameter "paramName"** - creates a new parameter with the specified name in the current template. This fix is available if the error is located inside a template.

- **Create function parameter "paramName"** - creates a new parameter with the specified name in the current function. This fix is available if the error is located inside a function.

- **Change reference to "varName"** - changes the name of the referenced variable/parameter to an existing local or global variable/parameter, that has a similar name with the current one.

- **Parameter from a called template is not declared**, when a parameter referenced from a call-template element is not declared. The following fixes are available:
  - **Create parameter "paramName" in the template "templateName"** - creates a new parameter with the specified name in the referenced template.
  - **Change "paramName" parameter reference to "newParamName"** - changes the parameter reference from the call-template element to a parameter that is declared in the called template.
  - **Remove parameter "paramName" from call-template** - removes the parameter with the specified name from the call-template element.

- **No value supplied for required parameter**, when a required parameter from a template is not referenced in a call-template element. The **Add parameter "paramName" in call-template quick-fix** is available. It creates a new parameter with the specified name in call-template element.

- **Function "prefix:functionName()" has not been defined**, when a function declaration is not found. The following **Quick Fixes** are available:
  - **Create function "prefix:functionName(param1, param2)"** - creates a new function with the specified signature, after the current top level element from stylesheet.
  - **Change function to "newFunctionName(..)"** - changes the referenced function name to an already defined function. The proposed names are collected from functions with similar names and the same number of parameters.

- **Attribute-set "attrSetName" does not exist**, when the referenced attribute set does not exist. The following **Quick Fixes** are available:
  - **Create attribute-set "attrSetName"** - creates a new attribute set with the specified name, after the current top level element from stylesheet.
  - **Change reference to "attrSetName"** - changes the referenced attribute set to an already defined one.
• **Character-map "characterMap" has not been defined**, when the referenced character map declaration is not found. The following **Quick Fixes** are available:
  
  ◦ **Create character-map "characterMapName"** - creates a new character map with the specified name, after the current top level element from stylesheet.
  
  ◦ **Change reference to "characterMapName"** - changes the referenced character map to an already defined one.

**Content Completion in XSLT Stylesheets**

The list of proposals offered by the *Content Completion Assistant* (on page 1620) in XSLT are context-sensitive and includes proposals that are valid at the current cursor position. It can be manually activated with the **Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X)** shortcut.

You can enhance the list of proposals by specifying an additional schema. This schema is defined in the **Content Completion / XSLT preferences** (on page 90) page and can be any of the following: XML Schema, DTD, RELAX NG schema, or NVDL schema.

![Figure 180. XSLT Content Completion Assistant](image)

The feature is activated in **Text** mode in the following situations:

• After you press the `<` character when inserting an element, it is automatically activated after a short delay. You can adjust the activation delay with the **Activation delay of the proposals window (ms)** option (on page 88) from the **Content Completion** preferences page.

• After typing a partial element or attribute name, you can manually activate it by pressing **Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X)** or **Alt + ForwardSlash (Command + Alt + Forward Slash on OS X)**. If there is only one valid proposal at the current location, it is inserted without displaying the list of proposals.

The **Content Completion Assistant** proposes numerous item types (such as templates, variables, parameters, keys, etc.) that are defined in the current stylesheet, and in the imported and included
XSLT stylesheets. The Content Completion Assistant also includes code templates that can be used to quickly insert code fragments (on page 389) into stylesheets.

Note: For XSL and XSD resources, the Content Completion Assistant collects its components starting from the master files (on page 1623). The master files can be defined in the project or in the associated validation scenario. For further details about the Master Files support go to Defining Master Files at Project Level (on page 337).

The extension functions included in the Saxon 6.5.5 and 9.8.0.12 transformation engines are presented in the content completion list only if the Saxon namespace (http://saxon.sf.net for XSLT version 2.0 / 3.0 or http://icl.com/saxon for XSLT version 1.0) is declared and one of the following conditions is true:

- The edited file has a transformation scenario that uses as transformation engine Saxon 6.5.5 (for XSLT version 1.0), Saxon 9.8.0.12 PE or Saxon 9.8.0.12 EE (for XSLT version 2.0 / 3.0).
- The edited file has a validation scenario that uses as validation engine Saxon 6.5.5 (for version 1.0), Saxon 9.8.0.12 PE or Saxon 9.8.0.12 EE (for version 2.0 / 3.0).
- The validation engine specified in Options (on page 150) page is Saxon 6.5.5 (for version 1.0), Saxon 9.8.0.12 PE or Saxon 9.8.0.12 EE (for version 2.0 / 3.0).

Additionally, the Saxon-CE-specific extension functions and instructions are presented in the list of content completion assistance proposals only if the http://saxonica.com/ns/interactiveXSLT namespace is declared.

Namespace prefixes in the scope of the current context are presented at the top of the content completion assistance window to speed up the insertion into the document of prefixed elements.

Figure 181. Namespace Prefixes in the Content Completion Assistant

For the common namespaces such as XSL namespace (http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform), XML Schema namespace (http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema), or Saxon namespace (http://
Content Completion in XPath Expressions

In XSLT stylesheets, the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620)* provides all the features available in the XML editor (on page 378) and also adds some enhancements. In XPath expressions used in attributes of XSLT stylesheets (elements such as `match`, `select`, and `test`), the *Content Completion Assistant* offers the names of XPath and XSLT functions, XSLT axes, and user-defined functions (the name of the function and its parameters). If a transformation scenario was defined and associated to the edited stylesheet, the *Content Completion Assistant* computes and presents elements and attributes based on:

- The input XML document selected in the scenario.
- The current context in the stylesheet.

The associated document is displayed in the *XSLT/XQuery Input* view (on page 537).

Content completion for XPath expressions is started:

- On XPath operators detected in one of the `match`, `select` and `test` attributes of XSLT elements: `"`, ``, `/`, `//`, `{`, `|`, `::`, `$`
- For attribute value templates of non-XSLT elements, that is the `{` character when detected as the first character of the attribute value.
- On request, if the combination *Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X)* is pressed inside an edited XPath expression.

The proposals presented in the *Content Completion Assistant* are dependent on:

- The context of the current XSLT element.
- The XML document associated with the edited stylesheet in the stylesheet transformation scenario.
- The XSLT version of the stylesheet (1.0, 2.0, or 3.0).

**Note:** The XSLT 3.0 content completion list of proposals includes specific elements and attributes for the 3.0 version.

For example, if the document associated with the edited stylesheet is:

```xml
<personnel>
  <person id="Big.Boss">
    <name>
      <family>Boss</family>
    </name>
  </person>
</personnel>
```
If you enter an xsl:template element using the Content Completion Assistant, the following actions are triggered:

- The match attribute is inserted automatically.
- The cursor is placed between the quotes.
- The XPath Content Completion Assistant automatically displays a pop-up window with all the XSLT axes, XPath functions and elements and attributes from the XML input document that can be inserted in the current context.

The set of XPath functions depends on the XSLT version declared in the root element xsl:stylesheet: 1.0, 2.0, or 3.0. Functions from other namespaces, such as maps, arrays, and math, are presented only if the namespaces are declared.

Figure 182. Content Completion in the match Attribute

If the cursor is inside the select attribute of an xsl:for-each, xsl:apply-templates, xsl:value-of or xsl:copy-of element the content completion proposals depend on the path obtained by
concatenating the XPath expressions of the parent XSLT elements `xsl:template` and `xsl:for-each` as shown in the following figure:

Figure 183. Content Completion in the `select` Attribute

```xml
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform" version="2.0">
  <xsl:for-each select="*">
    <xsl:if select="name() | (/*)/name()">
      The ancestor-or-self axis contains the context node and the ancestors of the context node; thus, the ancestor axis will always include the root node.
      Name: ancestor-or-self::*(). selects the name of the context node and all of its ancestors.
      http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xsl-19991116
    </xsl:if>
  </xsl:for-each>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

Also XPath expressions typed in the `test` attribute of an `xsl:if` or `xsl:when` element benefit of the assistance of the content completion.

Figure 184. Content Completion in the `test` Attribute

```xml
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform" version="2.0">
  <xsl:template match="personnel">
    <xsl:for-each select="*">
      <xsl:if select="name | link">
        <xsl:value-of select="*[name = $paramName]"/>
      </xsl:if>
    </xsl:for-each>
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

XSLT variable references are easier to insert in XPath expressions with the help of the content completion pop-up triggered by the `$` character, which signals the start of such a reference in an XPath expression.

Figure 185. Content Completion in the `test` Attribute
If the \{ character is the first one in the value of the attribute, the same Content Completion Assistant is available also in attribute value templates of non-XSLT elements.

Figure 186. Content Completion in Attribute Value Templates

The time delay (configured in the Content Completion preferences page (on page 88)) is also applied for the content completion in XPath expressions.

Related Information:

- Working with XPath Expressions (on page 1394)

Tooltip Helper for the XPath Functions Arguments

When editing the arguments of an XPath/XSLT function, Oxygen XML Developer plugin tracks the current entered argument by displaying a tooltip containing the function signature. The currently edited argument is highlighted with a bolder font.

When moving the cursor through the expression, the tooltip is updated to reflect the argument found at the cursor position.

Examples:

If you want to concatenate the absolute values of two variables, named v1 and v2.
When moving the cursor before the first `abs` function, Oxygen XML Developer plugin identifies it as the first argument of the `concat` function. The tooltip shows in bold font the following information about the first argument:

- Its name is $arg1.
- Its type is `xdt:anyAtomicType`.
- It is optional (note the `?` sign after the argument type).

The function also takes other arguments that have the same type and returns a `xs:string`.

Figure 187. XPath Tooltip Helper - Identify the `concat` Function's First Argument

Moving the cursor on the first variable `$v1`, the editor identifies the `abs` as context function and shows its signature:

Figure 188. XPath Tooltip Helper - Identify the `abs` Function's Argument

Further, clicking the second `abs` function name, the editor detects that it represents the second argument of the `concat` function. The tooltip is repainted to display the second argument in bold font.

Figure 189. XPath Tooltip Helper - Identify the `concat` Function's Second Argument

Note: The tooltip helper is also available in the XPath Builder view (on page 1394).

Related Information:
Syntax Highlighting in XSLT

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports syntax highlighting in Text mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for XSLT files, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42).
2. Go to Editor > Syntax Highlight (on page 112).
3. Select and expand the XML section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.
5. Select the XSL tab in the Preview pane to see the effects of your changes.

**Tip:** Oxygen XML Developer plugin also allows you to specify syntax highlighting colors for specific XML elements and attributes with specific namespace prefixes. This can be done in the Editor > Syntax Highlight > Elements/Attributes by Prefix preferences page (on page 113).

Related Information:

- Customize Syntax Highlight colors (on page 112)

XSLT Outline View

The Outline view for XSLT stylesheets displays the list of all the components (templates, attribute-sets, character-maps, variables, functions, keys, outputs) from both the edited stylesheet and its imports or includes. For XSL and XSD resources, the Outline view collects its components starting from the master files (on page 1623). The master files can be defined in the project or in the associated validation scenario. For further details about the Master Files support go to Defining Master Files at Project Level (on page 337).

By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Figure 190. XSLT Outline View
The following actions are available in the View Menu on the Outline view action bar:

**Filter returns exact matches**

The text filter of the Outline view returns only exact matches;

**Selection update on cursor move**

Controls the synchronization between Outline view and source document. The selection in the Outline view can be synchronized with the cursor moves or the changes in the XSLT editor. Selecting one of the components from the Outline view also selects the corresponding item in the source document.

When the Show components option is selected, the following actions are available:

**Show XML structure**

Displays the XML document structure in a tree-like structure.

**Show all components**

Displays all components that were collected starting from the master file (on page 1623). This option is set by default.

**Show only local components**

Displays the components defined in the current file only.

**Group by location/type**

The stylesheet components can be grouped by location and type.

When the Show XML structure option is selected, the following actions are available:

**Show components**
Switches the **Outline** view to the components display mode.

- **Flat presentation mode of the filtered results**
  When active, the application flattens the filtered result elements to a single level.

- **Show comments and processing instructions**
  Show/hide comments and processing instructions in the **Outline** view.

- **Show element name**
  Show/hide element name.

- **Show text**
  Show/hide additional text content for the displayed elements.

- **Show attributes**
  Show/hide attribute values for the displayed elements. The displayed attribute values can be changed from the **Outline preferences panel** (on page 158).

- **Configure displayed attributes**
  Displays the **XML Structured Outline preferences page** (on page 158).

The following contextual menu actions are also available when the **Show components** option is selected in the **View menu**:

- **Edit Attributes**
  Opens a small in-place editor that allow you to edit the attributes of the selected node.

- **Cut**
  Cuts the currently selected node.

- **Copy**
  Copies the currently selected node.

- **Delete**
  Deletes the currently selected node.

- **Search References Ctrl + Shift + R (Command + Shift + R on OS X)**
  Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope, if any. See **Finding XSLT References and Declarations (on page 543)** for more details.

- **Search References in**
  Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the specified scope. See **Finding XSLT References and Declarations (on page 543)** for more details.

**Component Dependencies**
Opens the **Component Dependencies** view (on page 541) that allows you to see the dependencies for the current selected component.

**Resource Hierarchy**

Opens the **Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies** view (on page 539) that displays the hierarchy for the currently selected resource.

**Resource Dependencies**

Opens the **Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies** view (on page 539) that displays the dependencies of the currently selected resource.

**Rename Component in**

Renames the selected component. See XSLT Refactoring Actions (on page 547) for more details.

The following contextual menu actions are available in the **Outline** view when the **Show XML structure** option is selected in the **View menu**:

**Append Child**

Displays a list of elements that you can insert as children of the current element.

**Insert Before**

Displays a list of elements that you can insert as siblings of the current element, before the current element.

**Insert After**

Displays a list of elements that you can insert as siblings of the current element, after the current element.

**Edit Attributes**

Opens a small in-place editor that allow you to edit the attributes of the selected node.

**Toggle Comment**

Comments/uncomments the currently selected element.

**Search references**

Searches for the references of the currently selected component.

**Search references in**

Searches for the references of the currently selected component in the context of a scope that you define.

**Component dependencies**
Opens the *Component Dependencies view* (on page 541) that displays the dependencies of the currently selected component.

**Rename Component in**

Renames the currently selected component in the context of a scope that you define.

**Cut**

Cuts the currently selected component.

**Copy**

Copies the currently selected component.

**Delete**

Deletes the currently selected component.

**Expand All**

Expands the structure of a component in the *Outline* view.

**Collapse All**

Collapses the structure of all the component in the *Outline* view.

The stylesheet components information is presented on two columns: the first column presents the *name* and *match* attributes, the second column the *mode* attribute. If you know the component name, match or mode, you can search it in the *Outline* view by typing one of these pieces of information in the filter text field from the top of the view or directly on the tree structure. When you type de component name, match or mode in the text field, you can switch to the tree structure using:

- Keyboard arrow keys
- **Enter** key
- **Tab** key
- **Shift-Tab** key combination

To switch from tree structure to the filter text field, you can use **Tab** and **Shift-Tab**.

**Tip:** The search filter is case insensitive. The following wildcards are accepted:

- * - any string
- ? - any character
- , - patterns separator

If no wildcards are specified, the string to search is used as a partial match.

The content of the *Outline* view and the editing area are synchronized. When you select a component in the *Outline* view, its definition is highlighted in the editing area.
Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to sort the components of the tree in the **Outline** view.

**Note:** Sorting groups in the **Outline** view is not supported.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin has a predefined order of the groups in the **Outline** view:

- For location, the names of the files are sorted alphabetically. The file you are editing is located at the top of the list.
- For type, the order is: parameters, variables, templates, functions, set attributes, character-map.

**Note:** When no grouping is available and the table is not sorted, Oxygen XML Developer plugin sorts the components depending on their order in the document. Oxygen XML Developer plugin also takes into account the name of the file that the components are part of.

**XSLT Input View**

The structure of the XML document associated to the edited XSLT stylesheet is displayed in a tree form in a view called the **XSLT Input** view. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu. The tree nodes represent the elements of the documents.

If you click a node in the **XSLT Input** view, the corresponding template from the stylesheet is highlighted. A node can be dragged from this view and dropped in the editor area for quickly inserting `xsl:template`, `xsl:for-each`, or other XSLT elements that have the `match`, `select`, or `test` attribute already completed. The value of the attribute is the correct XPath expression that refers to the dragged tree node. This value is based on the current editing context of the drop spot.

**Example:**

For the following XML document:

```
<personnel>
  <person id="Big.Boss">
```

...
and the following XSLT stylesheet:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  version="2.0">
  <xsl:template match="personnel">
    <xsl:for-each select="*"/>
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

if you drag the `given` element and drop it inside the `xsl:for-each` element, the following pop-up menu is displayed:
if you select `insert xsl:copy-of` (for example), the resulting document will look like this:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform" version="2.0">
  <xsl:template match="personnel">
    <xsl:for-each select="*">
      <xsl:copy-of select="name/given"/>
    </xsl:for-each>
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

XSLT Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View

The **Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies** view displays the hierarchy or dependencies for a stylesheet. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

If you want to see the hierarchy or dependencies of a stylesheet, select the desired stylesheet in the **Navigator view (on page 210)** and choose **Resource Hierarchy** or **Resource Dependencies** from the contextual menu.

Figure 192. Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View

If you want to see the dependencies of a stylesheet, select the desired stylesheet in the **Navigator view (on page 210)** and choose **Resource Dependencies** from the contextual menu.

The following actions are available on the toolbar of the **Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies** view:

- **Refresh**
  
  Refreshes the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.
Stop

Stops the hierarchy/dependencies computing.

Show Hierarchy

Allows you to choose a resource to compute the hierarchy structure.

Show Dependencies

Allows you to choose a resource to compute the dependencies structure.

Configure dependencies search scope

Allows you to configure a scope to compute the dependencies structure. There is also an option for automatically using the defined scope for future operations.

History

Provides access to the list of previously computed dependencies. Use the Clear history button to remove all items from this list.

The contextual menu for a resource listed in the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view contains the following actions:

Open

Opens the resource. You can also double-click a resource in the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure to open it.

Go to reference

Opens the source document where the resource is referenced.

Copy location

Copies the location of the resource.

Move resource

Moves the selected resource.

Rename resource

Renames the selected resource.

Show Resource Hierarchy

Shows the hierarchy for the selected resource.

Show Resource Dependencies

Shows the dependencies for the selected resource.

Add to Master Files

Adds the currently selected resource in the Master Files directory (on page 337).
Expand All

Expands all the children of the selected resource from the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

Collapse All

Collapses all children of the selected resource from the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

Tip: When a recursive reference is encountered in the Hierarchy view, the reference is marked with a special icon.

Related Information:

- Search and Refactor Operations Scope (on page 466)

Moving/Renaming XSLT Resources

You can move and rename a resource presented in the Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies view, using the Rename resource and Move resource refactoring actions from the contextual menu.

When you select the Rename action in the contextual menu of the Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies view, the Rename resource dialog box is displayed. The following fields are available:

- New name - Presents the current name of the edited resource and allows you to modify it.
- Update references of the renamed resource(s) - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are renaming. A Preview option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting Rename to process the operation.

When you select the Move action from the contextual menu of the Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies view, the Move resource dialog box is displayed. The following fields are available:

- Destination - Presents the path to the current location of the resource you want to move and gives you the option to introduce a new location.
- New name - Presents the current name of the moved resource and gives you the option to change it.
- Update references of the moved resource(s) - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are moving, in accordance with the new location and name. A Preview option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting Move to process the operation.
XSLT Component Dependencies View

The Component Dependencies view allows you to see the dependencies for a selected component. This is helpful if you want to see where components are used in the entire hierarchy. For example, if you want to find all the references where a given component is used.

If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

To see the dependencies of an XSLT component:

1. Right-click the desired component in the editor or Outline view.
2. Select the Component Dependencies action from the contextual menu.

The action is available for all named components (templates, variables, parameters, attribute sets, keys, functions, outputs).

If a component contains multiple references, a small table is displayed at the bottom of the view that contains all the references. When a recursive reference is encountered, it is marked with a special icon.

Figure 193. Component Dependencies View - Hierarchy for table.xsl

The Component Dependencies view includes the following toolbar actions:

- **Refresh**
  Refreshes the dependencies structure.

- **Stop**
  Stops the dependency computation.
Configure

Allows you to choose the search scope for computing the dependencies structure. This is helpful for making sure all imported/included resources are computed.

History

Allows you to select from a list of the most recently used dependency computations.

In addition, the following actions are available in the contextual menu:

Go to First Reference

Selects the first reference of the currently selected component in the dependencies tree.

Go to Component

Shows the definition of the currently selected component in the dependencies tree.

Related Information:

- Search and Refactor Operations Scope (on page 466)

Highlight Component Occurrences

When a component (for example variable or named template) is found at current cursor position, Oxygen XML Developer plugin performs a search over the entire document to find the component declaration and all its references. When found, they are highlighted both in the document and in the stripe bar, at the right side of the document.

Note: Oxygen XML Developer plugin also supports occurrences highlight for template modes.

Customizable colors are used: one for the component definition and another one for component references. Occurrences are displayed until another component is selected and a new search is performed. All occurrences are removed when you start to edit the document.

This feature is enabled by default. To configure it, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Mark Occurrences. A search can also be triggered with the Search > Search Occurrences in File (Ctrl + Shift + U (Command + Shift + U on OS X)) contextual menu action. Matches are displayed in separate tabs of the Results view (on page 226).

Finding XSLT References and Declarations

The following search actions related with XSLT references and declarations are available from the Search submenu of the contextual menu:
Search References (Also available from the XSL menu)

Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope, if any. If a scope is defined but the currently edited resource is not part of the range of determined resources, a warning dialog box is displayed that allows you to define another search scope.

Search References in

Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the file or files that you specify when a scope is defined.

Search Declarations (Also available from the XSL menu)

Searches all declarations of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope, if any. If a scope is defined but the current edited resource is not part of the range of resources determined by this scope, a warning dialog box is displayed that allows you to define another search scope.

Search Declarations in

Searches all declarations of the item found at current cursor position in the file or files that you specify when a scope is defined.

Search Occurrences in File

Searches all occurrences of the item at the cursor position in the currently edited file.

The following action is available from the XSL menu:

Go to Definition

Moves the cursor to the location of the definition of the current item.

Note: You can also use the Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on OS X) shortcut on a reference to display its definition.

Related Information:

- Search and Refactor Operations Scope (on page 466)

XSLT Stylesheet Component Documentation Support

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers built-in support for documenting XSLT stylesheets. If the expanded QName (on page 1625) of the element has a non-null namespace URI, the xsl:stylesheet element may contain any element not from the XSLT namespace. Such elements
are referenced as user-defined data elements. Such elements can contain the documentation for the stylesheet and its elements (top-level elements whose names are in the XSLT namespace). Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers its own XML schema that defines such documentation elements. The schema is named `stylesheet_documentation.xsd` and can be found in `{{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}}/frameworks/stylesheet_documentation`. The user can also specify a custom schema in XSL Content Completion options (on page 90).

**Content Completion**

When content completion is invoked inside an XSLT editor by pressing Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X), it offers elements from the XSLT documentation schema (either the built-in one or one specified by user).

**Adding Documentation Blocks**

In Text mode, to add documentation blocks, press Ctrl + Alt + D (Command + Alt + D on OS X) or select Add component documentation from the contextual menu.

If the cursor is positioned inside the `xsl:stylesheet` element context, documentation blocks are generated for all XSLT elements. If the cursor is positioned inside a specific XSLT element (such as a template or function), a documentation block is generated for that element only.

**Example: Documentation Block Using Oxygen XML Developer plugin Built-in Schema**

```xml
<xd:doc>
  <xd:desc>
    <xd:p>Search inside parameter <xd:i>string</xd:i> for the last occurrence of parameter <xd:i>searched</xd:i>. The substring starting from the 0 position to the identified last occurrence will be returned.</xd:p>
    <xd:ref name="f:substring-after-last" type="function" xmlns:f="http://www.oxygenxml.com/doc/xsl/functions">See also</xd:ref>
  </xd:desc>
  <xd:param name="string">
    <xd:p>String to be analyzed</xd:p>
  </xd:param>
  <xd:param name="searched">
    <xd:p>Marker string. Its last occurrence will be identified</xd:p>
  </xd:param>
  <xd:return>
```
A substring starting from the beginning of `string` to the last occurrence of `searched`. If no occurrence is found an empty string will be returned.

**XSLT Documentation Links**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for links inside XSLT documentation blocks. Using a construct like `<xd:a docid="user-defined-id">TEXT</xd:a>` will cause the browser to scroll to the particular anchor (the defined ID) in the current document. Using a construct like `<xd:a href="http://www.my-web-site">TEXT</xd:a>` will open the referenced link in a new tab.

**Example: Documentation Links**

```xml
<xdoc xmlns:xsd="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/doc/xsl" id="thisDoc">
  <desc>
    <p>
      <ref name="test" type="variable">My test variable</ref>
      <a docid="thisDoc">Link to this documentation, see the id="thisDoc" above</a>
      <a docid="otherDocID" href="included.xsl">Link to otherDocID defined in included.xsl</a>
    </p>
  </desc>
</xdoc>
```

**Related Information:**

- Generating Documentation for an XSLT Stylesheet (*on page 557*)

**XSLT 3.0 Text Value Templates**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers built-in support for XSLT 3.0 *Text Value Templates*, including content completion to present the variables, functions, and parameters from the current context and syntax highlighting.

A text node in the stylesheet is treated as a *text value template* if the following things are true:
- It is part of a sequence constructor or a child of an `xsl:text` instruction.
- There is an ancestor element with an `[xsl:expand-text]` attribute and on the innermost ancestor element that has such an attribute, the value of the attribute is `yes`.

**Example:**

```xml
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    expand-text="yes"
    version="3.0">

    <xsl:param name="seq" as="xs:string*" select="'c', 'a', 'b', 'z'"/>

    <xsl:template name="main">
        {sort($seq)}
    </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

For more information, see: [W3C XSLT Specifications: Text Value Templates](#).

**Related Information:**

- Content Completion in XPath Expressions (on page 527)

**XSLT Refactoring Actions**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers a set of actions that allow you to change the structure of an XSLT stylesheet without changing the results of running it in an XSLT transformation. Depending on the selected text, the following XSLT refactoring actions are available from the Refactoring submenu of the contextual menu:

**Extract template (Active only when the selection contains well-formed elements)**

Extracts the selected XSLT instructions sequence into a new template. It opens a dialog box that allows you to specify the name of the new template to be created. The possible changes to perform on the document can be previewed before altering the document. After pressing OK, the template is created and the selection is replaced with a `<xsl:call-template>` instruction referencing the newly created template.

**Note:** The newly created template is indented and its name is highlighted in the `<xsl:call-template>` element.

**Extract function**
Extracts the selected XSLT instructions sequence into a new function. It opens a dialog box that allows you to specify the name of the new function. It then moves the selected lines to a newly created XSLT function and inserts a function call in the place of the selected lines. You can also use parts of an XPath expression to create the new functions.

Create local variable

Creates an XSLT variable, wrapped around the selection. It opens a dialog box that allows you to specify the name of the new variable. It then wraps the selection in the variable and you can reference it at anytime in the code.

Move to another stylesheet (Active only when entire components are selected)

Allows you to move one or more XSLT global components (templates, functions, or parameters) to another stylesheet. It opens a dialog box that allows you to specify where the selected components will be moved to. Follow these steps when using the dialog box:

1. Choose whether you want to move the selected components to a new stylesheet or an existing one.
2. If you choose to move the components to an existing one, select the destination stylesheet. Press the Choose button to select the destination stylesheet file. Oxygen XML Developer plugin will automatically check if the destination stylesheet is already contained by the hierarchy of the current stylesheet. If it is not contained, choose whether or not the destination stylesheet will be referenced (imported or included) from the current stylesheet. The following options are available:
   - Include - The current stylesheet will use an xsl:include instruction to reference the destination stylesheet.
   - Import - The current stylesheet will use an xsl:import instruction to reference the destination stylesheet.
   - None - There will be created no relation between the current and destination stylesheets.
3. Press the Move button to move the components to the destination. The moved components are highlighted in the destination stylesheet.

Convert attributes to xsl:attributes

Converts the attributes from the selected element and represents each of them with an <xsl:attribute> instruction. For example, the following element:

```
<person id="Big{test}Boss"/>
```

is converted to:
Convert xsl:attributes to attributes

Converts xsl:attribute elements to inline attributes for elements outside the XSL namespace. For example, the following element: It is the reverse of the Convert attributes to xsl:attributes action with the following limitations:

- The xsl:attribute element is "text only".
- The xsl:attribute element has a single xsl:text child element.
- The xsl:attribute element has a single xsl:value-of child element. In this case, the value of the attribute will be the XPath expression from the select attribute surrounded by curly brackets (text value template).

```xml
<person>
  <xsl:attribute name="id">john.doe</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="email">john.doe@example.com</xsl:attribute>
  <xsl:attribute name="manager">
    <xsl:value-of select="person[@id='boss']/name"/>
  </xsl:attribute>
</person>
```

is converted to:

```xml
<person id="john.doe" email="john.doe@example.com" manager="{person[@id='boss']/name}"/>
```

Convert xsl:if into xsl:choose/xsl:when

Converts one or more xsl:if element blocks into one or more xsl:when blocks surrounded by an xsl:choose element. If it is invoked on a selection, the selection must contain a well-formed fragment. If there is no selection, the xsl:if element that surrounds the content at the current cursor position is converted.

For example, the following block:

```xml
<xsl:if test="a"/>
```
is converted to:

```xml
<xsl:choose>
  <xsl:when test="a">
    <!-- XSLT code -->
  </xsl:when>
  <xsl:otherwise>
    | 
  </xsl:otherwise>
</xsl:choose>
```

(where the | character is the current cursor position)

**Convert xsl:choose/xsl:when into xsl:if**

Converts each `xsl:when` block into an `xsl:if` block. For the `otherwise` branch, it also adds an `and` statement to each negated form of the conditions. For example, the following block:

```xml
<xsl:choose>
  <xsl:when test="c1">
    <!-- XSLT statement 1 -->
  </xsl:when>
  <xsl:when test="c2">
    <!-- XSLT statement 2 -->
  </xsl:when>
  <xsl:when test="c3">
    <!-- XSLT statement 3 -->
  </xsl:when>
  <xsl:otherwise>
    <!-- XSLT "otherwise" statement-->
  </xsl:otherwise>
</xsl:choose>
```

is converted to:

```xml
<xsl:if test="c1">
  <!-- XSLT statement 1 -->
</xsl:if>
<xsl:if test="c2">
  <!-- XSLT statement 2 -->
</xsl:if>
```
Extract local variable (Active on a selection made inside an attribute that contains an XPath expression)

Allows you to create a new local variable by extracting the selected XPath expression. After creating the new local variable before the current element, Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to edit the name of the variable.

Note: Oxygen XML Developer plugin checks if the selected expression depends on local variables or parameters that are not available in the global context where the new variable is created.

Extract global variable (Active on a selection made inside an attribute that contains an XPath expression)

Allows you to create a new global variable by extracting the selected XPath expression. After creating the new global variable, Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to edit the name of the variable.

Note: Oxygen XML Developer plugin checks if the selected expression depends on local variables or parameters that are not available in the global context where the new variable is created.

Extract template parameter (Active on a selection made inside an attribute that contains an XPath expression)

Allows you to create a new template parameter by extracting the selected XPath expression. After creating the new parameter, Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to edit the name of the parameter.

Extract global parameter (Active on a selection made inside an attribute that contains an XPath expression)

Allows you to create a new global parameter by extracting the selected XPath expression. After creating the new parameter, Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to edit the name of the parameter.

Note: Oxygen XML Developer plugin checks if the selected expression depends on local variables or parameters that are not available in the global context where the new parameter is created.

Rename Component
Allows you to rename the current component (in-place). The component and all its references in the document are highlighted with a thin border and the changes you make to the component at the cursor position are updated in real time to all occurrences of the component. To exit the in-place editing, press the **Esc** or **Enter** key on your keyboard.

### Rename Component in

Opens a dialog box that allows you to rename the selected component by specifying the new component name and the files to be affected by the modification. If you click the **Preview** button, you can view the files to be affected by the action.

**Figure 194. Rename Identity Constraint Dialog Box**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rename Identity constraint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New name: <code>item</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make backup files with extension: <code>bak</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope: <code>Workspace</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use only Master Files, if enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Many of these refactoring actions are also proposed by the *Quick Assist support (on page 552)*.

For more information about XSLT refactoring, watch our video demonstration:

[https://www.youtube.com/embed/4ir5XWyp8zo](https://www.youtube.com/embed/4ir5XWyp8zo)

### XSLT Quick Assist Support

The *Quick Assist support (on page 1625)* helps you to rapidly access search and refactoring actions. If one or more actions are available in the current context, they are accessible via a yellow bulb help placed at the current line in the stripe on the left side of the editor. Also, you can invoke the *Quick Assist* menu by using the **Ctrl + 1** (**Meta 1** on Mac OS X) keyboard shortcuts.

Two categories of actions are available in the *Quick Assist* menu:

- Actions available on a selection made inside an attribute that contains an XPath expression:
**Extract template**

Extracts the selected XSLT instructions sequence into a new template.

**Move to another stylesheet**

Allows you to move one or more XSLT global components (templates, functions, or parameters) to another stylesheet.

**Extract local variable**

Allows you to create a new local variable by extracting the selected XPath expression.

**Extract global variable**

Allows you to create a new global variable by extracting the selected XPath expression.

**Extract template parameter**

Allows you to create a new template parameter by extracting the selected XPath expression.

**Extract global parameter**

Allows you to create a new global parameter by extracting the selected XPath expression.

### Figure 195. XSLT Quick Assist Support - Refactoring Actions

![XSLT Quick Assist Support - Refactoring Actions](image)

- Actions available when the cursor is positioned over the name of a component:
  - **Rename Component in**
    - Renames the component and all its dependencies.
  - **Search Declarations**
    - Searches the declaration of the component in a predefined scope. It is available only when the context represents a component name reference.
  - **Search References**
    - Searches all references of the component in a predefined scope.
**Component Dependencies**

Searches the component dependencies in a predefined scope.

**Change Scope**

Configures the scope that will be used for future search or refactor operations.

**Rename Component**

Allows you to rename the current component in-place.

**Search Occurrences**

Searches all occurrences of the component within the current file.

---

**Figure 196. XSLT Quick Assist Support - Component Actions**

![XSLT Quick Assist Support - Component Actions](image)

---

**Related Information:**

- Component Dependencies View *on page 541*
- XSLT Hierarchy View *on page 539*
- XSLT Refactoring Actions *on page 547*
- Search and Refactor Operations Scope *on page 466*

---

**XSLT Unit Test (XSpec)**

XSpec is a behavior driven development (BDD) *framework* for XSLT, XQuery, and Schematron. XSpec consists of syntax for describing the behavior of your XSLT, XQuery, or Schematron code, and some code that enables you to test your code against those descriptions.
Creating an XSLT Unit Test

To create an XSLT Unit Test, go to **File > New > XSLT Unit Test**. You can also create an XSLT Unit Test from the contextual menu of an XSL file in the **Navigator view**. Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to customize the XSpec document when you create it. In the customization dialog box, you can enter the path to an XSL document or to a master XSL document.

When you create an XSpec document based on an XSL document, Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses information from the validation and transformation scenarios associated with the XSL file. From the transformation scenario Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses extensions and properties of Saxon 9.8.0.12, improving the Ant scenario associated with the XSpec document.

Figure 197. New XSLT Unit Test Wizard

Running an XSLT Unit Test

To run a Unit Test, open the XSpec file in an editor and click **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** on the main toolbar. This will run the built-in **Run XSpec Test** transformation scenario that is defined in the XSpec framework.
Testing a Stylesheet

An XSpec file contains one or more test scenarios. You can test a stylesheet in one of the following ways:

- Test an entire stylesheet.

  Testing is performed in a certain context. You can define a context as follows:
  - Inline context, building the test based on a string.

  ```xml
  <x:scenario label="when processing a para element">
    <x:context>
      <para>...</para>
    </x:context>
    ...
  </x:scenario>
  ```

  - Based on an external file, or on a part of an external file extracted with an XPath expression.

  ```xml
  <x:scenario label="when processing a para element">
    <x:context href="source/test.xml" select="/doc/body/p[1]" />
    ...
  </x:scenario>
  ```

- Test a function.

  ```xml
  <x:scenario label="when capitalising a string">
    <x:call function="eg:capital-case">
      <x:param select="'an example string'" />
      <x:param select="true()" />
    </x:call>
    ...
  </x:scenario>
  ```

- Test a template with a name.

  ```xml
  <x:scenario label="when creating a table">
    <x:call template="createTable">
      <x:param name="nodes">
        <value>A</value>
        <value>B</value>
      </x:param>
      <x:param name="cols" select="2" />
    </x:call>
  </x:scenario>
  ```
You can reference test files between each other, which allows you to define a suite of tests. For further
details about test scenarios, go to https://github.com/expath/xspec/wiki/Writing-Scenarios.

**Adding a Catalog to an XSpec Transformation**

If your XSLT needs a catalog, you can add one to the XSpec transformation by doing one of the
following:

- If you are using a project (on page 327) in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, create a catalog.xml
  file in the project directory. This catalog will then be loaded automatically.
- Edit (on page 972) the Run XSpec Test transformation scenario, go to the Parameters tab (on
  page 936), and set the value of the catalog parameter to the location of your catalog file.

**Generating Documentation for an XSLT Stylesheet**

You can use Oxygen XML Developer plugin to generate detailed documentation in HTML format for
the elements (top-level elements whose names are in the XSLT namespace) of an XSLT stylesheet.
You can select what XSLT elements to include in the generated documentation and also the level
of details to present for each of them. The elements are hyperlinked. To generate documentation
in a custom output format (on page 563), you can edit the XSLT stylesheet used to generate the
documentation, or create your own stylesheet.

To open the XSLT Stylesheet Documentation dialog box, select XSLT Stylesheet Documentation from
the XML Tools > Generate Documentation menu or from the Generate Stylesheet Documentation
action from the contextual menu of the Navigator view (on page 210).

Figure 198. XSLT Stylesheet Documentation Dialog Box
The XSL URL field of the dialog box must contain the full path to the XSL Stylesheet file you want to generate documentation for. The stylesheet may be a local or a remote file. You can specify the path to the stylesheet by entering it in the text field, or by using the Insert Editor Variables button or the options in the Browse drop-down menu.

Output Tab

The following options are available in the Output tab:

- **Format** - Allows you to choose between the following formats:
  - **HTML** - The documentation is generated in HTML output format (on page 561).
  - **Custom** - The documentation is generated in a custom output format (on page 563), allowing you to control the output. Click the Options button to open a Custom format options dialog box (on page 564) where you can specify a custom stylesheet for creating the output. There is also an option to Copy additional resources to the output folder and you can select the path to the additional Resources that you want to copy. You can also choose to keep the intermediate XML files created during the documentation process by deselecting the Delete intermediate XML file option.

- **Output file** - You can specify the path of the output file by entering it in the text field, or by using the Insert Editor Variables button or the options in the Browse drop-down menu.

- **Split output into multiple files** - Instructs the application to split the output into multiple files. For large XSLT stylesheets, choosing another split criterion may generate smaller output files, providing faster documentation browsing. You can choose to split them by namespace, location, or component name.

- **Open in Browser/System Application** - Opens the result in the system application associated with the output file type.
**Note:** To set the browser or system application that will be used, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there. This will take precedence over the default system application settings.

**Settings Tab**

When you generate documentation for an XSLT stylesheet you can choose what XSLT elements to include in the output (templates, functions, global parameters, global variables, attribute sets, character maps, keys, decimal formats, output formats, XSLT elements from referenced stylesheets) and the details to include in the documentation.

Figure 199. Settings Tab of the XSLT Stylesheet Documentation Dialog Box

The **Settings** tab allows you to choose whether or not to include the following components: Templates, Functions, Global parameters, Global variables, Attribute sets, Character maps, Keys, Decimal formats, Output formats, Referenced stylesheets.

You can choose whether or not to include the following other details:

- **Documentation** - Shows the documentation for each XSLT element. For HTML format, the user-defined data elements that are recognized and transformed in documentation blocks of the XSLT elements they precede, are the ones from the following schemas:
  - Oxygen XML Developer plugin built-in XSLT documentation schema.
  - A subset of DocBook 5 elements. The recognized elements are: section, sect1 to sect5, emphasis, title, ulink, programlisting, para, orderedlist, itemizedlist.
  - A subset of DITA elements. The recognized elements are: concept, topic, task, codeblock, p, b, i, ul, ol, pre, sl, sli, step, steps, li, title, xref.
- Full XHTML 1.0 support.
- XSLStyle documentation environment. XSLStyle uses DocBook or DITA languages inside its own user-defined data elements. The supported DocBook and DITA elements are the ones mentioned above.
- DOXSL documentation framework (on page 1622). Supported elements are: codefrag, description, para, docContent, documentation, parameter, function, docSchema, link, list, listitem, module, parameter, template, attribute-set.

Other XSLT documentation blocks that are not recognized will just be serialized inside an HTML pre element. You can change this behavior by using a custom format (on page 563) instead of the built-in HTML format (on page 561) and providing your own XSLT stylesheets.

- **Use comments** - Controls whether or not the comments that precede an XSLT element is treated as documentation for the element they precede. Comments that precede or succeed the xsl:stylesheet element, are treated as documentation for the whole stylesheet. Note that comments that precede an import or include directive are not collected as documentation for the imported/included module. Also, comments from within the body of the XSLT elements are not collected at all.
- **Namespace** - Shows the namespace for named XSLT elements.
- **Location** - Shows the stylesheet location for each XSLT element.
- **Parameters** - Shows parameters of templates and functions.
- **References** - Shows the named XSLT elements that are referenced from within an element.
- **Used by** - Shows the list of all the XSLT elements that reference the current named element.
- **Supersedes** - Shows the list of all the XSLT elements that supersede the current element.
- **Overriding** - Shows the list of all the XSLT elements that override the current element.
- **Return type** - Shows the return type of the function.
- **Source** - Shows the text stylesheet source for each XSLT element.
- **Import precedence** - Shows the computed import precedence as declared in the XSL transformation specifications.
- **Generate index** - Creates an index with all the XSLT elements included in the documentation.

**Export settings** - Save the current settings in a settings file for further use (for example, with the exported settings file you can generate the same documentation from the command-line interface (on page 564).)

**Import settings** - Reloads the settings from the exported file.

**Generate** - Use this button to generate the XSLT documentation.
Generate XSLT Documentation in HTML Format

When using the XSLT Stylesheet Documentation dialog box (on page 557) to generate XSLT documentation in HTML format, it is presented in a visual diagram style with various sections, hyperlinks, and options.

Figure 200. XSLT Stylesheet Documentation Example

The generated documentation includes the following:

- **Table of Contents** - You can group the contents by namespace, location, or component type. The XSLT elements from each group are sorted alphabetically (named templates are presented first and the match ones second).

- **Information about main, imported, and included stylesheets.** This information consists of:
  - XSLT modules included or imported by the current stylesheet.
  - The XSLT stylesheets where the current stylesheet is imported or included.
  - The stylesheet location.
If you choose to split the output into multiple files, the table of contents is displayed in the left frame. The contents are grouped using the same criteria as the split.

After the documentation is generated, you can collapse or expand details for some stylesheet XSLT elements by using the Showing options or the Collapse or Expand buttons.

For each element included in the documentation, the section presents the element type followed by the element name (value of the name or match attribute for match templates).
Generate XSLT Documentation in a Custom Format

XSLT stylesheet documentation can be also generated in a custom format. You must write your custom stylesheet based on the schema xslDocSchema.xsd from [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/stylesheet_documentation. You can create a custom format starting from one of the stylesheets used in the built-in HTML, PDF, and DocBook formats. These stylesheets are available in [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/stylesheet_documentation/xsl.

To generate XSLT documentation in a custom format:

1. Select **Tools > Generate Documentation > XSLT Stylesheet Documentation** to open the XSLT Stylesheet Documentation dialog box (on page 557).
2. Select **Custom** for the **Format** and click the **Options** button.
3. In this next dialog box, specify your own stylesheet to transform the intermediary XML generated in the documentation process.
4. You can also choose to copy additional resources into the output folder or choose whether or not to keep the intermediate XML files created during the documentation process.

5. Click **OK** to close this dialog box and then click **Generate**.

Figure 204. Custom Format Options Dialog Box

Generating XSLT Documentation From the Command-Line Interface

You can export the settings of the **XSLT Stylesheet Documentation** dialog box to an XML file by pressing the **Export settings** button. With the exported settings file, you can generate the same documentation from the command line by running the script `stylesheetDocumentation.bat` (on Windows) / `stylesheetDocumentation.sh` (on OS X / Linux) located in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation folder. The script can be integrated in an external batch process launched from the command-line interface.

The command-line parameter of the script is the relative path to the exported XML settings file. The files that are specified with relative paths in the exported XML settings are resolved relative to the script directory.

**Example:**

```xml
<serialized>
  <map>
    <entry>
      <String xml:space="preserve">xsd.documentation.options</String>
      <xsdDocumentationOptions>
        <field name="outputFile"
                  xml:space="preserve">
                  ${cfn}.html
        </field>
        <field name="splitMethod" xml:space="preserve">
                  1
        </field>
        <field name="openOutputInBrowser" xml:space="preserve">
                  true
        </field>
      </xsdDocumentationOptions>
    </entry>
  </map>
</serialized>
```
<Integer xml:space="preserve">1</Integer>
</field>

<field name="customXSL">
  <null/>
</field>

<field name="deleteXMLFiles">
  <Boolean xml:space="preserve">true</Boolean>
</field>

<field name="includeIndex">
  <Boolean xml:space="preserve">true</Boolean>
</field>

<field name="includeGlobalElements">
  <Boolean xml:space="preserve">true</Boolean>
</field>

<field name="includeGlobalAttributes">
  <Boolean xml:space="preserve">true</Boolean>
</field>

<field name="includeLocalElements">
  <Boolean xml:space="preserve">true</Boolean>
</field>

<field name="includeLocalAttributes">
  <Boolean xml:space="preserve">true</Boolean>
</field>

<field name="includeSimpleTypes">
  <Boolean xml:space="preserve">true</Boolean>
</field>

<field name="includeComplexTypes">
  <Boolean xml:space="preserve">true</Boolean>
</field>

<field name="includeGroups">
  <Boolean xml:space="preserve">true</Boolean>
</field>

<field name="includeAttributesGroups">
  <Boolean xml:space="preserve">true</Boolean>
</field>

<field name="includeRedefines">
  <Boolean xml:space="preserve">true</Boolean>
</field>

<field name="includeReferencedSchemas">
  <Boolean xml:space="preserve">true</Boolean>
</field>
Compiling an XSL Stylesheet for Saxon

As of Saxon 9.7, it is possible to export a compiled form of a stylesheet as an XML file (called a stylesheet export file or SEF). Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a simple tool called Compile XSL Stylesheet for Saxon (found in the XML Tools menu) that does this for you.

Use-Cases for a Stylesheet Export File (SEF)

- **Use Saxon-JS to run transformations in a browser** - A stylesheet export file (SEF) is needed if you want to use the Saxon-JS product to run transformations in a browser, as in the following example:

  ```javascript
  <script type="text/javascript" src="SaxonJS/SaxonJS.min.js"></script>
  <script>
    window.onload = function() {
      SaxonJS.transform({
        stylesheetLocation: "books.sef",
        sourceLocation: "books.xml"
      });
    }
  </script>
  ```

- **Use SEF to run transformations in Oxygen XML Developer plugin** - You can also use a stylesheet export file (SEF) in Oxygen XML Developer plugin to apply an XSLT transformation over an XML file. This requires Saxon-EE or Saxon-PE versions of the Saxon product and you must select one of those two versions for the Target when you configure the SEF file (on page 568). When
configuring the XSLT transformation, you will specify the SEF file in the **XSL URL field** *(on page 892)*.

### Compiling an SEF File

The **Compile XSL Stylesheet for Saxon** tool can be found in the **XML Tools** menu and it compiles a specified stylesheet as an XML file *(stylesheet export file with a file extension of .sef)*.

Selecting this tool opens the **Compile XSL Stylesheet for Saxon** dialog box that allows you to configure some options for conversion.

**Figure 205. Compile XSL Stylesheet for Saxon Dialog Box**

This dialog box includes the following options:

**XSL URL**

Allows you to select URL of the source XSL stylesheet. You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

**Target**

Allows you to select the type of Saxon product that the export file will be used with. You can choose **Saxon-JS**, **Saxon-EE**, **Saxon-PE**, or **Saxon-HE**.

**Relocatable**

Can be used to control the Saxon `-relocate` parameter. You can select this option to produce a relocatable export package (SEF) that can be deployed to a different location, with a different base URI.

**Output file**
You can specify the path where the output file will be saved by entering it in the text field, using the Insert Editor Variables button, or using the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

Open in Editor
Select this option to open the resulting stylesheet export file in the main Oxygen XML Developer plugin editing pane.

Use a configuration file ("-config")
Select this option if you want to use a Saxon 9.8.0.12 configuration file that will be executed for the XSLT transformation and validation processes. You can specify the path to the configuration file by entering it in the URL field, or by using the Insert Editor Variables button, or using the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

Compile
Use this button to generate the stylesheet export file according the options selected in this dialog box.

Editing XML Schemas
An XML Schema describes the structure of an XML document and is used to validate XML document instances against it, to check that the XML instances conform to the specified requirements. If an XML instance conforms to the schema then it is said to be valid. Otherwise, it is invalid.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers support for both XML Schema 1.0 and 1.1 and you can edit XML Schema files in the following editing modes:

• **Text editing mode (on page 606)** - Allows you to edit XML Schema files in a source editing mode.

• **Grid editing mode (on page 251)** - Displays XML Schema files in a structured spreadsheet-like grid.

• **Design editing mode (on page 261)** - Visual schema designer that helps you understand the structure and develop complex schemas.

For information about applying and detecting schemas, see Associating a Schema to XML Documents (on page 449).

For more information about editing XML Schemas, see our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/vz1ejlZELQg
Design Editing Mode (XML Schema Diagram Editor)

XML Schemas allow document designers to specify the allowed structure and content of an XML document and to check if an XML document is valid.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides a simple and expressive XML Schema diagram editor (Design mode) for editing XML Schemas. The schema diagram helps both the content authors who want to understand a schema and schema designers who develop complex schemas.

To switch to this mode, select Design at the bottom of the editing area.

Figure 206. XML Schema Diagram
For more information about designing XML Schemas, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/vz1eIZELQgc

Navigation in the XML Schema Design Mode

The following editing and navigation features work for all types of schema components in the XML Schema **Design** mode:

- Select consecutive components on the diagram (components from the same level) using the **Shift** key. You can also make discontinuous selections in the schema diagram using the **Ctrl** (Meta on...
Mac OS key. To deselect one of the components, use Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on OS X).

- Use the arrow keys to navigate the diagram vertically and horizontally.
- Use Home/End keys to jump to the first/last component from the same level. Use Ctrl + Home (Command + Home on OS X) key combination to go to the diagram root and Ctrl + End (Command + End on OS X) to go to the last child of the selected component.
- You can easily go back to a previously visited component while moving from left to right. The path will be preserved only if you use the left arrow key or right arrow key. For example, if the current selection is on the second attribute from an attribute group and you press the left arrow key to jump to the attribute group, when you press the right arrow key, then the selection will be moved to the second attribute.
- Go back and forward between components viewed or edited in the diagram by selecting them in the Outline view (on page 263):
  - Back (go to previous schema component).
  - Forward (go to next schema component).
  - Go to Last Modification (go to last modified schema component).
- Copy, reference, or move global components, attributes, and identity constraints to another position and from one schema to another using the Cut/Copy and Paste/Paste as Reference actions.
- Go to the definition of an element or attribute with the Go to Definition action.
- You can expand and see the contents of the imports/includes/redefines in the diagram. To edit components from other schemas, the schema for each component will be opened as a separate file in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Tip: If an XML Schema referenced by the current opened schema was modified on disk, the change will be detected and you will be asked to refresh the current schema contents.

- Recursive references are marked with a recurse symbol (recurse). Click this symbol to navigate between the element declaration and its reference.

Figure 207. Recursive Reference

Schema Editing Actions

You can edit an XML schema using drag and drop operations or contextual menu actions.
Drag and drop is the easiest way to move the existing components to other locations in an XML schema. For example, you can quickly insert an element reference in the diagram with a drag and drop from the Outline view (on page 263) to a compositor in the diagram. Also, the components order in an xs:sequence can be easily changed using drag and drop.

If this property has not been set, you can easily set the attribute/element type by dragging over it a simple type or complex type from the diagram. If the type property for a simple type or complex type is not already set, you can set it by dragging over it a simple or complex type.

Depending on the drop area, various actions are available:

- **move** - Context dependent, the selected component is moved to the destination.
- **reference** - Context dependent, the selected component is referenced from the parent.
- **copy** - If (Ctrl (Meta on Mac OS)) key is pressed, a copy of the selected component is inserted to the destination.

Visual clues about the operation type are indicated by the mouse pointer shape:

- **- When moving a component.
- **- When referencing a component.
- **- When copying a component.

You can edit some schema components directly in the diagram. For these components, you can edit the name and the additional properties presented in the diagram by double clicking the value you want to edit. If you want to edit the name of a selected component, you can also press (Enter). The list of properties that can be displayed for each component can be customized in the Preferences (on page 97).

When editing references, you can choose from a list of available components. Components from an imported schema for which the target namespace does not have an associated prefix is displayed in the list as componentName#targetNamespace. If the reference is from a target namespace that was not yet mapped, you are prompted to add prefix mappings for the inserted component namespace in the current edited schema.

You can also change the compositor by double-clicking it and choose the compositor you want from the proposals list.

There are some components that cannot be edited directly in the diagram: imports, includes, redefines. The editing action can be performed if you double-click or press (Enter) on an import/include/redefine component. An edit dialog box is displayed, allowing you to customize the directives.
Contextual Menu Actions in the Design Mode

The contextual menu of the Design mode includes the following actions:

1. Go to Definition (Ctrl + Shift + Enter)

   Shows the definition for the current selected component. For references, this action is available by clicking the arrow displayed in its bottom right corner.

2. Open Schema (Ctrl + Shift + Enter)

   Opens the selected schema. This action is available for xsd:import, xsd:include and xsd:redefine elements. If the file you try to open does not exist, a warning message is displayed and you have the possibility to create the file.

3. Edit Attributes (Alt + Shift + Enter)

   Allows you to edit the attributes of the selected component in a small in-place editor that presents the same attributes as in the Attributes view (on page 266) and the Facets view (on page 268). The actions that can be performed on attributes in this dialog box are the same actions presented in the two views.

4. Append child

   Offers a list of valid components, depending on the context, and appends your selection as a child of the currently selected component. You can set a name for a named component after it has been added in the diagram.

5. Insert before
Offers a list of valid components, depending on the context, and inserts your selection before the selected component, as a sibling. You can set a name for a named component after it has been added in the diagram.

**Insert after**

Offers a list of valid components, depending on the context, and inserts your selection after the selected component, as a sibling. You can set a name for a named component after it has been added in the diagram.

**New global**

Inserts a global component in the schema diagram. This action does not depend on the current context. If you choose to insert an import you have to specify the URL of the imported file, the target namespace and the import ID. The same information, excluding the target namespace, is requested for an `xsd:include` or `xsd:redefine` element.

**Note:** If the imported file has declared a target namespace, the field **Namespace** is completed automatically.

**Edit Schema Namespaces**

When performed on the schema root, it allows you to edit the schema target namespace and namespace mappings. You can also invoke the action by double-clicking the target namespace property from Attributes view (on page 266) for the schema or by double-clicking the schema component.

**Edit Annotations**

Allows you to edit the annotation for the selected schema component in the **Edit Annotations** dialog box. You can perform the following operations in the dialog box:

- **Edit all appinfo/documentation items for a specific annotation** - All appinfo/documentation items for a specific annotation are presented in a table and can be easily edited. Information about an annotation item includes: type (documentation/appinfo), content, source (optional, specify the source of the documentation/appinfo element) and `xml:lang`. The content of a documentation/appinfo item can be edited in the **Content** area below the table.

- **Insert/Insert before/Remove documentation/appinfo**. The † Add button allows you to insert a new annotation item (`documentation/appinfo`). You can add a new item before the item selected in table by pressing the ‡ Insert Before button. Also, you can delete the selected item using the × Remove button.

- **Move items up/down** - to do this use the † Move up and ‡ Move down buttons.

- **Insert/Insert before/Remove annotation** - Available for components that allow multiple annotations such as schemas or redefines.
• Specify an ID for the component annotation. An optional identifier for the annotation.

Annotations are rendered by default under the graphical representation of the component. When you have a reference to a component with annotations, these annotations are also presented in the diagram below the referenced component. To edit the annotations, use the Edit Annotations action from the contextual menu. If the reference component does not have annotations, you can edit the annotations of the referenced component by double-clicking the annotations area. Otherwise, you can edit the referenced component annotations only if you go to the definition of the component.

Note: For imported/included components that do not belong to the currently edited schema, the Edit Annotations dialog box presents the annotation as read-only. To edit its annotation, open the schema where the component is defined.

Extract Global Element

Action that is available for local elements. A local element is made global and is replaced with a reference to the global element. The local element properties that are also valid for the global element declaration are kept.

Figure 208. Extracting a Global Element

If you use the Extract Global Element action on a name element, the result is:

Figure 209. Extracting a Global Element on a name Element

Extract Global Attribute
Action available for local attributes. A local attribute is made global and replaced with a reference to the global attribute. The properties of local attribute that are also valid in the global attribute declaration are kept.

Figure 210. Extracting a Global Attribute

If you use the Extract Global Attribute action on a note attribute, the result is:

Figure 211. Extracting a Global Attribute on a note Attribute

Extract Global Group

Action available for compositors (sequence, choice, all). This action extracts a global group and makes a reference to it. The action is available only if the parent of the compositor is not a group.
If you use the Extract Global Group action on the sequence element, the Extract Global Component dialog box is displayed and you can choose a name for the group. If you type `personGroup`, the result is:

**Figure 213. Extracting a Global Group on a sequence Element**

![Diagram](image1)

**Extract Global Type**

Action used to extract an anonymous simple type or an anonymous complex type as global. For anonymous complex types, the action is available on the parent element.

**Figure 214. Extracting a Global Simple Type**

![Diagram](image2)

If you use the action on the union component and choose `numericST` for the new global simple type name, the result is:

**Figure 215. Extracting a Global Simple Type on a union Component**

![Diagram](image3)
If you use the action on a `person` element and choose `person_type` for the new complex type name, the result is:

**Figure 217. Extracting a Global Complex Type on a person Element**

---

**Rename Component in**

Rename the selected component.

**Cut Ctrl + X (Command + X on OS X)**

Cut the selected component(s).

**Copy Ctrl + C (Command + C on OS X)**

Copy the selected component(s).
Copy XPath

This action copies an XPath expression that identifies the selected element or attribute in an instance XML document of the edited schema and places it in the clipboard.

Paste Ctrl + V (Command + V on OS X)

Paste the component(s) from the clipboard as children of the selected component.

Paste as Reference

Create references to the copied component(s). If not possible a warning message is displayed.

Remove (Delete)

Remove the selected component(s).

Override component

Copies the overridden component in the current XML Schema. This option is available for `xs:override` components.

Redefine component

The referenced component is added in the current XML Schema. This option is available for `xs:redefine` components.

Optional

Can be performed on element/attribute/group references, local attributes, elements, compositors, and element wildcards. The `minOccurs` property is set to 0 and the `use` property for attributes is set to `optional`.

Unbounded

Can be performed on element/attribute/group references, local attributes, elements, compositors, and element wildcards. The `maxOccurs` property is set to `unbounded` and the `use` property for attributes is set to `required`.

Search

Can be performed on local elements or attributes. This action makes a reference to a global element or attribute.

Search References

Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope if any.

Search References in

Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the specified scope.
Search Occurrences in File

Searches all occurrences of the item found at current cursor position in the current file.

Component Dependencies

Opens the Component Dependencies view (on page 620) that allows you to see the dependencies for the current selected component.

Resource Hierarchy

Opens the Resource Hierarchy / Dependencies view (on page 617) that allows you to see the hierarchy for the current selected resource.

Flatten Schema

Recursively adds the components of included Schema files to the main one. It also flattens every imported XML Schema from the hierarchy.

Resource Dependencies

Allows you to see the dependencies for the current selected resource.

Expand All

Recursively expands all sub-components of the selected component.

Collapse All

Recursively collapses all sub-components of the selected component.

Save as Image

Save the diagram as image, in JPEG, BMP, SVG or PNG format.

Generate Sample XML Files

Generate XML files using the current opened schema. The selected component is the XML document root. See more in the Generate Sample XML Files (on page 625) section.

Options

Show the Schema preferences panel (on page 97).

XML Schema Components

A schema diagram contains a series of interconnected components. To quickly identify the relation between two connected components, the connection is represented as:

• A thick line to identify a connection with a required component (in the following image, family is a required element).

Figure 218. Example: Required Component
A thin line to identify a connection with an optional component (in the following image, email is an optional element).

Figure 219. Example: Optional Component

The following topics explain in detail all available components and their symbols as they appear in an XML schema diagram.

**xs:schema**

Figure 220. The xs:schema Component

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Target Namespace</td>
<td>The schema target namespace</td>
<td>Any URI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element Form</td>
<td>Determining whether or not local element declarations will be namespace-qualified by default</td>
<td>qualified, unqualified, [Empty] (default value is unqualified)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>namespace-qualified by default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute Form</td>
<td>Determining whether or not local attribute declarations will be namespace-qualified by default</td>
<td>qualified, unqualified, [Empty] (default value is unqualified)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>namespace-qualified by default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block Default</td>
<td>Default value of the block</td>
<td>#all, extension, restriction, substitution, restriction extension, restriction substitution, extension substitution, restriction extension substitution, [Empty]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Defines the root element of a schema. A schema document contains representations for a collection of schema components, such as type definitions and element declarations, that have a common target namespace. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-schema](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-schema).

By default, it displays the targetNamespace property when rendered.
### xs:element

**Figure 221. The xs:element Component**

Defines an element. An element declaration is an association of a name with a type definition, either simple or complex, an (optional) default value and a (possibly empty) set of identity-constraint definitions. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-element](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-element).

An element by default displays the following properties when rendered in the diagram: `default`, `fixed`, `abstract` and `type`. When referenced or declared locally, the element graphical representation also contains the value for the `minOccurs` and `maxOccurs` properties (for 0..1 and 1..1 occurs the values are implied by the connector style) and the connectors to the element are drawn using dotted lines if the element is optional.

#### Table 31. xs:element Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
<th>Mentions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The element name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName for global or local elements, any QName (on page 1625) for element references</td>
<td>If missing, will be displayed as ['element'] in diagram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Possible Values</td>
<td>Mentions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is Reference</td>
<td>When set, the local element is a reference to a global element</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>Appears only for local elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The element type</td>
<td>All declared or built-in types. In addition, the following anonymous types are available: [ST-restriction], [ST-union], [ST-list], [CT-anonymous], [CT-extension SC], [CT-restriction SC], [CT-restriction CC], [CT-extension CC].</td>
<td>For all elements. For references, the value is set in the referenced element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Type</td>
<td>The extended/restricted base type</td>
<td>All declared or built-in types</td>
<td>For elements with complex type, with simple or complex content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed</td>
<td>Defines if the complex type content model will be mixed</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For elements with complex type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content</td>
<td>The content of the complex type</td>
<td>simple/complex</td>
<td>For elements with complex type that extends/restricts a base type. It is automatically detected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content Mixed</td>
<td>Defines if the complex content model will be mixed</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For elements with complex type that has a complex content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Possible Values</td>
<td>Mentions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Default value of the element. A default value is automatically assigned to the element when no other value is specified</td>
<td>Any string</td>
<td>The fixed and default attributes are mutually exclusive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed</td>
<td>A simple content element may be fixed to a specific value using this attribute. A fixed value is also automatically assigned to the element and you cannot specify another value.</td>
<td>Any string</td>
<td>The fixed and default attributes are mutually exclusive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Min Occurs</td>
<td>Minimum number of occurrences of the element</td>
<td>A numeric positive value. Default value is 1</td>
<td>Only for references/local elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Occurs</td>
<td>Maximum number of occurrences of the element</td>
<td>A numeric positive value (default value is 1)</td>
<td>Only for references/local elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substitution Group</td>
<td>Qualified name of the head of the substitution group that this element belongs to</td>
<td>All declared elements. For XML Schema 1.1 this property supports multiple values.</td>
<td>For global and reference elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td>Controls whether or not the element may be used directly in instance XML documents. When set to true, the element may still be used to define content models, but it must be substituted through a substitution group in the instance document.</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For global elements and element references</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form</td>
<td>Defines if the element is &quot;qualified&quot; (belongs to the target namespace) or &quot;unqualified&quot; (doesn't belong to any namespace)</td>
<td>unqualified/qualified</td>
<td>Only for local elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nillable</td>
<td>When this attribute is set to true, the element can be declared as nil using an xsi:nil attribute in the instance documents</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For global elements and element references</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target Namespace</td>
<td>Specifies the target namespace for local element and attribute declarations. The namespace URI may be different from the schema target</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all elements</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Property Name | Description | Possible Values | Mentions
--- | --- | --- | ---
namespace. This property is available for local elements only. | #all, restriction, extension, substitution, extension restriction, restriction substitution, restriction extension substitution | For global elements and element references
**Block** | Controls if the element can be subject to a type or substitution group substitution. ‘#all’ blocks any substitution, ‘substitution’ blocks any substitution through substitution groups and ‘extension’/’restriction’ block any substitution (both through xsi:type and substitution groups) by elements or types, derived respectively by extension or restriction from the type of the element. Its default value is defined by the blockDefault attribute of the parent xs:schema. | #all, restriction, extension, substitution, extension restriction, restriction substitution, restriction extension substitution | For global elements and element references
**Final** | Controls whether the element can be used as the head of a substitution group for elements whose types are derived by extension or restriction from the type of the element. Its default value is defined by the finalDefault attribute of the parent xs:schema. | #all, restriction, extension, [Empty] | For global elements and element references
ID | The component ID | Any ID | For all elements
**Component** | The edited component name | Not editable property | For all elements
**Namespace** | The component namespace | Not editable property | For all elements
**System ID** | The component system ID | Not editable property | For all elements

**xs:attribute**

Figure 222. The xs:attribute Component

Defines an attribute. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-attribute](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-attribute).

An attribute by default displays the following properties when rendered in the diagram: default, fixed, use and type. Connectors to the attribute are drawn using dotted lines if the attribute use is optional. The attribute name is stroked out if prohibited.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Value</th>
<th>Mentions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Name</strong></td>
<td>Attribute name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName for global/local attributes, all declared attributes’ QName (on page 1625) for references</td>
<td>For all local or global attributes. If missing, will be displayed as '[attribute]' in the diagram.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Is Reference</strong></td>
<td>When set, the local attribute is a reference</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For local attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td>Qualified name of a simple type and built-in simple types. In addition another 3 proposals are present: [anonymous restriction], [anonymous list], [anonymous union] for creating anonymous simple types more easily.</td>
<td>All global simple types and built-in simple types. For all attributes. For references, the type is set to the referenced attribute.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default</strong></td>
<td>Default value. When specified, an attribute is added by the schema processor (if it is missing from the instance XML document) and it is given this value. The default and fixed attributes are mutually exclusive.</td>
<td>Any string</td>
<td>For all local or global attributes. For references the value is from the referenced attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fixed</strong></td>
<td>When specified, the value of the attribute is fixed and must be equal to this value. The default and fixed attributes are mutually exclusive.</td>
<td>Any string</td>
<td>For all local or global attributes. For references the value is from the referenced attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Use</strong></td>
<td>Possible usage of the attribute. Marking an attribute &quot;prohibited&quot; is useful to exclude attributes during derivations by restriction.</td>
<td>optional, required, prohibited</td>
<td>For local attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Form</strong></td>
<td>Specifies whether or not the attribute is qualified (must have a namespace prefix in the instance XML document).</td>
<td>unqualified/qualified</td>
<td>For local attributes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 33. `xs:attributeGroup` Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
<th>Mentions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Attribute group name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName for global attribute name, groups, all declared attribute groups for reference</td>
<td>For all global or referenced attribute groups. If missing, will be displayed as <code>[attributeGroup]</code> in diagram.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 34. **xs:complexType** Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
<th>Mentions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the complex type (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName</td>
<td>Only for global complex types.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Possible Values</td>
<td>Mentions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Base Type</strong> Definition</td>
<td>The name of the extended/restricted types</td>
<td>Any from the declared simple or complex types</td>
<td>For complex types with simple or complex content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Derivation Method</strong></td>
<td>The derivation method</td>
<td>restriction/extension</td>
<td>Only when base type is set. If the base type is a simple type, the derivation method is always extension.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Content</strong></td>
<td>The content of the complex type</td>
<td>simple/complex</td>
<td>For complex types that extend/restrict a base type. It is automatically detected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Content Mixed</strong></td>
<td>Specifies if the complex content model will be mixed</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For complex contents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mixed</strong></td>
<td>Specifies if the complex type content model will be mixed</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For global and anonymous complex types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abstract</strong></td>
<td>When set to true, this complex type cannot be used directly in the instance documents and needs to be substituted using an xsi:type attribute</td>
<td>true/false</td>
<td>For global and anonymous complex types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Block</strong></td>
<td>Controls if a substitution (either through a xsi:type or substitution groups) can be performed for a complex type, which is an extension or a restriction of the current complex type. This attribute can only block such substitutions (it cannot &quot;unblock&quot; them), which can also be blocked in the all, extension, restriction, extension restriction, [Empty]</td>
<td>For global complex types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
element definition. The default value is defined by the `blockDefault` attribute of `xs:schema`.

**Final**
Controls whether the complex type can be further derived by extension or restriction to create new complex types all, extension, restriction, extension restriction, [Empty]
For global complex types

**Default Attributes Apply**
The `schema` element can carry a `defaultAttributes` attribute, which identifies an attribute group. Each `complexType` defined in the schema document then automatically includes that attribute group, unless this is overridden by the `defaultAttributesApply` attribute on the `complexType` element.
true/false
This property is available only for XML Schema 1.1

**ID**
The component ID
Any ID
For all complex types

**Component**
The edited component name
Not editable property
For all complex types

**Namespace**
The component namespace
Not editable property
For all complex types

**System ID**
The component system ID
Not editable property
For all complex types

*xs:simpleType*

Figure 225. The `xs:simpleType` Component

Defines a simple type. A simple type definition is a set of constraints on strings and information about the values they encode, applicable to the normalized value of an attribute information item or of an element information item with no element children. Informally, it applies to the values of attributes and the text-only content of elements. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-simpleType](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-simpleType).

**Tip:** A simple type that is a base type to another type will be rendered with yellow background.
### Table 35. xs:simpleType Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
<th>Scope</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Simple type name. Always required.</td>
<td>Any NCName</td>
<td>Only for global simple types. If missing, will be displayed as '[simpleType]' in diagram.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derivation</td>
<td>A simple type category</td>
<td>restriction, list, or union</td>
<td>For all simple types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Type</td>
<td>A simple type definition component. Required if derivation method is set to restriction.</td>
<td>All global simple types and built-in simple types. In addition another 3 proposals are present: [anonymous restriction], [anonymous list], [anonymous union] for easily create anonymous simple types.</td>
<td>For global and anonymous simple types with the derivation method set to restriction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item Type</td>
<td>A simple type definition component. Required if derivation method is set to list.</td>
<td>All global simple types and built-in simple types(from schema for schema). In addition another 3 proposals are present: [anonymous restriction], [anonymous list], [anonymous union] for easily create anonymous simple types.</td>
<td>For global and anonymous simple types with the derivation method set to list. Derivation by list is the process of transforming a simple datatype (named the item type) into a whitespace-separated list of values from this datatype. The item type can be defined inline by adding a simpleType definition as a child element of the list element, or by reference, using the itemType attribute (it is an error to use both).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Member Types</td>
<td>Category for grouping union members</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For global and anonymous simple types with the derivation method set to union</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Member</td>
<td>A simple type definition component. Required if derivation method</td>
<td>All global simple types and built-in simple types(from schema for schema). In addition another 3 proposals are present: [anonymous restriction], [anonymous list], [anonymous union] for easily create anonymous simple types.</td>
<td>For global and anonymous simple types with the derivation method set to union. Deriving a simple datatype by union merges the lexical spaces of several simple datatypes (called member types) to create a new simple datatype. The member types can be defined either by reference (through the memberTypes attribute) or embedded as</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 36. xs:alternative Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Specifies type substitutions for an element, depending on the value of the attributes</td>
<td>All declared or built-in types. In addition, the following anonymous types are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### xs:group

Figure 227. The xs:group Component

Defines a group of elements to be used in complex type definitions. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-group](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-group).

When referenced, the graphical representation also contains the value for the `minOccurs` and `maxOccurs` properties (for 0..1 and 1..1 occurs the values are implied by the connector style) and the connectors to the group are drawn using dotted lines if the group is optional.

#### Table 37. xs:group Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
<th>Mentions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The group name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName for global groups, all declared groups for reference</td>
<td>If missing, will be displayed as '[group]' in diagram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Min Occurs</td>
<td>Minimum number of occurrences of the group</td>
<td>A numeric positive value. Default value is 1</td>
<td>Appears only for reference groups</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### xs:include

Figure 228. The `xs:include` Component

![xs:include](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-include)

Adds multiple schemas with the same target namespace to a document. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-include](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-include).

Table 38. `xs:include` Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Schema Location</strong></td>
<td>Included schema location</td>
<td>Any URI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ID</strong></td>
<td>Include ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Component</strong></td>
<td>The component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### xs:import

Figure 229. The `xs:import` Component

![xs:import](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-import)

Adds multiple schemas with a different target namespace to a document. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-import](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-import).

Table 39. `xs:import` Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Schema Location</strong></td>
<td>Imported schema location</td>
<td>Any URI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Namespace</strong></td>
<td>Imported schema namespace</td>
<td>Any URI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ID</strong></td>
<td>Import ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Component</strong></td>
<td>The component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**xs:redefine**

Figure 230. The `xs:redefine` Component

Redefines simple and complex types, groups, and attribute groups from an external schema. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-redefine](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-redefine).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Schema Location</td>
<td>Redefine schema location</td>
<td>Any URI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Redefine ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**xs:override**

Figure 231. The `xs:override` Component

The override construct allows replacements of old components with new ones without any constraint. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-override](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-override).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Schema Location</td>
<td>Redefine schema location</td>
<td>Any URI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Redefine ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**xs:notation**

Figure 232. The `xs:notation` Component

Describes the format of non-XML data within an XML document. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-notation](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-notation).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible values</th>
<th>Mentions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The notation name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName</td>
<td>If missing, will be displayed as <code>[notation]</code> in diagram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Identifier</td>
<td>The notation system identifier</td>
<td>Any URI</td>
<td>Required if public identifier is absent (otherwise, optional)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Possible values</td>
<td>Mentions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Identifier</td>
<td>The notation public identifier</td>
<td>A Public ID value</td>
<td>Required if system identifier is absent (otherwise, optional)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
<td>For all notations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all notations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>The component namespace</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all notations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all notations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```
xs:sequence / xs:choice / xs:all
```

Figure 233. `xs:sequence`

`xs:sequence` specifies that the child elements must appear in a sequence. Each child element can occur from 0 to any number of times. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-sequence](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-sequence).

Figure 234. `xs:choice`

`xs:choice` allows only one of the elements contained in the declaration to be present within the containing element. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-choice](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-choice).

Figure 235. `xs:all`

`xs:all` specifies that the child elements can appear in any order. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-all](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-all).

The compositor graphical representation also contains the value for the `minOccurs` and `maxOccurs` properties (for 0..1 and 1..1 occurs the values are implied by the connector style) and the connectors to the compositor are drawn using dotted lines if the compositor is optional.
Table 43. *xs:sequence, xs:choice, xs:all Properties*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
<th>Mentions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compositor</td>
<td>Compositor type</td>
<td>sequence, choice, all</td>
<td>'all' is only available as a child of a group or complex type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Min Occurs</td>
<td>Minimum occurrences of compositor</td>
<td>A numeric positive value. Default is 1</td>
<td>The property is not present if compositor is 'all' and is child of a group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Occurs</td>
<td>Maximum occurrences of compositor</td>
<td>A numeric positive value. Default is 1</td>
<td>The property is not present if compositor is 'all' and is child of a group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
<td>For all compositors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all compositors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
<td>For all compositors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*xs:any*

Figure 236. The *xs:any* Component

Enables the author to extend the XML document with elements not specified by the schema. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-any](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-any).

The graphical representation also contains the value for the *minOccurs* and *maxOccurs* properties (for 0..1 and 1..1 occurs the values are implied by the connector style) and the connectors to the wildcard are drawn using dotted lines if the wildcard is optional.

Table 44. *xs:any* Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>The list of allowed namespaces. The namespace attribute expects a list of namespace URIs. In this list, two values have a specific meaning: '#targetNamespace' stands for the target namespace, and '#local' stands for local attributes (without namespaces).</td>
<td>##any, ##other, #targetNamespace, #local or anyURI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notNamespace</td>
<td>Specifies the namespace that extension elements or attributes cannot come from</td>
<td>##local, #targetNamespace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notQName</td>
<td>Specifies an element or attribute that is not allowed</td>
<td>#defined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process Contents</td>
<td>Type of validation required on the elements allowed for this wildcard</td>
<td>skip, lax, strict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Min Occurs</td>
<td>Minimum occurrences of any</td>
<td>A numeric positive value. Default is 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Property Name | Description | Possible Values
--- | --- | ---
Max Occurs | Maximum occurrences of any | A numeric positive value. Default is 1
ID | The component ID | Any ID
Component | The name of the edited component | Not editable property
System ID | The component system ID | Not editable property

**xs:anyAttribute**

Figure 237. The `xs:anyAttribute` Component

Enables the author to extend the XML document with attributes not specified by the schema. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-anyAttribute](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-anyAttribute).

**Table 45. `xs:anyAttribute` Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>The list of allowed namespaces. The namespace attribute expects a list of namespace URIs. In this list, two values have a specific meaning: <code>##targetNamespace</code> stands for the target namespace, and <code>##local</code> stands for local attributes (without namespaces).</td>
<td><code>##any</code>, <code>##other</code>, <code>##targetNamespace</code>, <code>##local</code> or anyURI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process Contents</td>
<td>Type of validation required on the elements allowed for this wildcard</td>
<td>skip, lax, strict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The name of the edited component</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**xs:unique**

Figure 238. The `xs:unique` Component

Defines that an element or an attribute value must be unique within the scope. See more info at [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-unique](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-unique).
Table 46. *xs:unique* Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The unique name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>The component namespace</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*xs:key*

Figure 239. The *xs:key* Component

Specifies an attribute or element value as a key (unique, non-nullable and always present) within the containing element in an instance document. See more info at http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-key.

Table 47. *xs:key* Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The key name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>The component namespace</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*xs:keyRef*

Figure 240. The *xs:keyRef* Component

Specifies that an attribute or element value corresponds to that of the specified key or unique element. See more info at http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-keyref.

A keyref by default displays the *Referenced Key* property when rendered.
Table 48. `xs:keyRef` Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The keyref name (always required)</td>
<td>Any NCName</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference Key</td>
<td>The name of referenced key</td>
<td>Any declared element constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namespace</td>
<td>The component namespace</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`xs:selector`

Figure 241. The `xs:selector` Component

Specifies an XPath expression that selects a set of elements for an identity constraint. See more info at http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-selector.

Table 49. `xs:selector` Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XPath</td>
<td>Relative XPath expression identifying the element that the constraint applies to</td>
<td>An XPath expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`xs:field`

Figure 242. The `xs:field` Component

Specifies an XPath expression that specifies the value used to define an identity constraint. See more info at http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-field.

Table 50. `xs:field` Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XPath</td>
<td>Relative XPath expression identifying the field(s) composing the key, key reference, or unique constraint</td>
<td>An XPath expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 51. *xs:assert* Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>Specifies an XPath expression. If the XPath condition is valid, the specified type is selected as the element type. The expressions allowed are limited to a subset of XPath 2.0. Only the attributes of the current element and inheritable attributes from ancestor elements are accessible in the XPath expression. When you edit this property, the content completion list of proposals offers XPath expressions.</td>
<td>An XPath expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XPath Default Namespace</td>
<td>The default namespace used when the XPath expression is evaluated</td>
<td>##defaultNamespace, ##targetNamespace, ##local</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Specifies the component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*xs:openContent*

Figure 244. The *xs:openContent* Component

The *openContent* element enables instance documents to contain extension elements to be inserted amongst the elements declared by the schema. You can declare open content for your elements at one place (within the *complexType* definition) or at the schema level.
For further details about the openContent component, go to [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-openContent](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#element-openContent).

**Table 52. xs:openContent Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Specifies where the extension elements can be inserted</td>
<td>The value can be: &quot;interleave&quot;, &quot;suffix&quot; or &quot;none&quot;. The default value is &quot;interleave&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The component ID</td>
<td>Any ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The edited component name</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** This component is available for XML Schema 1.1 only. To change the version of the XML Schema, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XML Parser > XML Schema.

Constructs Used to Group Schema Components

This section explains the components that can be used for grouping other schema components.

**Attributes**

**Figure 245. Attributes Construct**

Groups all attributes and attribute groups belonging to a complex type.

**Table 53. attributes Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The element for which the attributes are displayed</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Constraints**

**Figure 246. Constraints Construct**
Groups all constraints *(xs:key (on page 600), xs:keyRef (on page 600), or xs:unique (on page 599))* belonging to an element.

**Table 54. constraints Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The element for which the constraints are displayed</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Substitutions**

Figure 247. Substitutions Construct

Groups all elements that can substitute the current element.

**Table 55. substitutions Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The element for which the substitutions are displayed</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System ID</td>
<td>The component system ID</td>
<td>Not editable property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Schema Validation**

Validation for the **Design** mode is seamlessly integrated in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin XML documents validation *(on page 420)* capability.

Figure 248. XML Schema Validation
A schema validation error is presented by highlighting the invalid component:

- In the Attributes View (on page 266).
- In the diagram by surrounding the component that has the error with a red border.

Invalid facets for a component are highlighted in the Facets View (on page 268).

Components with invalid properties are rendered with a red border. This is a default color, but you can customize it in the Document checking user preferences (on page 93). When hovering an invalid component, the tooltip will present the validation errors associated with that component.

When editing a value that is supposed to be a qualified or unqualified XML name, the application provides automatic validation of the entered value. This proves to be very useful in avoiding setting invalid XML names for the given property.

If you validate the entire schema using the Validate action from the XML menu or from the Validation toolbar drop-down menu, all validation errors will be presented in the Errors tab.

To resolve an error, just click it (or double-click for errors located in other schemas) and the corresponding schema component will be displayed as the diagram root so that you can easily correct the error.

**Important:** If the schema imports only the namespace of other schema without specifying the schema location and a catalog is set up (on page 460) that maps the namespace to a certain location both the validation and the diagram will correctly identify the imported schema.

**Tip:** If the validation action finds that the schema contains unresolved references, the application will suggest the use of validation scenarios, but only if the current edited schema is an XML Schema module.
Edit Schema Namespaces

You can use the **XML Schema Namespaces** dialog box to easily set a target namespace and define namespace mappings for a newly created XML Schema. In the **Design** mode these namespaces can be modified anytime by choosing **Edit Schema Namespaces** from the contextual menu. You can also do this by double-clicking the schema root in the diagram.

The **XML Schema Namespaces** dialog box allows you to edit the following information:

- **Target namespace** - The target namespace of the schema.
- **Prefixes** - The dialog box displays a table with namespaces and the mapped prefixes. You can add a new prefix mapping or remove an already existing one.

Editing XML Schema in Text Editing Mode

The Oxygen XML Developer plugin **Text** editing mode can be used for editing XML Schema in a source editing mode. It offers powerful content completion support, a synchronized Outline view, and multiple refactoring actions (on page 622). The Outline view has two display modes: the **standard outline** (on page 217) mode and the **components** (on page 263) mode.

A diagram of the XML Schema can be presented side by side with the text. To activate the diagram presentation, select the **Show Full Model XML Schema diagram option** (on page 98) in the **Diagram preferences page** (on page 98).

Editing XML Schema in the Master Files Context

Smaller interrelated modules that define a complex XML Schema cannot be correctly edited or validated individually, due to their interdependency with other modules. For example, an element defined in a main schema document is not visible when you edit an included module. Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides the support for defining the main module (or modules), thus allowing you to edit any of the imported/included schema files in the context of the larger schema structure.

You can set a main XML document either using the **master files support from the Navigator view** (on page 337), or using a validation scenario.

To set a **master file** using a validation scenario, add validation units that point to the main schemas. Oxygen XML Developer plugin warns you if the current module is not part of the dependencies graph computed for the main schema. In this case, it considers the current module as the main schema.

The advantages of editing in the context of a **master file (on page 1623)** include:

- Correct validation of a module in the context of a larger schema structure.
• **Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620)** displays all the referable components valid in the current context. This include components defined in modules other than the currently edited one.

• The **Outline view (on page 263)** displays the components collected from the entire schema structure.

**Validating XML Schema Documents**

By default, XML Schema files are validated as you type. To change this, open the **Preferences dialog box (on page 42)**, go to **Editor > Document Checking**, and deselect the **Enable automatic validation option (on page 94)**.

To validate an XML Schema document manually, select the ✓ **Validate** action from the ✓ • **Validation** toolbar drop-down menu or the **XML** menu. When Oxygen XML Developer plugin validates an XML Schema file, it expands all the included modules so the entire schema hierarchy is validated. The validation problems are highlighted directly in the editor, making it easy to locate and fix any issues.

Validation of an XML Schema containing a type definition with a **minOccurs** or **maxOccurs** attribute having a value larger than 256 limits the value to 256 and issues a warning about this restriction in the Message panel at the bottom of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin window. Otherwise, for large values of the **minOccurs** and **maxOccurs** attributes, the validator fails with an **OutOfMemory** error that might make Oxygen XML Developer plugin unusable without restarting the entire application.

⚠️ **Important:** If the schema imports only a namespace without specifying the schema location and a **catalog is set up (on page 460)** to map the namespace to a certain location, both validation and the schema components will correctly identify the imported schema.

**Related Information:**

• **Validating XML Documents Against a Schema (on page 422)**

• **Embedding Schematron Rules in XML Schema or RELAX NG (on page 774)**

• **Validation Scenario (on page 432)**

• **Associating a Schema to XML Documents (on page 449)**

• **Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode (on page 229)**
Quick Fixes for DTD, XSD, and Relax NG Errors

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers Quick Fixes for common errors that appear in XML documents that are validated against DTD, XSD, or Relax NG schemas.

**Note:** For XML documents validated against XSD schemas, the Quick Fixes are only available if you use the default Xerces validation engine.

Quick Fixes are available in Text mode.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides Quick Fixes for numerous types of problems, including the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem Type</th>
<th>Available Quick Fixes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A specific element is required in the current context</td>
<td>Insert the required element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An element is invalid in the current context</td>
<td>Remove the invalid element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The content of the element should be empty</td>
<td>Remove the element content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An element is not allowed to have child elements</td>
<td>Remove all child elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text is not allowed in the current element</td>
<td>Remove the text content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A required attribute is missing</td>
<td>Insert the required attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An attribute is not allowed to be set for the current element</td>
<td>Remove the attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The attribute value is invalid</td>
<td>Propose the correct attribute values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID value is already defined</td>
<td>Generate a unique ID value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References to an invalid ID</td>
<td>Change the reference to an already defined ID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Information:

- Schematron Quick Fixes (SQF) (on page 449)

Content Completion in XML Schema

The intelligent Content Completion Assistant allows you to quickly identify and insert elements, attributes, and attribute values that are valid in the current editing context. All available proposals are listed in a pop-up menu displayed at the current cursor position.

The Content Completion Assistant is enabled by default. To disable it, open the Preferences dialog box, go to Editor > Content Completion, and deselect the Enable content completion option (on page 86).
When active, the *Content Completion Assistant* displays a list of context-sensitive proposals valid at the current cursor position. It can be manually activated with the `Ctrl + Space` (*Command + Space on OS X*) shortcut. You can navigate through the list of proposals by using the `Up` and `Down` keys on your keyboard. For each selected item in the list, the *Content Completion Assistant* displays a documentation window. You can customize the size of the documentation window by dragging its top, right, and bottom borders.

To insert the selected proposal in **Text** mode, do one of the following:

- Press **Enter** or **Tab** to insert both the start and end tags and position the cursor inside the start tag in a position suitable for inserting attributes.
- Press **Ctrl + Enter** (*Command + Enter on OS X*) to insert both the start and end tags and positions the cursor between the tags in a position where you can start typing content.

Depending on the selected schema version *(on page 653)*, Oxygen XML Developer plugin populates the proposals list with information taken either from XML Schema 1.0 or 1.1.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin helps you to easily reference a component by providing the list of proposals (complex types, simple types, elements, attributes, groups, attribute groups, or notations) valid in the current context. The components are collected from the current file or from the imported/included schemas.

When editing `xs:annotation/xs:appinfo` elements of an XML Schema, the *Content Completion Assistant* proposes elements and attributes from a custom schema (by default ISO Schematron). This feature can be configured from the *XSD Content Completion* *(on page 90)* preferences page.

**Syntax Highlighting in XML Schema**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports syntax highlighting in **Text** mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for XML Schema files, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 42)*.
2. Go to **Editor > Syntax Highlight** *(on page 112)*.
3. Select and expand the **XML** section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.
5. Select the **XSD** tab in the **Preview** pane to see the effects of your changes.
Tip: Oxygen XML Developer plugin also allows you to specify syntax highlighting colors for specific XML elements and attributes with specific namespace prefixes. This can be done in the Editor > Syntax Highlight > Elements/Attributes by Prefix preferences page (on page 113).

Related Information:

- Customize Syntax Highlight colors (on page 112)

XML Schema Outline View

The Outline view for XML Schemas presents all the global components grouped by their location, namespace, or type. By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Figure 249. Outline View for XML Schema

The Outline view provides the following options in the View Menu on the Outline view action bar:

- Filter returns exact matches
  
  The text filter of the Outline view returns only exact matches;

- Selection update on cursor move
Allows a synchronization between **Outline** view and schema diagram. The selected view from the diagram is also selected in the **Outline** view.

**Sort**

Allows you to sort alphabetically the schema components.

**Show all components**

Displays all components that were collected starting from the *master files (on page 1623)*. Components that are not referable from the current file are marked with an orange underline. To reference them, add an import directive with the `componentNS` namespace.

**Show referable components**

Displays all components (collected starting from the *master files (on page 1623)*) that can be referenced from the current file. This option is set by default.

**Show only local components**

Displays the components defined in the current file only.

**Group by location/namespace/type**

These three operations allow you to group the components by location, namespace, or type. When grouping by namespace, the main schema target namespace is the first presented in the **Outline** view.

The following contextual menu actions are available in the **Outline** view:

**Remove (Delete)**

Removes the selected item from the diagram.

**Search References**

Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope, if any.

**Search References in**

Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the specified scope.

**Component Dependencies**

Opens the **Component Dependencies** view (on page 620) that allows you to see the dependencies for the current selected component.

**Resource Hierarchy**

Opens the **Resource Hierarchy / Dependencies** view (on page 467) that allows you to see the hierarchy for the current selected resource.
Resource Dependencies

Opens the Resource Hierarchy / Dependencies view (on page 467) that allows you to see the dependencies for the current selected resource.

 Rename Component in

 Renames the selected component.

 Generate Sample XML Files

 Generate XML files using the current opened schema. The selected component is the XML document root.

The upper part of the Outline view contains a filter box that allows you to focus on the relevant components. Type a text fragment in the filter box and only the components that match it are presented. For advanced usage you can use wildcard characters (such as * , ? ) and separate multiple patterns with commas.

Tip: The search filter is case insensitive. The following wildcards are accepted:

  • * - any string
  • ? - any character
  • _ - patterns separator

If no wildcards are specified, the string to search will be searched as a partial match.

The content of the Outline view and the editing area are synchronized. When you select a component in the Outline view, its definition is highlighted in the editing area.

Related Information:

 ● Searching and Refactoring Actions in XML Schemas (on page 622)

 ● XML Schema Component Dependencies View (on page 620)

 ● XML Schema Resource Hierarchy / Dependencies View (on page 617)

 ● Generating Sample XML Files (on page 625)

 ● Editing Relax NG Schema in the Master Files Context (on page 702)
XML Schema Attributes View

The Attributes view for XML Schemas presents the properties for the selected component in the schema diagram. By default, it is displayed on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Figure 250. Attributes View

The default value of a property is presented in the Attributes view with blue foreground. The properties that can not be edited are rendered with gray foreground. A non-editable category that contains at least one child is rendered with bold. Bold properties are properties with values set explicitly to them.

Properties for components that do not belong to the current edited schema are read-only but if you double-click them you can choose to open the corresponding schema and edit them.

You can edit a property by double-clicking by pressing Enter. For most properties you can choose valid values from a list or you can specify another value. If a property has an invalid value or a warning, it will be highlighted in the table with the corresponding foreground color. By default, properties with errors are highlighted with red and the properties with warnings are highlighted with yellow. You can customize these colors from the Document checking user preferences (on page 93).

For imports, includes and redefines, the properties are not edited directly in the Attributes view. A dialog box will open that allows you to specify properties for them.

The schema namespace mappings are not presented in Attributes view. You can view/edit these by choosing Edit Schema Namespaces from the contextual menu on the schema root. See more in the Edit Schema Namespaces (on page 605) section.
The **Attributes** view has five actions available on the toolbar and also on the contextual menu:

- **Add**
  
  Allows you to add a new member type to an union’s member types category.

- **Remove**
  
  Allows you to remove the value of a property.

- **Move Up**
  
  Allows you to move up the current member to an union’s member types category.

- **Move Down**
  
  Allows you to move down the current member to an union’s member types category.

- **Copy**
  
  Copy the attribute value.

- **Go to Definition**
  
  Shows the definition for the selected type.

  **Show Facets**
  
  Allows you to edit the facets for a simple type.

**XML Schema Palette View**

The **Palette** view is designed to offer quick access to XML Schema components and to improve the usability of the XML Schema diagram builder. You can use the **Palette** to drag and drop components in the **Design** mode. The components offered in the **Palette** view depend on the XML schema version set in the **XML Schema preferences page** (on page 138). If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Figure 251. Palette View

Figure 252. Palette View
Components are organized functionally into 4 collapsible categories:

- **Basic components**: `elements`, `group`, `attribute`, `attribute group`, `complex type`, `simple type`, `type alternative`.
- **Compositors and Wildcards**: `sequence`, `choice`, `all`, `any`, `any attribute`, `open content`.
- **Directives**: `import`, `include`, `redefine`, `override`.
- **Identity constraints**: `key`, `keyref`, `unique`, `selector`, `field`, `assert`.

**Note**: The `type alternative`, `open content`, `override`, and `assert` components are available for XML Schema 1.1.

To add a component to the edited schema:

- Click and hold a graphic symbol from the **Palette** view, then drag the component into the **Design** view.
- A line dynamically connects the component with the XML schema structure.
- Release the component into a valid position.

**Note**: You cannot drop a component into an invalid position. When you hover the component into an invalid position, the mouse cursor changes its shape into ![error](icon). Also, the connector line changes its color from the usual dark gray to the color defined in the **Validation error highlight color option** (on page 93) (default color is red).

For more information about the Schema palette, watch our video demonstration:

[https://www.youtube.com/embed/KalHUXmpuAA](https://www.youtube.com/embed/KalHUXmpuAA)
XML Schema Facets View

The Facets view for XML Schemas presents the facets for the selected component, if available. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Figure 253. Facets View

The default value of a facet is rendered in the Facets view with a blue color. The facets that can not be edited are rendered with a gray color. The grouping categories (for example: Enumerations and Patterns) are not editable. If these categories contain at least one child they are rendered with bold. Bold facets are facets with values set explicitly to them.

⚠️ Important: Usually inherited facets are presented as default in the Facets view but if patterns are inherited from a base type and also specified in the current simple type only the current specified patterns will be presented. You can see the effective pattern value obtained by combining the inherited and the specified patterns as a tooltip on the Patterns category.

Facets for components that do not belong to the current edited schema are read-only but if you double-click them you can choose to open the corresponding schema and edit them.

You can edit a facet by double-clicking it or by pressing Enter, when that facet is selected. For some facets you can choose valid values from a list or you can specify another value. If a facet has an invalid value or a warning, it will be highlighted in the table with the corresponding foreground color. By default, facets with errors are presented with red and the facets with warnings with yellow. You can customize the error colors from the Document Checking user preferences (on page 93).

The Facets view provides the following actions in its toolbar and contextual menu:

- **Add**
  Allows you to add a new enumeration or a new pattern.

- **Remove**
  Allows you to remove the value of a facet.
Edit Annotations

Allows you to edit an annotation for the selected facet.

↑ Move Up

Allows you to move up the current enumeration/pattern in Enumerations/Patterns category.

↓ Move Down

Allows you to move down the current enumeration/pattern in Enumerations/Patterns category.

COPY

Copy the attribute value.

Open in Regular Expressions Builder

Rather than editing regular expressions manually, this action allows you to open the pattern in the XML Schema Regular Expressions Builder (on page 649) that guides you through the process of testing and constructing the pattern.

Facets can be fixed to prevent a derivation from modifying its value. To fix a facet value just press the Pin button.

XML Schema Resource Hierarchy / Dependencies View

The Resource Hierarchy / Dependencies view displays the hierarchy or dependencies for an XML Schema. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

The Resource Hierarchy / Dependencies is useful when you want to start from an XML Schema (XSD) file and build and review the hierarchy of all the other XSD files that are imported, included or redefined in the given XSD file. The view is also able to build the tree structure, that is the structure of all other XSD files that import, include or redefine the given XSD file. The scope of the search is configurable (the current project, a set of local folders, etc.)

If you want to see the hierarchy or dependencies of an XML schema, select the desired schema in the Navigator view (on page 210) and choose Resource Hierarchy or Resource Dependencies from the contextual menu.

Figure 254. Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View
The following actions are available on the toolbar of the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view:

- **Refresh**
  
  Refreshes the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

- **Stop**

  Stops the hierarchy/dependencies computing.

- **Show Hierarchy**

  Allows you to choose a resource to compute the hierarchy structure.

- **Show Dependencies**

  Allows you to choose a resource to compute the dependencies structure.

- **Configure dependencies search scope**

  Allows you to configure a scope to compute the dependencies structure. There is also an option for automatically using the defined scope for future operations.

- **History**

  Provides access to the list of previously computed dependencies. Use the **Clear history** button to remove all items from this list.

The contextual menu for a resource listed in the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view contains the following actions:

- **Open**

  Opens the resource. You can also double-click a resource in the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure to open it.

- **Go to reference**
Opens the source document where the resource is referenced.

**Copy location**
Copies the location of the resource.

**Move resource**
Moves the selected resource.

**Rename resource**
Renames the selected resource.

**Show Resource Hierarchy**
Shows the hierarchy for the selected resource.

**Show Resource Dependencies**
Shows the dependencies for the selected resource.

**Add to Master Files**
Adds the currently selected resource in the Master Files directory (on page 337).

**Expand All**
Expands all the children of the selected resource from the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

**Collapse All**
Collapses all children of the selected resource from the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

**Tip:** When a recursive reference is encountered in the Hierarchy view, the reference is marked with a special icon.

**Note:** The Move resource or Rename resource actions give you the option to update the references to the resource (on page 619).

**Related Information:**
- Search and Refactor Operations Scope (on page 466)

Moving/Renaming XML Schema Resources

You can move and rename a resource presented in the Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies view, using the Rename resource and Move resource refactoring actions from the contextual menu.
When you select the **Rename** action in the contextual menu of the **Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies** view, the **Rename resource** dialog box is displayed. The following fields are available:

- **New name** - Presents the current name of the edited resource and allows you to modify it.
- **Update references of the renamed resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are renaming. A **Preview** option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting **Rename** to process the operation.

When you select the **Move** action from the contextual menu of the **Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies** view, the **Move resource** dialog box is displayed. The following fields are available:

- **Destination** - Presents the path to the current location of the resource you want to move and gives you the option to introduce a new location.
- **New name** - Presents the current name of the moved resource and gives you the option to change it.
- **Update references of the moved resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are moving, in accordance with the new location and name. A **Preview** option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting **Move** to process the operation.

**XML Schema Component Dependencies View**

The **Component Dependencies** view allows you to see the dependencies for a selected component. This is helpful if you want to see where components are used in the entire hierarchy. For example, if you want to find all the references where a given component is used.

If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

To see the dependencies of an XML Schema component:

1. Right-click the desired component in the editor or **Outline** view.
2. Select the **Component Dependencies** action from the contextual menu.

The action is available for all named components (for example, elements or attributes).

If a component contains multiple references, a small table is displayed at the bottom of the view that contains all the references. When a recursive reference is encountered, it is marked with a special icon.

![Figure 255. Component Dependencies View - Hierarchy for xhtml11.xsd](./xhtml11.xsd)
The **Component Dependencies** view includes the following toolbar actions:

- **Refresh**
  
  Refreshes the dependencies structure.

- **Stop**
  
  Stops the dependency computation.

- **Configure**
  
  Allows you to choose the search scope for computing the dependencies structure. This is helpful for making sure all imported/included resources are computed.

- **History**
  
  Allows you to select from a list of the most recently used dependency computations.

In addition, the following actions are available in the contextual menu:

- **Go to First Reference**
  
  Selects the first reference of the currently selected component in the dependencies tree.

- **Go to Component**
  
  Shows the definition of the currently selected component in the dependencies tree.

For more information, see the **Maintain Complex XML Schemas** section of our **Developing XML Schemas** video demonstration:

[https://www.youtube.com/embed/vz1elZELQgc](https://www.youtube.com/embed/vz1elZELQgc)
Highlight Component Occurrences

When a component (for example types, elements, attributes) is found at current cursor position, Oxygen XML Developer plugin performs a search over the entire document to find the component declaration and all its references. When found, they are highlighted both in the document and in the stripe bar, at the right side of the document. Customizable colors are used: one for the component definition and another one for component references. Occurrences are displayed until another component is selected and a new search is performed. All occurrences are removed when you start to edit the document.

This feature is on by default. To configure it, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Mark Occurrences. A search can also be triggered with the Search > Search Occurrences in File () contextual menu action. All matches are displayed in a separate tab of the Results view (on page 226).

Searching and Refactoring Actions in XML Schemas

Search Actions

The following search actions can be applied on attribute, attributeGroup, element, group, key, unique, keyref, notation, simple, or complex types and are available from the Search submenu in the contextual menu of the current editor:

- **Search References**
  Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope, if any. If a scope is defined, but the current edited resource is not part of the range of resources determined by this, a warning dialog box is displayed and you have the possibility to define another search scope.

- **Search References in**
  Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the file or files that you specify when define a scope in the Search References dialog box.

- **Search Declarations**
Searches all declarations of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope if any. If a scope is defined, but the current edited resource is not part of the range of resources determined by this, a warning dialog box will be displayed and you have the possibility to define another search scope.

**Search Declarations in**

Searches all declarations of the item found at current cursor position in the file or files that you specify when you define a scope for the search operation.

**Search Occurrences in File**

Searches all occurrences of the item at the cursor position in the currently edited file.

The following action is available from the XSL menu:

**Go to Definition**

Moves the cursor to the definition of the referenced XML Schema item.

**Note:** You can also use the Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on OS X) shortcut on a reference to display its definition.

**Refactoring Actions**

The following refactoring actions can be applied on `attribute`, `attributeGroup`, `element`, `group`, `key`, `unique`, `keyref`, `notation`, `simple`, or `complex` types and are available from the Refactoring submenu in the contextual menu of the current editor:

**Rename Component**

Allows you to rename the current component (in-place). The component and all its references in the document are highlighted with a thin border and the changes you make to the component at the cursor position are updated in real time to all occurrences of the component. To exit the in-place editing, press the Esc or Enter key on your keyboard.

**Rename Component in**

Opens a dialog box that allows you to rename the selected component by specifying the new component name and the files to be affected by the modification. If you click the Preview button, you can view the files to be affected by the action.

Figure 256. Rename Identity Constraint Dialog Box
Related Information:

- Search and Refactor Operations Scope (on page 466)

### XML Schema Quick Assist Support

The **Quick Assist support** (on page 1625) improves the development workflow, offering fast access to the most commonly used actions when you edit schema documents.

The **Quick Assist feature** (on page 1625) is activated automatically when the cursor is positioned over the name of a component. It is accessible via a yellow bulb icon (_gb) placed at the current line in the stripe on the left side of the editor. Also, you can invoke the quick assist menu by using the **Ctrl + 1** (Meta 1 on Mac OS X) keyboard shortcuts.

Figure 257. Quick Assist Support

The **Quick Assist** support offers direct access to the following actions:
**Rename Component in**

Renames the component and all its dependencies.

**Search Declarations**

Searches the declaration of the component in a predefined scope. It is available only when the context represents a component name reference.

**Search References**

Searches all references of the component in a predefined scope.

**Component Dependencies**

Searches the component dependencies in a predefined scope.

**Change Scope**

Configures the scope that will be used for future search or refactor operations.

**Rename Component**

Allows you to rename the current component in-place.

**Search Occurrences**

Searches all occurrences of the component within the current file.

For more information about improving schema development using the Quick Assist action set, watch our video demonstration:

[https://www.youtube.com/embed/X-2-gkrFSGU](https://www.youtube.com/embed/X-2-gkrFSGU)

**Related Information:**

- Resource Hierarchy / Dependencies View *(on page 617)*
- Component Dependencies View *(on page 620)*
- Searching and Refactoring Actions *(on page 622)*

**Generating Sample XML Files**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers support to generate sample XML files both from XML schema 1.0 and XML schema 1.1, depending on the XML schema version set in XML Schema preferences page *(on page 139).*
To generate sample XML files from an XML Schema, use the Generate Sample XML Files action from the XML Tools menu. This action is also available in the contextual menu of the schema Design mode (on page 572). The action opens the Generate Sample XML Files dialog box that allows you to configure a variety of options for generating the files.

The Generate Sample XML Files dialog box contains three tabs with various configurable options. Default values for these options can be set in the Sample XML Files Generator preferences page (on page 130).

Schema Tab (Generate Sample XML Files Tool)

The Generate Sample XML Files tool includes a dialog box that allows you to configure a variety of options for generating the XML files. The first set of options are found in the Schema tab.

Figure 258. Generate Sample XML Files Dialog Box (Schema Tab)

This tab includes the following options:

**URL**

Specifies the URL of the Schema location. You can specify the path by using the text field, the history drop-down menu, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

**Namespace**

Displays the namespace of the selected schema.

**Root Element**
After the schema is selected, this drop-down menu is populated with all root candidates gathered from the schema. Choose the root of the output XML documents.

**Output folder**

Path to the folder where the generated XML instances will be saved.

**Filename prefix and Extension**

You can specify the prefix and extension for the file name that will be generated. Generated file names have the following format: `prefixN.extension`, where `N` represents an incremental number from 0 up to the specified **Number of instances** (on page 627).

**Number of instances**

The number of XML files to be generated.

**Open first instance in editor**

When selected, the first generated XML file is opened in the editor.

**Namespaces section**

You can specify the **Default Namespace**, as well as the prefixes for the namespaces.

**Export settings**

Use this button to save the current settings for future use.

**Import settings**

Use this button to load previously exported settings.

You can click **OK** at any point to generate the sample XML files.

**Options Tab (Generate Sample XML Files Tool)**

The **Generate Sample XML Files** tool includes a dialog box that allows you to configure a variety of options for generating the XML files. The **Options** tab allows you to set specific options for namespaces and elements.

Figure 259. Generate Sample XML Files Dialog Box (Options Tab)
This tab includes the following options:

**Namespace / Element table**

Allows you to set a namespace for each element name that appears in an XML document instance. The following prefix-to-namespace associations are available:

- All elements from all namespaces (`<ANY>` - `<ANY>`). This is the default setting.
- All elements from a specific namespace.
- A specific element from a specific namespace.

**Settings subtab**

**Namespace**

Displays the namespace specified in the table at the top of the dialog box.

**Element**

Displays the element specified in the table at the top of the dialog box.

**Generate optional elements**

When selected, all elements are generated, including the optional ones (having the `minOccurs` attribute set to 0 in the schema).
Generate optional attributes

When selected, all attributes are generated, including the optional ones (having the `use` attribute set to `optional` in the schema).

Values of elements and attributes

Controls the content of generated attribute and element values. The following choices are available:

- **None** - No content is inserted.
- **Default** - Inserts a default value depending on the data type descriptor of the particular element or attribute. The default value can be either the data type name or an incremental name of the attribute or element (according to the global option from the Sample XML Files Generator preferences page). Note that type restrictions are ignored when this option is selected. For example, if an element is of a type that restricts an `xs:string` with the `xs:maxLength` facet to allow strings with a maximum length of 3, the XML instance generator tool may generate string element values longer than 3 characters.
- **Random** - Inserts a random value depending on the data type descriptor of the particular element or attribute.

⚠️ **Important:** If all of the following are true, the Generate Sample XML Files tool outputs invalid values:

- At least one of the restrictions is a `regexp`.
- The value generated after applying the regexp does not match the restrictions imposed by one of the facets.

Preferred number of repetitions

Allows you to set the preferred number of repeating elements related to `minOccurs` and `maxOccurs` facets defined in the XML Schema.

- If the value set here is between `minOccurs` and `maxOccurs`, then that value is used.
- If the value set here is less than `minOccurs`, then the `minOccurs` value is used.
- If the value set here is greater than `maxOccurs`, then `maxOccurs` is used.

Maximum recursion level

If a recursion is found, this option controls the maximum allowed depth of the same element.
Type alternative strategy

Used for the `xs:alternative` element from XML Schema 1.1. The possible strategies are:

- **First** - The first valid alternative type is always used.
- **Random** - A random alternative type is used.

Choice strategy

Used for `xs:choice` or `substitutionGroup` elements. The possible strategies are:

- **First** - The first branch of `xs:choice` or the head element of `substitutionGroup` is always used.
- **Random** - A random branch of `xs:choice` or a substitute element or the head element of a `substitutionGroup` is used.

Generate the other options as comments

If selected, generates the other possible choices or substitutions (for `xs:choice` and `substitutionGroup`). These alternatives are generated inside comments groups so you can uncomment and use them later. Use this option with care (for example, on a restricted namespace and element) as it may generate large result files.

Element values subtab

Allows you to add values that are used to generate the content of elements. If there are multiple values, then the values are used in a random order.

Attribute values subtab

Allows you to add values that are used to generate the content of attributes. If there are multiple values, then the values are used in a random order.

Export settings

Use this button to save the current settings for future use.

Import settings

Use this button to load previously exported settings.

You can click **OK** at any point to generate the sample XML files.
Advanced Tab (Generate Sample XML Files Tool)

The Generate Sample XML Files tool includes a dialog box that allows you to configure a variety of options for generating the XML files. The Advanced tab allows you to set some options regarding output values and performance.

Figure 260. Generate Sample XML Files Dialog Box (Advanced Tab)

This tab includes the following options:

**Use incremental attribute / element names as default**

If selected, the value of an element or attribute starts with the name of that element or attribute. For example, for an `a` element the generated values are: `a1`, `a2`, `a3`, and so on. If not selected, the value is the name of the type of that element / attribute (for example: `string`, `decimal`, etc.)

**Maximum length**

The maximum length of string values generated for elements and attributes.

**Discard optional elements after nested level**

The optional elements that exceed the specified nested level are discarded. This option is useful for limiting deeply nested element definitions that can quickly result in very large XML documents.

**Export settings**

Use this button to save the current settings for future use.

**Import settings**

Use this button to load previously exported settings.

Generating Documentation for an XML Schema

Oxygen XML Developer plugin can generate detailed documentation for the components of an XML Schema in HTML, PDF, DocBook, or other custom formats. You can select the components and the level of detail. The components are hyperlinked in both HTML and DocBook documents.
Note: You can generate documentation for both XML Schema version 1.0 and 1.1.

To generate documentation for an XML Schema document, select XML Schema Documentation from the XML Tools > Generate Documentation menu or from the Generate XML Schema Documentation action from the contextual menu of the Navigator view (on page 210).

Figure 261. XML Schema Documentation Dialog Box

The Schema URL field of the dialog box must contain the full path to the XML Schema (XSD) file for which you want to generate documentation. The schema may be a local or a remote file. You can specify the path to the schema by entering it in the text field, or by using the Insert Editor Variables button or the options in the Browse drop-down menu.

Output Tab

The following options are available in the Output tab:

- **Format** - Allows you to choose between the following formats:
  - HTML - The documentation is generated in HTML output format (on page 636).
  - PDF - The documentation is generated in PDF output format (on page 639).
  - DocBook - The documentation is generated in DocBook output format (on page 639).
  - DITA - The documentation is generated in DITA output format (on page 639).
• **Custom** - The documentation is generated in a custom output format (on page 639), allowing you to control the output. Click the Options button to open a Custom format options dialog box where you can specify a custom stylesheet for creating the output. There is also an option to Copy additional resources to the output folder and you can select the path to the additional Resources that you want to copy. You can also choose to keep the intermediate XML files created during the documentation process by deselecting the Delete intermediate XML file option.

• **Output file** - You can specify the path of the output file by entering it in the text field, or by using the Insert Editor Variables button or the options in the Browse drop-down menu.

• **Split output into multiple files** - Instructs the application to split the output into multiple files. You can choose to split them by namespace, location, or component name.

• **Open in Browser/System Application** - Opens the result in the system application associated with the output file type. For DITA and DocBook documents, this option appears as Open in Editor and the result will be opened in Oxygen XML Developer plugin (in the current editor).

**Note:** To set the browser or system application that will be used, go to Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser and specify it there. This will take precedence over the default system application settings.

• **Keep only the annotations with xml:lang set to** - The generated output will contain only the annotations with the xml:lang attribute set to the selected language. If you choose a primary language code (for example, en for English), this includes all its possible variations (en-us, en-uk, etc.).

**Settings Tab**

When you generate documentation for an XML schema you can choose what components to include in the output and the details to be included in the documentation.

Figure 262. Settings Tab of the XML Schema Documentation Dialog Box
The Settings tab allows you to choose whether or not to include the following components: Global elements, Global attributes, Local elements, Local attributes, Simple Types, Complex Types, Groups, Attribute Groups, Redefines, Referenced schemas, Include notations.

You can choose whether or not to include the following other details:

- **Diagram** - Displays the diagram for each component. You can choose the image format (JPEG, PNG, SVG) to use for the diagram section. The generated diagrams are dependent on the options from the Schema Design Properties (on page 97) page.

- **Diagram annotations** - This option controls whether or not the annotations of the components presented in the diagram sections are included.

- **Namespace** - Displays the namespace for each component.

- **Location** - Displays the schema location for each component.

- **Type** - Displays the component type if it is not an anonymous one.

- **Type hierarchy** - Displays the types hierarchy.

- **Model** - Displays the model (sequence, choice, all) presented in BNF form. The separator characters that are used depend upon the information item used:
  - `xs:all` - Its children will be separated by space characters.
  - `xs:sequence` - Its children will be separated by comma characters.
  - `xs:choice` - Its children will be separated by `|` characters.

- **Children** - Displays the list of component's children.
• **Instance** - Displays an XML instance generated based on each schema element.

• **Used by** - Displays the list of all the components that reference the current one. The list is sorted by component type and name.

• **Properties** - Displays some of the component's properties.

• **Facets** - Displays the facets for each simple type

• **Identity constraints** - Displays the identity constraints for each element. For each constraint there are presented the name, type (unique, key, keyref), reference attribute, selector and field(s).

• **Attributes** - Displays the attributes for the component. For each attribute there are presented the name, type, fixed or default value, usage and annotation.

• **Asserts** - Displays the `assert` elements defined in a complex type. The test, XPath default namespace, and annotation are presented for each assert.

• **Annotations** - Displays the annotations for the component. If you choose **Escape XML Content**, the XML tags are present in the annotations.

• **Source** - Displays the text schema source for each component.

• **Generate index** - Displays an index with the components included in the documentation.
  - **Include local elements and attributes** - If selected, local elements and attributes are included in the documentation index.
  - **Include resource hierarchy** - Specifies whether or not the resource hierarchy for an XML Schema documentation is generated. It is deselected by default.

**Export settings** - Save the current settings in a settings file for further use (for example, with the exported settings file you can generate the same documentation from the command line interface *(on page 641)*.)

**Import settings** - Reloads the settings from the exported file.

**Generate** - Use this button to generate the XML Schema documentation.

**Related Information:**

  - Customizing PDF or DocBook Output of Generated XML Schema Documentation *(on page 640)*

**Output Formats for Generating XML Schema Documentation**

XML Schema documentation can be generated in HTML, PDF, DocBook, or a custom format. You can choose the format from the **Schema Documentation** *(on page 631)* dialog box. For the PDF and DocBook formats, the option to split the output in multiple files is not available.
HTML Output Format

The XML Schema documentation generated in HTML format contains images corresponding to the same schema definitions as the ones displayed by the schema diagram editor. (on page 261) These images are divided in clickable areas that are linked to the definitions of the names of types or elements. The documentation of a definition includes a Used By section with links to the other definitions that reference it. If the Escape XML Content option is unchecked, the HTML or XHTML tags used inside the xs:documentation elements of the input XML Schema for formatting the documentation text (for example, <b>, <i>, <u>, <ul>, <li>, etc.) are rendered in the generated HTML documentation.

The generated images format is PNG. The image of an XML Schema component contains the graphical representation of that component as it is rendered in the schema diagram panel of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin XSD editor panel. (on page 261)

Figure 263. XML Schema Documentation Example

The generated documentation includes a table of contents. You can group the contents by namespace, location, or component type. After the table of contents there is some information about the main, imported, included, and redefined schemas. This information contains the schema target
namespace, schema properties (attribute form default, element form default, version), and schema location.

Figure 264. Information About a Schema

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Namespace Properties</th>
<th>Schema location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No namespace</td>
<td>file:D:/personalized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute Form Default: unqualified</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element Form Default: unqualified</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you choose to split the output into multiple files, the table of contents is displayed in the left frame. The contents are grouped in the same mode. If you split the output by location, each file contains a schema description and the components that you have chosen to include. If you split the output by namespace, each file contains information about schemas from that namespace and the list with all included components. If you choose to split the output by component, each file contains information about a schema component.

After the documentation is generated, you can collapse or expand details for some schema components by using the Showing options or the Collapse or Expand buttons.

Figure 265. Showing Options

For each component included in the documentation, the section presents the component type follow by the component name. For local elements and attributes, the name of the component is specified as parent name/component name. You can easily go to the parent documentation by clicking the parent name.

Figure 266. Documentation for a Schema Component
If the schema contains imported or included modules, their dependencies tree is generated in the documentation.

Figure 267. Example: Generated Documentation
PDF Output Format

For the PDF output format, the documentation is generated in DocBook format and a transformation using the FOP processor is applied to obtain the PDF file. To configure the FOP processor, see the FO Processors (on page 126) preferences page.

For information about customizing the PDF output, see Customizing PDF or DocBook Output of Generated XML Schema Documentation (on page 640).

DocBook Output Format

If you generate the documentation in DocBook output format, the documentation is generated as a DocBook XML file. You can then apply a built-in DocBook transformation scenario (on page 884) (such as, DocBook PDF or DocBook HTML) on the output file, or configure your own transformation scenario (on page 890) to convert it into whatever format you desire.

For information about customizing the DocBook output, see Customizing PDF or DocBook Output of Generated XML Schema Documentation (on page 640).

DITA Output Format

If you generate the documentation in DITA output format, each element of the schema is converted to a DITA Topic and all the generated topics are referenced in a DITA map (on page 1621) file. You can then apply a built-in DITA transformation scenario (on page 859) (such as, DITA Map PDF or DITA Map XHTML), or configure your own DITA OT transformation scenario (on page 919) to convert it into whatever format you desire.

For information about customizing the DITA output, see Customizing DITA Output of Generated XML Schema (on page 641).

Custom Output Format

For the custom format, you can specify a stylesheet to transform the intermediary XML file generated in the documentation process. You have to edit your stylesheet based on the schema xsdDocSchema.xsd from [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/schema_documentation. You can create a custom format starting from one of the stylesheets used in the built-in HTML, PDF, DocBook, and DITA formats. These stylesheets are available in [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/schema_documentation/xsl.

When using a custom format you can also copy additional resources into the output folder and choose to keep the intermediate XML files created during the documentation process.
Important: If you create a custom format for DITA, you must select the **Split output into multiple files** option in the **Output** tab (on page 633) and choose **Split by component**.

Customizing PDF or DocBook Output of Generated XML Schema Documentation

To customize the PDF or DocBook output of the generated XML Schema documentation, use the following procedure:

1. Customize the \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/schema_documentation/xsl/xsdDocDocbook.xsl stylesheet to include the content that you want to add in the PDF or DocBook output. Add the content in the XSLT template with the `match="schemaDoc"` attribute between the `info` and `xsl:apply-templates` elements, as commented in the following example:

   ```xml
   <info>
     <pubdate>
       <xsl:value-of select="format-date(current-date(), '[Mn] [D], [Y]', 'en', (), ()")/>
     </pubdate>
   </info>
   <!-- Add the XSLT template content with match="schemaDoc" attribute here -->
   
   <xsl:apply-templates select="schemaHierarchy"/>
   ```

2. Create an intermediary file that holds the content of your XML Schema documentation by following these steps:
   a. Go to **Tools > Generate Documentation > XML Schema Documentation**.
   b. Select **Custom** for the output format and click the **Options** button.
   c. In the **Custom format options** dialog box, do the following:
      i. Enter the customized stylesheet in the **Custom XSL** field (\[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/schema_documentation/xsl/xsdDocDocbook.xsl).
      ii. Select the **Copy additional resources to the output folder** option and leave the default selection in the **Resources** field.
      iii. Click **OK**.
   d. When you return to the **XML Schema Documentation** dialog box, just press the **Generate** button to generate a DocBook XML file with an intermediary form of the Schema documentation.

3. If you want the DocBook file to be transformed into a PDF document, follow these steps:
   a. Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu, click **New**, and select **XML transformation with XSLT**.
   b. In the **New Scenario** dialog box, go to the **XSL URL** field and choose the \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/docbook/oxygen/xsdDocDocbookCustomizationFO.xsl file.
c. Go to the FO Processor tab and select the Perform FO Processing and XSLT result as input options.
d. Go to the Output tab and select the directory where you want to store the XML Schema documentation output and click OK.
e. Click Apply Associated.

Customizing DITA Output of Generated XML Schema

To customize the DITA output of the generated XML Schema documentation, use the following procedure:

1. Customize the \{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\}/frameworks/schema_documentation/xsl/xsdDocDita.xsl stylesheet to incorporate your desired changes.
2. Create an intermediary file that holds the content of your XML Schema documentation by following these steps:
   a. Go to Tools > Generate Documentation > XML Schema Documentation.
   b. Select Custom for the output format and click the Options button.
   c. In the Custom format options dialog box, do the following:
      i. Enter the customized stylesheet in the Custom XSL field (\{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\}/frameworks/schema_documentation/xsl/xsdDocDita.xsl).
      ii. Select the Copy additional resources to the output folder option and leave the default selection in the Resources field.
      iii. Click OK.
   d. Make sure the Split output into multiple files option (on page 633) is selected and choose Split by component.
   e. When you return to the XML Schema Documentation dialog box, just press the Generate button to generate a DITA map file that contains the XML Schema documentation.

Generating XML Schema Documentation From the Command-Line Interface

You can export the settings of the XML Schema Documentation dialog box (on page 631) to an XML file by pressing the Export settings button. With the exported configuration file, you can generate the same documentation from the command-line interface by running the following script:

- schemaDocumentation.bat on Windows.
- schemaDocumentation.sh on OS X / Linux.

The script is located in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation folder. The script can be integrated in an external batch process launched from the command-line interface. The script accepts a variety of command-line arguments that allow you to configure the documentation.
The accepted syntax and arguments are as follows:

```
```

- **schemaFile**
  The XML Schema file.

- **-cfg:configFile**
  The exported configuration file. It contains the output file, output format options, split method, and some advanced options regarding the included components and components details. If an external configuration file is specified, all other supplied arguments except for the XML Schema file will be ignored.

- **-out:outputFile**
  The file where the generated documentation will be saved. By default, it is the name of the schema file with an `html` extension.

- **-format:<value>**
  The output format type used when generating the documentation. Possible values are as follows:

  - `html` - To generate documentation in HTML format.
  - `pdf` - To generate documentation in PDF format.
  - `docbook` - To generate documentation in DocBook format.
  - `custom` - To generate documentation in a custom format.

- **-xsl:<xslFile>**
  The XSL file to be applied on the intermediate XML format. If there is no XSL file provided, the result will be in the HTML format.

- **-split:<value>**
  The split method used when generating the documentation. Splitting is recommended for large schemas. Possible values are as follows:

  - `none` (default value) - To generate one single output file.
  - `namespace` - To generate an output file for every namespace in the schema.
  - `component` - To generate an output file for every component in the schema.
  - `location` - To generate an output file for every schema location.

- **-openInBrowser:<value>**
  Opens the result of the transformation in a browser or system application. Possible values are `true` or `false` (default value).
--help | -help | --h | -h

Displays the available options.

Example:

Example of the script in a Windows command line:

```
schemaDocumentation example.xsd -out:schemaDocumentation.html
   -format:custom -xsl:example.xsl -split:namespace
```

Converting Schema to Another Schema Language

The **Generate/Convert Schema** tool allows you to convert a DTD or Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema or a set of XML files to an equivalent XML Schema, DTD or Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema. Where perfect equivalence is not possible due to limitations of the target language, Oxygen XML Developer plugin generates an approximation of the source schema. Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses **Trang multiple format converter** to perform the actual schema conversions.

To use this tool, select the **Generate/Convert Schema** (Ctrl + Shift + BackSlash (Command + Shift + BackSlash on OS X)) action from the XML Tools menu. This action opens the Generate/Convert Schema dialog box that allows you to configure various options for conversion.

Figure 268. Generate/Convert Schema Dialog Box

The **Generate/Convert Schema** dialog box includes the following options:

**Input section**
Allows you to select the language of the source schema. If the conversion is based on a set of XML files, rather than just a single XML file, select the XML Documents option and use the file selector to add the XML files involved in the conversion.

Output section

Allows you to select the language of the target schema.

Options

You can choose the Encoding, the maximum Line width, and the Indent size (in number of spaces) for one level of indentation.

Output file

Specifies the path for the output file that will be generated.

Close dialog when finished

If you deselect this option, the dialog box will remain opened after the conversion so that you can easily continue to convert more files.

Advanced options

If you select XML 1.0 DTD for the input, you can click this button to access more advance options to further fine-tune the conversion. The following advanced options are available:

XML 1.0 DTD Input section

These options apply to the source DTD:

- xmlns - Specifies the default namespace, that is the namespace used for unqualified element names.
- attlist-define - Specifies how to construct the name of the definition representing an attribute list declaration from the name of the element. The specified value must contain exactly one percent character. This percent character is replaced by the name of element (after colon replacement) and the result is used as the name of the definition.
- colon-replacement - Replaces colons in element names with the specified chars when constructing the names of definitions used to represent the element declarations and attribute list declarations in the DTD.
- any-name - Specifies the name of the definition generated for the content of elements declared in the DTD as having a content model of ANY.
• **element-define** - Specifies how to construct the name of the definition representing an element declaration from the name of the element. The specified value must contain exactly one percent character. This percent character is replaced by the name of element (after colon replacement) and the result is used as the name of the definition.

• **annotation-prefix** - Default values are represented using an annotation attribute `prefix:defaultValue` where `prefix` is the specified value and is bound to `http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0` as defined by the RELAX NG DTD Compatibility Committee Specification. By default, the conversion engine will use a for prefix unless that conflicts with a prefix used in the DTD.

• **inline-attlist** - Instructs the application not to generate definitions for attribute list declarations, but instead move attributes declared in attribute list declarations into the definitions generated for element declarations. This is the default behavior when the output language is XSD.

• **strict-any** - Preserves the exact semantics of **ANY** content models by using an explicit choice of references to all declared elements. By default, the conversion engine uses a wildcard that allows any element

• **generate-start** - Specifies whether or not the conversion engine should generate a start element. DTD's do not indicate what elements are allowed as document elements. The conversion engine assumes that all elements that are defined but never referenced are allowed as document elements.

• **xmlns mappings table** - Each row specifies the prefix used for a namespace in the input schema.

**W3C XML Schema Output section**

This section is available if you select **W3C XML Schema** for the output.

• **disable-abstract-elements** - Disables the use of abstract elements and substitution groups in the generated XML Schema. This can also be controlled using an annotation attribute.

• **any-process-contents** - One of the values: strict, lax, skip. Specifies the value for the `processContents` attribute of any elements. The default is skip (corresponding to RELAX NG semantics) unless the input format is DTD, in which case the default is strict (corresponding to DTD semantics).
• **any-attribute-process-contents** - Specifies the value for the `processContents` attribute of `anyAttribute` elements. The default is `skip` (corresponding to RELAX NG semantics).

### Converting Database to XML Schema

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a tool that allows you to create an XML Schema from the structure of a database.

To convert a database structure to an XML Schema, use the following procedure:

1. Select the **Convert DB Structure to XML Schema** action from the **Tools** menu.

   **Result:** The **Convert DB Structure to XML Schema** dialog box is opened and your current database connections are displayed in the **Connections** section.

2. If the database source is not listed, click the **Configure Database Sources** button to open the **Data Sources preferences page (on page 47)** where you can configure data sources and connections.

3. In the **Format for generated schema** section, select one of the following formats:
   - **Flat schema** - A flat structure that resembles a tree-like view of the database without references to elements.
   - **Hierarchical schema** - Display the table dependencies visually, in a type of tree view where dependent tables are shown as indented child elements in the content model. Select this option if you want to configure the database columns of the tables to be converted.

4. Click **Connect**.

   **Result:** The database structure is listed in the **Select database tables** section according to the format you chose.

5. Select the database tables that you want to be included in the XML Schema.

6. If you selected **Hierarchical schema** for the format, you can configure the database columns.
   a. Select the database column you want to configure.
   b. In the **Criterion** section you can choose to convert the selected database column as an **Element**, **Attribute**, or to be **Skipped** in the resulting XML Schema.
   c. You can also change the name of the selected database column by changing it in the **Name** text field.

7. Click **Generate XML Schema**.

   **Result:** The database structure is converted to an XML Schema and it is opened for viewing and editing.
Flatten an XML Schema

You can organize an XML schema linked by `xs:include` and `xs:import` statements on several levels. In some cases, working on such a schema as if it were a single file is more convenient than working on multiple files separately. The Flatten Schema operation allows you to flatten an entire hierarchy of XML schemas. Starting with the main XML schema, Oxygen XML Developer plugin calculates its hierarchy by processing the `xs:include` and `xs:import` statements.

The Flatten Schema action is available from the Refactoring submenu in the contextual menu in Text mode. The action opens the Flatten Schema dialog box that allows you to configure the operation.

Figure 269. Flatten Schema Dialog Box

For the main schema file and for each imported schema, a new flattened schema is generated in the specified output folder. These schemas have the same name as the original ones.

**Note:** If necessary, the operation renames the resulted schemas to avoid duplicated file names.

A flattened XML schema is obtained by recursively adding the components of the included schemas into the main one. This means Oxygen XML Developer plugin replaces the `xs:include`, `xs:redefine`, and `xs:override` elements with the ones coming from the included files.

Options in the Flatten Schema Dialog Box

The following options are available in the Flatten Schema dialog box:
File name

The name of the output file.

Output directory

The path of the output directory where the flattened schema file will be saved.

Open the flattened XML Schema file in editor

Opens the main flattened schema in the editing area after the operation completes.

Use the XML Catalogs when collecting the referenced XML Schemas

Enables the imported and included schemas to be resolved through the available XML Catalogs (on page 1627).

Note: Changing this option triggers the recalculation of the dependencies graph for the main schema.

Process the imported XML Schemas resolved through the XML Catalogs

Specifies whether or not the imported schemas that were resolved through an XML Catalog (on page 1627) are also processed.

Flatten the imported XML Schema(s)

Specifies whether or not the imported schemas are flattened.

Note: For the schemas skipped by the flatten operation, no files are created in the output folder and the corresponding import statements remain unchanged.

Flatten Schema from the Command Line

The Flatten Schema tool can be also ran from command line by using the following command:

- flattenSchema.bat on Windows
- sh flattenSchema.sh on OS X and Linux

The command line accepts the following parameters:

- -in:inputSchemaURL - The input schema URL.
- -outDir:outputDirectory - The directory where the flattened schemas should be saved.
- -flattenImports:boolean_value - Controls whether or not the imported XML Schemas should be flattened. The default value true.
- -useCatalogs:boolean_value - Controls if the references to other XML Schemas should be resolved through the available XML Catalogs (on page 1627). The default value false.
• `-flattenCatalogResolvedImports:<boolean_value>` - Controls whether or not the imported schemas that were resolved through the XML Catalogs (on page 1627) should be flattened. The default value is `true`.

**Note:** This option is used only when `-useCatalogs` is set to `true`.

• `-verbose` - Provides information about the current flatten XML Schema operation.
• `--help | -help | --h | -h` - Prints the available parameters for the operation.

**Example: Command-Line Example for Windows**

```bash
flattenSchema.bat -in:http://www.w3.org/MarkUp/SCHEMA/xhtml11.xsd
   -outDir:mySchemas/flattened/xhtml -flattenImports:true -useCatalogs:true
   -flattenCatalogResolvedImports:true -verbose
```

**Example: Command-Line Example for OS X**

```bash
sh flattenSchema.sh -in:http://www.w3.org/MarkUp/SCHEMA/xhtml11.xsd
   -outDir:mySchemas/flattened/xhtml -flattenImports:true -useCatalogs:true
   -flattenCatalogResolvedImports:true -verbose
```

**Example: Command-Line Example for Unix/Linux**

```bash
sh flattenSchema.sh -in:http://www.w3.org/MarkUp/SCHEMA/xhtml11.xsd
   -outDir:mySchemas/flattened/xhtml -flattenImports:true -useCatalogs:true
   -flattenCatalogResolvedImports:true -verbose
```

**XML Schema Regular Expressions Builder**

The XML Schema regular expressions builder allows you to test regular expressions on a fragment of text as they are applied to an XML instance document. Start the tool by selecting XML Schema Regular Expressions Builder from the XML Tools menu.

Figure 270. XML Schema Regular Expressions Builder Dialog Box
The dialog box contains the following:

**Regular expressions editor**

Allows you to edit the regular expression to be tested and used. Content completion is available and presents a list with all the predefined expressions. It is triggered by pressing `Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X)`.

**Error display area**

If the edited regular expression is incorrect, an error message will be displayed here. The message contains the description and the exact location of the error. Also, clicking the quick navigation button (←) highlights the error inside the regular expression.

**Category**

You can choose from several categories of predefined expressions. The selected category influences the displayed expressions in the *Available expressions* table.

**Available expressions**

This table includes the available regular expressions and a short description for each of them. The set of expressions depends on the category selected in the previous Category combo box. You can add an expression in the Regular expressions editor by double-clicking the expression row in the table. You will notice that in the case of Character categories and Block names, the expressions are also listed in complementary format.
Evaluate expression on

You can choose between two options:

- Evaluate expression on each line - The edited expression will be applied on each line in the Test area.
- Evaluate expression on all text - The edited expression will be applied on the whole text.

Test

A text editor that allows you to enter a text sample for which the regular expression will be applied. All matches of the edited regular expression will be highlighted.

After editing and testing your regular expression you can insert it in the current editor. The Insert button will become active when an editor is opened in the background and there is an expression in the Regular expressions editor.

The regular expression builder cannot be used to insert regular expressions in the Grid mode (on page 251) or schema Design mode (on page 261). Accordingly, the Insert button will be not available if the current document is edited in these modes.

Note: Some regular expressions may indefinitely block the Java Regular Expressions engine. If the execution of the regular expression does not end in about five seconds, the application displays a dialog box that allows you to interrupt the operation.

XML Schema 1.1

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers full support for XML Schema 1.1, including:

- XML Documents Validation (on page 420) and Content Completion (on page 378) based on XML Schema 1.1.
- XML Schema 1.1 Validation (on page 607) and Content Completion (on page 608).
- Editing XML Schema 1.1 files in the Schema Design mode (on page 261).
- The Flatten Schema (on page 646) action.
- Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies (on page 617) and Refactoring Actions (on page 622).
- Master files (on page 1623).
- Support for generating XML instances based on XML Schema.
- Support for validating XML documents with an NVDL schema that contains an XML Schema 1.1 validation step.
**Note:** To enable XML Schema 1.1 validation in NVDL, you need to pass the following option to the validation engine to specify the schema version: [http://www.thaiopensource.com/validate/xsd-version](http://www.thaiopensource.com/validate/xsd-version) (the possible values are 1.0 or 1.1).

**Tip:** To enable the full XPath expression in assertions and type alternatives, you need to set the [http://www.thaiopensource.com/validate/full-xpath](http://www.thaiopensource.com/validate/full-xpath) option.

XML Schema 1.1 is a superset of XML Schema 1.0, that offers lots of new powerful capabilities.

Figure 271. XML Schema 1.1

The significant new features in XSD 1.1 are:

- **Assertions** - Support to define assertions against the document content using XPath 2.0 expressions (an idea borrowed from Schematron).
- **Conditional type assignment** - The ability to select the type of schema an element is validated against, based on the values of the attribute of the element.
- **Open content** - Content models can use the `openContent` element to specify content models with `open content`. These content models allow elements not explicitly mentioned in the content model to appear in the document instance. It is as if wildcards were automatically inserted at appropriate points within the content model. A default may be set that causes all content models to be open unless specified otherwise.

To see the complete list with changes since version 1.0, go to [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#ch_specs](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/#ch_specs).

XML Schema 1.1 is intended to be mostly compatible with XML Schema 1.0 and to have approximately the same scope. It also addresses bug fixes and brings improvements that are consistent with the constraints on scope and compatibility.

**Note:** An XML document conforming to a 1.0 schema can be validated using a 1.1 validator, but an XML document conforming to a 1.1 schema may not validate using a 1.0 validator.
If you are constrained to use XML Schema 1.0 (for example, if you develop schemas for a server that uses an XML Schema 1.0 validator that cannot be updated), change the default XML Schema version to 1.0. If you keep the default XML Schema version set to 1.1, the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) presents XML Schema 1.1 elements that you can insert accidentally in an 1.0 XML Schema. So even if you make a document invalid conforming with XML Schema 1.0, the validation process does not signal any issues.

To change the default XML Schema version, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XML Parser > XML Schema.

For more information about the XML Schema 1.1 support, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/DAkrubQNm0w

Related Information:
• Setting the XML Schema Version (on page 653)

Setting the XML Schema Version

Oxygen XML Developer plugin lets you set the version of the XML Schema you are editing either in the XML Schema preferences page, or through the versioning attributes. If you want to use the versioning attributes, set the minVersion and maxVersion attributes, from the http://www.w3.org/2007/XMLSchema-versioning namespace, on the schema root element.

⚠️ Note: The versioning attributes take priority over the XML Schema version defined in the preferences page.

Table 56. Using the minVersion and maxVersion Attributes to Set the XML Schema Version

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Versioning Attributes</th>
<th>XML Schema Version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>minVersion = &quot;1.0&quot; maxVersion = &quot;1.1&quot;</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minVersion = &quot;1.1&quot;</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minVersion = &quot;1.0&quot; maxVersion = greater than &quot;1.1&quot;</td>
<td>The XML Schema version defined in the XML Schema preferences page (on page 138)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not set in the XML Schema document</td>
<td>The XML Schema version defined in the XML Schema preferences page (on page 138)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To change the XML Schema version of the current document, use the Change XML Schema version action from the contextual menu. This is available both in the Text mode, and in the Design mode and opens the Change XML Schema version dialog box. The following options are available:
• **XML Schema 1.0** - Inserts the `minVersion` and `maxVersion` attributes on the `schema` element and gives them the values "1.0" and "1.1" respectively. Also, the namespace declaration 
\[ xmlns:vc=http://www.w3.org/2007/XMLSchema-versioning \] is inserted automatically if it does not exist.

• **XML Schema 1.1** - Inserts the `minVersion` attribute on the `schema` element and gives it the value “1.1”. Also, removes the `maxVersion` attribute if it exists and adds the versioning namespace 
\[ xmlns:vc=http://www.w3.org/2007/XMLSchema-versioning \] if it is not declared.

• **Default XML Schema version** - Removes the `minVersion` and `maxVersion` attributes from the `schema` element. The default schema version, defined in the XML Schema preferences page, is used.

**Note:** The Change XML Schema version action is also available in the informative panel presented at the top of the edited XML Schema. If you close this panel, it will no longer appear until you restore Oxygen XML Developer plugin to its default options.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically uses the version set through the versioning attributes, or the default version if the versioning attributes are not declared, when proposing content completion elements and validating an XML Schema. Also, the XML instance validation against an XML Schema is aware of the versioning attributes defined in the XML Schema.

When you generate sample XML files from an XML Schema, Oxygen XML Developer plugin takes into account the `minVersion` and `maxVersion` attributes defined in the XML Schema.

**Related Information:**

- **XML Schema 1.1 (on page 651)**

---

### Editing XQuery Documents

XQuery is the query language for XML and is officially defined by a [W3C Recommendation document](https://www.w3.org/TR/xquery/). Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for XQuery 3.1, which is also backwards compatible with XQuery 3.0 and 1.0.

The many benefits of XQuery include:

- **XQuery allows you to work in one common model no matter what type of data you are working with:** relational, XML, or object data.
- **XQuery is ideal for queries that must represent results as XML, to query XML stored inside or outside the database, and to span relational and XML sources.**
- **XQuery allows you to create many different types of XML representations of the same data.**
• XQuery allows you to query both relational sources and XML sources, and create one XML result.

Related Information:

• XQuery and Databases (on page 1469)

XQuery Validation

With Oxygen XML Developer plugin, you can validate your documents before using them in your transformation scenarios. The validation uses the Saxon 9.8.0.12 PE, EE, or HE processor, or you can use some database engines (such as MarkLogic or eXist) if you installed them. Any other XQuery processor that offers an XQJ API implementation (on page 1462) can also be used. This is in conformance with the XQuery Working Draft. The processor is used in two cases: validation of the expression and execution. Although the execution implies a validation, it is faster to check the expression syntactically, without executing it. The errors that occurred in the document are presented in the messages view at the bottom of editor window, with a full description message. As with all error messages, if you click an entry, the line where the error appeared is highlighted.

Figure 272. XQuery Validation

Note: If you choose a processor that does not support XQuery validation, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays a warning when trying to validate.

When you open an XQuery document from a connection that supports validation (for example, MarkLogic, or eXist), by default Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses this connection for validation. If you open an XQuery file using a MarkLogic connection, the validation resolves imports better.
Content Completion in XQuery

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides content completion for keywords and all known XQuery functions and operators. The Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) can be manually activated with the (Ctrl (Meta on Mac OS)+Space) shortcut. The functions and operators are presented together with a description of the parameters and functionality, depending on the validation or transformation engine.

For some supported database engines such as MarkLogic, eXist, and Berkeley DB, the content completion list offers the specific XQuery functions implemented by that engine. This feature is available when the XQuery file has an associated transformation scenario that uses one of these database engines or the XQuery validation engine is set to one of them via a validation scenario or in the XQuery Preferences (on page 147) page. For more information about the support for working with XQuery with regard to databases, see XQuery and Databases (on page 1469).

The extension functions included in the Saxon engine are available on content completion if one of the following conditions are true:

- The edited file has a transformation scenario associated that uses as transformation engine Saxon 9.8.0.12 PE or Saxon 9.8.0.12 EE.
- The edited file has a validation scenario associated that use as validation engine Saxon 9.8.0.12 PE or Saxon 9.8.0.12 EE.
- The validation engine specified in Preferences (on page 147) is Saxon 9.8.0.12 PE or Saxon 9.8.0.12 EE.

If the Saxon namespace (http://saxon.sf.net) is mapped to a prefix, the functions are presented using this prefix. Otherwise, the default prefix for the Saxon namespace (saxon) is used.

If you want to use a function from a namespace mapped to a prefix, just type that prefix and the content completion displays all the XQuery functions from that namespace. When the default namespace is mapped to a prefix, the XQuery functions from this namespace offered by content completion are also prefixed. Otherwise, only the function name being used.

The content completion pop-up window presents all the variables and functions from both the edited XQuery file and its imports.

Figure 273. XQuery Content Completion

```xml
<where>
  <exists($link/manager) and (</cust>
  </pers>
</where>

Summary: If the value of $arg is not the function returns true; otherwise, the function returns false.
```
Syntax Highlighting in XQuery

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports syntax highlighting in Text mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for XQuery files, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42).
2. Go to Editor > Syntax Highlight (on page 112).
3. Select and expand the XQuery/XPath section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.

You can see the effects of your changes in the Preview pane.

Related Information:
- Customize Syntax Highlight colors (on page 112)

Formatting and Indenting XQuery Documents

Editing XQuery documents may lead to large chunks of content that are not easily readable by human audience. Also, each developer may have a particular way of writing XQuery code. Oxygen XML Developer plugin assists you in maintaining a consistent code writing style with the Format and Indent action that is available in the Document > Source menu and also on the toolbar..

The Format and Indent action achieves this by performing the following steps:

- Manages whitespaces, by collapsing or inserting space characters where needed.
- Formats complex expressions on multiple, more readable lines by properly indenting each of them. The amount of whitespaces that form an indent unit is controlled through one of the Indent with tabs and Indent size options from the Format Preferences page (on page 99).

Note: These operations can be performed only if your XQuery document conforms with XQuery 1.0, 3.0, 3.1, or XQuery Update Facility 1.0 specifications. If the Format and Indent operation fails, the document is left unaltered and an error message is presented in the Results view (on page 226).
Folding in XQuery Documents

In a large XQuery document, the instructions enclosed in the '{' and '}' characters can be collapsed so that only the needed instructions remain in focus. The same folding features available for XML documents (on page 375) are also available in XQuery documents.

Figure 274. Folding in XQuery Documents

There is available the action Go to Matching Bracket Ctrl + Shift + G on contextual menu of XQuery editor for going to matching character when cursor is located at '{' character or '}' character. It helps for finding quickly matching character of current folding element (on page 1622).

XQuery Outline View

The XQuery document structure is presented in the Outline view. The outline tree presents the list of all the components (namespaces, imports, variables, and functions) from both the edited XQuery file and its imports and it allows quick access to components. By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Figure 275. XQuery Outline View
The following actions are available in the View menu on the Outline view action bar:

**Selection update on cursor move**

Controls the synchronization between Outline view and source document. The selection in the Outline view can be synchronized with the cursor moves or the changes performed in the XQuery editor. Selecting one of the components from the Outline view also selects the corresponding item in the source document.

**Sort**

Allows you to alphabetically sort the XQuery components.

**Show all components**

Displays all collected components starting from the current file. This option is set by default.

**Show only local components**

Displays the components defined in the current file only.

**Group by location/namespace/type**

Allows you to group the components by location, namespace, and type. When grouping by namespace, the main XQuery module namespace is presented first in the Outline view.

If you know the component name, you can search it in the Outline view by typing its name in the filter text field from the top of the view or directly on the tree structure. When you type the component name in the filter text field you can switch to the tree structure using the arrow keys of the keyboard,
(Enter), (Tab), (Shift-Tab). To switch from tree structure to the filter text field, you can use (Tab), (Shift-Tab).

**Tip:** The search filter is case insensitive. The following wildcards are accepted:

- * - any string
- ? - any character
- , - patterns separator

If no wildcards are specified, the string to search is used as a partial match.

The upper part of the Outline view contains a filter box that allows you to focus on the relevant components. Type a text fragment in the filter box and only the components that match it are presented. For advanced usage you can use wildcard characters (such as *, ?, ) and separate multiple patterns with commas.

### XQuery Builder View

The XPath/XQuery Builder view allows you to compose complex XQuery expressions and execute them over the currently edited XML document. You can use the `doc()` function to specify the source file for which the expressions are executed. When you connect to a database, the expressions are executed over that database. If you are using the XPath/XQuery Builder view and the current file is an XSLT document, Oxygen XML Developer plugin executes the expressions over the XML document in the associated scenario.

If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

The upper part of the view contains the following actions:

#### XPath version chooser drop-down menu

A drop-down menu that allows you to select the type of the expression you want to execute. You can choose between:

- XPath 1.0 (Xerces-driven)
- XPath 2.0, XPath 2.0 SA, XPath 3.1, XPath 3.1 SA, Saxon-HE XQuery, Saxon-PE XQuery, or Saxon-EE XQuery (all of them are Saxon-driven)
- Custom connection to XML databases that can execute XQuery expressions

**Note:** The results returned by XPath 2.0 SA and XPath 3.1 SA have a location limited to the line number of the start element (there are no column information and no end specified).

**Note:** Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses Saxon to execute XPath 3.1 expressions. Since Saxon implements a part of the 3.1 functions, when using
a function that is not implemented, Oxygen XML Developer plugin returns a compilation error.

**Execute XPath button**

Use this button to start the execution of the XPath or XQuery expression you are editing. The result of the execution is displayed in the Results view (on page 226).

**Favorites button**

Allows you to save certain expressions that you can later reuse. To add an expression as a favorite, press the star button and enter a name for it. The star turns yellow to confirm that the expression was saved. Expand the drop-down menu next to the star button to see all your favorites. Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically groups favorites in folders named after the method of execution.

**History drop-down menu**

Keeps a list of the last 15 executed XPath or XQuery expressions. Use the **Clear history** action from the bottom of the list to remove them.

**Settings drop-down menu**

Contains the following three options:

- **Update on cursor move**

  When selected and you navigate through a document, the XPath expression corresponding to the XML node at the current cursor position is displayed. For JSON documents, it displays the XPath expression for the current property.

- **Evaluate as you type**

  When you select this option, the XPath expression you are composing is evaluated in real time.

  **Note:** This option and the automatic validation are disabled when the scope is other than **Current file**.

- **Options**

  Opens the Preferences page of the currently selected processing engine.

**XPath scope menu**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to define a scope for which the XPath operation will be executed. You can choose where the XPath expression will be executed:
• **Current file** - Current selected file only.
• **Enclosing project** - All the files of the project that encloses the current edited file.
• **Workspace selected files** - The files selected in the workspace. The files are collected from the last selected resource provider view (**Navigator** (on page 210), **Project Explorer** or **Package Explorer**).
• **All opened files** - All files opened in the application.
• **Opened archive** - Files open in the **Archive Browser view** (on page 1401).
• **Working sets** - The selected **working sets** (on page 1627).

At the bottom of the scope menu the following scope configuration actions are available:

• **Configure XPath working sets** - Allows you to configure and manage collections of files and folders, encapsulated in logical containers called **working sets** (on page 1627).

• **XPath file filter** - You can filter the files from the selected scope for which the XPath expression will be executed. By default, the XPath expression will be executed only on XML or JSON files, but you can also define a set of patterns that will filter out files from the current scope.
When you hover your cursor over the version icon, a tooltip is displayed to let you know what engine Oxygen XML Developer plugin is currently using.

While you edit an XPath or XQuery expression, Oxygen XML Developer plugin assists you with the following features:

- **Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620)** - It offers context-dependent proposals and takes into account the cursor position in the document you are editing. The set of functions proposed by the Content Completion Assistant also depends on the engine version. Select the engine version from the drop-down menu available in the toolbar.

- Syntax Highlighting - Allows you to identify the components of an expression. To customize the colors of the components of the expression, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Syntax Highlight (on page 112).

- Automatic validation of the expression as you type.

  **Note:** When you type invalid syntax, a red serrated line underlines the invalid fragments.

- Function signature and documentation balloon, when the cursor is located inside a function.
XQuery Input View

The structure of the source documents of an edited XQuery is displayed in a tree form in a view called the XQuery Input view. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu. The tree nodes represent the elements of the documents.

You can use the XQuery Input view to drag and drop a node into the editing area to quickly insert XQuery expressions.

Figure 277. XQuery Input View

Example:

For the following XML documents:

```xml
<movies>
  <movie id="1">
    <title>The Green Mile</title>
    <year>1999</year>
  </movie>
  <movie id="2">
    <title>Taxi Driver</title>
    <year>1976</year>
  </movie>
</movies>

<reviews>
  <review id="100" movie-id="1">
    <rating>5</rating>
    <comment>It is made after a great Stephen King book.</comment>
  </review>
</reviews>
```
and the following XQuery:

```xml
let $review := doc("reviews.xml")
for $movie in doc("movies.xml")/movies/movie
let $movie-id := $movie/@id
return
<review id="{$movie/@id}"/>
{$movie/title}
{$movie/year}
<maxRating>
{
}
</maxRating>
</movie>
```

If you drag the `review` element and drop it between the braces, the following pop-up menu is displayed:

Select **FLWOR review**, the resulting document will look like this:
Generating HTML Documentation for an XQuery Document

To generate HTML documentation for an XQuery document, use the `XQuery Documentation` dialog box. It is opened with the `XQuery Documentation` action that is available from the `XML Tools > Generate Documentation` menu or from the `Generate XQuery Documentation` action from the contextual menu of the `Navigator` view (on page 210).

The dialog box allows you to configure a set of parameters for the process of generating the HTML documentation.

![XQuery Documentation Dialog Box](image)

The following options are available:

- **Input** - The full path to the XQuery file must be specified in one of the two fields in this section:
  - **URLFile** - The URL of the file in which you want to generate the documentation.
• **Folder** - The directory that contains the files for which you want to generate the documentation. You can also specify the XQuery file extensions to be searched for in the specified directory.

• **Default function namespace** - Optional URI for the default namespace for the submitted XQuery.

• **Predefined function namespaces** - Optional, engine-dependent, predefined namespaces that the submitted XQuery refers to. They allow the conversion to generate annotation information to support the presentation component hypertext linking (only if the predefined modules have been loaded into the local qxDoc XML repository).

• **Open in Browser/System Application** - Select this option if you want the result to be opened in the system application associated with that file type.

   **Note:** To set the browser or system application that will be used, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there. This will take precedence over the default system application settings.

• **Output** - Allows you to specify where the generated documentation is saved on disk.

### Transforming XML Documents Using XQuery

XQuery is similar to XSL stylesheets, both being capable of transforming an XML input into another format. You specify the input URL when you define the transformation scenario (on page 890). The result can be saved and opened in the associated application. You can even run a FO processor (on page 953) on the output of an XQuery. The transformation scenarios may be shared between many XQuery files, are exported (on page 161) together with the XSLT scenarios and can be managed in the Configure Transformation Scenario dialog box (on page 976), or in the Scenarios view (on page 981). The transformation can be performed on the XML document specified in the XML URL field, or, if this field is empty, the documents referenced from the query expression. The parameters of XQuery transforms must be set in the Parameters dialog box (on page 890). Parameters that are in a namespace must be specified using the qualified name (for example, a param parameter in the http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns namespace must be set with the name `{http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns}param`).

The transformation uses one of the Saxon 9.8.0.12 HE, Saxon 9.8.0.12 PE, Saxon 9.8.0.12 EE processors, a database connection (details can be found in the Working with Databases (on page 1407) chapter - in the XQuery transformation (on page 1470) section) or any XQuery processor that provides an XQJ API implementation.

The Saxon 9.8.0.12 EE processor also supports XQuery 3.1 transformations.

---

Related Information:
Display XQuery Result in Sequence View

The result of an XQuery executed on a database can be very large and sometimes only a part of the full result is needed. To avoid the long time necessary for fetching the full result, select the Present as a sequence option (on page 915) in the Output tab of the Edit scenario dialog box. This option fetches only the first chunk of the result. Clicking the More results available label that is displayed at the bottom of the Sequence view fetches the next chunk of results.

The size of a chunk can be set with the Size limit of Sequence view option (on page 147). The XQuery options button from the More results available label provides a quick access to this option by opening the XQuery preferences page (on page 147) where the option can be modified.

Figure 279. XQuery transformation result displayed in Sequence view

A chunk of the XQuery transformation result is displayed in the Sequence view.

Figure 280. XQuery transformation result displayed in Sequence view
Tip: You can right-click the results in the **Sequence** view and if the item is an XML element, the **Go to definition** action will open the XML file from where the queried node was obtained.

Advanced Saxon HE/PE/EE XQuery Transformation Options

The XQuery transformation scenario allows you to configure advanced options that are specific for the Saxon HE (Home Edition), PE (Professional Edition), and EE (Enterprise Edition) engines. They are the same options as those in the **Saxon HE/PE/EE preferences page** (on page 148) but they are configured as a specific set of transformation options for each transformation scenario, while the values set in the preferences page apply as global options. The advanced options configured in a transformation scenario override the global options defined in the preferences page.

**Saxon-HE/PE/EE Options**

The advanced options for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE), and Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

**Use a configuration file (**"-config"**)**

Sets a Saxon 9.8.0.12 configuration file that is used for XQuery transformation and validation scenarios.

**Enable Optimizations (**"-opt"**)**

This option is selected by default, which means that optimization is enabled. If not selected, the optimization is suppressed, which is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

**Use linked tree model (**"-tree:linked"**)**

This option activates the linked tree model.

**Recoverable errors (**"-warnings"**)**

Specifies how dynamic errors are handled. The following options can be selected:
• **Recover silently** ("silent") - Continues processing without reporting the error.
• **Recover with warnings** ("recover") - Issues a warning but continues processing.
• **Signal the error and do not attempt recovery** ("fatal") - Issues an error and stops processing.

**Strip whitespaces** ("-strip")

Specifies how the *strip whitespaces* operation is handled. You can choose one of the following values:

• **All** ("all") - Strips all whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `xml:space` attributes in the source document.
• **Ignore** ("ignorable") - Strips all ignorable whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `xml:space` attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.
• **None** ("none") - Strips no whitespace before further processing.

**Saxon-PE/EE Options**

The following advanced options are specific for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Professional Edition (PE) and Enterprise Edition (EE) only:

**Allow calls on extension functions** ("-ext")

If selected, calls on external functions are allowed. Selecting this option is recommended in an environment where untrusted stylesheets may be executed. It also disables user-defined extension elements and the writing of multiple output files, both of which carry similar security risks.

**Saxon-EE Options**

The advanced options that are specific for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

**Validation of the source file** ("-val")

Requests schema-based validation of the source file and of any files read using `document()` or similar functions. It can have the following values:

• **Schema validation** ("strict") - This mode requires an XML Schema and allows for parsing the source documents with strict schema-validation enabled.
• **Lax schema validation** ("lax") - If an XML Schema is provided, this mode allows for parsing the source documents with schema-validation enabled but the validation will not fail if, for example, element declarations are not found.
• **Disable schema validation** - This specifies that the source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.

**Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings ("-outval")**

 Normally, if validation of result documents is requested, a validation error is fatal. Selecting this option causes such validation failures to be treated as warnings.

**Write comments for non-fatal validation errors of the result document**

 The validation messages for non-fatal errors are written (wherever possible) as a comment in the result document itself.

**Enable XQuery update ("-update:(on|off)")**

 This option controls whether or not XQuery update syntax is accepted. The default value is off.

**Backup files updated by XQuery ("-backup:(on|off)")**

 If selected, backup versions for any XML files updated with an XQuery Update are generated. This option is available when the Enable XQuery Update option is selected.

**Other Options**

**Initializer class**

 Equivalent to the `-init` Saxon command-line argument. The value is the name of a user-supplied class that implements the `net.sf.saxon.lib.Initializer` interface. This initializer is called during the initialization process, and may be used to set any options required on the configuration programmatically. It is particularly useful for tasks such as registering extension functions, collations, or external object models, especially in Saxon-HE where the option cannot be set via a configuration file. Saxon only calls the initializer when running from the command line, but the same code may be invoked to perform initialization when running user application code.

**Updating XML Documents using XQuery Update 1.0**

 Using the bundled Saxon 9.8.0.12 EE XQuery processor Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers support for XQuery Update 1.0. The XQuery Update Facility provides expressions that can be used to make persistent changes to instances of the XQuery 1.0 and XPath 2.0 Data Model. Thus, besides querying XML documents, you can modify them using the various insert/delete/modify/create methods available in the XQuery Update 1.0 standard.
Choose Saxon 9.8.0.12 EE as a transformer in the scenario associated with the XQuery files containing update statements and Oxygen XML Developer plugin will notify you if the update was successful.

**Example: Using XQuery Update to modify a tag name in an XML file**

```
rename node doc("books.xml")//publisher[1]//book[1] as "firstBook"
```

## Editing WSDL Documents

WSDL is an XML format for describing network services as a set of endpoints operating on messages containing either document-oriented or procedure-oriented information. The operations and messages are described abstractly, and then bound to a concrete network protocol and message format to define an endpoint. Related concrete endpoints are combined into abstract endpoints (services).

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides a special type of editor dedicated to WSDL documents. The WSDL editor offers support for validation, a specialized [Content Completion Assistant](on page 1620), a component oriented [Outline view](on page 675), searching and refactoring operations, and support to generate documentation.

Both WSDL version 1.1 and 2.0 are supported and SOAP versions 1.1 and 1.2. That means that in the location where a SOAP extension can be inserted the Content Completion Assistant offers elements from both SOAP 1.1 and SOAP 1.2. Validation of SOAP requests is executed first against a SOAP 1.1 schema and then against a SOAP 1.2 schema. In addition to validation against the XSD schemas, Oxygen XML Developer plugin also checks if the WSDL file conforms with the WSDL specification (available only for WSDL 1.1 and SOAP 1.1).

In the following example you can see how the errors are reported.

![Figure 281. Validating a WSDL file](image)

For more information about the WSDL editing support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, watch our video demonstration:
Editing WSDL Documents in the Master Files Context

Smaller interrelated modules that define a complex WSDL structure cannot be correctly edited or validated individually, due to their interdependency with other modules. Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides the support for defining the main module (or modules), allowing you to edit any of the imported/included files in the context of the larger WSDL structure.

You can set a main WSDL document either using the master files support from the Navigator view (on page 337), or using a validation scenario.

To set a master file using a validation scenario, add validation units that point to the main modules. Oxygen XML Developer plugin warns you if the current module is not part of the dependencies graph computed for the main WSDL document. In this case, it considers the current module as the main WSDL document.

The advantages of editing in the context of a master file (on page 1623) include:

- Correct validation of a module in the context of a larger WSDL structure.
- Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) displays all components valid in the current context.
- The Outline view (on page 675) displays the components collected from the entire WSDL structure.

**Note:** When you edit an XML schema document that has a WSDL document set as master, the validation operation is performed over the master WSDL document.

For more information about editing WSDL documents in the master files context, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/gn_YPD5xDCo

Validating WSDL Documents

By default, WSDL files are validated as you type. To change this, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Editor > Document Checking, and deselect the Enable automatic validation option (on page 94).
To validate a WSDL document manually, select the Validate action from the Validation toolbar drop-down menu or the XML menu. The validation problems are highlighted directly in the editor, making it easy to locate and fix any issues.

Content Completion Assistance in WSDL Documents

The Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) is a powerful feature that enhances the editing of WSDL documents. It helps you define WSDL components by proposing context-sensitive element names. It can be manually activated with the Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X) shortcut.

Another important capability of the Content Completion Assistant is to propose references to the defined components when you edit attribute values. For example, when you edit the type attribute of a binding element, the Content Completion Assistant proposes all the defined port types. Each proposal that the Content Completion Assistant offers is accompanied by a documentation hint.

Note: XML schema specific elements and attributes are offered when the current editing context is the internal XML schema of a WSDL document.

Figure 282. WSDL Content Completion Assistant

Note: If you are using the concept of master files (on page 1623) to import/include modules, the Content Completion Assistant collects its components starting from the master files. The master files can be defined in the project or in the associated validation scenario. For more information about the Master Files support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, see Defining Master Files at Project Level (on page 337).

Namespace prefixes in the scope of the current context are presented at the top of the content completion assistance window to speed up the insertion into the document of prefixed elements.

Figure 283. Namespace Prefixes in the Content Completion Assistant
For the common namespaces, such as XML Schema namespace (http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema) or SOAP namespace (http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/wsdl/soap/), Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides an easy mode to declare them by proposing a prefix for these namespaces.

### WSDL Syntax Highlighting

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports syntax highlighting in **Text** mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for WSDL files, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 42)*.
2. Go to **Editor > Syntax Highlight** *(on page 112)*.
3. Select and expand the **XML** section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.
5. Select the **XML** tab in the **Preview** pane to see the effects of your changes.

**Tip:** Oxygen XML Developer plugin also allows you to specify syntax highlighting colors for specific XML elements and attributes with specific namespace prefixes. This can be done in the **Editor > Syntax Highlight > Elements/Attributes by Prefix** preferences page *(on page 113)*.

### Related Information:

- Customize Syntax Highlight colors *(on page 112)*

### WSDL Outline View

The **Outline** view for WSDL documents displays the list of all the components (services, bindings, port types and so on) of the currently open WSDL document along with the components of its imports.
If you use the **Master Files support** (on page 337), the **Outline** view collects the components of a WSDL document starting from the *master files* of the current document.

By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Figure 284. WSDL Outline View

![WSDL Outline View](image)

The **Outline** view can display both the components of the current document and its XML structure, organized in a tree-like fashion. You can switch between the display modes by using the **Show XML structure** and **Show components** actions in the **View menu** on the **Outline** view action bar. The following actions are available:

**Filter returns exact matches**

The text filter of the **Outline** view returns only exact matches.

**Selection update on cursor move**

Controls the synchronization between the **Outline** view and the current document. The selection in the **Outline** view can be synchronized with the cursor moves or the changes in the WSDL editor. Selecting one of the components from the **Outline** view also selects the corresponding item in the current document.

When the **Show components** option is selected, the following actions are available:

**Show XML structure**

Displays the XML structure of the current document in a tree-like manner.
Sort

Sorts the components in the Outline view alphabetically.

Show all components

Displays all the components that were collected starting from current document or from the main document, if it is defined.

Show referable components

Displays all the components that you can reference from the current document.

Show only local components

Displays the components defined in the current file only.

Group by location

Groups the WSDL components by their location.

Group by type

Groups the WSDL components by their type.

Group by namespace

Groups the WSDL components by their namespace.

Note: By default, all the three grouping criteria are active.

When the Show XML structure option is selected, the following actions are available:

Show components

Switches the Outline view to the components display mode.

Flat presentation mode of the filtered results

When active, the application flattens the filtered result elements to a single level.

Show comments and processing instructions

Show/hide comments and processing instructions in the Outline view.

Show element name

Show/hide element name.

Show text

Show/hide additional text content for the displayed elements.

Show attributes

Show/hide attribute values for the displayed elements. The displayed attribute values can be changed from the Outline preferences panel (on page 158).
Configure displayed attributes

Displays the XML Structured Outline preferences page (on page 158).

The following contextual menu actions are available in the Outline view when the Show components option is selected in the View menu:

- Edit Attributes
  Opens a dialog box that allows you to edit the attributes of the currently selected component.

- Cut
  Cuts the currently selected component.

- Copy
  Copies the currently selected component.

- Delete
  Deletes the currently selected component.

- Search references
  Searches for the references of the currently selected component.

Search references in

Searches for the references of the currently selected component in the context of a scope that you define.

Component dependencies

Opens the Component Dependencies view (on page 683) that displays the dependencies of the currently selected component.

Resource Hierarchy

Opens the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view (on page 680) that displays the hierarchy for the currently selected resource.

Resource Dependencies

Opens the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view (on page 680) that displays the dependencies of the currently selected resource.

Rename Component in

 Renames the currently selected component in the context of a scope that you define.

The following contextual menu actions are available in the Outline view when the Show XML structure option is selected in the View menu:
Append Child
Displays a list of elements that you can insert as children of the current element.

Insert Before
Displays a list of elements that you can insert as siblings of the current element, before the current element.

Insert After
Displays a list of elements that you can insert as siblings of the current element, after the current element.

Edit Attributes
Opens a dialog box that allows you to edit the attributes of the currently selected component.

Toggle Comment
Comments/uncomments the currently selected element.

Search references
Searches for the references of the currently selected component.

Search references in
Searches for the references of the currently selected component in the context of a scope that you define.

Component dependencies
Opens the Component Dependencies view (on page 683) that displays the dependencies of the currently selected component.

Rename Component in
Renames the currently selected component in the context of a scope that you define.

Cut
Cuts the currently selected component.

Copy
Copies the currently selected component.

Delete
Deletes the currently selected component.

Expand All
Expands the structure of a component in the Outline view.
### Collapse All

Collapses the structure of all the component in the Outline view.

To switch from the tree structure to the text filter, use Tab and Shift-Tab.

**Tip:** The search filter is case insensitive. The following wildcards are accepted:

- * - any string
- ? - any character
- , - patterns separator

If no wildcards are specified, the string to search is used as a partial match.

The content of the Outline view and the editing area are synchronized. When you select a component in the Outline view, its definition is highlighted in the editing area.

### WSDL Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View in WSDL Documents

The **Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies** view displays the hierarchy or dependencies for a WSDL resource. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

**Note:** The hierarchy of a WSDL resource includes the hierarchy of imported XML Schema resources. The dependencies of an XML Schema resource present the WSDL documents that import the schema.

To view the hierarchy or dependencies of a WSDL document, select the document in the Navigator view (on page 210) and choose **Resource Hierarchy** or **Resource Dependencies** from the contextual menu.

Figure 285. Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View
The following actions are available on the toolbar of the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view:

- **Refresh**
  
  Refreshes the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

- **Stop**
  
  Stops the hierarchy/dependencies computing.

- **Show Hierarchy**
  
  Allows you to choose a resource to compute the hierarchy structure.

- **Show Dependencies**
  
  Allows you to choose a resource to compute the dependencies structure.

- **Configure dependencies search scope**
  
  Allows you to configure a scope to compute the dependencies structure. There is also an option for automatically using the defined scope for future operations.

- **History**
  
  Provides access to the list of previously computed dependencies. Use the **Clear history** button to remove all items from this list.

The contextual menu for a resource listed in the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view contains the following actions:

- **Open**
Opens the resource. You can also double-click a resource in the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure to open it.

**Go to reference**

Opens the source document where the resource is referenced.

**Copy location**

Copies the location of the resource.

**Move resource**

Moves the selected resource.

**Rename resource**

Renames the selected resource.

**Show Resource Hierarchy**

Shows the hierarchy for the selected resource.

**Show Resource Dependencies**

Shows the dependencies for the selected resource.

**Add to Master Files**

Adds the currently selected resource in the Master Files directory (on page 337).

**Expand All**

Expands all the children of the selected resource from the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

**Collapse All**

Collapses all children of the selected resource from the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

**Tip:** When a recursive reference is encountered in the Hierarchy view, the reference is marked with a special icon.

**Note:** The Move resource or Rename resource actions give you the option to update the references to the resource (on page 682).

**Related Information:**

- Search and Refactor Operations Scope (on page 466)
Moving/Renaming WSDL Resources

You can move and rename a resource presented in the Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies view, using the Rename resource and Move resource refactoring actions from the contextual menu.

When you select the Rename action in the contextual menu of the Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies view, the Rename resource dialog box is displayed. The following fields are available:

- **New name** - Presents the current name of the edited resource and allows you to modify it.
- **Update references of the renamed resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are renaming. A Preview option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting Rename to process the operation.

When you select the Move action from the contextual menu of the Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies view, the Move resource dialog box is displayed. The following fields are available:

- **Destination** - Presents the path to the current location of the resource you want to move and gives you the option to introduce a new location.
- **New name** - Presents the current name of the moved resource and gives you the option to change it.
- **Update references of the moved resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are moving, in accordance with the new location and name. A Preview option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting Move to process the operation.

WSDL Component Dependencies View

The Component Dependencies view allows you to see the dependencies for a selected component. This is helpful if you want to see where components are used in the entire hierarchy. For example, if you want to find all the references where a given component is used.

If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

To see the dependencies of a WSDL component:

1. Right-click the desired component in the editor or Outline view.
2. Select the Component Dependencies action from the contextual menu.

This action is available for all WSDL components (messages, port types, operations, bindings, and so on).
If a component contains multiple references, a small table is displayed at the bottom of the view that contains all the references. When a recursive reference is encountered, it is marked with a special icon.

Figure 286. Component Dependencies View

The **Component Dependencies** view includes the following toolbar actions:

- **Refresh**
  - Refreshes the dependencies structure.

- **Stop**
  - Stops the dependency computation.

- **Configure**
  - Allows you to choose the search scope for computing the dependencies structure. This is helpful for making sure all imported/included resources are computed.

- **History**
  - Allows you to select from a list of the most recently used dependency computations.

In addition, the following actions are available in the contextual menu:

- **Go to First Reference**
  - Selects the first reference of the currently selected component in the dependencies tree.

- **Go to Component**
  - Shows the definition of the currently selected component in the dependencies tree.

**Related Information:**

- [Searching and Refactoring Operations Scope in WSDL Documents (on page 687)]
Highlight Component Occurrences in WSDL Documents

When you position your mouse cursor over a component in a WSDL document, Oxygen XML Developer plugin searches for the component declaration and all its references and highlights them automatically.

Customizable colors are used: one for the component definition and another one for component references. Occurrences are displayed until another component is selected.

To change the default behavior of Highlight Component Occurrences, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Mark Occurrences. You can also trigger a search using the Search > Search Occurrences in File () action from contextual menu. Matches are displayed in separate tabs of the Results view (on page 226).

Searching and Refactoring Operations in WSDL Documents

Search Actions

The following search actions are available from the Search submenu in the contextual menu of the current editor:

- **Search References**
  Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope, if any. If a scope is defined, but the current edited resource is not part of the range of resources determined by this, a warning dialog box is displayed and you have the possibility to define another search scope.

- **Search References in**
  Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the file or files that you specify when define a scope in the Search References dialog box.

- **Search Declarations**
  Searches all declarations of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope if any. If a scope is defined, but the current edited resource is not part of the range of resources determined by this, a warning dialog box will be displayed and you have the possibility to define another search scope.

- **Search Declarations in**
  Searches all declarations of the item found at current cursor position in the file or files that you specify when you define a scope for the search operation.

- **Search Occurrences in File**
Searches all occurrences of the item at the cursor position in the currently edited file.

The following action is available from the WSDL menu:

**Go to Definition**

Takes you to the location of the definition of the current item.

**Note:** You can also use the **Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on OS X)** shortcut on a reference to display its definition.

**Refactoring Actions**

The following refactoring actions are available from the Refactoring submenu in the contextual menu of the current editor:

**Rename Component**

Allows you to rename the current component (in-place). The component and all its references in the document are highlighted with a thin border and the changes you make to the component at the cursor position are updated in real time to all occurrences of the component. To exit the in-place editing, press the **Esc** or **Enter** key on your keyboard.

**Rename Component in**

Opens a dialog box that allows you to rename the selected component by specifying the new component name and the files to be affected by the modification. If you click the **Preview** button, you can view the files to be affected by the action.

Figure 287. Rename Identity Constraint Dialog Box
Searching and Refactoring Operations Scope in WSDL Documents

The scope is a collection of documents that define the context of a search and refactor operation. To control it you can use the Change scope operation, available in the Quick Fix action set or on the Resource Hierarchy/Dependency View toolbar. You can restrict the scope to the current project or to one or multiple working sets (on page 1627). The Use only Master Files, if enabled checkbox allows you to restrict the scope of the search and refactor operations to the resources from the Master Files directory. Click read more for details about the Master Files support (on page 337).

Figure 288. Change Scope Dialog Box

![Change Scope Dialog Box]

The scope you define is applied to all future search and refactor operations until you modify it. Contextual menu actions allow you to add or delete files, folders, and other resources to the working set (on page 1627) structure.

Quick Assist Support in WSDL Documents

The Quick Assist feature (on page 1625) is activated automatically when the cursor is positioned over the name of a component. It is accessible via a yellow bulb icon (💡) placed at the current line in the stripe on the left side of the editor. Also, you can invoke the quick assist menu by using the Ctrl + 1 (Meta 1 on Mac OS X) keyboard shortcuts.

Figure 289. WSDL Quick Assist Support
The *Quick Assist* support offers direct access to the following actions:

- **Rename Component in**
  - Renames the component and all its dependencies.

- **Search Declarations**
  - Searches the declaration of the component in a predefined scope. It is available only when the context represents a component name reference.

- **Search References**
  - Searches all references of the component in a predefined scope.

- **Component Dependencies**
  - Searches the component dependencies in a predefined scope.

- **Change Scope**
  - Configures the scope that will be used for future search or refactor operations.

- **Rename Component**
  - Allows you to rename the current component in-place.

- **Search Occurrences**
  - Searches all occurrences of the component within the current file.

### Generating Documentation for WSDL Documents

You can use Oxygen XML Developer plugin to generate detailed documentation for the components of a WSDL document in HTML format. You can select the WSDL components to include in your output and the level of details to present for each of them. Also, the components are hyperlinked. You can also generate the documentation in a custom output format *(on page 693)* by using a custom stylesheet.

**Note:** The WSDL documentation includes the XML Schema components that belong to the internal or imported XML schemas.
To generate documentation for a WSDL document, select **WSDL Documentation** from the **XML Tools > Generate Documentation** menu or from the **Generate WSDL Documentation** action from the contextual menu of the **Navigator view** (on page 210).

Figure 290. WSDL Documentation Dialog Box

The **Input URL** field of the dialog box must contain the full path to the WSDL document that you want to generate documentation for. The WSDL document may be a local or a remote file. You can specify the path to the WSDL file by entering it in the text field, or by using the **Insert Editor Variables** button or the options in the **Browse** drop-down menu.

**Output Tab**

The following options are available in the **Output** tab:

- **Format** - Allows you to choose between the following formats:
  - **HTML** - The documentation is generated in **HTML output format** (on page 691).
  - **Custom** - The documentation is generated in a **custom output format** (on page 693), allowing you to control the output. Click the **Options** button to open a **Custom format options** dialog box where you can specify a custom stylesheet for creating the output. There is also an option to **Copy additional resources to the output folder** and you can select the path to the additional **Resources** that you want to copy. You can also choose to keep the intermediate XML files created during the documentation process by deselecting the **Delete intermediate XML file** option.
• Output file - You can specify the path of the output file by entering it in the text field, or by using the Insert Editor Variables button or the options in the Browse drop-down menu.
• Split output into multiple files - Instructs the application to split the output into multiple files. For large WSDL documents, choosing a different split criterion may generate smaller output files providing a faster documentation browsing. You can choose to split them by namespace, location, or component name.
• Open in Browser/System Application - Opens the result in the system application associated with the output file type.

Note: To set the browser or system application that will be used, go to Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser and specify it there. This will take precedence over the default system application settings.
• Keep only the annotations with xml:lang set to - The generated output will contain only the annotations with the xml:lang attribute set to the selected language. If you choose a primary language code (for example, en for English), this includes all its possible variations (en-us, en-uk, etc.).

Setting Tab

When you generate documentation for a WSDL document, you can choose what components to include in the output and the details to be included in the documentation.

Figure 291. Settings Tab of the WSDL Documentation Dialog Box

The Settings tab allows you to choose whether or not to include the following:
• Components
  ◦ **Services** - Specifies whether or not the generated documentation includes the WSDL services.
  ◦ **Bindings** - Specifies whether or not the generated documentation includes the WSDL bindings.
  ◦ **Port Types** - Specifies whether or not the generated documentation includes the WSDL port types.
  ◦ **Messages** - Specifies whether or not the generated documentation includes the WSDL messages.
  ◦ **XML Schema Components** - Specifies whether or not the generated documentation includes the XML Schema components.
  ◦ **Only global elements and types** - Specifies whether or not the generated documentation includes only global elements and types.

• Component Details
  ◦ **Namespace** - Presents the namespace information for WSDL or XML Schema components.
  ◦ **Location** - Presents the location information for each WSDL or XML Schema component.
  ◦ **Used by** - Presents the list of components that reference the current one.
  ◦ **Documentation** - Presents the component documentation. If you choose **Escape XML Content**, the XML tags are presented in the documentation.
  ◦ **Source** - Presents the XML fragment that defines the current component.
  ◦ **Instance** - Generates a sample XML instance for the current component.

  Note: This option applies to the XML Schema components only.
  ◦ **XML Schema Diagram** - Displays the diagram for each XML Schema component. You can choose the image format (JPEG, PNG, SVG) to use for the diagram section.
  ◦ **Diagram annotations** - Specifies whether or not the annotations of the components presented in the diagram sections are included.

• Generate index - Displays an index with the components included in the documentation.
  ◦ **Include local elements and attributes** - If selected, local elements and attributes are included in the documentation index.
  ◦ **Include resource hierarchy** - Specifies whether or not the resource hierarchy for an XML Schema documentation is generated. It is deselected by default.

Export settings - Save the current settings in a settings file for further use (for example, with the exported settings file you can generate the same documentation from the command-line interface (on page 693).)

Import settings - Reloads the settings from the exported file.

Generate - Use this button to generate the WSDL documentation.
Generating WSDL Documentation in HTML Format

The WSDL documentation generated in HTML format is presented in a visual diagram style with various sections, hyperlinks, and options.

Figure 292. WSDL Documentation in HTML Format

The documentation of each component is presented in a separate section. The title of the section is composed of the component type and the component name. The component information (namespace, documentation, etc.) is presented in a tabular form.

If you choose to split the output into multiple files, the table of contents is displayed in the left frame and is divided in two tabs: Components and Resource Hierarchy.

The Components tab allows you to group the contents by namespace, location, or component type. The WSDL components from each group are sorted alphabetically. The Resource Hierarchy tab displays the dependencies between WSDL and XML Schema modules in a tree-like fashion. The root of the tree is the WSDL document that you generate documentation for.

After the documentation is generated, you can collapse or expand details for some WSDL components by using the Showing options or the Collapse or Expand buttons.

Figure 293. Showing Options
Generating WSDL Documentation in a Custom Format

To obtain the default HTML documentation output from a WSDL document, Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses an intermediary XML document to which it applies an XSLT stylesheet. To create a custom output from your WSDL document, edit the `wsdlDocHtml.xsl` XSLT stylesheet or create your own.

**Note:** The `wsdlDocHtml.xsl` stylesheet that is used to obtain the HTML documentation is located in the `\{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\}/frameworks/wsdl_documentation/xsl` folder.

**Note:** The intermediary XML document complies with the `wsdlDocSchema.xsd` XML Schema. This schema is located in the `\{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\}/frameworks/wsdl_documentation` folder.

Figure 294. Custom Format Options Dialog Box

When using a custom format, you can also copy additional resources into the output folder or choose to keep the intermediate XML files created during the documentation process.

Generating WSDL Documentation from the Command-Line Interface

To generate documentation for a WSDL document from the command line, open the **WSDL Documentation** dialog box and click **Export settings**. Using the exported settings file you can generate the same documentation from the command line by running the following scripts:

- `wsdlDocumentation.bat` on Windows.
- `wsdlDocumentation.sh` on Mac OS X and Linux.
The scripts are located in the installation folder of Oxygen XML Developer plugin. You can integrate the scripts in an external batch process launched from the command-line interface.

**WSDL SOAP Analyzer**

**WSDL SOAP Analyzer** is a tool that helps you test if the messages defined in a Web Service Descriptor (WSDL) are accepted by a Web Services server.

After you edit and validate your Web service descriptor against a mix of the XML Schemas for WSDL and SOAP, it is easy to check if the defined SOAP messages are accepted by the remote Web Services server by using the integrated **WSDL SOAP Analyzer** tool (available from the toolbar or **WSDL** menu).

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides two ways of testing, one for the currently edited WSDL document and another for the remote WSDL documents that are published on a web server. To open the **WSDL SOAP Analyzer** tool for the currently edited WSDL document do one of the following:

- Click the **WSDL SOAP Analyzer** toolbar button.
- Use the **WSDL SOAP Analyzer** action from the **WSDL** menu.
- Go to **Open with > WSDL Editor** in the contextual menu of the **Navigator (on page 210)** view.

Figure 295. WSDL SOAP Analyzer View

This tool contains a SOAP analyzer and sender for Web Services Description Language file types. The analyzer fields are as follows:

- **Services** - The list of services defined by the WSDL file.
- **Ports** - The ports for the selected service.
- **Operations** - The list of available operations for the selected service.
- **Action URL** - The script that serves the operation.
- **SOAP Action** - Identifies the action performed by the script.
• **Version** - Choose between 1.1 and 1.2. The SOAP version is selected automatically depending on the selected port.

• **Request Editor** - It allows you to compose the web service request. When an action is selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin tries to generate as much content as possible for the SOAP request. The envelope of the SOAP request has the correct namespace for the selected SOAP version, that is `http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/` for SOAP 1.1 or `http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope` for SOAP 1.2. Usually you just have to change a few values for the request to be valid. The **Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620)** is available for this editor and is driven by the schema that defines the type of the current message. While selecting various operations, Oxygen XML Developer plugin remembers the modified request for each one. You can press the **Regenerate** button to overwrite your modifications for the current request with the initial generated content.

• **Attachments List** - You can define a list of file URLs to be attached to the request.

• **Response Area** - Initially it displays an auto generated server sample response so you can have an idea about how the response looks like. After pressing the **Send** button, it presents the message received from the server in response to the Web Service request. It may show also error messages. If the response message contains attachments, Oxygen XML Developer plugin prompts you to save them, then tries to open them with the associated system application.

• **Errors List** - There may be situations where the WSDL file is respecting the WSDL XML Schema, but it fails to be valid (for example, in the case of a message that is defined by means of an element that is not found in the types section of the WSDL). In such a case, the errors are listed here. This list is presented only when there are errors.

• **Send Button** - Executes the request. A status dialog box is displayed when Oxygen XML Developer plugin is connecting to the server.

The testing of a WSDL file is straight-forward: click the WSDL analysis button, then select the service, the port, and the operation. The editor generates the skeleton for the SOAP request. You can edit the request, eventually attach files to it and send it to the server. Watch the server response in the response area. You can find more details in the **Testing Remote WSDL Files (on page 695)** section.

**Note:** SOAP requests and responses are automatically validated in the **WSDL SOAP Analyzer** using the XML Schemas specified in the WSDL file.

Once defined, a request derived from a Web Service descriptor can be saved with the **Save** button to a Web Service SOAP Call (WSSC) file for later reuse. In this way, you save time in configuring the URLs and parameters.

You can open the result of a Web Service call in an editor panel using the **Open** button.

**Testing Remote WSDL Files**

To open and test a remote WSDL file the steps are the following:
1. Go to **Window > Show View > Other > Oxygen XML Developer plugin > WSDL SOAP Analyzer**.

2. Press the **Choose WSDL** button and enter the URL of the remote WSDL file.
   
   You enter the URL:
   
   - by typing
   - by browsing the local file system
   - by browsing a remote file system
   - by browsing a **UDDI Registry** *(on page 696)*

3. Press the **OK** button.

   This will open the **WSDL SOAP Analyzer tool** *(on page 694)*. In the **Saved SOAP Request** tab you can open directly a previously saved Web Service SOAP Call (WSSC) file, thus skipping the analysis phase.

**UDDI Registry Browser**

Pressing the **button** in the **WSDL File Opener** dialog box *(menu Tools > WSDL SOAP Analyzer)* opens the **UDDI Registry Browser** dialog box.

**Figure 296. UDDI Registry Browser Dialog Box**
The fields of the dialog box are as follows:

- **URL** - Type the URL of an UDDI registry or choose one from the default list.
- **Keywords** - Enter the string you want to be used when searching the selected UDDI registry for available Web services.
- **Rows to fetch** - The maximum number of rows to be displayed in the result list.
- **Search by** - You can choose to search either by company or by provided service.
- **Case sensitive** - When selected, the search takes into account the keyword case.
- **Search** - The WSDL files that matched the search criteria are added in the result list.

When you select a WSDL from the list and click the **OK** button, the **UDDI Registry Browser** dialog box is closed and you are returned to the **WSDL File Opener** dialog box.

### Editing CSS Stylesheets

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in editor for CSS stylesheets. This section presents the features of the CSS editor and how these features should be used. The features of the CSS editor include:

- **Create new CSS files and templates** - You can use the built-in new file wizards to create new CSS documents or templates (on page 305).
- **Open and Edit CSS files** - CSS files can be opened and edited in a source editing mode.
- **Validation** - Presents validation errors in CSS files.
- **Content completion** - Offers proposals for properties and the values that are available for each property.
- **Syntax highlighting** - The syntax highlighting in Oxygen XML Developer plugin makes CSS files more readable.
- **Shortcut to open resources** - You can use **Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on OS X)** to open imported stylesheets or other resources (such as images) in the default system application for the particular type of resource.

### Validating CSS Stylesheets

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in **CSS Validator**, integrated with general validation support. This makes the usual validation features (on page 422) for presenting errors also available for CSS stylesheets.

The CSS properties accepted by the validator are those included in the current CSS profile that is selected in the **CSS validation preferences** (on page 45). The **CSS 3 with Oxygen extensions** profile includes all the CSS 3 standard properties and the CSS extensions specific for **Oxygen**. That means
all Oxygen-specific extensions are accepted in a CSS stylesheet by the built-in CSS validator (on page 697) when this profile is selected.

Specify Custom CSS Properties

To specify custom CSS properties, follow these steps:

1. Create a file named CustomProperties.xml that has the following structure:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<css_keywords
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/css
  http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/css/CssProperties.xsd"
  xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/css">
  <property name="custom">
    <summary>Description for custom property.</summary>
    <value name="customValue"/>
    <value name="anotherCustomValue"/>
  </property>
</css_keywords>
```

2. Go to your desktop and create the builtin/css-validator/ folder structure.

3. Press and hold Shift and right-click anywhere on your desktop. From the contextual menu, select Open Command Window Here.

4. In the command line, run the jar cvf custom_props.jar builtin/ command. The custom_props.jar file is created.

5. Go to [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/lib and create the endorsed folder. Copy the custom_props.jar file to [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/lib/endorsed.

Content Completion in CSS Stylesheets

A Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620), similar to the one available for XML documents (on page 378) offers the CSS properties and the values available for each property. It can be manually activated with the Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X) shortcut and is context-sensitive when invoked for the value of a property. The Content Completion Assistant also includes code templates that can be used to quickly insert code fragments (on page 389) into CSS stylesheets. The code templates that are proposed include form controls, actions, and Author mode operations.
The properties and values available are dependent on the CSS Profile selected in the CSS preferences (on page 45). The CSS 2.1 set of properties and property values is used for most of the profiles. However, with CSS 1 and CSS 3 specific proposal sets are used.

Proposals for CSS Selectors - After inserting a CSS selector, the content completion assistance will propose a list of pseudo-elements and pseudo-classes that are available for the selected CSS profile.

Proposals for @media and @import Rules - After inserting @media or @import <url> rules, the content completion assistance will propose a list of supported media types.

Related Information:

- Specify Custom CSS Properties (on page 698)

Syntax Highlighting in CSS Files

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports syntax highlighting in Text mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for CSS files, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42).
2. Go to Editor > Syntax Highlight (on page 112).
3. Select and expand the CSS section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.

You can see the effects of your changes in the Preview pane.

Related Information:

- Syntax Highlight Preferences (on page 112)
CSS Outline View

The Outline view for CSS stylesheets presents the import declarations for other CSS stylesheet files and all the selectors defined in the current CSS document. The selector entries can be presented as follows:

- In the order they appear in the document.
- Sorted by the element name used in the selector.
- Sorted by the entire selector string representation.

You can synchronize the selection in the Outline view with the cursor moves or changes you make in the stylesheet document. When you select an entry from the Outline view, Oxygen XML Developer plugin highlights the corresponding import or selector in the CSS editor.

By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Figure 298. CSS Outline View

The selectors presented in this view can be found quickly using the key search field. When you press a sequence of character keys while the focus is in the view, the first selector that starts with that sequence is selected automatically.

Folding in CSS Stylesheets

In a large CSS stylesheet document, some styles can be collapsed so that only the styles that are needed remain in focus. The same folding features available for XML documents (on page 375) are also available in CSS stylesheets.
Note: To enhance your editing experience, you can select entire blocks (parts of text delimited by brackets) by double-clicking somewhere inside the brackets.

Formatting and Indenting CSS Stylesheets (Pretty Print)

If the edited CSS stylesheet becomes unreadable because of the bad alignment of the text lines, the format and indent operation available for XML documents (on page 395) is also available for CSS stylesheets. It works in the same way as for XML documents and is available as the same menu and toolbar action.

Minifying CSS Stylesheets

Minification (or compression) of a CSS document is the practice of removing unnecessary code without affecting the functionality of the stylesheet.

To minify a CSS, invoke the contextual menu anywhere in the edited document and choose the Minify CSS action. Oxygen XML Developer plugin opens a dialog box that allows you to:

- Set the location of the resulting CSS.
- Place each style rule on a new line.

After pressing OK, Oxygen XML Developer plugin performs the following actions:

- All spaces are normalized (all leading and trailing spaces are removed, while sequences of white spaces are replaced with single space characters).
- All comments are removed.

Note: The CSS minifier relies heavily upon the W3C CSS specification. If the content of the CSS file you are trying to minify does not conform with the specifications, an error dialog box will be displayed, listing all errors encountered during the processing.

The resulting CSS stylesheet gains a lot in terms of execution performance, but loses in terms of readability. The source CSS document is left unaffected.

Note: To restore the readability of a minified CSS, invoke the Format and Indent action from the XML menu, the Source submenu from the contextual menu, or Source toolbar. However, this action will not recover any of the deleted comments.
Editing Relax NG Schemas

An XML Schema describes the structure of an XML document and is used to validate XML document instances against it, to check that the XML instances conform to the specified requirements. If an XML instance conforms to the schema then it is said to be valid. Otherwise, it is invalid.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers support for editing Relax NG schema files in the following editing modes:

- **Text editing mode** *(on page 606)* - Allows you to edit Relax NG schema files in a source editing mode, along with a schema design pane with two tabs that offer a [Full Model View](on page 703) and [Logical Model View](on page 704).
- **Grid editing mode** *(on page 251)* - Displays Relax NG schema files in a structured spreadsheet-like grid.

For information about applying and detecting schemas, see [Associating a Schema to XML Documents](on page 449).

Related Information:

- [Associating a Schema to XML Documents](on page 449)

Editing Relax NG Schema in the Master Files Context

Smaller interrelated modules that define a complex Relax NG Schema cannot be correctly edited or validated individually, due to their interdependency with other modules. For example, an element defined in a main schema document is not visible when you edit an included module. Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides the support for defining the main module (or modules), thus allowing you to edit any of the imported/included schema files in the context of the larger schema structure.

You can set a main Relax NG document either using the [master files support from the Navigator view](on page 337), or using a validation scenario.

To set a **master file** using a validation scenario, add validation units that point to the main schemas. Oxygen XML Developer plugin warns you if the current module is not part of the dependencies graph computed for the main schema. In this case, it considers the current module as the main schema.

The main advantage of editing in the context of a **master file** *(on page 1623)* is that it provides correct validation of a module in the context of a larger schema structure.

Related Information:
Relax NG Schema Diagram Editor

This section explains how to use the graphical diagram editor for Relax NG schemas.

Introduction to Relax NG Schema Diagram Editor

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides a simple, expressive, and easy-to-read schema diagram editor for Relax NG schemas.

With this new feature you can easily develop complex schemas, print them on multiple pages or save them as JPEG, PNG, or BMP images. It helps both schema authors in developing the schema and content authors who are using the schema to understand it.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin is the only XML editor to provide a side by side source and diagram presentation and have them real-time synchronized:

- The changes you make in the Editor are immediately visible in the Diagram (no background parsing).
- Changing the selected element in the diagram selects the underlying code in the source editor.

Full Model View

When you create a new schema document or open an existing one, the editor panel is divided in two sections: one containing the schema diagram and the second the source code. The schema diagram editor has two tabs that offer a Full Model View and Logical Model View (on page 704).

Figure 299. Relax NG Schema Editor - Full Model View
The following references can be expanded in place: patterns, includes, and external references. This expansion mechanism, coupled with the synchronization support, makes the schema navigation easy.

All the element and attribute names are editable by double-clicking the names.

Logical Model View

The **Logical Model View** presents the compiled schema in the form of a single pattern. The patterns that form the element content are defined as top level patterns with generated names. These names are generated depending of the elements name class.

Figure 300. Logical Model View for a Relax NG Schema
Symbols Used in the Schema Diagram

The views in the schema diagram editor renders all the Relax NG schema patterns with the following intuitive symbols:

- **name** - define pattern with the name attribute set to the value shown inside the rectangle (in this example name).
- **attlist.person** - define pattern with the combine attribute set to interleave and the name attribute set to the value shown inside the rectangle (in this example attlist.person).
- **attlist.person** - define pattern with the combine attribute set to choice and the name attribute set to the value shown inside the rectangle (in this example attlist.person).
- **name** - element pattern with the name attribute set to the value shown inside the rectangle (in this example name).
- **note** - attribute pattern with the name attribute set to the value shown inside the rectangle (in this case note).
- **family** - ref pattern with the name attribute set to the value shown inside the rectangle (in this case family).
- **oneOrMore** pattern.
- **zeroOrMore** pattern.
- **optional** pattern.
- **choice** pattern.
- **value** pattern (for example, used inside a choice pattern).
- **group** pattern.
- A pattern from the Relax NG Annotations namespace (http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0) that is treated as a documentation element in a Relax NG schema.
- **text** pattern.
- **empty** pattern.

Actions Available in the Schema Diagram Editor

When editing Relax NG schemas in **Full Model View (on page 703)**, the contextual menu offers the following actions:

**Go to definition (Available for imported components)**

This action is available for imported components from other RNG files, and it shows where that component is defined.

**Append child**

Appends a child to the selected component.

**Insert Before**

Inserts a component before the selected component.

**Insert After**

Inserts a component after the selected component.

**Edit attributes**

Edits the attributes of the selected component.

**Remove**

Removes the selected component.
**Show only the selected component**

Depending on its state (selected/not selected), either the selected component or all the diagram components are shown.

**Show Annotations**

Depending on its state (selected/not selected), the documentation nodes are shown or hidden.

**Auto expand to references**

This option controls how the schema diagram is automatically expanded. If you select it and then edit a top-level element or you make a refresh, the diagram is expanded until it reaches referenced components. If this option is left unchecked, only the first level of the diagram is expanded, showing the top-level elements. For large schemas, the editor disables this option automatically.

**Collapse Children**

Collapses the children of the selected view.

**Expand Children**

Expands the children of the selected view.

**Print Selection**

Prints the selected view.

**Save as Image**

Saves the current selection as JPEG, BMP, SVG or PNG image.

**Refresh**

Refreshes the schema diagram according to the changes in your code. They represent changes in your imported documents or changes that are not reflected automatically in the compiled schema).

If the schema is not valid, you see only an error message in the Logical Model View (on page 704) instead of the diagram.

**Validating Relax NG Schema Documents**

By default, Relax NG schema files are validated as you type. To change this, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Editor > Document Checking, and deselect the Enable automatic validation option (on page 94).

To validate a Relax NG schema document manually, select the Validate action from the Validation toolbar drop-down menu or the XML menu. When Oxygen XML Developer plugin
validates a Relax NG schema file, it expands all the included modules so the entire schema hierarchy is validated. The validation problems are highlighted directly in the editor, making it easy to locate and fix any issues.

Related Information:

- Validating XML Documents Against a Schema *(on page 422)*
- Embedding Schematron Rules in XML Schema or RELAX NG *(on page 774)*
- Validation Scenario *(on page 432)*
- Associating a Schema to XML Documents *(on page 449)*
- Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode *(on page 229)*

Content Completion in Relax NG Schemas

The intelligent *Content Completion Assistant* *(on page 1620)* allows you to quickly identify and insert elements, attributes, and attribute values that are valid in the current editing context. All available proposals are listed in a pop-up menu displayed at the current cursor position.

The *Content Completion Assistant* is enabled by default. To disable it, open the *Preferences dialog box* *(on page 42)*, go to *Editor > Content Completion*, and deselect the *Enable content completion option* *(on page 86)*.

When active, the *Content Completion Assistant* displays a list of context-sensitive proposals valid at the current cursor position. It can be manually activated with the *Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X)* shortcut. You can navigate through the list of proposals by using the *Up* and *Down* keys on your keyboard. For each selected item in the list, the *Content Completion Assistant* displays a documentation window. You can customize the size of the documentation window by dragging its top, right, and bottom borders.

To insert the selected proposal in *Text* mode, do one of the following:

- Press *Enter* or *Tab* to insert both the start and end tags and position the cursor inside the start tag in a position suitable for inserting attributes.
- Press *Ctrl + Enter (Command + Enter on OS X)* to insert both the start and end tags and positions the cursor between the tags in a position where you can start typing content.
If you are using the concept of master files (on page 1623) to import/include modules, the Content Completion Assistant collects its components starting from the master files. The master files can be defined in the project or in the associated validation scenario. For more information about the Master Files support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, see Defining Master Files at Project Level (on page 337).

The Content Completion Assistant also offers additional information for the element and attribute proposals in the form of schema annotations that is displayed in a tooltip.

Figure 301. Relax NG Content Completion Assistant

Syntax Highlighting in Relax NG Schemas

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports syntax highlighting in Text mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for Relax NG schemas, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42).
2. Go to Editor > Syntax Highlight (on page 112).
3. Select and expand the XML section in the top pane (for RELAX NG Compact Syntax schemas, select and expand the RNC section).
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.
5. Select the XML tab in the Preview pane to see the effects of your changes (for RELAX NG Compact Syntax schemas, the tab is RNC).

Tip: Oxygen XML Developer plugin also allows you to specify syntax highlighting colors for specific XML elements and attributes with specific namespace prefixes. This can be done in the Editor > Syntax Highlight > Elements/Attributes by Prefix preferences page (on page 113).
Quick Fixes for DTD, XSD, and Relax NG Errors

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers Quick Fixes for common errors that appear in XML documents that are validated against DTD, XSD, or Relax NG schemas.

**Note:** For XML documents validated against XSD schemas, the Quick Fixes are only available if you use the default Xerces validation engine.

Quick Fixes are available in Text mode.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides Quick Fixes for numerous types of problems, including the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem Type</th>
<th>Available Quick Fixes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A specific element is required in the current context</td>
<td>Insert the required element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An element is invalid in the current context</td>
<td>Remove the invalid element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The content of the element should be empty</td>
<td>Remove the element content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An element is not allowed to have child elements</td>
<td>Remove all child elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text is not allowed in the current element</td>
<td>Remove the text content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A required attribute is missing</td>
<td>Insert the required attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An attribute is not allowed to be set for the current element</td>
<td>Remove the attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The attribute value is invalid</td>
<td>Propose the correct attribute values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID value is already defined</td>
<td>Generate a unique ID value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References to an invalid ID</td>
<td>Change the reference to an already defined ID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Information:

- Schematron Quick Fixes (SQF) (on page 449)

Relax NG Outline View

The Outline view for Relax NG schemas presents a list with the patterns that appear in the diagram in both the Full Model View (on page 703) and Logical Model View (on page 704) cases and it allows for quick access to a component by name. By default, it is displayed on the left side of the
editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Figure 302. Relax NG Outline View

This view has two modes, with the tree showing either the XML structure or the defined pattern (components) collected from the current document. By default, the **Outline** view presents the components.

When the **Show components** option is selected in the **View menu** on the **Outline** view action bar, the following option is available:

- **Show XML structure**
  
  Shows the XML structure of the current document in a tree-like manner.

The following actions are available in the **View menu** on the **Outline** view action bar when the **Show XML structure** option is selected:

- **Filter returns exact matches**
  
  The text filter of the **Outline** view returns only exact matches.

- **Selection update on cursor move**
  
  Allows a synchronization between **Outline** view and schema diagram. The selected view from the diagram will be also selected in the **Outline** view.

- **Show components**
Shows the defined pattern collected from the current document.

**Flat presentation mode of the filtered results**
When active, the application flattens the filtered result elements to a single level.

**Show comments and processing instructions**
Show/hide comments and processing instructions in the Outline view.

**Show element name**
Show/hide element name.

**Show text**
Show/hide additional text content for the displayed elements.

**Show attributes**
Show/hide attribute values for the displayed elements. The displayed attribute values can be changed from the Outline preferences panel (on page 158).

**Configure displayed attributes**
Displays the XML Structured Outline preferences page (on page 158).

The following contextual menu actions are also available in the Outline view when the Show XML structure option is selected in the View menu:

**Append Child**
Displays a list of elements that you can insert as children of the current element.

**Insert Before**
Displays a list of elements that you can insert as siblings of the current element, before the current element.

**Insert After**
Displays a list of elements that you can insert as siblings of the current element, after the current element.

**Edit Attributes**
Opens a dialog box that allows you to edit the attributes of the currently selected component.

**Toggle Comment**
Comments/uncomments the currently selected element.

**Search references**
Searches for the references of the currently selected component.
Search references in

Searches for the references of the currently selected component in the context of a scope that you define.

Component dependencies

Opens the Component Dependencies view (on page 716) that displays the dependencies of the currently selected component.

Rename Component in

Renames the currently selected component in the context of a scope that you define.

Cut

Cuts the currently selected component.

Copy

Copies the currently selected component.

Delete

Deletes the currently selected component.

Expand All

Expands the structure of a component in the Outline view.

Collapse All

Collapses the structure of all the component in the Outline view.

The upper part of the Outline view contains a filter box that allows you to focus on the relevant components. Type a text fragment in the filter box and only the components that match it are presented. For advanced usage you can use wildcard characters (such as *, ?) and separate multiple patterns with commas.

RNG Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View

The Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view displays the hierarchy or dependencies for an RNG schema. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

If you want to see the hierarchy or dependencies of an RNG schema, select the desired schema in the Navigator view (on page 210) and choose Resource Hierarchy or Resource Dependencies from the contextual menu.

Figure 303. Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View
The following actions are available on the toolbar of the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view:

- **Refresh**
  Refreshes the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

- **Stop**
  Stops the hierarchy/dependencies computing.

- **Show Hierarchy**
  Allows you to choose a resource to compute the hierarchy structure.

- **Show Dependencies**
  Allows you to choose a resource to compute the dependencies structure.

- **Configure dependencies search scope**
  Allows you to configure a scope to compute the dependencies structure. There is also an option for automatically using the defined scope for future operations.

- **History**
  Provides access to the list of previously computed dependencies. Use the **Clear history** button to remove all items from this list.

The contextual menu for a resource listed in the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view contains the following actions:

- **Open**
  Opens the resource. You can also double-click a resource in the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure to open it.

- **Go to reference**
Opens the source document where the resource is referenced.

**Copy location**

Copies the location of the resource.

**Move resource**

Moves the selected resource.

**Rename resource**

Renames the selected resource.

**Show Resource Hierarchy**

Shows the hierarchy for the selected resource.

**Show Resource Dependencies**

Shows the dependencies for the selected resource.

**Add to Master Files**

Adds the currently selected resource in the **Master Files** directory *(on page 337)*.

**Expand All**

Expands all the children of the selected resource from the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

**Collapse All**

Collapses all children of the selected resource from the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

**Tip:** When a recursive reference is encountered in the Hierarchy view, the reference is marked with a special icon 🔄.

**Note:** The **Move resource** or **Rename resource** actions give you the option to update the references to the resource *(on page 682)*.

---

**Related Information:**

- Search and Refactor Operations Scope *(on page 466)*

---

**Moving/Renaming RNG Resources**

You can move and rename a resource presented in the **Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies** view, using the **Rename resource** and **Move resource** refactoring actions from the contextual menu.
When you select the Rename action in the contextual menu of the Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies view, the Rename resource dialog box is displayed. The following fields are available:

- **New name** - Presents the current name of the edited resource and allows you to modify it.
- **Update references of the renamed resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are renaming. A Preview option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting Rename to process the operation.

When you select the Move action from the contextual menu of the Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies view, the Move resource dialog box is displayed. The following fields are available:

- **Destination** - Presents the path to the current location of the resource you want to move and gives you the option to introduce a new location.
- **New name** - Presents the current name of the moved resource and gives you the option to change it.
- **Update references of the moved resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are moving, in accordance with the new location and name. A Preview option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting Move to process the operation.

**Note:** Updating the references of a resource that is resolved through a catalog is not supported. Also, the update references operation is not supported if the path to the renamed or moved resource contains entities.

**Relax NG Schema Component Dependencies View**

The Component Dependencies view allows you to see the dependencies for a selected component. This is helpful if you want to see where components are used in the entire hierarchy. For example, if you want to find all the references where a given component is used.

If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

To see the dependencies of a RelaxNG component:

1. Right-click the desired component in the editor or Outline view.
2. Select the Component Dependencies action from the contextual menu.

The action is available for all named defines.

If a component contains multiple references, a small table is displayed at the bottom of the view that contains all the references. When a recursive reference is encountered, it is marked with a special icon.
The Component Dependencies view includes the following toolbar actions:

- **Refresh**
  Refreshes the dependencies structure.

- **Stop**
  Stops the dependency computation.

- **Configure**
  Allows you to choose the search scope for computing the dependencies structure. This is helpful for making sure all imported/included resources are computed.

- **History**
  Allows you to select from a list of the most recently used dependency computations.

In addition, the following actions are available in the contextual menu:

- **Go to First Reference**
  Selects the first reference of the currently selected component in the dependencies tree.

- **Go to Component**
  Shows the definition of the currently selected component in the dependencies tree.

**Related Information:**
Searching and Refactoring Actions in RNG Schemas

Search Actions

The following search actions can be applied on named defines and are available from the Search submenu in the contextual menu of the current editor:

- **Search References**
  Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope, if any. If a scope is defined, but the current edited resource is not part of the range of resources determined by this, a warning dialog box is displayed and you have the possibility to define another search scope.

- **Search References in**
  Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the file or files that you specify when define a scope in the Search References dialog box.

- **Search Declarations**
  Searches all declarations of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope if any. If a scope is defined, but the current edited resource is not part of the range of resources determined by this, a warning dialog box will be displayed and you have the possibility to define another search scope.

- **Search Declarations in**
  Searches all declarations of the item found at current cursor position in the file or files that you specify when you define a scope for the search operation.

- **Search Occurrences in File**
  Searches all occurrences of the item at the cursor position in the currently edited file.

The following action is available from the XSL menu:

- **Go to Definition**
  Moves the cursor to the definition of the current element in the Relax NG (full syntax) schema.

- **Note:** You can also use the Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on OS X) shortcut on a reference to display its definition.
**Refactoring Actions**

The following refactoring actions can be applied on named *defines* and are available from the **Refactoring** submenu in the contextual menu of the current editor:

**Rename Component**

Allows you to rename the current component (in-place). The component and all its references in the document are highlighted with a thin border and the changes you make to the component at the cursor position are updated in real time to all occurrences of the component. To exit the in-place editing, press the *Esc* or *Enter* key on your keyboard.

**Rename Component in**

Opens a dialog box that allows you to rename the selected component by specifying the new component name and the files to be affected by the modification. If you click the *Preview* button, you can view the files to be affected by the action.

![Figure 305. Rename Identity Constraint Dialog Box](image)

**RNG Quick Assist Support**

The *Quick Assist support* *(on page 1625)* improves the development work flow, offering fast access to the most commonly used actions when you edit schema documents.

The *Quick Assist feature* *(on page 1625)* is activated automatically when the cursor is positioned over the name of a component. It is accessible via a yellow bulb icon (☉) placed at the current line in the stripe on the left side of the editor. Also, you can invoke the *quick assist* menu by using the *Ctrl + 1* *(Meta 1 on Mac OS X)* keyboard shortcuts.
The *Quick Assist* support offers direct access to the following actions:

- **Rename Component in**
  Renames the component and all its dependencies.

- **Search Declarations**
  Searches the declaration of the component in a predefined scope. It is available only when the context represents a component name reference.

- **Search References**
  Searches all references of the component in a predefined scope.

- **Component Dependencies**
  Searches the component dependencies in a predefined scope.

- **Change Scope**
  Configures the scope that will be used for future search or refactor operations.

- **Rename Component**
  Allows you to rename the current component in-place.

- **Search Occurrences**
  Searches all occurrences of the component within the current file.

### Related Information:

- Component Dependencies View *(on page 716)*

- Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View *(on page 713)*

- Searching and Refactoring Actions *(on page 718)*
Configuring a Custom Datatype Library for a RELAX NG Schema

A RELAX NG schema can declare a custom datatype library for the values of elements found in XML document instances. The datatype library must be developed in Java and it must implement the interface specified on the www.thaiopensource.com website.

The JAR (on page 1623) file containing the custom library and any other dependent JAR file must be added to the classpath of the application, that is the JAR files must be added to the folder [ECLIPSE-INSTALL-DIR]/lib and a line <library name="lib/custom-library.jar"/> must be added for each JAR file to the file [ECLIPSE-INSTALL-DIR]/plugin.xml in the <runtime> element.

To load the custom library, restart the Eclipse platform.

Editing NVDL Schemas

Some complex XML documents are composed by combining elements and attributes from namespaces. Furthermore, the schemas that define these namespaces are not even developed in the same schema language. In such cases, it is difficult to specify in the document all the schemas that must be taken into account for validation of the XML document or for content completion. An NVDL (Namespace Validation Definition Language) schema can be used. This schema allows the application to combine and interleave multiple schemas of different types (W3C XML Schema, RELAX NG schema, Schematron schema) in the same XML document.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers support for editing NVDL schema files in the following editing modes:

• **Text editing mode (on page 606)** - Allows you to edit NVDL schema files in a source editing mode, along with a schema design pane with two tabs that offer a **Full Model View (on page 722)** and **Logical Model View (on page 723)**.

• **Grid editing mode (on page 251)** - Displays NVDL schema files in a structured spreadsheet-like grid.

For information about applying and detecting schemas, see **Associating a Schema to XML Documents (on page 449)**.

Related Information:
NVDL Schema Diagram

This section explains how to use the graphical diagram of a NVDL schema.

Introduction to NVDL Schema Diagram Editor

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides a simple, expressive, and easy-to-read schema diagram editor for NVDL schemas.

With this new feature you can easily develop complex schemas, print them on multiple pages or save them as JPEG, PNG, and BMP images. It helps both schema authors in developing the schema and content authors that are using the schema to understand it.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin is the only XML Editor to provide a side by side source and diagram presentation and have them real-time synchronized:

• The changes you make in the Editor are immediately visible in the Diagram (no background parsing).
• Changing the selected element in the diagram, selects the underlying code in the source editor.

Full Model View

When you create a schema document or open an existing one, the editor panel is divided in two sections: one containing the schema diagram and the second the source code. The diagram view has two tabbed panes offering a Full Model View and a Logical Model View (on page 723).

Figure 307. NVDL Schema Editor - Full Model View
The **Full Model View** renders all the NVDL elements with intuitive icons. This representation coupled with the synchronization support makes the schema navigation easy.

Double-click any diagram component to edit its properties.

**Logical Model View**

The **Logical Model View** presents the compiled schema in the form of a single pattern. The patterns that form the element content are defined as top level patterns with generated names. These names are generated depending of the elements name class.

*Figure 308. Logical Model View for an NVDL Schema*
Actions Available in the Diagram Editor

The contextual menu offers the following actions:

**Show only the selected component**

Depending on its state (selected/not selected), either the selected component or all the diagram components are shown.

**Show Annotations**

Depending on its state (selected/not selected), the documentation nodes are shown or hidden.

**Auto expand to references**

This option controls how the schema diagram is automatically expanded. For instance, if you select it and then edit a top-level element or you trigger a diagram refresh, the diagram will be expanded until it reaches the referenced components. If this option is left unchecked, only the first level of the diagram is expanded, showing the top-level elements. For large schemas, the editor disables this option automatically.

**Collapse Children**

Collapses the children of the selected view.

**Expand Children**

Expands the children of the selected view.

**Print Selection**

Prints the selected view.

**Save as Image**

Saves the current selection as image, in JPEG, BMP, SVG or PNG format.

**Refresh**
Refreshes the schema diagram according to the changes in your code (changes in your imported documents or those that are not reflected automatically in the compiled schema).

If the schema is not valid, you see only an error message in the Logical Model View (on page 723) instead of the diagram.

Validating NVDL Schema Documents

By default, NVDL schema files are validated as you type. To change this, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Editor > Document Checking, and deselect the Enable automatic validation option (on page 94).

To validate an NVDL schema document manually, select the Validate action from the Validation toolbar drop-down menu or the XML menu. When Oxygen XML Developer plugin validates an NVDL schema file, it expands all the included modules so the entire schema hierarchy is validated. The validation problems are highlighted directly in the editor, making it easy to locate and fix any issues.

Related Information:

• Validating XML Documents Against a Schema (on page 422)

Content Completion in NVDL Schemas

The intelligent Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) allows you to quickly identify and insert elements, attributes, and attribute values that are valid in the current editing context. All available proposals are listed in a pop-up menu displayed at the current cursor position.

The Content Completion Assistant is enabled by default. To disable it, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Editor > Content Completion, and deselect the Enable content completion option (on page 86).

When active, the Content Completion Assistant displays a list of context-sensitive proposals valid at the current cursor position. It can be manually activated with the Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X) shortcut. You can navigate through the list of proposals by using the Up and Down keys on your keyboard. For each selected item in the list, the Content Completion Assistant displays a documentation window. You can customize the size of the documentation window by dragging its top, right, and bottom borders.

To insert the selected proposal in Text mode, do one of the following:
• Press **Enter** or **Tab** to insert both the start and end tags and position the cursor inside the start tag in a position suitable for inserting attributes.

• Press **Ctrl + Enter (Command + Enter on OS X)** to insert both the start and end tags and positions the cursor between the tags in a position where you can start typing content.

If you are using the concept of *master files (on page 1623)* to import/include modules, the *Content Completion Assistant* collects its components starting from the *master files*. The *master files* can be defined in the project or in the associated validation scenario. For more information about the *Master Files* support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, see *Defining Master Files at Project Level (on page 337)*.

The *Content Completion Assistant* also offers additional information for the element and attribute proposals in the form of schema annotations that is displayed in a tooltip.

**Figure 309. NVDL Content Completion Assistant**

![NVDL Content Completion Assistant](image)

**Syntax Highlighting in NVDL Schemas**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports syntax highlighting in *Text* mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for NVDL schemas, follow these steps:

1. Open the *Preferences* dialog box *(on page 42)*.
2. Go to *Editor > Syntax Highlight* *(on page 112)*.
3. Select and expand the *XML* section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.
5. Select the *XML* tab in the *Preview* pane to see the effects of your changes.

**Tip:** Oxygen XML Developer plugin also allows you to specify syntax highlighting colors for specific XML elements and attributes with specific namespace prefixes. This can be done in the *Editor > Syntax Highlight > Elements/Attributes by Prefix* preferences page *(on page 113)*.
NVDL Outline View

The Outline view for NVDL schemas presents a list with the named or anonymous rules that appear in the diagram and it allows for quick access to a rule by name. By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

NVDL Schema Component Dependencies View

The Component Dependencies view allows you to see the dependencies for a selected component. This is helpful if you want to see where components are used in the entire hierarchy. For example, if you want to find all the references where a given component is used.

If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

To see the dependencies of an NVDL component:

1. Right-click the desired component in the editor or Outline view.
2. Select the Component Dependencies action from the contextual menu.

The action is available for all named modes.

If a component contains multiple references, a small table is displayed at the bottom of the view that contains all the references. When a recursive reference is encountered, it is marked with a special icon.

Figure 310. Component Dependencies View - Hierarchy for test.nvdl
The **Component Dependencies** view includes the following toolbar actions:

- **Refresh**
  
  Refreshes the dependencies structure.

- **Stop**
  
  Stops the dependency computation.

- **Configure**
  
  Allows you to choose the search scope for computing the dependencies structure. This is helpful for making sure all imported/included resources are computed.

- **History**
  
  Allows you to select from a list of the most recently used dependency computations.

In addition, the following actions are available in the contextual menu:

- **Go to First Reference**
  
  Selects the first reference of the currently selected component in the dependencies tree.

- **Go to Component**
  
  Shows the definition of the currently selected component in the dependencies tree.

### Searching and Refactoring Actions in NVDL Schemas

#### Search Actions

The following search actions can be applied on `name`, `useMode`, and `startMode` attributes and are available from the **Search** submenu in the contextual menu of the current editor:

- **Search References**
Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope, if any. If a scope is defined, but the current edited resource is not part of the range of resources determined by this, a warning dialog box is displayed and you have the possibility to define another search scope.

**Search References in**

Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the file or files that you specify when define a scope in the Search References dialog box.

**Search Declarations**

Searches all declarations of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope if any. If a scope is defined, but the current edited resource is not part of the range of resources determined by this, a warning dialog box will be displayed and you have the possibility to define another search scope.

**Search Declarations in**

Searches all declarations of the item found at current cursor position in the file or files that you specify when you define a scope for the search operation.

**Search Occurrences in File**

Searches all occurrences of the item at the cursor position in the currently edited file.

The following action is available from the XSL menu:

**Go to Definition**

Moves the cursor to its definition in the schema used by the NVDL to validate it.

**Note:** You can also use the Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on OS X) shortcut on a reference to display its definition.

**Refactoring Actions**

The following refactoring actions can be applied on name, useMode, and startMode attributes and are available from the Refactoring submenu in the contextual menu of the current editor:

**Rename Component**

Allows you to rename the current component (in-place). The component and all its references in the document are highlighted with a thin border and the changes you make to the component at the cursor position are updated in real time to all occurrences of the component. To exit the in-place editing, press the Esc or Enter key on your keyboard.

**Rename Component in**
Opens a dialog box that allows you to rename the selected component by specifying the new component name and the files to be affected by the modification. If you click the Preview button, you can view the files to be affected by the action.

Figure 311. Rename Identity Constraint Dialog Box

Editing JSON Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a document template to help you get started with JSON documents. The template is called JSON and it can be found in the New Document folder in the New from templates wizard (on page 311).

This section explains the features of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin JSON Editor and how to use them.

For more information about JSON editing support, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/wglkagwSDrU

Editing JSON Documents in Text Mode

When editing JSON documents in the Text editing mode, the usual text editing actions (on page 368) are available, along with other editor-specific actions, including:

- Find/Replace (on page 340)
- Drag and Drop (on page 376)
- Validation (on page 733)
- Format and Indent (Pretty Print) (on page 395)
Note: You can run XPath expressions on opened JSON documents, but in Text mode the XPath results cannot be mapped in the document. However, they can be mapped in the Grid editing mode. You can use the Grid button at the bottom of the editor panel to switch to that editing mode.

Navigating References in JSON Documents

When editing JSON documents (or JSON Schema), you can easily navigate JSON Pointer references and hyperlinks by using the CTRL + Click shortcut. Holding the CTRL key while hovering over a JSON Pointer references or hyperlink will change the reference to a clickable link.

Related Information:

- Editing JSON Documents in Grid Mode (on page 731)

Editing JSON Documents in Grid Mode

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to view and edit the JSON documents in the Grid mode (on page 251). The JSON is represented in Grid mode as a compound layout of nested tables in which the JSON data and structure can be easily manipulated with table-specific operations or drag and drop operations on the grid components.

Figure 312. JSON Editor Grid Mode
You can also use the following JSON-specific contextual actions:

**Array**

Useful when you want to convert a JSON value to array.

**Insert value before**

Inserts a value before the currently selected one.

**Insert value after**

Inserts a value after the currently selected one.

**Append value as child**

Appends a value as a child of the currently selected value.

You can customize the JSON grid appearance (on page 95) according to your needs. For instance, you can change the font, the cell background, foreground, or even the colors from the table header gradients. The default width of the columns can also be changed.

Related Information:

- Grid Editing Mode (on page 251)
Validating JSON Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in JSON validator that is used to validate JSON documents against JSON Schemas, as well as a built-in JSON Well-Formedness validator (based on the free JAVA source code available on www.json.org).

For more information, see the following video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/3JEL6nFUozQ

Checking Well-Formedness in JSON Documents

A Well-formed JSON document is a sequence of Unicode code points that strictly conforms to the JSON grammar defined by the JSON Data Interchange Syntax specification. By default, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically checks the document for Well-formedness as you type.

Check for Well-Formedness Manually

To manually check documents for Well-Formedness:

• Select the Check Well-Formedness (Alt + Shift + V, W (Command + Alt + V, W on OS X)) action from the Validation drop-down menu on the toolbar or from the XML menu.

• A selection of files can be checked for well-formedness by selecting the Check Well-Formedness action from the Validate submenu when invoking the contextual menu in the Navigator view (on page 210).

Result: If any errors are found, the result is displayed in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. Each error is displayed as one record in the result list and is accompanied by an error message. Clicking the record will open the document containing the error and highlight its approximate location.

Example: A non Well-formed JSON Document

```json
{"person": { "name": "John Doe" }}
```

This would result in the following error:

```
Expected a ',', or '}
```
To resolve the error, click the record in the result list and it will locate and highlight the approximate position of the error. In this case, you would need to identify where the missing end bracket needs to be placed.

Validating JSON Documents Against JSON Schema

A **Valid** JSON document is a **Well-Formed** document that also conforms to the rules of a JSON Schema that defines the legal syntax of a JSON document. The purpose of the JSON schema is to define the legal properties and values of a JSON document.

This section contains topics that explain the automatic and manual validation possibilities in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, how validation errors are presented, and information about built-in validation scenarios.

For information about how to associate a JSON schema for the purposes of validation, see **Associating a JSON Schema Through a Validation Scenario (on page 741)**.

**Automatic Validation**

By default, Oxygen XML Developer plugin is configured to automatically mark validation errors in the JSON document as you are editing. The **Enable automatic validation** option *(on page 94)* in the **Document Checking preferences page (on page 93)** controls whether or not all validation errors and warnings will automatically be highlighted in the editor panel.

The automatic validation starts parsing the document and marking the errors after a **configurable delay (on page 94)** from the last key typed. Errors are highlighted with underline markers in the main editor panel and small rectangles on the right side ruler of the editor panel. Hovering over a validation error presents a tooltip message with more details about the error.

**Related Information:**

- Manual Validation Actions *(on page 734)*

- Presenting Validation Errors in JSON Documents *(on page 735)*

**Manual Validation Actions**

You can choose to validate JSON documents at any time by using the manual validation actions that are available in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
Manual Validation Actions

To manually validate the currently edited document, use one of the following actions:

☑ Validate (Alt + Shift + V, V)

Available from the ☑ Validation drop-down menu on the toolbar, the JSON menu, or from the Validate submenu when invoking the contextual menu in the Navigator view (on page 210).

Validate with

Available from the ☑ Validation drop-down menu on the toolbar or the JSON menu.

This action opens a dialog box that allows you to specify a schema for validating the current document (on page 741).

Validate with Schema

Available from the Validate submenu when invoking the contextual menu in the Navigator view (on page 210).

This action opens a dialog box that allows you to specify a schema for validating the current document (on page 741).

Other Validation Options

To clear the error markers added to the Problems view in the last validation, select ✗ Clear Validation Markers from the Validate submenu when invoking the contextual menu in the Navigator view.

Tip: If a large number of validation errors are detected and the validation process takes too long, you can limit the maximum number of reported errors in the Document Checking preferences page (on page 93).

Related Information:

- Automatic Validation (on page 734)

- Presenting Validation Errors in JSON Documents (on page 735)
Presenting Validation Errors in JSON Documents

Validation errors and warnings in JSON documents are presented in various locations within the interface.

**Validation Marker Locations**

Validation issues are marked in the following locations:

- In the main editing pane, with the issue underlined in a color according to the type of issue.
- In the right-side vertical stripe, with a marker that is colored according to the type of issue.
- In the **Outline** view, with an icon that is colored according to the type of issue.

**Validation Marker Colors**

The colors for each type of issue are as follows:

- **Validation Errors** [Red] - By default, the underline in the editing pane, the marker in the right vertical stripe, and the foreground color of the attribute in the **Attributes** view are colored in red.
- **Validation Warnings** [Yellow] - By default, the underline in the editing pane, the marker in the right vertical stripe, and the foreground color of the attribute in the **Attributes** view are colored in yellow.
- **Validation Info** [Blue] - By default, the underline in the editing pane, the marker in the right vertical stripe, and the foreground color of the attribute in the **Attributes** view are colored in blue.

You can configure the colors and how the various types of validation problems are rendered from the Eclipse **Annotations** preferences page (**Window** (**Eclipse** on Mac OSX) > **Preferences** > **General** > **Editors** > **Text Editors** > **Annotations**).

**Validation Markers in the Right-Side Stripe**

Also, the stripe on the right side of the editor panel is designed to display the issues found during the validation process and to help you locate them in the document. The stripe contains the following:

**Upper Part of the Stripe**

A success indicator square will turn green if the validation is successful or only info messages are found, red if validation errors are found, or yellow if only validation warnings are found. More details about the issues are displayed in a tool tip when you hover over indicator square. If there are numerous problems, only the first three are presented in the tool tip.

**Middle Part of the Stripe**
Errors are presented with red markers, warnings with yellow markers, and info message with blue markers. If you want to limit the number of markers that are displayed, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Editor > Document checking, and specify the desired limit in the Maximum number of validation highlights option (on page 93).

Clicking a marker will highlight the corresponding text area in the editor. The validation message is also displayed both in a tool tip (when hovering over the marker) and in the message area on the bottom of the application.

**Bottom Part of the Stripe**

Two navigation arrows (↵) allow you to jump to the next or previous issue. The same actions can be triggered from Document > Automatic validation > Next error (Ctrl + Period (Command + Period on OS X)) and Document > Automatic validation > Previous error (Ctrl + Comma (Command + Comma on OS X)).

**Hovering Over Validation Issues**

Hovering over a validation issue presents a tooltip message with more details about the problem. Also, when hovering over an issue, pressing F2 will change the focus to the tooltip.

**Details About Validation Issues**

- Information about the issue is also displayed in the message area on the bottom of the editor panel (clicking the Document checking options button opens the Document Checking preferences page (on page 93) where you can configure some validation options.
- Status messages from every validation action are logged in the Console view (on page 362) (the Enable Oxygen consoles option (on page 123) must be selected in the View preferences page).
- If you want to see all the validation messages grouped in the Results view (on page 226), you should use the Validate action from the toolbar or JSON menu. This action also collects the validation messages and displays them in the Problems view if the validated file is in the current workspace or in a custom Errors view if the validated file is outside the workspace.

**Creating a JSON Validation Scenario**

Validation scenarios can be used to associate one or more JSON Schemas with a JSON document (on page 741).

**Creating a JSON Validation Scenario**

To create a validation scenario, follow these steps:
1. Select the **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** action in one of the following ways:
   - From the toolbar.
   - From the JSON menu.
   - From the Validate submenu, when invoking the contextual menu on a file in the Navigator view (on page 210).

   **Step Result:** The **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** dialog box is displayed.

2. Click the **New** button.

   **Step Result:** A validation scenario configuration dialog box is displayed.

   ![Validation Scenario Configuration Dialog Box](image)

   This scenario configuration dialog box allows you to configure the following information and options:

   **Name**
   
   The name of the validation scenario.

   **URL of the file to validate**
   
   The URL of the main module that includes the current module. It is also the entry module of the validation process when the current one is validated. To edit the URL, click its cell and specify the URL of the main module by doing one of the following:
   - Enter the URL in the text field or select it from the drop-down list.
   - Use the **Browse** drop-down button to browse for a local, remote, or archived file.
   - Use the **Insert Editor Variable** button to insert an editor variable (on page 162) or a custom editor variable (on page 169).
**File type**

The type of the document that is validated in the current validation unit. Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically selects the file type depending on the value of the URL of the file to validate field.

**Validation engine**

For normal JSON documents, the Default engine should be used. For JSON Schemas, you could use the Default engine (if they have a schema version specified) or the JSON Schema Validator. The latter does not require a schema version to be specified. If the version is missing, JSON Schema draft-04 will be used as a default.

**Automatic validation**

If this option is selected, the validation operation defined by this row is also applied by the automatic validation feature (on page 423). If the Automatic validation feature is disabled in the Document Checking preferences page (on page 93), then this option is ignored, as the preference setting has a higher priority.

**Schema**

Displays the specified schema.

- **Specify Schema**

  Opens the Specify Schema dialog box that allows you to set a schema to be used for validating JSON documents.

- **Move Up**

  Moves the selected scenario up one spot in the list.

- **Move Down**

  Moves the selected scenario down one spot in the list.

- **Add**

  Adds a new validation unit to the list.

- **Remove**
Removes an existing validation unit from the list.

3. Configure any of the existing validation units according to the information above. You can use the buttons at the bottom of the table to add, remove, or move validation units.

4. Press **OK**.

**Result:** The newly created validation scenario will now be included in the list of scenarios in the **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** dialog box. You can select the scenario in this dialog box to associate it with the current document and press the **Apply associated** button to run the validation scenario.

**Sharing JSON Validation Scenarios**

The validation scenarios and their settings can be shared with other users by exporting them to a **specialized scenarios file** that can then be imported.

**Resolving References with an XML Catalog**

If a reference to a remote JSON schema must be used but a local copy of the schema should actually be preferred for performance reasons, the reference can be resolved to the local copy with an **XML Catalog**.

For example, if the JSON schema contains a reference to a remote schema such as:

```json
{"$ref": "http://json-schema.org/example/geo.json"}
```

the reference can be resolved to a local copy of the schema by inserting the following catalog entry:

```xml
<uri name="http://json-schema.org/example/geo.json" uri="schemas/geo.json"/>
```

**Related Information:**

- Working with XML Catalogs (on page 460)

**Associating a Schema to JSON Documents**

To provide as-you-type validation and to compute valid proposals for the **Content Completion Assistant** (on page 1620), Oxygen XML Developer plugin requires a schema to be associated with the JSON document. The schema specifies how the internal structure is defined.
Detecting the Schema(s) for Validation and Content Completion

For validation, Oxygen XML Developer plugin tries to detect the JSON Schema by searching in the following order:

1. The schema referenced in validation stages from the validation scenario(s) (on page 741) associated with the current JSON document.
2. If a schema is not detected, then it falls back to the schema associated directly in the JSON document (on page 743).

Tip: To quickly open the schema used for validating the current document, select the Open Associated Schema action from the toolbar (or JSON menu).

Associating a JSON Schema Through a Validation Scenario

Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the rules defined in the detected JSON schema to report errors and warnings during automatic and manual validations that help maintain the structural integrity of your JSON documents. There are several methods that can be used to validate with a JSON schema.

Configure a Validation Scenario and Specify the JSON Schema

You can specify the schema to be used for validation directly in the JSON validation scenario (on page 737). To associate a JSON schema to a validation scenario to be used whenever the scenario is invoked, follow these steps:

1. Select the Configure Validation Scenario(s) from the toolbar, from the JSON menu, or from the Validate submenu when invoking the contextual menu on a file in the Navigator view (on page 210).
2. Press the New button to create a new validation scenario (on page 737) or the Edit button to modify an existing one.
3. Add or configure validation units according to your needs and click the Specify Schema button.
4. Select the schema to be associated with the validation unit.
5. Click OK on both dialog boxes.

Result: The JSON schema is now associated with that validation scenario whenever it is invoked.

Use the Validate with Action to Specify a JSON Schema for Validating the Current Document

To validate the current document using a specified schema, follow these steps:
1. Select the **Validation with** action from the **Validation** drop-down menu on the toolbar (or **JSON** menu).

**Step Result:** The **Validate with** dialog box is displayed:

Figure 315. Validate with Dialog Box

This dialog box contains the following options:

- **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S), FTP(S). You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.
- **Schema type** - Select **JSON** for the schema type (other types of schema will not work with JSON documents).

2. Select the schema to be associated with the manual validation.
3. Click **OK**.

**Result:** The current document is validated using the JSON schema you specified.

**Use the Validate with Schema Action to Specify a JSON Schema for Validating all Selected JSON Documents**

To validate multiple JSON documents using a specified JSON schema, follow these steps:

1. Select all the JSON documents you want to validate in the **Navigator** view.
2. Invoke the contextual menu (right-click) and select the **Validate with Schema** action from the **Validate** submenu.

**Step Result:** The **Validate with** dialog box is displayed:

Figure 316. Validate with Dialog Box
This dialog box contains the following options:

- **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S), FTP(S). You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

- **Schema type** - Select JSON for the schema type (other types of schema will not work with JSON documents).

3. Select the JSON schema that you want to use to validate all selected JSON documents.
4. Click OK.

**Result:** The selected JSON documents are validated using the JSON schema you specified.

**Associating a Schema Directly in JSON Documents**

**Associate Schema Action**

The schema used by the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) and document validation engine can be associated with the current document by using the Associate Schema action. The association can specify a relative file path or a URL of the schema.

To associate a JSON Schema to the current JSON document, follow these steps:

1. Select the Associate Schema action from the toolbar (or JSON menu).

**Step Result:** The Associate Schema dialog box is displayed:

**Figure 317. Associate Schema Dialog Box**
This dialog box contains the following options for JSON documents:

- **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S), FTP(S).

- **Use path relative to file location** - Select this option if the JSON instance document and the associated schema contain relative paths. The location of the schema file is inserted in the JSON instance document as a relative file path. This practice allows you, for example, to share these documents with other users without running into problems caused by multiple project locations on physical disk.

2. Select the JSON Schema that will be associated with the JSON document.
3. Click **OK**.

**Result:** A `$schema` property is added at the beginning of the document with its value set to the specified URL. If the document already contained a schema association, the old association will be replaced with the new one.

**Tip:** To quickly open the schema used for validating the current document, select the **Open Associated Schema** action from the toolbar (or **JSON** menu).

### Content Completion Assistant in JSON

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes an intelligent *Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620)* that offers proposals for inserting JSON structures that are valid at the current editing location.

The *Content Completion Assistant* is enabled by default. To disable it, open the **Preferences dialog box** (on page 42), go to **Editor > Content Completion**, and deselect the **Enable content completion option** (on page 86).

![Figure 318. Content Completion Assistant in JSON](image)

### Content Completion and the Associated Schema

The *Content Completion Assistant* feature is schema-driven and the list of proposals in the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620)* depend on the associated JSON Schema. For information about ways to associate a schema to a JSON document, see the **Associating a Schema to JSON Documents (on page 740)** section.
Using the Content Completion Assistant in JSON

The feature is activated in Text mode for JSON documents by:

- Typing a quote symbol (" ) to insert a property or value.
- Pressing Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X) or Alt + ForwardSlash (Command + Alt + ForwardSlash on OS X).

You can navigate through the list of proposals by using the Up and Down keys on your keyboard. In some cases, the Content Completion Assistant displays a documentation window with information about the particular proposal (on page 745). You can also change the size of the documentation window by dragging its top, right, and bottom borders.

To insert the selected proposal, press Enter or Tab.

Types of Proposals Listed in the Content Completion Assistant for JSON

The proposals that populate the Content Completion Assistant for JSON documents depend on the structure defined in the associated JSON Schema. The types of structure proposed in the content completion window include:

- JSON properties
- JSON values
- JSON arrays
- JSON objects

The number and type of proposals displayed by the Content Completion Assistant is dependent on the cursor's current position in the JSON document and the child items displayed within a given context are defined by the structure of the specified JSON Schema.

Code Templates in the Content Completion

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a set of built-in code templates for JSON documents that can be selected from the Content Completion Assistant. The code templates are displayed with a symbol in the content completion list. You can also define your own code templates and share them with others. For more information, see Code Templates (on page 389).

Schema Annotations in JSON Content Completion

A schema annotation is a documentation snippet that appears in the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) offering more information about the current proposal.
This feature is enabled by default, but you can disable it by deselecting the Show annotations in Content Completion Assistant (on page 88) option in the Annotations preferences page.

Collecting Annotations from the JSON Schema

In a JSON Schema, the annotations are specified in the value of the title and description properties like this:

```json
"idType": {
  "title": "The 'id' property",
  "description": "Specifies a required ID for this person.",
  "type": "string",
  "maxLength": 20
}
```

Syntax Highlighting in JSON Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports syntax highlighting in Text mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for JSON files, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42).
2. Go to Editor > Syntax Highlight (on page 112).
3. Select and expand the JSON section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.

You can see the effects of your changes in the Preview pane.

Related Information:

- Syntax Highlight Preferences (on page 112)

Folding in JSON

In a large JSON document, the data enclosed in the curly bracket characters `{}` can be collapsed so that only the needed data remains in focus. The folding features available for XML documents (on page 375) are also available in JSON documents.
JSON Outline View

The **Outline** view for JSON documents displays the list of all the components of the JSON document you are editing. By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Figure 319. JSON Outline View

Outline View Features

The **Outline** view allows you to:

- Quickly navigate through the document by selecting nodes in the **Outline** tree.
- Move elements by dragging them to a new position in the tree structure.
- Highlight elements in the editor area. It is synchronized with the editor area, so when you make a selection in the editor area, the corresponding nodes are highlighted in the **Outline** view, and vice versa.
- View document errors, as they are highlighted in the **Outline** view. A tooltip also provides more information about the nature of the error when you hover over the faulted element.

Outline View Interface

By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

The upper part of the **Outline** view contains a filter box that allows you to focus on the relevant components. Type a text fragment in the filter box and only the components that match it are
presented. For advanced usage you can use wildcard characters (such as *, ?) and separate multiple patterns with commas.

It also includes a View menu in the top-right corner that presents the following options to help you filter the view even further.

**Filter returns exact matches**

The text filter of the Outline view returns only exact matches.

**Selection update on cursor move**

Controls the synchronization between Outline view and source document. The selection in the Outline view can be synchronized with the cursor moves or the changes in the editor. Selecting one of the components from the Outline view also selects the corresponding item in the source document.

**Flat presentation mode of the filtered results**

When active, the application flattens the filtered result elements to a single level.

**Drop and Drop Actions in the Outline View**

Entire JSON properties, objects, and arrays can be moved or copied in the edited document using only the mouse in the Outline view with drag-and-drop operations. Several drag and drop actions are possible:

- If you drag a JSON node in the Outline view and drop it on another node, then the dragged node will be moved after the drop target.
- If you hold the mouse pointer over the drop target for a short time before the drop then the drop target node will be expanded first and the dragged node will be moved inside the drop target.
- You can also drop a node before or after another node if you hold the mouse pointer towards the upper or lower part of the target. A marker will indicate whether the drop will be performed before or after the target node.
- If you hold down the (`Ctrl (Command on OS X)`) key after dragging, a copy operation will be performed instead of a move.

**Contextual Menu Actions**

The following actions are available in the contextual menu of the JSON Outline view:

**Cut**

Cuts the currently selected component.

**Copy**
Copies the currently selected component.

**Paste**

Pastes the copied component.

**Delete**

Deletes the currently selected component.

**Expand All**

Expands the structure of a component in the **Outline** view.

**Collapse All**

Collapses the structure of all the component in the **Outline** view.

### JSON to XML Converter

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a useful and simple tool for converting JSON files to XML. It can be found in the **XML Tools** menu.

To convert a JSON document to XML, follow these steps:

1. Select the **JSON to XML** action from the **XML Tools** menu. The **JSON to XML** dialog box is displayed:

   Figure 320. JSON to XML Dialog Box

   ![JSON to XML Dialog Box](image)

2. Choose or enter the **Input URL** of the JSON document.
3. Choose the path of the **Output file** that will contain the resulting XML document.
4. Select the **Open in Editor** option to open the resulting XML document in the main editing pane.
5. Click the **Convert** button.

The original JSON document is now converted to an XML document.

Figure 321. Example: XML to JSON Operation Result
Conversion Details

- If the JSON document has more than one property on the first level, the converted XML document will have an additional root element called `<JSON>`.

For example, the following JSON document:

```json
{
    "personnel": {
        "person": [
            {
                "name": "Boss"
            },
            {
                "name": "Worker"
            }
        ],
        "id": "personnel-id"
    }
}
```

it is converted to:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<JSON>
  <personnel>
```
```
• If the JSON document is an array, the converted XML document will have a root element called `<array>` and for each item within the array, another `<array>` is created.

```json
[
  {"name": "Boss"},
  {"name": "Worker"}
]
```

it is converted to:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<array>
  <array>
    <name>Boss</name>
  </array>
  <array>
    <name>Worker</name>
  </array>
</array>
```

• If the name of a JSON property contains characters that are not valid in XML element names (for example, `$`), then the invalid characters will be escaped as its hexadecimal equivalent in the converted XML.

```json
{"$id": "personnel-id"}
```

is converted to:

```xml
<_X24_id>personnel-id</_X24_id>
```

**Online JSON to XML Converter**

For a simple ONLINE tool for converting a single JSON file to XML, or vice versa, go to: [https://www.oxygenxml.com/xml_json_converter.html](https://www.oxygenxml.com/xml_json_converter.html).
XML to JSON Converter

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a useful and simple tool for converting XML files to JSON. It can be found in the XML Tools menu.

To convert an XML document to JSON, follow these steps:

1. Select the **XML to JSON** action from the XML Tools menu. The **XML to JSON** dialog box is displayed:

   ![XML to JSON Dialog Box](image)

2. Choose or enter the **Input URL** of the XML document.
3. Choose the path of the **Output file** that will contain the resulting JSON document.
4. Select the **Open in Editor** option to open the resulting JSON document in the main editing pane.
5. Click the **Convert** button.

The original XML document is now converted to a JSON document.

![Example: XML to JSON Operation Result](image)
Conversion Details

• If any elements contain attributes in the XML document, the attributes are converted to properties in the converted JSON document. If the XML document contains more than one element with the same name, they will be converted into an array of object in the converted JSON document.

For example, the following XML document:

```
<personnel>
  <person id="person.one">
    <name>Boss</name>
  </person>
  <person id="person.two">
    <name>Worker</name>
  </person>
</personnel>
```

it is converted to:

```
{
  "personnel": [ 
    { "id": "person.one", "name": "Boss" },
    { "id": "person.two", "name": "Worker" }
  ]
}
```
If the XML document contains elements with mixed content (text plus elements), the converted JSON document will contain a `content` property with its value set as the text content.

```xml
<person>
  <name>Boss <i>One</i></name>
</person>
```

is converted to:

```json
{
  "person": {
    "name": {
      "content": "Boss",
      "i": "One"
    }
  }
}
```

If the XML document contains element names that contain hexadecimal codes (for example, if they were escaped during a JSON to XML conversion (on page 750)), it will be converted to the normal character value in the converted JSON document.

```xml
<_X24_id>personnel-id</_X24_id>
```

is converted to:

```json
{"$id": "personnel-id"}
```

**Online XML to JSON Converter**

For a simple ONLINE tool for converting a single XML file to JSON, or vice versa, go to: https://www.oxygenxml.com/xml_json_converter.html.
Contextual Menu Actions in JSON Documents

When editing JSON documents, Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides the following actions in the contextual menu:

- **Cut, Copy, Paste**
  
  Executes the typical editing actions on the currently selected content.

- **Copy JSON Pointer**
  
  Creates a JSON Pointer at the current cursor location and copies the expression that denotes the JSON pointer to the system clipboard.

- **Copy XPath**
  
  Copies the XPath expression of the current property from the current editor to the clipboard.

- **Go to Matching Bracket**
  
  Moves the cursor to the end bracket that matches the start bracket, or vice versa.

- **Open File at Cursor**
  
  Opens the file at the cursor position in a new panel. If the file path represents a directory path, it will be opened in system file browser. If the file at the specified location does not exist, an error dialog box is displayed and it includes a Create new file button that starts the New document wizard. This allows you to choose the type or the template for the file. If the action succeeds, the file is created with the referenced location and name and is opened in a new editor panel.

Transforming and Querying JSON Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides the ability to transform JSON documents to XML or HTML through XSLT or XQuery processing. You also have access to some powerful tools for querying JSON through XPath expressions or XQuery.

For more information about transforming and querying in JSON, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/1LHoMhEFagA
Transforming JSON Documents with XSLT

It is possible to transform JSON documents through XSLT processing. To do so, follow these steps:

1. Create an XSLT 3.0 stylesheet that has the `xsl:initial-template`. You can use one of the following two templates available in the New Document Wizard.
   - **XSLT Stylesheet for JSON** - Processes a JSON document by using a `json-doc()` function and matches the JSON properties from the JSON map.
   - **XSLT Stylesheet for JSON to XML** - Processes a JSON document by using a `json-to-xml()` function and matches the converted XML content.

2. Create a new XSLT transformation scenario for your stylesheet.

3. Reference the JSON document that you want to transform using one of these two methods:
   - In the transformation scenario, click the Parameters button in the XSLT tab and add a parameter that specifies the URL to your JSON document in its value. For example, if you are transforming one of the built-in templates mentioned above, the `input` parameter is added by default and you could specify the URL in its value.
   - Specify the URL to your JSON document in the stylesheet you created. For example, if you use one of the built-in templates mentioned above, you would specify the URL in the value of the `input` parameter (in the `xsl:param` element).

4. Run the transformation.

**Tip:** There are some sample files in the `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/samples/json/transform` folder that can be used to transform a JSON document to XML or HTML.

Transforming JSON Documents with XQuery

It is possible to transform JSON documents through XQuery processing. To do so, follow these steps:

2. Create a new XQuery transformation scenario for your XQuery file.
3. Reference the JSON document that you want to transform using one of these two methods:
   - In the transformation scenario, click the Parameters button in the XQuery tab and add a parameter that specifies the URL to your JSON document in its value.
• Specify the URL to your JSON document in the XQuery file you created.

4. Run the transformation.

Tip: There is a sample XQuery file in the \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/samples/json/transform folder that can be used to transform a JSON document.

Querying JSON Documents with XPath or XQuery

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides a dedicated XPath/XQuery Builder view that allows you to compose complex XPath or XQuery expressions and execute them over JSON documents.

XPath/XQuery Builder View

You can also use the XPath/XQuery view to run XPath and XQuery expressions over a JSON document. For XQuery, you need to reference the JSON document in your XQuery content. For more information about this view, see XPath Builder View (on page 1394).

Figure 324. XPath/XQuery Builder View for JSON

Details About Querying JSON Documents Using XPath Expressions

To execute XPath expressions over a JSON document, the document is converted to XML and the XPath is executed over the converted XML document. For this conversion, Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the built-in JSON to XML Converter tool (on page 749). The results are mapped back to the original JSON document.

For example, if you have the following JSON document:

```json
{
    "personnel": {
        "person": [
            {"name": "Boss"},
            ...
        ]
    }
}
```
and you want to match the name of the second person, the XPath expression would look like this:

```
/JSON/personnel/person[2]/name
```

The reason why the first element is JSON is because if the JSON document contains more than one property on the first level, the converted XML document will have an additional root element called <JSON>. For more information, see JSON to XML Conversion Details (on page 750).

The [2] in the expression represents the index of the person in the array and in this case, it matches the second person because the index counting starts with 1.

## Editing JSON Schema Documents

The purpose of the JSON schema is to define the legal properties and values of a JSON document to keep it valid and well formed. When editing JSON Schema, all of the same features in the JSON editor (on page 730) are available.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a new document template to help you get started creating a JSON Schema document. The template is called JSON Schema and it can be found in the New Document folder in the New from templates wizard (on page 311). You can also customize your own JSON Schema templates (on page 313) and specify other versions (draft 04, 06, or 07).

For information about using a JSON Schema to validate documents, see Validating JSON Documents Against JSON Schema (on page 734).

For information about how to associate a JSON schema for the purposes of validation, see Associating a JSON Schema Through a Validation Scenario (on page 741).

## Validating JSON Schema Documents

A Valid JSON Schema document is a Well-Formed document that also conforms to the JSON meta-schema rules that defines the legal syntax of a JSON Schema document.

If a JSON document includes a meta-schema URL in the document root with the "$schema" key, the file will be validated as a JSON Schema against the specified meta-schema.

**Quick Reference**
• If there is a "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/schema" property in the schema root, then Draft 4 will be used.
• If there is a "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-06/schema" property in the schema root, then Draft 6 will be used.
• If there is a "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-07/schema" property in the schema root, then Draft 7 will be used.
• If there is a "$schema" property in the schema root, but with a different draft value, then an error will be displayed ("no meta-schema is known with URI").
• If none of these are found, then it is validated as a simple JSON instance.
• You could also select the JSON Schema Validator in a JSON validation scenario (on page 737) and it will use the version specified in the JSON Schema, or if a version is not specified, the JSON Schema draft-04 will be used.

For information about how to associate a JSON schema for the purposes of validation, see Associating a JSON Schema Through a Validation Scenario (on page 741).

Editing StratML Documents

Strategy Markup Language (StratML) is an XML vocabulary and schema for strategic plans. Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports StratML Part 1 (Strategic Plan) and StratML Part 2 (Performance Plans and Reports) and provides templates for the following documents:

• Strategic Plan (StratML Part 1)
• Performance Plan (StratML Part 2)
• Performance Report - (StratML Part 2)
• Strategic Plan - (StratML Part 2)

You can view the components of a StratML document in the Outline view (on page 217). Oxygen XML Developer plugin implements a default XML with XSLT transformation scenario for this document type, called StratML to HTML.

Editing XLIFF Documents

XLIFF (XML Localization Interchange File Format) is an XML-based format that was designed to standardize the way multilingual data is passed between tools during a localization process. Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides the following support for editing XLIFF documents:

XLIFF Version 1.2, 2.0, and 2.1 Support:

• New document templates for XLIFF documents.
• A default CSS file (xliff.css) used for rendering XLIFF content in Author mode is stored in \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/xliff/css/.

• Validation and content completion support using local catalogs. The default catalog (catalog.xml) for version 1.2 is stored in \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/xliff/schemas/1.2, for version 2.0 in \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/xliff/schemas/2.0, and for version 2.1 in \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/xliff/schemas/2.1.

**XLIFF Version 2.0 and 2.1 Enhanced Support:**

Support for validating XLIFF 2.0 and 2.1 documents using modules. For version 2.0, the default modules are stored in \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/xliff/schemas/2.0/modules and for version 2.1, they are stored in \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/xliff/schemas/2.1.

**Editing XLIFF Documents in Author Mode**

By default, when you create a new XLIFF document from a template (on page 311), Oxygen XML Developer plugin opens it in Text mode. Aside from the normal editing features found in Text mode, you can also switch to Author mode where Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers some special form controls specifically for XLIFF documents. These form controls simply allow you to add or edit XLIFF attribute values and content in a visual mode.

For XLIFF version 2.0 and 2.1 documents, you can also change the style of the visual editing mode. The Styles drop-down menu on the toolbar offers the following styles that are specifically designed to render XLIFF 2.0 and 2.1 documents in Author mode:

• Default
• Classic
• Translate

**Editing JavaScript Documents**

This section explains the features of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin JavaScript Editor and how you can use them.

**JavaScript Editing Actions**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to create and edit JavaScript files and assists you with useful features such as syntax highlight, content completion, and outline view. To enhance your
editing experience, you can select entire blocks (parts of text delimited by brackets) by double-clicking somewhere inside the brackets.

Figure 325. JavaScript Editor Text Mode

```javascript
function change_sides(front) {
  switch ($('#version-switch').text()) {
    case 'Original':
      $('holder').html($('div .original[id]').html());
      make_clickable();
      $('#version-switch').text('Translation 1');
      break;
    case 'Translation 1':
      $('holder').html($('div .translation[id]').filter(':first').html());
      $('#version-switch').text('Translation 2');
      break;
    case 'Translation 2':
      $('holder').html($('div .translation[id]').filter(':last').html());
      $('#version-switch').text('Original');
      break;
  }
}
```

The contextual menu of the **JavaScript** editor offers the following actions:

- **Cut**
  Allows you to cut fragments of text from the editing area.

- **Copy**
  Allows you to copy fragments of text from the editing area.

- **Paste**
  Allows you to paste fragments of text in the editing area.

- **Toggle Comment**
  Allows you to comment a line or a fragment of the JavaScript document you are editing. This option inserts a single comment for the entire fragment you want to comment.

- **Toggle Line Comment**
  Allows you to comment a line or a fragment of the JavaScript document you are editing. This option inserts a comment for each line of the fragment you want to comment.

- **Go to Matching Bracket**
  Use this option to find the closing, or opening bracket, matching the bracket at the cursor position. When you select this option, Oxygen XML Developer plugin moves the cursor to the matching bracket, highlights its row, and decorates the initial bracket with a rectangle.

**Note:** A rectangle decorates the opening or closing bracket that matches the current one, at all times.
Source

Allows you to select one of the following actions:

To Lower Case

Converts the selection content to lower case characters.

To Upper Case

Converts the selection content to upper case characters.

Capitalize Lines

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected line.

Join and Normalize Lines

Joins all the rows you select to one row and normalizes the content.

Insert new line after

Inserts a new line after the line at the cursor position.

Modify all matches

Use this option to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content. When you use this option, a thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

Open

Allows you to select one of the following actions:

• Open File at Cursor - select this action to open the source of the file located at the cursor position
• Open File at Cursor in System Application - select this action to open the source of the file located at the cursor position with the application that the system associates with the file

Compare

Select this option to open the Compare Files tool to compare the file you are editing with a file you choose in the dialog box.

Validating JavaScript Files

You have the possibility to validate the JavaScript document you are editing. Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the Mozilla Rhino library for validation. For more information about this library, go to http://www.mozilla.org/rhino/doc.html. The JavaScript validation process checks for errors in the
syntax. Calling a function that is not defined is not treated as an error by the validation process. The interpreter discovers this error when executing the faulted line. Oxygen XML Developer plugin can validate a JavaScript document both on-request and automatically.

Content Completion in JavaScript Documents

When you edit a JavaScript document, the **Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620)** presents you a list of the elements you can insert at the cursor position. It can be manually activated with the **Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X)** shortcut.

For an enhanced assistance, JQuery methods are also presented. The following icons decorate the elements in the content completion list of proposals depending on their type:

- ✿ - function
- ✿ - variable
- ✿ - object
- ✿ - property
- ✿ - method

**Note:** These icons decorate both the elements from the content completion list of proposals and from the **Outline view (on page 764)**.

Figure 326. JavaScript Content Completion Assistant

The **Content Completion Assistant** collects:
• Method names from the current file and from the library files.
• Functions and variables defined in the current file.

If you edit the content of a function, the content completion list of proposals contains all the local variables defined in the current function, or in the functions that contain the current one.

Syntax Highlighting in JavaScript Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports syntax highlighting in Text mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for JavaScript files, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42).
2. Go to Editor > Syntax Highlight (on page 112).
3. Select and expand the JavaScript section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.

You can see the effects of your changes in the Preview pane.

Related Information:

• Syntax Highlight Preferences (on page 112)

JavaScript Outline View

Oxygen XML Developer plugin present a list of all the components of the JavaScript document you are editing in the Outline view. By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Figure 327. JavaScript Outline View
The following icons decorate the elements in the Outline view depending on their type:

- ⌅ - function
- ⚡ - variable
- □ - object
- ⚪ - property
- ⌘ - method

The contextual menu of the JavaScript Outline view contains the usual Cut, Copy, Paste, and Delete actions. From the Settings menu, you can select the Update selection on cursor move option to synchronize the Outline view with the editing area.

Editing XProc Scripts

XProc is an XML pipeline language that can be used to script transformations. An XProc script is edited as an XML document that is validated against a RELAX NG schema, or if the script has an associated transformation scenario, then the XProc engine selected in the scenario is used as the validating engine (if the XProc engine supports validation). The default engine for XProc scenarios is a version of the Calabash engine that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Developer plugin version 21.1.

XProc Content Completion

Oxygen XML Developer plugin helps you edit a XProc scripts through the Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620), offering proposals that are valid at the cursor position. It can be manually activated with the Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X) shortcut.
The content completion inside the element `input/inline` from the XProc namespace `http://www.w3.org/ns/xproc` offers elements from the following schemas depending both on the `port` attribute and the parent of the `input` element. When invoking the content completion inside the XProc element `inline`, the list of content completion proposals is populated as follows:

- If the value of the `port` attribute is `stylesheet` and the `xslt` element is the parent of the `input` elements, the `Content Completion Assistant` offers XSLT elements.
- If the value of the `port` attribute is `schema` and the `validate-with-relax-ng` element is the parent of the `input` element, the `Content Completion Assistant` offers RELAX NG schema elements.
- If the value of the `port` attribute is `schema` and the `validate-with-xml-schema` element is the parent of the `input` element, the `Content Completion Assistant` offers XML Schema schema elements.
- If the value of the `port` attribute is `schema` and the `validate-with-schematron` element is the parent of the `input` element, the `Content Completion Assistant` offers either ISO Schematron elements or Schematron 1.5 schema elements.
- If the above cases do not apply, then the `Content Completion Assistant` offers elements from all the schemas from the above cases.

Figure 328. XProc Content Completion

```
<p:choose>
  <p:when test="not(contains(/item[1]/title, 'suny'))">
    <p:xslt>
      <p:input port="source"/>
      <p:input port="stylesheet">
        <p:inline>
          <xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform" version="1.0">
            <xsl:import href="/"/>
            <xsl:include href="/"/>
          </xsl:stylesheet>
        </p:inline>
      </p:input>
    </p:xslt>
  </p:when>
  <p:otherwise>
    <p:xslt>
  </p:otherwise>
</p:choose>
```

XProc Syntax Highlighting

The XProc editor assists you in writing XPath expressions by offering dedicated coloring schemes for syntax highlighting.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for XProc, follow these steps:
1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42).
2. Go to Editor > Syntax Highlight (on page 112).
3. Select and expand the XML section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.
5. Select the XML tab in the Preview pane to see the effects of your changes.

**Enabling Extensions in Calabash**

If you are using the default Calabash engine, it is possible to configure extensions (for a list of the valid extensions, see [http://xmlcalabash.com/docs/reference/cfg.extension.html](http://xmlcalabash.com/docs/reference/cfg.extension.html)).

To configure an extension:

1. Edit the following file: `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/lib/xproc/calabash/engine.xml`.
2. Add the extension and its value as a system-property, as in the following example:

```xml
<system-property name="com.xmlcalabash.allow-text-results" value="true"/>
```

**Related Information:**
- Creating an XProc Transformation Scenario (on page 957)
- Integrating an External XProc Engine (on page 962)
- XProc Preferences (on page 141)

**Editing Schematron Schemas**

Schematron is a simple and powerful Structural Schema Language for making assertions about patterns found in XML documents. It relies almost entirely on XPath query patterns for defining rules and checks. Schematron validation rules allow you to specify a meaningful error message. This error message is provided to you if an error is encountered during the validation stage.

There are numerous online resources out there to help you get started with writing Schematron rules. Here are just a few that might help you:

- Guide to Schema Writing with Schematron
- Presentation: Schematron Development with Oxygen
Oxygen XML Developer plugin assists you in editing Schematron documents with schema-based content completion, syntax highlight, search and refactor actions, and dedicated icons for the Outline view (on page 776). You can create a new Schematron schema using one of the Schematron templates available in the New from Templates wizard (on page 311).

For information about applying and detecting Schematron schemas, see Associating a Schema to XML Documents (on page 449).

Validating XML Documents Against Schematron

The Skeleton XSLT processor is used for validation and conforms with ISO Schematron or Schematron 1.5. It allows you to validate XML documents against Schematron schemas (on page 770) or against combined RELAX NG / W3C XML Schema and Schematron.

How to Specify the Query Language Binding

You can specify the query language binding to be used in the Schematron schema by doing the following:

- For embedded ISO Schematron, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to XML > XML Parser > Schematron, and select it in the Embedded rules query language binding option (on page 137).
- For standalone ISO Schematron, specify the version by setting the query language to be used in a queryBinding attribute on the schema root element. For more information, see the Query Language Binding section of the Schematron specifications.
- For Schematron 1.5 (standalone and embedded), open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to XML > XML Parser > Schematron, and select the version in the XPath Version option (on page 138).

Multi-Lingual Support in Schematron Messages

You can specify the desired language for the validation messages in the Schematron Preferences page (on page 137). The Schematron validation messages can be presented in multiple languages by defining the language for each message using the Schematron diagnostics. For more information, see the Use of Schematron for Multi-Lingual Schemas specification.

How to Customize Color Schemes in Schematron

The Schematron editor renders the XPath expressions with dedicated color schemes. To customize the coloring schemes, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Syntax Highlight.
Schematron Transformation Scenario

When you create a Schematron document, Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides a built-in transformation scenario. You can use this scenario to obtain the XSLT style-sheet corresponding to the Schematron schema. You can apply this XSLT stylesheet to XML documents to obtain the Schematron validation results.

For more information about the Schematron support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, watch our video demonstrations:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/HdcZA3DjI7E

https://www.youtube.com/embed/y3u3wlO92e4

https://www.youtube.com/embed/FQNSsg57S4E

Related Information:

- Editing XML Documents in Text Mode *(on page 365)*
- Associating a Schema to XML Documents *(on page 449)*

Editing Schematron Schema in the Master Files Context

Smaller interrelated modules that define a complex Schematron cannot be correctly edited or validated individually, due to their interdependency with other modules. For example, a diagnostic defined in a main schema document is not visible when you edit an included module. Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides the support for defining the main module (or modules), thus allowing you to edit any of the imported/included schema files in the context of the larger schema structure.

You can set a main Schematron document either using the master files support from the Navigator view *(on page 337)*, or using a validation scenario.

To set a main file using a validation scenario, add validation units that point to the main schemas. Oxygen XML Developer plugin warns you if the current module is not part of the dependencies graph computed for the main schema. In this case, it considers the current module as the main schema.

The advantages of editing in the context of main file include:

- Correct validation of a module in the context of a larger schema structure.
• Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) displays all the referable components valid in the current context. This include components defined in modules other than the currently edited one.

Presenting Schematron Validation Issues

The possible issues that might occur during the validation process when validating XML documents against Schematron are presented with colored underlines in the editing pane, colored markers in the right vertical stripe, and details about the issues are presented in the Problems tab at the bottom area of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin window. Each error is flagged with a severity level that can be: warning, error, fatal or info.

To set a severity level, Oxygen XML Developer plugin looks for the following information:

• The role attribute, which can have one of the following values:
  - warn or warning - Sets the severity level to warning. By default, underlined with a yellow squiggly line in the editing pane and a yellow marker in the right vertical stripe.
  - error - Sets the severity level to error. By default, underlined with a red squiggly line in the editing pane and a red marker in the right vertical stripe.
  - fatal - Sets the severity level to fatal. By default, underlined with a red squiggly line in the editing pane and a red marker in the right vertical stripe.
  - info or information - Sets the severity level to information. By default, underlined with a blue squiggly line in the editing pane and a blue marker in the right vertical stripe.
• The start of the message, after trimming leading white-spaces. Oxygen XML Developer plugin looks to match the following exact string of characters (case-sensitive):
  - Warning: - Sets the severity level to warning. By default, underlined with a yellow squiggly line in the editing pane and a yellow marker in the right vertical stripe.
  - Error: - Sets the severity level to error. By default, underlined with a red squiggly line in the editing pane and a red marker in the right vertical stripe.
  - Fatal: - Sets the severity level to fatal. By default, underlined with a red squiggly line in the editing pane and a red marker in the right vertical stripe.
  - Info: - Sets the severity level to info. By default, underlined with a blue squiggly line in the editing pane and a blue marker in the right vertical stripe.
• If none of the previous rules match, Oxygen XML Developer plugin sets the severity level to error. By default, underlined with a red squiggly line in the editing pane and a red marker in the right vertical stripe.

Related Information:

• Validating XML Documents Against a Schema (on page 422)
Integrating Schematron Rules in a Framework and Sharing Them

Custom Schematron rules are a great way to ensure consistency for XML authoring, especially when there is a large team working on the same set of documents. You can use Schematron for numerous use cases. For example, to restrict certain elements from being used, to impose restrictions on the amount of text for an element, or to impose restrictions on certain elements based on various attribute values or text content set in other elements. Furthermore, you can define quick fixes for each Schematron rule to offer technical writers proposed solutions for reported problems.

Once you define the Schematron rules, they can be shared with the other members of your team by integrating them in a framework (document type) configuration.

How to Integrate Schematron Rules in a Framework

To integrate a Schematron rule in an existing framework bundled with the application, follow these steps:

1. Create a folder structure for an extended framework and save it somewhere on disk where you have full write access (for example, custom_frameworks/dita-extension).
2. In that new folder structure, create another folder that will contain all of your custom Schematron files (for example, custom_frameworks/dita-extension/rules).
3. Define the Schematron rules in an existing or new Schematron file and save it in the folder you created in step 2. There are numerous online resources out there to help you get started with writing Schematron rules. Here are just a few that might help you:
   - Guide to Schema Writing with Schematron
   - Presentation: Schematron Development with Oxygen
4. Open the Preferences dialog box and go to Document Type Association > Locations. In this preferences page, add the path to your custom_frameworks folder in the Additional frameworks directories list, then click OK or Apply to save your changes.
5. Go to the Document Type Association preferences page and select a framework configuration (for example, DITA) and use the Extend button to create an extension for it.
6. Give the extension an appropriate name (for example, DITA - Custom), select External for the Storage option, and specify an appropriate path to your framework configuration.
Make whatever changes you desire to the extension, then go to the Validation tab, edit the default validation scenario (select the scenario and click the Edit button), and add an extra validation unit to it (one that uses your custom Schematron file).

8. Click OK to close the dialog box and then OK or Apply to save the changes to the Document Type Association preferences page (on page 55).

9. Open an XML document that matches your framework configuration and test the new rule.

10. You can continue to refine the Schematron and develop additional rules as needed.

### Sharing Schematron Rules

To share Schematron rules with other members of your team, you simply need to share the framework where you integrated the Schematron rules.

- Defining Schematron Quick Fixes (on page 787)
- Associating a Schema in Validation Scenarios Defined in the Document Type (on page 455)

### Validating Schematron Documents

By default, a Schematron schema is validated as you type. To change this, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Editor > Document Checking, and deselect the Enable automatic validation option (on page 94).

To validate a Schematron document manually, select the Validate action from the Validation toolbar drop-down menu or the XML menu. When Oxygen XML Developer plugin validates a Schematron schema, it expands all the included modules so the entire schema hierarchy is validated. The validation problems are highlighted directly in the editor, making it easy to locate and fix any issues.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers an error management mechanism capable of pinpointing errors in XPath expressions and in the included schema modules.
Content Completion in Schematron Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin helps you edit a Schematron schema through the **Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620)**, offering proposals that are valid at the cursor position. It can be manually activated with the **Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X)** shortcut.

When you edit the value of an attribute that refers a component, the proposed components are collected from the entire schema hierarchy. For example, if the editing context is `phase/active/ @pattern`, the **Content Completion Assistant** proposes all the defined patterns.

**Note:** For Schematron resources, the **Content Completion Assistant** collects its components starting from the **master files (on page 1623)**. The master files can be defined in the project or in the associated validation scenario. For further details about the Master Files support go to **Defining Master Files at Project Level (on page 337)**.

If the editing context is an attribute value that is an XPath expression (such as `assert/@test` or `report/@test`), the **Content Completion Assistant** offers the names of XPath functions, the XPath axes, and user-defined variables.

The **Content Completion Assistant** displays XSLT 1.0 functions and optionally XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 functions in the attributes `path, select, context, subject, test` depending on the Schematron options (on page 137) that are set in Preferences pages. If the Saxon 6.5.5 namespace (`xmlns:saxon=http://icl.com/saxon`) or the Saxon 9.8.0.12 namespace is declared in the Schematron schema (`xmlns:saxon=http://saxon.sf.net/*`) the content completion also displays the XSLT Saxon extension functions as in the following figure:

Figure 329. XSLT Extension Functions in Schematron Schema Content Completion

The **Content Completion Assistant** also includes code templates that can be used to quickly insert code fragments (on page 389) into Schematron documents.
Syntax Highlighting in Schematron

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports syntax highlighting in **Text** mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for Schematron schemas, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 42)*.
2. Go to **Editor > Syntax Highlight** *(on page 112)*.
3. Select and expand the **XML** section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.
5. Select the **XML** tab in the **Preview** pane to see the effects of your changes.

**Tip:** Oxygen XML Developer plugin also allows you to specify syntax highlighting colors for specific XML elements and attributes with specific namespace prefixes. This can be done in the **Editor > Syntax Highlight > Elements/Attributes by Prefix** preferences page *(on page 113)*.

Related Information:

- Syntax Highlight Preferences *(on page 112)*

---

Embedding Schematron Rules in XML Schema or RELAX NG

Schematron rules can be embedded into an XML Schema through annotations (using the `appinfo` element), or in any element on any level of a RELAX NG Schema (taking into account that the RELAX NG validator ignores all elements that are not in the RELAX NG namespace).

Oxygen XML Developer plugin accepts such documents as Schematron validation schemas and it is able to extract and use the embedded rules.

**Validating XML Documents with XML Schema and Embedded Schematron**

To validate an XML document with XML Schema and its embedded Schematron, you can associate the document like this:

```
<?xml-model href="percent.xsd" type="application/xml"
  schematypens="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"?>
```
Validating XML Documents with Relax NG and Embedded Schematron

To validate an XML document with RELAX NG schema and its embedded Schematron rules, you need to associate the document with both schemas like this:

```xml
<?xml-model href="percent.rng" type="application/xml" schematypens="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>
<?xml-model href="percent.rng" type="application/xml" schematypens="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"/>
```

The second association validates your document with Schematron rules extracted from the RELAX NG Schema.

**Note:** When you work with XML Schema or Relax NG documents that have embedded Schematron rules Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides two built-in validation scenarios: Validate XML Schema with embedded Schematron for XML schema, and Validate Relax NG with embedded Schematron for Relax NG. You can use one of these scenarios to validate the embedded Schematron rules.

Example: Embedded Schematron in XML Schema

```xml
<xsd:appinfo>
  <sch:pattern>
    <sch:rule context="...">
      <sch:assert test="...">Message.</sch:assert>
    </sch:rule>
  </sch:pattern>
</xsd:appinfo>
```

Example: Embedded Schematron in Relax NG Schema

```xml
<grammar
  xmlns="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"
  xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron" >
  <sch:pattern>
    <sch:rule context="...">
      <sch:assert test="...">Message.</sch:assert>
    </sch:rule>
  </sch:pattern>
  <start>
    .............
  </start>
</grammar>
```
Related Information:

- Embedding Schematron Quick Fixes in Relax NG or XML Schema (on page 802)

Schematron Outline View

The **Outline** view for Schematron schemas presents a list of components in a tree-like structure and it allows for quick access to a component by name. By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Figure 330. Schematron Outline View

The following actions are available in the **View menu** on the **Outline** view action bar:

- **Filter returns exact matches**
  The text filter of the **Outline** view returns only exact matches.

- **Selection update on cursor move**
  Controls the synchronization between **Outline** view and source document. The selection in the **Outline** view can be synchronized with the cursor moves or the changes in the editor. Selecting one of the components from the **Outline** view also selects the corresponding item in the source document.

- **Flat presentation mode of the filtered results**
  When active, the application flattens the filtered result elements to a single level.
Show comments and processing instructions
Show/hide comments and processing instructions in the Outline view.

Show element name
Show/hide element name.

Show text
Show/hide additional text content for the displayed elements.

Show attributes
Show/hide attribute values for the displayed elements. The displayed attribute values can be changed from the Outline preferences panel (on page 158).

Configure displayed attributes
Displays the XML Structured Outline preferences page (on page 158).

The following contextual menu actions are also available in the Outline view:

Append Child
Displays a list of elements that you can insert as children of the current element.

Insert Before
Displays a list of elements that you can insert as siblings of the current element, before the current element.

Insert After
Displays a list of elements that you can insert as siblings of the current element, after the current element.

Edit Attributes
Opens a dialog box that allows you to edit the attributes of the currently selected component.

Toggle Comment
Comments/uncomments the currently selected element.

Cut
Cuts the currently selected component.

Copy
Copies the currently selected component.

Delete
Deletes the currently selected component.
Expand All

Expands the structure of a component in the Outline view.

Collapse All

Collapses the structure of all the component in the Outline view.

The upper part of the Outline view contains a filter box that allows you to focus on the relevant components. Type a text fragment in the filter box and only the components that match it are presented. For advanced usage you can use wildcard characters (such as *, ?) and separate multiple patterns with commas.

Schematront Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies View

The Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view displays the hierarchy/dependencies for a Schematron schema. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

If you want to see the hierarchy of a schema, select the desired schema in the Navigator view (on page 210) and choose Resource Hierarchy from the contextual menu.

Figure 331. Resource Hierarchy

If you want to see the dependencies of a schema, select the desired schema in the Navigator view (on page 210) and choose Resource Dependencies from the contextual menu.

Figure 332. Resource Dependencies

The following actions are available on the toolbar of the Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view:

Refresh
Refreshes the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

- **Stop**
  
  Stops the hierarchy/dependencies computing.

- **Show Hierarchy**
  
  Allows you to choose a resource to compute the hierarchy structure.

- **Show Dependencies**
  
  Allows you to choose a resource to compute the dependencies structure.

- **Configure dependencies search scope**
  
  Allows you to configure a scope to compute the dependencies structure. There is also an option for automatically using the defined scope for future operations.

- **History**
  
  Provides access to the list of previously computed dependencies. Use the **Clear history** button to remove all items from this list.

The contextual menu for a resource listed in the **Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies** view contains the following actions:

- **Open**
  
  Opens the resource. You can also double-click a resource in the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure to open it.

- **Go to reference**
  
  Opens the source document where the resource is referenced.

- **Copy location**
  
  Copies the location of the resource.

- **Move resource**
  
  Moves the selected resource.

- **Rename resource**
  
  Renames the selected resource.

- **Show Resource Hierarchy**
  
  Shows the hierarchy for the selected resource.

- **Show Resource Dependencies**
  
  Shows the dependencies for the selected resource.

- **Add to Master Files**
Adds the currently selected resource in the **Master Files directory (on page 337)**.

**Expand All**

Expands all the children of the selected resource from the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

**Collapse All**

Collapses all children of the selected resource from the Hierarchy/Dependencies structure.

**Tip:** When a recursive reference is encountered in the Hierarchy view, the reference is marked with a special icon 🗹.

**Note:** The Move resource or Rename resource actions give you the option to update the references to the resource (on page 780).

### Moving/Renaming Schematron Resources

You can move and rename a resource presented in the **Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies** view, using the **Rename resource** and **Move resource** refactoring actions from the contextual menu.

When you select the **Rename** action in the contextual menu of the **Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies** view, the **Rename resource** dialog box is displayed. The following fields are available:

- **New name** - Presents the current name of the edited resource and allows you to modify it.
- **Update references of the renamed resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are renaming. A **Preview** option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting **Rename** to process the operation.

When you select the **Move** action from the contextual menu of the **Resource/Hierarchy Dependencies** view, the **Move resource** dialog box is displayed. The following fields are available:

- **Destination** - Presents the path to the current location of the resource you want to move and gives you the option to introduce a new location.
- **New name** - Presents the current name of the moved resource and gives you the option to change it.
- **Update references of the moved resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are moving, in accordance with the new location and name. A **Preview** option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting **Move** to process the operation.
Highlight Component Occurrences in Schematron Documents

When you position your mouse cursor over a component in a Schematron document, Oxygen XML Developer plugin searches for the component declaration and all its references and highlights them automatically.

Customizable colors are used: one for the component definition and another one for component references. Occurrences are displayed until another component is selected.

To change the default behavior of Highlight Component Occurrences, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Mark Occurrences. You can also trigger a search using the Search > Search Occurrences in File Ctrl + Shift + U (Command + Shift + U on OS X) action from contextual menu. Matches are displayed in separate tabs of the Results view (on page 226).

Searching and Refactoring Operations in Schematron Documents

Search Actions

The following search actions can be applied on pattern, phase, or diagnostic types and are available from the Search submenu in the contextual menu of the current editor:

- **Search References**
  Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope, if any. If a scope is defined, but the current edited resource is not part of the range of resources determined by this, a warning dialog box is displayed and you have the possibility to define another search scope.

- **Search References in**
  Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the file or files that you specify when define a scope in the Search References dialog box.

- **Search Declarations**
  Searches all declarations of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope if any. If a scope is defined, but the current edited resource is not part of the range of resources determined by this, a warning dialog box will be displayed and you have the possibility to define another search scope.

- **Search Declarations in**
  Searches all declarations of the item found at current cursor position in the file or files that you specify when you define a scope for the search operation.

- **Search Occurrences in File**
  Searches all occurrences of the item at the cursor position in the currently edited file.
Refactoring Actions

The following refactoring actions can be applied on pattern, phase, or diagnostic types and are available from the Refactoring submenu in the contextual menu of the current editor:

Rename Component

Allows you to rename the current component (in-place). The component and all its references in the document are highlighted with a thin border and the changes you make to the component at the cursor position are updated in real time to all occurrences of the component. To exit the in-place editing, press the Esc or Enter key on your keyboard.

Rename Component in

Opens a dialog box that allows you to rename the selected component by specifying the new component name and the files to be affected by the modification. If you click the Preview button, you can view the files to be affected by the action.

Figure 333. Rename Identity Constraint Dialog Box

Searching and Refactoring Operations Scope in Schematron Documents

The scope is a collection of documents that define the context of a search and refactor operation. To control it you can use the Change scope operation, available in the Quick Fix action set or on the Resource Hierarchy/Dependency View toolbar. You can restrict the scope to the current project or to one or multiple working sets (on page 1627). The Use only Master Files, if enabled checkbox allows you to restrict the scope of the search and refactor operations to the resources from the Master Files directory. Click read more for details about the Master Files support (on page 337).
The scope you define is applied to all future search and refactor operations until you modify it. Contextual menu actions allow you to add or delete files, folders, and other resources to the working set (on page 1627) structure.

Quick Assist Support in Schematron Documents

The Quick Assist support (on page 1625) improves the development work flow, offering fast access to the most commonly used actions when you edit schema documents.

The Quick Assist feature (on page 1625) is activated automatically when the cursor is positioned over the name of a component. It is accessible via a yellow bulb icon (♀) placed at the current line in the stripe on the left side of the editor. Also, you can invoke the quick assist menu by using the Ctrl + 1 (Meta 1 on Mac OS X) keyboard shortcuts.

The Quick Assist support offers direct access to the following actions:

- Rename Component in
  Renames the component and all its dependencies.

- Search Declarations
Searches the declaration of the component in a predefined scope. It is available only when the context represents a component name reference.

- **Search References**
  Searches all references of the component in a predefined scope.

- **Component Dependencies**
  Searches the component dependencies in a predefined scope.

- **Change Scope**
  Configures the scope that will be used for future search or refactor operations.

- **Rename Component**
  Allows you to rename the current component in-place.

- **Search Occurrences**
  Searches all occurrences of the component within the current file.

### Schematron Unit Test (XSpec)

XSpec is a behavior driven development (BDD) framework for XSLT, XQuery, and Schematron. XSpec consists of syntax for describing the behavior of your XSLT, XQuery, or Schematron code, and some code that enables you to test your code against those descriptions.

#### Creating a Schematron Unit Test

To create a Schematron Unit Test, go to **File > New > Schematron Unit Test**. This is simple document template to help you get started.

#### Running a Schematron Unit Test

To run a Unit Test, open the XSpec file in an editor and click **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** on the main toolbar. This will run the built-in **Run XSpec Test** transformation scenario that is defined in the XSpec framework (on page 1622).

#### Testing a Stylesheet

An XSpec file contains one or more test scenarios.

**Example**

Suppose you have this Schematron rule that says sections should have a title:
The XSpec test could look like this:

```xml
<x:description xmlns:x="http://www.jenitennison.com/xslt/xspec" schematron="demo-01.sch">
  <x:scenario label="section should have a title">
    <x:context>
      <article>
        <section>
          <title>Introduction</title>
          <p>This is an example.</p>
        </section>
        <section>
          <p>This is an example.</p>
        </section>
      </article>
    </x:context>
    <x:expect-not-assert id="a002" location="/article[1]/section[1]"/>
    <x:expect-assert id="a002" location="/article[1]/section[2]"/>
  </x:scenario>
</x:description>
```

The `sch:assert` with the `id="a002"` is not expected to be triggered on the first section since it includes a title. This requirement is expressed with the `x:expect-not-assert` element.

Since the second section does not have a title, you would expect the Schematron rule to be triggered and this requirement is expressed with the `x:expect-assert` element.

For more details about how to write Schematron tests and various samples, see [https://github.com/xspec/xspec/wiki/Writing-Scenarios-for-Schematron#writing-tests](https://github.com/xspec/xspec/wiki/Writing-Scenarios-for-Schematron#writing-tests).
Adding a Catalog to an XSpec Transformation

If your Schematron needs a catalog, you can add one to the XSpec transformation by doing one of the following:

- If you are using a project (on page 327) in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, create a catalog.xml file in the project directory. This catalog will then be loaded automatically.
- Edit (on page 972) the Run XSpec Test transformation scenario, go to the Parameters tab (on page 936), and set the value of the catalog parameter to the location of your catalog file.

Editing Schematron Quick Fixes

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for editing the Schematron Quick Fixes (on page 449). You can define a library of Quick Fixes by editing them directly in the current Schematron file or in a separate file. Oxygen XML Developer plugin assists you in editing Schematron Quick Fixes with schema-based content completion, syntax highlighting, and validation as you type.

For information about applying and detecting the Schematron schemas that include SQF, see Associating a Schema to XML Documents (on page 449).

Related Information:

- Oxygen XML Blog: Schematron Checks to Help Technical Writing

Schematron Quick Fixes (SQF)

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for Schematron Quick Fixes (on page 1626) (SQF). They help you resolve issues that appear in XML documents that are validated against Schematron schemas by offering you solution proposals. The Schematron Quick Fixes are an extension of the Schematron language and they allow you to define fixes for Schematron validation messages. Specifically, they are associated with assert or report messages.

A typical use case is using Schematron Quick Fixes to assist content authors with common editing tasks. For example, you can use Schematron rules to automatically report certain validation warnings (or errors) when performing regular editing tasks, such as inserting specific elements or changing IDs to match specific naming conventions. For more details and examples, see the following blog post: http://blog.oxygenxml.com/2015/05/schematron-checks-to-help-technical.html.
Displaying the Schematron Quick Fix Proposals

The defined Schematron Quick Fixes are displayed on validation errors in Text mode.

Figure 336. Example of a Schematron Quick Fix

Related Information:

- Editing Schematron Quick Fixes (on page 786)
- Schematron Quick Fix Specifications
- Presenting Schematron Validation Issues (on page 770)

Defining Schematron Quick Fixes

You can define and customize Schematron Quick Fixes (on page 1626) directly in the current Schematron file or in a separate Schematron file. The Schematron Quick Fixes are an extension of the Schematron language and they allow you to define fixes for Schematron error messages. You can refer the Quick Fixes from the assert or report elements in the values of the sqf:fix attributes.

Defining a Schematron Quick Fix

The basics of a Schematron Quick Fix is defined by an ID, name, description, and the operations to be executed.

- **ID** - Defined by the id attribute from the fix element and must be unique in the current context. It is used to refer the Quick Fix from a report or assert element.
- **Name** - The name of the Quick Fix is defined by the title element.
- **Description** - Defined by the text in the paragraphs (p) of the description element.
- **Operations** - The following basic types of operations (elements) (on page 789) are supported:
  - <sqf:add> Element - To add a new node or fragment in the document.
  - <sqf:delete> Element - To remove a node from the document.
  - <sqf:replace> Element - To replace a node with another node or fragment.
  - <sqf:stringReplace> Element - To replace text content with other text or a fragment.
Figure 337. Schematron Quick Fix Components

The assertion message that generates the *Quick Fix* is added as the *description* of the problem to be fixed. The *title* is presented as the name of the *Quick Fix*. The content of the paragraphs (*p*) within the *description* element are presented in the tooltip message when the *Quick Fix* is selected.

Additional Elements Supported in the Schematron Quick Fixes

```
<sqf:user-entry>
  This element defines a value that must be set manually by the user. For more information, see User Entry SQF Operation (on page 793).
</sqf:user-entry>

<sqf:call-fix>
  This element calls another *Quick Fix* within a *Quick Fix*. The called *Quick Fix* must be defined globally or in the same Schematron rule as the calling *Quick Fix*. A calling *Quick Fix* adopts the activity elements of the called *Quick Fix* and should not include other activity elements. You can also specify which parameters are sent by using the `<sqf:with-param>` child element.
</sqf:call-fix>

<sqf:group>
  Allows you to group multiple *Quick Fixes* and refer them from an *assert* or *report* element.
</sqf:group>

<sqf:fixes>
  Is defined globally and contains global fixes and groups of fixes.
</sqf:fixes>

<sqf:copy-of>
  Used to copy the selected nodes that are specified by the *select* attribute. The element with its attribute is treated as an *xsl:copy-of* with a *select* attribute, as defined in the XSLT specification.
</sqf:copy-of>

<sqf:param>
```
Defines a parameter for a Quick Fix. If the parameter is defined as abstract then the type and default value should not be specified and the fix can be called from an abstract pattern that defines this parameter.

Other SQF Notes

Note: The sqf:default-fix attribute is ignored in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

For more details on editing Schematron Quick Fixes, go to: Schematron Quick Fix Specifications

Basic Schematron Quick Fix Operations

There are four basic operations that can be executed in a Schematron Quick Fix (on page 1626): Add, Delete, Replace, and String Replace.

Add

The <sqf:add> element allows you to add a node to the instance. An anchor node is required to select the position for the new node. The anchor node can be selected by the match attribute. Otherwise, it is selected by the context attribute of the rule.

The target attribute defines the name of the node to be added. It is required if the value of the node-type attribute is set to anything other than "comment".

The <sqf:add> element has a position attribute and it determines the position relative to the anchor node. The new node could be specified as the first child of the anchor node, the last child of the anchor node, before the anchor node, or after the anchor node (first-child is the default value). If you want to add an attribute to the anchor node, do not use the position attribute.

Note: If you insert an element and its content is empty, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will insert the required element content.

An Example of the <sqf:add> Element:

```xml
<schema xmlns="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"
    xmlns:sqf="http://www.schematron-quickfix.com/validator/process"
    queryBinding="xslt2">
    <pattern>
        <rule context="head">
            <assert test="title" sqf:fix="addTitle">title element missing.</assert>
            <sqf:fix id="addTitle">
                <sqf:description>
```
Specific Add Operations:

- **Insert Element** - To insert an element, use the `<sqf:add>` element, set the value of the `node-type` to "element", and specify the element *QName (on page 1625)* with the `target` attribute. If the element has a prefix, it must be defined in the Schematron using a namespace declaration (`<ns uri="namespace" prefix="prefix"/>`).

- **Insert Attribute** - To insert an attribute, use the `<sqf:add>` element, set the value of the `node-type` to "attribute", and specify the attribute *QName (on page 1625)* with the `target` attribute. If the attribute has a prefix, it must be defined in the Schematron using a namespace declaration (`<ns uri="namespace" prefix="prefix"/>`).

- **Insert Fragment** - If the `node-type` is not specified, the `<sqf:add>` element will insert an XML fragment. The XML fragment must be well formed. You can specify the fragment in the `add` element or by using the `select` attribute.

- **Insert Comment** - To insert a comment, use the `<sqf:add>` element and set the value of the `node-type` to "comment".

- **Insert Processing Instruction** - To insert a processing instruction, use the `<sqf:add>` element, set the value of the `node-type` to "pi" or "processing-instruction", and specify the name of the processing instruction in the `target` attribute.

**Delete**

The `<sqf:delete>` element allows you to remove any type of node (such as elements, attributes, text, comments, or processing instructions). To specify nodes for deletion the `<sqf:delete>` element can include a `match` attribute that is an XPath expression (the default value is `.`). If the `match` attribute is not included, it deletes the context node of the Schematron rule.

**An Example of the `<sqf:delete>` Element:**

```
<schema xmlns="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron" queryBinding="xslt2"
        xmlns:sqf="http://www.schematron-quickfix.com/validator/process">
```
Replace

The `<sqf:replace>` element allows you to replace nodes. Similar to the `<sqf:delete>` element, it can include a `match` attribute. Otherwise, it replaces the context node of the rule. The `<sqf:replace>` element has three tasks. It identifies the nodes to be replaced, defines the replacing nodes, and defines their content.

An Example of the `<sqf:replace>` Element:

```
<schema xmlns="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"
          xmlns:sqf="http://www.schematron-quickfix.com/validator/process"
          queryBinding="xslt2">
  <pattern>
    <rule context="title">
      <report test="exists(ph)" sqf:fix="resolvePh" role="warn">
        ph element is not allowed in title.</report>
      <sqf:fix id="resolvePh">
        <sqf:description>
          <sqf:title>Change the ph element into text</sqf:title>
        </sqf:description>
        <sqf:replace match="ph">
          <value-of select="."/>
        </sqf:replace>
      </sqf:fix>
    </rule>
  </pattern>
</schema>
```

Other Attributes for Replace Operations:
• **node-type** - Determines the type of the replacing node. The permitted values include:
  ◦ **keep** - Keeps the node type of the node to be replaced.
  ◦ **element** - Replaces the node with an element.
  ◦ **attribute** - Replaces the node with an attribute.
  ◦ **pi** - Replaces the node with a processing instruction.
  ◦ **comment** - Replaces the node with a comment.

• **target** - By using a *QName* (on page 1625) it gives the replacing node a name. This is necessary when the value of the **node-type** attribute is anything other than "comment".

• **select** - Allows you to choose the content of the replacing nodes. You can use XPath expressions with the **select** attribute. If the **select** attribute is not specified then the content of the `<sqf:replace>` element is used instead.

**String Replace**

The `<sqf:stringReplace>` element is different from the others. It can be used to find a sub-string of text content and replace it with nodes or other strings.

**Attributes for the String Replace Operation:**

• **match** - Allows you to select text nodes that contain the sub-strings you want to replace.

• **select** - Allows you to select the replacing fragment, in case you do not want to set it in the content of the `stringReplace` element.

• **regex** - Matches the sub-strings using a regular expression.

**Note:** Consider the following information about using regular expressions in the `stringReplace` element:

◦ The regular expressions from this operation are compiled as Java regular expressions. For more information, see [https://docs.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/api/java/util/regex/Pattern.html](https://docs.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/api/java/util/regex/Pattern.html).

◦ The **j flag** allows you to use the standard Java regular expression engine, which allows native Java regular expression syntax. This allows, for example, the use of `\b` in a regular expression to match word boundaries. For more information, see [http://www.saxonica.com/html/documentation/functions/fn/matches.html](http://www.saxonica.com/html/documentation/functions/fn/matches.html).

◦ Regular expressions in the `<sqf:stringReplace>` element always have the *dot matches all* flag set to "true". Therefore, the line terminator will also be matched by the regular expression.
• **flags** - Specifies flags to control the interpretation of the regular expression (given in the `regex` attribute).

⚠️ **Attention:** The context of the content within the `<sqf:stringReplace>` element is set to the whole text node, rather than the current sub-string.

### An Example of the `<sqf:stringReplace>` Element:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<sch:schema xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"
    xmlns:sqf="http://www.schematron-quickfix.com/validator/process"
    queryBinding="xslt2">
    <sch:pattern>
        <sch:rule context="text()">
            <sch:report test="matches(., 'Oxygen', 'i')">
                sqf:fix="changeWord">The Oxygent word is not allowed</sch:report>
                <sqf:fix id="changeWord">
                    <sqf:description>
                        <sqf:title>Replace word with product</sqf:title>
                    </sqf:description>
                    <sqf:stringReplace regex="Oxygen" flags="i">
                        <ph keyref="product"/>
                    </sqf:stringReplace>
                </sqf:fix>
            </sch:report>
        </sch:rule>
    </sch:pattern>
</sch:schema>
```

**Related Information:**

- **User Entry SQF Operation (on page 793)**
- **Restricting Quick Fix Operations (on page 794)**

**User Entry SQF Operation**

The `<sqf:user-entry>` element defines a value that must be set manually by the user. If multiple `user-entry` elements are defined, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will display a dialog box for each one, in which the user can specify values. Also, the `<user-entry>` element can be used as an XPath variable where the XPath variable is the name of the `user-entry`. Note that the `default` attribute
defines a default value for the operation by using an XPath expression (as in the example below) and its value will be presented in the user entry dialog box.

**An Example of the `<sqf:user-entry>` Element:**

```xml
<sqf:fix id="editTitle">
  <sqf:description>
    <sqf:title>Edit the journal title</sqf:title>
  </sqf:description>
  <sqf:user-entry name="newTitle" default="@title">
    <sqf:description>
      <sqf:title>Edit the title:</sqf:title>
    </sqf:description>
  </sqf:user-entry>
  <sqf:replace match="@title" target="title" node-type="keep" select="$newTitle"/>
</sqf:fix>
```

Related Information:

- [Basic Schematron Quick Fix Operations (on page 789)](#)

**Restricting Quick Fix Operations**

To restrict a [Quick Fix (on page 1626)](#) or a specific operation to only be available if certain conditions are met, the `use-when` attribute can be included in the `<sqf:fix>` element or any of the SQF operation elements. The condition of the `use-when` attribute is an XPath expression and the fix or operation will be performed only if the condition is satisfied. In the following example, the `use-when` condition is applied to the `<sqf:fix>` element:

```xml
<sqf:fix id="last" use-when="$colWidthSummarized - 100 lt $lastWidth" role="replace">
  <sqf:description>
    <sqf:title>Subtract excessive width from the last element.</sqf:title>
  </sqf:description>
  <let name="delta" value="$colWidthSummarized - 100"/>
  <sqf:add match="html:col[last()]" target="width" node-type="attribute">
    <let name="newWidth" value="number(substring-before(@width,'%')) - $delta"/>
    <value-of select="concat($newWidth,'%")"/>
  </sqf:add>
</sqf:fix>
```
Formatting/Indenting Content Inserted by SQF Operations

Content that is inserted by the **Add**, **Replace**, or **String Replace** Schematron Quick Fix (**Quick Fix** (on page 1626)) operations is automatically indented unless you set the value of the **xml:space** attribute to **preserve** on the operation element. There are several methods available to format the content that is inserted:

- **xsl:text** - You can use an **xsl:text** element to format the inserted content and keep the automatic indentation, as in the following example:

  ```xml
  <sqf:add position="last-child">
    <row><xsl:text>
      <entry>First column</entry><xsl:text>
      <entry>Second column</entry><xsl:text>
    </row><xsl:text>
  </sqf:add>
  ```

- **xml:space** - Use the **xml:space** attribute and set its value to **preserve** to format the content and specify the spacing between elements, as in the following example:

  ```xml
  <sqf:add node-type="element" target="codeblock" xml:space="preserve">
    /* a long sample program */
    Do forever
    Say "Hello, World"
  End</sqf:add>
  ```
Executing Schematron Quick Fixes in Other Documents

You can apply Schematron Quick Fixes (on page 1626) over nodes from referenced documents (using XInclude or external entities), and you can access them as nodes in your current document.

Also, you can apply the Quick Fixes over other documents using the $doc() function in the value of the match attribute. For example, you can add a new key in the keylist.xml file using the following operation:

```xml
<sqf:add match="doc('keylist.xml')/KeyList" target="Key"
node-type="element" select="Key2"/>
```

Generate Multiple Similar Quick Fixes

You can generate the same Schematron Quick Fix (on page 1626) for multiple matches. To do this, you can add the use-for-each attribute inside the sqf:fix element and for each match of the XPath expression in the value of the use-for-each attribute, a Quick Fix will be presented to the user.

The XPath expression does not change the context of the Quick Fix. If you want to access the current match from the XPath expression, you can use the $sqf:current variable.

**Example:**

Suppose you want to restrict the user from entering more than 4 list items in a list. The following example presents an error on any list that has more than 4 list items and offers a Quick Fix with multiple proposals where the user would specify which list item to remove.

```xml
<sch:rule context="ul">
  <sch:report test="count(li) gt 4" sqf:fix="removeAnyItem">
    The list cannot contain more than 4 entries.
  </sch:report>
  <sqf:fix id="removeAnyItem" use-for-each="1 to count(li)"/>
    <sqf:description>
      <sqf:title>Remove item #<sch:value-of select="$sqf:current"/></sqf:title>
    </sqf:description>
    <sqf:delete match="li[$sqf:current]"/>
  </sqf:fix>
</sch:rule>
```

Localizing SQF Messages

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for presenting Schematron Quick Fix messages in multiple languages. The language used for the SQF messages is the language specified in the Message Language option in the Schematron preferences page (on page 138). If you want to
provide an alternative message for a specific language, you can reference IDs or key values for the specific alternate text phrase. In Oxygen XML Developer plugin, the alternate text phrase is defined in a `sch:diagnostic` element and it can be used in conjunction with `sch:assert` or `sch:report` elements.

**Example:**

The following example presents a quick fix with a different message depending on whether the user's language is English or German.

```xml
<sch:rule context="dog">
    <sch:assert test="bone" diagnostics="d_en d_de" sqf:fix="addBone">
        A dog should have a bone. </sch:assert>

    <sqf:fix id="addBone">
        <sqf:description>
            <sqf:title ref="fix_en fix_de" xml:lang="en">Add a bone</sqf:title>
            <sqf:p ref="fix_desc_en fix_desc_de" xml:lang="en">Add bone element as child</sqf:p>
        </sqf:description>
    </sqf:fix>
</sch:rule>
```

```xml
<sch:diagnostics xml:lang="en">
    <sch:diagnostic id="d_en"> A dog should have a bone. </sch:diagnostic>
    <sch:diagnostic id="fix_en"> Add a bone </sch:diagnostic>
    <sch:diagnostic id="fix_desc_en">Add a bone element as child</sch:diagnostic>
</sch:diagnostics>
```

```xml
<sch:diagnostics xml:lang="de">
    <sch:diagnostic id="d_de"> Ein Hund sollte ein Bein haben. </sch:diagnostic>
    <sch:diagnostic id="fix_de"> Fügen Sie einen Knochen hinzu </sch:diagnostic>
    <sch:diagnostic id="fix_desc_de">Fügen Sie ein Knochenelement als untergeordnetes Element hinzu</sch:diagnostic>
</sch:diagnostics>
```

**Integrating SQF in a Framework and Sharing Them**

You can use Schematron Quick Fixes *(on page 1626)* to assist your content authors by imposing rules for an entire framework *(on page 1622)* (document type) and offering fixes when a rule violation is detected.
For example, if you are using DITA, you may want your contributors to avoid inserting a figure (\texttt{fig} element) inside a paragraph (\texttt{p} element) that contains other content since it may result in undesirable placement or spacing in the output. The Schematron rule and its Quick Fix for this particular use-case could look like this:

```xml
<schema xmlns="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"
   xmlns:sqf="http://www.schematron-quickfix.com/validator/process"
   queryBinding="xslt2">
  <pattern id="check.figure.location">
    <rule context="p/fig">
      <report test="true()" role="warn" sqf:fix="moveAfter">
        A figure inside a paragraph doesn't transform well into PDF. </report>
      <sqf:fix id="moveAfter">
        <sqf:title>Move after the paragraph. </sqf:title>
        <sqf:description>
          Move after the paragraph. </sqf:description>
          <let name="figToMove" value="."/>
          <sqf:add match="parent::p" select="$figToMove" position="after"/>
          <sqf:delete match="."/>
      </sqf:fix>
    </rule>
  </pattern>
</schema>
```

The result of this example would be that the user will see a warning if they insert a \texttt{fig} element inside a \texttt{p} element and they are presented with the option of selecting the Quick Fix that would move the figure outside the paragraph.

**How to Integrate SQF in a Framework**

To integrate a Schematron Quick Fix in a framework (on page 1622), follow these steps:

1. Create a folder structure for an extended framework and save it somewhere on disk where you have full write access (for example, custom\_frameworks/dita-extension).
2. In that new folder structure, create another folder that will contain all of your custom Schematron files (for example, custom\_frameworks/dita-extension/rules).
3. Define the Schematron Quick Fix for a rule (on page 787) in an existing or new Schematron file and save it in the folder you created in step 2.
4. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Document Type Association > Locations (on page 57). In this preferences page, add the path to your custom\_frameworks folder in the Additional frameworks directories list, then click OK or Apply to save your changes.
5. Go to the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 55)* and select a *framework* configuration (for example, **DITA**) and use the **Extend** button to create an extension for it.

6. Give the extension an appropriate name (for example, **DITA - Custom**), select **External** for the **Storage** option, and specify an appropriate path to your framework configuration file (for example, `path/to/.../custom_frameworks/dita-extension/dita-extension.framework`).

7. Make whatever changes you desire to the extension, then go to the **Validation** tab, edit the default validation scenario (select the scenario and click the **Edit** button), and add an extra validation unit to it (one that uses your custom Schematron file that includes the SQF).

8. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and then **OK** or **Apply** to save the changes to the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 55)*.

9. Add a reference to the Schematron file that includes the SQF in your *framework* by following the procedure in **Associating a Schema in Validation Scenarios Defined in the Document Type** *(on page 455)*.

10. Open a document in your *framework* and test the new rule and **Quick Fix**.

11. You can continue to refine the Schematron and develop additional rules as needed.

### Sharing Schematron Quick Fixes

To share Schematron Quick Fixes with other members of your team, you simply need to share the framework where you integrated the SQF.

**Related Information:**

- Defining Schematron Quick Fixes *(on page 787)*
- Basic Schematron Quick Fix Operations *(on page 789)*

**Associating a Schema in Validation Scenarios Defined in the Document Type** *(on page 455)*

### Validating Schematron Quick Fixes

By default, Schematron **Quick Fixes** *(on page 1626)* are validated as you edit them within the Schematron file or while editing them in a separate file. To change this, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 42)*, go to Editor > Document Checking, and deselect the **Enable automatic validation** option *(on page 94).*
To validate Schematron Quick Fixes manually, select the Validate action from the Validation toolbar drop-down menu or the XML menu. The validation problems are highlighted directly in the editor, making it easy to locate and fix any issues.

Related Information:

- Validating XML Documents Against a Schema (on page 422)
- Validation Scenario (on page 432)
- Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode (on page 229)

Content Completion in SQF

Oxygen XML Developer plugin helps you edit Schematron Quick Fixes (on page 1626) embedded in a Schematron document by offering proposals that are valid at the cursor position in a Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620). It can be manually activated with the Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X) shortcut.

When you edit the value of an attribute that references a Quick Fix ID, the ids are collected from the entire definition scope. For example, if the editing context is assert/@sqf:fix, the Content Completion Assistant proposes all fixes defined locally and globally.

If the editing context is an attribute value that is an XPath expression (such as sqf:add/@match or replace/@select), the Content Completion Assistant offers the names of XPath functions, the XPath axes, and user-defined variables and parameters.

The Content Completion Assistant displays XSLT 1.0 functions (and optionally XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 functions) in the attributes path, select, context, subject, and test, depending on the Schematron options (on page 137) that are set in Preferences pages. If the Saxon 6.5.5 namespace (xmlns:saxon="http://icl.com/saxon") or the Saxon 9.8.0.12 namespace is declared in the Schematron schema (xmlns:saxon="http://saxon.sf.net/"), the content completion also displays the XSLT Saxon extension functions.

Highlight Quick Fix Occurrences in SQF

When you position your mouse cursor over a Quick Fix (on page 1626) ID in a Schematron document, Oxygen XML Developer plugin searches for the Quick Fix declaration and all its references and highlights them automatically.
Customizable colors are used: one for the Quick Fix definition and another one for its references. Occurrences are displayed until another Quick Fix is selected.

To change the default behavior of Highlight Component Occurrences, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Mark Occurrences. You can also trigger a search using the Search > Search Occurrences in File (Ctrl + Shift + U (Command + Shift + U on OS X)) action from contextual menu. Matches are displayed in separate tabs of the Results view (on page 226).

Searching and Refactoring Operations in SQF

Search Actions

The following search actions can be applied on Quick Fix (on page 1626) IDs and are available from the Search submenu in the contextual menu of the current editor:

- **Search References**
  Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope, if any. If a scope is defined, but the current edited resource is not part of the range of resources determined by this, a warning dialog box is displayed and you have the possibility to define another search scope.

- **Search References in**
  Searches all references of the item found at current cursor position in the file or files that you specify when define a scope in the Search References dialog box.

- **Search Declarations**
  Searches all declarations of the item found at current cursor position in the defined scope if any. If a scope is defined, but the current edited resource is not part of the range of resources determined by this, a warning dialog box will be displayed and you have the possibility to define another search scope.

- **Search Declarations in**
  Searches all declarations of the item found at current cursor position in the file or files that you specify when you define a scope for the search operation.

- **Search Occurrences in File**
  Searches all occurrences of the item at the cursor position in the currently edited file.

Refactoring Actions

The following refactoring actions can be applied on Quick Fix IDs and are available from the Refactoring submenu in the contextual menu of the current editor:
**Rename Component**

Allows you to rename the current component (in-place). The component and all its references in the document are highlighted with a thin border and the changes you make to the component at the cursor position are updated in real time to all occurrences of the component. To exit the in-place editing, press the `Esc` or `Enter` key on your keyboard.

**Rename Component in**

Opens a dialog box that allows you to rename the selected component by specifying the new component name and the files to be affected by the modification. If you click the `Preview` button, you can view the files to be affected by the action.

![Rename Identity Constraint Dialog Box](image)

**Embedding Schematron Quick Fixes in Relax NG or XML Schema**

Schematron Quick Fixes (on page 1626) can be embedded into an XML Schema through annotations (using the `appinfo` element), or in a Schematron rule embedded in the RELAX NG Schema. For more information about embedding Schematron in XML Schema or Relax NG, see Embedding Schematron Rules in XML Schema or RELAX NG (on page 774).

Oxygen XML Developer plugin is able to extract and use the embedded Schematron Quick Fixes. To make the embedded Schematron Quick Fixes available, follow these steps:

1. Define a validation against a schema (on page 422).
2. For the Schema type, choose XML Schema or Relax NG.
3. Select the Embedded Schematron rules option.
Example: Embedded Schematron Quick Fix in XML Schema

```xml
<xsd:appinfo>
  <sch:pattern>
    <sch:rule context="...">
      <sch:assert test="..." sqf:fix="fixId">Message.</sch:assert>
      <sqf:fix id="fixId">
        ....
      </sqf:fix>
    </sch:rule>
  </sch:pattern>
</xsd:appinfo>
```

Example: Embedded Schematron Quick Fix in Relax NG

```xml
<grammar
  xmlns="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"
  xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron">
  <sch:pattern>
    <sch:rule context="...">
      <sch:assert test="..." sqf:fix="fixId">Message.</sch:assert>
      <sqf:fix id="fixId">
        ....
      </sqf:fix>
    </sch:rule>
  </sch:pattern>
  <start>
    ..............
  </start>
</grammar>
```

Tip: For more extensive examples, see the samples in the \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/samples/schematron folder.

Related Information:

- Embedding Schematron Rules in XML Schema or RELAX NG (on page 774)
- Defining Schematron Quick Fixes (on page 787)
Editing HTML Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides a special framework for editing HTML files (*html* or *htm* file extensions) with a variety of specialized editing features, including validation, content completion, syntax highlighting, HTML-specific actions, and more.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin also includes a built-in XHTML framework (on page 846) (files with the [http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml](http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml) namespace or with the *xhtml* or *xht* file extension) that has a full set of features (full editing support, document templates, enhanced CSS rendering, specific actions, validation, content completion, transformation scenarios, and more). Oxygen XML Developer plugin also includes support for importing HTML files as an XML document (on page 1491).

Related Information:

- [XHTML Document Type (Framework) (on page 846)](http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml)

HTML Editor

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a specialized HTML editor and various editing features for files that have the *html* or *htm* file extensions. The encoding is detected automatically based on the value specified in the `charset` attribute of the `meta` element.

New Document Template

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a new document template to help you get started creating HTML content. It is available when creating new documents from templates (on page 311) and can be found in the New Document folder or by typing *html* in the search field.

Text Mode Editor

You can edit HTML files in the Text editing mode (on page 365) using all of its useful features (on page 365). It includes content completion (on page 805) based on a special HTML schema, syntax highlighting (on page 806), a specialized Outline view (on page 806) that presents the structure, and folding support (on page 806).

In addition, there is a View in Browser/System Application action available when you right-click anywhere in an HTML document opened in Text mode and it opens the document in your default browser.
Grid Mode

You can use the Grid mode (on page 413) where the document is displayed as a structured grid of nested tables where the text content can be modified without directly interacting with the markup, but the documents must be XML well-formed.

HTML Validation

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in validator used for validating HTML documents. It is based upon the W3C HTML Validator and the HTML documents are validated against the W3C HTML5 specification. The validator in Oxygen XML Developer plugin only supports HTML5 structure. It presents the errors in the editor similar to XML documents (on page 229). It also checks the embedded CSS content and the warnings and errors are presented similar to the CSS editor (on page 697).

By default, HTML documents are validated using the W3C HTML Validator engine, but you can create or edit a validation scenario (on page 432) to specify that they are validated using the default engine that validates against the Relax NG-Compact Schema specified in the HTML framework.

HTML Content Completion Assistant

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes an intelligent Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) that offers proposals for inserting HTML structures that are valid at the current editing location.

The Content Completion Assistant is enabled by default. To disable it, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Editor > Content Completion, and deselect the Enable content completion option (on page 86).

Figure 339. Content Completion Assistant in HTML

Using the Content Completion in HTML

For HTML documents, the Content Completion Assistant uses a built-in schema and the list of proposals depend on the RELAX NG schema specified in the HTML framework. Using the content completion feature is the same as with any other XML document. For more details, see:
Syntax Highlighting in HTML Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports syntax highlighting in Text mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

For HTML documents, it handles attributes without quotes, unclosed or void elements, and it also offers highlighting for embedded CSS or JavaScript content.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for HTML files, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42).
2. Go to Editor > Syntax Highlight (on page 112).
3. Select and expand the XHTML section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.

You can see the effects of your changes in the Preview pane.

Related Information:

• Syntax Highlight Preferences (on page 112)

Folding in HTML

In a large HTML document, elements can be collapsed so that only the needed data remains in focus. The folding features available for XML documents (on page 375) are also available in HTML documents, but it also provides folding for nested elements that are not closed.

HTML Outline View

The Outline view for HTML documents displays the structure of the HTML document you are editing. By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. In addition to the normal features available in the Outline view for XML documents (on page 217), the HTML Outline view also handles void elements, elements that are not closed, or attributes without quotes, and presents the tree structure of the HTML document correctly.

Figure 340. HTML Outline View
Editing Markdown Documents

Markdown was created as a lightweight markup language with plain text formatting syntax designed to provide syntax that is very easy to read and write, and to convert it to HTML and other formats. It is often used by content contributors who want a quick and easy way to write content without having to take their fingers off the keyboard and without having to learn numerous codes or shortcuts, and it can easily be shared interchangeably between virtually any types of contributor and system.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides a built-in Markdown editor that allows you to convert Markdown syntax to HTML or DITA and it includes a preview panel to help you visualize the final output. Aside from the plain text syntax that is common among most Markdown applications, the editor in Oxygen XML Developer plugin also integrates many other powerful features that content authors are accustomed to using for other types of documents. Some of these additional unique features include:

- Additional toolbar and contextual menu actions.
- Automatic validation to help keep the syntax valid.
- Dedicated syntax highlighting to make Markdown documents even easier to read and write.
- Unique features for creating Markdown documents directly in DITA maps (on page 1621) and converting Markdown documents to DITA topics.
- Specialized syntax rules to combine popular syntax features from several specifications.
Markdown Editor

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides an intuitive, dynamic, and easy-to-use Markdown editor for writing and converting Markdown documents. It is a split-screen editor with two panels that are synchronized in real-time. The left side is a simple text editor that is specially designed for writing Markdown syntax. The right side is a WYSIWYG style preview of how changes will look in the output.

Markdown Text Editor Pane (Left Side)

The left pane is a simple text editor that is refined to accept Markdown syntax. At the same time, you still have many of the actions, options, and features that you are used to when editing any other type of document in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

The features of this special editor that are unique for Markdown documents include:

- **Unique Markdown Syntax Rules** - The Markdown editor in Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses an integration of rules (on page 815) that combine rules from common default Markdown syntax along with many of the rules used in the GitHub Flavored Markdown syntax.
- **Syntax Highlighting** - The Oxygen XML Developer plugin syntax highlighting feature is integrated into the Markdown text editor to make it easier to read and write Markdown syntax. You can even customize the colors and styles for the syntax highlighting (on page 813).
- **Automatic Spell Checking** - The Markdown editor supports the Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatic spell checking feature (on page 352) that reports possible misspelled words as you type. You simply need to select the Automatic spell check option in the Spell Check preferences page (on page 109), then click the Select editors button and select Markdown Editor.
- **Helpful Toolbar and Contextual Menu Actions** - A variety of unique actions (on page 810) are available from the toolbar to help you insert proper Markdown syntax. The contextual menu also includes some common editing actions, as well as unique actions to export (convert) Markdown documents to HTML or DITA.

WYSIWYG Preview Pane (Right Side)

The right pane is a WYSIWYG Preview pane that shows a visual representation of how changes made in the left-side text editor will be converted to HTML or DITA output. The changes you make in the text editor are parsed continually and they are immediately visible in the Preview pane. There are two tabs available in the Preview pane, one for visualizing DITA output and one for visualizing HTML output. You can switch between the two tabs at the bottom of the pane.

The Preview pane includes the following unique features:

- **WYSIWYG Visualization** - This pane presents the Markdown syntax from the left-side text editor in a visual WYSIWYG style interface that is automatically synchronized as you type.
• **Export Options** - The DITA tab includes a contextual menu action to export (convert) the current Markdown document to a DITA topic (on page 812). Similarly, the HTML tab includes a contextual menu action to export (convert) it to an XHTML document (on page 812).

• **Automatic Validation** - As you edit Markdown documents, they are validated automatically (on page 813). The conversion engine constantly tries to parse your changes and if a change results in an error that prevents the parser from converting the syntax, an error message will be displayed in the Preview pane or Results view (on page 226) at the bottom of the editor.

• **Print Feature** - The Markdown editor includes a Print action that is available in the contextual menu and it allows you to configure options for printing the current document as you see it in the Preview pane.

• **Specialized DITA Features** - The Markdown editor includes some unique, specialized features to integrate it with the powerful DITA support (on page 814) in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Figure 341. Markdown Editor in Oxygen XML Developer plugin

Related Information:

• [Markdown Editor Syntax Rules and Specifications](on page 815)

• [Actions Available in the Markdown Editor](on page 810)
Creating New Markdown Documents

To create a new Markdown document in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, follow these steps:

1. Click the 📋 New button on the toolbar or select File > New.
2. Select the 📝 Markdown document template.
3. Click Next.
4. Choose the storage path and a file name for the new document.
5. Click the Finish button.

**Result:** A new Markdown document is created and it is opened in the specialized Markdown Editor (on page 807).

Actions Available in the Markdown Editor

Aside from the actions that are available in Oxygen XML Developer plugin for any type of document (such as the actions in the various menus and the common sections of the toolbar), a variety of unique actions are also available in the Markdown editor, from the toolbar and contextual menu.

**Toolbar Actions**

The following default actions are readily available on the toolbar when editing Markdown documents:

- **Header (1st Level)**
  Inserts an *atx-style first level header* (on page 815) at the cursor position.

- **Header (2st Level)**
  Inserts an *atx-style second level header* (on page 815) at the cursor position.

- **Header (3rd Level)**
Inserts an *atx-style third level header* *(on page 815)* at the cursor position.

---

**Horizontal Rule**

Inserts a *horizontal rule* *(on page 816)* at the cursor position.

**Bold (Strong)**

Marks the selected text with *bold* *(on page 817)*.

**Italic (Emphasis)**

Marks the selected text with *italics* *(on page 817)*.

**Strikethrough**

Marks the selected text with a *strikethrough* *(on page 817)*.

**Code Block**

 Inserts (or surrounds selected text in) a *codeblock* *(on page 821)*.

---

**Blockquote**

Inserts a *blockquote* *(on page 820)* at the cursor position.

---

**Insert Link**

Opens the *Insert Link* dialog box that allows you to define a *link* *(on page 817)* to insert at the cursor position.

Figure 342. Insert Link Dialog Box

---

**Insert Image**

Opens the *Insert Image* dialog box that allows you to define an *image* *(on page 819)* to insert at the cursor position. You can type the URL of the image you want to insert or use browsing actions in the *Browse* drop-down menu.

Figure 343. Insert Link Dialog Box
**Insert Ordered List**

Inserts an ordered list *(on page 823)* at the cursor position. Three child list items are also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected content to an ordered list.

**Insert Unordered List**

Inserts an unordered list *(on page 823)* at the cursor position. Three child list items are also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected content to an unordered list.

**Insert Task List**

Inserts a task list *(on page 825)* at the cursor position. Three child list items are also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected content to a task list.

**Insert Table**

Inserts a table *(on page 826)* at the cursor position.

**Contextual Menu Actions**

The following default actions are available in the contextual menu when editing Markdown documents:

- **Cut,**  **Copy,**  **Paste**
  
  Use these actions to execute the typical editing actions on the currently selected content.

- **Show/Hide Preview**
  
  A toggle action that shows or hides the Preview pane.

- **Export as DITA Topic**
  
  Converts the current Markdown document into a DITA topic.

- **Export as HTML**
Converting the current Markdown document into an XHTML document.

Print (Available in the Preview pane)

Opens a page setup dialog box that allows you to configure printing options for the current document.

Related Information:

- Markdown Editor (on page 807)
- Working with Markdown Documents in DITA (on page 814)
- Markdown Editor Syntax Rules and Specifications (on page 815)

Syntax Highlighting in the Markdown Editor

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports syntax highlighting in the Markdown editor to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of XML code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for Markdown documents, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42).
2. Go to Editor > Syntax Highlight (on page 112).
3. Select and expand the Markdown section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.

You can see the effects of your changes in the Preview pane.

Related Information:

- Syntax Highlight Preferences (on page 112)
- Markdown Editor (on page 807)
Automatic Validation in Markdown Documents

Markdown documents are validated automatically as you type. The conversion engine constantly tries to parse your changes to display the results in the Preview pane. If a change results in an error that prevents the parser from converting the syntax, an error message will be displayed in the DITA tab or in the Results view (on page 226) at the bottom of the editor.

The types of errors that will be reported include the following:

- Improper order of headers.
- The syntax in a documents begins with something other than a 1st level header.
- Tags are not closed properly if XHTML markup is used in the document.
- Invalid tag names if XHTML markup is used in the document.
- Markup is not well formed if XHTML markup is used in the document.

Related Information:

- Markdown Editor (on page 807)

Working with Markdown Documents in DITA

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes some unique features that allow you to easily integrate Markdown documents in a DITA project. This is especially helpful for teams that have contributors who are familiar with the Markdown syntax, but they want their output to be generated from DITA projects. The integration between the Markdown editor and DITA includes actions to export or convert Markdown documents to DITA topics and the DITA tab in the Preview pane provides a visualization of how the topic will look after conversion.

Export Markdown as a DITA Topic

The Markdown editor includes an option to quickly convert the current Markdown document into a DITA topic. The Export as DITA Topic action is available in the contextual menu.

The conversion creates a new XML file that is defined as a DITA topic and opens it in the Text editing mode. You can then work with the document as you would with any other DITA topic, although you may need to manually correct some issues where the parser could not properly map Markdown syntax to DITA markup.

Tip: Oxygen XML Developer plugin comes with a sample ditamap project for converting Markdown to DITA. Go to the Navigator view (on page 210), open the sample.xpr project, and navigate to the dita/markdown-dita folder.
Related Information:

- Markdown Editor (on page 807)
- Actions Available in the Markdown Editor (on page 810)
- Markdown Editor Syntax Rules and Specifications (on page 815)
- Automatic Validation in Markdown Documents (on page 813)
- Markdown DITA Syntax Reference

Markdown Editor Syntax Rules and Specifications

The Markdown editor in Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses rules that were integrated from the most common set of default Markdown syntax rules along with many of the GitHub Flavored Markdown rules.

This topic lists the Oxygen XML Developer plugin implementation of the most commonly used syntax rules.

Headers

The Markdown editor supports two styles of headers, Setext and Atx.

- **Setext Style**

  Setext-style headers are underlined using equal signs (for first-level headers) and dashes (for second-level headers). Any number of equal signs or dashes will result in the same output.

  **Example: Setext Style Headers**

  ```
  First-Level Header (H1)
  ================
  
  Second-Level Header (H2)
  ===============
  ```

- **Atx Style**
Atx-style headers use 1-6 hash characters at the start of the line, corresponding to header levels 1-6. Optionally, you may close atx-style headers. This is purely cosmetic and the closing hashes do not need to match the number of hashes used to open the header. It is the number of opening hashes that determines the header level.

**Example: Atx Style Headers**

```markdown
# H1 text #
## H2 text
### H3 text ######
#### H4 text
##### H5 text ####
###### H6 text
```

**Horizontal Rules (for HTML output only)**

You can produce a horizontal rule tag (`<hr />`) by placing three or more hyphens, asterisks, or underscores on a line by themselves (they also need to be preceded and followed by a blank line). Optionally, they can be separated by spaces.

**Example: Horizontal Rules**

```
* * *
*****
--------------------------------------------------
_ _ _ _
```

**Paragraphs and Line Breaks**

A paragraph is simply one or more consecutive lines of text, separated by one or more blank lines. The text at the beginning of a paragraph should not be indented with spaces or tabs. To create a new paragraph, simply insert a blank line in between them.

**Important:** When converting to HTML, if you break a paragraph on multiple lines (without a blank line in between them), it will create a break tag (`<br />`). When converting to DITA, the text is kept in a single paragraph in this case and a blank line is required to break a paragraph. This behavior differs slightly from the default Markdown rules.
Example: Paragraphs

This is a paragraph that contains two lines of text. (In HTML, a break tag is created in between the two lines)

This is a new paragraph.

Styling Text

The Markdown editor supports some syntax rules for styling text (such as bold, italic, or strikethrough).

- **Italic (Emphasis)** - Text wrapped with one asterisk or underscore produces an italic (emphasis) tag.
  
  *italic*
  _italic_

- **Bold (Strong)** - Text wrapped with two asterisks or underscores produces a bold (strong) tag.

  **bold**
  __bold__

- **Strikethrough** - In HTML only, text wrapped with two tildes (~~) produces a strikethrough tag.

  ~~strikethrough~~

Tip: You can also combine these styling rules. For example, **BoldText _ItalicText_ BoldText** would produce italicized text within bold text. Also, if you surround an asterisk or underscore with spaces, it will be treated as a literal asterisk or underscore. To produce a literal asterisk or underscore at a position where it would otherwise be used as a styling delimiter, you can escape it with a backslash (for example, \*literal asterisks*).

Links

The Markdown editor supports two types of links, inline and reference. In both cases, it begins with link text that is delimited by [square brackets].

- **Inline Links**

  To create an inline link, use a set of regular parentheses immediately after the closing square bracket for the link text. Inside the parentheses, put the URL where you want the link to point, and optionally a title surrounded in quotes. Also, if you reference a local resource on the same server, you can use relative paths.
Examples: Inline Link

With a title:

Text with [example link text](http://www.example.com/path "Title") inline link and title.

Without a title:

Text with [example link text](http://www.example.com/path) inline link without a title.

Relative path:

Text with [example link text](/relative_path/) inline link with relative path.

• Reference Links

Reference-type links use a second set of square brackets that include a label (link identifier) to identify the link (it may consist of letters, numbers, spaces, and punctuation and it is not case-sensitive). You can optionally use a space to separate the sets of brackets. The labels (link identifiers) are only used for creating the links and do not appear in the output.

Text with [link text1][id 1] a reference-type link and [link text2][id_2] another one.

Then, somewhere in the document, you need to define your link label on a line by itself. The link identifier must be within square brackets followed by a colon, then after one or more spaces the URL for the link. Optionally this can be followed by a title enclosed in single quotes, double quotes, or parentheses. Also, the link may optionally be enclosed in angle brackets (< >).

[id 1]: http://example1.com/ "Optional Title"
[id_2]: <http://example2.com/> "Optional Title2"

Other notes about Reference Links:

• You can put the title on a second line and use extra spaces or tabs for padding. This is useful for aesthetics when the URL is long.

[id]: http://example.com/long/path/to/resource/here
     "Optional Title Here"

• The label (link identifier) can be missing, in which case the link text (in square brackets) is used as the name.

[My Link][]
and then defined as:

[My Link]: http://example.com/

**Automatic Links**

The Markdown editor supports a shortcut style for creating automatic links for URLs and email addresses. You simply surround the URL or email address with angle brackets.

**Note:** These automatic links only work properly in HTML conversions. The *Preview* pane may display them properly in the DITA tab, but the DITA output will not properly recognize the format.

- **URLs**

  By surrounding a URL with angle brackets, you can show the actual text of the URL while also making it clickable in the output.

  `<http://example.com/>`

  For example, in HTML it is converted to:

  `<a href="http://example.com/">http://example.com/</a>`

- **Email Addresses**

  Automatic links for email addresses work similarly, except that Markdown will also perform a bit of randomized decimal and hex entity-encoding to help obscure your address from address-harvesting *spambots*.

  `<address@example.com>`

  In HTML, it is converted to something like:

  `<a href="#x6D;&#x61;&#x74;&#x6F;;&x61;&x64;&x6F;&x72;&x65;&115;&115;&64;&101;&120;&x61;&109;&x70;&x6C;&x2E;&99;&111;&109;">address@example.com</a>`

**Images**

The Markdown editor uses an image syntax that is intended to resemble the syntax for links, allowing for the same two types: *inline* and *reference*. In both cases, the syntax for images begins with an exclamation mark, followed by `alt` attribute text surrounded by square brackets, and then followed by a set of parentheses that contain the URL or path to the image.
• Inline Images

For inline images, use a set of regular parentheses immediately after the closing square bracket for the \texttt{alt} attribute text. Inside the parentheses, put the URL or path of the image, and optionally a title surrounded in quotes.

**Examples: Inline Images**

With a title:

Text with ![Alt text](/path/to/img.jpg "Optional title") inline image and a title.

Without a title:

Text with ![Alt text](/path/to/img.jpg) inline link without a title.

• Reference Images

For reference-type images, use a second set of square brackets that include a label (image identifier) to identify the image (it may consist of letters, numbers, spaces, and punctuation and it is not case-sensitive). You can optionally use a space to separate the sets of brackets. The labels (image identifiers) do not appear in the output.

Text with ![Alt text1][id] a reference-type image.

Then, somewhere in the document, you need to define your image label on a line by itself. The image identifier must be within square brackets followed by a colon, then after one or more spaces the URL or path of the image. Optionally this can be followed by a title enclosed in single quotes, double quotes, or parentheses.

[id]: url/to/image "Optional Title"

**Blockquotes**

The Markdown editor uses email-style greater than characters (\texttt{>}) for blockquotes. You only need to put the \texttt{>} before the first line of a hard-wrapped paragraph, but it looks better (and is clearer) if you put a \texttt{>} before every line.

**Example: Blockquotes**

> This is a blockquote with two paragraphs. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet,
> consectetuer adipiscing elit. Aliquam hendrerit mi posuere lectus.
> Vestibulum enim wisi, viverra nec, fringilla in, laoreet vitae, risus.
> Donec sit amet nisl. Aliquam semper ipsum sit amet velit. Suspendisse
> id sem consectetuer libero luctus adipiscing.

- **Blockquotes** can be nested by adding additional levels of `>` characters.

**Example: Nested Blockquotes**

```markdown
> This is the first level of quoting.
>
> > This is nested blockquote.
>
> Back to the first level.
```

- **Blockquotes** can also contain other Markdown elements (such as headers, lists, and code blocks).

**Example: Blockquotes with Other Markdown Elements**

```markdown
> ## This is a header.
>
> 1. This is the first list item.
> 2. This is the second list item.
>
> Here's some example code:
>
>     return shell_exec("echo $input | $markdown_script")
```

### Quoting Code (Inline and Code Blocks)

The Markdown editor supports quoting code or commands inline within a sentence or in distinct blocks.

- **Inline**

  You can quote or emphasize code within a sentence (inline) with single backticks (`). The text within the backticks will not be formatted.

**Example: Inline Code Emphasis**

```markdown
This is a normal sentence with a `code` in the middle.
```

- **Code Blocks**

  You can format code or text into its own distinct block by inserting a blank line before and after the content and using at least 4 spaces (or 1 tab), or by using opening and closing triple backticks (`···`) on separate lines.
Example: Code Block

This is a normal paragraph:

This is a code block

This is a normal paragraph:

... 

This is a code block

...

One level of indentation is removed from each line of a codeblock and it continues until it reaches a line that is not indented (or until the closing backticks).

Example: Code Block with Indentation

tell application "something"
  beep
end tell

For example, in HTML the result would look like this:

<pre><code>tell application "Foo"
  beep
end tell</code></pre>

You can also add an optional language identifier to enable syntax highlighting in your code blocks. The Oxygen XML Developer plugin Markdown editor supports the following languages: Java, JavaScript, CSS, and Python.

Example: Syntax Highlighting in Code Block

```css
input[type="submit"] { 
  color: white;
  font-weight: bold;
  ...
```
**Inline XHTML (for HTML output only)**

The Markdown editor supports writing inline XHTML. Since Markdown is just a writing format, it requires a conversion for publishing purposes. If you are using the HTML conversion, for any markup that is not covered by Markdown syntax, you can simply use XHTML syntax.

**Example: Inline XHTML**

```
This is a regular paragraph.

<table>
  <tr>
    <td>Col 1</td>
    <td>Col 2</td>
  </tr>
</table>

This is another regular paragraph.
```

**Lists**

The Markdown editor supports ordered and unordered lists. You can also insert blockquotes (on page 820) and code blocks (on page 821) inside list items. List markers typically start at the left margin, but may be indented by up to three spaces.

- **Unordered Lists**

  For unordered lists, you can use asterisks (*), plus signs (+), and hyphens (-) interchangeably.

  * List item 1
  + List item 2
  - List item 3

- **Ordered Lists**

  For ordered lists, use numbers followed by periods. The actual numbers you use have no effect on the output. It simply converts them to list items within an ordered list and the actual number of list items will determine the numbers in the output.

  1. List item 1
  8. List item 2
  5. List item 3

- **Nested Lists**
You can create nested lists by indenting lines by two spaces.

1. Ordered list item 1
   1. Nested ordered list item 1
   2. Nested ordered list item 2
      * 2nd level nested unordered list item 1
      * 2nd level nested unordered list item 2
         * 3rd level nested unordered list item 1
   2. Ordered list item 2

• Paragraphs Inside Lists

If list items are separated by blank lines, Markdown will wrap the items in a paragraph in the output.

* List item 1
* List item 2

For both DITA and HTML output, this would result in:

```html
<ul>
<li><p>List item 1</p></li>
<li><p>List item 2</p></li>
</ul>
```

• Multiple Paragraphs Inside Lists

List items may consist of multiple paragraphs. Each subsequent paragraph in a list item must be indented by either 4 spaces or one tab. Optionally, you can also indent each line of a paragraph to make it look nicer.

1. This is a list item with two paragraphs. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Aliquam hendrerit mi posuere lectus.
   Vestibulum enim wisi, viverra nec, fringilla in, laoreet vitae, risus. Donec sit amet nisl. Aliquam semper ipsum sit amet velit.
2. Suspendisse id sem consectetuer libero luctus adipiscing.

• Blockquotes Inside Lists
To put a *blockquote* within a list item, the blockquote delimiters (>) need to be indented so that it is under the first letter of the text after the list item marker.

```
* A list item with a blockquote:
   > This is a blockquote
   > inside a list item.
```

• **Code Blocks Inside Lists**

To put a code block within a list item, insert an empty line in between the list item and the code block, and the code block needs to be indented twice (with 8 spaces or 2 tabs), or if you are using the triple backticks method, the opening triple backtick needs to be indented with 4 spaces or 1 tab.

```
* A list item with a code block:

   This is a code block inside a list item

   ...

   This is a code block inside a list item using the backticks method
   ...
```

**Task Lists**

You can create task lists by prefacing list items with a hyphen followed by a space followed by square brackets ([- [ ]). To mark a task as complete, use [- [x].

**Example: Task Lists**

```
- [ ] Unfinished task 1
- [x] Finished task 2
```

**Definition Lists**

You can create definition lists by using a colon plus a space for each list item.

**Example: Definition Lists**

```
Term 1
 : Definition A
 : Definition B
```
Tables

You can create tables in the Markdown editor by using pipes (|) and hyphens (-).

• Creating a Table

Pipes are used to separate each column, while hyphens are used to create column headers. The pipes on either end of the table are optional. Cells can vary in width and do not need to be perfectly aligned within columns, but there must be at least three hyphens in each column of the header row.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Header</th>
<th>Second Header</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column 1 Row 1 Cell</td>
<td>Column 2 Row 1 Cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column 1 Row 2 Cell</td>
<td>Column 2 Row 2 Cell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Formatting Rules in Table Cells

You can use formatting rules inside the cells of the table (such as links, inline code blocks, and text styling).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Header</th>
<th>Second Header</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>inline code</code></td>
<td>Content with <strong>bold text</strong> inside cell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Aligning Text in Tables

You can align text to the left, right, or center of a column by including colons (: to the left, right, or on both sides of the hyphens within the header row.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Left-aligned</th>
<th>Center-aligned</th>
<th>Right-aligned</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>:---</td>
<td>:---:</td>
<td>---:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content Cell</td>
<td>Content Cell</td>
<td>Content Cell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Joining Cells (Span a Cell Over Multiple Columns)

You can join cells horizontally (span a cell over multiple columns) by using multiple consecutive pipe characters (|) to the right of the particular cell. The number of consecutive pipes indicate the number of columns the cell will span (| for two, || for three, and so on).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Header</th>
<th>Second Header</th>
<th>Third Header</th>
<th>Fourth Header</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content Cell</td>
<td><em>Cell Span Over 3 Columns</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Emoji**

You can add *emoji* in the Markdown editor by surrounding the EMOJICODE with colons (`:EMOJICODE:`).

**Example: Emoji**

```markdown
:smile:  
:laughing:
```

The resulting emoticons will appear in the output, but they are not displayed in the Preview pane.

For a full list of available emoji codes, see [Emoji Cheat Sheet](#).

**Backslash Escapes**

You can ignore Markdown formatting by using backslash escapes (`\`) to generate literal characters that would otherwise have special meaning in the Markdown syntax. For example, if you want to surround a word with literal asterisks (instead of an italic or emphasis tag), you can use backslashes to escape the asterisks.

```
\"literal asterisks\"
```

The Markdown editor provides backslash escapes for the following characters:

- \ backslash
- ` backtick
- * asterisk
- _ underscore
- () curly braces
- [] square brackets
- () parentheses
- # hash mark
- + plus sign
- - minus sign (hyphen)
- . dot
- ! exclamation mark

**Automatic Escaping for Special Characters**

The Markdown editor includes support for automatically escaping special characters such as angle brackets (`< >`) and ampersands (`&`). If you want to use them as literal characters, you must escape them as entities, as in the table below. The exception to this is in HTML output, if the special
characters for a valid tag (for example, `<b>`), they are treated as literal characters and escaping is not necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Literal Character</th>
<th>Escaping Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;</code></td>
<td><code>&amp;lt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&amp;gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&amp;</code></td>
<td><code>&amp;amp;</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Footnotes**

The Markdown editor in Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports normal and inline footnotes. The following examples show the required syntax.

- **Example: Normal Footnote**

  Here is a footnote reference,[^1]

  [^1]: Here is the footnote.

- **Example: Normal Footnote with Multiple Blocks**

  Here is a footnote reference,[^longnote]

  [^longnote]: Here is the footnote with multiple blocks.

  Subsequent paragraphs are indented with 4 spaces or 1 tab to show that they belong to the previous footnote.

- **Example: Inline Footnote**

  Here is an inline note.^[Inlines notes are easier to write, since you don’t have to pick an identifier and move down to type the note.]

**Related Information:**

- [Default Markdown Syntax](#)
- [GitHub Flavored Markdown Rules](#)
- [Markdown Editor (on page 807)](#)
• Actions Available in the Markdown Editor (on page 810)
9.

Built-in XML Frameworks (Document Types)

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a variety of specialized editors, views, and features that are dynamic according to the type of document that you open or create. Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes fully supported built-in frameworks (on page 1622) for the most popular XML document types (DITA, DocBook, TEI, XHTML, JATS) with a full set of features, as well as support for other document types with more generic features (on page 364).

The built-in frameworks (on page 1622) are defined according to a set of rules and a variety of settings that improve editing capabilities for its particular file type. These settings include:

- A default grammar used for validation and content completion in Text mode.
- Built-in transformation scenarios used for publishing XML documents.
- XML Catalogs (on page 1627) used for mapping resources.
- New document templates to make it easy to create XML documents.

DocBook 4 Document Type (Framework)

DocBook is a very popular set of tags for describing books, articles, and other prose documents, particularly technical documentation. DocBook provides a vast number of semantic element tags, divided into three broad categories: structural, block-level, and inline. DocBook content can then be published in a variety of formats, including HTML, PDF, WebHelp, and EPUB.

File Definition

A file is considered to be a DocBook 4 document when one of the following conditions are true:

- The root element name is book or article.
- The PUBLIC ID of the document contains the string -//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML.

Default Document Templates

There are a variety of default DocBook 4 templates available when creating new documents from templates (on page 311) and they can be found in: Framework Templates > DocBook 4.

The default templates for DocBook 4 documents are located in the [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/docbook/templates/Docbook 4 folder.
Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

The default schema that is used if one is not detected in the DocBook 4 file is `docbookxi.dtd` and it is stored in `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/docbook/4.5/dtd/`.

Default XML Catalog

The default XML Catalog (on page 1627), `catalog.xml`, is stored in `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/docbook/`.

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes numerous built-in DocBook transformation scenarios that allow you to transform DocBook 4 documents to a variety of outputs, such as WebHelp, PDF, HTML, HTML Chunk, XHTML, XHTML Chunk, and EPUB. All of them are listed in the DocBook 4 section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).

For more information, see the DocBook Transformation Scenarios (on page 884) section.

Resources

- DocBook Specifications

Related Information:

- Editing XML Documents in Text Mode (on page 365)

Inserting an Olink in DocBook Documents

The `olink` element is used for linking to resources outside the current DocBook document. The `targetdoc` attribute is used for the document ID that contains the target element and the `targetptr` attribute for the ID of the target element (the value of an `id` or `xml:id` attribute). The combination of those two attributes provides a unique identifier to locate cross references.

For example, a Mail Administrator Guide with the document ID `MailAdminGuide` might contain a chapter about user accounts, like this:

```xml
<chapter id="user_accounts">
<title>Administering User Accounts</title>
```
You can form a cross reference to that chapter by adding an `olink`, as in the following example:

```xml
<olink targetdoc="MailAdminGuide" targetptr="user_accounts">user accounts</olink>
```

You may need to update your

```xml
<olink targetdoc="MailAdminGuide" targetptr="user_accounts">user accounts
</olink>
```

when you get a new machine.

To use an `olink` to create links between documents, follow these steps:

1. Decide which documents are to be included in the domain for cross referencing.
   A unique ID must be assigned to each document that will be referenced with an `olink`. It is usually added as an `id` (or `xml:id` for DocBook5) attribute to the root element of the document.

2. Decide on your output hierarchy.
   For creating links between documents, the relative locations of the output documents must be known. Before going further you must decide the names and locations of the output directories for all the documents from the domain. Each directory will be represented by an element: `<dir name="directory_name">`, in the target database document.

3. Create the target database document.
   Each collection of documents has a master target database document that is used to resolve all `olinks` from that collection. The target database document is an XML file that is created once. It provides a means for pulling in the target data for each document. The database document is static and all the document data is pulled in dynamically.

   **Tip:** Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in new document template called DocBook Targetset Map available in the New from templates wizard (on page 311) that will help you get started.

   **Example:** The following is an example of a target database document. It structures a collection of documents in a `sitemap` element that provides the relative locations of the outputs (HTML in this example). Then it pulls in the individual target data using system entity references to target data files that will be created in the next step.

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE targetset [
  <!ENTITY ugtargets SYSTEM "file:///doc/userguide/target.db">
  <!ENTITY agtargets SYSTEM "file:///doc/adminguide/target.db">
  <!ENTITY reftargets SYSTEM "file:///doc/man/target.db">
]>
<targetset>
```
4. Generate the target data files by executing a DocBook transformation scenario. Before applying the transformation, you need to edit the transformation scenario, go to the Parameters tab, and make sure the value of the collect.xref.targets parameter is set to yes. The default name of a target data file is target.db, but it can be changed by setting an absolute file path in the targets.filename parameter.

Example: An example of a target.db file:

When editing a DocBook XML document in Author mode, the Insert OLink action is available in the Link drop-down menu from the toolbar. This action opens the Insert OLink dialog box that allows you to select the target of an `olink` from the list of all possible targets from a specified target database document (specified in the Targetset URL field). Once a Targetset URL is selected, the structure of the target documents is presented. For each target document (`targetdoc`), its content is displayed, allowing you to easily identify the appropriate `targetptr`. You can also use the search fields to quickly identify a target. If you already know the values for the `targetdoc` and `targetptr` attributes, you can insert them directly in the corresponding fields.

**Example:** In the following image, the target database document is called `target.xml`, `dbadmin` is selected for the target document (`targetdoc`), and `bldinit` is selected as the value for the `targetptr` attribute. Notice that you can also add XREF text into the `olink` by using the `xreftext` field.

Figure 344. Insert OLink Dialog Box
6. Process a DocBook transformation for each document to generate the output.
   a. Edit the transformation scenario and set the value of the `target.database.document` parameter to be the URL of the target database document.
   b. Apply the transformation scenario.

DocBook 5 Document Type (Framework)

DocBook is a very popular set of tags for describing books, articles, and other prose documents, particularly technical documentation. DocBook provides a vast number of semantic element tags, divided into three broad categories: structural, block-level, and inline. DocBook content can then be published in a variety of formats, including HTML, PDF, WebHelp, and EPUB.

File Definition

A file is considered to be a DocBook 5 document when the namespace is `http://docbook.org/ns/docbook`. 
Default Document Templates

There are a variety of default DocBook 5 templates available when creating new documents from templates (on page 311) and they can be found in: Framework Templates > DocBook 5 > DocBook 5.0 and Framework Templates > DocBook 5 > DocBook 5.1.

New document templates for both DocBook 5 documents are located in the 

\[\text{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/}\text{frameworks/docbook/templates/Docbook5.0} \]

folder.

New document templates for both DocBook 5.1 documents are located in the

\[\text{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/}\text{frameworks/docbook/templates/Docbook5.1} \]

folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

The default schema that is used if one is not detected is docbookxi.rng and it is stored in \(\text{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/}\text{frameworks/docbook/5.0/rng/}\) (or for DocBook 5.1 in \(\text{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/}\text{frameworks/docbook/5.1/rng/}\). Other types of schemas for various DocBook versions are also located in various folders inside the \(\text{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/}\text{frameworks/docbook/}\) directory.

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes numerous built-in DocBook transformation scenarios that allow you to transform DocBook 5 documents to a variety of outputs, such as WebHelp, PDF, HTML, HTML Chunk, XHTML, XHTML Chunk, and EPUB. Oxygen XML Developer plugin also includes a DocBook 5.1 transformation scenario for Assembly documents (on page 840). All of them are listed in the DocBook 5 section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).

For more information, see the DocBook Transformation Scenarios (on page 884) section.

Resources

- DocBook 5.0 (and older) Specifications
- DocBook 5.1 Specifications
- DocBook 5.1: The Definitive Guide

Related Information:

- Editing XML Documents in Text Mode (on page 365)
- DocBook 5.1 Assembly (on page 840)
Inserting an Olink in DocBook Documents

The `olink` element is used for linking to resources outside the current DocBook document. The `targetdoc` attribute is used for the document ID that contains the target element and the `targetptr` attribute for the ID of the target element (the value of an `id` or `xml:id` attribute). The combination of those two attributes provides a unique identifier to locate cross references.

For example, a `Mail Administrator Guide` with the document ID `MailAdminGuide` might contain a chapter about user accounts, like this:

```xml
<chapter id="user_accounts">
<title>Administering User Accounts</title>
<para>blah blah</para>
</chapter>
```

You can form a cross reference to that chapter by adding an `olink`, as in the following example:

```xml
<olink targetdoc="MailAdminGuide" targetptr="user_accounts">user accounts</olink>
```

You may need to update your

```
<olink targetdoc="MailAdminGuide" targetptr="user_accounts">user accounts</olink>
```
when you get a new machine.

To use an `olink` to create links between documents, follow these steps:

1. Decide which documents are to be included in the domain for cross referencing.
   A unique ID must be assigned to each document that will be referenced with an `olink`. It is usually added as an `id` (or `xml:id` for DocBook5) attribute to the root element of the document.

2. Decide on your output hierarchy.
   For creating links between documents, the relative locations of the output documents must be known. Before going further you must decide the names and locations of the output directories for all the documents from the domain. Each directory will be represented by an element: `<dir name="directory_name">`, in the target database document.

3. Create the target database document.
   Each collection of documents has a master target database document that is used to resolve all `olinks` from that collection. The target database document is an XML file that is created once. It provides a means for pulling in the target data for each document. The database document is static and all the document data is pulled in dynamically.
Tip: Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in new document template called DocBook Targetset Map available in the New from templates wizard (on page 311) that will help you get started.

Example: The following is an example of a target database document. It structures a collection of documents in a sitemap element that provides the relative locations of the outputs (HTML in this example). Then it pulls in the individual target data using system entity references to target data files that will be created in the next step.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE targetset [
<!ENTITY ugtargets SYSTEM "file:///doc/userguide/target.db">
<!ENTITY agtargets SYSTEM "file:///doc/adminguide/target.db">
<!ENTITY reftargets SYSTEM "file:///doc/man/target.db">
]

<targetset>
  <targetsetinfo>
    Description of this target database document, which is for the examples in olink doc.
  </targetsetinfo>

  <!-- Site map for generating relative paths between documents -->
  <sitemap>
    <dir name="documentation">
      <dir name="guides">
        <dir name="mailuser">
          <document targetdoc="MailUserGuide" baseuri="userguide.html">
            &ugtargets;
          </document>
        </dir>
      </dir>
    </dir>
    <dir name="mailadmin">
      <document targetdoc="MailAdminGuide">
        &agtargets;
      </document>
    </dir>
    <dir name="reference">
      <dir name="mailref">
        <document targetdoc="MailReference">
          &reftargets;
        </document>
      </dir>
    </dir>
  </sitemap>
</targetset>
```
4. Generate the target data files by executing a DocBook transformation scenario.
Before applying the transformation, you need to edit the transformation scenario, go to the Parameters tab, and make sure the value of the `collect.xref.targets` parameter is set to `yes`.
The default name of a target data file is `target.db`, but it can be changed by setting an absolute file path in the `targets.filename` parameter.

**Example:** An example of a `target.db` file:

```xml
<div element="book" href="#MailAdminGuide" number="1" targetptr="user_accounts">
  <ttl>Administering User Accounts</ttl>
  <xreftext>How to administer user accounts</xreftext>
</div>

```xml
<div element="part" href="#d5e4" number="I">
  <ttl>First Part</ttl>
  <xreftext>Part I, "First Part"</xreftext>
</div>

```xml
<div element="chapter" href="#d5e6" number="I">
  <ttl>Chapter Title</ttl>
  <xreftext>Chapter 1, Chapter Title</xreftext>
</div>

```xml
<div element="sect1" href="#src_chapter" number="1" targetptr="src_chapter">
  <ttl>Section1 Title</ttl>
  <xreftext>xreflabel_here</xreftext>
</div>
```

When editing a DocBook XML document in Author mode, the Insert OLink action is available in the Link drop-down menu from the toolbar. This action opens the Insert OLink dialog box that allows you to select the target of an `olink` from the list of all possible targets from a specified target database document (specified in the Targetset URL field). Once a Targetset URL is selected, the structure of the target documents is presented. For each target document (`targetdoc`), its content is displayed, allowing you to easily identify the appropriate `targetptr`. You can also use the search fields to quickly identify a target. If you already know the values
for the `targetdoc` and `targetptr` attributes, you can insert them directly in the corresponding fields.

**Example:** In the following image, the target database document is called `target.xml`, `dbadmin` is selected for the target document (`targetdoc`), and `bldinit` is selected as the value for the `targetptr` attribute. Notice that you can also add XREF text into the `olink` by using the `xreftext` field.

Figure 345. Insert OLink Dialog Box

6. Process a DocBook transformation for each document to generate the output.
   a. Edit the transformation scenario and set the value of the `target.database.document` parameter to be the URL of the target database document.
   b. Apply the transformation scenario.

**DocBook 5.1 Assembly**

The DocBook *Assembly* document type was introduced with DocBook 5.1 and it is used to define the hierarchy and relationships for a collection of resources. It is especially helpful for topic-oriented authoring scenarios since it assembles a set of resources (such as DocBook 5.1 topics (on page 842)) to form a hierarchical structure for a larger publication.

An *Assembly* document usually has four major parts:
• **Resources** - Identifies a collection of resources (such as topics). An *Assembly* may identify one or more collections.

• **Structure** - Identifies an artifact to be assembled. A document in this case is the particular collection of resources (such as topics) that forms the documentation. Within the `structure` element, an `output` element can be used to identify the type of output to be generated and `module` elements can be used to identify the resources to be included. An *Assembly* may identify one or more `structures`.

• **Relationships** - Identifies relationships between resources. These relationships may be manifested in any number of `structures` during assembly. An *Assembly* may identify any number of relationships.

• **Transformations** - Identifies transformations that can be applied during assembly. An *Assembly* may identify any number of transformations.

For detailed information about the DocBook *Assembly* document type, see [DocBook 5.1: The Definitive Guide - DocBook Assemblies](#).

**File Definition**

A file is considered to be an *Assembly* when the root name is `assembly`.

**Default Document Templates**

A default *Assembly* document template is available when creating new documents from templates [(on page 311)](#) and it can be found in: Framework Templates > DocBook 5 > DocBook 5.1.

The default template for DocBook Assembly documents is located in the `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/docbook/templates/Docbook5.1` folder.

**Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion**

The default schema that is used if one is not detected is `docbookxi.rng` and it is stored in `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/docbook/5.1/rng/`.

**Transformation Scenarios**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in transformation scenario that can be applied on an *Assembly* file to generate an *assembled* (merged) DocBook file. The scenario is called *DocBook Assembly* and is found in the DocBook 5 section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box [(on page 976)](#).
DocBook 5.1 Topic

The DocBook Topic document type was introduced with DocBook 5.1 and it is used as a modular unit of documentation. It is similar to the concept of the DITA Topic and can be used as modular resources in conjunction with DocBook 5.1 Assembly (on page 840) documents.


File Definition

A DocBook file is considered to be a Topic when the root name is topic.

Default Document Templates

A default Topic document template is available when creating new documents from templates (on page 311) and it can be found in: Framework Templates > DocBook 5 > DocBook 5.1.

The default template for DocBook Assembly documents is located in the \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/\] frameworks/docbook/templates/Docbook5.1 folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

The default schema that is used if one is not detected is docbookxi.rng and it is stored in \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/\]frameworks/docbook/5.1/rng/.

Transformation Scenarios

Since DocBook Topics are modular resources, they are assembled and transformed in the DocBook Assembly transformation process (on page 841). You can also use any of the built-in DocBook transformation scenarios to transform individual DocBook Topics to a variety of outputs, such as PDF, HTML, EPUB, and more. They are found in the DocBook 5 section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).
Resources

- DocBook 5.1: The Definitive Guide - Topic
- DocBook 5.1 Specifications
- Sample files: \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/samples/docbook/v5/assembly/

Related Information:

- DocBook 5.1 Assembly (on page 840)

DocBook Targetset Document Type (Framework)

DocBook Targetset documents are used to resolve cross references with the DocBook [olink].

File Definition

A file is considered to be a Targetset when the root name is targetset.

Default Document Templates

A default DocBook Targetset Map document template is available when creating new documents from templates (on page 311) and it can be found in: Framework Templates > DocBook Targetset.

The default template for DocBook Targetset documents is located in the \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/docbook/templates/Targetset folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

The default schema, targetdatabase.dtd, for this type of document is stored in \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/docbook/xsl/common/.

Related Information:

- DocBook Specifications
DITA Topics Document Type (Framework)

The Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) is an XML-based architecture for authoring, producing, and delivering technical information. It divides content into small, self-contained topics that you can reuse in various deliverables. The extensibility of DITA permits organizations to define specific information structures while still using standard tools to work with them. DITA content is created as topics, each an individual XML file. Typically, each topic has a defined primary objective and structure, and DITA also includes several specialized topic types (task, concept, reference, glossary entry).

**File Definition**

A file is considered to be a DITA topic document when one of the following conditions are true:

- The root element name is one of the following: concept, task, reference, dita, or topic.
- The PUBLIC ID of the document is a PUBLIC ID for the elements listed above.
- The root element of the file has an attribute named DITAArchVersion for the "http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/" namespace. This enhanced case of matching is only applied when the Enable DTD/XML Schema processing in document type detection option (on page 56) is selected from the Document Type Association preferences page (on page 55).

**Default Document Templates**

There are a variety of default DITA topic templates available when creating new documents from templates (on page 311) and they can be found in various folders inside: Framework Templates > DITA.

The default templates for DITA topic documents are located in the [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/dita/templates/topic folder.

**Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion**

Default schemas that are used if one is not detected in the DITA documents are stored in the various folders inside DITA-OT-DIR/dtd/ or DITA-OT-DIR/schema/.

**Default XML Catalogs**

The default XML Catalogs (on page 1627) for the DITA topic document type are as follows:

- DITA-OT-DIR/catalog-dita.xml
- [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/dita/catalog.xml
- [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/dita/plugin/catalog.xml
Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes built-in transformation scenarios that allow you to transform individual DITA Topics to a XHTML or PDF output. They can be found in the DITA section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).

Resources

- DITA Specifications
- DITA Style Guide Best Practices for Authors
- Oxygen Video Tutorial: DITA Editing

Related Information:

- Editing XML Documents in Text Mode (on page 365)

DITA Map Document Type (Framework)

DITA maps (on page 1621) are documents that collect and organize references to DITA topics to indicate the relationships between the topics. They can be used as a container for topics used to transform a collection of content into a publication and they offer a sequence and structure to the topics. They can also serve as outlines or tables of contents for DITA deliverables and as build manifests for DITA projects. DITA maps allow scalable reuse of content across multiple contexts. Maps can reference topics or other maps, and can contain a variety of content types and metadata.

File Definition

A file is considered to be a DITA map document when one of the following conditions are true:

- The root element name is one of the following: `map`, `bookmark`.
- The public ID of the document is `-//OASIS//DTD DITA Map or -//OASIS//DTD DITA BookMap.`
- The root element of the file has an attribute named `class` that contains the value `map/map` and a `DITAArchVersion` attribute from the `http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/` namespace. This enhanced case of matching is only applied when the Enable DTD/XML Schema processing in document type detection option (on page 56) from the Document Type Association preferences page (on page 55) is selected.
Default Document Templates

There are a variety of default DITA map templates available when creating new documents from templates (on page 311) and they can be found in various folders inside: Framework Templates > DITA Map.

The default templates for DITA map documents are located in the {OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/sita/templates/map folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

Default schemas that are used if one is not detected in the DITA map document are stored in the various folders inside DITA-OT-DIR/dtd/ or DITA-OT-DIR/schema/.

Default XML Catalogs

The default XML Catalogs (on page 1627) for the DITA map document type are as follows:

- {OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/dita/catalog.xml
- DITA-OT-DIR/catalog-dita.xml

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes numerous built-in transformation scenarios that allow you to transform DITA maps to a variety of outputs, such as WebHelp, PDF, ODF, XHTML, EPUB, and CHM. All of them are listed in the DITA Map section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).

For more information, see the DITA Map Transformation Scenarios (on page 859) section.

Resources

- DITA Specifications
- DITA Style Guide Best Practices for Authors
- Oxygen Video Tutorial: DITA Maps Manager

Related Information:

- Editing XML Documents in Text Mode (on page 365)
XHTML Document Type (Framework)

The Extensible HyperText Markup Language (XHTML), is a markup language that has the same depth of expression as HTML, but also conforms to XML syntax.

File Definition

A file is considered to be an XHTML document when the root element name is `html`.

Default Document Templates

There are a variety of default XHTML templates available when creating new documents from templates (on page 311) and they can be found in: Framework Templates > XHTML.

The default templates for XHTML documents are located in the `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/xhtml/templates/` folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

Default schemas that are used if one is not detected in the XHTML file are stored in the following locations:

- XHTML 1.0 - `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/xhtml/dtd/` or `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/xhtml/nvdl/`.
- XHTML 1.1 - `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/xhtml11/dtd/` or `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/xhtml11/schema/`.
- XHTML 5 - `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/xhtml/xhtml5 (epub3)/`.

Default XML Catalogs

The default XML Catalogs (on page 1627) for the XHTML document type are as follows:

- `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/xhtml/dtd/xhtmlcatalog.xml`
- `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/relaxng/catalog.xml`
- `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/nvdl/catalog.xml`
- `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/xhtml11/dtd/xhtmlcatalog.xml`
- `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/xhtml11/schema/xhtmlcatalog.xml`
- `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/xhtml5 (epub3)/catalog-compat.xml`
Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes built-in transformation scenarios that allow you to transform XHTML documents to several types of DITA document types (topic, task, concept, reference). They can be found in the XHTML section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).

Related Information:

- Editing HTML Documents (on page 803)
- Editing XML Documents in Text Mode (on page 365)
- XHTML Specifications

TEI P5 Document Type (Framework)

The TEI (Text Encoding Initiative) document type is an international and interdisciplinary standard that enables libraries, museums, publishers, and individual scholars to represent a variety of literary and linguistic texts for online research, teaching, and preservation.

File Definition

A file is considered to be a TEI P5 document when one of the following conditions are true:

- The document namespace is http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0.
- The public ID of the document is -//TEI P5.

Default Document Templates

There are a variety of default TEI P5 templates available when creating new documents from templates (on page 311) and they can be found in: Framework Templates > TEI P5.

The default templates for TEI P5 documents are located in the [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/tei/templates/TEI P5 folder.
Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

The default schema that is used if one is not detected in the TEI P5 document is `tei_all.rng` and it is stored in `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/custom/schema/relaxng/`.

Default XML Catalogs

The default XML Catalogs (on page 1627) for the TEI P5 document type are as follows:

- `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/schema/dtd/catalog.xml`
- `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/custom/schema/dtd/catalog.xml`
- `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/stylesheet/catalog.xml`

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes built-in transformation scenarios that allow you to transform TEI P5 documents to a variety of outputs, such as PDF, XHTML, EPUB, DOCX, and ODT. They can be found in the TEI P5 section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).

Resources

- TEI: P5 Guidelines

Related Information:

- Editing XML Documents in Text Mode (on page 365)

Customization of TEI Frameworks Using the Compiled Sources

The following procedure describes how to update to the latest stable version of TEI Schema and TEI XSL, already integrated in the TEI framework (on page 1622) for Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

1. Go to `https://code.google.com/p/oxygen-tei/`;
2. Go to Downloads;
3. Download the latest uploaded .zip file;
4. Unpack the .zip file and copy its content in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin frameworks folder.
TEI ODD Document Type (Framework)

The TEI ODD (Text Encoding Initiative - One Document Does it all) document type is a TEI XML-conformant specification format that allows you to create a custom TEI P5 schema in a literate programming fashion. A system of XSLT stylesheets called Roma was created by the TEI Consortium for manipulating the ODD files.

File Definition

A file is considered to be a TEI ODD document when the following conditions are true:

- The file extension is .odd.
- The document namespace is http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0.

Default Document Templates

There is a default TEI ODD document template available when creating new documents from templates (on page 311) and they can be found in: Framework Templates > TEI ODD.

The default template is located in the \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/tei/templates/TEI ODD folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

The default schema that is used if one is not detected in the TEI ODD document is tei_odds.rng and it is stored in \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/custom/schema/relaxng/.

Default XML Catalogs

The default XML Catalogs (on page 1627) for the TEI ODD document type are as follows:

- \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/custom/schema/catalog.xml
- \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/schema/catalog.xml

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes built-in transformation scenarios that allow you to transform TEI ODD documents to a variety of outputs, such as PDF, XHTML, EPUB, DOCX, ODT, RNG, DTD, and
XML Schema. They can be found in the **TEI ODD** section in the [Configure Transformation Scenario(s)](on page 976) dialog box.

**Resources**

- TEI: Getting Started with ODD

**Related Information:**

- Editing XML Documents in Text Mode (on page 365)

---

**jTEI Document Type (Framework)**

The **jTEI (Journal of the Text Encoding Initiative)** document type is a highly restrictive customization (only about 80 elements are included) of the TEI P5 framework.

**File Definition**

A file is considered to be a **jTEI** document when the root element is named **TEI**, it is in the namespace `http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0`, and the `@rend` attribute is set to "jTEI".

**Default Document Templates**

There is a default **jTEI Article** template available when creating new documents from templates (on page 311) and they can be found in: Framework Templates > TEI JTEI.

The default template is located in the `\OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\frameworks\tei\templates\TEI jTEI` folder.

**Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion**

The default schema that is used if one is not detected is `tei_jtei.rng` and it is stored in `\OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\frameworks\tei\xml\tei\custom\schema\relaxng/`.

**Default XML Catalogs**

The default XML Catalogs (on page 1627) for jTEI are as follows:
Built-in XML Frameworks (Document Types)

- \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/schema/dtd/catalog.xml
- \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/custom/schema/dtd/catalog.xml
- \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/stylesheet/catalog.xml

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes built-in transformation scenarios that allow you to transform jTEI documents to PDF and ODT. They can be found in the TEI JTEI section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).

Resources

- jTEI Article Guidelines

Related Information:

- Editing XML Documents in Text Mode (on page 365)

JATS Document Type (Framework)

The JATS (NISO Journal Article Tag Suite) document type is a technical standard that defines an XML format for scientific literature.

File Definition

A file is considered to be a JATS document when the PUBLIC ID of the document contains the string -//NLM//DTD.

Default Document Templates

There are some default JATS templates available when creating new documents from templates (on page 311) and they can be found in: Framework Templates > JATSKit - NISO JATS and NLM BITS

The default templates for JATS documents are located in the \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/jats/templates/ folder.
Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

Default schemas that are used if one is not detected in the JATS document are stored in

\[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/jats/lib/schemas/.

Default XML Catalog

The default XML Catalog \(\text{on page 1627}\), jatskit-catalog.xml, is stored in

\[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/frameworks/jats/lib/schemas/.

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes built-in transformation scenarios that allow you to transform JATS documents to a variety of outputs, such as PDF, HTML, and EPUB. They can be found in the JATSKit section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box \(\text{on page 976}\).

Resources

- NLM Journal Archiving and Interchange Tag Suite

Related Information:

- Editing XML Documents in Text Mode \(\text{on page 365}\)

EPUB Document Type (Framework)

EPUB is an e-book file format that is a ZIP archive and can be downloaded and read on devices such as phones, tablets, computers, or e-readers. You can view the contents and structure of this type of file \(\text{on page 1401}\) in the Navigator view or main editing pane.

Three distinct frameworks \(\text{on page 1622}\) are supported for the EPUB document type:

- NCX - A declarative global navigation definition.
- OCF - The Open Container Format (OCF) defines a mechanism by which all components of an Open Publication Structure (OPS) can be combined into a single file system entity.
- OPF - The Open Packaging Format (OPF) defines the mechanism by which all components of a published work that conforms to the Open Publication Structure (OPS) standard (including metadata, reading order, and navigational information) are packaged in an OPS Publication.
**Note:** Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports OPF 2.0, OPF 3.0, and OPF 3.1.

**File Definition**

A file is considered to be an *EPUB* document if it has a file extension of `.epub`.

**Default Document Templates**

There are a variety of default *EPUB* templates available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 311)* and they can be found the following folders in Framework Templates: NCX, OCF, OPF 2.0, OPF 3.0, and OPF 3.1.

- The default templates for the NCX document types are located in the `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/ncx/templates` folder.
- The default templates for the OCF document types are located in the `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/ocf/templates` folder.
- The default template for the OPF 2.0 document type is located in the `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/opf/templates/2.0` folder.
- The default template for the OPF 3.0 document type is located in the `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/opf/templates/3.0` folder.
- The default template for the OPF 3.1 document type is located in the `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/opf/templates/3.1` folder.

**Default Schema**

The default schema files for the various types of EPUB document types are located in the following directories:

- The default schema files for the NCX document types are located in the `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/ncx/schemas` folder.
- The default schema files for the OCF document types are located in the `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/ocf/schemas` folder.
- The default schema files for the OPF 2.0 document type is located in the `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/opf/schemas/2.0` folder.
- The default schema files for the OPF 3.0 document type is located in the `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/opf/schemas/3.0` folder.
- The default schema files for the OPF 3.1 document type is located in the `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/opf/schemas/3.1` folder.

**Related Information:**
Other Supported Document Types

Along with the fully supported built-in frameworks (document types) (on page 830), Oxygen XML Developer plugin also provides limited support (including document templates) for editing a variety of other document types. All the specialized views, editors, actions, and options are dynamic according to the type of file that is opened or created. Other document types that are supported in Oxygen XML Developer plugin include:

- **OOXML (on page 1403)** - An XML-based file format for representing spreadsheets, charts, presentations, and word processing documents.
- **ODF (on page 1403)** - An free and open-source XML-based file format for electronic office documents, such as spreadsheets, charts, presentations, and word processing documents.
- **DocBook Targetset (on page 843)** - For resolving cross-references when using olinks.
- **XSLT Stylesheets (on page 518)** - A document type that provides a visual mode for editing XSLT stylesheets.
- **WSDL (on page 672)** - Web Services Description Language is an XML language for describing the functionality offered by a web service.
- **Schematron (on page 767)** - For making assertions about the presence or absence of patterns in XML documents. This document type applies to the ISO Schematron version.
- **Schematron Quick Fixes (SQF) (on page 449)** - An extension of the ISO standard Schematron, allows developers to define Quick Fixes (on page 1626) for Schematron errors.
- **XProc (on page 765)** - A document type for processing XProc script files.
- **XML Schema (on page 569)** - Documents that provide support for editing annotations.
- **XLIFF (1.2, 2.0, 2.1) (on page 759)** - XML Localization Interchange File Format is a standard for passing data between tools during a localization process.
- **XQuery (on page 654)** - The common query language for XML.
- **CSS (on page 697)** - Cascading Style Sheets is a language used for describing the look and formatting of a document.
- **Relax NG Schema (on page 701)** - A schema language that specifies a pattern for the structure and content of an XML document.
- **NVDL Schema (on page 721)** - Namespace Validation Dispatching Language allows you to specify sections of XML documents to be validated against various schemas.
- **JSON (on page 730)** - JavaScript Object Notation is a lightweight data-interchange format.
- **Markdown (on page 807)** - A lightweight markup language with plain text formatting syntax that can be converted to HTML or DITA.
- **JavaScript (on page 760)** - Programming language of HTML and the Web.
- **XMLSpec** - A markup language for W3C specifications and other technical reports.
- **DITAVAL** - DITA conditional processing profile to identify the values you want to conditionally process for a particular output, build, or other purpose.
- **Daisy** - A technical standard for digital audio books, periodicals, and computerized text. It is designed to be an audio substitute for print material.
- **EAD** - Encoded Archival Description is an XML standard for encoding archival finding aids.
- **KML** - Keyhole Markup Language is an XML notation for expressing geographic visualization in maps and browsers.
- **Maven Project & Settings** - Project or settings file for Maven build automation tool that is primarily used for Java projects.
- **Oasis XML Catalog** - An XML Catalog (on page 1627) document that describes a mapping between external entity references and locally-cached equivalents.
- **Other Non-XML Files (on page 326)** - Oxygen XML Developer plugin also includes a simple text editor and a variety of helpful features for creating and editing non-XML files.
XML documents can be transformed into a variety of user-friendly output formats that can be viewed by end users. This process is known as a transformation.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes numerous built-in transformation possibilities to publish XML content in various output formats (such as WebHelp, PDF, CHM, EPUB, JavaHelp, Eclipse Help, XHTML, etc.)

For transformations that are not included in your installed version of Oxygen XML Developer plugin, simply install the tool chain required to perform the specific transformation and process the files in accordance with the processor instructions. A multitude of target formats are possible. The basic condition for a transformation to any format is that your source document is well-formed.

Transformation Scenarios

A transformation scenario is a set of complex operations and settings that gives you the possibility to obtain outputs of multiple types (XML, HTML, PDF, EPUB, etc.) from the same source of XML files and stylesheets.

Note: You need to use the appropriate stylesheet according to the source definition and the desired output. For example, if you want to transform into an HTML format using a DocBook stylesheet, your source XML document should conform with the DocBook DTD.

Executing a transformation scenario implies multiple actions, such as:

• Validating the input file.
• Obtaining intermediate output files (for example, formatting objects for the XML to PDF transformation).
• Using transformation engines to produce the output.

Before transforming an XML document in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, you need to define a transformation scenario to apply to that document. A scenario is a set of values for various parameters that define a transformation. It is not related to a particular document, but rather to a document type. Oxygen XML Developer plugin included preconfigured built-in transformation scenarios (on page 858), but you can also create new transformation scenarios (on page 890).

When creating new transformation scenarios, the types that are available include:
Scenarios that Apply to XML Files - This type of scenario contains the location of an XSLT stylesheet that is applied on the edited XML document, as well as other transformation parameters. For more information, see XML Transformation with XSLT (on page 890) and XML Transformation with XQuery (on page 908).

Scenarios that Apply to XSLT Files - This type of scenario contains the location of an XML document that the edited XSLT stylesheet is applied to, as well as other transform parameters. For more information, see XSLT Transformation (on page 937).

Scenarios that Apply to XQuery Files - This type of scenario contains the location of an XML source, that the edited XQuery file is applied to, as well as other transform parameters. When the XML source is a native XML database, the XML source field of the scenario is empty because the XML data is read with XQuery-specific functions, such as `document()` . When the XML source is a local XML file, the URL of the file is specified in the XML input field of the scenario. For more information, see XQuery Transformation (on page 963).

Scenarios that Apply to SQL Files - This type of scenario specifies a database connection for the database server that runs the SQL file that is associated with the scenario. The data processed by the SQL script is located in the database.

Scenarios that Apply to XProc Files - This type of scenario contains the location of an XProc script, as well as other transform parameters. For more information, see SQL Transformation (on page 971).

DITA-OT Scenarios - This type of scenario provides the parameters for an Ant transformation that executes a DITA-OT build script. Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in version of Ant and a built-in version of DITA-OT, although you can also set other versions in the scenario. For more information, see DITA OT Transformation (on page 919).

ANT Scenarios - This type of scenario contains the location of an Ant build script, as well as other transform parameters. For more information, see Ant Transformation (on page 934).

Note:

Status messages generated during the transformation process are displayed in the Console view (on page 362) (the Enable Oxygen consoles option (on page 123) must be selected in the View preferences page (on page 123)).

Built-in Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes preconfigured built-in transformation scenarios that are used for common transformations. They can be found in the various sections in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976) or Transformation Scenarios view (on page 981). All the built-in document types (frameworks) (on page 1622) that are included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin have various transformation scenarios in their specific sections, including the most popular frameworks, such as DITA, DocBook, TEI, XHTML, JATS, OOXML, and more.
To obtain the desired output, use one of the following actions from the toolbar or Transform submenu in the contextual menu of the Navigator view (on page 210):

- **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** (Alt + Shift + T, T (Command + Alt + T, T on OS X)) - If you have associated transformation scenarios for the current document, this action will simply apply the association (on page 975) and begin the transformation process. If an association is not detected, this action will open the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976) where you can choose the scenarios you want to apply.

- **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Alt + T, C on OS X)) - This action will open the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976) where you can choose the scenarios you want to apply.

**Note:**

- You can apply a transformation even if the current document is not associated with a transformation scenario.
- If the document contains an `xml-stylesheet` processing instruction that references an XSLT stylesheet (commonly used to display the document in web browsers), Oxygen XML Developer plugin prompts you to associate the document with a built-in transformation scenario.
- The default transformation scenario is suggested based on the processing instruction from the edited document.

**Related Information:**

- Creating New Transformation Scenarios (on page 890)
- Editing a Transformation Scenario (on page 972)
- Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box (on page 976)
- Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios (on page 975)
- Transformation Scenarios View (on page 981)

**DITA Map Transformation Scenarios**

Built-in transformation scenarios allow you to transform DITA maps (on page 1621) to a variety of outputs, such as WebHelp, PDF, ODF, XHTML, EPUB, CHM, Kindle, and MS Word. Oxygen XML Developer plugin also includes a special Run DITA-OT Integrator (on page 882) that can be used
to integrate a DITA-OT plugin and a **DITA Map Metrics Report** transformation that generates a statistics report for your DITA map. All of them are listed in the **DITA Map** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 976)*.

A variety of transformations scenarios are available for **DITA maps (on page 1621)**:

- **Built-in transformation scenarios** allow you to transform a **DITA map** to a variety of outputs, such as WebHelp, PDF, ODF, XHTML, EPUB, CHM, Kindle, and MS Word.
- **Run DITA-OT Integrator *(on page 882)*** - Use this transformation scenario if you want to integrate a DITA-OT plugin. This scenario runs an Ant task that integrates all the plugins from the DITA-OT/plugins directory.
- **DITA Map Metrics Report** - Use this type of transformation scenario if you want to generate a **DITA map** statistics report. It contains information such as:
  - The number of processed maps and topics.
  - Content reuse percentage.
  - Number of elements, attributes, words, and characters used in the entire **DITA map** structure.
  - **DITA conditional processing attributes** used in the **DITA maps**.
  - Processing instructions.
  - External links.
  - All `@outputclass` attribute values gathered from the DITA project.

⚠️ **Important:** If you have cross references that point to content outside the scope of the DITA map, that referenced content will not be counted. For example, if you have links to topics that are not included in the DITA map hierarchy, the content in those topics is ignored when generating the statistics.

---

**Related Information:**

- **Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 972)*

- **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 976)*

- **Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios *(on page 975)*

---

**DITA Map to WebHelp Responsive Transformation**

DITA content can be transformed into several types of WebHelp Responsive systems (with or without a feedback section). The **WebHelp Responsive layout and features *(on page 1070)*** are designed to adapt to any device and screen size to provide an optimal viewing and interaction experience. Oxygen
XML Developer plugin also provides numerous possibilities for customizing the WebHelp Responsive output (on page 1147).

**WebHelp Responsive Transformation Scenario**

To publish a DITA map (on page 1621) as WebHelp Responsive output, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** action from the toolbar.
2. Select the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive scenario from the DITA Map section.
3. If you want to configure the transformation, click the **Edit** button.

**Step Result:** This opens an Edit scenario configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in the following tabs:

- **Templates Tab** (on page 1104) - This tab contains a set of built-in publishing templates (on page 1104) that you can use for the layout of your WebHelp system output. You can also create your own publishing templates or edit existing ones (on page 1147).
- **Parameters Tab** (on page 862) - This tab includes numerous parameters that can be set to customize your WebHelp system output. See the Parameters section (on page 862) below for details about the most commonly used parameters for WebHelp Responsive transformations.
- **Filters Tab** (on page 228) - This tab allows you to filter certain content elements from the generated output.
- **Advanced Tab** (on page 245) - This tab allows you to specify some advanced options for the transformation scenario.
- **Output Tab** (on page 231) - This tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

4. Click **Apply associated** to process the transformation.

When the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation is complete, the output is automatically opened in your default browser.

**WebHelp Responsive with Feedback Transformation Scenario**

To publish a DITA map (on page 1621) as a WebHelp Responsive with Feedback system, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** action from the toolbar.
2. Select the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive with Feedback scenario from the DITA Map section.
3. If you want to configure the transformation, click the **Edit** button.

**Step Result:** This opens an Edit scenario configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in the following tabs:
• Templates Tab (on page 10) - This tab contains a set of built-in publishing templates (on page 1104) that you can use for the layout of your WebHelp system output. You can also create your own publishing templates or edit existing ones (on page 1147).

• Parameters Tab (on page 862) - This tab includes numerous parameters that can be set to customize your WebHelp system output. See the Parameters section (on page 862) below for details about the most commonly used parameters for WebHelp Responsive transformations.

• Filters Tab (on page 1104) - This tab allows you to filter certain content elements from the generated output.

• Advanced Tab (on page 1147) - This tab allows you to specify some advanced options for the transformation scenario.

• Output Tab (on page 1085) - This tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

4. Click Apply associated to begin the transformation.

5. Enter the documentation product ID (value for the webhelp.product.id parameter) and the documentation version (value for the webhelp.product.version parameter).

When the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive with Feedback transformation is complete, your default browser opens the installation.html file. This file contains information about the output location, system requirements, installation instructions, and deployment of the output. Follow the instructions to complete the system deployment (on page 1085).

Parameters for Customizing WebHelp Responsive Output

To customize a transformation scenario, you can edit various parameters, including the following most commonly used ones:

**default.language**

This parameter is used if the language is not detected in the DITA map. The default value is en-us.

**clean.output**

Deletes all files from the output folder before the transformation is performed (only no and yes values are valid and the default value is no).

**editlink.remote.ditamap.url**

Use this parameter in conjunction with editlink.web.author.url to add an Edit link next to the topic title in the WebHelp output. When a user clicks the link, the topic is opened in Oxygen XML Web Author where they can make changes that can be saved to a file server. The value should be set as the custom URL of the main DITA map. For example, a GitHub custom URL might look like this: https://getFileContent/oxyengxml/userguide/master/UserGuide.ditamap.
editlink.web.author.url

This parameter needs to be used in conjunction with editlink.remote.ditamap.url to add an Edit link next to the topic title in the WebHelp output. When a user clicks the link, the topic is opened in Oxygen XML Web Author where they can make changes that can be saved to a file server. The value should be set as the URL of the Web Author installation. For example: https://www.oxygenxml.com/oxygen-xml-web-author/.

editlink.present.only.path.to.topic

When this parameter is set to “true”, the DITA topic path is displayed to the right of each topic title in the WebHelp Responsive output. Also, when this parameter is used, the editlink.remote.ditamap.url and editlink.web.author.url parameters are ignored.

fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml (Only supported when the DITA OT transformation process is started from Oxygen XML Developer plugin)

The DITA Open Toolkit usually has problems processing references that point to locations outside of the directory of the processed DITA map. This parameter is used to specify whether or not the application should try to fix such references in a temporary files folder before the DITA Open Toolkit is invoked on the fixed references. The fix has no impact on your edited DITA content. Allowed values: true or false (default).

force.unique

When set to true (default value), the transformation will be forced to create unique output files for each instance of a resource when a map contains multiple references to a single topic.

use.stemming

Controls whether or not you want to include stemming search algorithms into the published output (default setting is false).

webhelp.custom.resources

The file path to a directory that contains resources files. All files from this directory will be copied to the root of the WebHelp output.

webhelp.favicon

The file path that points to an image to be used as a favicon in the WebHelp output.

webhelp.reload.stylesheet

Set this parameter to true if you have out of memory problems when generating WebHelp. It will increase processing time but decrease the memory footprint. The default value is false.

webhelp.search.custom.excludes.file
The path of the file that contains name patterns for HTML files that should not be indexed by the WebHelp search engine. Each exclude pattern must be on a new line. The patterns are considered to be relative to the output directory, and they accept wildcards such as ‘*’ (matches zero or more characters) or ‘?’ (matches one character). For more information about the patterns, see https://ant.apache.org/manual/dirtasks.html#patterns.

webhelp.search.japanese.dictionary

The file path of the dictionary that will be used by the Kuromoji morphological engine for indexing Japanese content in the WebHelp pages. The encoding for the dictionary must be UTF8.

webhelp.search.enable.pagination

Specifies whether or not search results will be displayed on multiple pages. Allowed values are yes or no.

webhelp.search.page.numberOfLines

Specifies the number of search results items displayed on each page. This parameter is only used when the webhelp.search.enable.pagination parameter is enabled.

webhelp.search.ranking

If this parameter is set to false then the 5-star rating mechanism is no longer included in the search results that are displayed on the Search tab (default setting is true).

webhelp.show.changes.and.comments

When set to yes, user comments, replies to comments, and tracked changes are published in the WebHelp output. The default value is no.

webhelp.sitemap.base.url

Base URL for all the loc elements in the generated sitemap.xml file. The value of a loc element is computed as the relative file path from the href attribute of a topicref element from the DITA map, appended to this base URL value. The loc element is mandatory in sitemap.xml. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the sitemap.xml file is not generated.

webhelp.sitemap.change.frequency

The value of the changefreq element in the generated sitemap.xml file. The changefreq element is optional in sitemap.xml. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the changefreq element is not added in sitemap.xml. Allowed values: <empty string> (default), always, hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, never.

webhelp.sitemap.priority
The value of the `priority` element in the generated `sitemap.xml` file. It can be set to any fractional number between 0.0 (least important priority) and 1.0 (most important priority). For example, 0.3, 0.5, or 0.8. The `priority` element is optional in `sitemap.xml`. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the `priority` element is not added in `sitemap.xml`.

**Parameters Specific to WebHelp Responsive Output**

`webhelp.default.collection.type.sequence`

Specifies if the `sequence` value will be used by default when the `collection-type` attribute is not specified. This option is helpful if you want to have *Next* and *Previous* navigational buttons generated for all HTML pages. Allowed values are `no` (default) and `yes`.

`webhelp.enable.search.autocomplete`

Specifies if the *Autocomplete* feature is enabled in the WebHelp search text field. The default value is `yes`.

`webhelp.fragment.after.body`

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the page body. The value of the parameter can be either a *well-formed* XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a *well-formed* XHTML fragment.

`webhelp.fragment.after.logo_and_title`

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the logo and title. The value of the parameter can be either a *well-formed* XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a *well-formed* XHTML fragment.

`webhelp.fragment.after.main.page.search`

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the search field. The value of the parameter can be either a *well-formed* XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a *well-formed* XHTML fragment.

`webhelp.fragment.after.toc_or_tiles`

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the table of contents or tiles in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a *well-formed* XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a *well-formed* XHTML fragment.

`webhelp.fragment.after.top_menu`

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the top menu. The value of the parameter can be either a *well-formed* XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a *well-formed* XHTML fragment.

`webhelp.fragment.before.body`
In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the page body. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.fragment.before.logo_and_title**

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the logo and title. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.fragment.before.main.page.search**

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the search field. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.fragment.before.toc_or_tiles**

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the table of contents or tiles in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.fragment.before.top_menu**

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the top menu. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.fragment.footer**

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment as the page footer. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.fragment.head**

In the generated output it inserts a given XHTML fragment in the `<head>` element. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.fragment.welcome**

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment as a welcome message (or title). The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.merge.nested.topics.related.links**

Specifies if the related links from nested topics will be merged with the links in the parent topic. Thus the links will be moved from the topic content to the related links component and all of the links from the same group (for example, *Related Tasks*,
Related References, Related Information) are merged into a single group. The default value is yes.

**webhelp.search.stop.words.exclude**

Specifies a list of words that will be excluded from the default list of stop words that are filtered out before the search processing. Use comma separators to specify more than one word (for example: if,for,is).

**webhelp.show.breadcrumb**

Specifies if the breadcrumb component will be presented in the output. The default value is yes.

**webhelp.show.child.links**

Specifies if child links will be generated in the output for all topics that have subtopics. The default value is no.

**webhelp.show.indexterms.link**

Specifies if an icon that links to the index will be presented in the output. The default value is yes.

**webhelp.show.main.page.tiles**

Specifies if the tiles component will be presented in the main page of the output. For a tree style layout, this parameter should be set to no.

**webhelp.show.main.page.toc**

Specifies if the table of contents will be presented in the main page of the output. The default value is yes.

**webhelp.show.navigation.links**

Specifies if navigation links will be presented in the output. The default value is yes.

**webhelp.show.print.link**

Specifies if a print link or icon will be presented within each topic in the output. The default value is yes.

**webhelp.show.related.links**

Specifies if the related links component will be presented in the WebHelp Responsive output. The default value is yes. The webhelp.merge.nested.topics.related.links parameter can used in conjunction with this one to merge the related links from nested topics into the links in the parent topic.

**webhelp.show.publication.toc**

Specifies if a table of contents will be presented on the left side of each topic in the output. The default value is yes.
webhelp.show.topic.toc

Specifies if a topic table of contents will be presented on the right side of each topic in the output. This table of contents contains links to each `<section>` within the current topic that contains an `@id` attribute and the section corresponding to the current scroll position is highlighted. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.top.menu

Specifies if a menu will be presented at the topic of the main page in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.publication.toc.hide.chunked.topics

Specifies if the table of contents will contain links for chunked topics. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.publication.toc.links

Specifies which links will be included in the table of contents. The possible values are:

- **chapter** (default) - The TOC will include links for the current topic, its children, its siblings, and its direct ancestor (including the direct ancestor's siblings), and the parent chapter.
- **topic** - The TOC will only include links for the current topic and its direct children.
- **all** - The TOC will include all links.

webhelp.publication.toc.tooltip.position

By default, if a topic contains a `shortdesc` element, its content is displayed in a tooltip when the user hovers over its link in the table of contents. This parameter controls whether or not this tooltip is displayed and its position relative to the link. The possible values are:

- **left** (default)
- **right**
- **top**
- **bottom**
- **hidden** - The tooltip will not be displayed.

webhelp.top.menu.depth

Specifies the maximum depth level of the topics that will be included in the top menu. The default value is `3`. A value of `0` means that the menu has unlimited depth.

webhelp.topic.collapsible.elements.initial.state

Specifies the initial state of collapsible elements (tables with titles, nested topics with titles, sections with titles, index term groups). The possible values are collapsed or expanded (default value).

Related Information:

- Customizing the WebHelp Responsive Output (on page 1147)
- WebHelp Responsive Output Layout and Features (on page 1070)

DITA Map to WebHelp Classic Transformation

DITA content can be transformed into several types of WebHelp Classic systems (with or without a feedback section). The WebHelp Classic layout and features (on page 986) are designed for desktop systems and include a familiar classical style. Oxygen XML Developer plugin also provides numerous possibilities for customizing the WebHelp Classic output (on page 1019).

WebHelp Classic Transformation Scenario

To publish a DITA map (on page 1621) as a WebHelp Classic system, follow these steps:

1. Select the configure transformation scenario(s) action from the toolbar.
2. Select the DITA Map WebHelp Classic scenario from the DITA Map section.
3. If you want to configure the transformation, click the Edit button.

Step Result: This opens an Edit scenario configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in the following tabs:

- Skins Tab (on page ) - This tab contains a set of built-in skins that you can use for the layout of your WebHelp system output.
- Parameters Tab (on page ) - This tab includes numerous parameters that can be set to customize your WebHelp system output. See the Parameters section (on page 871) below for details about the most commonly used parameters for WebHelp Responsive transformations.
- Filters Tab (on page ) - This tab allows you to filter certain content elements from the generated output.
- Advanced Tab (on page ) - This tab allows you to specify some advanced options for the transformation scenario.
- Output Tab (on page ) - This tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

4. Click Apply associated to process the transformation.
When the DITA Map WebHelp Classic transformation is complete, the output is automatically opened in your default browser.

WebHelp Classic with Feedback Transformation Scenario

To publish a DITA map (on page 1621) as a WebHelp Classic with Feedback system, follow these steps:

1. Select the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) action from the toolbar.
2. Select the DITA Map WebHelp Classic with Feedback scenario from the DITA Map section.
3. If you want to configure the transformation, click the Edit button.

**Step Result:** This opens an Edit scenario configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in the following tabs:

- **Skins Tab (on page )** - This tab contains a set of built-in skins that you can use for the layout of your WebHelp system output.
- **Parameters Tab (on page )** - This tab includes numerous parameters that can be set to customize your WebHelp system output. See the Parameters section (on page 871) below for details about the most commonly used parameters for WebHelp Responsive transformations.
- **Filters Tab (on page )** - This tab allows you to filter certain content elements from the generated output.
- **Advanced Tab (on page )** - This tab allows you to specify some advanced options for the transformation scenario.
- **Output Tab (on page )** - This tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

4. Click Apply associated to begin the transformation.
5. Enter the documentation product ID (value for the webhelp.product.id parameter) and the documentation version (value for the webhelp.product.version parameter).

When the DITA Map WebHelp Classic with Feedback transformation is complete, your default browser opens the installation.html file. This file contains information about the output location, system requirements, installation instructions, and deployment of the output. Follow the instructions to complete the system deployment (on page 1085).

For more information about the feedback-enabled WebHelp system, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/eoQ2uxHvppE
Parameters for Customizing WebHelp Classic Output

To customize a transformation scenario, you can edit various parameters, including the following most commonly used ones:

**default.language**

This parameter is used if the language is not detected in the DITA map. The default value is `en-us`.

**clean.output**

Deletes all files from the output folder before the transformation is performed (only `no` and `yes` values are valid and the default value is `no`).

**fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml** (Only supported when the DITA OT transformation process is started from Oxygen XML Developer plugin)

The DITA Open Toolkit usually has problems processing references that point to locations outside of the directory of the processed DITA map. This parameter is used to specify whether or not the application should try to fix such references in a temporary files folder before the DITA Open Toolkit is invoked on the fixed references. The fix has no impact on your edited DITA content. Allowed values: `true` or `false` (default).

**force.unique**

When set to `true` (default value), the transformation will be forced to create unique output files for each instance of a resource when a map contains multiple references to a single topic.

**use.stemming**

Controls whether or not you want to include stemming search algorithms into the published output (default setting is `false`).

**webhelp.body.script**

URL value that specifies the location of a well-formed XHTML file containing the custom script that will be copied in the `<body>` section of every WebHelp page.

**webhelp.copyright**

Adds a small copyright text that appears at the end of the Table of Contents pane.

**webhelp.custom.resources**

The file path to a directory that contains resources files. All files from this directory will be copied to the root of the WebHelp output.

**webhelp.favicon**

The file path that points to an image to be used as a favicon in the WebHelp output.
**webhelp.footer.file**

Path to an XML file that includes the footer content for your WebHelp output pages. You can use this parameter to integrate social media features (such as widgets for Facebook™, Twitter™, Google Analytics, or Google+™). The file must be well-formed, each widget must be in separate `div` or `span` element, and the code for each `script` element is included in an XML comment (also, the start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line). The following code exert is an example for adding a Facebook™ widget:

```xml
<div id="facebook">
    <div id="fb-root"/>

    <script>
        <!-- (function(d, s, id) {
            var js, fjs = d.getElementsByTagName(s)[0];
            if (d.getElementById(id)) return;
            js = d.createElement(s); js.id = id;
            js.src = '//connect.facebook.net/en_US/sdk.js#xfbml=1&version=v2.0';
            fjs.parentNode.insertBefore(js, fjs);
            (document, 'script', 'facebook-jssdk'));
        }());

    </script>

    <div data-share="true" data-show-faces="true" data-action="like"
        data-layout="standard" class="fb-like"/>
</div>
```

**webhelp.footer.include**

Specifies whether or not to include footer in each WebHelp page. Possible values: yes, no. If set to no, no footer is added to the WebHelp pages. If set to yes and the `webhelp.footer.file` parameter has a value, then the content of that file is used as footer. If the `webhelp.footer.file` has no value then a default Oxygen footer is inserted in each WebHelp page.

**webhelp.google.search.results**

A file path that specifies the location of a well-formed XHTML file containing the Google Custom Search Engine element `gcse:searchresults-only`. You can use all supported attributes for this element. It is recommended to set the `linkTarget` attribute to `frm` for frameless (`iframe`) version of WebHelp or to `contentWin` for the frameset version of WebHelp. The default value for this attribute is `_blank` and the search results will be loaded in a new window. If this parameter is not specified, the following code will be used:

```xml
<gcse:searchresults-only linkTarget="frm"></gcse:searchresults-only>
```

**webhelp.google.search.script**
A file path that specifies the location of a well-formed XHTML file containing the Custom Search Engine script from Google.

`webhelp.head.script`

URL value that specifies the location of a well-formed XHTML file containing the custom script that will be copied in the `<head>` section of every WebHelp page.

`webhelp.logo.image.target.url`

Specifies a target URL that is set on the logo image. When you click the logo image, you will be redirected to this address.

`webhelp.logo.image`

Specifies a path to an image displayed as a logo in the left side of the output header.

`webhelp.reload.stylesheet`

Set this parameter to `true` if you have out of memory problems when generating WebHelp. It will increase processing time but decrease the memory footprint. The default value is `false`.

`webhelp.search.custom.excludes.file`

The path of the file that contains name patterns for HTML files that should not be indexed by the WebHelp search engine. Each exclude pattern must be on a new line. The patterns are considered to be relative to the output directory, and they accept wildcards such as `*` (matches zero or more characters) or `?` (matches one character). For more information about the patterns, see https://ant.apache.org/manual/dirtasks.html#patterns.

`webhelp.search.japanese.dictionary`

The file path of the dictionary that will be used by the Kuromoji morphological engine for indexing Japanese content in the WebHelp pages. The encoding for the dictionary must be `UTF8`.

`webhelp.search.ranking`

If this parameter is set to `false` then the 5-star rating mechanism is no longer included in the search results that are displayed on the Search tab (default setting is `true`).

`webhelp.show.changes.and.comments`

When set to `yes`, user comments, replies to comments, and tracked changes are published in the WebHelp output. The default value is `no`.

`webhelp.sitemap.base.url`

Base URL for all the `loc` elements in the generated `sitemap.xml` file. The value of a `loc` element is computed as the relative file path from the `href` attribute of a `topicref` element from the DITA map, appended to this base URL value. The `loc`
element is mandatory in `sitemap.xml`. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the `sitemap.xml` file is not generated.

**webhelp.sitemap.change.frequency**

The value of the `changefreq` element in the generated `sitemap.xml` file. The `changefreq` element is optional in `sitemap.xml`. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the `changefreq` element is not added in `sitemap.xml`. Allowed values: `<empty string>` (default), `always`, `hourly`, `daily`, `weekly`, `monthly`, `yearly`, `never`.

**webhelp.sitemap.priority**

The value of the `priority` element in the generated `sitemap.xml` file. It can be set to any fractional number between 0.0 (least important priority) and 1.0 (most important priority). For example, 0.3, 0.5, or 0.8. The `priority` element is optional in `sitemap.xml`. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the `priority` element is not added in `sitemap.xml`.

Related Information:

- [Customizing WebHelp Classic Output](on page 1019)
- [WebHelp Classic Output Layout and Features](on page 986)

DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 and CSS Transformation

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in [DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS](DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing plugin) transformation scenario based on a [DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing plugin](DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing plugin) that converts DITA maps to PDF using a CSS-based processing engine and an HTML5 intermediate format. Oxygen XML Developer plugin comes bundled with a built-in CSS-based PDF processing engine called [Oxygen PDF Chemistry](Oxygen PDF Chemistry). Oxygen XML Developer plugin also supports some third-party processors.

For those who are familiar with CSS, this makes it very easy to style and customize the PDF output of your DITA projects without having to work with `xsl:fo` customizations. This transformation also includes some built-in publishing templates that you can use for the layout of your PDF output and you can create your own templates or edit existing ones.

The following CSS-based PDF processors can be used:

- **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** - A built-in processor that is bundled with Oxygen XML Developer plugin. For more information, see the [Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide](Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide). This is the supported processor.
How to Create the Transformation Scenario

To create a DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Click the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) button.
2. Select DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS.
3. If you want to configure the transformation, click the Edit button.

Step Result: This opens an Edit scenario configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in the following tabs:

- **Templates Tab** (on page ) - This tab contains a set of built-in publishing templates that you can use for the layout of your WebHelp system output. You can also create your own publishing templates by saving one from the gallery and changing it.
- **CSS Processor Tab** - This is where you choose the processor type. You can select between Oxygen PDF Chemistry, Prince XML, or Antenna House.
- **Parameters Tab** (on page ) - This tab includes numerous parameters that can be set to customize your WebHelp system output.
- **Filters Tab** (on page ) - This tab allows you to filter certain content elements from the generated output.
- **Advanced Tab** (on page ) - This tab allows you to specify some advanced options for the transformation scenario.
- **Output Tab** (on page ) - This tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

4. In the Parameters tab, configure any of the following parameters (if applicable):
   - **args.css** - Specifies a path to a custom CSS to be used in addition to those specified in the publishing template.
   - **css.processor.path.chemistry** (if you are using the Oxygen PDF Chemistry processor) - Specifies the path to the Oxygen PDF Chemistry executable file that will be run to generate the PDF. If this parameter is not set, the transformation will use the processor specified in the CSS-based Processors preferences page (on page 129).
   - **css.processor.path.prince** (if you are using the Prince Print with CSS processor) - Specifies the path to the Prince executable file that will be run to produce the PDF. If you installed Prince using its default settings, you can leave this blank.
   - **css.processor.path.antenna-house** (if you are using the Antenna House Formatter processor) - Specifies the path to the Antenna House executable file that will be run to
produce the PDF. If you installed Antenna House using its default settings, you can leave this blank.

- **show.changes.and.comments** - When set to *yes*, user comments, replies to comments, and tracked changes are published in the PDF output. The default value is *no*.

- **figure.title.placement** - Controls the position of the figure title relative to the image. Allowed values are "top" and "bottom", "top" is the default

5. Click **OK** and run the transformation scenario.

### Customizing the Output

For information about customizing the output, see [CSS-based DITA to PDF Customization](on page 1225).

#### Related Information:

- Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 972)*

- Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 976)*

- Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide

- CSS-based DITA to PDF Customization *(on page 1225)*

---

**DITA Map to PDF - based on DITA and CSS (WYSIWYG) (Deprecated)**

⚠ **Attention:** This transformation scenario was deprecated starting with version 21.0. If you have configured scenarios associated to your project based on this transformation scenario, you will still be able to use them, but for new transformations, it is recommended to use the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario *(on page 874)* instead.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in **DITA Map to PDF - based on DITA & CSS (WYSIWYG)** transformation scenario based on a **DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing plugin** that convert DITA maps to PDF using a CSS-based processing engine. Oxygen XML Developer plugin also comes bundled with a built-in CSS-based PDF processing engine called **Oxygen PDF Chemistry**. For those who are familiar with CSS, this makes it very easy to style and customize the PDF output of your DITA projects without having to work with `xsl:fo` customizations. Oxygen XML Developer plugin also supports some third-party processors.

The following processors are supported:
• **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** - A built-in processor that is bundled with Oxygen XML Developer plugin. For more information, see the Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide.

• **Prince XML** (not included in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation kit) - A third-party component that needs to be purchased from http://www.princexml.com.

• **Antenna House Formatter** (not included in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation kit) - A third-party component that needs to be purchased from http://www.antennahouse.com/antenna1/formatter/.

**DITA Map to PDF - based on DITA and CSS (WYSIWYG) Transformation Scenario**

To create a **DITA Map to PDF - based on DITA & CSS (WYSIWYG)** transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Click the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** button.
2. Select **DITA Map to PDF - based on DITA & CSS (WYSIWYG)**.
3. If you want to configure the transformation, click the **Edit** button.

**Step Result:** This opens an **Edit scenario** configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in the following tabs:

- **CSS Processor** Tab - This is where you choose the processor type. You can select between **Oxygen PDF Chemistry**, **Prince XML**, or **Antenna House**.

- **Parameters** Tab *(on page)* - This tab includes numerous parameters that can be set to customize your WebHelp system output.

- **Filters** Tab *(on page)* - This tab allows you to filter certain content elements from the generated output.

- **Advanced** Tab *(on page)* - This tab allows you to specify some advanced options for the transformation scenario.

- **Output** Tab *(on page)* - This tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

4. In the **Parameters** tab, configure any of the following parameters (if applicable):

   • **args.css** - Specifies a path to a custom CSS *(on page 1253)* to be used in addition to those specified in the **dita.css.list** parameter.

   • **dita.css.list** - Specifies a list of CSS URLs to be used by the PDF processor (instead of the default CSS files). The files must have URL syntax and be separated using semicolons.

   • **css.processor.path.chemistry** (if you are using the **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** processor) - Specifies the path to the **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** executable file that will be run to generate the PDF. If this parameter is not set, the transformation will use the processor specified in the **CSS-based Processors** preferences page *(on page 129).*
• **css.processor.path.prince** (if you are using the **Prince Print with CSS** processor) - Specifies the path to the Prince executable file that will be run to produce the PDF. If you installed Prince using its default settings, you can leave this blank.

• **css.processor.path.antenna-house** (if you are using the **Antenna House Formatter** processor) - Specifies the path to the Antenna House executable file that will be run to produce the PDF. If you installed Antenna House using its default settings, you can leave this blank.

• **show.changes.and.comments** - When set to *yes*, user comments, replies to comments, and *tracked changes* are published in the PDF output. The default value is *no*.

• **figure.title.placement** - Controls the position of the figure title relative to the image. Allowed values are "top" and "bottom", "top" is the default.

5. Click **OK** and run the transformation scenario.

### Customizing the Output

The **DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing plugin** makes it very easy to style and customize the PDF output of your DITA projects without having to work with *xsl:fo* customizations. You can style the PDF output by simply using a custom CSS to change the styling and then re-running the transformation scenario until you get the desired result.

For more information about customizing the output, see: **CSS-based DITA to PDF Customization (on page 1225)**.

### Changing the Style of an Element

To change the style of a particular element, you need to create an additional CSS file that will store the customization rules. Once you have created this file, you need to instruct the editor how to use this additional CSS.

- Specify the path to your custom CSS using the **args.css** parameter:
  1. Edit a **DITA Map to PDF - based on DITA & CSS (WYSIWYG)** transformation scenario.
  2. In the **Parameters** tab, specify the path to your custom CSS files in the **args.css** parameter.
  3. Click **OK** and run the transformation scenario.

This method is appropriate if you just want to apply the styling customization to the output.

**Related Information:**

• **Editing a Transformation Scenario (on page 972)**
DITA Map to PDF - based on XSL-FO Transformation

Oxygen XML Developer plugin comes bundled with the DITA Open Toolkit that provides a mechanism for converting DITA maps (on page 1621) to PDF output.

Creating a DITA Map to PDF - based on XSL-FO Transformation Scenario

To create a DITA Map to PDF - based on XSL-FO transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Click the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) button.
2. Select DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO and click the Edit button (or use the Duplicate button if your framework (on page 1622) is read-only).
3. Use the various tabs to configure the transformation scenario. In the Parameters tab, you can use a variety of parameters to customize the output. For example, the following parameters are just a few of the most commonly used ones:
   - `show.changes.and.comments` - If set to yes, user comments, replies to comments, and tracked changes are published in the PDF output.
   - `customization.dir` - Specifies the path to a customization directory.
   - `editlink.remote.ditamap.url` - When this parameter is set to “true”, the DITA topic path is displayed to the right of each topic title in the PDF output.
4. Click OK and then the Apply Associated button to run the transformation scenario.

Related Information:

- XSL FO-based DITA to PDF Customization (on page 1379)

DITA Map to MS Office Word Transformation

Oxygen XML Developer plugin comes bundled with a transformation scenario that allows you to convert DITA maps (on page 1621) to Microsoft Office Word documents. It utilizes the DITA to Word plugin created by Jarno Elovirta. This plugin contains a Word document named Normal.docx (located in: `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/dita/DITA-OT3.x/plugins/`
com.elovirta.ooxml/resources) that is used by the transformation scenario as a template to generate the final Word document.

**Tip:** You can make general modifications to the Normal.docx template file to alter the published output.

**Configuring the Transformation Scenario**

To configure an DITA Map to MS Office Word transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Open the DITA map.
2. Click the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) button.
3. Select DITA Map MS Office Word.
4. For advanced customizations, in the Parameters tab you can use any of the following parameters that are unique to this transformation scenario to specify paths to files that affect the output in various ways:
   - dotx.file - Specifies the path to a Word template file (.docx) that will be used in the transformation to generate the final Word document. Set this parameter if you want to use a different template file other than the Normal.docx file that is used by default.
   - document.flat.xsl - Specifies the path to a pre-process clean-up stylesheet.
   - core.xsl - Specifies the path to a core metadata stylesheet.
   - custom.xsl - Specifies the path to a custom metadata stylesheet.
   - document.xsl - Specifies the path to a main document stylesheet.
   - comments.xsl - Specifies the path to a comments stylesheet.
   - numbering.xsl - Specifies the path to a list and title numbering stylesheet.
   - footnotes.xsl - Specifies the path to a footnote stylesheet.
   - document.xml.xsl - Specifies the path to a document relations metadata stylesheet.
   - inkscape.exec - Specifies the path to an Inkscape (open-source vector graphics editor) executable file.
5. Click OK and run the transformation scenario.

**Result:** The result of the transformation will automatically be opened in your system's default word processing application (such as Microsoft Word).

**Related Information:**

- [Editing a Transformation Scenario](on page 972)
- [Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box](on page 976)
DITA Map to CHM (Compiled HTML Help) Transformation

To perform a Compiled HTML Help (CHM) transformation, Oxygen XML Developer plugin needs Microsoft HTML Help Workshop to be installed on your computer. Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically detects HTML Help Workshop and uses it.

**Note:** HTML Help Workshop might fail if the files used for transformation contain accents in their names, due to different encodings used when writing the .hhp and .hhc files. If the transformation fails to produce the CHM output but the .hhp (HTML Help Project) file is already generated, you can manually try to build the CHM output using HTML Help Workshop.

Changing the Output Encoding

Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the htmlhelp.locale parameter to correctly display specific characters of different languages in the output of the Compiled HTML Help (CHM) transformation. By default, the DITA Map CHM transformation scenario that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Developer plugin has the htmlhelp.locale parameter set to en-US.

To customize this parameter, follow this procedure:

1. Use the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Alt + T, C on OS X)) action from the toolbar or the XML menu.
2. Select the DITA Map CHM transformation scenario and click the Edit button.
3. In the Parameter tab, search for the htmlhelp.locale parameter and change its value to the desired language tag.

**Note:** The format of the htmlhelp.locale parameter is LL-CC, where LL represents the language code (en, for example) and CC represents the country code (us, for example). The language codes are contained in the ISO 639-1 standard and the country codes are contained in the ISO 3166-1 standard. For further details about language tags, go to http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/rfc5646.txt.

DITA Map to Kindle Transformation

Oxygen XML Developer plugin requires KindleGen to generate Kindle output from DITA maps (on page 1621). To install KindleGen for use by Oxygen XML Developer plugin, follow these steps:

1. Go to www.amazon.com/kindleformat/kindlegen and download the zip file that matches your operating system.
2. Unzip the file on your local disk.
3. Start Oxygen XML Developer plugin and open a DITA map.
4. Click the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) button.
5. Select the DITA Map Kindle transformation and press the Edit button to edit it.
6. Go to Parameters tab and set the kindlegen.executable parameter as the path to the KindleGen directory.
7. Accept the changes.

Run DITA OT Integrator Transformation

Oxygen XML Developer plugin comes bundled with a transformation scenario designed to integrate DITA-OT plugins (on page 1625). These DITA-OT plugins are used for various customizations. It is called Run DITA-OT Integrator and is found in the DITA Map section of the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).

⚠️ Attention: The integration will be performed on the DITA-OT version specified in the DITA Open Toolkit section of the DITA preferences page (on page 53).

Running the Transformation Scenario

To integrate a DITA OT plugin, follow these steps:

1. If Oxygen XML Developer plugin was installed in the default location, you may need to restart and run it as an administrator.
2. Select the Apply Transformation Scenario(s) or Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (on page 976) action from the DITA Maps Manager toolbar (you could also use the same action on the main toolbar or open the Transformation Scenarios view (on page 981)).
3. Select the Run DITA-OT Integrator transformation scenario. If the integrator is not visible, select the Show all scenarios action that is available in the Settings drop-down menu.
4. Apply the scenario (on page 975).
5. Check the Results panel at the bottom of the application to make sure the build was successful.
6. Restart Oxygen XML Developer plugin with your normal permissions.

Related Information:

- Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box (on page 976)
- How to Localize the Interface of DITA Map to WebHelp Classic Output (on page 1045)
Solving DITA Transformation Errors

If a DITA transformation results in errors or warnings, the information is displayed in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. The information includes the severity, description of the problem, the name of the resource, and the path of the resource.

To help prevent and solve DITA transformation problems, follow these steps:

1. Validate your DITA documents by using the Validate action from the Validation toolbar drop-down menu, the XML menu, or from the Validate menu when invoking the contextual menu in the Navigator view (on page 210).
2. If this action results in validation errors, solve them prior to executing the transformation. Also, you should pay attention to the warning messages because they may identify problems in the transformation.
3. Run the DITA transformation scenario (on page 919).
4. If the transformation results in errors or warnings, they are displayed in the Results panel (on page 226) at the bottom of the editor. The following information is presented to help you troubleshoot the problems:
   - **Severity** - The first column displays the following icons that indicate the severity of the problem:
     - Informational - The transformation encountered a condition of which you should be aware.
     - Warning - The transformation encountered a problem that should be corrected.
     - Error - The transformation encountered a more severe problem, and the output is affected or cannot be generated.
   - **Info** - You can click the See More icon to open a web page that contains details about DITA-OT error messages.
   - **Description** - A description of the problem.
   - **Resource** - The name of the transformation resource.
   - **System ID** - The path of the transformation resource.
5. Use this information or other resources from the online DITA-OT community to solve the transformation problems before re-executing the transformation scenario.
6. If you need to contact the Oxygen technical support team, they will need you to send the entire transformation scenario execution log. To obtain it:
   a. Go to the Options > Preferences > DITA preferences page and set the Show console output option to Always.
   b. Execute the transformation scenario again. The console output messages are displayed in the DITA OT view.
   c. Copy the entire log, save it in a text file, then send it to the Oxygen technical support team.
d. After your issue has been solved, go back to the Options > Preferences > DITA preferences page and set the Show console output option to When build fails.

DocBook Transformation Scenarios

Built-in transformation scenarios allow you to transform DocBook documents to a variety of outputs, such as WebHelp, PDF, HTML, HTML Chunk, XHTML, XHTML Chunk, and EPUB. Oxygen XML Developer plugin also includes a DocBook 5.1 transformation scenario for Assembly documents. All of them are listed in the DocBook 4 and DocBook 5 sections in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).

Related Information:

- Editing a Transformation Scenario (on page 972)
- Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box (on page 976)
- Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios (on page 975)

DocBook to WebHelp Classic Transformation

DocBook documents can be transformed into several types of WebHelp systems (with or without a feedback section). The WebHelp Classic layout and features (on page 986) are designed for desktop systems and include a familiar classical style. Oxygen XML Developer plugin also provides numerous possibilities for customizing the WebHelp Classic output (on page 1019).

WebHelp Classic Transformation Scenario

To publish a DocBook document as a WebHelp Classic system, follow these steps:

1. Click the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) action from the toolbar.
2. Select the DocBook WebHelp Classic scenario from the DocBook 4 or DocBook 5 section.
3. Click Apply associated.

When the DocBook WebHelp Classic transformation is complete, the output is automatically opened in your default browser.

WebHelp Classic with Feedback Transformation Scenario

To publish a DocBook document as a WebHelp Classic with Feedback system, follow these steps:
1. Click **Configure Transformation Scenarios**.
2. Select the **DocBook WebHelp Classic with Feedback** scenario from the **DocBook 4** or **DocBook 5** section.
3. Click **Apply associated**.
4. Enter the documentation product ID and the documentation version.

   When the **DocBook WebHelp Classic with Feedback** transformation is complete, your default browser opens the **installation.html** file. This file contains information about the output location, system requirements, installation instructions, and deployment of the output. Follow the instructions to complete the system deployment. For more information, see **Deploying a Feedback-Enabled System (on page 1085)**.

   For more information about the feedback-enabled WebHelp system, watch our video demonstration:

   [https://www.youtube.com/embed/eoQ2uxHvppE](https://www.youtube.com/embed/eoQ2uxHvppE)

**Customizing DocBook WebHelp Transformation Scenarios**

To customize a DocBook WebHelp transformation scenario, you can edit various parameters, including the following most commonly used ones:

- **default.language**
  This parameter is used if the language is not detected in the **DITA map**. The default value is **en-us**.

- **clean.output**
  Deletes all files from the output folder before the transformation is performed (only **no** and **yes** values are valid and the default value is **no**).

- **l10n.gentext.default.language**
  This parameter is used to identify the correct stemmer that differs from language to language. For example, for English the value of this parameter is **en** or for French it is **fr**, and so on.

- **use.stemming**
  Controls whether or not you want to include stemming search algorithms into the published output (default setting is **false**).

- **webhelp.copyright**
  Adds a small copyright text that appears at the end of the **Table of Contents** pane.

- **webhelp.custom.resources**
The file path to a directory that contains resources files. All files from this directory will be copied to the root of the WebHelp output.

**webhelp.favicon**

The file path that points to an image to be used as a *favicon* in the WebHelp output.

**webhelp.footer.file**

Path to an XML file that includes the footer content for your WebHelp output pages. You can use this parameter to integrate social media features (such as widgets for Facebook™, Twitter™, Google Analytics, or Google+™). The file must be well-formed, each widget must be in separate `div` or `span` element, and the code for each `script` element is included in an XML comment (also, the start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line). The following code excerpt is an example for adding a Facebook™ widget:

```xml
<div id="facebook">
  <div id="fb-root"></div>
  <script>
    <!-- (function(d, s, id) {
      var js, fjs = d.getElementsByTagName(s)[0];
      if (d.getElementById(id)) return;
      js = d.createElement(s); js.id = id;
      js.src = "//connect.facebook.net/en_US/sdk.js";
      fjs.parentNode.insertBefore(js, fjs);
    } (document, 'script', 'facebook-jssdk')); -->
    <div data-share="true" data-show-faces="true" data-action="like" data-layout="standard" class="fb-like"/>
  </script>
</div>
```

**webhelp.footer.include**

Specifies whether or not to include footer in each WebHelp page. Possible values: yes, no. If set to no, no footer is added to the WebHelp pages. If set to yes and the `webhelp.footer.file` parameter has a value, then the content of that file is used as footer. If the `webhelp.footer.file` has no value then a default Oxygen footer is inserted in each WebHelp page.

**webhelp.logo.image.target.url**

Specifies a target URL that is set on the logo image. When you click the logo image, you will be redirected to this address.

**webhelp.logo.image**

Specifies a path to an image displayed as a logo in the left side of the output header.
webhelp.product.id (available only for Feedback-enabled systems)

This parameter specifies a short name for the documentation target, or product (for example, mobile-phone-user-guide, hvac-installation-guide).

Note: You can deploy documentation for multiple products on the same server.

Restriction: The following characters are not allowed in the value of this parameter: < > / \ ' ( ) { } = ; * % + & .

webhelp.product.version (available only for Feedback-enabled systems)

Specifies the documentation version number (for example, 1.0, 2.5, etc.). New user comments are bound to this version.

Note: Multiple documentation versions can be deployed on the same server.

Restriction: The following characters are not allowed in the value of this parameter: < > / \ ' ( ) { } = ; * % + & .

webhelp.search.ranking

If this parameter is set to false then the 5-star rating mechanism is no longer included in the search results that are displayed on the Search tab (default setting is true).

webhelp.skin.css

Path to a CSS file that sets the style theme in the WebHelp Classic output. It can be one of the built-in skin CSS from the OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\frameworks\docbook\xsl\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\predefined-skins directory, or it can be a custom skin CSS generated with the Oxygen Skin Builder web application.


Related Information:

- DITA Map to WebHelp Classic Transformation (on page 869)
- Customizing WebHelp Classic Output (on page 1019)
DocBook to DITA Transformation

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in transformation scenario that is designed to convert DocBook content to DITA. This transformation scenario is based upon a DITA Open Toolkit plugin that is available at sourceforge.net.

To convert a DocBook document to DITA, follow these steps:

1. Use one of the following two methods to begin the transformation process:
   - To apply the transformation scenario to a newly opened file, use the Apply Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, T (Command + Alt + T, T on OS X)) action from the toolbar or the XML menu.
   - To customize the transformation or change the scenario that is associated with the document, use the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Alt + T, C on OS X)) action from the toolbar or the XML menu.
2. Select the DocBook to DITA transformation scenario in the DocBook 4 or DocBook 5 section.
3. Click the Apply associated button to run the transformation.

   Step Result: The transformation will convert as many of the DocBook elements into equivalent DITA elements as it can recognize in its mapping process. For elements that cannot be mapped, the transformation will insert XML comments so that you can see which elements could not be converted.
4. Adjust the resulting DITA composite to suit your needs. You may have to remove comments, fix validation errors, adjust certain attributes, or split the content into individual topics.

Related Information:

- Editing a Transformation Scenario (on page 972)
- Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box (on page 976)

DocBook to PDF Transformation

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in transformation scenario that is designed to convert DocBook content to PDF.

To convert a DocBook document to PDF, follow these steps:

1. Use one of the following two methods to begin the transformation process:
To apply the transformation scenario to a newly opened file, use the **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** (Alt + Shift + T, T (Command + Alt + T, T on OS X)) action from the toolbar or the XML menu.

To customize the transformation or change the scenario that is associated with the document, use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Alt + T, C on OS X)) action from the toolbar or the XML menu.

2. Select the DocBook PDF transformation scenario in the DocBook 4 or DocBook 5 section.
3. Click the **Apply associated** button to run the transformation.

For information about customizing the PDF output for DocBook content, see [DocBook to PDF Output Customization (on page 1392)](#).

### Related Information:

- [Editing a Transformation Scenario (on page 972)](#)
- [Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box (on page 976)](#)
- [DocBook to PDF Output Customization (on page 1392)](#)

### DocBook to EPUB Transformation

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in transformation scenario that is designed to convert DocBook content to EPUB. The EPUB specification recommends the use of OpenType fonts (recognized by their .otf file extension) whenever possible. To use a specific font, follow these steps:

1. Declare it in your CSS file, as in the following example:

   ```css
   @font-face {
     font-family: "MyFont";
     font-weight: bold;
     font-style: normal;
     src: url(fonts/MyFont.otf);
   }
   ```

2. In the CSS, specify where this font is used. To set it as default for h1 elements, use the `font-family` rule, as in the following example:

   ```css
   h1 {
     font-size: 20pt;
   }
   ```
3. Open the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976), select the DocBook EPUB transformation scenario in the DocBook 4 or DocBook 5 section, and click Edit.

4. In the Parameters tab, set the epub.embedded.fonts parameter to fonts/MyFont.otf. If you need to provide more files, use commas to separate their file paths.

Note: The html.stylesheet parameter allows you to include a custom CSS in the output EPUB.

5. Run the transformation scenario.

DocBook PDF (Show Change Tracking and Comments)

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in transformation scenario that is designed to show tracked changes and comment in DocBook to PDF output.

To include comments and tracked changes (stored within your DocBook 5 documents) in the PDF output, follow these steps:

1. Click the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) button.
2. Select DocBook PDF (Show Change Tracking and Comments) in the DocBook 5 section.
3. If you need to configure the transformation, click the Edit (on page 972) or Duplicate (on page 974) button, make your changes to the scenario, and click OK.
4. Click the Apply Associated button to run the transformation scenario.

Result: Comment threads and tracked changes will now appear in the PDF output. Details about each comment or change will be available in the footer section for each page.

Creating New Transformation Scenarios

Defining a transformation scenario is the first step in the process of transforming a document. This section includes information on the types of new scenarios that are available in Oxygen XML Developer plugin and how to create each type of transformation.
**XML Transformation with XSLT**

This type of transformation specifies the transformation parameters and location of an XSLT stylesheet that is applied to the edited XML document. This scenario is useful when you develop an XML document and the XSLT document is in its final form.

To create an **XML transformation with XSLT** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C on OS X) action from the toolbar or the XML menu. Then click the New button and select XML transformation with XSLT.
- Go to Window > Show View and select Transformation Scenarios to display this view (on page 981). Click the New Scenario drop-down menu button and select XML transformation with XSLT.

Both methods open the New Scenario dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the Name of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

**XSLT Tab**

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The XSLT tab contains the following options:

**XML URL**

Specifies the source XML file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the file is used directly from its remote location.

**Note:** If the transformer engine is Saxon 9.x and a custom URI resolver is configured in the advanced Saxon preferences page (on page 156), the XML input of the transformation is passed to that URI resolver. If the transformer engine is one of the built-in XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 engines and the name of an initial template (on page 892) is specified in the scenario, the XML URL field can be empty.

The XML URL field can also be empty if you use external XSLT processors (on page 907). Otherwise, a value is mandatory in this field.
**XSL URL**

Specifies the source XSL file that the transformation will use. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the \( \text{Insert Editor Variables} \) button, or the browsing actions in the \( \text{Browse} \) drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, the file is used directly from its remote location.

**Use “xml-stylesheet” declaration**

If selected, the scenario applies the stylesheet specified explicitly in the XML document with the `xml-stylesheet` processing instruction. By default, this option is deselected and the transformation applies the XSLT stylesheet that is specified in the XSL URL field.

**Transformer**

This drop-down menu presents all the transformation engines available to Oxygen XML Developer plugin for performing a transformation. These include the built-in engines and the external engines defined in the Custom Engines preferences page (on page 142). The engine you choose is used as the default transformation engine. Also, if an XSLT or XQuery document does not have an associated validation scenario, this transformation engine is used in the validation process (if it provides validation support).

**Advanced options**

Allows you to configure the advanced options of the Saxon HE/PE/EE engine (on page 895) for the current transformation scenario. To configure the same options globally, go to the Saxon-HE/PE/EE preferences page (on page 154). For the current transformation scenario, these Advanced options override the options configured in that preferences page.

**Parameters**

Opens a Configure parameters dialog box (on page 893) that allows you to configure the XSLT parameters used in the current transformation. In this dialog box, you can also configure the parameters for additional XSLT stylesheets (on page 893). If the XSLT transformation engine is custom-defined, you cannot use this dialog box to configure the parameters sent to the custom engine. Instead, you can copy all parameters from the dialog box using contextual menu actions and edit the custom XSLT engine to include the necessary parameters in the command line that starts the transformation process.

**Extensions**

Opens a dialog box for configuring the XSLT extension JARS or classes (on page 894) that define extension Java functions or extension XSLT elements used in the transformation.
Additional XSLT stylesheets

Opens a dialog box for adding XSLT stylesheets (on page 894) that are applied on the main stylesheet specified in the XSL URL field. This is useful when a chain of XSLT stylesheets must be applied to the input XML document.

XSLT Parameters

The global parameters of the XSLT stylesheet used in a transformation scenario can be configured by using the Parameters button in the XSLT tab of a new or edited transformation scenario dialog box.

The resulting dialog box includes a table that displays all the parameters of the current XSLT stylesheet, all imported and included stylesheets, and all additional stylesheets (on page 894), along with their descriptions and current values. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and you can use the Filter text box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

If the XPath column is selected, the parameter value is evaluated as an XPath expression before starting the XSLT transformation.

**Example:**

For example, you can use expressions such as:

```
doc('test.xml')//entry
//person[@atr='val']
```

**Note:**

1. The `doc` function solves the argument relative to the XSL stylesheet location. You can use full paths or editor variables (on page 162) (such as `$cfdu` [current file directory]) to specify other locations: `doc('${cfdu}/test.xml')/*`
2. You cannot use XSLT Functions. Only XPath functions are allowed.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing the parameters:

**New**

Opens the Add Parameter dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. An editor variable (on page 162) can be inserted in the text box using the Insert Editor Variables button. If the Evaluate as XPath option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

**Edit**
Opens the **Edit Parameter** dialog box that allows you to edit the selected parameter. An **editor variable** (on page 162) can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

**Unset**

Resets the selected parameter to its default value. Available only for edited parameters with set values.

**Delete**

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

The bottom panel presents the following:

- The default value of the parameter selected in the table.
- A description of the parameter, if available.
- The system ID of the stylesheet that declares it.

**Related Information:**

- **Editor Variables** (on page 162)

---

**XSLT Extensions**

The **Extensions** button opens a dialog box that allows you to specify the **JARS** (on page 1623) and classes that contain extension functions called from the XSLT file of the current transformation scenario. You can use the **Add**, **Edit**, and **Remove** buttons to configure the extensions.

**Tip:** You can specify the path to the resources using wildcards (for example, `{oxygenHome}/lib/*.jar`).

An extension function called from the XSLT file of the current transformation scenario will be searched, in the specified extensions, in the order displayed in this dialog box. To change the order of the items, select the item to be moved and press the **Move up** or **Move down** buttons.

**Additional XSLT Stylesheets**

Use the **Additional XSLT Stylesheets** button in the **XSLT** tab to display a list of additional XSLT stylesheets to be used in the transformation and you can add files to the list or edit existing entries. The following actions are available:
Add

Adds a stylesheet in the Additional XSLT stylesheets list using a file browser dialog box. You can type an editor variable (on page 162) in the file name field of the browser dialog box. The name of the stylesheet will be added in the list after the current selection.

Remove

Deletes the selected stylesheet from the Additional XSLT stylesheets list.

Up

Moves the selected stylesheet up in the list.

Down

Moves the selected stylesheet down in the list.

Advanced Saxon HE/PE/EE XSLT Transformation Options

The XSLT transformation scenario allows you to configure advanced options that are specific for the Saxon HE (Home Edition), PE (Professional Edition), and EE (Enterprise Edition) engines. They are the same options as those in the Saxon HE/PE/EE preferences page (on page 154) but they are configured as a specific set of transformation options for each transformation scenario, while the values set in the preferences page apply as global options. The advanced options configured in a transformation scenario override the global options defined in the preferences page.

Saxon-HE/PE/EE Options

The advanced options for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE), and Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Mode (“-im”)

A Saxon-specific option that sets the initial mode for the transformation. If this value is also specified in a configuration file (on page 895), the value in this option takes precedence.

Template (“-it”)

A Saxon-specific option that sets the name of the initial XSLT template to be executed. If this value is also specified in a configuration file (on page 895), the value in this option takes precedence.

Use a configuration file (“-config”)

Select this option if you want to use a Saxon 9.8.0.12 configuration file that will be executed for the XSLT transformation and validation processes. You can specify the path to the configuration file by entering it in the URL field, or by using the Insert... button.
Editor Variables button, or using the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

Debugger trace into XPath expressions (applies to debugging sessions)

Instructs the XSLT Debugger (on page 1513) to step into XPath expressions.

Enable Optimizations (“-opt”)

This option is selected by default, which means that optimization is enabled. If not selected, the optimization is suppressed, which is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

Line numbering (“-l”)

Line numbers where errors occur are included in the output messages.

Expand attributes defaults (“-expand”)

Specifies whether or not the attributes defined in the associated DTD or XML Schema are expanded in the output of the transformation you are executing.

DTD validation of the source (“-dtd”)

Specifies whether or not the source document will be validated against their associated DTD. You can choose from the following:

- On - Requests DTD validation of the source file and of any files read using the document() function.
- Off - (default setting) Suppresses DTD validation.
- Recover - Performs DTD validation but treats the errors as non-fatal.

Note: Any external DTD is likely to be read even if not used for validation, since DTDs can contain definitions of entities.

Recoverable errors (“-warnings”)

Specifies how dynamic errors are handled. The following options can be selected:

- Recover silently (“silent”) - Continues processing without reporting the error.
- Recover with warnings (“recover”) - Issues a warning but continues processing.
- Signal the error and do not attempt recovery (“fatal”) - Issues an error and stops processing.

Strip whitespaces (“-strip”)

Specifies how the strip whitespaces operation is handled. You can choose one of the following values:
• **All** ("all") - Strips all whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any xml:space attributes in the source document.
• **Ignore** ("ignorable") - Strips all ignorable whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any xml:space attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.
• **None** ("none") - Strips no whitespace before further processing.

**Saxon-PE/EE Options**

The following advanced options are specific for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Professional Edition (PE) and Enterprise Edition (EE) only:

**Register Saxon-JS extension functions and instructions**

Registers the Saxon-CE extension functions and instructions when compiling a stylesheet using the Saxon 9.8.0.12 processors.

**Note:** Saxon-CE, being JavaScript-based, was designed to run inside a web browser. This means that you will use Oxygen XML Developer plugin only for developing the Saxon-CE stylesheet, leaving the execution part to a web browser. See more details about executing such a stylesheet on Saxonica's website.

**Allow calls on extension functions** ("-ext")

If selected, the stylesheet is allowed to call external Java functions. This does not affect calls on integrated extension functions, including Saxon and EXSLT extension functions. This option is useful when loading an untrusted stylesheet (such as from a remote site using http://[URL]). It ensures that the stylesheet cannot call arbitrary Java methods and thus gain privileged access to resources on your machine.

**Enable assertions** ("-ea")

In XSLT 3.0, you can use the xsl:assert element to make assertions in the form of XPath expressions, causing a dynamic error if the assertion turns out to be false. If this option is selected, XSLT 3.0 xsl:assert instructions are enabled. If it is not selected (default), the assertions are ignored.

**Saxon-EE Options**

The advanced options that are specific for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

**XML Schema version**

Use this option to change the default XML Schema version for this transformation. To change the default XML Schema version globally, open the Preferences dialog box.
and go to XML > XML Parser > XML Schema and use the Default XML Schema version option (on page 139).

Validation of the source file ("-val")

Requests schema-based validation of the source file and of any files read using document() or similar functions. It can have the following values:

- **Schema validation ("strict")** - This mode requires an XML Schema and allows for parsing the source documents with strict schema-validation enabled.
- **Lax schema validation ("lax")** - If an XML Schema is provided, this mode allows for parsing the source documents with schema-validation enabled but the validation will not fail if, for example, element declarations are not found.
- **Disable schema validation** - This specifies that the source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.

Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings ("-outval")

Normally, if validation of result documents is requested, a validation error is fatal. Selecting this option causes such validation failures to be treated as warnings.

**Write comments for non-fatal validation errors of the result document**

The validation messages for non-fatal errors are written (wherever possible) as a comment in the result document itself.

Enable streaming mode

Selecting this option will allow an XSLT to run in streaming mode. It is not selected by default.

Other Options

**Initializer class**

Equivalent to the -init Saxon command-line argument. The value is the name of a user-supplied class that implements the net.sf.saxon.lib.Initializer interface. This initializer is called during the initialization process, and may be used to set any options required on the configuration programmatically. It is particularly useful for tasks such as registering extension functions, collations, or external object models, especially in Saxon-HE where the option cannot be set via a configuration file. Saxon only calls the initializer when running from the command line, but the same code may be invoked to perform initialization when running user application code.
Using Saxon Integrated Extension Functions

Saxon, the transformation and validation engine used by Oxygen XML Developer plugin, can be customized by adding custom functions (called Integrated Extension Functions) that can be called from XPath.

To define such a function, follow these steps:

1. Create a file with a Java class that extends `net.sf.saxon.lib.ExtensionFunctionDefinition`. Here is an example:

```java
private static class ShiftLeft extends ExtensionFunctionDefinition {
    @Override
    public StructuredQName getFunctionQName() {
        return new StructuredQName("eg", "http://example.com/saxon-extension", "shift-left");
    }

    @Override
    public SequenceType[] getArgumentTypes() {
        return new SequenceType[] {SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER, SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER};
    }

    @Override
    public SequenceType getResultType(SequenceType[] suppliedArgumentTypes) {
        return SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER;
    }

    @Override
    public ExtensionFunctionCall makeCallExpression() {
        return new ExtensionFunctionCall() {
            public SequenceIterator call(SequenceIterator[] arguments, XPathContext context) throws XPathException {
                long v0 = ((IntegerValue)arguments[0].next()).longValue();
                long v1 = ((IntegerValue)arguments[1].next()).longValue();
                long result = v0<<v1;
                return Value.asIterator(Int64Value.makeIntegerValue(result));
            }
        };
    }
}
```
2. Compile the class and add it to a JAR file.

3. Add a file called `net.sf.saxon.lib.ExtensionFunctionDefinition` that contains the fully qualified name of the Java class in the `META-INF/services/` folder of the JAR file.

   **Note:** To add more function definitions in the same JAR file, you need to add their fully qualified names on different lines.

To enable Oxygen XML Developer plugin to pick up your custom function definition, the JAR file should be added to the classpath of the transformer. Here are some possibilities:

- If you develop a framework, you just need to link the JAR file in the **Classpath** tab (on page 61).
- In a validation scenario (on page 433), you can use the **Extensions** button to open a dialog box where you can add libraries.
- In a transformation scenario, you can use the **Extensions** button in the **XSLT** tab (on page 892) to open a dialog box where you can add libraries.

**FO Processor Tab (XSLT Transformations)**

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **FO Processor** tab contains the following options:

**Perform FO Processing**

Specifies whether or not an FO processor is applied (either the built-in Apache FOP engine or an external engine defined in **Preferences**) during the transformation.

**Input**

Choose between the following options to specify which input file to use:

- **XSLT result as input** - The FO processor is applied to the result of the XSLT transformation that is defined in the **XSLT** tab.
- **XML URL as input** - The FO processor is applied to the input XML file.

**Method**

The output format of the FO processing. The available options depend on the selected processor type.
Processor

Specifies the FO processor to be used for the transformation. It can be the built-in Apache FOP processor or an external processor (on page 126).

Output Tab (XSLT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The Output tab contains the following options:

**Prompt for file**

At the end of the transformation, a file browser dialog box is displayed for specifying the path and name of the file that stores the transformation result.

**Save As**

The path of the file where the result of the transformation is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the [Insert Editor Variables (on page 162)] button, or the [Browse] button.

**Open in Browser/System Application**

If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the file type of the result (for example, in Windows PDF files are often opened in Acrobat Reader).

**Note:** To set the web browser that is used for displaying HTML/XHTML pages, go to Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser and specify it there.

- **Output file** - When Open in Browser/System Application is selected, you can use this button to automatically open the default output file at the end of the transformation.
- **Other location** - When Open in Browser/System Application is selected, you can use this option to open the file specified in this field at the end of the transformation.

You can specify the path by using the text field, the [Insert Editor Variables (on page 162)] button, or the [Browse] button.

**Open in editor**

When this is option is selected, at the end of the transformation, the default output file is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor, or if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor).
Show in results view as

You can choose to view the results in one of the following:

- **XML** - If this is selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the transformation result in an XML viewer panel at the bottom of the application window with syntax highlighting (on page 112).

- **XHTML** - This option is only available if Open in Browser/System Application is not selected. If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the transformation result in a built-in XHTML browser panel at the bottom of the application window.

⚠️ **Important:** When transforming very large documents, you should be aware that selecting this option may result in very long processing times. This drawback is due to the built-in Java XHTML browser implementation. To avoid delays for large documents, if you want to see the XHTML result of the transformation, you should use an external browser by selecting the Open in Browser/System Application option instead.

- **Image URLs are relative to** - If Show in results view as XHTML is selected, this option specifies the path used to resolve image paths contained in the transformation result. You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the Browse button.

⚠️ **Attention:** If your input XSLT contains `<xsl:result-document>` elements, then the secondary results will be saved to the specified URIs while the principal result is specified in this Output tab. For more information, see: https://www.w3.org/TR/xslt-30/#element-result-document.

**Oxygen XML Developer plugin Browser View**

The Oxygen XML Developer plugin Browser view is automatically displayed in the views pane of the Eclipse window to display HTML output from XSLT transformations. It contains a tab for each file with HTML results displayed in the view.

Figure 346. Browser View
The Oxygen XML Developer plugin **Text** view is automatically displayed in the views pane of the Eclipse window to display text output from XSLT transformations, FO processor info, warnings, and error messages. It contains a tab for each file with text results displayed in the view.

**Figure 347. Text View**

**Text View Contextual Menu Actions**

The following actions are available when the contextual menu is invoked in this view:

- **Clear**
  
  Removes all content from the view.

- **Copy**
  
  Copies the selected content to the clipboard.

- **Select All**
  
  Selects all content in the view.
**Format and Indent**

Formats (*pretty-prints (on page 1625)*) the content in this view.

**Find/Replace**

Allows you to perform search and replace operations.

**Save Results**

Saves the content in the view to a file in text format.

### Configuring an XSLT Processor for Generating Output

This section explains how to configure an XSLT processor and extensions for such a processor in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

#### Supported XSLT Processors

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes the following XSLT processors:

- **Xalan 2.7.2** - Xalan-Java is an XSLT processor for transforming XML documents into HTML, text, or other XML document types. It implements XSL Transformations (XSLT) Version 1.0 and XML Path Language (XPath) Version 1.0.

- **Saxon 6.5.5** - Saxon 6.5.5 is an XSLT processor that implements the Version 1.0 XSLT and XPath with a number of powerful extensions. This version of Saxon also includes many of the new features that were first defined in the XSLT 1.1 working draft, but for conformance and portability reasons these are not available if the stylesheet header specifies `version="1.0"`.

- **Saxon 9.8.0.12 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE)** - Saxon-HE/PE implements the basic conformance level for XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 and XQuery 1.0. The term *basic XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 processor* is defined in the draft XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 specifications. It is a conformance level that requires support for all features of the language other than those that involve schema processing. The HE product remains open source, but removes some of the more advanced features that are present in Saxon-PE.

- **Saxon 9.8.0.12 Enterprise Edition (EE)** - Saxon EE is the schema-aware edition of Saxon and it is one of the built-in processors included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. Saxon EE includes an XML Schema processor, and schema-aware XSLT, XQuery, and XPath processors.

The validation in schema aware transformations is done according to the XML Schema 1.0 or 1.1. This can be configured in Preferences (*on page 138*).

**Note:** Oxygen XML Developer plugin implements a Saxon *framework* that allows you to create Saxon configuration files. Two templates are available: **Saxon collection catalog** and **Saxon configuration**. Both of these templates support content completion, element annotation, and attribute annotation.
Note: Saxon can use the ICU-J localization library (saxon9-icu.jar) to add support for sorting and date/number formatting in a wide variety of languages. This library is not included in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation kit. However, Saxon will use the default collation and localization support available in the currently used JRE. To enable this capability, follow these steps:

2. Unpack the downloaded archive.
3. Create a new XSLT transformation scenario (or edit an existing one). In the XSLT tab, click the Extensions button to open the list of additional libraries used by the transformation process.
4. Click Add and browse to the folder where you unpacked the downloaded archive and choose the saxon9-icu.jar file.

Note that the saxon9-icu.jar should NOT be added to the application library folder because it will conflict with another version of the ICU-J library that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

• Saxon-CE (Client Edition) is Saxonica's implementation of XSLT 2.0 for use on web browsers. Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for editing stylesheets that contain Saxon-CE extension functions and instructions. This support improves the validation, content completion, and syntax highlighting.

Note: Saxon-CE, being JavaScript-based, was designed to run inside a web browser. This means that you will use Oxygen XML Developer plugin only for developing the Saxon-CE stylesheet, leaving the execution part to a web browser. See more details about executing such a stylesheet on Saxonica's website.

Note: A specific template, named Saxon-CE stylesheet, is available in the New from Templates wizard (on page 311).

• Xsltproc (libxslt) - Libxslt is the XSLT C library developed for the Gnome project. Libxslt is based on libxml2, the XML C library developed for the Gnome project. It also implements most of the EXSLT set of processor-portable extensions, functions, and some of Saxon's evaluate and expression extensions. Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses Libxslt through its command-line tool (Xsltproc). Depending on your operating system, you must download the Libxslt libraries on your machine from http://xmlsoft.org/XSLT/downloads.html and place them in a local folder. Then you need to update the PATH environmental variable to contain the parent folder where the xsltproc executable is located.

Tip: As an example, a Windows installation of the Xsltproc engine would follow these steps:
2. Unzip all of them into the same folder of your choice.
3. Edit the PATH environment variable and add the bin folder for all four archives:

![Edit environment variable](image)


**Result:** You can now use the `xsltproc` processor as an XSLT engine in the XSLT transformation scenario.

**Note:** The Xsltproc processor can be configured from the XSLTPROC options page (on page 157).

**CAUTION:** There is a known problem where file paths that contain spaces are not handled correctly in the LIBXML processor. For example, the built-in XML Catalog (on page 1627) files of the built-in document types (DocBook, TEI, DITA, etc.) are not handled properly by LIBXML if Oxygen XML Developer plugin is installed in the default location on Windows (C:\Program Files). This is because the built-in XML catalog files are stored in the `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks` subdirectory of the installation directory, and in this case it contains a space character.

- **MSXML 4.0** - MSXML 4.0 is available only on Windows platforms. It can be used for transformation (on page 890) and validation of XSLT stylesheets (on page 521).

Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the Microsoft XML parser through its command-line tool `msxsl.exe`.

Since `msxsl.exe` is only a wrapper, Microsoft Core XML Services (MSXML) must be installed on the computer. Otherwise, you will get a corresponding warning. You can get the latest Microsoft XML parser from Microsoft web-site.

- **MSXML .NET** - MSXML .NET is available only on Windows platforms. It can be used for transformation (on page 890) and validation of XSLT stylesheets (on page 521).
Oxygen XML Developer plugin performs XSLT transformations and validations using the .NET Framework XSLT implementation (System.Xml.Xsl.XslTransform class) through the nxslt command-line utility. The nxslt version included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin is 1.6.

You should have the .NET Framework version 1.0 already installed on your system. Otherwise, you will get the following warning: MSXML.NET requires .NET Framework version 1.0 to be installed. Exit code: 128.

You can get the .NET Framework version 1.0 from the Microsoft website.

• .NET 1.0 - A transformer based on the System.Xml 1.0 library available in the .NET 1.0 and .NET 1.1 frameworks from Microsoft (http://msdn.microsoft.com/xml/). It is available only on Windows.

You should have the .NET Framework version 1.0 or 1.1 already installed on your system. Otherwise, you will get the following warning: MSXML.NET requires .NET Framework version 1.0 to be installed. Exit code: 128.

You can get the .NET Framework version 1.0 from the Microsoft website.

• .NET 2.0 - A transformer based on the System.Xml 2.0 library available in the .NET 2.0 Framework from Microsoft. It is available only on Windows.

You should have the .NET Framework version 2.0 already installed on your system. Otherwise, you will get the following warning: MSXML.NET requires .NET Framework version 2.0 to be installed. Exit code: 128.

You can get the .NET Framework version 2.0 from the Microsoft website.

Configuring Custom XSLT Processors

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to configure custom processors to be used for running XSLT and XQuery transformations.

To add a new custom processor, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XSLT-FO-XQuery > Custom Engines.
2. Click the + New button at the bottom of the dialog box.
3. Configure the parameters for the custom engine (on page 142).
4. Click OK.

Note:
The output messages of a custom processor are displayed in an output view at the bottom of the application window. If an output message follows the format of an Oxygen XML Developer plugin linked message (on page 429), clicking it highlights the location of the message in an editor panel containing the file referenced in the message.

Related Information:
- Custom Engines Preferences (on page 142)

Configuring the XSLT Processor Extensions Paths

The Xalan and Saxon processors support the use of extension elements and extension functions. Unlike a literal result element, which the stylesheet simply transfers to the result tree, an extension element performs an action. The extension is usually used because the XSLT stylesheet fails in providing adequate functions for accomplishing a more complex task.

For more information about how to use extensions, see the following links:

- Saxon 6.5.5 - http://saxon.sourceforge.net/saxon6.5.5/extensions.html

To set an XSLT processor extension (a directory or a jar file), use the Extensions button (on page 892) in the Edit scenario dialog box.

XML Transformation with XQuery

This type of transformation specifies the transform parameters and location of an XQuery file that is applied to the edited XML document.

Use the XML transformation with XQuery scenario to apply a transformation in which an XQuery file queries an XML file for the output results.

To create an XML transformation with XQuery scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Alt + T, C on OS X)) action from the toolbar or the XML menu. Then click the New button and select XML transformation with XQuery.
- Go to Window > Show View and select Transformation Scenarios to display this view (on page 981). Click the + • New Scenario drop-down menu button and select XML transformation with XQuery.
Both methods open the **New Scenario** dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

**XQuery Tab**

When you **create a new transformation scenario (on page 890)** or **edit an existing one (on page 972)**, a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **XQuery** tab contains the following options:

**XML URL**

- Specifies the source XML file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the ![Insert Editor Variables](on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the ![Browse](on page 162) drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the file is used directly from its remote location.

**Note:** If the transformer engine is Saxon 9.x and a custom URI resolver is configured in the **advanced Saxon preferences page (on page 156)**, the XML input of the transformation is passed to that URI resolver.

**XQuery URL**

- Specifies the source XQuery file to be used for the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the ![Insert Editor Variables](on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the ![Browse](on page 162) drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, the file is used directly from its remote location.

**Transformer**

- This drop-down menu presents all the transformation engines available to Oxygen XML Developer plugin for performing a transformation. These include the built-in engines and the external engines defined in the Custom Engines preferences page (on page 142). The engine you choose is used as the default transformation engine. Also, if an XSLT or XQuery document does not have an associated validation scenario, this transformation engine is used in the validation process (if it provides validation support).

**Advanced options**
Allows you to configure the advanced options of the Saxon HE/PE/EE engine (on page 912) for the current transformation scenario. To configure the same options globally, go to the Saxon-HE/PE/EE preferences page (on page 154). For the current transformation scenario, these Advanced options override the options configured in that preferences page.

**Parameters**

Opens the Configure parameters dialog box (on page 910) for configuring the XQuery parameters. You can use the buttons in this dialog box to add, edit, or remove parameters. If the XQuery transformation engine is custom-defined, you cannot use this dialog box to set parameters. Instead, you can copy all parameters from the dialog box using contextual menu actions and edit the custom XQuery engine to include the necessary parameters in the command line that starts the transformation process.

**Extensions**

Opens a dialog box for configuring the XQuery extension JARS or classes (on page 911) that define extension Java functions or extension XSLT elements used in the transformation.

**XQuery Parameters**

The global parameters of the XQuery file used in a transformation scenario can be configured by using the Parameters button in the XQuery tab.

The resulting dialog box includes a table that displays all the parameters of the current XQuery file, along with their descriptions and current values. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and use the Filter text box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

If the XPath column is selected, the parameter value is evaluated as an XPath expression before starting the XQuery transformation.

**Example:**

For example, you can use expressions such as:

```xml
/doc('test.xml')//entry
//person[@atr='val']
```

**Note:**

1. The doc function solves the argument relative to the XQuery file location. You can use full paths or editor variables (on page 162) (such as $cfdu [current file directory]) to specify other locations: doc($cfdu/test.xml)//*
2. Only XPath functions are allowed.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing the parameters:

**New**

Opens the **Add Parameter** dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. An **editor variable (on page 162)** can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

**Edit**

Opens the **Edit Parameter** dialog box that allows you to edit the selected parameter. An **editor variable (on page 162)** can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

**Unset**

Resets the selected parameter to its default value. Available only for edited parameters with set values.

**Delete**

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

The bottom panel presents the following:

- The default value of the parameter selected in the table.
- A description of the parameter, if available.
- The system ID of the stylesheet that declares it.

**Related Information:**

- Editor Variables (on page 162)

**XQuery Extensions**

The **Extensions** button is used to specify the **JAR (on page 1623)** and classes that contain extension functions called from the XQuery file of the current transformation scenario. You can use the **Add**, **Edit**, and **Remove** buttons to configure the extensions.
An extension function called from the XQuery file of the current transformation scenario will be searched, in the specified extensions, in the order displayed in this dialog box. To change the order of the items, select the item to be moved and press the Move up or Move down buttons.

Advanced Saxon HE/PE/EE XQuery Transformation Options

The XQuery transformation scenario allows you to configure advanced options that are specific for the Saxon HE (Home Edition), PE (Professional Edition), and EE (Enterprise Edition) engines. They are the same options as those in the Saxon HE/PE/EE preferences page (on page 148) but they are configured as a specific set of transformation options for each transformation scenario, while the values set in the preferences page apply as global options. The advanced options configured in a transformation scenario override the global options defined in the preferences page.

Saxon-HE/PE/EE Options

The advanced options for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE), and Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Use a configuration file ("-config")

Sets a Saxon 9.8.0.12 configuration file that is used for XQuery transformation and validation scenarios.

Enable Optimizations ("-opt")

This option is selected by default, which means that optimization is enabled. If not selected, the optimization is suppressed, which is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

Use linked tree model ("-tree:linked")

This option activates the linked tree model.

Recoverable errors ("-warnings")

Specifies how dynamic errors are handled. The following options can be selected:

- **Recover silently** ("silent") - Continues processing without reporting the error.
- **Recover with warnings** ("recover") - Issues a warning but continues processing.
- **Signal the error and do not attempt recovery** ("fatal") - Issues an error and stops processing.

Strip whitespaces ("-strip")

Specifies how the strip whitespaces operation is handled. You can choose one of the following values:
• **All** ("all") - Strips all whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any xml:space attributes in the source document.

• **Ignore** ("ignorable") - Strips all ignorable whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any xml:space attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.

• **None** ("none") - Strips no whitespace before further processing.

### Saxon-PE/EE Options

The following advanced options are specific for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Professional Edition (PE) and Enterprise Edition (EE) only:

#### Allow calls on extension functions ("-ext")

If selected, calls on external functions are allowed. Selecting this option is recommended in an environment where untrusted stylesheets may be executed. It also disables user-defined extension elements and the writing of multiple output files, both of which carry similar security risks.

### Saxon-EE Options

The advanced options that are specific for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

#### Validation of the source file ("-val")

Requests schema-based validation of the source file and of any files read using `document()` or similar functions. It can have the following values:

• **Schema validation** ("strict") - This mode requires an XML Schema and allows for parsing the source documents with strict schema-validation enabled.

• **Lax schema validation** ("lax") - If an XML Schema is provided, this mode allows for parsing the source documents with schema-validation enabled but the validation will not fail if, for example, element declarations are not found.

• **Disable schema validation** - This specifies that the source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.

#### Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings ("-outval")

Normally, if validation of result documents is requested, a validation error is fatal. Selecting this option causes such validation failures to be treated as warnings.

Write comments for non-fatal validation errors of the result document
The validation messages for non-fatal errors are written (wherever possible) as a comment in the result document itself.

**Enable XQuery update ("-update:(on|off)")**

This option controls whether or not XQuery update syntax is accepted. The default value is off.

**Backup files updated by XQuery ("-backup:(on|off)")**

If selected, backup versions for any XML files updated with an XQuery Update are generated. This option is available when the Enable XQuery update option is selected.

**Other Options**

**Initializer class**

Equivalent to the `-init` Saxon command-line argument. The value is the name of a user-supplied class that implements the `net.sf.saxon.lib.Initializer` interface. This initializer is called during the initialization process, and may be used to set any options required on the configuration programmatically. It is particularly useful for tasks such as registering extension functions, collations, or external object models, especially in Saxon-HE where the option cannot be set via a configuration file. Saxon only calls the initializer when running from the command line, but the same code may be invoked to perform initialization when running user application code.

**FO Processor Tab (XQuery Transformations)**

When you create a new transformation scenario ([on page 890](#)) or edit an existing one ([on page 972](#)), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **FO Processor** tab contains the following options:

**Perform FO Processing**

Specifies whether or not an FO processor is applied (either the built-in Apache FOP engine or an external engine defined in [Preferences](#)) during the transformation.

**Input**

Choose between the following options to specify which input file to use:

- **XQuery result as input** - The FO processor is applied to the result of the XQuery transformation that is defined in the **XQuery** tab.
- **XML URL as input** - The FO processor is applied to the input XML file.
Method

The output format of the FO processing. The available options depend on the selected processor type.

Processor

Specifies the FO processor to be used for the transformation. It can be the built-in Apache FOP processor or an external processor (on page 126).

Output Tab (XQuery Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The Output tab contains the following options:

Present as a sequence

Selecting this option will reduce the time necessary to fetch the full results, as it will only fetch the first chunk of the results.

Prompt for file

At the end of the transformation, a file browser dialog box is displayed for specifying the path and name of the file that stores the transformation result.

Save As

The path of the file where the result of the transformation is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the Browse button.

Open in Browser/System Application

If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the file type of the result (for example, in Windows PDF files are often opened in Acrobat Reader).

Note: To set the web browser that is used for displaying HTML/XHTML pages, go to Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser and specify it there.

- Output file - When Open in Browser/System Application is selected, you can use this button to automatically open the default output file at the end of the transformation.
- Other location - When Open in Browser/System Application is selected, you can use this option to open the file specified in this field at the end of the transformation.
You can specify the path by using the text field, the `Insert Editor Variables` button, or the `Browse` button.

**Open in editor**

When this option is selected, at the end of the transformation, the default output file is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor, or if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor).

**Show in results view as**

You can choose to view the results in one of the following:

- **XML** - If this is selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the transformation result in an XML viewer panel at the bottom of the application window with syntax highlighting.
- **XHTML** - This option is only available if **Open in Browser/System Application** is not selected. If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the transformation result in a built-in XHTML browser panel at the bottom of the application window.

⚠️ **Important**: When transforming very large documents, you should be aware that selecting this option may result in very long processing times. This drawback is due to the built-in Java XHTML browser implementation. To avoid delays for large documents, if you want to see the XHTML result of the transformation, you should use an external browser by selecting the **Open in Browser/System Application** option instead.

- **Image URLs are relative to** - If **Show in results view as XHTML** is selected, this option specifies the path used to resolve image paths contained in the transformation result. You can specify the path by using the text field, the `Insert Editor Variables` button, or the `Browse` button.

**XML to PDF Transformation with CSS**

This type of transformation uses the Oxygen PDF Chemistry processing engine to obtain PDF output by applying CSS styling to the edited XML document. This scenario is useful for those who are familiar with CSS and want to obtain PDF output as its final form.

To create an **XML to PDF transformation with CSS** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the `Configure Transformation Scenario(s)` action from the toolbar or the XML menu. Then click the **New** button and select **XML to PDF transformation with CSS**.
Go to Window > Show View and select Transformation Scenarios to display this view (on page 981). Click the New Scenario drop-down menu button and select XML to PDF transformation with CSS.

Both methods open the New Scenario dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the Name of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

For more information about the Oxygen PDF Chemistry processing engine and numerous tips for customizing the output, see the Oxygen Chemistry User Guide.

CSS Tab (XML to PDF Transformation with CSS)

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The CSS tab contains the following options:

XML URL

Specifies the source XML file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the Insert Editor Variables button, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the file is used directly from its remote location.

CSS URL

Optionally, you can use this option to specify the location of a custom CSS file to be applied to the transformation. If this option is left blank, only the CSS referenced directly from the document will be applied. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the Insert Editor Variables button, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

Apply CSS stylesheets set in the current framework

If selected, CSS stylesheets that are specified in the framework (in the Document Type configuration CSS subtab (on page 63)) are applied to the transformation in addition to any CSS referenced directly in the document or specified in the CSS URL field (on page 917).
**Note:** If CSS files are specified in multiple ways, the transformation applies the CSS in the following order (from lowest priority to highest):

- CSS files that are specified in the framework (in the Document Type configuration CSS subtab *(on page 63)*).
- CSS files referenced directly in the document.
- CSS files specified in the CSS URL field *(on page 917)*.

**Processor options link**

Opens the CSS-based Processors preferences page *(on page 129)* where you can configure some options for generating PDF output.

**Output Tab (XML to PDF Transformation with CSS)**

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 890)* or edit an existing one *(on page 972)*, a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab contains the following options:

**Output File section**

**Save As**

The path of the file where the result of the transformation is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables *(on page 162)* button, or the Browse button.

**Open in Browser/System Application**

If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the PDF file type (for example, in Windows PDF files are often opened in Acrobat Reader).

**Debugging section**

**Dump the intermediate annotated XML**

Select this option to include (dump) the intermediate, annotated XML file in the same location as the output file. This can be used for debugging purposes.

**Dump the FO file**
Select this option to include (dump) the FO file (before it is converted to PDF) in the same location as the output file. This can be used for debugging purposes.

**Console options link**

Opens the [CSS-based Processors preferences page](on page 129) where you can configure some options for generating PDF output.

**DITA OT Transformation**

This type of transformation specifies the parameters for an Ant transformation that executes a DITA-OT build script. Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in version of Ant and a built-in version of DITA-OT, but other versions can be set in the scenario.

To create a **DITA OT Transformation** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Alt + T, C on OS X)) action from the DITA Maps Manager toolbar, main toolbar, or the XML menu. Then click the New button and select **DITA OT Transformation**.
- Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view (on page 981). Click the **New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **DITA OT Transformation**.

Both methods open the **DITA Transformation Type** dialog box that presents the list of possible outputs.

**Figure 348. DITA Transformation Type Dialog Box**

Select the desired type of output and click **OK**. This opens the **New Scenario** dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.
The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation. Some of these tabs are only available for certain output types (for example, a **Skins** tab is only available for **WebHelp Classic** and **WebHelp Classic with Feedback** output types, a **Templates** tab is available only for **WebHelp Responsive** and **WebHelp Responsive with Feedback**, and a **FO Processor** tab is available for PDF output).

**Skins Tab (DITA OT Transformations)**

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Skins** tab is available for DITA OT transformations with **WebHelp Classic** or **WebHelp Classic with Feedback** output types and it provides a set of built-in skins that you can use as a base for your WebHelp system output.

A *skin* is a collection of CSS properties that can alter the look of the output by changing colors, font types, borders, margins, and paddings. This allows you to rapidly adapt the look and feel of your output.

Figure 349. Skins Tab

The **Skins** tab includes the following sections:

**Built-in Skins**

This sections presents the built-in skins that are included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. The built-in skins cover a wide range of chromatic themes, ranging from a very...
light one to a high-contrast variant. To see how the skin looks when applied on a sample documentation project that is stored on the Oxygen XML Developer plugin website, press the Online preview link.

**Custom Skins**

You can use this section to customize the look of the output.

**CSS File**

You can set this field to point to a custom CSS stylesheet or customized skin. A custom CSS file will overwrite a skin selection.

⚠️ **Note:** The output can also be styled by setting the args.css parameter in the Parameters tab. The properties taken from the stylesheet referenced in this parameter take precedence over the properties declared in the skin set in the Skins tab.

**Create custom skin**

Use this link to open the WebHelp Skin Builder (on page 1019) tool.

Templates Tab (DITA OT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The Templates tab is available for DITA OT transformations with WebHelp Responsive, WebHelp Responsive with Feedback, or PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS output types and it provides a set of built-in publishing templates (on page 1104). You can use one of them to publish your documentation or as a starting point for a new publishing template.

Figure 350. Templates Tab
Filtering and Previewing Templates

You can click on the tags at the top of the pane to filter the templates and narrow your search. Each built-in template also includes an Online preview icon in the bottom-right corner that opens a webpage in your default browser providing a sample of how the main page will look when that particular template is used to generate the output.

Built-in Templates Locations

Oxygen XML Developer plugin scans the following locations to find the built-in templates to display in the dialog box:

- **WebHelp Responsive Templates** - All built-in WebHelp Responsive publishing templates are stored in the following directory: `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/templates`.
- **PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** - All built-in PDF publishing templates are stored in the following directories:
  - `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.oxygenxml.pdf.css/templates`
  - `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/templates`
Custom Templates Locations

Oxygen XML Developer plugin scans the locations specified in the DITA > Publishing preferences page (on page 54) to find custom templates to display in the dialog box. You can access that preferences page directly from the Template tab by clicking on the Configure Publishing Templates Gallery link.

Selecting Custom Templates

Once you are finished configuring your template, you can click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link to select your template.

You can also add your custom templates (on page 1150) to the list of templates displayed in the Templates tab. To do this, store them in a directory, then click the Configure Publishing Templates Gallery link to open the DITA > Publishing preferences page (on page 54) where you can add that directory to the list. All the templates contained in your template directory will be displayed in the preview pane along with all the built-in templates.

Save Template As Button

You can use the Save template as button (at the bottom-left of the transformation dialog box) to export the currently selected template into a new template package that can be used as a starting point to create your own custom template (on page 1241). Clicking this button will open a template package configuration dialog box (on page 924) that contains some options and displays the parameters that will be exported to your template package.

Template Errors

When the Templates tab is opened, all templates (built-in and custom) are loaded and validated. Specifically, certain elements in the template descriptor file are checked for validity. If errors are encountered that prevents the template from loading, the following message will be displayed toward the bottom of the dialog box:

Some templates could not be loaded. More details

If you click the More details link, a window will open with more information about the encountered error. For example, it might offer a hint for which element is missing from the expected descriptor file structure.

Also, if a template could be loaded, but certain elements could not be found in the descriptor file, a warning icon (⚠️) will be displayed on the template’s image (in the Templates tab of the
transformation dialog box). For example, this happens if a valid preview-image element cannot be found.

Sharing Publishing Template

To share a publishing template with others, following these steps:

1. Copy your template in a new folder.
2. Go to Options > Preferences > DITA > Publishing (on page 54) and add that new folder to the list.
3. Switch the option as the bottom of that preferences page to Project Options.
4. Share your project file (.xpr).

For more information about customizing publishing templates, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/zNmXfkWXwO8

Related Information:

- Publishing Templates (on page 1104)
- Publishing Template Package Contents for PDF Customizations (on page 1235)
- Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations (on page 1107)

Template Package Configuration Dialog Box

The Save template as button (at the bottom-left of the transformation dialog box for WebHelp Responsive or PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformations) can be used to export the currently selected template into a new template package that can be used as a starting point to create your own custom template (on page 1241). The result will be a ZIP archive that contains a template descriptor file and other resources (such as CSS files) that were attached to the selected template.

Clicking the Save template as button opens a template package configuration dialog box contains the following options and components:

Name

Required field used to specify the name for the new template. This will become the text value of the name element in the template descriptor file. This information is displayed as the name of the template in the transformation scenario dialog box.
Description

Optional field used to specify a template description. This will become the text value of the `description` element in the template descriptor file. This information is displayed when the user hovers over the template in the transformation scenario dialog box.

Parameter Table

This table displays the parameters that will be exported. Only relevant parameters are exported. The parameters and their values will be inserted in the `parameters` section of the template descriptor file. If any of the parameter values point to a file path that references a template resource (such as CSS files, custom HTML fragments, images), those resources will automatically be copied to the new template package and their references will be changed accordingly.

Note: Additional resources that are referenced in CSS files or other resources will not be copied to the new template package, so you will need to copy them manually and update their references in the template descriptor file.

Include WebHelp Customization

The same publishing template package can contain both a WebHelp Responsive and PDF customization and you can use the same template in both types of transformations (DITA Map WebHelp Responsive (on page 860) or DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS (on page 874)). This option specifies that the custom template will include a WebHelp Responsive customization.

Include HTML Page Layout Files

For WebHelp Responsive customizations, select this option if you want to copy the default HTML Page Layout Files (on page 1121) into your template package. They are helpful if you want to change the structure of the generated HTML pages.

Include PDF Customization

The same publishing template package can contain both a WebHelp Responsive and PDF customization and you can use the same template in both types of transformations (DITA Map WebHelp Responsive (on page 860) or DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS (on page 874)). This option specifies that the custom template will include a PDF customization.

Save as

Use this field to specify the name and path of the ZIP file where the template will be saved.

Figure 351. Template Package Configuration Dialog Box
When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **FO Processor** tab is available for DITA OT transformations with a **PDF** output type.

This tab allows you to select an FO Processor to be used for the transformation.

Figure 352. FO Processor Configuration Tab
You can choose one of the following processors:

**Apache FOP**

The default processor that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

**XEP**

The RenderX XEP processor. If XEP is already installed, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the detected installation path under the drop-down menu. XEP is considered installed if it was detected in one of the following sources:

- XEP was configured as an external FO Processor in the FO Processors option page (on page 126).
- The system property com.oxygenxml.xep.location was set to point to the XEP executable file for the platform (for example: xep.bat on Windows).
- XEP was installed in the `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/lib` directory of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation directory.

**Antenna House**

The Antenna House (AH Formatter) processor. If Antenna House is already installed, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the detected installation path under the drop-down menu. Antenna House is considered installed if it was detected in one of the following sources:

- Environment variable set by Antenna House installation (the newest installation version will be used).
- Antenna House was added as an external FO Processor in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin preferences pages.
To further customize the PDF output obtained from the Antenna House processor, follow these steps:

1. Edit the transformation scenario.
2. Open the **Parameters** tab (on page 928).
3. Add the `env.AXF_OPT` parameter and point to the Antenna House configuration file.

**Related Information:**

- FO Processors Preferences (on page 126)
- XSL-FO (Apache FOP) Processor for Generating PDF Output (on page 953)

**Parameters Tab (DITA OT Transformations)**

When you *create a new transformation scenario* (on page 890) or *edit an existing one* (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Parameters** tab allows you to configure the parameters sent to the DITA-OT build file.

The table in this tab displays all the parameters that the DITA-OT documentation specifies as available for each chosen type of transformation (for example, XHTML or PDF), along with their description and current values. You can find more information about each parameter in the **DITA OT Documentation**. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and you can use the text box to filter or search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

Depending on the type of a parameter, its value can be one of the following:

- A simple text field for simple parameter values.
- A combo box with some predefined values.
- A file chooser and an *editor variable* (on page 162) selector to simplify setting a file path as the value of a parameter.

**Note:** To input parameter values at runtime, use the *ask editor variable* (on page 163) in the **Value** column.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing parameters:

- **New**
Opens the Add Parameter dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. You can specify the Value of the parameter by using the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button or the Browse button.

Unset

Resets the selected parameter to its default value. Available only for edited parameters with set values.

Edit

Opens the Edit Parameter dialog box that allows you to change the value of the selected parameter or its description.

Delete

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

Parameters Contributed by an Oxygen Publishing Template

Transformation parameters that are defined in an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1233) descriptor file are displayed in italics. After creating a publishing template (on page 1241) and adding it to the templates gallery (on page 1150), when you select the template in the Templates tab (on page ), the Parameters tab will automatically be updated to include the parameters defined in the template descriptor file.

Related Information:

- DITA Open Toolkit Documentation

Feedback Tab (DITA OT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

⚠️ Attention: This tab is for a feature that has not yet been implemented. To check the progress of the feature, see https://feedback.oxygenxml.com/.

The Feedback tab is available for the WebHelp Responsive transformation type and can be used to connect the published WebHelp Responsive output to an Oxygen Feedback server to provide a comment section in the output where users can offer feedback and ask questions.
When you configure the **Oxygen Feedback** server, you will retrieve an HTML fragment during site creation procedure. Click the **Edit** button at the bottom-right of this tab to open a dialog box where you will paste the HTML fragment (using keyboard shortcut keys or contextual menu actions).

**Filters Tab (DITA Transformations)**

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Filters** tab allows you to add filters to remove certain content elements from the generated output.

You can choose one of the following options to define filters:

**Use DITAVAL file**

If you already have a **DITAVAL** file associated with the **DITA map** (on page 1621), you can specify the file to be used when filtering content. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. You can find out more about constructing a **DITAVAL** file in the **DITA Documentation**.

⚠️ **Attention**: If a filter file is specified in the **args.filter** parameter (in the **Parameters** tab), that file takes precedence over a **DITAVAL** file specified here.

**Exclude from output all elements with any of the following attributes**

By using the **New**, **Edit**, or **Delete** buttons at the bottom of the pane, you can configure a list of attributes (name and value) to exclude all elements that contain any of these attributes from the output.

**Advanced Tab (DITA OT Transformations)**

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Advanced** tab allows you to specify advanced options for the transformation scenario.

Figure 353. Advanced Settings Tab
You can specify the following parameters:

**Custom build file**

If you use a custom DITA-OT build file, you can specify the path to the customized build file. If empty, the `build.xml` file from the `dita.dir` parameter that is configured in the Parameters tab (on page 154) is used. You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the Browse button.

**Build target**

 Optionally, you can specify a build target for the build file. If no target is specified, the default `init` target is used.

**Additional arguments**

You can specify additional command-line arguments to be passed to the transformation (such as `-verbose`).

**Ant Home**

You can choose between the default or custom Ant installation to run the transformation.

**Java Home**
You can choose between the default or custom Java installation to run the transformation. The default path is the Java installation that is used by Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

**Note:** It may be possible that the used Java version is incompatible with the DITA Open Toolkit engine. For example, DITA-OT 2.0 and newer requires Java 1.7 or newer. Thus, if you encounter related errors running the transformation, consider installing a Java VM that is supported by the DITA OT publishing engine and using it in the Java Home text field.

**JVM Arguments**

This parameter allows you to set specific parameters for the Java Virtual Machine used by Ant. For example, if it is set to `-Xmx384m`, the transformation process is allowed to use 384 megabytes of memory. When performing a large transformation, you may want to increase the memory allocated to the Java Virtual Machine. This will help avoid Out of Memory error messages (OutOfMemoryError).

**Libraries**

By default, Oxygen XML Developer plugin adds libraries (as high priority) that are not transformation-dependent and also patches for certain DITA Open Toolkit bugs. You can use this button to specify additional libraries (JAR files or additional class paths) to be used by the transformer.

**Tip:** You can specify the path to the additional libraries using wildcards (for example, `${oxygenHome}/lib/*.jar`).

**Output Tab (DITA OT Transformations)**

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The Output tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

Figure 354. Output Settings Tab
You can specify the following parameters:

**Base directory**

All the relative paths that appear as values in parameters are considered relative to the base directory. The default value is the directory where the transformed map is located. You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the Browse button.

**Temporary files directory**

This directory is used to store pre-processed temporary files until the final output is obtained. You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the Browse button.

**Output directory**

The folder where the content of the final output is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the Browse button.

**Note:** If the DITA map (on page 1621) or topic is opened from a remote location or a ZIP file, the parameters must specify absolute paths.

**Open in Browser/System Application**
If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the file type of the result (for example, in Windows PDF files are often opened in Acrobat Reader).

**Note:** To set the web browser that is used for displaying HTML/XHTML pages, go to Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser and specify it there.

- **Output file** - When Open in Browser/System Application is selected, you can use this button to automatically open the default output file at the end of the transformation.
- **Other location** - When Open in Browser/System Application is selected, you can use this option to open the file specified in this field at the end of the transformation.
  
  You can specify the path by using the text field, the ![Insert Editor Variables](on page 162) button, or the ![Browse](button.

**Open in editor**

When this option is selected, at the end of the transformation, the default output file is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor, or if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor).

**Ant Transformation**

This type of transformation allows you to configure the options and parameters of an Ant build script.

An Ant transformation scenario is usually associated with an Ant build script. Oxygen XML Developer plugin runs an Ant transformation scenario as an external process that executes the Ant build script with the built-in Ant distribution (Apache Ant (on page 1619) version 1.9.8) that is included with the application, or optionally with a custom Ant distribution configured in the scenario.

**Tip:** Certain Ant tasks require additional JAR libraries (for example, Ant mail tasks). The additional libraries can be added by editing the Ant transformation scenario, and in the Output tab, click the Libraries button (on page 935) in the bottom right corner. This opens a dialog box where you can add JAR libraries. For a list of library dependencies, see [https://ant.apache.org/manual/install.html#librarydependencies](https://ant.apache.org/manual/install.html#librarydependencies).

To create an Ant transformation scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the ![Configure Transformation Scenario(s)](action from the toolbar or the XML menu. Then click the New button and select ANT transformation.
• Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view *(on page 981)*. Click the **+ New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **ANT transformation**.

Both methods open the transformation configuration dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

**Options Tab (Ant Transformations)**

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 890)* or edit an existing one *(on page 972)*, a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Options** tab allows you to specify the following options:

- **Working directory**
  The path of the current directory of the Ant external process. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 162)* button, or the **Browse** button.

- **Build file**
  The Ant script file that is the input of the Ant external process. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 162)* button, or the **Browse** button.

- **Build target**
  Optionally, you can specify a build target for the Ant script file. If no target is specified, the Ant target that is specified as the default in the Ant script file is used.

- **Additional arguments**
  You can specify additional command-line arguments to be passed to the transformation (such as **-verbose**).

- **Ant Home**
  You can choose between the default or custom Ant installation to run the transformation.

- **Java Home**
  You can choose between the default or custom Java installation to run the transformation. The default path is the Java installation that is used by Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
**JVM Arguments**

This parameter allows you to set specific parameters for the Java Virtual Machine used by Ant. For example, if it is set to `-Xmx384m`, the transformation process is allowed to use 384 megabytes of memory. When performing a large transformation, you may want to increase the memory allocated to the Java Virtual Machine. This will help avoid *Out of Memory* error messages (*OutOfMemoryError*).

**Libraries**

By default, Oxygen XML Developer plugin adds libraries (as high priority) that are not transformation-dependent and also patches for certain DITA Open Toolkit bugs. You can use this button to specify additional libraries (*JAR* (on page 1623) files or additional class paths) to be used by the transformer.

**Tip:** You can specify the path to the additional libraries using wildcards (for example, `{oxygenHome}/lib/*.jar`).

**Parameters Tab (Ant Transformations)**

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Parameters** tab allows you to configure the parameters that are accessible as Ant properties in the Ant build script.

The table displays all the parameters that are available in the Ant build script, along with their description and current values. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and use the **Filter** text box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

Depending on the type of a parameter, its value can be one of the following:

- A simple text field for simple parameter values.
- A combo box with some predefined values.
- A file chooser and an editor variable (on page 162) selector to simplify setting a file path as the value of a parameter.

**Note:** To input parameter values at runtime, use the *ask editor variable* (on page 163) in the **Value** column.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing parameters:

**New**
Opens the **Add Parameter** dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. You can specify the **Value** of the parameter by using the 📂 Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button or the 📦 Browse button.

**Edit**

Opens the **Edit Parameter** dialog box that allows you to change the value of the selected parameter or its description.

**Delete**

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

**Output Tab (Ant Transformations)**

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab contains the following options:

**Open**

Allows you to specify the file to open automatically when the transformation is finished. This is usually the output file of the Ant process. You can specify the path by using the text field, the 📂 Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the 📦 Browse button.

- **In System Application** - The file specified in the Open text box is opened in the system application that is set in the operating system as the default application for that type of file (for example, in Windows PDF files are often opened in Acrobat Reader).
- **In Editor** - The file specified in the Open text box is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor).

**Show console output**

Allows you to specify when to display the console output log in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. The following options are available:

- **When build fails** - Displays the console output log only if the build fails.
- **Always** - Displays the console output log, regardless of whether or not the build fails.
XSLT Transformation

This type of transformation specifies the parameters and location of an XML document that the edited XSLT stylesheet is applied on. This scenario is useful when you develop an XSLT document and the XML document is in its final form.

To create an XSLT transformation scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Alt + T, C on OS X)) action from the toolbar or the XML menu. Then click the New button and select XSLT transformation.
- Go to Window > Show View and select Transformation Scenarios to display this view (on page 981). Click the + New Scenario drop-down menu button and select XSLT transformation.

Both methods open the New Scenario dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the Name of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

**XSLT Tab**

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The XSLT tab contains the following options:

**XML URL**

Specifies the source XML file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the file is used directly from its remote location.

**Note:** If the transformer engine is Saxon 9.x and a custom URI resolver is configured in the advanced Saxon preferences page (on page 156), the XML input of the transformation is passed to that URI resolver. If the transformer engine is one of the built-in XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 engines and the name of an initial template (on page 892) is specified in the scenario, the XML URL field can be empty. The XML URL field can also be empty if you use external XSLT processors (on page 907). Otherwise, a value is mandatory in this field.

**XSL URL**
Specifies the source XSL file that the transformation will use. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the \( insert \) Editor Variables button, or the browsing actions in the \( browser \) drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, the file is used directly from its remote location.

**Use "xml-stylesheet" declaration**

If selected, the scenario applies the stylesheet specified explicitly in the XML document with the \( xml-stylesheet \) processing instruction. By default, this option is deselected and the transformation applies the XSLT stylesheet that is specified in the XSL URL field.

**Transformer**

This drop-down menu presents all the transformation engines available to Oxygen XML Developer plugin for performing a transformation. These include the built-in engines and the external engines defined in the Custom Engines preferences page (on page 142). The engine you choose is used as the default transformation engine. Also, if an XSLT or XQuery document does not have an associated validation scenario, this transformation engine is used in the validation process (if it provides validation support).

**Advanced options**

Allows you to configure the advanced options of the Saxon HE/PE/EE engine (on page 895) for the current transformation scenario. To configure the same options globally, go to the Saxon-HE/PE/EE preferences page (on page 154). For the current transformation scenario, these Advanced options override the options configured in that preferences page.

**Parameters**

Opens a Configure parameters dialog box (on page 893) that allows you to configure the XSLT parameters used in the current transformation. In this dialog box, you can also configure the parameters for additional XSLT stylesheets (on page 893). If the XSLT transformation engine is custom-defined, you cannot use this dialog box to configure the parameters sent to the custom engine. Instead, you can copy all parameters from the dialog box using contextual menu actions and edit the custom XSLT engine to include the necessary parameters in the command line that starts the transformation process.

**Extensions**

Opens a dialog box for configuring the XSLT extension JARS or classes (on page 894) that define extension Java functions or extension XSLT elements used in the transformation.

**Additional XSLT stylesheets**
Opens a dialog box for adding XSLT stylesheets (on page 894) that are applied on the main stylesheet specified in the XSL URL field. This is useful when a chain of XSLT stylesheets must be applied to the input XML document.

XSLT Parameters

The global parameters of the XSLT stylesheet used in a transformation scenario can be configured by using the Parameters button in the XSLT tab of a new or edited transformation scenario dialog box.

The resulting dialog box includes a table that displays all the parameters of the current XSLT stylesheet, all imported and included stylesheets, and all additional stylesheets (on page 894), along with their descriptions and current values. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and you can use the Filter text box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

If the XPath column is selected, the parameter value is evaluated as an XPath expression before starting the XSLT transformation.

Example:

For example, you can use expressions such as:

```
doc('test.xml')//entry
//person[@atr='val']
```

Note:

1. The `doc` function solves the argument relative to the XSL stylesheet location. You can use full paths or editor variables (on page 162) (such as `$cfdu` [current file directory]) to specify other locations: `doc('$cfdu/test.xml')/*`
2. You cannot use XSLT Functions. Only XPath functions are allowed.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing the parameters:

**New**

Opens the Add Parameter dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. An editor variable (on page 162) can be inserted in the text box using the Insert Editor Variables button. If the Evaluate as XPath option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

**Edit**

Opens the Edit Parameter dialog box that allows you to edit the selected parameter. An editor variable (on page 162) can be inserted in the text box using the Insert Editor Variables button.
Variables button. If the Evaluate as XPath option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Unset

Resets the selected parameter to its default value. Available only for edited parameters with set values.

Delete

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

The bottom panel presents the following:

• The default value of the parameter selected in the table.
• A description of the parameter, if available.
• The system ID of the stylesheet that declares it.

Related Information:

• Editor Variables (on page 162)

XSLT Extensions

The Extensions button opens a dialog box that allows you to specify the JARS (on page 1623) and classes that contain extension functions called from the XSLT file of the current transformation scenario. You can use the Add, Edit, and Remove buttons to configure the extensions.

Tip: You can specify the path to the resources using wildcards (for example, ${oxygenHome}/lib/*.*).

An extension function called from the XSLT file of the current transformation scenario will be searched, in the specified extensions, in the order displayed in this dialog box. To change the order of the items, select the item to be moved and press the Move up or Move down buttons.

Additional XSLT Stylesheets

Use the Additional XSLT Stylesheets button in the XSLT tab to display a list of additional XSLT stylesheets to be used in the transformation and you can add files to the list or edit existing entries. The following actions are available:

Add
Adds a stylesheet in the **Additional XSLT stylesheets** list using a file browser dialog box. You can type an [editor variable](on page 162) in the file name field of the browser dialog box. The name of the stylesheet will be added in the list after the current selection.

**Remove**

Deletes the selected stylesheet from the **Additional XSLT stylesheets** list.

**Up**

Moves the selected stylesheet up in the list.

**Down**

Moves the selected stylesheet down in the list.

---

**Advanced Saxon HE/PE/EE XSLT Transformation Options**

The XSLT transformation scenario allows you to configure advanced options that are specific for the Saxon HE (Home Edition), PE (Professional Edition), and EE (Enterprise Edition) engines. They are the same options as those in the [Saxon HE/PE/EE preferences page](on page 154) but they are configured as a specific set of transformation options for each transformation scenario, while the values set in the preferences page apply as global options. The advanced options configured in a transformation scenario override the global options defined in the preferences page.

---

**Saxon-HE/PE/EE Options**

The advanced options for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE), and Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

**Mode ("-im")**

A Saxon-specific option that sets the initial mode for the transformation. If this value is also specified in a [configuration file](on page 895), the value in this option takes precedence.

**Template ("-it")**

A Saxon-specific option that sets the name of the initial XSLT template to be executed. If this value is also specified in a [configuration file](on page 895), the value in this option takes precedence.

**Use a configuration file ("-config")**

Select this option if you want to use a Saxon 9.8.0.12 configuration file that will be executed for the XSLT transformation and validation processes. You can specify the path to the configuration file by entering it in the URL field, or by using the 📦 Insert Editor Variables button, or using the browsing actions in the 📦 ▼ Browser drop-down list.
Debugger trace into XPath expressions (applies to debugging sessions)

Instructs the XSLT Debugger (on page 1513) to step into XPath expressions.

Enable Optimizations (“-opt”)

This option is selected by default, which means that optimization is enabled. If not selected, the optimization is suppressed, which is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

Line numbering (“-l”)

Line numbers where errors occur are included in the output messages.

Expand attributes defaults (“-expand”)

Specifies whether or not the attributes defined in the associated DTD or XML Schema are expanded in the output of the transformation you are executing.

DTD validation of the source (“-dtd”)

Specifies whether or not the source document will be validated against their associated DTD. You can choose from the following:

- **On** - Requests DTD validation of the source file and of any files read using the `document()` function.
- **Off** - (default setting) Suppresses DTD validation.
- **Recover** - Performs DTD validation but treats the errors as non-fatal.

Note: Any external DTD is likely to be read even if not used for validation, since DTDs can contain definitions of entities.

Recoverable errors (“-warnings”)

Specifies how dynamic errors are handled. The following options can be selected:

- **Recover silently** ("silent") - Continues processing without reporting the error.
- **Recover with warnings** ("recover") - Issues a warning but continues processing.
- **Signal the error and do not attempt recovery** ("fatal") - Issues an error and stops processing.

Strip whitespaces (“-strip”)

Specifies how the `strip whitespaces` operation is handled. You can choose one of the following values:

- **All** ("all") - Strips all whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `xml:space` attributes in the source document.
- **Ignore** ("ignorable") - Strips all ignorable whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any xml:space attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.
- **None** ("none") - Strips no whitespace before further processing.

**Saxon-PE/EE Options**

The following advanced options are specific for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Professional Edition (PE) and Enterprise Edition (EE) only:

**Register Saxon-JS extension functions and instructions**

Registers the Saxon-CE extension functions and instructions when compiling a stylesheet using the Saxon 9.8.0.12 processors.

**Note:** Saxon-CE, being JavaScript-based, was designed to run inside a web browser. This means that you will use Oxygen XML Developer plugin only for developing the Saxon-CE stylesheet, leaving the execution part to a web browser. See more details about executing such a stylesheet on Saxonica's website.

**Allow calls on extension functions ("-ext")**

If selected, the stylesheet is allowed to call external Java functions. This does not affect calls on integrated extension functions, including Saxon and EXSLT extension functions. This option is useful when loading an untrusted stylesheet (such as from a remote site using http://[URL]). It ensures that the stylesheet cannot call arbitrary Java methods and thus gain privileged access to resources on your machine.

**Enable assertions ("-ea")**

In XSLT 3.0, you can use the xsl:assert element to make assertions in the form of XPath expressions, causing a dynamic error if the assertion turns out to be false. If this option is selected, XSLT 3.0 xsl:assert instructions are enabled. If it is not selected (default), the assertions are ignored.

**Saxon-EE Options**

The advanced options that are specific for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

**XML Schema version**

Use this option to change the default XML Schema version for this transformation. To change the default XML Schema version globally, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to XML > XML Parser > XML Schema and use the Default XML Schema version option (on page 139).
Validation of the source file ("-val")

Requests schema-based validation of the source file and of any files read using `document()` or similar functions. It can have the following values:

- **Schema validation** ("strict") - This mode requires an XML Schema and allows for parsing the source documents with strict schema-validation enabled.
- **Lax schema validation** ("lax") - If an XML Schema is provided, this mode allows for parsing the source documents with schema-validation enabled but the validation will not fail if, for example, element declarations are not found.
- **Disable schema validation** - This specifies that the source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.

Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings ("-outval")

Normally, if validation of result documents is requested, a validation error is fatal. Selecting this option causes such validation failures to be treated as warnings.

**Write comments for non-fatal validation errors of the result document**

The validation messages for non-fatal errors are written (wherever possible) as a comment in the result document itself.

Enable streaming mode

Selecting this option will allow an XSLT to run in streaming mode. It is not selected by default.

Other Options

**Initializer class**

Equivalent to the `-init` Saxon command-line argument. The value is the name of a user-supplied class that implements the `net.sf.saxon.lib.Initializer` interface. This initializer is called during the initialization process, and may be used to set any options required on the configuration programmatically. It is particularly useful for tasks such as registering extension functions, collations, or external object models, especially in Saxon-HE where the option cannot be set via a configuration file. Saxon only calls the initializer when running from the command line, but the same code may be invoked to perform initialization when running user application code.

Using Saxon Integrated Extension Functions

Saxon, the transformation and validation engine used by Oxygen XML Developer plugin, can be customized by adding custom functions (called Integrated Extension Functions) that can be called from XPath.
To define such a function, follow these steps:

1. Create a file with a Java class that extends `net.sf.saxon.lib.ExtensionFunctionDefinition`. Here is an example:

```java
private static class ShiftLeft extends ExtensionFunctionDefinition {
    @Override
    public StructuredQName getFunctionQName() {
        return new StructuredQName("eg", "http://example.com/saxon-extension", "shift-left");
    }

    @Override
    public SequenceType[] getArgumentTypes() {
        return new SequenceType[] {SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER, SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER};
    }

    @Override
    public SequenceType getResultType(SequenceType[] suppliedArgumentTypes) {
        return SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER;
    }

    @Override
    public ExtensionFunctionCall makeCallExpression() {
        return new ExtensionFunctionCall() {
            public SequenceIterator call(SequenceIterator[] arguments, XPathContext context) throws XPathException {
                long v0 = ((IntegerValue)arguments[0].next()).longValue();
                long v1 = ((IntegerValue)arguments[1].next()).longValue();
                long result = v0<<v1;
                return Value.asIterator(Int64Value.makeIntegerValue(result));
            }
        };
    }
}
```

2. Compile the class and add it to a JAR file.
3. Add a file called `net.sf.saxon.lib.ExtensionFunctionDefinition` that contains the fully qualified name of the Java class in the `META-INF/services/` folder of the JAR file.

**Note:** To add more function definitions in the same JAR file, you need to add their fully qualified names on different lines.

To enable Oxygen XML Developer plugin to pick up your custom function definition, the JAR file should be added to the classpath of the transformer. Here are some possibilities:

- If you develop a framework, you just need to link the JAR file in the **Classpath** tab (on page 61).
- In a validation scenario (on page 433), you can use the **Extensions** button to open a dialog box where you can add libraries.
- In a transformation scenario, you can use the **Extensions** button in the **XSLT** tab (on page 892) to open a dialog box where you can add libraries.

**FO Processor Tab (XSLT Transformations)**

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **FO Processor** tab contains the following options:

**Perform FO Processing**

Specifies whether or not an FO processor is applied (either the built-in Apache FOP engine or an external engine defined in **Preferences**) during the transformation.

**Input**

Choose between the following options to specify which input file to use:

- **XSLT result as input** - The FO processor is applied to the result of the XSLT transformation that is defined in the **XSLT** tab.
- **XML URL as input** - The FO processor is applied to the input XML file.

**Method**

The output format of the FO processing. The available options depend on the selected processor type.

**Processor**

Specifies the FO processor to be used for the transformation. It can be the built-in Apache FOP processor or an **external processor** (on page 126).
Output Tab (XSLT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab contains the following options:

**Prompt for file**

At the end of the transformation, a file browser dialog box is displayed for specifying the path and name of the file that stores the transformation result.

**Save As**

The path of the file where the result of the transformation is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** (on page 162) button, or the **Browse** button.

**Open in Browser/System Application**

If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the file type of the result (for example, in Windows PDF files are often opened in Acrobat Reader).

**Note:** To set the web browser that is used for displaying HTML/XHTML pages, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there.

- **Output file** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this button to automatically open the default output file at the end of the transformation.
- **Other location** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this option to open the file specified in this field at the end of the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** (on page 162) button, or the **Browse** button.

**Open in editor**

When this is option is selected, at the end of the transformation, the default output file is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor, or if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor).

**Show in results view as**

You can choose to view the results in one of the following:
• **XML** - If this is selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the transformation result in an XML viewer panel at the bottom of the application window with syntax highlighting *(on page 112).*

• **XHTML** - This option is only available if **Open in Browser/System Application** is not selected. If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the transformation result in a built-in XHTML browser panel at the bottom of the application window.

⚠️ **Important:** When transforming very large documents, you should be aware that selecting this option may result in very long processing times. This drawback is due to the built-in Java XHTML browser implementation. To avoid delays for large documents, if you want to see the XHTML result of the transformation, you should use an external browser by selecting the **Open in Browser/System Application** option instead.

• **Image URLs are relative to** - If **Show in results view as XHTML** is selected, this option specifies the path used to resolve image paths contained in the transformation result. You can specify the path by using the text field, the ✂️ Insert Editor Variables *(on page 162)* button, or the 🏛️ Browse button.

⚠️ **Attention:** If your input XSLT contains `<xsl:result-document>` elements, then the secondary results will be saved to the specified URIs while the principal result is specified in this **Output** tab. For more information, see: [https://www.w3.org/TR/xslt-30/#element-result-document](https://www.w3.org/TR/xslt-30/#element-result-document).

**Configuring an XSLT Processor for Generating Output**

This section explains how to configure an XSLT processor and extensions for such a processor in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

**Supported XSLT Processors**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes the following XSLT processors:

• **Xalan 2.7.2** - Xalan-Java is an XSLT processor for transforming XML documents into HTML, text, or other XML document types. It implements XSL Transformations (XSLT) Version 1.0 and XML Path Language (XPath) Version 1.0.

• **Saxon 6.5.5** - Saxon 6.5.5 is an XSLT processor that implements the Version 1.0 XSLT and XPath with a number of powerful extensions. This version of Saxon also includes many of the new features that were first defined in the XSLT 1.1 working draft, but for conformance and portability reasons these are not available if the stylesheet header specifies `version="1.0"`.

• **Saxon 9.8.0.12 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE)** - Saxon-HE/PE implements the basic conformance level for XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 and XQuery 1.0. The term **basic XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 processor** is defined in the draft XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 specifications. It is a conformance level that requires support for all features of the language other than those that involve schema processing.
The HE product remains open source, but removes some of the more advanced features that are present in Saxon-PE.

- **Saxon 9.8.0.12 Enterprise Edition (EE)** - Saxon EE is the schema-aware edition of Saxon and it is one of the built-in processors included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. Saxon EE includes an XML Schema processor, and schema-aware XSLT, XQuery, and XPath processors.

The validation in schema aware transformations is done according to the XML Schema 1.0 or 1.1. This can be configured in Preferences *(on page 138)*.

**Note:** Oxygen XML Developer plugin implements a Saxon framework that allows you to create Saxon configuration files. Two templates are available: Saxon collection catalog and Saxon configuration. Both of these templates support content completion, element annotation, and attribute annotation.

**Note:** Saxon can use the ICU-J localization library *(saxon9-icu.jar)* to add support for sorting and date/number formatting in a wide variety of languages. This library is not included in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation kit. However, Saxon will use the default collation and localization support available in the currently used JRE. To enable this capability, follow these steps:

2. Unpack the downloaded archive.
3. Create a new XSLT transformation scenario (or edit an existing one). In the XSLT tab, click the Extensions button to open the list of additional libraries used by the transformation process.
4. Click Add and browse to the folder where you unpacked the downloaded archive and choose the saxon9-icu.jar file.

Note that the saxon9-icu.jar should NOT be added to the application library folder because it will conflict with another version of the ICU-J library that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

- **Saxon-CE (Client Edition)** is Saxonica's implementation of XSLT 2.0 for use on web browsers. Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for editing stylesheets that contain Saxon-CE extension functions and instructions. This support improves the validation, content completion, and syntax highlighting.

**Note:** Saxon-CE, being JavaScript-based, was designed to run inside a web browser. This means that you will use Oxygen XML Developer plugin only for developing the Saxon-CE stylesheet, leaving the execution part to a web browser. See more details about executing such a stylesheet on Saxonica's website.

**Note:** A specific template, named Saxon-CE stylesheet, is available in the New from Templates wizard *(on page 311).*
• **Xsltproc (libxslt)** - *Libxslt* is the XSLT C library developed for the Gnome project. *Libxslt* is based on *libxml2*, the XML C library developed for the Gnome project. It also implements most of the EXSLT set of processor-portable extensions, functions, and some of Saxon's `evaluate` and `expression` extensions.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses *Libxslt* through its command-line tool (*Xsltproc*). Depending on your operating system, you must download the Libxslt libraries on your machine from [http://xmlsoft.org/XSLT/downloads.html](http://xmlsoft.org/XSLT/downloads.html) and place them in a local folder. Then you need to update the **PATH** environmental variable to contain the parent folder where the **xsltproc** executable is located.

**Tip:** As an example, a Windows installation of the Xsltproc engine would follow these steps:

2. Unzip all of them into the same folder of your choice.
3. Edit the **PATH** environment variable and add the **bin** folder for all four archives:

   ![Edit environment variable](image)

   - `C:\Users\Desktop\abc\libxslt-1.1.26.win32\bin`
   - `C:\Users\Desktop\abc\libxml2-2.7.8.win32\bin`
   - `C:\Users\Desktop\abc\iconv-1.9.2.win32\bin`
   - `C:\Users\Desktop\abc\zlib-1.2.5\bin`


**Result:** You can now use the **xsltproc** processor as an XSLT engine in the XSLT transformation scenario.

**Note:** The Xsltproc processor can be configured from the **XSLTPROC** options page (on page 157).

**CAUTION:** There is a known problem where file paths that contain spaces are not handled correctly in the LIBXML processor. For example, the built-in XML Catalog (on page 1627) files of the built-in document types (DocBook, TEI, DITA, etc.) are not handled properly by LIBXML if Oxygen XML Developer plugin is installed in the default location on Windows (C:\Program Files). This is because the built-in XML catalog files are stored in the `\[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]\frameworks` subdirectory of the installation directory, and in this case it contains a space character.

• **MSXML 4.0** - MSXML 4.0 is available only on Windows platforms. It can be used for transformation (on page 890) and validation of XSLT stylesheets (on page 521).
Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the Microsoft XML parser through its command-line tool `msxsl.exe`.

Since `msxsl.exe` is only a wrapper, Microsoft Core XML Services (MSXML) must be installed on the computer. Otherwise, you will get a corresponding warning. You can get the latest Microsoft XML parser from Microsoft web-site.

- **MSXML .NET** - MSXML .NET is available only on Windows platforms. It can be used for transformation (on page 890) and validation of XSLT stylesheets (on page 521).

Oxygen XML Developer plugin performs XSLT transformations and validations using the .NET Framework XSLT implementation (`System.Xml.Xsl.XslTransform` class) through the `nxslt` command-line utility. The `nxslt` version included in Oxygen XML Developer plugin is 1.6.

You should have the .NET Framework version 1.0 already installed on your system. Otherwise, you will get the following warning: MSXML.NET requires .NET Framework version 1.0 to be installed. Exit code: 128.

You can get the .NET Framework version 1.0 from the Microsoft website.

- **.NET 1.0** - A transformer based on the `System.Xml` 1.0 library available in the .NET 1.0 and .NET 1.1 frameworks from Microsoft (http://msdn.microsoft.com/xml/). It is available only on Windows.

You should have the .NET Framework version 1.0 or 1.1 already installed on your system. Otherwise, you will get the following warning: MSXML.NET requires .NET Framework version 1.0 to be installed. Exit code: 128.

You can get the .NET Framework version 1.0 from the Microsoft website.

- **.NET 2.0** - A transformer based on the `System.Xml` 2.0 library available in the .NET 2.0 Framework from Microsoft. It is available only on Windows.

You should have the .NET Framework version 2.0 already installed on your system. Otherwise, you will get the following warning: MSXML.NET requires .NET Framework version 2.0 to be installed. Exit code: 128.

You can get the .NET Framework version 2.0 from the Microsoft website.

### Configuring Custom XSLT Processors

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to configure custom processors to be used for running XSLT and XQuery transformations.

To add a new custom processor, follow these steps:
1. **Open the Preferences dialog box** *(on page 42)* and go to XML > XSLT-FO-XQuery > Custom Engines.

2. Click the **New** button at the bottom of the dialog box.

3. Configure the **parameters for the custom engine** *(on page 142)*.

4. Click **OK**.

**Note:**

The output messages of a custom processor are displayed in an output view at the bottom of the application window. If an output message follows the format of an Oxygen XML Developer plugin linked message *(on page 429)*, clicking it highlights the location of the message in an editor panel containing the file referenced in the message.

**Related Information:**

- Custom Engines Preferences *(on page 142)*

---

**Configuring the XSLT Processor Extensions Paths**

The Xalan and Saxon processors support the use of extension elements and extension functions. Unlike a literal result element, which the stylesheet simply transfers to the result tree, an extension element performs an action. The extension is usually used because the XSLT stylesheet fails in providing adequate functions for accomplishing a more complex task.

For more information about how to use extensions, see the following links:

- **Saxon 6.5.5** - [http://saxon.sourceforge.net/saxon6.5.5/extensions.html](http://saxon.sourceforge.net/saxon6.5.5/extensions.html)

To set an XSLT processor extension (a directory or a **jar** file), use the **Extensions button** *(on page 892)* in the **Edit scenario** dialog box.

**XSL-FO (Apache FOP) Processor for Generating PDF Output**

The Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation package is distributed with the **Apache FOP** that is a Formatting Objects processor for transforming your XML documents to PDF. **FOP** is a print and output independent formatter driven by XSL Formatting Objects. **FOP** is implemented as a Java application that reads a formatting object tree and renders the resulting pages to a specified output.

To see the version of the built-in XSL-FO processor for your installation, go to **Help > About > Libraries** and search for **Apache FOP**.
Other FO processors can be configured in the FO Processors preferences page (on page 126).

Add a Font to the Built-in FO Processor - Simple Version

If the font that must be set to Apache FOP is one of the fonts that are installed in the operating system you should follow the next steps for creating and setting a FOP configuration file that looks for the font that it needs in the system fonts. It is a simplified version of the procedure for setting a custom font in Apache FOP (on page 955).

1. Register the font in FOP configuration. (This is not necessary for DITA PDF transformations, skip to the next step)
   a. Create a FOP configuration file that specifies that FOP should look for fonts in the installed fonts of the operating system.

   ```xml
   <fop version="1.0">
   <renderers>
   <renderer mime="application/pdf">
   <fonts>
   <auto-detect/>
   </fonts>
   </renderer>
   </renderers>
   </fop>
   ```
   b. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to XML > XSLT/FO/XQuery > FO Processors, and enter the path of the FOP configuration file in the Configuration file text field.

2. Set the font on the document content.
This is done usually with XSLT stylesheet parameters and depends on the document type processed by the stylesheet.

   - For DocBook documents you can start with the built-in scenario called DocBook PDF, edit the XSLT parameters (on page 890) and set the font name (for example, Arial Unicode MS) to the parameters body.font.family and title.font.family.
   - For TEI documents you can start with the built-in scenario called TEI PDF, edit the XSLT parameters (on page 890) and set the font name (for example, Arial Unicode MS) to the parameters bodyFont and sansFont.
   - For DITA transformations to PDF using DITA-OT you should modify the following two files:
     * DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/cfg/fo/font-mappings.xml - The font-face element included in each element physical-font having the attribute char-set="default" must contain the name of the font (for example, Arial Unicode MS)
Add a Font to the Built-in FO Processor - Advanced Version

If an XML document is transformed to PDF using the built-in Apache FOP processor but it contains some Unicode characters that cannot be rendered by the default PDF fonts, then a special font that is capable to render these characters must be configured and embedded in the PDF result.

⚠️ Important: On Windows, fonts are located into the `C:\Windows\Fonts` directory. On Mac, they are placed in `/Library/Fonts`. To install a new font on your system, it is enough to copy it in the Fonts directory. If a special font is installed in the operating system, there is a simple way of telling FOP to look for it. See the simplified procedure for adding a font to FOP (on page 954).

1. Locate the font.

   First, find out the name of a font that has the glyphs for the special characters you used. One font that covers most characters, including Japanese, Cyrillic, and Greek, is Arial Unicode MS.

2. Register the font in the FOP configuration.

   📖 Note: DITA PDF transformations have their own `fop.xconf` (`DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/org.dita.pdf2.fop/fop/conf/fop.xconf`). If the font is not installed in the system, it needs to be referenced in the `fop.xconf`.

   a. For information about registering the font in the FOP Configuration, see: https://xmlgraphics.apache.org/fop/2.3/fonts.html.

   b. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to XML > XSLT/FO/XQuery > FO Processors, and enter the path of the FOP configuration file in the Configuration file text field.

3. Set the font on the document content.

   This is usually done with XSLT stylesheet parameters and depends on the document type processed by the stylesheet.
DocBook Example: For DocBook documents, you can start with the built-in scenario called DocBook PDF, edit the XSLT parameters (on page 890), and set the font name (for example, Arialuni) to the parameters body.font.family and title.font.family.

TEI Example: For TEI documents, you can start with the built-in scenario called TEI PDF, edit the XSLT parameters (on page 890), and set the font name (for example, Arialuni) to the parameters bodyFont and sansFont.

DITA Example: For DITA to PDF transformations using DITA-OT modify the following two files:

- DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/cfg/fo/font-mappings.xml - The font-face element included in each element physical-font having the attribute charset="default" must contain the name of the font.
- DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/fop/conf/fop.xconf - An element font must be inserted in the element fonts, which is inside the element renderer that has the attribute mime="application/pdf".

For more information, see: https://xmlgraphics.apache.org/fop/2.1/fonts.html.

Adding Libraries to the Built-in FO Processor (XML with XSLT and FO)

Starting with Oxygen XML Developer plugin version 20.0, both hyphenation and PDF image support are enabled by default in the built-in Apache FO processor. For older version of Oxygen XML Developer plugin, use the following procedures to enable such support.

Adding Hyphenation Support for XML with XSLT Transformation Scenarios

If you want to add newer hyphenation libraries or you are using an older version of Oxygen XML Developer plugin, follow this procedure:

1. Create a folder called fop in the [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/lib folder.
2. Download the compiled JAR (on page 1623) from OFFO.
3. Copy the fop-hyph.jar file into the [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/lib/fop folder.

Adding Support for PDF Images

To add support for PDF images in an older version of Oxygen XML Developer plugin, follow these steps:

1. Create a folder called fop in the [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/lib folder.
2. Download the fop-pdf-images JAR libraries.
3. Copy the libraries into the \{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\}/lib/fop folder.

How to Enable Debugging for FO Processor Transformations

If you encounter errors when running PDF transformations that use an FO processor, it is possible to enable debugging/logging to help you identify the problem. To enable debugging/logging for FO processing, follow this procedure:

1. Locate and edit the following configuration file: \{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\}/tools/config/log4j.xml.

   **Note:** You need write access to this folder, so if you do not have administrator permissions, you may first need to copy the file to another location where you have write access.
2. Edit the `priority` element (inside the `root` element) and change its value to `debug`.
3. Save the file in the original location.
4. Restart Oxygen XML Developer plugin and re-run the transformation.

   **Tip:** It is recommended that you use a small input file when trying to reproduce the problem, to make it easier to analyze the data in the log.
5. Once you are finished with the debugging session, remember to edit the log4j.xml file and change the `priority` element back to its original value. Otherwise, performance could be affected.

XProc Transformation

This type of transformation specifies the parameters and location of an XProc script.

A sequence of transformations described by an XProc script can be executed with an XProc transformation scenario. To create an XProc transformation scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Alt + T, C on OS X)) action from the toolbar or the XML menu. Then click the New button and select XProc transformation.
- Go to Window > Show View and select Transformation Scenarios to display this view (on page 981). Click the + New Scenario drop-down menu button and select XProc transformation.

Both methods open the New Scenario dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the Name of the transformation scenario.
The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

**Related Information:**

- Integrating an External XProc Engine *(on page 962)*
- Editing XProc Scripts *(on page 765)*

**XProc Tab**

When you **create a new transformation scenario (on page 890)** or **edit an existing one (on page 972)**, a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **XProc tab** contains the following options:

**XProc URL**

Specify the source XSL file to be used by the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the <Insert Editor Variables> button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, the file is used directly from its remote location.

**Processor**

Allows you to select the XProc engine to be used for the transformation. You can select the **Add-on for Calabash XProc engine** or a custom engine that is **configured in the XProc Preferences page (on page 141)**.

**Inputs Tab (XProc Transformations)**

When you **create a new transformation scenario (on page 890)** or **edit an existing one (on page 972)**, a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Inputs** tab contains a list with the ports that the XProc script uses to read input data. Use the **Filter** text box to search for a specific term in the entire ports collection.

Each input port has an assigned name in the XProc script. The XProc engine reads data from the URL specified in the **URL** column.

The following actions are available for managing the input ports:
New

Opens an Edit dialog box that allows you to add a new port and its URL. The built-in editor variables (on page 162) and custom editor variables (on page 169) can be used to specify the URL.

Edit

Opens an Edit dialog box that allows you to modify the selected port and its URL. The built-in editor variables (on page 162) and custom editor variables (on page 169) can be used to specify the URL.

Delete

Removes the selected port from the list. It is available only for new ports that have been added to the list.

Parameters Tab (XProc Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The Parameters tab presents a list of ports and parameters collected from the XProc script. The tab is divided into three sections:

List of Ports

In this section, you can use the New and Delete buttons to add or remove ports.

List of Parameters

This section presents a list of parameters for each port and includes columns for the parameter name, namespace URI, and its value. Use the Filter text box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. You can use the New and Delete buttons to add or remove parameters. You can edit the value of each cell in this table by double-clicking the cell. You can also sort the parameters by clicking the column headers.

Editor Variable Information

The built-in editor variables (on page 162) and custom editor variables (on page 169) can be used for specifying the URI. The message pane at the bottom of the dialog box provides more information about the editor variables that can be used.
Outputs Tab (XProc Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The Outputs tab displays a list of output ports (along with the URL) collected from the XProc script. Use the Filter text box to search for a specific term in the entire ports collection. You can also sort the columns by clicking the column headers.

The following actions are available for managing the output ports:

- **New**
  Opens an Edit dialog box that allows you to add a new output port and its URL. An editor variable (on page 162) can be inserted for the URL by using the Insert Editor Variables button. There is also a Show in transformation results view option that allows you to select whether or not the results will be displayed in the output Results view (on page 226).

- **Edit**
  Opens an Edit dialog box that allows you to edit an existing output port and its URL. An editor variable (on page 162) can be inserted for the URL by using the Insert Editor Variables button. There is also a Show in transformation results view option that allows you to select whether or not the results will be displayed in the output Results view (on page 226).

- **Delete**
  Removes the selected output port from the list. It is available only for new ports that have been added to the list.

Additional options that are available at the bottom of this tab include:

- **Open in Editor**
  If this option is selected, the XProc transformation result is automatically opened in an editor panel.

- **Open in Browser/System Application**
  If this option is selected, you can specify a file to be opened at the end of the XProc transformation in the browser or system application that is associated with the file type. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

Results
The result of the XProc transformation can be displayed as a sequence in an output view with two sections:

- A list with the output ports on the left side.
- The content that correspond to the selected output port on the right side.

**Figure 355. XProc Transformation Results View**

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Options** tab displays a list of the options collected from the XProc script. The tab is divided into two sections:

**List of Options**

This section presents a list of options and includes columns for the option name, namespace URI, and its value. Use the Filter text box to search for a specific term in the entire options collection. You can use the **New** and **Delete** buttons to add or remove options. You can edit the value of each cell in this table by double-clicking the cell. You can also sort the parameters by clicking the column headers. The names of edited options are displayed in bold.

**Editor Variable Information**

The built-in editor variables (on page 162) and custom editor variables (on page 169) can be used for specifying the URI. This section provides more information about the editor variables that can be used.

**Calabash XProc Processor for Generating PDF Output**

To generate PDF output from your XProc pipeline (when using the Calabash XProc processor), follow these steps:
1. Open the `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/lib/xproc/calabash/engine.xml` file.
2. Uncomment the `<system-property name="com.xmlcalabash.fo-processor" value="com.xmlcalabash.util.FoXEP"/>` system property.
3. Uncomment the `<system-property name="com.renderx.xep.CONFIG" file="../../../tools/xep/xep.xml"/>` system property. Edit the `file` attribute to point to the configuration file that is usually located in the XEP installation folder.
4. Uncomment the references to the XEP libraries. Edit them to point to the matching library names from the XEP installation directory.
5. Restart Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

**Integrating an External XProc Engine**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a bundled version of the Calabash XProc engine that can be used for XProc transformations and validation, but you can also integrate other external XProc engines. When you edit an XProc transformation scenario, there is a Processor drop-down menu where you can select the XProc engine to be used for the transformation.

If you do not need the external XProc engine to be used for automatic validation or pass parameters/ports and it is not Java-based, you can simply add the external engine by using the XProc preferences page (on page 141). Otherwise, if the external engine is Java-based, or it has validation support, or it has the ability to receive parameters or ports passed from the transformation, you need to integrate it using the plugin extension procedure below.

For example, there is a public project on GitHub that is an implementation for integrating Morgana XProc with Oxygen XML Developer plugin: [https://github.com/xml-project/support-for-xmleditor](https://github.com/xml-project/support-for-xmleditor). Also, the Javadoc documentation of the XProc API is available for download from the application website as a zip file: `xprocAPI.zip`.

To create an XProc integration project, follow these steps:

1. Move the `oxygen.jar` file from `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/lib` to the `lib` folder of your project.
2. Implement the `ro.sync.xml.transformer.xproc.api.XProcTransformerInterface` interface.
3. Create a Java archive (JAR) (on page 1623) from the classes you created.
4. Create an `engine.xml` file according to the `engine.dtd` file. The attributes of the `engine` element are as follows:
   a. `name` - The name of the XProc engine.
   b. `description` - A short description of the XProc engine.
   c. `class` - The complete name of the class that implements `ro.sync.xml.transformer.xproc.api.XProcTransformerInterface`. 
d. **version** - The version of the integration.

e. **engineVersion** - The version of the integrated engine.

f. **vendor** - The name of the vendor / implementer.

g. **supportsValidation** - `true` if the engine supports validation (otherwise, `false`).

The **engine** element has only one child, **runtime**. The **runtime** element contains several **library** elements with the **name** attribute containing the relative or absolute location of the libraries necessary to run this integration.

5. Create a new folder (for example, named **MyXprocEngine**) and place the **engine.xml** and all the libraries necessary to run the new integration in that folder.

6. Place that new folder (e.g. **MyXprocEngine**) inside a new plugin folder. This new plugin folder should also contain a **plugin.xml** file that points to the new engine folder (e.g. **MyXprocEngine**).

   The **plugin.xml** file would look like this:

   ```xml
   <plugin id="morgana.xproc.addon"
           name="Contribute Morgana XProc"
           description="Contribute Morgana XProc"
           version="1.0"
           vendor="Syncro Soft"
           class="ro.sync.exml.plugin.Plugin"
           classLoaderType="preferReferencedResources">
       <extension type="AdditionalXProcEngine" path="MyXprocEngine/"/>
   </extension>
</plugin>
```

Related Information:

- Editing XProc Scripts *(on page 765)*

- Creating an XProc Transformation Scenario *(on page 957)*

**XQuery Transformation**

This type of transformation specifies the parameters and location of an XML source that the edited XQuery file is applied on.
Note: When the XML source is a native XML database, the source field of the scenario is empty because the XML data is read with XQuery-specific functions, such as `document()`. When the XML source is a local XML file, the URL of the file is specified in the input field of the scenario.

To create an XQuery transformation scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use theConfigure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Alt + T, C on OS X)) action from the toolbar or the XML menu. Then click the New button and select XQuery transformation.
- Go to Window > Show View and select Transformation Scenarios to display this view (on page 981). Click the • New Scenario drop-down menu button and select XQuery transformation.

Both methods open the New Scenario dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the Name of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

XQuery Tab

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The XQuery tab contains the following options:

**XML URL**

Specifies the source XML file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the • Browse drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the file is used directly from its remote location.

Note: If the transformer engine is Saxon 9.x and a custom URI resolver is configured in the advanced Saxon preferences page (on page 156), the XML input of the transformation is passed to that URI resolver.

**XQuery URL**

Specifies the source XQuery file to be used for the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the • Browse drop-down list. This URL
is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, the file is used directly from its remote location.

**Transformer**

This drop-down menu presents all the transformation engines available to Oxygen XML Developer plugin for performing a transformation. These include the built-in engines and the external engines defined in the Custom Engines preferences page (on page 142). The engine you choose is used as the default transformation engine. Also, if an XSLT or XQuery document does not have an associated validation scenario, this transformation engine is used in the validation process (if it provides validation support).

**Advanced options**

Allows you to configure the advanced options of the Saxon HE/PE/EE engine (on page 912) for the current transformation scenario. To configure the same options globally, go to the Saxon-HE/PE/EE preferences page (on page 154). For the current transformation scenario, these Advanced options override the options configured in that preferences page.

**Parameters**

Opens the Configure parameters dialog box (on page 910) for configuring the XQuery parameters. You can use the buttons in this dialog box to add, edit, or remove parameters. If the XQuery transformation engine is custom-defined, you can not use this dialog box to set parameters. Instead, you can copy all parameters from the dialog box using contextual menu actions and edit the custom XQuery engine to include the necessary parameters in the command line that starts the transformation process.

**Extensions**

Opens a dialog box for configuring the XQuery extension JARS or classes (on page 911) that define extension Java functions or extension XSLT elements used in the transformation.

**XQuery Parameters**

The global parameters of the XQuery file used in a transformation scenario can be configured by using the Parameters button in the XQuery tab.

The resulting dialog box includes a table that displays all the parameters of the current XQuery file, along with their descriptions and current values. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and use the Filter text box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

If the XPath column is selected, the parameter value is evaluated as an XPath expression before starting the XQuery transformation.
**Example:**

For example, you can use expressions such as:

```
doc('test.xml')//entry
/person[@atr='val']
```

**Note:**

1. The `doc` function solves the argument relative to the XQuery file location. You can use full paths or editor variables ([on page 162](#)) (such as `$cfdu` [current file directory]) to specify other locations: `doc('$cfdu/test.xml')//*`

2. Only XPath functions are allowed.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing the parameters:

**New**

Opens the **Add Parameter** dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. An editor variable ([on page 162](#)) can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

**Edit**

Opens the **Edit Parameter** dialog box that allows you to edit the selected parameter. An editor variable ([on page 162](#)) can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

**Unset**

Resets the selected parameter to its default value. Available only for edited parameters with set values.

**Delete**

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

The bottom panel presents the following:

- The default value of the parameter selected in the table.
- A description of the parameter, if available.
- The system ID of the stylesheet that declares it.

**Related Information:**
XQuery Extensions

The Extensions button is used to specify the JAR (on page 1623) and classes that contain extension functions called from the XQuery file of the current transformation scenario. You can use the Add, Edit, and Remove buttons to configure the extensions.

An extension function called from the XQuery file of the current transformation scenario will be searched, in the specified extensions, in the order displayed in this dialog box. To change the order of the items, select the item to be moved and press the Move up or Move down buttons.

Advanced Saxon HE/PE/EE XQuery Transformation Options

The XQuery transformation scenario allows you to configure advanced options that are specific for the Saxon HE (Home Edition), PE (Professional Edition), and EE (Enterprise Edition) engines. They are the same options as those in the Saxon HE/PE/EE preferences page (on page 148) but they are configured as a specific set of transformation options for each transformation scenario, while the values set in the preferences page apply as global options. The advanced options configured in a transformation scenario override the global options defined in the preferences page.

Saxon-HE/PE/EE Options

The advanced options for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE), and Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

- **Use a configuration file ("-config")**
  Sets a Saxon 9.8.0.12 configuration file that is used for XQuery transformation and validation scenarios.

- **Enable Optimizations ("-opt")**
  This option is selected by default, which means that optimization is enabled. If not selected, the optimization is suppressed, which is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

- **Use linked tree model ("-tree:linked")**
  This option activates the linked tree model.

- **Recoverable errors ("-warnings")**
  Specifies how dynamic errors are handled. The following options can be selected:
- Recover silently ("silent") - Continues processing without reporting the error.
- Recover with warnings ("recover") - Issues a warning but continues processing.
- Signal the error and do not attempt recovery ("fatal") - Issues an error and stops processing.

Strip whitespaces ("-strip")

Specifies how the strip whitespaces operation is handled. You can choose one of the following values:

- All ("all") - Strips all whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any xml:space attributes in the source document.
- Ignore ("ignorable") - Strips all ignorable whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any xml:space attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.
- None ("none") - Strips no whitespace before further processing.

Saxon-PE/EE Options

The following advanced options are specific for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Professional Edition (PE) and Enterprise Edition (EE) only:

Allow calls on extension functions ("-ext")

If selected, calls on external functions are allowed. Selecting this option is recommended in an environment where untrusted stylesheets may be executed. It also disables user-defined extension elements and the writing of multiple output files, both of which carry similar security risks.

Saxon-EE Options

The advanced options that are specific for Saxon 9.8.0.12 Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Validation of the source file ("-val")

Requests schema-based validation of the source file and of any files read using document() or similar functions. It can have the following values:

- Schema validation ("strict") - This mode requires an XML Schema and allows for parsing the source documents with strict schema-validation enabled.
- Lax schema validation ("lax") - If an XML Schema is provided, this mode allows for parsing the source documents with schema-validation enabled but the validation will not fail if, for example, element declarations are not found.
- **Disable schema validation** - This specifies that the source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.

**Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings ("-outval")**

Normally, if validation of result documents is requested, a validation error is fatal. Selecting this option causes such validation failures to be treated as warnings.

**Write comments for non-fatal validation errors of the result document**

The validation messages for non-fatal errors are written (wherever possible) as a comment in the result document itself.

**Enable XQuery update ("-update:(on|off)")**

This option controls whether or not XQuery update syntax is accepted. The default value is off.

**Backup files updated by XQuery ("-backup:(on|off)")**

If selected, backup versions for any XML files updated with an XQuery Update are generated. This option is available when the **Enable XQuery update** option is selected.

**Other Options**

**Initializer class**

Equivalent to the **-init** Saxon command-line argument. The value is the name of a user-supplied class that implements the `net.sf.saxon.lib.Initializer` interface. This initializer is called during the initialization process, and may be used to set any options required on the configuration programmatically. It is particularly useful for tasks such as registering extension functions, collations, or external object models, especially in Saxon-HE where the option cannot be set via a configuration file. Saxon only calls the initializer when running from the command line, but the same code may be invoked to perform initialization when running user application code.

**FO Processor Tab (XQuery Transformations)**

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **FO Processor** tab contains the following options:

**Perform FO Processing**
Specifies whether or not an FO processor is applied (either the built-in Apache FOP engine or an external engine defined in Preferences) during the transformation.

**Input**

Choose between the following options to specify which input file to use:

- **XQuery result as input** - The FO processor is applied to the result of the XQuery transformation that is defined in the XQuery tab.
- **XML URL as input** - The FO processor is applied to the input XML file.

**Method**

The output format of the FO processing. The available options depend on the selected processor type.

**Processor**

Specifies the FO processor to be used for the transformation. It can be the built-in Apache FOP processor or an external processor (on page 126).

**Output Tab (XQuery Transformations)**

When you create a new transformation scenario (on page 890) or edit an existing one (on page 972), a configuration dialog box allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab contains the following options:

- **Present as a sequence**
  
  Selecting this option will reduce the time necessary to fetch the full results, as it will only fetch the first chunk of the results.

- **Prompt for file**
  
  At the end of the transformation, a file browser dialog box is displayed for specifying the path and name of the file that stores the transformation result.

- **Save As**
  
  The path of the file where the result of the transformation is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the ![Insert Editor Variables (on page 162)](on page 162) button, or the ![Browse button](on page 162).

- **Open in Browser/System Application**
  
  If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the file type of the result (for example, in Windows PDF files are often opened in Acrobat Reader).
Note: To set the web browser that is used for displaying HTML/XHTML pages, go to Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser and specify it there.

- **Output file** - When Open in Browser/System Application is selected, you can use this button to automatically open the default output file at the end of the transformation.

- **Other location** - When Open in Browser/System Application is selected, you can use this option to open the file specified in this field at the end of the transformation.

You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the Browse button.

### Open in editor

When this is option is selected, at the end of the transformation, the default output file is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor, or if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor).

### Show in results view as

You can choose to view the results in one of the following:

- **XML** - If this is selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the transformation result in an XML viewer panel at the bottom of the application window with syntax highlighting (on page 112).
- **XHTML** - This option is only available if Open in Browser/System Application is not selected. If selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the transformation result in a built-in XHTML browser panel at the bottom of the application window.

⚠️ **Important:** When transforming very large documents, you should be aware that selecting this option may result in very long processing times. This drawback is due to the built-in Java XHTML browser implementation. To avoid delays for large documents, if you want to see the XHTML result of the transformation, you should use an external browser by selecting the Open in Browser/System Application option instead.

- **Image URLs are relative to** - If Show in results view as XHTML is selected, this option specifies the path used to resolve image paths contained in the transformation result. You can specify the path by using the text field, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the Browse button.
SQL Transformation

This type of transformation specifies a database connection for the database server that runs the SQL file associated with the scenario. The data processed by the SQL script is located in the database.

To create an SQL transformation scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Alt + T, C on OS X)) action from the toolbar or the XML menu. Then click the New button and select SQL transformation.
- Go to Window > Show View and select Transformation Scenarios to display this view (on page 981). Click the New Scenario drop-down menu button and select SQL transformation.

Both methods open the New Scenario dialog box. This dialog box allows you to configure the following options that control the transformation:

**Name**

The unique name of the SQL transformation scenario.

**SQL URL**

Allows you to specify the URL of the SQL script. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the Insert Editor Variables (on page 162) button, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

**Connection**

Allows you to select a connection from a drop-down list. To configure a connection, use the Advanced options button to open the Data Source preferences page (on page 47).

**Parameters**

Allows you to add or configure parameters for the transformation.

Editing a Transformation Scenario

Editing a transformation scenario is useful if you need to configure some of its parameters.

**Note:** Since transformation scenarios that are associated with built-in frameworks (on page 1622) are read-only, to edit one of these scenarios you will need to duplicate it and edit the duplicated scenario (on page 974).

To configure an existing transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Select the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Alt + T, C on OS X)) action from the toolbar or the XML menu.
Step Result: The **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 976)* is opened.

2. Select the particular transformation scenario and click the **Edit** button at the bottom of the dialog box or from the contextual menu.

**Tip:** You could also select the scenario and the **Edit** button in the **Transformation Scenarios view** *(on page 981)* to achieve the same result.

**Result:** This will open an **Edit scenario** configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in several tabs, depending on the type of transformation scenario that was selected.

Figure 356. Edit Scenarios Configuration Dialog Box

**Transformation Types**

The **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 976)* contains a **Type** column that shows you the transformation type for each of the listed scenarios. Each type of transformation contains includes some tabs with various configuration options.

The following is a list of the transformation types and their particular tabs (click the name of each tab below to see details about all the options that are available):

- **DITA OT** - This type of transformation includes configurable options in the following tabs:
  - Skins Tab *(on page )* (Available for **WebHelp Classic** and **WebHelp Classic with Feedback**)
  - Templates Tab *(on page )* (Available for **WebHelp Responsive** and **WebHelp Responsive with Feedback**)
  - FO Processor Tab *(on page )* (Available for PDF output)
  - Parameters Tab *(on page )*
  - Filters Tab *(on page )*
  - Advanced Tab *(on page )*
  - Output Tab *(on page )*
• **ANT** - This type of transformation includes configurable options in the following tabs:
  - Options Tab (on page 935)
  - Parameters Tab (on page 936)
  - Output Tab (on page 937)

• **XSLT** - This type of transformation includes configurable options in the following tabs:
  - XSLT Tab (on page 891)
  - FO Processor Tab (on page 900)
  - Output Tab (on page 901)

• **XProc** - This type of transformation includes configurable options in the following tabs:
  - XProc Tab (on page 958)
  - Inputs Tab (on page 958)
  - Parameters Tab (on page 959)
  - Outputs Tab (on page 959)
  - Options Tab (on page 961)

• **XQuery** - This type of transformation includes configurable options in the following tabs:
  - XQuery Tab (on page 909)
  - FO Processor Tab (on page 914)
  - Output Tab (on page 915)

**Related Information:**

• Creating New Transformation Scenarios (on page 890)

• Duplicating a Transformation Scenario (on page 974)

• Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box (on page 976)

• Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios (on page 975)

**Duplicating a Transformation Scenario**

Duplicating a transformation scenario is useful for creating a scenario that is similar to an existing one or to edit a built-in transformation scenario.

To configure an existing transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Alt + T, C on OS X)) action from the toolbar or the XML menu.
Step Result: The Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976) is opened.

2. Select the particular transformation scenario and click the Duplicate button at the bottom of the dialog box or from the contextual menu.

Tip: You could also select the scenario and the Duplicate button in the Transformation Scenarios view (on page 981) to achieve the same result.

Result: This will open an Edit scenario configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in several tabs, depending on the type of transformation scenario that was selected. For information about all the specific options in the various tabs, see the Transformation Types section (on page 973).

Related Information:

- Creating New Transformation Scenarios (on page 890)
- Editing a Transformation Scenario (on page 972)

Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios

If you have associated transformation scenarios for the current document (in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976) or Transformation Scenarios view (on page 981)), Oxygen XML Developer plugin included an Apply Transformation Scenario(s) action that allows you to quickly apply the associated transformation scenarios on the current document. Note that if an association is not detected, this action will open the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976) where you can choose the scenarios you want to apply.

The Apply Transformation Scenario(s) action can be initiated from any of the following methods:

- Use the Alt + Shift + T, T (Command + Alt + T, T on OS X)) keyboard shortcut.
- Click the Apply Transformation Scenario(s) button on the main toolbar.
- Click the Apply Transformation Scenario(s) button on the toolbar in the Transformation Scenarios view (on page 981).
- Right-click a file in the Navigator view (on page 210) and select Transform > Apply Transformation Scenario(s).
- Use the Apply Associated button in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).

Related Information:
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box

You can use the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box for editing existing transformation scenarios (on page 972) or creating new ones (on page 890).

To open this dialog box, use the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Alt + T, C on OS X)) action from the toolbar or the XML menu.

Figure 357. Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box

Top Section

The top section of the dialog box contains a filter that allows you to search through the scenarios list and the Settings button allows you to configure the following options:

- Show all scenarios
Select this option to display all the available scenarios, regardless of the document they are associated with.

**Show only the scenarios available for the editor**

Select this option to only display the scenarios that Oxygen XML Developer plugin can apply for the current document type.

**Show associated scenarios**

Select this option to only display the scenarios associated with the document you are editing.

**Import scenarios**

This option opens the **Import scenarios** dialog box that allows you to select the scenarios file that contains the scenarios you want to import. If one of the scenarios you import is identical to an existing scenario, Oxygen XML Developer plugin ignores it. If a conflict appears (an imported scenario has the same name as an existing one), you can choose between two options:

- Keep or replace the existing scenario.
- Keep both scenarios.

**Note:** When you keep both scenarios, Oxygen XML Developer plugin adds imported to the name of the imported scenario.

**Export selected scenarios**

Use this option to export selected scenarios individually. Oxygen XML Developer plugin creates a scenarios file that contains the scenarios that you export. This is useful if you want to share scenarios with others or export them to another computer.

**Middle Section**

The middle section of the dialog box displays the scenarios that you can apply to the current document. The following columns are used to display the transformation scenarios:

- **Association** - The checkboxes in this column mark whether or not a transformation scenario is associated with the current document.
- **Scenario** - This column presents the names of the transformation scenarios.
- **Type** - If the Show Type contextual menu option is selected, this column displays the type of the transformation scenario. For further details about the types of transformation scenarios that are available in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, see the Transformation Types section (on page 973).
• **Storage** - If the **Show Storage** contextual menu option is selected, this column displays where a transformation scenario is stored.

To sort each column you can left-click its header. The contextual menu of each header also includes the following actions:

**Show Type**

Use this option to display the transformation type of each scenario.

**Show Storage**

Use this option to display the storage location of the scenarios.

**Group by Type**

Select this option to group the scenarios by their type.

**Group by Storage**

Select this option to group the scenarios by their storage location.

**Ungroup all**

Select this option to ungroup all the scenarios.

**Reset Layout**

Select this option to restore the default settings of the layout.

Each transformation scenario listed in the middle section of the dialog box also includes the following contextual menu actions:

**>Edit**

This button opens the **Edit Scenario** configuration dialog box (on page 972) that allows you to configure the options of the transformations scenario.

**Duplicate**

Use this button to create a duplicate transformation scenario (on page 974).

**Remove**

Use this button to remove custom transformation scenarios.

**Import scenarios**

This option opens the **Import scenarios** dialog box that allows you to select the **scenarios** file that contains the scenarios you want to import. If one of the scenarios you import is identical to an existing scenario, Oxygen XML Developer plugin ignores it. If a conflict appears (an imported scenario has the same name as an existing one), you can choose between two options:
- Keep or replace the existing scenario.
- Keep both scenarios.

**Note:** When you keep both scenarios, Oxygen XML Developer plugin adds imported to the name of the imported scenario.

**Export selected scenarios**

Use this option to export selected scenarios individually. Oxygen XML Developer plugin creates a scenarios file that contains the scenarios that you export. This is useful if you want to share scenarios with others or export them to another computer.

**Bottom Section**

The bottom section of the dialog box contains the following actions and information:

**Association follows selection**

Select this checkbox to automatically associate selected transformation scenarios with the current document. This option can also be used for multiple selections.

**Note:** When this option is selected, the Association column is hidden.

**New**

This button allows you to create a new transformation scenario (on page 890).

**Edit**

This button opens the Edit Scenario dialog box that allows you to configure the options of the transformations scenario. For information about all the specific options in the various tabs, see the Transformation Types section (on page 973).

**Note:** If you try to edit a transformation scenario associated with a defined document type, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays a warning message to inform you that this is not possible and gives you the option to create a duplicate transformation scenario (on page 974) to edit instead.

**Duplicate**

Use this button to create a duplicate transformation scenario (on page 974).

**Remove**

Use this button to remove transformation scenarios.

**Note:** Removing scenarios associated with a defined document type is not allowed.

**Associated scenarios section**
Displays the scenarios that are associated with the current document. Selecting a checkbox in the Association column (on page 977) in the list of scenarios will add that scenario to this section. To remove a scenario from being associated with the current document, simply click the remove icon (×) to the right of the scenario name.

**Save and close**

Saves the current configuration and closes the dialog box.

**Apply associated**

Use this button to apply the associated scenarios and run the transformation on the current document.

**Cancel**

Cancels any changes made in the dialog box and reverts to the previously saved association.

Your selections in the Configure Transformation Scenarios(s) dialog box are persistent so the configured associations for the current document will be remembered after the dialog box is closed.

### Related Information:

- Editing a Transformation Scenario (on page 972)
- Duplicating a Transformation Scenario (on page 974)
- Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios (on page 975)
- Creating New Transformation Scenarios (on page 890)
- Sharing Transformation Scenarios (on page 981)

### Batch Transformations

A transformation action can be applied on a batch of selected files from the contextual menu of the Navigator view (on page 215) without having to open the files involved in the transformation. You can apply the same scenario to a batch of files or multiple scenarios to a single file or batch of files.

1. Select the files you want to transform and from the contextual menu, select Transform > Configure Transformation Scenario(s) to choose one or more transformation scenarios to be applied on all the files in the logical folder.
2. Use Oxygen XML Developer plugin editor variables (on page 162) to specify the input and output files. This ensures that each file from the selected set of resources is processed and that the output is not overwritten by the subsequent processing.

   a. Edit the transformation scenario to make sure the appropriate editor variable (on page 162) is assigned for the input file. For example, for a DocBook PDF transformation, make sure the XML URL input box is set to the $currentFileURL editor variable (on page 167). For a DITA PDF transformation, make sure the args.input parameter is set to the $cf editor variable (on page 166).

   b. Edit the transformation scenario to make sure the appropriate editor variable is assigned for the output file. For example, for an XML transformation with XSLT, switch to the Output tab and set the path of the output file using a construct of editor variables (on page 162), such as ${cfd}/${cfn}.html.

3. Now that logical folder has been associated with one or more transformation scenarios, whenever you want to apply the same batch transformation you can select Transform > Transform with from the contextual menu and the same previously associated scenario(s) will be applied.

4. If you want a different type of transformation to be applied to each file inside the logical folder, associate individual scenarios for each file and select Transform > Apply Transformation Scenario(s) from the contextual menu of the logical folder.

Related Information:

- Editor Variables (on page 162)

Sharing Transformation Scenarios

The transformation scenarios and their settings can be shared with other users by exporting them to a specialized scenarios file (on page 161) that can then be imported.

Transformation Scenarios View

You can manage the transformation scenarios by using the Transformation Scenarios view. To open this view, select Window > Show View > Transformation Scenarios.

Figure 358. Transformation Scenarios view
Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports multiple scenarios association. To associate multiple scenarios with a document, select the checkboxes in front of each scenario. You can also associate multiple scenarios with a document from the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).

By default, Oxygen XML Developer plugin presents the items in the following order:

1. Scenarios that match the current framework (on page 1622).
2. Scenarios that match the current project.
3. Scenarios that match other frameworks.

**Toolbar/Contextual Menu Actions and Options**

The following actions and options are available on the toolbar or in the contextual menu:

- **Apply selected scenarios**
  Select this option to run the current transformation scenario.

- **Debug selected scenario**
Select this option to switch to the Debugger perspective (on page 1624) and initialize it with the parameters from the scenario (the XML, XSLT, or XQuery input, the transformation engine, the XSLT parameters).

- New

This drop-down menu contains a list of the scenarios that you can create (on page 890). Oxygen XML Developer plugin determines the most appropriate scenarios for the current type of file and displays them at the beginning of the list, followed by the rest of the scenarios.

- Duplicate

Adds a new scenario to the list that is a duplicate of the current scenario. It is useful for creating a scenario that is similar to an existing one.

- Edit

Opens the dialog box that allows you to configure various options in several tabs, depending on the type of transformation scenario that was selected. For information about all the specific options in the various tabs, see the Transformation Types section (on page 973).

- Remove

Removes the current scenario from the list. This action is also available by using the Delete key.

- Import scenarios

This option opens the Import scenarios dialog box that allows you to select the scenarios file that contains the scenarios you want to import. If one of the scenarios you import is identical to an existing scenario, Oxygen XML Developer plugin ignores it. If a conflict appears (an imported scenario has the same name as an existing one), you can choose between two options:

  - Keep or replace the existing scenario.
  - Keep both scenarios.

**Note:** When you keep both scenarios, Oxygen XML Developer plugin adds imported to the name of the imported scenario.

- Export selected scenarios

Use this option to export transformation and validation scenarios individually. Oxygen XML Developer plugin creates a scenarios file that contains the scenarios that you export.

- Settings
This drop-down menu allows you to configure the following options (many of these options are also available if you right-click the name of a column):

**Show all scenarios**
Select this option to display all the available scenarios, regardless of the document they are associated with.

**Show only the scenarios available for the editor**
Select this option to only display the scenarios that Oxygen XML Developer plugin can apply for the current document type.

**Show associated scenarios**
Select this option to only display the scenarios associated with the document you are editing.

**Import scenarios**
This option opens the Import scenarios dialog box that allows you to select the scenarios file that contains the scenarios you want to import. If one of the scenarios you import is identical to an existing scenario, Oxygen XML Developer plugin ignores it. If a conflict appears (an imported scenario has the same name as an existing one), you can choose between two options:

- Keep or replace the existing scenario.
- Keep both scenarios.

**Note:** When you keep both scenarios, Oxygen XML Developer plugin adds imported to the name of the imported scenario.

**Export selected scenarios**
Use this option to export selected scenarios individually. Oxygen XML Developer plugin creates a scenarios file that contains the scenarios that you export. This is useful if you want to share scenarios with others or export them to another computer.

**Show Type**
Use this option to display the transformation type of each scenario.

**Show Storage**
Use this option to display the storage location of the scenarios.

**Group by Type**
Select this option to group the scenarios by their type.
**Group by Storage**

Select this option to group the scenarios by their storage location.

**Ungroup all**

Select this option to ungroup all the scenarios.

**Reset Layout**

Select this option to restore the default settings of the layout.

Your selections in the **Transformation Scenarios** view are persistent so the configured associations for the current document will be remembered whenever the document is opened.

**Related Information:**

- Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 972)*
- Creating New Transformation Scenarios *(on page 890)*

---

**WebHelp Output Customization**

**Oxygen XML WebHelp** provides the ability to generate two different types of output, **WebHelp Responsive** and **WebHelp Classic**. Both types include a feedback-enabled variant and each has its own set of options and features. The **WebHelp Responsive** variants are available for DITA documents while the **WebHelp Classic** variants are available for both DITA and DocBook.

**Table 57. WebHelp System Feature Matrix**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Responsive w/ Feedback</th>
<th>WebHelp System Variants</th>
<th>WebHelp System Variants</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Responsive</td>
<td>Classic w/ Feedback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desktop Systems</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile Devices</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-in Skins</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-in Templates</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search Capabilities</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modern Layout</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adaptable to Any Screen Size</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comments Section</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DITA Documents</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### WebHelp System Variants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Responsive w/ Feedback</th>
<th>Responsive</th>
<th>Classic w/ Feedback</th>
<th>Classic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DocBook Documents</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tri-Pane Frames or Frameless Version</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### WebHelp Classic Output

The **WebHelp Classic** variant is designed for desktop systems when feedback from users is not necessary and it is available for DocBook and DITA document types. The **WebHelp Classic with Feedback** variant also includes a feedback system that allows your users to make comments and allows you to manage and reply to them. This section contains information about configuring a WebHelp Classic system and customizing the output.

This type of WebHelp system can be generated by using one of the following transformation scenarios:

- DITA Map WebHelp Classic transformation scenario *(on page 869)*
- DITA Map WebHelp Classic with Feedback transformation scenario *(on page 870)*
- DocBook WebHelp Classic transformation scenario *(on page 884)*
- DocBook WebHelp Classic with Feedback transformation scenario *(on page 884)*

### Layout of the WebHelp Classic System Interface

The layout of the **WebHelp Classic** system is comprised of the following components:

**Left Pane or Frame**

This section on the left side of the help system includes the following tabs:

- **Content**
  
  A typical table of contents style presentation of your content. You can use the Expand all/Collapse all buttons to expand or collapse all the topics presented in the Table of Contents.

  **Note:** You can enhance the appearance of items in the Table of Contents. See the Customizing WebHelp Classic Output chapter *(on page 1019)* for more details.

- **Index**
Presents the index terms for your content. If your content does not contain any `indexterm` elements, this tab is not generated.

**Search Results**

This tab is generated when the **Search** field is used. It presents the search results in the form of links to topics where the search terms are found, along with a rating scheme for each result. For more details, see the Search Feature section *(on page 990)*.

**Upper Pane or Frame**

The upper section of the help system includes the following features:

**Search Field**

Use this feature to perform searches in your content. When you enter search terms in this field, the results are displayed in the **Search Results** tab in the left section of the help system, along with a rating scheme for each result. For more details, see the Search Feature section *(on page 990)*.

**Frames Option**

Click on this option to display the output rendered in HTML frames.

**Print Option**

Opens a dialog box with various printing options and a print preview.

**Navigation Links**

You can navigate through the content of your output using the navigation links or arrows in the upper-right part of the page. These arrows allow you to move to the **Parent topic**, **Previous topic**, or **Next topic**. Links to the parent topics of the currently opened topic are also presented at the top of the page. For DITA output, these navigation links are controlled by the `collection-type` attribute. For example, if you set `collection-type="sequence"` on a parent topic reference, navigation links will be generated in the output for that topic and all of its child topics.

**Tip:** To hide the **Parent**, **Next**, and **Previous** links, you can edit the transformation scenario and set the value of the `args.hide.parent.link` parameter to **yes**.

**Main Pane or Frame**

The content of the help pages are rendered and displayed in this main section.

Figure 359. WebHelp Classic Output
WebHelp Classic with Feedback Enabled

The WebHelp Classic with Feedback variant also contains a Comments section at the bottom of each topic. This section is where you can interact with users through a comment system. For information about deploying a feedback-enabled system, see Deploying a Feedback-Enabled System (on page 1085).

Figure 360. WebHelp Classic with Feedback Comments Section
To add a new comment, click the **Add New Comment** button, or click **Reply** to add a comment to an existing thread. You can click on the **Log in** button on the right side of this bar to be authenticated as a user and your user name will be included in any comments that you add. If you do not have a user name, you can click on the **Sign Up** button to create a new user.

After you log in, your name and user name are displayed in the **Comments** bar, along with the **Log off** and **Edit** buttons. Click the **Edit** button to open the **User Profile** dialog box where you can customize the following options:

- **Your Name** - You can use this field to edit the initial name that you used to create your user profile.
- **Your email address** - You can use this field to edit the initial email address that you used to create your profile.
- You can choose to receive an email in the following situations:
  - When a comment is left on a page that you commented on.
  - When a comment is left on any topic in the WebHelp Classic system.
  - When a reply is left to one of my comments.
- **New Password** - Allows you to enter a new password for your user account.

**Note:** The **Current Password** field from the top of the **User Profile** is mandatory if you want to save the changes you make.
If you are an administrator, you can manage user information and comments. For more information, see Managing Users and Comments in a Feedback-Enabled System (on page 1089).

WebHelp Classic Search Engine

Search Rules

Rules that are applied during a search include:

- You can use quotes to perform an exact search for multiple word phrases (for example, "grow flowers" will only return results if both words are found consecutively and exactly as they are typed in the search field). This type of search is known as a phrase search.
- Boolean Search is supported using the following operators: and, or, not. When there are two adjacent search terms without an operator, or is used as the default search operator (for example, grow flowers is the same as grow or flowers).
- The space character separates keywords (an expression such as grow flowers counts as two separate keywords: grow and flowers).
- indexterm and keywords DITA elements are an effective way to increase the ranking of a page (for example, content inside a keywords element weighs more than an H1 HTML element).
- Words composed by merging two or more words with colon ("：“), minus (“-”), underline (“_”), or dot (“.”) characters count as a single word.
- Your search terms should contain two or more characters (note that stop words will be ignored). This rule does not apply to CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) languages.
- When searching for multi-word phrases in CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) languages that often have multiple words appear in strings without a space separator, you need to add a space to separate the words. Otherwise WebHelp will not find results. For example, Chinese uses a specialized character for space separators, but the current WebHelp implementation cannot detect such specialized characters, so to search for #### (it translates as "before you begin" or "before start"), you have to enter ## ## (notice the space between the second and third symbols) in the search field.

5-Star Rating Mechanism and Sorting

The Search feature is also enhanced with a rating mechanism that computes scores for every result that matches the search criteria. These scores are then translated into a 5-star rating scheme and the stars are displayed to the right of each result. The search results are sorted depending on the following:

- Search entries that satisfy the phrase search criterion are presented first.
- The number of keywords found in a single page (the higher the number, the better).
- The context (for example, a word found in a title, scores better than a word found in unformatted text). The search ranking order, sorted by relevance is as follows:
○ The search term is included in a meta keyword.
○ The search term is in the title of the page.
○ The search term is in bold text in a paragraph.
○ The search term is in normal text in a paragraph.

Excluded Terms

To improve performance, the **Search** feature excludes certain *stop words*. For example, the English version of the *stop words* includes: a, an, and, are, as, at, be, but, by, for, if, in, into, is, it, no, not, of, on, or, such, that, the, their, then, there, these, they, this, to, was, will, with.

**WebHelp Classic Search Results Tab**

When you enter search terms in the **Search** field at the top of the help system, the results are displayed in the **Search Results** tab in the left section. When you click on a result in the **Search Results** tab, that result is displayed in the main pane with the search terms highlighted. If you press **Enter** with the **Search** field empty, the highlights are removed.

Figure 361. WebHelp Classic Search Results Tab
Missing Terms

If you enter multiple search terms (other than stop words), for any result that the search engine found at least one term but not one or more of the other terms, the Missing terms will be listed below each result.

Tag Element Scoring Values

HTML tag elements are also assigned a scoring value and these values are evaluated for the search results. For information about editing these values, see How to Change Element Scoring in Search Results (on page 1037).

Browser Compatibility

This output format is compatible with the most recent versions of the following common browsers:

• Edge
• Internet Explorer (IE 10 or newer)
Important: Due to some security restrictions in certain browsers (Google Chrome and Internet Explorer), WebHelp Classic pages loaded from the local system (through URLs of the file:///... format) may not work properly. It is recommended that you load WebHelp Classic pages in Google Chrome or Internet Explorer only from a web server (with a URL such as http://your.server.com/webhelp/index.html or http://localhost/web_pages/index.html).

Warning: Due to some restrictions in web browsers regarding JavaScript code, the frameless version (index.html start page) of the WebHelp Classic system should only be loaded from a web server (with a URL such as http://your.server.com/webhelp/index.html or http://localhost/web_pages/index.html). When loading WebHelp Classic pages from the local file system, the frameset version (index_frames.html start page) of the WebHelp Classic system should be used instead (file:///...).

Deploying a Feedback-Enabled System

System Requirements

The feedback-enabled WebHelp system requires a standard server deployment. You can request this from your server administrator and it requires the following system components:

- A Web server (such as Apache Web Server)
- A MySQL or MariaDB database server
- A database admin tool (such as phpMyAdmin)
- PHP Version 5.1.6 or later

The WebHelp system supports most of the recent versions of the following browsers: Chrome, Firefox, Edge, Internet Explorer, Safari, Opera.

Create WebHelp with Feedback Database

The WebHelp with Feedback system needs a database to store user details and the actual feedback, and a user added to it with all privileges. After this is created, you should have the following information:

- Database name
- Username
Exactly how you create the database and user depends on your web host and your particular needs.

**Example:**

The following procedure uses *phpMyAdmin* to create a MySQL database for the feedback system and a MySQL user with privileges for that database. The feedback system uses these credentials to connect to the database.

Using *phpMyAdmin* to create a database:

1. Access the *phpMyAdmin* instance running on your server.
2. Click *Databases* (in the right frame) and then create a *database*. You can give it any name you want (for example *comments*).
3. Create a user with connection privileges for this database.
4. Under *localhost*, in the right frame, click *Privileges* and then at the bottom of the page click the *reload the privileges* link.

### Deploying the WebHelp with Feedback Output

If you have a web server configured with PHP and MySQL, you can deploy the **WebHelp with Feedback** output by following these steps:

1. Connect to your server using an FTP client.
2. Locate the home directory (from now on, referred to as *DOCUMENT_ROOT*) of your server.
3. Copy the transformation output folder into the *DOCUMENT_ROOT* folder.
4. Rename it to something relevant (for example, *myProductWebHelp*).
5. Open the output folder (for example, http://[YOUR_SERVER]/myProductWebHelp/). You are redirected to the installation wizard. Proceed with the installation as follows:
   a. Verify that the prerequisites are met.
   b. Press *Start Installation*.
   c. Configure the **Deployment Settings** section. Default values are provided, but you should adjust them as needed.

   **Tip:** You can change some of the options later. The installation creates a config.php file in [OXYGEN_WEBHELP_INSTALL_DIR]/feedback/resources/php/config/config.php where all your configuration options are stored.

d. Configure the **MySQL Database Connection Settings** section. Use the information (database name, username, password) from the Create WebHelp with Feedback Database section (on page 1086) to fill-in the appropriate text boxes.
**Warning:** Selecting the Create new database structure option will overwrite any existing data in the selected database, if it already exists. Therefore, it is useful the first time you install the WebHelp with Feedback system, but you do not want to select this option on subsequent deployments.

e. If you are using a domain (such as OpenLDAP or Active Directory) to manage users in your organization, select the Enable LDAP Authentication option. This will allow you to configure the LDAP server, which will provide information and credentials for users who will access the WebHelp system. Also, this will allow you to choose which of the domain users will have administrator privileges.

f. If the Create new database structure option is selected, the Create WebHelp Administrator Account section becomes available. Here you can set the administrator account data. The administrator is able to moderate new posts and manage WebHelp users.

The same database can be used to store comments for multiple WebHelp with Feedback deployments. If a topic is available in multiple deployments and there are comments associated with it, you can choose to display the comments in all deployments that share the database. To do this, select the Display comments from other products option. In the Display comments from section, a list with the deployments sharing the same database is displayed. Select the deployments allowed to share common feedback.

**Note:** You can restrict the displayed comments of a product depending on its version. If you have two products that use the same database and you restrict one of them to display comments starting from a certain version, the comments of the other product are also displayed from the specified version onwards.

g. Press Next Step.

h. Remove the installation folder from your web server.

**Important:** When you publish subsequent iterations of your WebHelp with Feedback system, you will not upload the /install folder in the output, as you only need it uploaded the first time you create the installation. On subsequent uploads, you will just upload the other output files.

i. In your Web browser, go to your WebHelp with Feedback system main page.

### Testing Your WebHelp with Feedback System

To test your system, create a user and post a comment. Check to see if the notification emails are delivered to your email inbox.

**Note:** To read debug messages generated by the system:

1. Enable JavaScript logging by doing one of the following:
• Open the log.js file, locate the `var log = new Log(Level.NONE);` line, and change the logging level to: `Level.INFO`, `Level.DEBUG`, `Level.WARN`, or `Level.ERROR`.

• Append `?log=true` to the WebHelp URL.

2. Inspect the PHP and Apache server log files.

**Documentation Product ID and Version**

When you run a **WebHelp with Feedback** transformation scenario, by default you are prompted for a documentation product ID and version number. This is needed when multiple WebHelp systems are deployed on the same server. Think of your WebHelp output as a *product*. If you have three different WebHelp outputs, you have three different *products* (each with their own unique documentation product ID). This identifier is included in a configuration file so that comments are tied to a particular output (product ID and version number).

**Note:** The **WebHelp with Feedback** installation includes a configuration option (*Display comments from other products*) that allows you to choose to have comments visible in other specified *products*.

**Related Information:**

• [Managing Users and Comments in a Feedback-Enabled System](on page 1089)

**Refreshing the Content of a Feedback-Enabled System**

It is common to update the content of an existing installation of a **WebHelp with Feedback** system on a regular basis. In this case, reinstalling the whole system is not a viable option since it might result in the loss of the comments associated with your topics. Also, reconfiguring the system every time you want to refresh it may be time consuming.

Fortunately, you can refresh just the content without losing the comments or the initial system configuration. To do so, follow these steps:

1. Execute the transformation scenario that produces the **WebHelp with Feedback** output directory.
2. Go to the output directory (specified in the **Output** tab of the transformation scenario), locate the `\feedback\resources\php\config\config.php` file, and delete it.
3. Locate the `\feedback\install` directory and delete it.
4. Copy the remaining structure of the output folder and paste it into your **WebHelp with Feedback** system installation directory, overwriting the existing content.
Managing Users and Comments in a Feedback-Enabled System

When you installed the WebHelp with Feedback system the first time (assuming the Create new database structure option (on page 1087) was selected), you should have been prompted to create an administrator account (or a user named administrator was created by default). As an administrator, you have access to manage comments posted in your feedback-enabled WebHelp system. You can also manage the user information (such as role, status, or notification options).

To manage comments and user information, follow these steps:

1. At the bottom of each specific topic there is a Comments navigation bar and on the right side there is a Log in button. Click this button and log in with your administrator credentials. This gives you access to an Admin Panel button.
2. Click the Admin Panel button to display an administration page.

Figure 362. Administrative Page

![Administrative Page](image)

3. Use this page to manage the following options:

   **Delete Orphaned Comments**
   
   Allows you to delete comments that are no longer associated with a topic in your WebHelp system.

   **Delete Pending Users**
   
   Allows you to delete user accounts that you do not wish to activate.

   **View All Posts**
   
   Allows you to view all the comments that are associated with topics in your WebHelp system.

   **Export Comments**
   
   Allows you to export all posts associated with topics in your WebHelp system into an XML file.

   **Set Version**
   
   Use this action to display comments starting with a particular version.
Manage User Information

To edit the details for a user, click on the corresponding row. This opens a window that allows you to customize the following information associated with the user:

**Name**

The full name of the user.

**Level**

Use this field to modify the privilege level (role) for the selected user. You can choose from the following:

- **User** - Regular user, able to post comments and receive e-mail notifications.
- **Moderator** - In addition to the regular User rights, this type of user has access to the Admin Panel where a moderator can view, delete, export comments, and set the version of the feedback-enabled WebHelp system.
- **Admin** - Full administrative privileges. Can manage WebHelp-specific settings, users, and their comments.

**Company**

The name of the organization associated with the user.

**E-Mail**

The contact email address for the user. This is also the address where the WebHelp system sends notifications.

**WebHelp Notification**

When selected, the user receives notifications when comments are posted anywhere in your feedback-enabled WebHelp system.

**Reply Notification**

When selected, the user receives notifications when comments are posted as a reply to one of their comments.

**Page Notification**

When selected, the user receives notifications when comments are posted on a topic where they previously posted a comment.

**Date**

The date the user registered is displayed.

**Status**
Use this drop-down list to change the status of the user. You can choose from the following:

- **Created** - The user is created but does not yet have any rights for the feedback-enabled WebHelp system.
- **Validated** - The user is able to use the feedback-enabled WebHelp system.
- **Suspended** - The user has no rights for the feedback-enabled WebHelp system.

⚠️ **Warning**: The key used for identifying the page a comment is attached to is the relative file path to the output page. Since the output file and folder names mirror the source, any change to the file name (or its folder) in the source will affect the comments associated with that WebHelp page. If you change the file name or path, the comment history for that topic will become orphaned (a change to the topic ID does not affect the comment history).

**Context-Sensitive WebHelp Classic System**

Context-sensitive help systems assist users by providing specific informational topics for certain components of a user interface, such as a button or window. This mechanism works based on mappings between a unique ID defined in the topic and a corresponding HTML page.

**Generating Context-Sensitive Help**

When WebHelp Classic output is generated, the transformation process produces an XML mapping file called `context-help-map.xml` and copies it in the output folder of the transformation. This XML file maps an ID to a corresponding HTML page through an `appContext` element, as in the following example:

```xml
<map productID="oxy-webhelp" productVersion="1.1">
  <appContext helpID="myapp-functionid1" path="tasks/app-help1.html"/>
  <appContext helpID="myapp-functionid2" path="tasks/app-help1.html"/>
  ...
</map>
```

The possible attributes are as follows:

- **helpID**

  A Unique ID provided by a topic from two possible sources (resourceid element or the id attribute that is set on the topic root element):
The `resourceid` element is mapped into the `appContext` element and can be specified in either the `topicref` within a DITA map or in a `prolog` within a DITA topic. The `resourceid` element accepts the following attributes:

- **appname** - A name for the external application that references the topic. If this attribute is not specified, its value is considered to be empty ("").
- **appid** - An ID used by an application to identify the topic.
- **id** - Specifies a value that is used by a specific application to identify the topic, but this attribute is ignored if an `appid` attribute is used. Also, starting with DITA 1.3, the `id` attribute was deprecated in favor of the `appid` attribute.

**Note:** Multiple `appid` values can be associated with a single `appname` value (and multiple `appname` values can be associated with a single `appid` value), but the values for both attributes work in combination to specify a specific ID for a specific application, and therefore each combination of values for the `appid` and `appname` attributes should be unique within the context of a single root map (on page 1626). For example, suppose that you need two different functions of an application to both open the same WebHelp page.

**Example: resourceid Specified in a DITA Map**

The `resourceid` element can be specified in a `topicmeta` element within a `topicref`.

```xml
<map title="App Help">
  <topicref href="app-help1.dita" type="task">
    <topicmeta>
      <resourceid appname="myapp" appid="functionid1"/>
      <resourceid appname="myapp" appid="functionid2"/>
    </topicmeta>
  </topicref>
</map>
```

**Example: resourceid Specified in a DITA Topic**

The `resourceid` element can be specified in a `prolog` element within a DITA topic.

```xml
<task id="app-help1">
```
For more information about the `resourceid` element, see DITA Specifications: `<resourceid>`.

**id**

If a `resourceid` element is not declared in the DITA map or DITA topic (as described above), the `id` attribute that is set on the topic root element is mapped into the `appContext` element.

⚠️ **Important:** You should ensure that these defined IDs are unique in the context of the entire DITA project. If the IDs are not unique, the transformation scenario will display warning messages in the transformation console output and the help system will not work properly.

**path**

The path to a corresponding WebHelp page. This path is relative to the location of the `context-help-map.xml` mapping file.

**productID** *(Applicable only if you are using the WebHelp Classic with Feedback transformation scenario)*

The ID of the product for your documentation project.

**productVersion** *(Applicable only if you are using the WebHelp Classic with Feedback transformation scenario)*

The version of the product for your documentation project.

There are two ways of implementing context-sensitive help in your system:

- The XML mapping file can be loaded by a PHP script on the server side. The script receives the `contextId` value and will look it up in the XML file.
- Invoke one of the WebHelp system files `index.html` or `index_frames.html` and pass the `contextId` parameter with a specific value. The WebHelp system will automatically open the help page associated with the value of the `contextId` parameter.

⚠️ **Note:** The `contextId` parameter is not case-sensitive.
The following example will open a *frameless* version of the WebHelp system showing the page associated with the ID `dialog1ID`:

```
index.html?contextId=dialog1ID
```

The following example will open a *frameset* version of the WebHelp system showing the page associated with the ID `view1ID`:

```
index_frames.html?contextId=view1ID
```

**Tip:** You can use an anchor (on page 1619) in the `contextId` parameter to jump to a specific section in a document. For example, `contextId=topicID#anchor`.

**Context-Sensitive Queries**

You can use the URL field in your browser to search for topics in a context-sensitive WebHelp system with the assistance of the following parameters:

- **contextId** - The WebHelp JavaScript engine will look for this value in the `context-help-map.xml` mapping file and load the corresponding help page.

  ▶ **Note:** You can use an anchor (on page 1619) in the `contextId` parameter to jump to a specific section in a document. For example, `contextId=topicID#anchor`.

- **appname** - You can use this parameter in conjunction with `contextId` to search for this value in the corresponding `appname attribute value (on page 1000)` in the mapping file.

  `http://localhost/webhelp/index.html?contextId=topicID&appname=myApplication`

**Generating WebHelp Classic Output for DITA**

The publishing process can be initiated from a transformation scenario within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, from a command line outside Oxygen XML Editor/Author, or from an integration server.

**Running from Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

To publish DITA content to WebHelp Classic output from a transformation scenario inside Oxygen XML Editor/Author, use one of the following procedures, depending on whether or not you want a feedback section in your output.

**WebHelp Classic Output**

To publish a *DITA map (on page 1621)* as a WebHelp Classic system, follow these steps:
1. Select the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** action from the toolbar.
2. Select the **DITA Map WebHelp Classic** scenario from the **DITA Map** section.
3. If you want to configure the transformation, click the **Edit** button.

**Step Result:** This opens an **Edit scenario** configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in the following tabs:

- **Templates Tab** - This tab contains a set of built-in skins that you can use for the layout of your WebHelp system output.
- **Parameters Tab** - This tab includes numerous transformation parameters that can be set to customize your WebHelp system output.
- **Filters Tab** - This tab allows you to filter certain content elements from the generated output.
- **Advanced Tab** - This tab allows you to specify some advanced options for the transformation scenario.
- **Output Tab** - This tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

4. Click **Apply associated** to process the transformation.

When the **DITA Map WebHelp Classic** transformation is complete, the output is automatically opened in your default browser.

To further customize this transformation, you can edit various parameters, including the following most commonly used ones:

### WebHelp Classic with Feedback Output

To publish a **DITA map (on page 1621)** as a **WebHelp Classic with Feedback** system, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** action from the toolbar.
2. Select the **DITA Map WebHelp Classic with Feedback** scenario from the **DITA Map** section.
3. If you want to configure the transformation, click the **Edit** button.

**Step Result:** This opens an **Edit scenario** configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in the following tabs:

- **Templates Tab** - This tab contains a set of built-in skins that you can use for the layout of your WebHelp system output.
- **Parameters Tab** - This tab includes numerous transformation parameters that can be set to customize your WebHelp system output.
- **Filters Tab** - This tab allows you to filter certain content elements from the generated output.
- **Advanced Tab** - This tab allows you to specify some advanced options for the transformation scenario.
• **Output Tab** - This tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

4. Click **Apply associated** to begin the transformation.

5. Enter the documentation product ID (value for the `webhelp.product.id` parameter) and the documentation version (value for the `webhelp.product.version` parameter).

When the DITA Map WebHelp Classic with Feedback transformation is complete, your default browser opens the `installation.html` file. This file contains information about the output location, system requirements, installation instructions, and deployment of the output. Follow the instructions to complete the system deployment (*on page 1085*).

For more information about the feedback-enabled WebHelp system, watch our video demonstration:

[https://www.youtube.com/embed/eoQ2uxHvppE](https://www.youtube.com/embed/eoQ2uxHvppE)

**Running from Command Line**

To publish to the WebHelp Classic output from a command line outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author, you can use the `dita` startup script that comes bundled with *DITA Open Toolkit* distribution.

**Required Arguments for the `dita` Command Startup Script:**

```
DITA-OT-DIR (on page 1622)/bin/[executable] -i [path_to_input.ditamap] -f [transformation_type]
```

**executable**

**Windows** - The `dita.bat` script located in: `DITA-OT-DIR (on page 1622)/bin/`.

**Linux/Mac OS X** - The `dita` script file located in: `DITA-OT-DIR (on page 1622)/bin/`.

**-i / -input**

Specifies the master file for your DITA documentation project. Typically this is a DITA map.

**-f / -format**

Specifies the transformation type. The **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** contributes the following transformation types for DITA:

- **webhelp** - The transformation that produces WebHelp Classic output for desktop.
- **webhelp-feedback** - The transformation that produces feedback-enabled WebHelp Classic with Feedback for desktop.

**Additional Options or Parameters:**
You can also use DITA-OT options to modify the command behavior or additional configuration parameters that are contributed by the Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin (on page 1005).

DITA-OT-DIR (on page 1622)\bin\[executable] -i [path_to_input.ditamap] -f [transformation_type] [option] -D[parameter=value]

**Command Line Examples:**

- **Windows:**
  
dita.bat -i c:\mySample.ditamap -f webhelp-responsive -o c:\output -Dwebhelp.logo.image=C:\images\myLogo.jpg

- **Linux/Mac OS X:**
  
dita -i /mySample.ditamap -f webhelp-responsive -o /output -Dwebhelp.logo.image=/images/myLogo.jpg

**Additional WebHelp Parameters for DITA**

You can append the following parameters to the command line that runs the transformation:

- **-Dwebhelp.copyright** *(not available for WebHelp Responsive systems)*
  Adds a small copyright text that appears at the end of the Table of Contents pane.

- **-Dwebhelp.custom.resources**
  The file path to a directory that contains resources files. All files from this directory will be copied to the root of the WebHelp output.

- **-Dwebhelp/favicon**
  The file path that points to an image to be used as a favicon in the WebHelp output.

- **-Dwebhelp.footer.file** *(not available for WebHelp Responsive systems)*
  Path to an XML file that includes the footer content for your WebHelp output pages. You can use this parameter to integrate social media features (such as widgets for Facebook™, Twitter™, Google Analytics, or Google+™). The file must be well-formed, each widget must be in separate div or span element, and the code for each script element is included in an XML comment (also, the start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line). The following code excerpt is an example for adding a Facebook™ widget:

```xml
<div id="facebook">
  <div id="fb-root"/>
  <script>
    <!-- (function(d, s, id) { var js, fjs = d.getElementsByTagName(s)[0];
    if (d.getElementById(id)) return;
    js = d.createElement(s); js.id = id;
    js.src = "//connect.facebook.net/en_US/sdk.js#xfbml=1&version=v2.0";
  
```
```
-Dwebhelp.footer.include (not available for WebHelp Responsive systems)

Specifies whether or not to include footer in each WebHelp page. Possible values: yes, no. If set to no, no footer is added to the WebHelp pages. If set to yes and the webhelp.footer.file parameter has a value, then the content of that file is used as footer. If the webhelp.footer.file has no value then a default Oxygen footer is inserted in each WebHelp page.

-Dwebhelp.google.search.results

A file path that specifies the location of a well-formed XHTML file containing the Google Custom Search Engine element gcse:searchresults-only. You can use all supported attributes for this element. It is recommend to set the linkTarget attribute to frm for frameless (iframe) version of WebHelp or to contentWin for the frameset version of WebHelp. The default value for this attribute is _blank and the search results will be loaded in a new window. If this parameter is not specified, the following code will be used <gcse:searchresults-only linkTarget="frm"></gcse:searchresults-only>

-Dwebhelp.google.search.script

A file path that specifies the location of a well-formed XHTML file containing the Custom Search Engine script from Google.

-Dwebhelp.logo.image.target.url

Specifies a target URL that is set on the logo image. When you click the logo image, you will be redirected to this address.

-Dwebhelp.logo.image

 Specifies a path to an image displayed as a logo in the left side of the output header.

-Dwebhelp.product.id (available only for Feedback-enabled systems)

This parameter specifies a short name for the documentation target, or product (for example, mobile-phone-user-guide, hvac-installation-guide).

Note: You can deploy documentation for multiple products on the same server.

Restriction: The following characters are not allowed in the value of this parameter:

< > / \ ' ( ) { } = ; * % + & .
-Dwebhelp.product.version (available only for Feedback-enabled systems)

Specifies the documentation version number (for example, 1.0, 2.5, etc.). New user comments are bound to this version.

Note: Multiple documentation versions can be deployed on the same server.

Restriction: The following characters are not allowed in the value of this parameter: 
< > / \ ' ( ) { } = ; * % + & .

-Dwebhelp.search.japanese.dictionary

The file path of the dictionary that will be used by the Kuromoji morphological engine for indexing Japanese content in the WebHelp pages. The encoding for the dictionary must be UTF8.

-Dwebhelp.search.ranking

If this parameter is set to false then the 5-star rating mechanism is no longer included in the search results that are displayed on the Search tab (default setting is true).

-Dwebhelp.show.changes.and.comments

When set to yes, user comments, replies to comments, and tracked changes are published in the WebHelp output. The default value is no.

-Dwebhelp.sitemap.base.url

Base URL for all the loc elements in the generated sitemap.xml file. The value of a loc element is computed as the relative file path from the href attribute of a topicref element from the DITA map, appended to this base URL value. The loc element is mandatory in sitemap.xml. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the sitemap.xml file is not generated.

-Dwebhelp.sitemap.change.frequency

The value of the changefreq element in the generated sitemap.xml file. The changefreq element is optional in sitemap.xml. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the changefreq element is not added in sitemap.xml. Allowed values: <empty string> (default), always, hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, never.

-Dwebhelp.sitemap.priority

The value of the priority element in the generated sitemap.xml file. It can be set to any fractional number between 0.0 (least important priority) and 1.0 (most important priority). For example, 0.3, 0.5, or 0.8. The priority element is optional in sitemap.xml. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the priority element is not added in sitemap.xml.
-Dwebhelp.skin.css (available only for WebHelp Classic and WebHelp Classic with Feedback systems)

Path to a CSS file that sets the style theme in the WebHelp Classic output. It can be one of the built-in skin CSS from the $DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic/predefined-skins directory, or it can be a custom skin CSS generated with the Oxygen Skin Builder web application.

Parameters Specific to WebHelp Responsive Output (available only for WebHelp Responsive and WebHelp Responsive with Feedback systems)

-Dbwebhelp.default.collection.type.sequence

Specifies if the sequence value will be used by default when the collection-type attribute is not specified. This option is helpful if you want to have Next and Previous navigational buttons generated for all HTML pages. Allowed values are no (default) and yes.

-Dbwebhelp.enable.search.autocomplete

Specifies if the Autocomplete feature is enabled in the WebHelp search text field. The default value is yes.

-Dbwebhelp.fragment.after.body

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the page body. The value of the parameter can be either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment.

-Dbwebhelp.fragment.after.logo_and_title

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the logo and title. The value of the parameter can be either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment.

-Dbwebhelp.fragment.after.main.page.search

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the search field. The value of the parameter can be either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment.

-Dbwebhelp.fragment.after.toc_or_tiles

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the table of contents or tiles in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment.

-Dbwebhelp.fragment.after.top_menu
In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the top menu. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

```
-Dwebhelp.fragment.before.body
```

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the page body. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

```
-Dwebhelp.fragment.before.logo_and_title
```

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the logo and title. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

```
-Dwebhelp.fragment.before.main.page.search
```

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the search field. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

```
-Dwebhelp.fragment.before.toc_or_tiles
```

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the table of contents or tiles in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

```
-Dwebhelp.fragment.before.top_menu
```

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the top menu. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

```
-Dwebhelp.fragment.footer
```

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment as the page footer. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

```
-Dwebhelp.fragment.head
```

In the generated output it inserts a given XHTML fragment in the `<head>` element. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

```
-Dwebhelp.fragment.welcome
```

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment as a welcome message (or title). The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.
-Dwebhelp.merge.nested.topics.related.links
  Specifies if the related links from nested topics will be merged with the links in the parent topic. Thus the links will be moved from the topic content to the related links component and all of the links from the same group (for example, Related Tasks, Related References, Related Information) are merged into a single group. The default value is yes.

-Dwebhelp.search.enable.pagination
  Specifies whether or not search results will be displayed on multiple pages. Allowed values are yes or no.

-Dwebhelp.search.page.numberOfItems
  Specifies the number of search results items displayed on each page. This parameter is only used when the webhelp.search.enable.pagination parameter is enabled.

-Dwebhelp.search.stop.words.exclude
  Specifies a list of words that will be excluded from the default list of stop words that are filtered out before the search processing. Use comma separators to specify more than one word (for example: if,for,is).

-Dwebhelp.show.breadcrumb
  Specifies if the breadcrumb component will be presented in the output. The default value is yes.

-Dwebhelp.show.child.links
  Specifies if child links will be generated in the output for all topics that have subtopics. The default value is no.

-Dwebhelp.show.indexterms.link
  Specifies if an icon that links to the index will be presented in the output. The default value is yes.

-Dwebhelp.show.main.page.tiles
  Specifies if the tiles component will be presented in the main page of the output. For a tree style layout, this parameter should be set to no.

-Dwebhelp.show.main.page.toc
  Specifies if the table of contents will be presented in the main page of the output. The default value is yes.

-Dwebhelp.show.navigation.links
  Specifies if navigation links will be presented in the output. The default value is yes.

-Dwebhelp.show.print.link
Specifies if a print link or icon will be presented within each topic in the output. The default value is yes.

-Dwebhelp.show.publication.toc

Specifies if a table of contents will be presented on the left side of each topic in the output. The default value is yes.

-Dwebhelp.show.topic.toc

Specifies if a topic table of contents will be presented on the right side of each topic in the output. This table of contents contains links to each <section> within the current topic that contains an @id attribute and the section corresponding to the current scroll position is highlighted. The default value is yes.

-Dwebhelp.show.top.menu

Specifies if a menu will be presented at the topic of the main page in the output. The default value is yes.

-Dwebhelp.publication.toc.hide.chunked.topics

Specifies if the table of contents will contain links for chunked topics. The default value is yes.

-Dwebhelp.publication.toc.links

Specifies which links will be included in the table of contents. The possible values are:

- chapter (default) - The TOC will include links for the current topic, its children, its siblings, and its direct ancestor (including the direct ancestor’s siblings), and the parent chapter.
- topic - The TOC will only include links for the current topic and its direct children.
- all - The TOC will include all links.

-Dwebhelp.publication.toc.tooltip.position

By default, if a topic contains a shortdesc element, its content is displayed in a tooltip when the user hovers over its link in the table of contents. This parameter controls whether or not this tooltip is displayed and its position relative to the link. The possible values are:

- left (default)
- right
- top
- bottom
- hidden - The tooltip will not be displayed.

-Dwebhelp.top.menu.depth
Specifies the maximum depth level of the topics that will be included in the top menu. The default value is 3. A value of 0 means that the menu has unlimited depth.

-Dwebhelp.topic.collapsible.elements.initial.state

Specifies the initial state of collapsible elements (tables with titles, nested topics with titles, sections with titles, index term groups). The possible values are collapsed or expanded (default value).

**Note:** Note that the fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml parameter is not supported. This parameter is normally used to specify whether or not the application tries to fix such references in a temporary files folder before the DITA Open Toolkit is invoked on the fixed references.

**Further Customization**

If you need to further customize the transformation process, you can append other DITA-OT parameters as well. Any parameter that you want to append must follow the -D model of the above parameters. For example, to append the args.csspath parameter, use:

-Dargs.csspath=[CSS_FILE_PATH]

where [CSS_FILE_PATH] is the location of the directory that contains the CSS file.

**Related Information:**

• Setting DITA-OT Parameters

**Running from an Integration Server**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin can be processed from an automatic publishing system, such as Jenkins or Travis.

**Automating DITA to WebHelp Output with Jenkins**

To integrate WebHelp output with the Jenkins continuous integration tool, follow these steps:

1. Create a Maven project to incorporate the DITA-OT that already integrates Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
2. Go to the root of your Maven project and edit the pom.xml file to include the following fragment:

```xml
<properties>
  <oxygen-webhelp>${basedir}/tools/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive</oxygen-webhelp>
</properties>
```
<properties/>

<plugin>
  <artifactId>exec-maven-plugin</artifactId>
  <groupId>org.codehaus.mojo</groupId>
  <executions>
    <execution>
      <!-- Run our version calculation script -->
      <id>Version Calculation</id>
      <phase>generate-sources</phase>
      <goals>
        <goal>exec</goal>
      </goals>
      <configuration>
        <executable>${oxygen-webhelp}/ditaWebhelp.bat</executable>
      </configuration>
    </execution>
  </executions>
</plugin>

3. Go to the Jenkins top page and create a new Jenkins job. Configure this job to suit your particular requirements, such as the build frequency and location of the Maven project.

Automating DITA to WebHelp Output with Travis CI

This topic assumes you have a DITA project hosted on a GitHub public or private repository.

The goal of this tutorial is to help you set up a Travis continuous integration job that automatically publishes your DITA project to GitHub pages after every commit. The published website will contain a feedback link on each page that would allow a contributor to easily suggest changes to the documentation by creating a pull request on GitHub with just a few clicks.

Enable the Travis CI Build

1. Sign in to Travis CI with your GitHub account, accepting the GitHub access permissions confirmation.

2. Once you are signed in, and you have synchronized your GitHub repositories, go to your profile page and enable Travis CI for the repository you want to build.

Configure the Travis CI Build in your GitHub Project

1. Checkout your GitHub project locally.
2. Copy the `.travis` folder from [here](#) to the root directory of your project.

3. In the root of your GitHub project, add a file called `.travis.yml` with the following content:

```yaml
language: dita
install:
  - echo "Installed"
script:
  - sh .travis/publish.sh
after_success:
  - sh .travis/deploy.sh
env:
  global:
    - DITAMAP=/path/to/your/ditamap/file
    - DITAVAL=/path/to/your/ditaval/file
    - ANT_OPTS=-Xmx1024M
```

**Note:** Replace `/path/to/your/ditamap/file` and `/path/to/your/ditaval/file` with the appropriate paths to your DITA map and ditaval files.

4. Create a GitHub personal access token by following this procedure.

5. Define an environment variable in the repository settings that has the name `GH_TOKEN` and the value equal with the GitHub personal access token created earlier.

### Register Your License Key

1. Edit your `.gitignore` file (or create it if it does not already exist) and add the following line:

   ```
   licenseKey.txt
   ```

2. Copy your WebHelp license to the root of your GitHub project in a file called `licenseKey.txt`.

   **Important:** The `licenseKey.txt` file should not be committed to GitHub as it contains a license key that is issued only to you.

3. Encrypt the `license key` file and **add** it to the `.travis.yml` configuration file. This way only the Travis CI server will be able to decrypt it during the build process.

### Commit to GitHub

1. Commit the following files and folders and push the commit to GitHub:

   ```
   git add .gitignore licenseKey.txt.enc .travis.yml .travis/
   git commit -m "Set up the Travis CI publishing system"
   git push
   ```
2. Create a `gh-pages` branch in your GitHub project where the WebHelp output will be published. You can follow the procedure [here](#).

### Generating WebHelp Classic Output for DocBook

The publishing process can be initiated from a transformation scenario within Oxygen XML Editor/Author or from a command line outside Oxygen XML Editor/Author.

**Running from Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

To publish DocBook content to WebHelp Classic output from a transformation scenario inside Oxygen XML Editor/Author, use one of the following procedures, depending on whether or not you want a feedback section in your output.

#### WebHelp Classic Output

To publish a DocBook document as a WebHelp Classic system, follow these steps:

1. Click the ✉ **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** action from the toolbar.
2. Select the **DocBook WebHelp Classic** scenario from the **DocBook 4** or **DocBook 5** section.
3. Click **Apply associated**.

When the **DocBook WebHelp Classic** transformation is complete, the output is automatically opened in your default browser.

#### WebHelp Classic with Feedback Output

To publish a DocBook document as a WebHelp Classic with Feedback system, follow these steps:

1. Click ✉ **Configure Transformation Scenarios**.
2. Select the **DocBook WebHelp Classic with Feedback** scenario from the **DocBook 4** or **DocBook 5** section.
3. Click **Apply associated**.
4. Enter the documentation product ID and the documentation version.

When the **DocBook WebHelp Classic with Feedback** transformation is complete, your default browser opens the `installation.html` file. This file contains information about the output location, system requirements, installation instructions, and deployment of the output. Follow the instructions to complete the system deployment. For more information, see [Deploying a Feedback-Enabled System](#).

For more information about the feedback-enabled WebHelp system, watch our video demonstration:
Running from Command Line

PREREQUISITES: Before you begin, the WebHelp DocBook distribution must be integrated into a DocBook XSL installation.

To run a DocBook to WebHelp transformation outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author, use the following script file:

- Windows - [DocBook XSL directory]\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\docbook.bat
- Linux/Mac OS X - [DocBook XSL directory]/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic/docbook.sh

Before running the script to generate output, you must customize it to specify various paths and transformation type. To do this, open the script file and edit the following variables:

- **JVM_INSTALL_DIR** - Specifies the path to the Java Virtual Machine installation directory on your disk.
- **ANT_INSTALL_DIR** - Specifies the path to the installation directory of Ant.
- **SAXON_6_DIR** - Specifies the path to the installation directory of Saxon 6.5.5.
- **SAXON_9_DIR** - Specifies the path to the installation directory of Saxon 9.1.0.8.
- **DOCBOOK_XSL_DIR** - Specifies the path to the installation directory of the DocBook XSL distribution.
- **TRANSTYPE** - Specifies the type of the transformation you want to apply. The Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin contributes the following transformation types for DocBook:
  - **webhelp** - The transformation that produces WebHelp Classic output for desktop.
  - **webhelp-feedback** - The transformation that produces feedback-enabled WebHelp Classic with Feedback for desktop.
- **INPUT_DIR** - Specifies the path to the input directory, containing the input XML file.
- **XML_INPUT_FILE** - Specifies the name of the input XML file.
- **OUTPUT_DIR** - Specifies the path to the output directory where the transformation output is generated.
- **DOCBOOK_XSL_DIR_URL** - Specifies the path to the directory of the DocBook XSL distribution in URL format.

You can also add additional configuration parameters that are contributed by the Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin (on page 1017).
Additional WebHelp Parameters for DocBook

You can use various parameters in the command line to customize the transformation. Some of the most commonly used parameters include:

-Ddefault.language

This parameter is used if the language is not detected in the DITA map. The default value is _en-us_.

-Dclean.output

Deletes all files from the output folder before the transformation is performed (only _no_ and _yes_ values are valid and the default value is _no_).

-Dl10n.gentext.default.language

This parameter is used to identify the correct stemmer that differs from language to language. For example, for English the value of this parameter is _en_ or for French it is _fr_, and so on.

-Duse.stemming

Controls whether or not you want to include stemming search algorithms into the published output (default setting is _false_).

-Dwebhelp.copyright

Adds a small copyright text that appears at the end of the Table of Contents pane.

-Dwebhelp.custom.resources

The file path to a directory that contains resources files. All files from this directory will be copied to the root of the WebHelp output.

-Dwebhelp.favicon

The file path that points to an image to be used as a favicon in the WebHelp output.

-Dwebhelp.footer.file

Path to an XML file that includes the footer content for your WebHelp output pages. You can use this parameter to integrate social media features (such as widgets for Facebook™, Twitter™, Google Analytics, or Google+™). The file must be well-formed, each widget must be in separate _div_ or _span_ element, and the code for each _script_ element is included in an XML comment (also, the start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line). The following code exert is an example for adding a Facebook™ widget:

```xml
<div id="facebook">
  <div id="fb-root"/>
</div>
```
-Dwebhelp.footer.include

Specifies whether or not to include footer in each WebHelp page. Possible values:

yes, no. If set to no, no footer is added to the WebHelp pages. If set to yes and the webhelp.footer.file parameter has a value, then the content of that file is used as footer. If the webhelp.footer.file has no value then a default Oxygen footer is inserted in each WebHelp page.

-Dwebhelp.logo.image.target.url

Specifies a target URL that is set on the logo image. When you click the logo image, you will be redirected to this address.

-Dwebhelp.logo.image

Specifies a path to an image displayed as a logo in the left side of the output header.

-Dwebhelp.product.id (available only for Feedback-enabled systems)

This parameter specifies a short name for the documentation target, or product (for example, mobile-phone-user-guide, hvac-installation-guide).

**Note:** You can deploy documentation for multiple products on the same server.

**Restriction:** The following characters are not allowed in the value of this parameter:

\< > / \{ \} \[ \] \* \% \+ \& .

-Dwebhelp.product.version (available only for Feedback-enabled systems)

Specifies the documentation version number (for example, 1.0, 2.5, etc.). New user comments are bound to this version.

**Note:** Multiple documentation versions can be deployed on the same server.

**Restriction:** The following characters are not allowed in the value of this parameter:

\< > / \{ \} \[ \] \* \% \+ \& .
If this parameter is set to `false` then the 5-star rating mechanism is no longer included in the search results that are displayed on the Search tab (default setting is `true`).

**-Dwebhelp.skin.css**

Path to a CSS file that sets the style theme in the WebHelp Classic output. It can be one of the built-in skin CSS from the `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\frameworks\docbook\xsl\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\predefined-skins` directory, or it can be a custom skin CSS generated with the Oxygen Skin Builder web application.

If you need to further customize your transformation, other DocBook XSL parameters can be appended. Any parameter that you want to append must follow the `-D` model of the above parameters. For example, you can append the `html.stylesheet` parameter in the following form:

```
-Dhtml.stylesheet=/path/to/directory/of/stylesheet.css
```

Customizing WebHelp Classic Output

**Oxygen XML WebHelp** provides support for customizing the WebHelp Classic output to suit your specific needs. The WebHelp Classic type of output is designed for desktop systems and features a familiar tri-pane layout. You can use this system to publish DITA and DocBook document types. The WebHelp Classic with Feedback variant allows your users to add comments to your output.

To change the overall appearance of the WebHelp Classic output, you can use the visual WebHelp Skin Builder tool (on page 1019), which does not require knowledge of CSS language. If you are familiar with CSS and coding, you can style your WebHelp output through your own custom stylesheets. You can also customize your output by modifying option and parameters in the transformation scenario.

This section includes topics that explain various ways to customize your WebHelp system output, such as how to improve the appearance of the Table of Contents, add logo images in the title area, integrate with social media, add custom headers and footers, and much more.

**Changing the Layout and Styles**

This section contains some topics that explain how to customize the layout and style of your WebHelp Classic output using custom CSS, inserting custom HTML content, and more.

**WebHelp Skin Builder**

The WebHelp Skin Builder is a simple, easy-to-use tool, specially designed to assist users to visually customize the look and feel of the WebHelp output. It is implemented as an online tool hosted
on the Oxygen XML website and allows you to experiment with various styles and colors over a documentation sample.

To be able to use the Skin Builder, you need:

- An Internet connection and unrestricted access to Oxygen XML website.
- A late version web browser.

To start the Skin Builder, do one of the following:

- For DocBook or DITA WebHelp systems, use a web browser to go to https://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp-skin-builder.
- For DITA WebHelp systems, you can click the Online preview link in the Skins tab (on page ) of a DITA OT transformation scenario. In the upper section of the preview, click the Select Skin button, then choose Customize Skin.

Skin Builder Layout

The left side panel of the Skin Builder is divided into 3 sections:

- **Actions** - Contains the following two buttons:
  - **Import** - Opens an Import CSS dialog box that allows you to load a CSS stylesheet and apply it over the documentation sample.
  - **Export** - Saves all properties as a CSS file.
- **Settings** - Includes a Highlight selection option that helps you identify the areas affected by a particular element customization.
  - When hovering an item in the customizable elements menu, the affected sample area is highlighted with a dotted blue border.
  - When an item in the customizable elements menu is selected, the affected sample area is highlighted with a solid red border.
- **Customize** - Provides a series of customizable elements organized under four main categories:
  - Header
  - TOC Area
  - Vertical Splitter
  - Content

For each customizable element, you can alter properties such as background color or font face. Any alteration made in the customizable elements menu is applied in real time over the sample area.
Creating a Customization Skin

1. You can start with one of the built-in skins or a CSS stylesheet applied over the sample using the Import button.
2. Use the elements in the Customize section to set properties that modify the look of the skin. By default, all customizable elements display a single property, but you can make more visible by clicking the + Add button and choosing from the available properties.

   Note: If you want to revert a particular property to its initial value, press the Reset button.
3. When you are happy with the skin customizations you have made, press the Export button. All settings will be saved in a CSS file.

Applying a Custom Skin to a DITA Map to WebHelp Classic Transformation Scenario

1. Start Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
2. Load the DITA map (on page 1621) you want to produce as a WebHelp output.
3. Edit a DITA Map to WebHelp transformation scenario. Set the previously exported CSS file in the Custom section of the Skins tab.
4. Run the transformation to obtain the WebHelp output.

Apply a Customization Skin to a DocBook to WebHelp Classic Transformation Scenario

1. Start Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
2. Load the DocBook file you want to produce as a WebHelp output.
3. In the Parameters tab, set the webhelp.skin.css parameter to point to the previously exported CSS.
4. To customize the logo, use the following parameters: webhelp.logo.image and webhelp.logo.image.target.url.
5. Run the transformation to obtain the WebHelp output.

For more information about using the WebHelp Skin Builder, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/32PGX-PQx0

Related Information:
How to Use CSS Styling to Customize WebHelp Output

The most common way to customize the look and style of your WebHelp output is to use custom CSS styling. This method can be used to make small, simple styling changes or more advanced, precise changes. To implement the styling in your WebHelp output, you simply need to create the custom CSS file and reference it in your transformation scenario or script. This custom file will be the final CSS to be applied so its content will override the styles in the other pre-existing CSS files.

Using the CSS Inspector to Identify Content for Custom CSS File

You can use your browser's CSS inspector to identify the pertinent code in the current CSS files and you can even make changes directly in the CSS inspector to test the results so that you know exactly what content to use in your custom CSS file.

In most popular browsers (such as Chrome, Firefox, and Edge), you can access the CSS inspector by using F12 or by selecting Inspect Element (or simply Inspect) from the contextual menu.

Tip: When using Safari on Mac OS X, you must first enable the Develop menu by going to the Advanced settings and selecting Show Develop menu in menu bar. Then you can select Show Web Inspector from the Develop menu or click Command + Option + I.

Referencing the Custom CSS Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To use a custom CSS to style WebHelp output and use a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Create your custom CSS file.
2. Edit the WebHelp transformation scenario and open the Parameters tab.
   • For a DITA transformation, set the args.css parameter to the path of your custom CSS file. Also, set the args.copycss parameter to yes to automatically copy your custom CSS in the output folder when the transformation scenario is processed.
   • For a DocBook transformation, set the html.stylesheet parameter to the path of your custom CSS file.
3. Run the WebHelp transformation scenario to generate the output.

Referencing the Custom CSS Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author

Important: Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author requires an additional license and some additional setup:
You must have a valid license for the **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** (https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html).

The **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.

To use a custom CSS to style WebHelp output and use a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author (on page 1002), follow this procedure:

1. Create your custom CSS file.
2. Reference your custom CSS file:
   - For DITA transformations, use the `args.css` parameter in your transformation script and set its value to the path of your custom CSS file. Also, set the `args.copycss` parameter to `yes` to automatically copy your custom CSS in the output folder when the transformation scenario is processed.
   - For DocBook transformations, use the `html.stylesheet` parameter in your transformation script and set its value to the path of your custom CSS file.
3. Execute the transformation script.

For example, a DITA script might look like this:

- **Windows:**
  ```
  dita.bat -i c:\mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dargs.css=c:\myFile.css -Dargs.copycss=yes
  ```
- **Mac OS X/ Linux:**
  ```
  dita -i /mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dargs.css=/myFile.css -Dargs.copycss=yes
  ```

How to Add Custom HTML Content in WebHelp Classic Output

You can add custom HTML content in the WebHelp Classic output by inserting it in a well-formed XML file that will be referenced in the transformation. This content may include references to additional JavaScript, CSS, and other types of resources, or such resources can be inserted inline within the HTML content that is inserted in the XML file.

**Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

To include custom HTML content in the WebHelp Classic output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Insert the HTML content in a well-formed XML file considering the following notes:
• **Well-Formedness** - If the file is not a *Well-formed XML document (on page 421)* (or fragments are not well-formed), the transformation will fail.

A common use case is if you want to include several `script` or `link` elements. In this case, the XML fragment has multiple root elements and to make it well-formed, you can wrap it in an `html` element. This element tag will be filtered out and only its children will be copied to the output documents. Similarly, you can wrap your content in `head`, `body`, `html/head`, or `html/body` elements.

• **Referencing Resources in the XML File** - You can include references to local resources (such as JavaScript or CSS files) by using the built-in `${oxygen-webhelp-output-dir}` macro to specify their paths relative to the output directory:

```html
<html>
  <script type="text/javascript" src="${oxygen-webhelp-output-dir}/js/test.js"></script>
  <link rel="stylesheet" type="text/css" href="${oxygen-webhelp-output-dir}/css/test.css" />
</html>
```

To copy the referenced resources to the output directory, follow the procedure in: *How to Copy Additional Resources to Output Directory (on page 1036)*.

• **Inline JavaScript or CSS Content**:

  **JavaScript:**

  ```html
  <script type="text/javascript">
    /* Include JavaScript code here. */

    function myFunction() {
      return true;
    }
  </script>
  ```

  **CSS:**

  ```html
  <style>
    /* Include CSS style rules here. */

    *{color:red}
  </style>
  ```
**Note:** If you have special characters (for example, `&`, `<`) that break the well-formedness of the XML fragment, it is important to place this content inside an XML comment:

```xml
<script type="text/javascript">
<!--
/* Include JavaScript code here. */

function myFunction() {
    return true;
}
-->
</script>
```

2. Edit the WebHelp Classic transformation scenario.
3. Go to the **Parameters** tab.
4. Edit the value of the `webhelp.head.script` parameter and set it to reference the URL of the XML file created in step 1. Your additional content will be included at the end of the `head` element of your output document.

**Note:** If you want to include the content in the `body` element, use the `webhelp.body.script` parameter instead.

5. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

### Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author

⚠️ **Important:** Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** requires an additional license and some additional setup:

- You must have a valid license for the **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** ([https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html](https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html)).
- The **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.

To include custom HTML content in the WebHelp Classic output using a script outside of **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** (on page 1002), follow this procedure:

1. Insert the HTML content in a well-formed XML file considering the following notes:
   
   - **Well-Formedness** - If the file is not a *Well-formed XML document* (on page 421) (or fragments are not well-formed), the transformation will fail.

   A common use case is if you want to include several `script` or `link` elements. In this case, the XML fragment has multiple root elements and to make it well-formed, you can wrap it in
an `html` element. This element tag will be filtered out and only its children will be copied to the output documents. Similarly, you can wrap your content in `head`, `body`, `html/head`, or `html/body` elements.

- **Referencing Resources in the XML File** - You can include references to local resources (such as JavaScript or CSS files) by using the built-in `${oxygen-webhelp-output-dir}` macro to specify their paths relative to the output directory:

```html
<html>
  <script type="text/javascript" src="${oxygen-webhelp-output-dir}/js/test.js">
    /* Include JavaScript code here. */
    function myFunction() {
      return true;
    }
  </script>
  <link rel="stylesheet" type="text/css" href="${oxygen-webhelp-output-dir}/css/test.css" />
</html>
```

To copy the referenced resources to the output directory, follow the procedure in: How to Copy Additional Resources to Output Directory (on page 1036).

- **Inline JavaScript or CSS Content**

  **JavaScript**:

  ```javascript
  /* Include JavaScript code here. */
  function myFunction() {
    return true;
  }
  ```

  **CSS**:

  ```css
  /* Include CSS style rules here. */
  *
  *{
    color:red
  }
  ```

  **Note**: If you have special characters (for example, `&`, `<`) that break the well-formedness of the XML fragment, it is important to place this content inside an XML comment:

  ```javascript
  <!--
  */
  </script>
2. Use the `webhelp.head.script` parameter in your transformation script and set its value to reference the URL of the XML file created in step 1. Your additional content will be included at the end of the `head` element of your output document.

**Note:** If you want to include the content in the `body` element, use the `webhelp.body.script` parameter instead.

3. Execute the transformation script.

For example, a DITA script might look like this:

- **Windows:**
  
  ```bash
  dita.bat -i c:\mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dwebhelp.head.script=c:\myFile.xml
  ```

- **Mac OS X/ Linux:**
  
  ```bash
  dita -i /mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dwebhelp.head.script=/myFile.xml
  ```

---

**Related Information:**

- [How to Copy Additional Resources to Output Directory (on page 1036)](#)

---

**How to Change Number Styles for Ordered Lists**

Ordered lists (`ol`) are usually numbered in XHTML output using numerals. If you want to change the numbering to alphabetical, follow these steps:

1. Define a custom `outputclass` value and set it as an attribute of the ordered list, as in the following example:

```xml
<ol outputclass="number-alpha">
  <li>A</li>
  <li>B</li>
  <li>C</li>
</ol>
```
2. Add the following code snippet in a custom CSS file:

```css
ol.number-alpha{
  list-style-type:lower-alpha;
}
```

3. Edit the WebHelp transformation scenario and open the **Parameters** tab.
   a. For a DITA transformation, set the `args.css` parameter to the path of your custom CSS file. Also, set the `args.copycss` parameter to `yes` to automatically copy your custom CSS in the output folder when the transformation scenario is processed.
   b. For a DocBook transformation, set the `html.stylesheet` parameter to the path of your custom CSS file.

4. Run the transformation scenario.

---

**How to Change the Icons in a WebHelp Classic Table of Contents**

You can change the icons that appear in a WebHelp Classic table of contents by assigning new image files in a custom CSS file. By default, these icons are defined with the following CSS codes (the first example is the icon that appears for a collapsed menu and the second for an expanded menu):

```css
.hasSubMenuClosed{
  background: url('..//img/book_closed16.png') no-repeat;
  padding-left: 16px;
  cursor: pointer;
}

.hasSubMenuOpened{
  background: url('..//img/book_opened16.png') no-repeat;
  padding-left: 16px;
  cursor: pointer;
}
```

**Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

To assign other icons and use a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Create a custom CSS file that assigns your desired icons to the `.hasSubMenuClosed` and `.hasSubMenuOpened` properties.

```css
.hasSubMenuClosed{
  background: url('TOC-my-closed-button.png') no-repeat;
}
```
2. It is recommended that you store the image files in the same directory as the default icons.
   - For DITA transformations: 
     \`DITA-OT-DIR\`\`\`\`plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\oxygen-webhelp\resources\img\``
   - For DocBook transformations: 
     \`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]\frameworks\docbook\xsl\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\oxygen-webhelp\resources\img\``

3. Edit the WebHelp transformation scenario and open the **Parameters** tab.
   - For a DITA transformation, set the `args.css` parameter to the path of your custom CSS file.
     Also, set the `args.copycss` parameter to `yes` to automatically copy your custom CSS in the output folder when the transformation scenario is processed.
   - For a DocBook transformation, set the `html.stylesheet` parameter to the path of your custom CSS file.

4. Run the WebHelp transformation scenario to generate the output.

**Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

⚠️ **Important:** Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** requires an additional license and some additional setup:

- You must have a valid license for the **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** ([https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html](https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html)).
- The **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.

To assign other icons and use a script outside of **Oxygen XML Editor/Author (on page 1002)**, follow this procedure:

1. Create a custom CSS file that assigns your desired icons to the `.hasSubMenuClosed` and `.hasSubMenuOpened` properties.

   ```css
   .hasSubMenuClosed{
      background: url('TOC-my-closed-button.png') no-repeat;
   }
   ```

   ```css
   .hasSubMenuOpened{
      background: url('TOC-my-opened-button.png') no-repeat;
   }
   ```
2. It is recommended that you store the image files in the same directory as the default icons.
   - For DITA transformations: `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\oxygen-webhelp\resources\img\`
   - For DocBook transformations: `[DocBook XSL directory]\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\oxygen-webhelp\resources\img\`

3. Reference your custom CSS file:
   - For DITA transformations, use the `args.css` parameter in your transformation script and set its value to the path of your custom CSS file. Also, set the `args.copycss` parameter to `yes` to automatically copy your custom CSS in the output folder when the transformation scenario is processed.
   - For DocBook transformations, use the `html.stylesheet` parameter in your transformation script and set its value to the path of your custom CSS file.

4. Execute the transformation script.

   For example, a DITA script might look like this::

   ```
   • Windows:
     dita.bat -i c:\mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dargs.css=c:\myFile.css -Dargs.copycss=yes
   • Mac OS X/ Linux:
     dita -i /mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dargs.css=/myFile.css -Dargs.copycss=yes
   ```

How to Customize the Appearance of Selected Items in the Table of Contents

The appearance of selected items in the table of contents of WebHelp Classic output can be enhanced.

For example, to highlight the background of the selected item, follow these steps:

1. Locate the `toc.css` file in the following directory:
   a. For DITA transformations: `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\oxygen-webhelp\resources\css`.
   b. For DocBook transformations: `[DocBook XSL directory]\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\oxygen-webhelp\resources\css`.

2. Edit that CSS file, find the `menuItemSelected` class, and change the value of the `background` property.

3. Run the transformation.
Note: You can also overwrite the same value from your own custom CSS and then specify the path to your CSS in the transformation scenario by doing one of the following:

- For DITA transformations, use the `args.css` parameter and set its value to the path of your custom CSS file. Also, set the `args.copycss` parameter to `yes` to automatically copy your custom CSS in the output folder when the transformation scenario is processed.
- For DocBook transformations, use the `html.stylesheet` parameter and set its value to the path of your custom CSS file.

How to Generate or Hide Navigation Links in WebHelp Classic Output

The WebHelp Classic output can contain navigation links (↔ Previous / ➡ Next / ↑ Parent topic arrows) that can be used to navigate to the previous, next, or parent topic.

How to Generate Navigation Links in WebHelp Classic Output

The navigation links are controlled by the `collection-type` attribute. For example, if you set `collection-type="sequence"` on a parent topic reference in your DITA map, navigation links will be generated in the output for all of its child topics (from children to parent, and from child to previous sibling and next sibling).

```xml
<map id="example_map" title="Example Map">
  <topicref href="../topics/ParentTopic.dita" collection-type="sequence">
    <topicref href="../topics/Childtopic.dita"/>
  </topicref>
</map>
```

How to Hide All Navigation Links in WebHelp Classic Output

To hide all navigation links, use the `args.hide.parent.link` parameter in the transformation and set its value to `no`.

Adding Graphics and Media Resources

This section contains topics that explain how to add media resources to the published WebHelp Class output or to the output directory.

How to Add a Favicon in WebHelp Systems

You can add a custom favicon to your WebHelp output by simply using a parameter in the transformation scenario to point to your favicon image. This is available for DITA and DocBook WebHelp output using WebHelp Classic or WebHelp Classic with Feedback transformations.
Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To add a favicon to your WebHelp output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Edit the WebHelp transformation scenario and open the Parameters tab.
2. Locate the webhelp.favicon parameter and enter the file path that points to the image that will be use as the favicon.
3. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: Browsers that provide favicon support will display the favicon (typically in the browser’s address bar, in the list of bookmarks, and in the history).

Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author

⚠️ Important: Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author requires an additional license and some additional setup:

• You must have a valid license for the Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin (https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html).
• The Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.

To add a favicon to your WebHelp output using a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Specify the file path that points to the image that will be use as the favicon using the webhelp.favicon parameter.
2. Execute the transformation script.

Result: Browsers that provide favicon support will display the favicon (typically in the browser’s address bar, in the list of bookmarks, and in the history).

For example:

• Windows:

  dita.bat -i c:\mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dwebhelp.favicon=c:\myFavicon.jpg

• Mac OS X/ Linux:

  dita -i /mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dwebhelp.favicon=/myFavicon.jpg
How to Add a Logo Image in the Title Area

You can customize WebHelp Classic output to include a logo in the title area. It will be displayed before the publication title. You can also specify a URL that can be used to send users to a specific website when they click the logo image.

This customization can be done using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author or using a command-line script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author.

Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To add a logo in the title area of your WebHelp output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Edit a WebHelp Classic transformation scenario, then open the Parameters tab.
2. Specify the path to your logo in the webhelp.logo.image parameter.
3. If you also want to add a link to your website when you click the logo image, set the URL in the webhelp.logo.image.target.url parameter.
4. Run the transformation scenario.

Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author

⚠️ Important: Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author requires an additional license and some additional setup:

- You must have a valid license for the Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin (https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html).
- The Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.

To add a logo in the title area of your WebHelp output using a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Specify the path to your logo using the webhelp.logo.image parameter.
2. If you also want to add a link to your website when you click the logo image, set the URL using the webhelp.logo.image.target.url parameter.
3. Execute the transformation script.

For example:

- Windows:
How to Add Video and Audio Objects in DITA WebHelp Classic

You can insert references to video and audio media resources (such as videos, audio clips, or embedded HTML frames) in your DITA topics and then publish them to WebHelp output. The media objects can be played directly in all HTML5-based outputs, including WebHelp systems.

To add media objects in the WebHelp output generated from DITA documents, follow the procedures below.

Adding Videos to DITA WebHelp Output

1. Edit the DITA topic and insert a reference to the video by adding an `<object>` element, as in one of the following examples:

   ```xml
   <object outputclass="video" type="video/mp4" data="MyVideo.mp4"/>
   ```

   or, instead of the `data` attribute, you can specify the video using a parameter like this:

   ```xml
   <object outputclass="video">
     <param name="src" value="videos/MyVideo.mp4"/>
   </object>
   ```

2. Apply a DITA to WebHelp transformation to obtain the output.

   **Result:** The transformation converts the `<object>` element to an HTML5 `<video>` element.

   ```xml
   <video controls="controls"><source type="video/mp4" src="MyVideo.mp4"></source></video>
   ```

Adding Audio Clips to DITA WebHelp Output

1. Edit the DITA topic and insert a reference to the audio clip by adding an `<object>` element, as in one of the following examples:

   ```xml
   <object outputclass="audio" type="audio/mpeg" data="MyClip.mp3"/>
   ```
or, instead of the `data` attribute, you can specify the video using a parameter like this:

```xml
<object outputclass="audio">
  <param name="src" value="audio/MyClip.mp3"/>
</object>
```

2. Apply a DITA to WebHelp transformation to obtain the output.

**Result:** The transformation converts the `object` element to an HTML5 `audio` element.

```xml
<audio controls="controls"> <source type="audio/mpeg" src="MyClip.mp3"></source> </audio>
```

### Adding Embedded HTML Frames (such as YouTube videos) to DITA WebHelp Output

1. Edit the DITA topic and insert a reference to the embedded object by manually adding an `object` element, as in one of the following examples:

```xml
<object outputclass="iframe" data="https://www.youtube.com/embed/m_vv2s5Trn4"/>
```

or, instead of the `data` attribute, you can specify the object using a parameter like this:

```xml
<object outputclass="iframe">
  <param name="src" value="http://www.youtube.com/embed/m_vv2s5Trn4"/>
</object>
```

2. If you want the video to be allowed to play in full screen mode once the document is converted to XHTML output, also add an `allowfullscreen` parameter and set its value to `true`:

```xml
<object outputclass="iframe" data="https://www.youtube.com/embed/m_vv2s5Trn4"/>
  <param name="allowfullscreen" value="true"/>
</object>
```

3. Apply a DITA to WebHelp transformation to obtain the output.

**Result:** The transformation converts the `object` element to an HTML5 `iframe` element.

```xml
<iframe controls="controls" src="https://www.youtube.com/embed/m_vv2s5Trn4"/>
</iframe>
```

### How to Add Videos in DocBook WebHelp Classic Output

You can insert references to videos in your DocBook topics and then publish them to WebHelp Classic output. The videos can be played directly in all HTML5-based outputs, including WebHelp systems.
To add videos in the **WebHelp Classic** output generated from DocBook documents, follow these steps:

1. Edit the DocBook document and reference the video using an `mediaobject` element, as in the following example:

   ```xml
   <mediaobject>
     <videoobject>
     <videodata fileref="http://www.youtube.com/watch?v/VideoName"/>
     </videoobject>
   </mediaobject>
   ```

2. Apply a **WebHelp** or **WebHelp with Feedback** transformation scenario to obtain the output.

### How to Copy Additional Resources to Output Directory

You can copy additional resources (such as JavaScript, CSS or other resources) to the output directory of a WebHelp system by using the `webhelp.custom.resources` parameter.

#### Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To copy additional resources to the output directory using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Place all your resources in the same directory.
2. Edit the WebHelp transformation scenario, then open the **Parameters** tab.
3. Edit the value for the `webhelp.custom.resources` parameter and set it to the absolute path of the directory in step 1.
4. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
5. Run the transformation scenario.

**Result:** All files from the new directory will be copied to the root of the WebHelp output directory.

#### Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author

**Important:** Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** requires an additional license and some additional setup:

- You must have a valid license for the **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** ([https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html](https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html)).
- The **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.
To copy additional resources to the output directory using a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author (on page 1002), follow this procedure:

1. Place all your resources in the same directory.
2. Specify the absolute path to that directory using the webhelp.custom.resources parameter.
3. Execute the transformation script.

Result: All files from the new directory will be copied to the root of the WebHelp output directory.

For example:

- **Windows:**
  ```sql
  dita.bat -i c:\mySample.ditamap -f webhelp-responsive -Dwebhelp.custom.resources=c:\resources
  ```

- **Mac OS X/ Linux:**
  ```sql
  dita -i /mySample.ditamap -f webhelp-responsive -Dwebhelp.custom.resources=/resources
  ```

**How to Publish MathML Formulas when Generating WebHelp from a Command Line**

The DITA-OT distribution that comes bundled with Oxygen includes some additional pre-installed DITA-OT plugins that add support for properly displaying MathML formulas in the WebHelp output. However, if you are generating your WebHelp output from a command line, MathML formulas will not be displayed properly unless you install these plugins manually.

These plugins can be downloaded and installed from DITA 1.3 Support for Open Toolkit (https://github.com/dita-community/dita13-dita-ot-1.x-support). This plugin package adds DITA 1.3 support, including MathML.

**How to Add Support for MathML when Generating WebHelp from a Command Line**

1. Download and unzip the DITA 1.3 Support for Open Toolkit 1.x distribution package. It includes 4 DITA-OT plugins.
2. Copy the four plugin directories to your DITA-OT-DIR/plugins directory.
3. In the home directory of your DITA-OT installation, run the ant -f integrator.xml command.

**Searching the Output**

This section contains topics that explain how to customize some of the search features in WebHelp Classic output.
How to Change Element Scoring in Search Results

The WebHelp Search feature is enhanced with a rating mechanism that computes scores for every page that matches the search criteria. HTML tag elements are assigned a scoring value and these values are evaluated for the search results. The WebHelp directory includes a properties file that defines the scoring values for tag elements and this file can be edited to customize the values according to your needs.

To edit the scoring values of HTML tag element for enhancing WebHelp search results, follow these steps:

1. Edit the scoring properties file for DITA or DocBook WebHelp systems. The properties file includes instructions and examples to help you with your customization.
   a. For DITA WebHelp Classic systems, edit the following file: `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\indexer\scoring.properties`.
   b. For DocBook WebHelp system, edit the following file: `[DocBook XSL directory]\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\indexer\scoring.properties`.

   The values that can be edited in the `scoring.properties` file:

   ```
   h1 = 10
   h2 = 9
   h3 = 8
   h4 = 7
   h5 = 6
   h6 = 5
   b = 5
   strong = 5
   em = 3
   i = 3
   u = 3
   div.toc = -10
   title = 20
   div.ignore = ignored
   meta_keywords = 20
   meta_indexterms = 20
   meta_description = 25
   shortdesc = 25
   ```

2. Save your changes to the file.

3. Re-run your WebHelp transformation.
How to Exclude Certain DITA Topics from Search Results

There are several ways to exclude certain DITA resources from your WebHelp system's search results. This is useful if you have topics in your DITA map (on page 1621) structure that you do not want to be included in search results for your WebHelp system. The first method involves setting a parameter in the WebHelp transformation scenario and the second involves setting an attribute for each DITA topic reference that you want to exclude.

**Transformation Parameter Method**

To exclude DITA topics from WebHelp search results using a transformation parameter, follow these steps:

1. Create a simple text file that will contain your excluded file patterns. Each pattern must be on a new line. The patterns are considered to be relative to the output directory and they accept wildcards such as ‘*’ (matches zero or more characters) or ‘?’ (matches one character). For more information about the patterns, see [https://ant.apache.org/manual/dirtasks.html#patterns](https://ant.apache.org/manual/dirtasks.html#patterns).

   **Example:** Suppose that in your project, you want to exclude all files located in the resources directory and all files located in the topics directory that have a .bak file extension. You could create a simple text file (for example, named exclude.properties), and add the following lines:

   resources/*
   topics/*.bak

2. Edit the WebHelp transformation scenario and open the Parameters tab.
3. Set the webhelp.search.custom.excludes.file parameter to specify the path to the file that contains the excluded file patterns (for example, exclude.properties in step 1).
4. Run the transformation scenario.

**Search Attribute Method**

The WebHelp Search engine does not index DITA topics that have the @search attribute set to no.

To exclude DITA topics from WebHelp search results using this attribute, follow these steps:

1. Edit the DITA map and for any topicref that you want to exclude from search results, set the search attribute to no. For example:

   ```
   <topicref href="../topics/internal-topic1.dita" search="no"/>
   ```

2. Save your changes to the DITA map.
3. Run your WebHelp system transformation scenario.
How to Optimize Search Results in WebHelp Classic

A DITA Map WebHelp transformation scenario can be configured to produce a `sitemap.xml` file that is used by search engines to aid crawling and indexing mechanisms. A `sitemap` lists all pages of a WebHelp system and allows webmasters to provide additional information about each page, such as the date it was last updated, change frequency, and importance of each page in relation to other pages in your WebHelp deployment.

The structure of the `sitemap.xml` file looks like this:

```
<urlset xmlns="http://www.sitemaps.org/schemas/sitemap/0.9">
  <url>
    <loc>http://www.example.com/topics/introduction.html</loc>
    <lastmod>2014-10-24</lastmod>
    <changefreq>weekly</changefreq>
    <priority>0.5</priority>
  </url>
  <url>
    <loc>http://www.example.com/topics/care.html#care</loc>
    <lastmod>2014-10-24</lastmod>
    <changefreq>weekly</changefreq>
    <priority>0.5</priority>
  </url>
  ....
</urlset>
```

Each page has a `<url>` element structure containing additional information, such as:

- `loc` - the URL of the page. This URL must begin with the protocol (such as `http`), if required by your web server. It is constructed from the value of the `webhelp.sitemap.base.url` parameter from the transformation scenario and the relative path to the page (collected from the `href` attribute of a `topicref` element in the DITA map).

  ✎ **Note:** The value must have fewer than 2,048 characters.

- `lastmod` (optional) - the date when the page was last modified. The date format is `YYYY-MM-DD`.

- `changefreq` (optional) - indicates how frequently the page is likely to change. This value provides general information to assist search engines, but may not correlate exactly to how often they crawl the page. Valid values are: `always`, `hourly`, `daily`, `weekly`, `monthly`, `yearly`, and `never`. The first time the `sitemap.xml` file is generated, the value is set based upon the value of the `webhelp.sitemap.change.frequency` parameter in the DITA WebHelp transformation scenario. You can change the value in each `url` element by editing the `sitemap.xml` file.
Creating and Editing the sitemap.xml File

Follow these steps to produce a sitemap.xml file for your WebHelp system, which can then be edited to fine-tune search engine optimization:

1. Edit the transformation scenario you currently use for obtaining your WebHelp output. This opens the Edit DITA Scenario dialog box.
2. Open the Parameters tab and set a value for the following parameters:
   - webhelp.sitemap.base.url - the URL of the location where your WebHelp system is deployed
     - **Note:** This parameter is required for Oxygen XML Developer plugin to generate the sitemap.xml file.
   - webhelp.sitemap.change.frequency - how frequently the WebHelp pages are likely to change (accepted values are: always, hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, and never)
   - webhelp.sitemap.priority - the priority of each page (value ranging from 0.0 to 1.0)
3. Run the transformation scenario.
4. Look for the sitemap.xml file in the transformation's output folder. Edit the file to fine-tune the parameters of each page, according to your needs.

How to Index Japanese Content in WebHelp Classic

To optimize the indexing of Japanese content in WebHelp pages, the Lucene Kuromoji Japanese analyzer can be used. This analyzer is included in the Oxygen XML Editor/Author installation kit.

Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To activate the Japanese indexing in your WebHelp output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Set the language for your content to Japanese (depending on your framework):
   - **DITA:** Edit a DITA to WebHelp transformation scenario and in the Parameters tab, set the value of the default.language parameter to ja-jp.
Note: Alternatively, you could set the xml:lang attribute on the root of the DITA map (on page 1621) and the referenced topics to ja-jp. Another alternative for DITA output is to use the webhelp.search.japanese.dictionary parameter to specify a path to a Japanese dictionary that will be used by the Kuromoji morphological engine (note that the encoding for the dictionary must be UTF8).

- **DocBook**: Edit a DocBook to WebHelp transformation scenario and in the Parameters tab, set the value of the l10n.gentext.default.language parameter to ja.

2. Run the WebHelp transformation scenario to generate the output.

### Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author

**Important**: Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author requires an additional license and some additional setup:

- You must have a valid license for the Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin (https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html).
- The Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.

To activate the Japanese indexing in your WebHelp output using a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Set the language for your content to Japanese (depending on your framework):
   - **DITA**: Use the args.default.language parameter in your transformation script and set its value to ja-jp.
     
     **Note**: Alternatively, you could set the xml:lang attribute on the root of the DITA map (on page 1621) and the referenced topics to ja-jp. Another alternative for DITA output is to use the webhelp.search.japanese.dictionary parameter to specify a path to a Japanese dictionary that will be used by the Kuromoji morphological engine (note that the encoding for the dictionary must be UTF8).
   - **DocBook**: Use the l10n.gentext.default.language parameter in your transformation script and set its value to ja.

2. Execute the transformation script.

For example, a DITA script might look like this:

- **Windows**:

  ```bash
dita.bat -i c:\mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dargs.default.language=ja-jp
  ```

- **Mac OS X/ Linux**:

  ```bash
dita -i /path/to/mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dargs.default.language=ja-jp
  ```
Localization in WebHelp Classic Output

This section contains topics that explain the localization support for DITA or DocBook WebHelp Classic transformations.

How to Localize Email Notifications of WebHelp Classic with Feedback Output

The feedback-enabled WebHelp systems use emails to notify users when comments are posted. These emails are based on templates stored in the WebHelp directory. The default messages are in English, French, German, and Japanese. These messages are copied into the WebHelp system deployment directory during the execution of the corresponding transformation scenario.

Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To change the language of the emails for WebHelp Classic with Feedback output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Create the following directory, depending on your framework:
   - **DITA**: `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\oxygen-webhelp\resources\php\templates\[Language code]` (where the Language code is the 2-digit code, such as `nl` for Dutch)
   - **DocBook**: `[DocBook XSL directory]\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\oxygen-webhelp\resources\php\templates\[Language code]` (where the Language code is the 2-digit code, such as `nl` for Dutch)

2. Copy all English template files from the following directory (depending on your framework) and paste them into the directory you just created.
   - **DITA**: `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\oxygen-webhelp\resources\php\templates\en`
   - **DocBook**: `[DocBook XSL directory]\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\oxygen-webhelp\resources\php\templates\en`

```dita -i /mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dargs.default.language=ja-jp
```

Related Information:

- How to Localize the Interface of DITA Map to WebHelp Classic Output *(on page 1045)*
- How to Localize the Interface of DocBook to WebHelp Classic Output *(on page 1048)*
3. Edit the HTML files from the following directory (depending on your framework) and translate the content into your language.

   - **DITA:** DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\oxygen-webhelp\resources\php\templates\[Language code] (where the Language code is the 2-digit code, such as nl for Dutch)
   - **DocBook:** [DocBook XSL directory]\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\oxygen-webhelp\resources\php\templates\[Language code] (where the Language code is the 2-digit code, such as nl for Dutch)

4. Edit a WebHelp Classic with Feedback transformation scenario and open the Parameters tab.

5. In the Parameters tab, look for the default.language parameter and set its value to the appropriate language code (for example, nl for Dutch).

   ▪ **Note:** If you set the parameter to a value such as LanguageCode-CountryCode (for example, en-us), the transformation scenario will only use the language code.

6. Run the transformation scenario.

**Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

⚠️ **Important:** Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author requires an additional license and some additional setup:

   - You must have a valid license for the Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin (https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html).
   - The Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.

To change the language of the emails for WebHelp Classic with Feedback output using a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author (on page 1002), follow this procedure:

1. Create the following directory, depending on your framework:

   - **DITA:** DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\oxygen-webhelp\resources\php\templates\[Language code] (where the Language code is the 2-digit code, such as nl for Dutch)
   - **DocBook:** [DocBook XSL directory]\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\oxygen-webhelp\resources\php\templates\[Language code] (where the Language code is the 2-digit code, such as nl for Dutch)

2. Copy all English template files from the following directory (depending on your framework) and paste them into the directory you just created.

   - **DITA:** DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\oxygen-webhelp\resources\php\templates\en
3. Edit the HTML files from the following directory (depending on your framework) and translate the content into your language.

- **DITA:** `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic/oxygen-webhelp/resources/php/templates/[Language code]` (where the *Language code* is the 2-digit code, such as *nl* for Dutch)
- **DocBook:** `[DocBook XSL directory]\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic \oxygen-webhelp\resources\php\templates\[Language code]` (where the *Language code* is the 2-digit code, such as *nl* for Dutch)

4. Use the `args.default.language` parameter in your transformation script and set its value to the appropriate language code (for example, *nl* for Dutch).

   ![Note:](image) If you set the parameter to a value such as `LanguageCode-CountryCode` (for example, `en-us`), the transformation scenario will only use the language code.

5. Execute the transformation script.

For example, a DITA to WebHelp Classic with Feedback script might look like this:

- **Windows:**

  ```cmd
  dita.bat -i c:\mySample.ditamap -f webhelp-feedback -Dargs.default.language=nl
  ```

- **Mac OS X/ Linux:**

  ```cmd
  dita -i /mySample.ditamap -f webhelp-feedback -Dargs.default.language=nl
  ```

### How to Localize the Interface of DITA Map to WebHelp Classic Output

Static labels used in the WebHelp output are stored in translation files that have the `strings-lang1-lang2.xml` name format, where *lang1* and *lang2* are ISO language codes. For example, the US English labels are kept in the `strings-en-us.xml` file.

These translation files are collected from two locations:

- **DITA-OT-DIR/xsl/common folder** - DITA-OT's default translations (generated text for `note`, `fig`, and `table` elements).
- **DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic/oxygen-webhelp/resources/localization folder** - These translations are contributed by the WebHelp plugin and extend the default ones provided by DITA-OT. The labels defined in this folder take precedence over the DITA-OT defaults.

There are two major reasons you may want to use modify the translation files: to modify the existing strings or to translate to a new language.
Modifying the Existing Strings

To modify the generated text for WebHelp transformations, you need to create a DITA-OT extension plugin that uses the `dita.xsl.messages` extension point. The following procedure is for changing English labels, but you can adapt it for any language:

1. Create a `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization` plugin directory inside the `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/` location.
2. Create a `plugin.xml` file inside that `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization` directory with the following content:

   ```xml
   <plugin id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization">
     <require plugin="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic"/>
     <require plugin="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive"/>
     <feature extension="dita.xsl.strings" file="webhelp-extension-strings.xml"/>
   </plugin>
   ```

3. Create a `webhelp-extension-strings.xml` file with the following content:

   ```xml
   <langlist>
     <lang xml:lang="en" filename="strings-en-us.xml"/>
     <lang xml:lang="en-us" filename="strings-en-us.xml"/>
   </langlist>
   ```

4. Copy the strings you want to change from the translation files (on page 1045) to the `strings-en-us.xml` file. Make sure you leave the name attribute unchanged because this is the key used to look up the string. A sample content might be:

   ```xml
   <strings xml:lang="en-US">
     <str name="Figure">Fig</str>
     <str name="Draft comment">ADDRESS THIS DRAFT COMMENT</str>
   </strings>
   ```

5. Use the Run DITA-OT Integrator transformation scenario (on page 882) found in the DITA Map section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).

Adding a New Language

To add a new language for WebHelp transformations, you need to create a DITA-OT extension plugin that uses the `dita.xsl.messages` extension point. The following sample procedure is for adding translation files for the Polish language, but you can adapt it for any language:
1. Create a `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization` plugin directory inside the `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/` location.

2. Create a `plugin.xml` file inside that `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization` directory with the following content:

   ```xml
   <plugin id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization">
     <require plugin="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic"/>
     <require plugin="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive"/>
     <feature extension="dita.xsl.strings" file="webhelp-extension-strings.xml"/>
   </plugin>
   ```

3. Create a `webhelp-extension-strings.xml` file with the following content:

   ```xml
   <langlist>
     <lang xml:lang="pl" filename="strings-pl-pl.xml"/>
     <lang xml:lang="pl-PL" filename="strings-pl-pl.xml"/>
   </langlist>
   ```


5. In the `strings-pl-pl.xml` file, change the `@xml:lang` attribute on the root element that conforms with the new language.

   ```xml
   <strings xml:lang="pl-PL">
     ...
   </strings>
   ```

6. Translate the content of each `<str>` element (make sure to leave the `name` attribute unchanged).

   **Result:**

   ```xml
   <strings xml:lang="pl-PL">
     ...
     <str name="webhelp.content" js="true" php="false">Polish translation for "Content".</str>
     <str name="webhelp.search" js="true" php="false">Polish translation for "Search"</str>
     ...
   </strings>
   ```

7. Copy the common DITA-OT strings defined in the `DITA-OT-DIR/xsl/common/strings-en-us.xml` file. It defines a set generated text available for HTML based transformations (such as `note`, `fig`, and `table` elements). Translate the content of each `<str>` element.
Result:

```xml
<strings xml:lang="pl-PL">
...
<str name="webhelp.content" js="true" php="false">Polish translation for "Content"</str>
<str name="webhelp.search" js="true" php="false">Polish translation for "Search"</str>
...
<str name="Figure">Polish translation for "Figure"</str>
<str name="Table">Polish translation for "Table"</str>
...
</strings>
```

8. Use the Run DITA-OT Integrator transformation scenario (on page 882) found in the DITA Map section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).

Related Information:

- How to Index Japanese Content in WebHelp Classic (on page 1041)

How to Localize the Interface of DocBook to WebHelp Classic Output

Static labels that are used in the WebHelp output are kept in translation files in the [DocBook XSL directory]/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic/oxygen-webhelp/resources/localization folder. Translation files have the strings-lang1-lang2.xml name format, where lang1 and lang2 are ISO language codes. For example, the US English text is kept in the strings-en-us.xml file.

To localize the interface of the WebHelp output for DocBook transformations, follow these steps:

1. Look for the strings-lang1-lang2.xml file in [DocBook XSL directory]/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic/oxygen-webhelp/resources/localization directory (for example, the Canadian French file would be: strings-fr-ca.xml). If it does not exist, create one starting from the strings-en-us.xml file.
2. Translate all the labels from the above language file. Labels are stored in XML elements that have the following format: `<str name="Label name">Caption</str>`.
3. Make sure that the new XML file that you created in the previous two steps is listed in the file [DocBook XSL directory]/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic/oxygen-webhelp/
resources/localization/strings.xml. For example, a Canadian French file would be listed as: `<lang xml:lang="fr-ca" filename="strings-fr-ca.xml"/>`.

4. Edit any of the DocBook to WebHelp transformation scenarios (with or without feedback) and set the `l10n.gentext.default.language` parameter to the code of the language you want to localize (for example, `fr-ca` for Canadian French).

5. Run the transformation scenario to produce the WebHelp output.

Related Information:

- How to Index Japanese Content in WebHelp Classic (on page 1041)

How to Activate Support for Right-to-Left (RTL) Languages

To activate support for RTL (right-to-left) languages in WebHelp output, edit the DITA map (on page 1621) and set the `xml:lang` attribute on its root element (`map`). The corresponding attribute value can be set for following RTL languages:

- ar-eg - Arabic
- he-il - Hebrew
- ur-pk - Urdu

Integrating Social Media and Google Tools in the WebHelp Classic Output

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for integrating some of the most popular social media sites in WebHelp output.

How to Add a Facebook Like Button in WebHelp Classic Output

It is possible to integrate Facebook™ into your WebHelp Classic output and the widget will appear in the footer sections of your WebHelp page.

**Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

To add a Facebook Like widget to your WebHelp output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Facebook Developers website.
2. Fill-in the displayed form, then click the Get Code button.
3. Copy the two code snippets and paste them into a `<div>` element inside an XML file called `facebook-widget.xml`. Make sure you follow these rules:
• The file must be well-formed.
• The code for each `script` element must be included in an XML comment.
• The start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line.

The content of the XML file should look like this:

```xml
<div id="facebook">
  <div id="fb-root"/>
  <script>
    <!--
    (function(d, s, id) {
        var js, fjs = d.getElementsByTagName(s)[0];
        if (d.getElementById(id)) return;
        js = d.createElement(s); js.id = id;
        js.src = "//connect.facebook.net/en_US/sdk.js#xfbml=1&version=v2.0";
        fjs.parentNode.insertBefore(js, fjs);
    })(document, 'script', 'facebook-jssdk');
    -->
  </script>
  <div class="fb-like" data-layout="standard" data-action="like"
  data-show-faces="true" data-share="true"/>
</div>
```

4. In Oxygen XML Editor/Author, click the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) action from the toolbar.
5. Select an existing WebHelp Classic transformation scenario (depending on your needs, it may be with or without feedback) and click the Duplicate button to open the Edit Scenario dialog box.
6. Switch to the Parameters tab and edit the `webhelp.footer.file` parameter to reference the `facebook-widget.xml` file that you created earlier.
7. Click Ok and run the transformation scenario.

Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author

⚠️ Important: Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author requires an additional license and some additional setup:

• You must have a valid license for the Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin (https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html).
• The Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.
To add a Facebook Like widget to your WebHelp output using a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author (on page 1002), follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Facebook Developers website.
2. Fill-in the displayed form, then click the Get Code button.
3. Copy the two code snippets and paste them into a `<div>` element inside an XML file called facebook-widget.xml. Make sure you follow these rules:
   - The file must be well-formed.
   - The code for each `script` element must be included in an XML comment.
   - The start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line.

   The content of the XML file should look like this:

   ```xml
   <div id="facebook">
     <div id="fb-root"></div>
     <script>
       (function(d, s, id) {
         var js, fjs = d.getElementsByTagName(s)[0];
         if (d.getElementById(id)) return;
         js = d.createElement(s); js.id = id;
         js.src = "//connect.facebook.net/en_US/sdk.js#xfbml=1&version=v2.0";
         fjs.parentNode.insertBefore(js, fjs);
       }(document, 'script', 'facebook-jssdk'));
     <!--
     
     <div class="fb-like" data-layout="standard" data-action="like"
       data-show-faces="true" data-share="true"/>
     
     -->
   </div>
   
   </script>
   
   </div>
   ```

4. Use the `webhelp.footer.file` parameter in your transformation script and set its value to reference the facebook-widget.xml file that you created earlier.
5. Execute the transformation script.

   For example:
   - **Windows:**
     ```
     dita.bat -i c:\mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dwebhelp.footer.file=c:\facebook-widget.xml
     ```
   - **Mac OS X/ Linux:**
     ```
     dita -i /mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dwebhelp.footer.file=/facebook-widget.xml
     ```
How to Add a Google+ Button in WebHelp Classic Output

It is possible to integrate Google into your WebHelp Classic output and the widget will appear in the footer section of your WebHelp page.

Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To add a Google+ widget to your WebHelp Classic output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Google Developers website.
2. Fill-in the displayed form. The preview area on the right side displays the code and a preview of the widget.
3. Copy the code snippet displayed in the preview area and paste it into a div element inside an XML file called google-plus-button.xml. Make sure that the content of the file is well-formed. The content of the XML file should look like this:

```
<div id="google-plus">
    <!-- Place this tag in your head or just before your close body tag. -->
    <script src="https://apis.google.com/js/platform.js" async defer></script>

    <!-- Place this tag where you want the +1 button to render. -->
    <div class="g-plusone" data-annotation="inline" data-width="300"></div>
</div>
```

4. In Oxygen XML Editor/Author, click the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) action from the toolbar.
5. Select an existing WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario (depending on your needs, it may be with or without feedback) and click the Duplicate button to open the Edit Scenario dialog box.
6. Switch to the Parameters tab and edit the webhelp.footer.file parameter to reference the google-plus-button.xml file that you created earlier.
7. Click Ok and run the transformation scenario.

Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author

⚠️ Important: Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author requires an additional license and some additional setup:

- You must have a valid license for the Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin (https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html).
• The **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.

To add a *Google+* widget to your WebHelp Classic output using a script outside of *Oxygen XML Editor/Author (on page 1002)*, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the *Google Developers* website.
2. Fill-in the displayed form. The preview area on the right side displays the code and a preview of the widget.
3. Copy the code snippet displayed in the preview area and paste it into a `div` element inside an XML file called `google-plus-button.xml`. Make sure that the content of the file is well-formed. The content of the XML file should look like this:

   ```xml
   <div id="google-plus">
     <!-- Place this tag in your head or just before your close body tag. -->
     <script src="https://apis.google.com/js/platform.js" async defer></script>

     <!-- Place this tag where you want the +1 button to render. -->
     <div class="g-plusone" data-annotation="inline" data-width="300"></div>
   </div>
   ```

4. Use the `webhelp.footer.file` parameter in your transformation script and set its value to reference the `google-plus-button.xml` file that you created earlier.

5. Execute the transformation script.

   For example:
   - **Windows**:
     ```
     dita.bat -i c:\mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dwebhelp.footer.file=c:\google-plus-button.xml
     ```
   - **Mac OS X/ Linux**:
     ```
     dita -i /mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dwebhelp.footer.file=/google-plus-button.xml
     ```

**How to Add Tweet Button in WebHelp Classic Output**

It is possible to integrate *Twitter* into your *WebHelp Classic* output and the widget will appear in the footer section of your WebHelp page.
Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To add a Twitter Tweet widget to your WebHelp Classic output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Tweet button generator page.
2. Fill-in the displayed form. The Preview and code area displays the code that you will need.
3. Copy the code snippet displayed in the Preview and code area and paste it into a div element inside an XML file called tweet-button.xml. Make sure you follow these rules:
   - The file must be well-formed.
   - The code for each script element must be included in an XML comment.
   - The start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line.

The content of the XML file should look like this:

```
<div id="twitter">
  <a href="https://twitter.com/share" class="twitter-share-button">Tweet</a>
  <script>
    <!--
      function (d, s, id) {
        var js, fjs = d.getElementsByTagName(s)[0], p = /^http/.test(d.location) ? 'http' : 'https';
        if (! d.getElementById(id)) {
          js = d.createElement(s);
          js.id = id;
          js.src = p + '//platform.twitter.com/widgets.js';
          fjs.parentNode.insertBefore(js, fjs);
        }
      }
    -->
    <script src="twitter-wjs"></script>
  </script>
</div>
```

4. In Oxygen XML Editor/Author, click the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) action from the toolbar.
5. Select an existing WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario (depending on your needs, it may be with or without feedback) and click the Duplicate button to open the Edit Scenario dialog box.
6. Switch to the Parameters tab and edit the webhelp.footer.file parameter to reference the tweet-button.xml file that you created earlier.

7. Click Ok and run the transformation scenario.

Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author

⚠️ Important: Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author requires an additional license and some additional setup:

- You must have a valid license for the Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin (https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html).
- The Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.

To add a Twitter Tweet widget to your WebHelp Classic output using a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author (on page 1002), follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Tweet button generator page.
2. Fill-in the displayed form. The Preview and code area displays the code that you will need.
3. Copy the code snippet displayed in the Preview and code area and paste it into a div element inside an XML file called tweet-button.xml. Make sure you follow these rules:
   - The file must be well-formed.
   - The code for each script element must be included in an XML comment.
   - The start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line.

The content of the XML file should look like this:

```xml
<div id="twitter">
  <a href="https://twitter.com/share" class="twitter-share-button">Tweet</a>
  <script>
    <!--
    !function (d, s, id) {
      var js, fjs = d.getElementsByTagName(s)[0], p = /^http:/.test(d.location) ? 'http' : 'https';
      if (! d.getElementById(id)) {
        js = d.createElement(s);
        js.id = id;
        js.src = p + '://platform.twitter.com/widgets.js';
        fjs.parentNode.insertBefore(js, fjs);
      }
    }
  </script>
</div>
```
4. Use the `webhelp.footer.file` parameter in your transformation script and set its value to reference the `tweet-button.xml` file that you created earlier.

5. Execute the transformation script.

For example:

- **Windows:**
  ```
  dita.bat -i c:\mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dwebhelp.footer.file=c:\tweet-button.xml
  ```

- **Mac OS X/ Linux:**
  ```
  dita -i /mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dwebhelp.footer.file=/tweet-button.xml
  ```

---

**How to Integrate Google Analytics in WebHelp Classic Output**

You can use *Google Analytics* to track and report site data for your *WebHelp Classic* output.

**Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

To integrate *Google Analytics* into your WebHelp Classic output using a transformation scenario from within *Oxygen XML Editor/Author*, follow this procedure:

1. Create a new *Google Analytics account* (if you do not already have one) and log on.
2. Choose the Analytics solution that best fits the needs of your website.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to obtain a *Tracking Code* that contains your *Tracking ID*. A Tracking Code looks like this:

```html
<script type="text/javascript">
(function(i,s,o,r,a,m){i['GoogleAnalyticsObject']=r;i[r]=i[r]||function(){
(i[r].q=i[r].q||[]).push(arguments)},i[r].l=1*new Date();a=s.createElement(o),
m=s.getElementsByTagName(o)[0];a.async=1;a.src=g;m.parentNode.insertBefore(a,m)
}(window,document,'script','//www.google-analytics.com/analytics.js','ga'));

ga('create', 'UA-XXXXXXXX-X', 'auto');

ga('send', 'pageview');
</script>
```
4. Save the Tracking Code (obtained in the previous step) in a new XML file called `googleAnalytics.xml`. Note that the file should only contain the tracking code.

5. In **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, click the ✉️ Configure Transformation Scenario(s) action from the toolbar.

6. Select an existing WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario (depending on your needs, it may be with or without feedback) and click the **Duplicate** button to open the **Edit Scenario** dialog box.

7. Switch to the **Parameters** tab and edit the `webhelp.footer.file` parameter to reference the `googleAnalytics.html` file that you created earlier.

8. Click **Ok** and run the transformation scenario.

**Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

⚠️ **Important**: Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author requires an additional license and some additional setup:

- You must have a valid license for the **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** (https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html).
- The **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.

To integrate **Google Analytics** into your WebHelp Classic output using a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author (on page 1002), follow this procedure:

1. Create a new Google Analytics account (if you do not already have one) and log on.
2. Choose the Analytics solution that best fits the needs of your website.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to obtain a **Tracking Code** that contains your **Tracking ID**. A Tracking Code looks like this:

```
<script>
    (function(i,s,o,r,a,m){i['GoogleAnalyticsObject']=r;i[r]=i[r]||function(){
    (i[r].q=i[r].q||[]).push(arguments)},i[r].l=1*new Date();a=s.createElement(o),
m=s.getElementsByTagName(o)[0];a.async=1;a.src=g;m.parentNode.insertBefore(a,m)
}(window,document,'script','//www.google-analytics.com/analytics.js','ga');

ga('create', 'UA-XXXXXXXX-X', 'auto');
ga('send', 'pageview');
</script>
```

4. Save the Tracking Code (obtained in the previous step) in a new XML file called `googleAnalytics.xml`. Note that the file should only contain the tracking code.
5. Use the `webhelp.footer.file` parameter in your transformation script and set its value to reference the `googleAnalytics.html` file that you created earlier.

6. Execute the transformation script.

For example:

- **Windows:**

  ```
  dita.bat -i c:\mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dwebhelp.footer.file=c:\googleAnalytics.xml
  ```

- **Mac OS X/ Linux:**

  ```
  dita -i /mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dwebhelp.footer.file=/googleAnalytics.xml
  ```

**How to Integrate Google Search in WebHelp Classic Output**

It is possible to integrate the **Google Search Engine** into your **WebHelp Classic** output and you can specify where you want the results to appear in your WebHelp page.

**Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

To integrate the **Google Search Engine** into your WebHelp Responsive output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the **Google Custom Search Engine page** using your Google account.
2. Select the **Create a custom search engine** button.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to create a search engine for your site. At the end of this process you should obtain a code snippet that looks like this:

```html
<script>
(function() {
  var cx = '000888210889775888983:8mn4x_mf-yg';
  var gcse = document.createElement('script');
  gcse.type = 'text/javascript';
  gcse.async = true;
  var s = document.getElementsByTagName('script')[0];
  s.parentNode.insertBefore(gcse, s);
})();
</script>
```
4. Save the script into a well-formed HTML file called googlecse.html.

5. In Oxygen XML Editor/Author, click the ✪ Configure Transformation Scenario(s) action from the toolbar.

6. Select an existing WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario (depending on your needs, it may be with or without feedback) and click the Duplicate button to open the Edit Scenario dialog box.

7. Switch to the Parameters tab and edit the webhelp.google.search.script parameter to reference the googlecse.html file that you created earlier.

8. You can also use the webhelp.google.search.results parameter to choose where to display the search results.
   a. Create an HTML file with the following content:
      ```html
      <div class="gcse-searchresults-only" data-autoSearchOnLoad="true" data-queryParameterName="searchQuery"></div>
      ```
      (you must use the HTML5 version for the GCSE). For more information about other supported attributes, see Google Custom Search: Supported Attributes.
   b. Set the value of the webhelp.google.search.results parameter to the file path of the file you just created. If this parameter is not specified, the following code is used:
      ```html
      <div class="gcse-searchresults-only" data-autoSearchOnLoad="true" data-queryParameterName="searchQuery"></div>.
      ```

9. Click Ok and run the transformation scenario.

Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author

⚠️ Important: Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author requires an additional license and some additional setup:

- You must have a valid license for the Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin (https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html).
- The Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.

To integrate the Google Search Engine into your WebHelp Classic output using a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author (on page 1002), follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Google Custom Search Engine page using your Google account.
2. Select the Create a custom search engine button.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to create a search engine for your site. At the end of this process you should obtain a code snippet that looks like this:

   ```javascript
   (function() {
       var cx =
   ```
4. Save the script into a well-formed HTML file called `googlecse.html`.

5. Use the `webhelp.google.search.script` parameter in your transformation script and set its value to reference the `googlecse.html` file that you created earlier.

6. You can also use the `webhelp.google.search.results` parameter to choose where to display the search results.
   a. Create an HTML file with the following content:

```
<div class="gcse-searchresults-only" data-autoSearchOnLoad="true" data-queryParameterName="searchQuery"></div>
```

   (you must use the HTML5 version for the GCSE). For more information about other supported attributes, see Google Custom Search: Supported Attributes.

   b. Set the value of the `webhelp.google.search.results` parameter to the file path of the file you just created. If this parameter is not specified, the following code is used:

```
<div class="gcse-searchresults-only" data-autoSearchOnLoad="true" data-queryParameterName="searchQuery"></div>
```

7. Execute the transformation script.

For example:

- **Windows:****

```
dita.bat -i c:\mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dwebhelp.google.search.script=c:\googlecse.html -Dwebhelp.google.search.results=c:\myFile.html
```

- **Mac OS X/ Linux:**

```
dita -i /mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dwebhelp.google.search.script=/googlecse.html -Dwebhelp.google.search.results=/myFile.html
```

**Overriding XSLT Processing Step of DITA WebHelp Classic Transformations**

Since WebHelp output is primarily obtained by running XSLT transformations over the DITA input files (through the DITA Map WebHelp Classic transformation scenarios), one customization method would be to override the default XSLT templates that are used by the WebHelp transformations.
There are two methods available to override the XSLT stylesheets implied by the WebHelp transformation.

- The first method is to use one of the **WebHelp XSLT-import extension points** (on page 1061) that allow you to import an XSLT stylesheet so that it becomes part of the normal build. This method uses the same mechanism as the DITA-OT XSLT-import extension points. Note that this method will affect all the outputs generated with the WebHelp system.
- The second method implies that you will create a DITA-OT extension plugin (on page 1062) with a custom `transstype` and use an Ant build file to define the transformation process. The main difference from the first customization method is that you will not affect all WebHelp transformations. Only the transformations that use the declared plugin `transstype` will be affected.

### WebHelp Classic XSLT-Import and XSLT-Parameter Extension Points

The WebHelp XSLT-Import extension points allows you to extend the XSLT stylesheets associated with some of the WebHelp transformation steps. The DITA-OT plug-in installer adds an XSLT import statement in the default WebHelp XSLT so that the XSLT stylesheet referenced by the extension point becomes part of the normal build.

**Example:**

```xml
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.extension">
  <feature extension="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.xsl.dita2webhelp" file="xsl/fixup.xsl"/>
</plugin>
```

**Attention:** The customizations you make by using this extension point will affect all WebHelp transformations. If you want to have a customization that is only available for a certain transformation, use the Overriding a WebHelp XSLT Stylesheet from an Ant Build File (on page 1062) method.

### XSLT-Import Extension Points

The following extension points are available:

- `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.xsl.dita2webhelp`
  
  Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheet (`dita2webhelpImpl.xsl`) that produces an HTML file for each DITA topic. The path to this stylesheet is: `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\xsl\dita\desktop\dita2webhelpImpl.xsl`

- `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.xsl.createMainFiles`
Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheet (`createMainFilesImpl.xsl`) that produces the WebHelp main HTML page (`index.html`). The path to this stylesheet is: `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\xsl\dita\desktop\createMainFilesImpl.xsl`

**com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.xsl.createTocXML**

Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheet (`tocDita.xsl`) that produces the `toc.xml` file. This file contains information extracted from the DITA map (on page 1621) and it is mainly used to construct the WebHelp Table of Contents and navigational links. The path to this stylesheet is: `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\xsl\dita\tocDita.xsl`.

### XSLT-Parameter Extension Points

If your customization stylesheet declares one or more XSLT parameters and you want to control their values from the transformation scenario, you can use one of the following XSLT parameter extension points:

- **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.xsl.dita2webhelp.param**
  Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.xsl.dita2webhelp` extension point (on page 1061).

- **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.xsl.createMainFiles.param**
  Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.xsl.createMainFiles` extension point (on page 1061).

- **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.xsl.createTocXML.param**
  Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.xsl.createTocXML` extension point (on page 1062).

### Related Information:

- [DITA-OT] XSLT-Import Extension Points
- [DITA-OT] XSLT-Parameter Extension Points

### How to Override a WebHelp Classic XSLT Stylesheet from an Ant Build File

To create a WebHelp XSLT customization that is only available for a certain DITA OT transformation, the extension plugin should declare a custom transtype. The WebHelp XSLT stylesheets can be overridden from an ANT file provided by the DITA-OT extension plugin. From the Ant target associated
with the plugin, you will specify a custom XSLT stylesheet that imports the original WebHelp stylesheet and add some customization templates.

The following procedure explains how to create a DITA-OT extension plugin that uses this extension method:

1. In the `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\` folder, create a folder for this plugin (for example, `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.custom`).
2. Create a `plugin.xml` file (in the folder you created in step 1) that specifies a new DITA-OT transtype and the build file associated with the plugin. For example:

   ```xml
   <plugin id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.custom">
     <feature extension="dita.conductor.target.relative" file="integrator.xml"/>
     <transtype name="webhelp-classic-custom" extends="webhelp">
       desc="WebHelp Classic Customization"/>
   </plugin>
   ```

3. Create the `integrator.xml` file that will import the actual plugin Ant build file.

   ```xml
   <project basedir="." name="Webhelp Classic Customization">
     <import file="build.xml"/>
   </project>
   ```

4. Create the `build.xml` file that overrides the value of properties associated with the XSLT stylesheets used to produce HTML files (on page 1064). The following Ant properties can be overridden to specify your customization stylesheets:

   `args.wh.classic.topic.xsl`
   Specify this property if you want to customize the XSLT stylesheet used to produce an HTML file for each topic (on page 1064).

   `args.wh.classic.create.main.files.xsl`
   Specify this property if you want to customize the XSLT stylesheet used to produce the main HTML files (on page 1065).

   `args.wh.classic.createTocXML.xsl`
   Specify this property if you want to customize the XSLT stylesheet used to produce the `toc.xml` file (on page 1066). The toc.xml file contains information extracted from DITA map and it is mainly used to create the WebHelp TOC.

For example, to customize a WebHelp Classic transformation type, the build file should look like:

```xml
<project basedir="." name="Webhelp Classic Customization">
  <target name="dita2webhelp-classic-custom">
</project>
```

Override this property if you want to customize the XSLT stylesheet used to produce an HTML file for each topic

```xml
<property
    name="args.wh.classic.topic.xsl"
    value="${dita.plugin.com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.custom.dir}/xsl/dita2webhelpCustom.xsl"/>
```

Override this property if you want to customize the XSLT stylesheet used to produce the main HTML file.

```xml
<property
    name="args.wh.classic.create.main.files.xsl"
    value="${dita.plugin.com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.custom.dir}/xsl/createMainFilesCustom.xsl"/>
```

Override this property if you want to customize the XSLT stylesheet used to produce the toc.xml file.

```xml
<property
    name="args.wh.classic.createTocXML.xsl"
    value="${dita.plugin.com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic.custom.dir}/xsl/createTocXMLCustom.xsl"/>
```

You need to delegate the build target:

* dita2webhelp - for WebHelp Classic

```xml
<antcall target="dita2webhelp"/>
</target>
</project>

5. Create an xsl directory in the plugin customization directory (that you created in step 1) to store the customized XSLT stylesheets.

6. Install the extension plugin in the DITA Open Toolkit.

**Referencing the WebHelp XSLT Stylesheets from Your Customizations**

Note that your customization stylesheets should import the original stylesheets that they override. To reference the WebHelp stylesheets, you can use the `plugin:com.oxygenxml.dita-ot.plugin.webhelp` prefix. This prefix is rewritten by an XML catalog to the WebHelp root directory.

**Customizing the dita2webhelp.xsl Stylesheet**
The XSLT stylesheet that customizes the WebHelp `dita2webhelp.xsl` stylesheet should look like:

```xml
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns:math="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/math"
    exclude-result-prefixes="xs math"
    version="2.0">
    <!--
    Import the original stylesheet used to produce an HTML file for each topic.
    -->
    <!--
    Add your customization templates here.
    -->
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

You need to import the following XSLT stylesheet:

```xml
```

**Customizing the `createMainFiles.xsl` Stylesheet**

The XSLT stylesheet that customizes the WebHelp `createMainFiles.xsl` stylesheet should look like:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns:math="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/math"
    exclude-result-prefixes="xs math"
    version="2.0">
    <!--
    Import the original stylesheet used to produce the main HTML file.
    -->
    <xsl:import href="plugin:com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic:xsl/dita/desktop/createMainFiles.xsl"/>
    <!--
    Add your customization templates here.
    -->
</xsl:stylesheet>
```
You need to import the following XSLT stylesheet:

```xml
<xsl:import href="plugin:com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic:xsl/dita/desktop/createMainFiles.xsl"/>
```

**Customizing the tocDita.xsl File**

The XSLT stylesheet that customizes the WebHelp tocDita.xsl stylesheet should look like:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns:math="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/math"
    exclude-result-prefixes="xs math"
    version="2.0">
  <!-- Import the original stylesheet used to produce the toc.xml file. -->
  <!-- Add your customization templates here. -->
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

**Miscellaneous Customization Topics**

This section contains miscellaneous topics about how to customize the WebHelp Classic output.

**How to Disable Caching in WebHelp Classic Output**

In cases where a set of WebHelp Classic pages need to be updated on a regular basis to deliver the latest version of the documentation, the WebHelp pages should always be requested from the server upon re-loading it in a Web browser on the client side, rather than re-using an outdated cached version in the browser.

To disable caching in WebHelp Classic output, follow this procedure:

1. Edit the following XSL file for DITA or DocBook WebHelp systems:
   - For DITA WebHelp systems, edit the following file: `DITA-DT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\xsl\createMainFiles.xsl`.
   - For DocBook WebHelp system, edit the following file: `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\frameworks\docbook\xsl\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic\xsl\createMainFiles.xsl`.
2. Locate the following template in the XSL file:

```xml
<xsl:template name="create-toc-common-file">
    <meta http-equiv="Pragma" content="no-cache" />
    <meta http-equiv="Expires" content="-1" />
</xsl:template>
```

**Note:** The code should look like this:

```html
<html>
<head>
    <meta http-equiv="Pragma" content="no-cache" />
    <meta http-equiv="Expires" content="-1" />
</head>
</html>
```

3. Save your changes to the file.

4. Re-run your WebHelp transformation scenario.

### How to Flag DITA Content in WebHelp Output

Flagging content in WebHelp output involves defining a set of images that will be used for marking content across your information set.

To flag DITA content, you need to create a filter file that defines properties that will be applied on elements to be flagged. Generally, flagging is supported for block elements (on page 1619) (such as paragraphs), but not for phrase-level elements within a paragraph. This ensures that the images that will flag the content are easily scanned by the reader, instead of being buried in the text.

### Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To flag content in the DITA Map to WebHelp output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Create a DITA filter file (DITAVAL) and add it in a directory of your choice (for example, named `myFile.ditaval`.
2. Define the property for the elements you want to be flagged. For example, if you want to flag any element that has the `audience` attribute set to `programmer`, the content of the DITAVAL file should look like this:
Note that for an element to be flagged, at least one attribute-value pair needs to have a property declared in the DITAVAL file.

3. Edit a DITA Map to WebHelp transformation scenario.
4. Specify the DITAVAL file in the Filters tab (with the Use DITAVAL File option).
5. Run the transformation scenario.

Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author

⚠️ Important: Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author requires an additional license and some additional setup:

- You must have a valid license for the Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin (https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html).
- The Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.

To flag content in the DITA Map to WebHelp output using a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Create a DITA filter file (DITAVAL) and add it in a directory of your choice (for example, named myFile.ditaval).
2. Define the property for the elements you want to be flagged. For example, if you want to flag any element that has the audience attribute set to programmer, the content of the DITAVAL file should look like this:

   ```xml
   <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
   <val>
       <prop att="audience" val="programmer" action="flag"
            img="D:\resource\delta.gif" alt="sample alt text"/>
   </val>
   ```

   Note that for an element to be flagged, at least one attribute-value pair needs to have a property declared in the DITAVAL file.
3. Use the args.filter parameter in your transformation script and set its value to the path of the DITAVAL file you created.
4. Execute the transformation script.

For example:

- **Windows:**

  dita.bat -i c:\mySampleMap.ditamap -f webhelp -Dargs.filter=c:\myFile.ditaval

- **Mac OS X/ Linux:**

  dita -i /mySampleMap.ditamap -f webhelp -Dargs.filter=/myFile.ditaval

---

**How to Publish WebHelp Classic Output on a SharePoint Site**

Since WebHelp output must be published locally, on the same machine where the WebHelp process is running, to publish your files directly to a SharePoint library you need to map a network drive to connect to SharePoint and change your file extensions to `.aspx`, as described in the steps below.

**Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

To publish WebHelp Classic output on a SharePoint site and use a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Map a network drive to connect to your SharePoint library. For more information, see: [https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/2616712](https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/2616712).
2. Edit the WebHelp transformation scenario and open the **Parameters** tab.
   - For a DITA transformation, set the `args.outext` parameter to `.aspx`.
   - For a DocBook transformation, set the `html.ext` parameter to `.aspx`.
3. Run the WebHelp transformation scenario to generate the output.

**Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

**Important:** Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** requires an additional license and some additional setup:

- You must have a valid license for the **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** ([https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html](https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html)).
- The **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.

To publish WebHelp Classic output on a SharePoint site and use a script outside of **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** (on page 1002), follow this procedure:
1. Map a network drive to connect to your SharePoint library. For more information, see: https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/2616712.

2. Use the following parameter to change your file extensions to .aspx:
   - For DITA transformations, use the `args.outext` parameter in your transformation script and set its value to `.aspx`.
   - For DocBook transformations, use the `html.ext` parameter in your transformation script and set its value to `.aspx`.

3. Execute the transformation script.

   For example, a DITA script might look like this:

   • **Windows:**
     ```
     dita.bat -i c:\mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dargs.outext=.aspx
     ```

   • **Mac OS X/ Linux:**
     ```
     dita -i /mySample.ditamap -f webhelp -Dargs.outext=.aspx
     ```

**WebHelp Responsive Output**

The **WebHelp Responsive** features a very flexible layout, is designed to adapt to any screen size to provide an optimal viewing and interaction experience. It is based upon the *Bootstrap* responsive front-end framework and is available for DITA document types.

The **WebHelp Responsive with Feedback** variant also includes a feedback system that allows your users to add comments and allows you to manage and reply to them.

WebHelp Responsive output can be generated by using the [DITA Map WebHelp Responsive](on page 861) or [DITA Map WebHelp Responsive with Feedback](on page 861) transformation scenario.

**WebHelp Responsive Output Layout and Features**

This section contains information about the layout and features of the WebHelp Responsive output.

**Layout of the Responsive Page Types**

You can select from several different styles of layouts (for example, by default, you can select either a *tiles* or *tree* style of layout). Furthermore, each layout includes a collection of skins that you can choose from, or you can customize your own.

Figure 363. WebHelp Responsive Output on a Normal Screen
Figure 364. WebHelp Responsive Output on a Narrow Screen
The **Main Page** is the home page generated in the WebHelp Responsive output. The main function of the home page is to display top-level information and provide links that help you easily navigate to any of the top-level topics of the publication. These links can be rendered in either a *Tiles* or *Tree* style of layout. The main page also consists of various other components, such as a logo, title, menu, search field, or index link.

### Main Page - Tiles Layout

In the *tiles* presentation mode, a tile component is created for each chapter (first-level topic) in the publication. The tile presents a link to the topic and its short description.

**Figure 365. Main Page - Tiles Layout**

```
poly 11, 57, 12, 109, 56, 109, 55, 62, 70, 55, 155, 55, 155, 17, 71, 18
poly 65, 86, 64, 106, 189, 106, 190, 85, 197, 56, 294, 55, 294, 18, 196, 17, 130, 86
poly 61, 142, 62, 170, 726, 169, 725, 142, 231, 141, 276, 105, 376, 104, 375, 67, 276, 67, 275, 81, 205, 141
poly 755, 86, 755, 106, 776, 106, 776, 85, 708, 15, 607, 14, 607, 55, 710, 53
```

---

*Logo Component* (on page 1074)

*Title Component* (on page 1074)

*Search Input Component* (on page 1074)

*Menu Component* (on page 1074)

*Index Terms Link Component* (on page 1074)
Main Page - Tree Layout

In the *tree* presentation mode, links to the first and second level topics in the publication are displayed using a tree-like component.

Figure 366. Main Page - Tree Layout
Main Page Components

The layout components displayed in the main page are:

**Publication Title**

The title of the publication. It is usually taken from the DITA map title.

**Logo**

Displays a logo associated with the publication. Additionally you can set a target URL that will be opened when you click on the logo image.

The logo image can be specified using the `webhelp.logo.image` transformation parameter *(on page 1215)*. For the target URL, use the `webhelp.logo.image.target.url` parameter *(on page 1215)*.

**Menu**

Helps you to navigate to your documentation. This component presents a set of links to all topics from your publication. For information about customizing the menu, see *How to Customize the Menu (on page 1166)* topic.

**Index Terms Link**

Presents a link to the index terms page. You can control if this component is displayed by using the `webhelp.show.indexterms.link` parameter *(on page 1218)*.

**Search Input**

Input text field allowing you to easily enter your search queries.

**Topic Tiles**

A tile associated with a main topic. Each topic tile has three sections that correspond to the topic title, short description, and image.

**Topic Tile Title**

Presents the navigation title of the associated topic.

**Topic Tile Short Description**

Presents the *short description* of the topic. It may be collected either from the topic or from the DITA map topic meta.
Presents an image associated with the topic. The image association (on page 1166) is done in the DITA map.

**Tree Table of Contents**

An area containing topic titles from first and second level of your publication.

**Page Footer**

WebHelp Responsive output footer.

**Topic Page**

The *Topic Page* is the page generated for each DITA topic in the WebHelp Responsive output. The HTML pages produced for each topic consist of the topic content along with various other additional components, such as a title, menu, navigation breadcrumb, print icon, or side table of contents.

![Figure 367. Topic Page](image-url)
The layout components displayed in this page are:

**Publication Title**

The title of the publication. It is usually taken from the DITA map title.

**Logo**

Displays a logo associated with the publication. Additionally you can set a target URL that will be opened when you click on the logo image.

The logo image can be specified using the `webhelp.logo.image` transformation parameter (on page 1215). For the target URL, use the `webhelp.logo.image.target.url` parameter (on page 1215).

**Menu**

Helps you to navigate to your documentation. This component presents a set of links to all topics from your publication. For information about customizing the menu, see How to Customize the Menu (on page 1166) topic.

**Index Terms Link**
Presents a link to the index terms page. You can control if this component is displayed by using the `webhelp.show.indexterms.link` parameter *(on page 1218)*.

**Search Input**

Input text field allowing you to easily enter your search queries.

**Navigation Links**

The navigation links (< Previous / Next arrows>) can be used to navigate to the previous or next topic. These navigation links are controlled by the `collection-type` attribute. For example, if you set `collection-type="sequence"` on a parent topic reference, navigation links will be generated in the output for that topic and all of its child topics. You can also use the `webhelp.default.collection.type.sequence` parameter and set its value to `yes` to generate navigation links for all topics, regardless of whether or not the `collection-type` attribute is present.

**Tip:** To hide the navigation links, you can edit the transformation scenario and set the value of the `webhelp.show.navigation.links` parameter to `no`.

**Expand/Collapse Sections Button**

Icon that expands or collapses sections listed in the side table of contents within a topic.

**Print Link**

A print icon that opens the print dialog box for your particular browser.

**Breadcrumb**

Presents the path of the current displayed DITA topic in documentation.

**Topic Content**

Presents the content of the associated DITA topic.

**Publication Table of Contents**

A Table of Content for the publication displayed in the left side.

**Topic Table of Contents (On this page links)**

A table of contents for the topic displayed on the right side with a heading named **On this page** and it contains links to each section within the current topic and the section corresponding to the current scroll position is highlighted. This component is generated for any topic that contains at least two `<section>` elements and each `<section>` must have an `@id` attribute.

**Page Footer**

WebHelp Responsive output footer.
Search Page

The Search Page presents search results in the WebHelp Responsive output. The HTML page consists of a search results component along with various other additional components, such as a title, menu, or index link.

When you enter search terms in the Search field, the results are displayed in a results page. When you click on a result, the topic is opened in the main pane and the search results are highlighted. If you want to remove the colored highlights, click the Toggle Highlights button at the top-right side of the page. The Search field also includes an autocomplete feature.

Figure 368. Search Results Page
Search Page Components

The layout components displayed in the search page are:

Publication Title

The title of the publication. It is usually taken from the DITA map title.

Logo

Displays a logo associated with the publication. Additionally you can set a target URL that will be opened when you click on the logo image.

The logo image can be specified using the `webhelp.logo.image` transformation parameter (on page 1215). For the target URL, use the `webhelp.logo.image.target.url` parameter (on page 1215).

Menu

Helps you to navigate to your documentation. This component presents a set of links to all topics from your publication. For information about customizing the menu, see How to Customize the Menu (on page 1166) topic.

Index Terms Link

Presents a link to the index terms page. You can control if this component is displayed by using the `webhelp.show.indexterms.link` parameter (on page 1218).

Search Input

Input text field allowing you to easily enter your search queries.

Search Results

Each result includes the topic title that can be clicked to open that page. Under the title, a breadcrumb is displayed that shows the path of the topic and you can click any of the topics in the breadcrumb to open that particular page.

Page Footer

WebHelp Responsive output footer.
Autocomplete Suggestions in the Search Text Field

When you are typing in the search text field, proposals are presented to help you to compute the search query. The information proposed when you are typing is collected from:

- The search queries from the history of the previous searches.
- The titles collected from your documentation.
- Documentation index terms and keywords. For example, in a DITA topic, the keywords and index terms are specified in the topic prolog section like this:

```xml
<prolog>
  <metadata>
    <keywords>
      <indexterm>databases</indexterm></keywords>
    <keyword>installing</keyword>
    <keyword>uninstalling</keyword>
    <keyword>prerequisites</keyword>
  </metadata>
</prolog>
```

Missing Terms

If you enter multiple search terms (other than stop words), for any result that the search engine found at least one term but not one or more of the other terms, the Missing terms will be listed below each result.

Related Information:

- WebHelp Responsive Search Engine (on page 1082)

Index Terms Page

The Index Terms Page page consists of an index terms section along with various other additional components, such as a title, menu, or search field.

An alphabet that contains the first letter of the documentation index terms is generated at the top of the index page. Each letter represents a link to a specific indices section. The indexes are presented in multiple columns to make it easier to read this page.

Figure 369. Index Terms Page
Index Terms Page Components

The layout components displayed in this page are:

**Publication Title**

The title of the publication. It is usually taken from the DITA map title.

**Logo**

Displays a logo associated with the publication. Additionally you can set a target URL that will be opened when you click on the logo image.
The logo image can be specified using the webhelp.logo.image transformation parameter (on page 1215). For the target URL, use the webhelp.logo.image.target.url parameter (on page 1215).

**Menu**

Helps you to navigate to your documentation. This component presents a set of links to all topics from your publication. For information about customizing the menu, see How to Customize the Menu (on page 1166) topic.

**Index Terms Link**

Presents a link to the index terms page. You can control if this component is displayed by using the webhelp.show.indexterms.link parameter (on page 1218).

**Index Terms Alphabet**

An alphabet that contains the first letter of index terms. Each letter represents a link to a specific indices section.

**Index Terms**

The first letter of the index along with the list of index terms.

**Page Footer**

WebHelp Responsive output footer.

**Search Engine**

Search engine has two main components:

**Search indexer**

It is also known as a spider. This component is active when you publish your documentation to WebHelp and it is responsible for creating the search index. This component traverses all HTML pages (for DITA topics) to gather information.

**Search interface**

This component is an interface between the user and the search index. It helps the user to search through the search index and displays results in the search page.

**Search Field and Results Page**

When you enter search terms in the Search field, the results are displayed in a results page. When you click on a result, the topic is opened in the main pane and the search results are highlighted. If you want to remove the colored highlights, click the Toggle Highlights button at the top-right side of the page. The Search field also includes an autocomplete feature.
Each result includes the topic title that can be clicked to open that page. Under the title, a breadcrumb is displayed that shows the path of the topic and you can click any of the topics in the breadcrumb to open that particular page.

If you enter multiple search terms (other than stop words), for any result that the search engine found at least one term but not one or more of the other terms, the **Missing** terms will be listed below each result.

### 5-Star Rating Mechanism and Sorting

The **Search** feature is also enhanced with a rating mechanism that computes scores for every result that matches the search criteria. These scores are then translated into a 5-star rating scheme and the stars are displayed to the right of each result. The search results are sorted depending on the following:

- Search entries that satisfy the phrase search criterion are presented first.
- The number of keywords found in a single page (the higher the number, the better).
- The context (for example, a word found in a title, scores better than a word found in unformatted text). The search ranking order, sorted by relevance is as follows:
  - The search term is included in a meta keyword.
  - The search term is in the title of the page.
  - The search term is in bold text in a paragraph.
  - The search term is in normal text in a paragraph.

### Tag Element Scoring Values

HTML tag elements are also assigned a scoring value and these values are evaluated for the search results. For information about editing these values, see *How to Change Element Scoring in Search Results (on page 1179)*.

### Search Rules

Rules that are applied during a search include:

- You can use quotes to perform an exact search for multiple word phrases (for example, "grow flowers" will only return results if both words are found consecutively and exactly as they are typed in the search field). This type of search is known as a **phrase search**.
- **Boolean Search** is supported using the following operators: *and*, *or*, *not*. When there are two adjacent search terms without an operator, *or* is used as the default search operator (for example, *grow flowers* is the same as *grow or flowers*).
• The space character separates keywords (an expression such as *grow flowers* counts as two separate keywords: *grow* and *flowers*).

  **indexterm and keywords** DITA elements are an effective way to increase the ranking of a page (for example, content inside a *keywords* element weighs more than an *H1* HTML element).

• Words composed by merging two or more words with colon (":") or minus ("-"), underline ("_"), or dot ("." ) characters count as a single word.

• Your search terms should contain two or more characters (note that stop words will be ignored). This rule does not apply to CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) languages.

• When searching for multi-word phrases in CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) languages that often have multiple words appear in strings without a space separator, you need to add a space to separate the words. Otherwise WebHelp will not find results. For example, Chinese uses a specialized character for space separators, but the current WebHelp implementation cannot detect such specialized characters, so to search for #### (it translates as "before you begin" or "before start"), you have to enter ## ## (notice the space between the second and third symbols) in the search field.

**Excluded Terms**

To improve performance, the **Search** feature excludes certain *stop words*. For example, the English version of the *stop words* includes: a, an, and, are, as, at, be, but, by, for, if, in, into, is, it, no, not, of, on, or, such, that, the, their, then, there, these, they, this, to, was, will, with.

**Related Information:**

- WebHelp Responsive HTML5 Pages: Search Page *(on page 1077)*

**Feedback System**

The **WebHelp Responsive with Feedback** variant contains a **Comments** section at the bottom of each topic. This section is where you can interact with users through a comment system. For information about deploying a feedback-enabled system, see Deploying a Feedback-Enabled System *(on page 1085)*.

Figure 370. WebHelp Responsive with Feedback Comments Section
To add a new comment, click the **Add New Comment** button, or click **Reply** to add a comment to an existing thread. You can click on the **Log in** button on the right side of this bar to be authenticated as a user and your user name will be included in any comments that you add. If you do not have a user name, you can click on the **Sign Up** button to create a new user.

After you log in, your name and user name are displayed in the **Comments** bar, along with the **Log off** and **Edit** buttons. Click the **Edit** button to open the **User Profile** dialog box where you can customize the following options:

- **Your Name** - You can use this field to edit the initial name that you used to create your user profile.
- **Your email address** - You can use this field to edit the initial email address that you used to create your profile.
- You can choose to receive an email in the following situations:
  - When a comment is left on a page that you commented on.
  - When a comment is left on any topic in the WebHelp Classic system.
  - When a reply is left to one of my comments.
- **New Password** - Allows you to enter a new password for your user account.

**Note:** The **Current Password** field from the top of the **User Profile** is mandatory if you want to save the changes you make.

If you are an administrator, you can manage user information and comments. For more information, see Managing Users and Comments in a Feedback-Enabled System (on page 1089).

**Related Information:**

- Deploying a Feedback-Enabled System (on page 1085)
Deploying a Feedback-Enabled System

System Requirements

The feedback-enabled WebHelp system requires a standard server deployment. You can request this from your server administrator and it requires the following system components:

- A Web server (such as Apache Web Server)
- A MySQL or MariaDB database server
- A database admin tool (such as phpMyAdmin)
- PHP Version 5.1.6 or later

The WebHelp system supports most of the recent versions of the following browsers: Chrome, Firefox, Edge, Internet Explorer, Safari, Opera.

Create WebHelp with Feedback Database

The WebHelp with Feedback system needs a database to store user details and the actual feedback, and a user added to it with all privileges. After this is created, you should have the following information:

- Database name
- Username
- Password

Exactly how you create the database and user depends on your web host and your particular needs.

Example:

The following procedure uses phpMyAdmin to create a MySQL database for the feedback system and a MySQL user with privileges for that database. The feedback system uses these credentials to connect to the database.

Using phpMyAdmin to create a database:

1. Access the phpMyAdmin instance running on your server.
2. Click Databases (in the right frame) and then create a database. You can give it any name you want (for example comments).
3. Create a user with connection privileges for this database.
4. Under localhost, in the right frame, click Privileges and then at the bottom of the page click the reload the privileges link.
**Deploying the WebHelp with Feedback Output**

If you have a web server configured with PHP and MySQL, you can deploy the **WebHelp with Feedback** output by following these steps:

1. Connect to your server using an FTP client.
2. Locate the home directory (from now on, referred to as **DOCUMENT_ROOT**) of your server.
3. Copy the transformation output folder into the **DOCUMENT_ROOT** folder.
4. Rename it to something relevant (for example, `myProductWebHelp`).
5. Open the output folder (for example, `http://[YOUR_SERVER]/myProductWebHelp/`). You are redirected to the installation wizard. Proceed with the installation as follows:
   a. Verify that the prerequisites are met.
   b. Press **Start Installation**.
   c. Configure the **Deployment Settings** section. Default values are provided, but you should adjust them as needed.

   **Tip:** You can change some of the options later. The installation creates a `config.php` file in `*[OXYGEN_WEBHELP_INSTALL_DIR]/feedback/resources/php/config/config.php` where all your configuration options are stored.

d. Configure the **MySql Database Connection Settings** section. Use the information (database name, username, password) from the **Create WebHelp with Feedback Database** section (on page 1086) to fill-in the appropriate text boxes.

   **Warning:** Selecting the **Create new database structure** option will overwrite any existing data in the selected database, if it already exists. Therefore, it is useful the first time you install the **WebHelp with Feedback** system, but you do not want to select this option on subsequent deployments.

e. If you are using a domain (such as **OpenLDAP** or **Active Directory**) to manage users in your organization, select the **Enable LDAP Authentication** option. This will allow you to configure the LDAP server, which will provide information and credentials for users who will access the WebHelp system. Also, this will allow you to choose which of the domain users will have administrator privileges.

f. If the **Create new database structure** option is selected, the **Create WebHelp Administrator Account** section becomes available. Here you can set the administrator account data. The administrator is able to moderate new posts and manage WebHelp users.

The same database can be used to store comments for multiple **WebHelp with Feedback** deployments. If a topic is available in multiple deployments and there are comments associated with it, you can choose to display the comments in all deployments that share the database. To do this, select the **Display comments from other products** option. In the **Display**
**comments from** section, a list with the deployments sharing the same database is displayed. Select the deployments allowed to share common feedback.

**Note:** You can restrict the displayed comments of a product depending on its version. If you have two products that use the same database and you restrict one of them to display comments starting from a certain version, the comments of the other product are also displayed from the specified version onwards.

g. Press **Next Step**.

h. Remove the installation folder from your web server.

**Important:** When you publish subsequent iterations of your **WebHelp with Feedback** system, you will not upload the `/install` folder in the output, as you only need it uploaded the first time you create the installation. On subsequent uploads, you will just upload the other output files.

i. In your Web browser, go to your **WebHelp with Feedback** system main page.

**Testing Your WebHelp with Feedback System**

To test your system, create a user and post a comment. Check to see if the notification emails are delivered to your email inbox.

**Note:** To read debug messages generated by the system:

1. Enable *JavaScript* logging by doing one of the following:
   - Open the `log.js` file, locate the `var log= new Log(Level.NONE);` line, and change the logging level to: `Level.INFO`, `Level.DEBUG`, `Level.WARN`, or `Level.ERROR`.
   - Append `?log=true` to the WebHelp URL.

2. Inspect the PHP and Apache server log files.

**Documentation Product ID and Version**

When you run a **WebHelp with Feedback** transformation scenario, by default you are prompted for a documentation product ID and version number. This is needed when multiple WebHelp systems are deployed on the same server. Think of your WebHelp output as a *product*. If you have three different WebHelp outputs, you have three different *products* (each with their own unique documentation product ID). This identifier is included in a configuration file so that comments are tied to a particular output (product ID and version number).

**Note:** The **WebHelp with Feedback** installation includes a configuration option (Display comments from other products) that allows you to choose to have comments visible in other specified *products*. 
Refreshing the Content of a Feedback-Enabled System

It is common to update the content of an existing installation of a WebHelp with Feedback system on a regular basis. In this case, reinstalling the whole system is not a viable option since it might result in the loss of the comments associated with your topics. Also, reconfiguring the system every time you want to refresh it may be time consuming.

Fortunately, you can refresh just the content without losing the comments or the initial system configuration. To do so, follow these steps:

1. Execute the transformation scenario that produces the WebHelp with Feedback output directory.
2. Go to the output directory (specified in the Output tab of the transformation scenario), locate the \feedback\resources\php\config\config.php file, and delete it.
3. Locate the \feedback\install directory and delete it.
4. Copy the remaining structure of the output folder and paste it into your WebHelp with Feedback system installation directory, overwriting the existing content.

Managing Users and Comments in a Feedback-Enabled System

When you installed the WebHelp with Feedback system the first time (assuming the Create new database structure option (on page 1087) was selected), you should have been prompted to create an administrator account (or a user named administrator was created by default). As an administrator, you have access to manage comments posted in your feedback-enabled WebHelp system. You can also manage the user information (such as role, status, or notification options).

To manage comments and user information, follow these steps:

1. At the bottom of each specific topic there is a Comments navigation bar and on the right side there is a Log in button. Click this button and log in with your administrator credentials. This gives you access to an Admin Panel button.
2. Click the Admin Panel button to display an administration page.

Figure 371. Administrative Page
3. Use this page to manage the following options:

**Delete Orphaned Comments**

Allows you to delete comments that are no longer associated with a topic in your WebHelp system.

**Delete Pending Users**

Allows you to delete user accounts that you do not wish to activate.

**View All Posts**

Allows you to view all the comments that are associated with topics in your WebHelp system.

**Export Comments**

Allows you to export all posts associated with topics in your WebHelp system into an XML file.

**Set Version**

Use this action to display comments starting with a particular version.

**Manage User Information**

To edit the details for a user, click on the corresponding row. This opens a window that allows you to customize the following information associated with the user:

**Name**

The full name of the user.

**Level**

Use this field to modify the privilege level (role) for the selected user. You can choose from the following:

- **User** - Regular user, able to post comments and receive e-mail notifications.
- **Moderator** - In addition to the regular User rights, this type of user has access to the Admin Panel where a moderator can view,
delete, export comments, and set the version of the feedback-enabled WebHelp system.

- **Admin** - Full administrative privileges. Can manage WebHelp-specific settings, users, and their comments.

**Company**

The name of the organization associated with the user.

**E-Mail**

The contact email address for the user. This is also the address where the WebHelp system sends notifications.

**WebHelp Notification**

When selected, the user receives notifications when comments are posted anywhere in your feedback-enabled WebHelp system.

**Reply Notification**

When selected, the user receives notifications when comments are posted as a reply to one of their comments.

**Page Notification**

When selected, the user receives notifications when comments are posted on a topic where they previously posted a comment.

**Date**

The date the user registered is displayed.

**Status**

Use this drop-down list to change the status of the user. You can choose from the following:

- **Created** - The user is created but does not yet have any rights for the feedback-enabled WebHelp system.

- **Validated** - The user is able to use the feedback-enabled WebHelp system.

- **Suspended** - The user has no rights for the feedback-enabled WebHelp system.

**Warning:** The key used for identifying the page a comment is attached to is the relative file path to the output page. Since the output file and folder names mirror the source, any change to the file name (or its folder) in the source will affect the comments associated with that WebHelp page. If you change the file name or path, the comment history for that topic will become orphaned (a change to the topic ID does not affect the comment history).
Context-Sensitive WebHelp Responsive System

Context-sensitive help systems assist users by providing specific informational topics for certain components of a user interface, such as a button or window. This mechanism works based on mappings between a unique ID defined in the topic and a corresponding HTML page.

Generating Context-Sensitive Help

When WebHelp Responsive output is generated, the transformation process produces an XML mapping file called `context-help-map.xml` and copies it in the output folder of the transformation. This XML file maps an ID to a corresponding HTML page through an `appContext` element, as in the following example:

```xml
<map productID="oxy-webhelp" productVersion="1.1">
  <appContext helpID="myapp-functionid1" path="tasks/app-help1.html"/>
  <appContext helpID="myapp-functionid2" path="tasks/app-help1.html"/>
  ...
</map>
```

The possible attributes are as follows:

**helpID**

A Unique ID provided by a topic from two possible sources (`resourceid` element or `id` attribute):

**resourceid**

The `resourceid` element is mapped into the `appContext` element and can be specified in either the `topicref` within a DITA map or in a `prolog` within a DITA topic. The `resourceid` element accepts the following attributes:

- **appname** - A name for the external application that references the topic. If this attribute is not specified, its value is considered to be empty ("").
- **appid** - An ID used by an application to identify the topic.
- **id** - Specifies a value that is used by a specific application to identify the topic, but this attribute is ignored if an `appid` attribute is used.

**Note:** Multiple `appid` values can be associated with a single `appname` value (and multiple `appname` values can be associated with a single `appid` value), but the values for both attributes work in combination to specify a specific ID for a specific application, and therefore each
combination of values for the appid and appname attributes should be unique within the context of a single root map (on page 1626). For example, suppose that you need two different functions of an application to both open the same WebHelp page.

**Example:** resourceid Specified in a DITA Map

The resourceid element can be specified in a topicmeta element within a topicref.

```
<map title="App Help">
  <topicref href="app-help1.dita" type="task">
    <topicmeta>
      <resourceid appname="myapp" appid="functionid1"/>
      <resourceid appname="myapp" appid="functionid2"/>
    </topicmeta>
  </topicref>
</map>
```

**Example:** resourceid Specified in a DITA Topic

The resourceid element can be specified in a prolog element within a DITA topic.

```
<task id="app-help1">
  <title>My App Help</title>
  <prolog>
    <resourceid appname="myapp" appid="functionid1"/>
    <resourceid appname="myapp" appid="functionid2"/>
  </prolog>
  ...
</task>
```

For more information about the resourceid element, see DITA Specifications: <resourceid>.

**id**

If a resourceid element is not declared in the DITA map or DITA topic (as described above), the id attribute that is set on the topic root element is mapped into the appContext element.

**Important:** You should ensure that these defined IDs are unique in the context of the entire DITA project. If the IDs are not unique,
the transformation scenario will display warning messages in the transformation console output and the help system will not work properly.

**path**

The path to a corresponding WebHelp page. This path is relative to the location of the `context-help-map.xml` mapping file.

**productID** *(Applicable only if you are using the WebHelp Responsive with Feedback transformation scenario)*

The ID of the product for your documentation project.

**productVersion** *(Applicable only if you are using the WebHelp Responsive with Feedback transformation scenario)*

The version of the product for your documentation project.

There are two ways of implementing context-sensitive help in your system:

- The XML mapping file can be loaded by a PHP script on the server side. The script receives the `contextId` value and will look it up in the XML file.
- Invoke the `index.html` WebHelp system file and pass the `contextId` parameter with a specific value. The WebHelp system will automatically open the help page associated with the value of the `contextId` parameter.

```
index.html?contextId=myDITATopic
```

**Note:** The `contextId` parameter is not case-sensitive.

### Context-Sensitive Queries

You can use the URL field in your browser to search for topics in a context-sensitive WebHelp system with the assistance of the following parameters:

**contextId**

The WebHelp JavaScript engine will look for this value in the `context-help-map.xml` mapping file and load the corresponding help page.

**Note:** You can use an anchor *(on page 1619)* in the `contextId` parameter to jump to a specific section in a document. For example, `contextId=topicID#anchor`.

**appname**

You can use this parameter in conjunction with `contextId` to search for this value in the corresponding `appname` attribute value in the mapping file.
Another parameter indicates the search query:

**searchQuery**

You can use this parameter to perform a search operation when WebHelp is loaded. For example, if you want to open WebHelp showing all search results for *growing flowers*, the URL should look like this: http://localhost/webhelp/index.html?searchQuery=growing%20flowers.

**Accessibility**

**Oxygen XML WebHelp Responsive** output is compliant with the [Section 508 accessibility standard](#), making the output accessible for people with visual impairment and other disabilities. Documentation and interface components are considered accessible when they have support in place that allows those with disabilities to use assistive technologies to understand the content.

Generally speaking, the WebHelp Responsive output has two major parts: topic content and WebHelp Responsive-related components (publication TOC, breadcrumb, menu). While the WebHelp Responsive components are designed to comply with the accessibility rules, it is important to adhere to some rules when you write DITA topics so that the content is also accessible.

**Related Information:**

- [DITA-OT Day 2017 Presentation: Accessibility in DITA-OT](#)

**Writing Guidelines for Accessible Documentation**

To create accessible content, good authoring practices involve following guidelines, such as marking table headers, using semantic elements where available, and using alternative text for images.

**Accessible Images**

Images must have text alternatives that describe the information or function represented by them.

**Short Text Equivalents for Images**

When using the `<image>` element, specify a short alternative text with the `<alt>` element.

```xml
<image href="puffin.jpg">
  <alt>Puffin figure</alt>
</image>
```
Long Descriptions of Images

For complex images, when a short text equivalent does not suffice to adequately convey the function or role of an image, provide additional information in a file designated by the `<longdesc>` element.

```xml
<image href="puffin.jpg">
  <alt>Puffin figure</alt>
  <longdesc href="http://www.example.org/birds/puffin.html"
          scope="external"
          format="html"/>
</image>
```

Related Information:

- Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) Specification `<image>` element
- Web Accessibility Tutorials: Alt Decision Tree

Accessible Image Maps

For image maps, text alternatives are needed on both the `<image>` element itself (to describe the informative context) and on each of the `<area>` elements (to convey the link destination or the action that will be initiated if the link is followed). The `<xref>` content within the `<area>` element contains the intended alternative text or hover text for that image map area.

```xml
<imagemap id="gear_pump_map">
  <image href="./images/Gear_pump_exploded.png" id="gear_pump_exploded">
    <alt>Gear Pump</alt>
  </image>
  <area>
    <shape>circle</shape>
    <coords>172, 265, 14</coords>
    <xref href="parts/bushings.dita#bushings_topic/bushings" format="dita">Bushings</xref>
  </area>
  <area>
    <shape>circle</shape>
    <coords>324, 210, 14</coords>
  </area>
</imagemap>
```
Related Information:

- Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) Specification

**Accessible Tables**

Accessible HTML tables need markup that indicates header cells and data cells and defines their relationship. Header cells must be marked with `<th>`, and data cells with `<td>`, to make tables accessible. For more complex tables, explicit associations may be needed using `@scope`, `@id`, and `@headers` attributes.

When you implement the table, it is best to use the `<table>` element (CALS table or OASIS Table Exchange Model). The `<table>` element includes all that you need to make a fully accessible table.

Related Information:

- Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) Specification

**Table with Header Cells in the Top Row Only**

For this type of table, you have to embed the table rows in the `<thead>` element.

**Table 58. Example: Oxygen Events**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Evolution of TC 2018</td>
<td>May 31 - June 1, 2018</td>
<td>Sofia, Bulgaria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Markup UK</td>
<td>June 9 - 10, 2018</td>
<td>London, United Kingdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balisage 2018 - The Markup Conference</td>
<td>July 31 - August 3, 2018</td>
<td>Rockville, Maryland, USA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```xml
<table colsep="1" rowsep="1" frame="all">
  <title>
    <b>Oxygen Events</b>
  </title>
  <tgroup cols="3">
    <colgroup></colgroup>
    <thead>
      <tr>
        <th>Event</th>
        <th>Date</th>
        <th>Location</th>
      </tr>
    </thead>
    <tbody>
      <tr>
        <td>Evolution of TC 2018</td>
        <td>May 31 - June 1, 2018</td>
        <td>Sofia, Bulgaria</td>
      </tr>
      <tr>
        <td>Markup UK</td>
        <td>June 9 - 10, 2018</td>
        <td>London, United Kingdom</td>
      </tr>
      <tr>
        <td>Balisage 2018 - The Markup Conference</td>
        <td>July 31 - August 3, 2018</td>
        <td>Rockville, Maryland, USA</td>
      </tr>
    </tbody>
  </tgroup>
</table>
```
<table group="Example: Oxygen Events">
  <thead>
    <row>
      <entry colname="COLSPEC0" valign="top">Event</entry>
      <entry colname="COLSPEC1" valign="top">Date</entry>
      <entry>Location</entry>
    </row>
  </thead>
  <tbody>
    <row>
      <entry>Evolution of TC 2018</entry>
      <entry>May 31 - June 1, 2018</entry>
      <entry>Sofia, Bulgaria</entry>
    </row>
    <row>
      <entry>Markup UK</entry>
      <entry>June 9 - 10, 2018</entry>
      <entry>London, United Kingdom</entry>
    </row>
    <row>
      <entry>Balisage 2018 - The Markup Conference</entry>
      <entry>July 31 - August 3, 2018</entry>
      <entry>Rockville, Maryland, USA</entry>
    </row>
  </tbody>
</table>

Table with Header Cells in the First Column Only

For this type of table, you have to set the @rowheader="firstcol" attribute on the <table> element to identify the header column.

**Table 59. Example: Oxygen Events**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Evolution of TC 2018</th>
<th>Markup UK</th>
<th>Balisage 2018 - The Markup Conference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>May 31 - June 1, 2018</td>
<td>June 9 - 10, 2018</td>
<td>July 31 - August 3, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>Sofia, Bulgaria</td>
<td>London, United Kingdom</td>
<td>Rockville, Maryland, USA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table with Header Cells in the Top Row and First Column

For this type of table, you can use `<thead>` to identify header rows and `<rowheader>` to identify a header column.

Table 60. Example: Bus Timetable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Monday</th>
<th>Tuesday</th>
<th>Wednesday</th>
<th>Thursday</th>
<th>Friday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>09:00 - 11:00</td>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Example: Bus Timetable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Monday</th>
<th>Tuesday</th>
<th>Wednesday</th>
<th>Thursday</th>
<th>Friday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>09:00 - 11:00</td>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00 - 13:00</td>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:00 - 17:00</td>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Open</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table HTML Representation:**

```xml
<table id="table_dq_k_n24_vdb" rowheader="firstcol" colsep="1" rowsep="1" frame="all">
  <title>Example: Bus Timetable</title>
  <tgroup cols="6">
    <colspec colnum="1" colname="col1"/>
    <colspec colnum="2" colname="col2"/>
    <colspec colnum="3" colname="col3"/>
    <colspec colnum="4" colname="col4"/>
    <colspec colnum="5" colname="col5"/>
    <colspec colnum="6" colname="col6"/>
  </tgroup>
  <thead>
    <row>
      <entry>Monday</entry>
      <entry>Tuesday</entry>
      <entry>Wednesday</entry>
      <entry>Thursday</entry>
      <entry>Friday</entry>
    </row>
  </thead>
  <tbody>
    <row>
      <entry>09:00 - 11:00</entry>
      <entry>Closed</entry>
      <entry>Open</entry>
      <entry>Open</entry>
      <entry>Closed</entry>
      <entry>Closed</entry>
    </row>
    <row>
      <entry>11:00 - 13:00</entry>
      <entry>Open</entry>
      <entry>Open</entry>
      <entry>Closed</entry>
      <entry>Closed</entry>
      <entry>Closed</entry>
    </row>
  </tbody>
</table>
```
WebHelp Responsive 508 VPAT

WebHelp Responsive was designed to adhere to the U.S. Government Section 508 accessibility standards. This document describes the accessibility features that address the Section 508 Standards. This VPAT (Voluntary Product Accessibility Template) is an informational tool developed by industry and government to help facilitate the understanding of compatibility issues under Section 508.

Table 61. 1194.22 Web-based intranet and internet information and applications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Supporting Features</th>
<th>Remarks and Explanations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) A text equivalent for every non-text element shall be provided (e.g., via “alt”, “longdesc”, or in element content)</td>
<td>Supported with exceptions</td>
<td>• The process that produces the WebHelp Responsive accessible output uses information extracted from the DITA topics. It is the technical writer’s responsibility to write accessible-friendly DITA topics (on page 1095).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Criteria</td>
<td>Supporting Features</td>
<td>Remarks and Explanations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The developers who customize the WebHelp output are responsible for ensuring that the template they customize conforms to this criterion.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Equivalent alternatives for any multimedia presentation shall be synchronized with the presentation</td>
<td>Supported with exceptions</td>
<td>WebHelp Responsive plugin offers support to transfer multimedia objects (video, audio) from DITA topics to the generated HTML pages. Technical writers are responsible for ensuring that they use multimedia objects that conform to this criterion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Web pages shall be designed so that all information conveyed with color is also available without color, for example from context or markup</td>
<td>Supported with exceptions</td>
<td>• The built-in Cobalt theme was specially designed to help visually impaired users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The developers who customize the WebHelp output are responsible for ensuring that the template they customize conforms to this criterion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Documents shall be organized so they are readable without requiring an associated stylesheet</td>
<td>Supported</td>
<td>The WebHelp Responsive output is readable without requiring any stylesheet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Redundant text links shall be provided for each active region of a server-side image map</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>The product contains no server-side image maps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Client-side image maps shall be provided instead of server-side image maps except where the regions cannot be defined with an available geometric shape</td>
<td>Supported with exceptions</td>
<td>Technical writers can insert image maps in DITA topics. They are responsible for specifying the information required to generate accessible image maps (on page 1096).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Row and column headers shall be identified for data tables</td>
<td>Supported with exceptions</td>
<td>Technical writers can insert tables in DITA topics. They are responsible for inputting the information required to generate accessible tables (on page 1097).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Criteria</td>
<td>Supporting Features</td>
<td>Remarks and Explanations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h) Markup shall be used to associate data cells and header cells for</td>
<td>Supported with</td>
<td>Technical writers can insert tables in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data tables that have two or more logical levels of row or column</td>
<td>exceptions</td>
<td>DITA topics. They are responsible for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>headers</td>
<td></td>
<td>inputting the information required to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>generate accessible tables <em>(on page 1097)</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Frames shall be titled with text that facilitates frame</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>The WebHelp Responsive output does not use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identification and navigation</td>
<td></td>
<td>frames</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The screen does not flicker with frequencies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>greater than 2 Hz and lower than 55 Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(j) Pages shall be designed to avoid causing the screen to flicker with</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>Accessibility provisions in WebHelp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a frequency greater than 2 Hz and lower than 55 Hz</td>
<td></td>
<td>Responsive output can be provided without</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>requiring a separate text-only version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k) A text-only page, with equivalent information or functionality,</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>Accessibility provisions in WebHelp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shall be provided to make a website comply with the provisions of this</td>
<td></td>
<td>Responsive output can be provided without</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part, when compliance cannot be accomplished in any other way. The</td>
<td></td>
<td>requiring a separate text-only version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>content of the text-only page shall be updated whenever the primary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>page changes.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(l) When pages utilize scripting languages to display content, or to</td>
<td>Supported with</td>
<td>The developers who customize the WebHelp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create interface elements, the information provided by the script shall</td>
<td>exceptions</td>
<td>output are responsible for ensuring that the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be identified with functional text that can be read by assistive</td>
<td></td>
<td>template they customize conforms to this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>technology</td>
<td></td>
<td>criterion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(m) When electronic forms are designed to be completed on-line, the</td>
<td>Supported with</td>
<td>The developers who customize the WebHelp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form shall allow people using assistive technology to access the</td>
<td>exceptions</td>
<td>output are responsible for ensuring that the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>information, field elements, and functionality required for completion</td>
<td></td>
<td>template they customize conforms to this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and submission of the form, including all directions and cues</td>
<td></td>
<td>criterion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n) A method shall be provided that permits users to skip repetitive</td>
<td>Supported</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>navigation links</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(o) When a timed response is required, the user shall be alerted and</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>WebHelp Responsive output does not require</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>given sufficient time to indicate more time is required</td>
<td></td>
<td>a timed response as part of its core</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>functionality</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** This VPAT pertains only to the HTML output generated by the WebHelp Responsive plugin as shipped and not to any customization. It specifically applies to version 20.1 or above and it does not apply to any versions prior to this.
Supported Platforms

All accessibility tests have been carried out in the following environment:

- NVDA (Non Visual Desktop Access) version 2018.1.1 with Firefox version 60.0.1 and Chrome version 66.0.3359.181.
- Windows 10 Narrator with Microsoft Edge browser.

However, this does not mean that WebHelp Responsive-generated output has any issue with other modern, standards-compliant browsers and alternative screen reader solutions. In any case, if you encounter any accessibility-related issue while using WebHelp Responsive generated output, contact the Oxygen support team. All accessibility issues are treated with utmost attention.

Related Information:

- Section 508 Standards for Electronic and Information Technology

Publishing Templates

An Oxygen Publishing Template defines all aspects of the layout and styles for output obtained from the following transformation scenarios:

- WebHelp Responsive
- WebHelp Responsive with Feedback
- DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS

It is a self-contained customization package stored as a ZIP archive or folder that can easily be shared with others. It provides the primary method for customizing the output.

Some possible customization methods include:

- Add additional template resources to customize the output (such as logos, Favicons, or CSS files).
- Extend the default processing by specifying one or more XSLT extension points.
- Specify one or more transformation parameters to customize the output.
- Customize various aspects of the output through simple CSS styling.
- For WebHelp Responsive output, change the layout of the main page or topic pages by customizing which components will be displayed and where they will be positioned in the page.

The following graphics are possible sample structure for Oxygen Publishing Template packages:
Figure 372. Oxygen Publishing Template Package (WebHelp Responsive)

- publishing template
  - CSS
    - oxygen-skin.css
  - JS
  - fonts
  - HTML-Fragments
    - webhelp.fragment.footer.html
    - webhelp.fragment.before.logo_and_title.html
  - XSLT-Extensions
    - topic_page_extension.xsl
  - page-templates
    - wt_index.html
    - wt_search.html
    - wt_topic.html
    - wt_terms.html
  - template_descriptor.opt

Resources (CSS, JS, Fonts)

HTML fragments

XSLT Extensions

HTML Page Layout Files

Template Descriptor

Figure 373. Oxygen Publishing Template Package (PDF)

- publishing template
  - CSS
    - oxygen-skin.css
  - XSLT-Extensions
    - topic_page_extension.xsl
  - template_descriptor.opt

Resources (CSS)

XSLT Extensions

Template Descriptor

For information about creating and customizing publishing templates, and how to adjust the WebHelp and PDF output through CSS styling and other customization methods, watch our Webinar: Creating Custom Publishing Templates for WebHelp and PDF Output. The Webinar slides and sample project are also available from that webpage.

Related Information:

- How to Create a Publishing Template (on page 1147)

- How to Edit a Packed Publishing Template (on page 1149)

- How to Add a Publishing Template to the Publishing Templates Gallery (on page 1150)

- How to Share a Publishing Template (on page 1244)
Oxygen XML Developer plugin comes bundled with a variety of built-in templates. You can use one of them to publish your documentation or as a starting point for a new publishing template.

**Built-in Templates**

There are two categories of templates, *Tiles* and *Tree*. You can see the built-in templates in the **Templates** tab when editing a WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author. Each one also includes an **Online preview** icon in the bottom-right corner that opens a webpage in your default browser that provides a sample of how the main page will look when that particular template is used to generate the output.

**Tiles Templates**

The main page in the WebHelp output presents a tile for each main topic (chapter) of the documentation.

**Tree Templates**

The main page in the WebHelp output presents a tree-like table of contents.
Built-in Templates Location

All built-in templates are stored in the following directory: \texttt{DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/templates}.

Custom Templates

You can use a built-in template as a starting point for creating your own custom template (on page 1241). You can store all of your custom templates in a particular directory. Then, go to Options > Preferences > DITA > Publishing and add your directory to the list, and all the templates stored in that directory will be displayed in the preview pane in the transformation scenario’s Template tab along with all the built-in templates.

Sharing Publishing Template

To share a publishing template with others, following these steps:

1. Copy your template in a new folder.
2. Go to Options > Preferences > DITA > Publishing and add that new folder to the list.
3. Switch the option as the bottom of that preferences page to Project Options.
4. Share your project file (.xpr).

Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations

An Oxygen Publishing Template package for WebHelp output must contain a template descriptor file and at least one CSS file, and may contain other resources (such as graphics, XHTML files, XSLT files, etc.). All the template resources can be stored in either a ZIP archive or in a folder. It is recommended to use a ZIP archive because it is easier to share with others.
Template Descriptor File

Each publishing template includes a descriptor file that defines the meta-data associated with template. It is an XML file with certain elements that defines all the resources included in a template (such as CSS files, images, JS files, and transformation parameters).

The template descriptor file must have the .opt file extension and must be located in the template's root folder.

A template descriptor might look like this:

```xml
<publishing-template>
  <name>Flowers</name>

  <webhelp>
    <tags>
      <tag>tree</tag>
      <tag>light</tag>
    </tags>
    <preview-image file="flowers-tree.png"/>

    <!-- Resources (CSS, favicon, logo and others) -->
    <resources>
      <!-- Main CSS file -->
      <css file="flowers.css"/>

      <!-- Resources to copy to the output folder -->
      <fileset>
        <include name="resources/**/*"/>
        <exclude name="resources/**/.svn"/>
        <exclude name="resources/**/.git"/>
      </fileset>
    </resources>

    <parameters>
      <parameter name="webhelp.show.main.page.tiles" value="no"/>
      <parameter name="webhelp.show.main.page.toc" value="yes"/>
      <parameter name="webhelp.top.menu.depth" value="3"/>
    </parameters>
  </webhelp>
</publishing-template>
```
Tip: It is recommended to edit the template descriptor in Oxygen XML Editor/Author because it provides content completion and validation support.

Template Name and Description

Each template descriptor file requires a name element. This information is displayed as the name of the template in the transformation scenario dialog box.

Optionally, you can include a description and it displayed when the user hovers over the template in the transformation scenario dialog box.

```xml
<publishing-template>
    <name>Lorem Ipsum</name>
    <description>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit</description>
    ...
</publishing-template>
```

Template Author

Optionally, you can include author information in the descriptor file and it displayed when the user hovers over the template in the transformation scenario dialog box. This information might be useful if users run into an issue or have questions about a certain template.

If you include the author element, a name is required and optionally you can include email, organization, and organizationUrl information.

```xml
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <author>
        <name>John Doe</name>
        <email>jdoe@example.com</email>
        <organization>ACME</organization>
        <organizationUrl>http://www.example.com/jdoe</organizationUrl>
    </author>
    ...
</publishing-template>
```

Webhelp Element

The webhelp element contains various details that define the WebHelp Responsive output. It is a required element if you intend on using a WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario. The elements that are allowed in this webhelp section specify the template tags (on page 1110), template preview image (on page 1110), resources (on page 1111) (such as CSS, JS, fonts, logos), transformation
parameters (on page 1113), HTML fragment extensions (on page 1114) (used to add fragments to placeholders), XSLT extensions (on page 1114), or HTML page layout files (on page 1121).

```xml
<webhelp>
  <tags>
    ...
  </tags>
  <preview-image file="MyPreview.png"/>

  <resources>
    ...
  </resources>

  <html-page-layouts>
    ...
  </html-page-layouts>

  <parameters>
    ...
  </parameters>
</webhelp>
```

**Template Tags**

The `tags` section provides meta information about the template (such as layout type or color theme). Each `tag` is displayed at the top of the Templates tab window in the transformation scenario dialog box and they help the user filter and find particular templates.

```xml
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
    <tags>
      <tag>tree</tag>
      <tag>dark</tag>
    </tags>
  </webhelp>
</publishing-template>
```

**Template Preview Image**

The `preview-image` element is used to specify an image that will be displayed in the transformation scenario dialog box. It provides a visual representation of the template to help the user select the right
template. The image dimensions should be 200 x 115 pixels and the supported image formats are: JPEG, PNG, or GIF.

You can also include an online-preview-url element to specify the URL of a published sample of your template. This will display an Online preview icon in the bottom-right corner the image in the transformation scenario dialog box and if the user clicks that icon, it will open the specified URL in their default browser.

```xml
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
  ...
  <preview-image file="ashes/ashes-tree.png"/>
  <online-preview-url>https://www.example.com/samples/tiles/ashes</online-preview-url>
</publishing-template>
```

Template Resources

The resources section of the descriptor file specifies a set of resources (CSS, JS, fonts, logos, graphics, etc.) that are used to customize various components in generated output. These resources will be copied to the output folder during the transformation process. At least one CSS file must be included, while the other types of resources are optional.

This section is defined using the resources element and the types of resources that can be specified include:

- **CSS files** - One or more CSS files that will define the styles of all generated HTML pages. They are referenced using the css element.
- **Favicon** - You can specify the path to an image for the favicon associated with your website. It is referenced using the favicon element.
- **Logo** - You can specify the path to a logo image that will be displayed in the left side of the output header. It is referenced using the logo element. Optionally, you can also specify:
  - **target-url** - will redirect the user to the specified URL if they click the logo in the output.
  - **alt** - provides an alternate text for the logo image.
- **JavaScript AMD module** - The path to a JavaScript module that uses the AMD (Asynchronous Module Definition) format. This module will be loaded in the output HTML pages using the RequireJS library. It can be referenced using the js-amd-module element. For more information, see How to Insert JavaScript AMD Modules in WebHelp Responsive Output (on page 1161).
- **Additional Resources (graphics, JS, fonts)** - For other resources (such as images referenced in CSS, JS, fonts, etc.) that need to be included in the output, you need to instruct the transformation to include them in the output folder. You can specify one or more sets of additional resources to
be copied to the output folder by using the **fileset** element and you can use one or more **include** and **exclude** elements. This semantic is similar to the **ANT FileSet**.

```xml
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
  ...
  </resources>
  
  <css file="css/custom_styles.css"/>
  <css file="css/custom_fonts.css"/>
  
  <favicon file="images/favicon.png"/>
  
  <logo
    file="images/logo.png"
    target-url="http://www.example.com"
    alt="Alternate text for the logo image"/>
  
  <js-amd-module file="js/template-main.js"/>
  
  <fileset>
    <include name="common/**/*"/>
    <exclude name="**/*.svn"/>
    <exclude name="**/*.git"/>
  </fileset>
</resources>
```

**Note:** All relative paths specified in the descriptor file are relative to the template root folder.

The resources specified in the template descriptor are copied to the following output folder: 
[WebHelp_OUTPUT_DIR]/oxygen-webhelp/template. The following graphic illustrates the mapping between the template resources and the location where they will be copied to the output folder:

Figure 374. Template Resources Mapping
Transformation Parameters

You can also set one or more WebHelp transformation parameters in the descriptor file.

```xml
<parameters>
  <parameter
    name="webhelp.show.main.page.toc"
    value="yes"/>
  <parameter
    name="webhelp.top.menu.depth"
    value="3"/>
  <parameter
    name="webhelp.fragment.welcome"
    value="html-fragment/webhelp.fragment.welcome.html"
    type="filePath"/>
</parameters>
```

The following information can be specified in the parameter element:

**Parameter name**

The name of the parameter. It may be one of the WebHelp Responsive transformation parameters *(on page 1215)* or a DITA-OT HTML-based output parameter.

**Note:** It is not recommended to specify an input/output parameter in the descriptor file (such as the input Map, DITAVAL file, or temporary directory).
⚠️ **Attention:** JVM arguments like `-Xmx` cannot be specified as a transformation parameter.

### Parameter Value

The value of the parameter. It should be a relative path to the template root folder for file paths parameters.

### Parameter Type

The type of the parameter: `string` or `filepath`. The `string` value is default.

After creating a publishing template ([on page 1241](#)) and adding it to the templates gallery ([on page 1150](#)), when you select the template in the transformation scenario dialog box, the **Parameters** tab will automatically be updated to include the parameters defined in the descriptor file. These parameters are displayed in italics.

### XSLT Extension Points

The publishing templates support one or more XSLT extension points. They are helpful when you want to change the structure of the HTML pages that are primarily generated from XSLT processing. They can be specified in the descriptor file using the following structure:

```xml
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
    ...
    <xslt>
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.dita2webhelp"
        file="xsl/customDita2webhelp.xsl"/>
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage"
        file="xsl/customMainPage.xsl"/>
    </xslt>
  </webhelp>
</publishing-template>
```

For more information, and a full list of the available extension points, see: XSLT-Import and XSLT-Parameter Extension Points ([on page 1222](#)).

**Note:** You can read the value of a WebHelp transformation parameter from your XSLT extension stylesheets by using the `getParameter(param.name)` function from the [http://www.oxygenxml.com/functions](http://www.oxygenxml.com/functions) namespace.
HTML Fragment Extension Points

The HTML pages contain component placeholders that can be used to insert custom HTML fragments (either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment).

You can specify one or more HTML fragment extension points in the descriptor file using the following structure:

```xml
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
    ...
    <html-fragments>
      <fragment>
        file="html-fragments/webhelp_fragment_welcome.html"
        placeholder="webhelp.fragment.welcome"/>
      </fragment>
      <fragment>
        file="html-fragments/webhelp_fragment_footer.html"
        placeholder="webhelp.fragment.footer"/>
      </fragment>
    </html-fragments>
  </webhelp>
  ...
</publishing-template>
```

Some of these placeholders are left empty in the default output configurations, but you can use them to insert custom content.

Each placeholder has an associated parameter value in the transformation. These predefined placeholders are illustrated and described below.

Figure 375. Predefined Placeholders Diagram
Each of these placeholders can hold either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment:

1- **webhelp.fragment.head**

   In the generated output it inserts a given XHTML fragment in the `<head>` element. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

2- **webhelp.fragment.before.body**

   In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the page body. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.
3- `webhelp.fragment.before.logo_and_title`

   In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the logo and title. The value of the parameter can be either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment.

4- `webhelp.fragment.after.logo_and_title`

   In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the logo and title. The value of the parameter can be either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment.

5- `webhelp.fragment.before.top_menu`

   In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the top menu. The value of the parameter can be either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment.

6- `webhelp.fragment.after.top_menu`

   In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the top menu. The value of the parameter can be either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment.

7- `webhelp.fragment.before.main.page.search`

   In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the search field. The value of the parameter can be either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment.

8- `webhelp.fragment.welcome`

   In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment as a welcome message (or title). The value of the parameter can be either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment.

9- `webhelp.fragment.after.main.page.search`

   In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the search field. The value of the parameter can be either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment.

10- `webhelp.fragment.before.toc_or_tiles`

   In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the table of contents or tiles in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment.

11- `webhelp.fragment.after.toc_or_tiles`
In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the table of contents or tiles in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

### 12- webhelp.fragment.footer

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment as the page footer. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

### 13- webhelp.fragment.after.body

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the page body. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**Related Information:**

- How to Insert HTML Content in WebHelp Responsive Output *(on page 1156)*

---

**WebHelp Responsive Macros**

You can use the `whc:macro` layout component to specify a macro value (a variable that will be expanded when the output files are generated).

A macro has the following syntax:

```
${macro-name}
```

or

```
${macro-name(macro-parameter)}
```

A macro name can accept any alphanumeric characters, as well as the following characters: `-` (minus), `_` (underscore), `.` (dot), `:` (colon). The value of a parameter may contain any character except the `}` (close curly bracket) character.

**Implementations**

The following *macros* are supported:

- `i18n`

  For localizing a string.

```
${i18n(string.id)}
```
**param**

Returns the value of a transformation parameter.

```
${param(webhelp.show.main.page.tiles)}
```

**env**

Returns the value of an environment variable.

```
${env(JAVA_HOME)}
```

**system-property**

Returns the value of a system property.

```
${system-property(os.name)}
```

**timestamp**

Can be used to format the current date and time. Accepts a string (as a parameter) that determines how the date and time will be formatted (format string or *picture string* as it is known in the XSLT specification). The format string must comply with the *rules of the XSLT format-dateTime function specification*.

```
${timestamp([h1]:[m01] [P] [M01]/[D01]/[Y0001])}
```

**path**

Returns the path associated with the specified path ID. The following paths IDs are supported:

- `oxygen-webhelp-output-dir` - The path to the output directory. The path is relative to the current HTML file.
- `oxygen-webhelp-assets-dir` - The path to the `oxygen-webhelp` subdirectory from the output directory. The path is relative to the current HTML file.
- `oxygen-webhelp-template-dir` - The path to the template directory. The path is relative to the current HTML file.

```
${path(oxygen-webhelp-template-dir)}
```

**Note:** New paths IDs can be added by overriding the *wh-macro-custom-path* template from `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\template\macroExpander.xsl`:

```
<!-- Extension template for expanding a custom path macro. -->
<xsl:template name="wh-macro-custom-path">
```
<xsl:param name="pathId"/>
<xsl:value-of select="$pathId"/>
</xsl:template>

**map-xpath**

Can be used to execute an XPath expression over the DITA map file from the temporary directory.

ℹ️ **Tip:** Available in all template layout HTML pages.

${map-xpath(/map/title)}

**topic-xpath**

Can be used to execute an XPath expression over the current topic.

ℹ️ **Tip:** Available only in the topic HTML page template (wt_topic.html).

${topic-xpath(string-join(//shortdesc//text(), ' '))}

**oxygen-webhelp-build-number**

Returns the current WebHelp distribution ID (build number).

${oxygen-webhelp-build-number}

### Extensibility

To add new **macros**, you can add an XSLT extension to overwrite the **wh-macro-extension** template from the `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\template\macroExpander.xsl` file.

<!-- Extension template for expanding custom macro constructs -->
<xsl:template name="wh-macro-extension">
  <xsl:param name="name"/>
  <xsl:param name="params"/>
  <xsl:param name="contextNode"/>
  <xsl:param name="matchedString"/>

  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$contextNode instance of attribute()">
      <xsl:value-of select="$matchedString"/>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:message>Cannot expand macro:</xsl:message>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
The `wh-macro-extension` template has the following parameters:

- **name** - The name of the current *macro*.
- **params** - List of parameters of the current *macro* as *string* sequence. The current *macros* parsing mechanism only allows *macros* with a maximum of one parameter. Consequently, this list will contain at most one element.
- **contextNode** - The current element or attribute where the *macro* was declared.
- **matchedString** - The entire value of the matched *macro* as specified in the HTML template page.

**HTML Page Layout Files**

The HTML page layout files define the default layout of the generated pages in the output for the built-in template. There are four types of pages (*main*, *search*, *topic*, *index*) and each type of page is a simple HTML file. Each page type has various components that appear by default and each component has a corresponding element and when that element is included in the HTML file, the corresponding components will appear in the output.

**Warning**: It is no longer recommended for you to customize these files because if you upgrade to a newer version of Oxygen, those files may no longer produce the desired results and if new components have been added, you won't have access to them.

If you do choose to customize these HTML files, each type of page is defined inside an `html-page-layout-files` element in the descriptor file.
If you do use the `html-page-layout-files` element, you must specify all four types of pages (main, search, topic, index). When not specified, the files from the `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/oxygen-webhelp/page-templates` folder will be used to define the layout of each type of page.

**HTML Page Components**

Each type of page contains various components that control the layout of that page. The rendering of each component depends on the context where it is placed and its content depends on the transformed DITA map (on page 1621).

Some of the components can be used in all four types of pages, while some are only available for certain pages. For instance, the Publication Title component can be used in all pages, but the Navigation Breadcrumb component can only be used in the Topic Page.

To include a component in the output of a particular type of page, you have to reference a specific element in that particular HTML file. All the elements associated with a component should belong to the `http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components` namespace.

Every component can contain custom content or reference another component. To specify where the component content will be located in the output, you can use the `whc:component_content` element as a descendant of the component element. It can specify the location as before, after, or it can wrap the component content. The following snippet contains an example of each:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_search_input class="navbar-form wh_main_page_search"
            role="form">
    <div class="custom-content-before">Enter search terms here:</div>
    <div class="custom-wrapper">
        <whc:component_content/>
    </div>
    <div class="custom-content-after">Results will be displayed in a new window.</div>
</whc:webhelp_search_input>
```

**Main Page**

The Main Page is the home page generated in the WebHelp Responsive output. The name of the HTML file that defines this page is `wt_index.html` and it is located in the following directory: `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/oxygen-webhelp/page-templates`.

The main function of the home page is to display top-level information and provide links that help you easily navigate to any of the top-level topics of the publication. These links can be rendered in either
a *Tiles* or *Tree* style of layout. The HTML page produced for the home page also consists of various other components, such as a logo, title, menu, search field, or index link.

Figure 376. Examples of Main Page Components for a Tiles Style of Layout

![Diagram of main page components for a Tiles style of layout.](image)

poly 11, 57, 12, 109, 56, 109, 55, 62, 70, 55, 155, 55, 155, 17, 71, 18 Publication Logo *(on page 1124)*

poly 65, 86, 64, 106, 189, 106, 190, 85, 197, 56, 294, 55, 294, 18, 196, 17, 130, 86 Publication Title *(on page 1124)*

poly 61, 142, 62, 170, 726, 169, 725, 142, 231, 141, 276, 105, 349, 104, 347, 64, 246, 63, 247, 100, 205, 141 Search Input *(on page 1125)*

poly 360, 86, 360, 104, 720, 104, 720, 86, 585, 85, 503, 16, 402, 15, 403, 52 Main Menu *(on page 1125)*

poly 727, 85, 725, 104, 753, 106, 753, 86, 686, 14, 582, 14, 583, 52, 685, 52 Index Terms Link *(on page 1127)*

poly 36, 213, 37, 323, 273, 323, 273, 420, 376, 418, 375, 383, 410, 322, 752, 322, 751, 213 Topic Tiles *(on page 1126)*

poly 737, 24, 737, 50, 761, 50, 762, 105, 782, 104, 780, 50, 797, 49, 793, 22 Print Link *(on page 1125)*

Figure 377. Examples of Main Page Components for a Tree Style of Layout
The following components can be referenced in the Main Page (wt_index.html) file:

**Publication Title (webhelp_publication_title)**

This component generates the publication title in the output. To generate this component, the `webhelp_publication_title` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_publication_title`.

**Publication Logo (webhelp_logo)**
This component generates a logo image in the output. To generate this component, the `webhelp_logo` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_logo
```

In addition, you must also specify the path of the logo image in the `webhelp.logo.image` transformation parameter (in the Parameters tab in the transformation scenario). You can set the `webhelp.logo.image.target.url` parameter to generate a link to a URL when you click the logo image.

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_logo`.

**Search Input (webhelp_search_input)**

This component is used to generate the input widget associated with search function in the output. To generate this component, the `webhelp_search_input` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_search_input
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_search_input`.

**Print Link (webhelp_print_link)**

This component is used to generate a print icon that opens the print dialog box for your particular browser. To generate this component, the `webhelp_print_link` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_print_link
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_print_link`.

**Main Menu (webhelp_top_menu)**

This component generates a menu with all the documentation topics. To generate this component, the `webhelp_top_menu` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_top_menu
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_top_menu`. 
You can control the maximum level of topics that will be included in the menu using the `webhelp.top.menu.depth` transformation parameter (in the **Parameters** tab of the transformation scenario).

For information about customizing the menu, see *How to Customize the Menu (on page 1166)*.

**Main Page Topic Tiles (**webhelp_tiles**)**

This component generates the tiles section in the main page. This section will contain a tile for each root topic of the published documentation. Each topic tile has three sections that correspond to the topic title, short description, and image. To generate this component, the `webhelp_tiles` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_tiles
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_tiles`.

If you want to control the HTML structure that is generated for a WebHelp tile you can also specify the template for a tile by using the `whc:webhelp_tile` component, as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_tile class="col-md-4">
   <!-- Place holder for tile's image -->
   <whc:webhelp_tile_image/>

   <div class="wh_tile_text">
      <!-- Place holder for tile's title -->
      <whc:webhelp_tile_title/>

      <!-- Place holder for tile's shordesc -->
      <whc:webhelp_tile_shortdesc/>
   </div>
</whc:webhelp_tile>
```

For information about customizing the tiles, see *How to Configure the Tiles on the WebHelp Responsive Main Page (on page 1171)*.

**Main Page Table of Contents (**webhelp_main_page_toc**)**

This component generates a simplified Table of Contents. It is simplified because it contains only two levels from the documentation hierarchy. To generate this component,
the `webhelp_main_page_toc` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_main_page_toc
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_main_page_toc`.

**Index Terms Link (webhelp_indexterms_link)**

This component can be used to generate a link to the index terms page (`indexterms.html`). If the published documentation does not contain any index terms, then the link will not be generated. To generate this component, the `webhelp_indexterms_link` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_indexterms_link
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_indexterms_link`. This element will contain a link to the `indexterms.html` page.

**Link to Skins Resources (webhelp_skin_resources)**

This component can be used to add a link to resources for the current WebHelp skin (such as the CSS file). To generate this component, the `webhelp_skin_resources` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_skin_resources/>
```

In the output, you will find a link to the skin resources.

**Topic Page**

The *Topic Page* is the page generated for each DITA topic in the WebHelp Responsive output. The name of the HTML file that defines this page is `wt_topic.html` and it is located in the following directory: `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/oxygen-webhelp/page-templates`.

The HTML pages produced for each topic consist of the topic content along with various other additional components, such as a title, menu, navigation breadcrumb, print icon, or side table of contents.

Figure 378. Examples of Topic Page Components
poly 687, 244, 685, 440, 724, 443, 723, 480, 687, 480, 686, 519, 780, 518, 780, 480, 745, 480, 746, 442, 781, 442, 783, 246

The following components can be referenced in the Topic Page (wt_topic.html) file:

**Publication Title ( webhelp_publication_title )**

This component generates the publication title in the output. To generate this component, the `webhelp_publication_title` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_publication_title
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_publication_title`.

**Publication Logo ( webhelp_logo )**

This component generates a logo image in the output. To generate this component, the `webhelp_logo` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_logo
```

In addition, you must also specify the path of the logo image in the `webhelp.logo.image` transformation parameter (in the Parameters tab in the transformation scenario). You can set the `webhelp.logo.image.target.url` parameter to generate a link to a URL when you click the logo image.

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_logo`.

**Search Input ( webhelp_search_input )**

This component is used to generate the input widget associated with search function in the output. To generate this component, the `webhelp_search_input` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_search_input
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_search_input`.

**Topic Breadcrumb ( webhelp_breadcrumb )**

This component generates a breadcrumb that displays the path of the current topic. To generate this component, the `webhelp_breadcrumb` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_breadcrumb
```
In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_breadcrumb`. This element will contain a list with items that correspond to the topics in the path. The first item in the list has a link to the main page with the `home` class. The last item in the list corresponds to the current topic and has the `active` class set.

**Navigation Links (webhelp_navigation_links)**

This component generates navigation links to the next and previous topics. To generate this component, the `webhelp_navigation_links` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_navigation_links
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_navigation_links`. This element will contain the links to the next and previous topics.

**Print Link (webhelp_print_link)**

This component is used to generate a print icon that opens the print dialog box for your particular browser. To generate this component, the `webhelp_print_link` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_print_link
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_print_link`.

**Topic Content (webhelp_topic_content)**

This component generates the content of a topic and it represents the content of the HTML files as they are produced by the DITA-OT processor. To generate this component, the `webhelp_topic_content` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_topic_content
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_topic_content`.

**Publication TOC (webhelp_publication_toc)**

This component generates a mini table of contents for the current topic (on the left side). It will contain links to the children of current topic, its siblings, and all of its ancestors. To generate this component, the `webhelp_publication_toc` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:
In the output, you will find an element with the class: wh_publication_toc. This element will contain links to the topics that are close to the current topic.

**Topic TOC (webhelp_topic_toc)**

This component generates a topic table of contents for the current topic (on the right side) with a heading named **On this page**. It contains links to each section within the current topic and the section corresponding to the current scroll position is highlighted. The topic must contain at least two `<section>` elements and each `<section>` must have an `@id` attribute. To generate this component, the `webhelp_topic_toc` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_topic_toc
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: wh_topic_toc. This element will contain links to the topics that are close to the current topic.

**Expand/Collapse Sections (webhelp_expandCollapse_sections)**

This component is used to generate an icon that expands or collapses sections listed in the side table of contents within a topic. To generate this component, the `webhelp_expandCollapse_sections` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_expandCollapse_sections
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: webhelp_expandCollapse_sections.

**Topic Feedback (webhelp_feedback)**

This component generates a placeholder for where the comments section will be presented. To generate this component, the `webhelp_feedback` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_feedback
```

**Main Menu (webhelp_top_menu)**
This component generates a menu with all the documentation topics. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_top_menu>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```html
<whc:webhelp_top_menu
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_top_menu`.

You can control the maximum level of topics that will be included in the menu using the `webhelp.top.menu.depth` transformation parameter (in the Parameters tab of the transformation scenario).

For information about customizing the menu, see How to Customize the Menu (on page 1166).

**Index Terms Link (`webhelp_indexterms_link`)**

This component can be used to generate a link to the index terms page (`indexterms.html`). If the published documentation does not contain any index terms, then the link will not be generated. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_indexterms_link>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```html
<whc:webhelp_indexterms_link
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_indexterms_link`. This element will contain a link to the `indexterms.html` page.

**Child Links (`webhelp_child_links`)**

For all topics with subtopics (child topics), this component generates a list of links to each child topic. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_child_links>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```html
<whc:webhelp_child_links
```

**Related Links (`webhelp_related_links`)**

For all topics that contain related links, this component generates a list of related links that will appear in the output. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_related_links>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```html
<whc:webhelp_related_links
```
**Link to Skins Resources** (webhelp_skin_resources)

This component can be used to add a link to resources for the current WebHelp skin (such as the CSS file). To generate this component, the `webhelp_skin_resources` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```html
<wrhc:webhelp_skin_resources/>
```

In the output, you will find a link to the skin resources.

**Search Results Page**

The **Search Results Page** is the page generated that present search results in the WebHelp Responsive output. The name of the HTML file that defines this page is `wt_search.html` and it is located in the following directory: `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/oxygen-webhelp/page-templates`.

The HTML page that is produced consists of a search results component along with various other additional components, such as a title, menu, or index link.

Figure 379. Examples of Search Results Page Components

![Search Results Page Components Diagram](image)

Publication Logo (on page 1134)
The following components can be referenced in the `Search Results Page` (wt_search.html) file:

**Publication Title** ([webhelp_publication_title](#))

This component generates the publication title in the output. To generate this component, the `webhelp_publication_title` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_publication_title`.

**Publication Logo** ([webhelp_logo](#))

This component generates a logo image in the output. To generate this component, the `webhelp_logo` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
```

In addition, you must also specify the path of the logo image in the `webhelp.logo.image` transformation parameter (in the Parameters tab in the transformation scenario). You can set the `webhelp.logo.image.target.url` parameter to generate a link to a URL when you click the logo image.

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_logo`.

**Search Input** ([webhelp_search_input](#))

This component is used to generate the input widget associated with search function in the output. To generate this component, the `webhelp_search_input` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_search_input/>
```
In the output, you will find an element with the class: wh_search_input.

**Search Results (webhelp_search_results)**

This component is used to generate a placeholder to signal where the search results will be presented in the output. To generate this component, the webhelp_search_results element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_search_results
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: wh_search_results.

**Print Link (webhelp_print_link)**

This component is used to generate a print icon that opens the print dialog box for your particular browser. To generate this component, the webhelp_print_link element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_print_link
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: wh_print_link.

**Main Menu (webhelp_top_menu)**

This component generates a menu with all the documentation topics. To generate this component, the webhelp_top_menu element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_top_menu
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: wh_top_menu.

You can control the maximum level of topics that will be included in the menu using the webhelp.top.menu.depth transformation parameter (in the Parameters tab of the transformation scenario).

For information about customizing the menu, see How to Customize the Menu (on page 1166).

**Index Terms Link (webhelp_indexterms_link)**

This component can be used to generate a link to the index terms page (indexterms.html). If the published documentation does not contain any index terms, then the link will not be generated. To generate this component, the
The `webhelp_indexterms_link` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```html
<whc:webhelp_indexterms_link
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_indexterms_link`. This element will contain a link to the `indexterms.html` page.

**Link to Skins Resources (`webhelp_skin_resources`)**

This component can be used to add a link to resources for the current WebHelp skin (such as the CSS file). To generate this component, the `webhelp_skin_resources` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```html
<whc:webhelp_skin_resources/>
```

In the output, you will find a link to the skin resources.

**Index Terms Page**

The *Index Terms Page* is the page generated that presents index terms in the WebHelp Responsive output. The name of the HTML file that defines this page is `wt_terms.html` and it is located in the following directory: `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/oxygen-webhelp/page-templates`.

The HTML page that is produced consists of an index terms section along with various other additional components, such as a title, menu, or search field.

An alphabet that contains the first letter of the documentation index terms is generated at the top of the index page. Each letter represents a link to a specific indices section.

Figure 380. Example of Index Terms Page Components
The following components can be referenced in the Index Terms Page (wt_terms.html) file:

**Publication Title (webhelp_publication_title)**

This component generates the publication title in the output. To generate this component, the `webhelp_publication_title` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```html
<wc:webhelp_publication_title
    xmlns:wc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_publication_title`.

**Publication Logo (webhelp_logo)**

This component generates a logo image in the output. To generate this component, the `webhelp_logo` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:
In addition, you must also specify the path of the logo image in the 
webhelp.logo.image transformation parameter (in the Parameters tab in the 
transformation scenario). You can set the webhelp.logo.image.target.url parameter 
to generate a link to a URL when you click the logo image.

In the output, you will find an element with the class: wh_logo.

Search Input (webhelp_search_input)

This component is used to generate the input widget associated with search function in 
the output. To generate this component, the webhelp_search_input element must be 
specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

In the output, you will find an element with the class: wh_search_input.

Print Link (webhelp_print_link)

This component is used to generate a print icon that opens the print dialog box for your 
particular browser. To generate this component, the webhelp_print_link element must 
be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

In the output, you will find an element with the class: wh_print_link.

Main Menu (webhelp_top_menu)

This component generates a menu with all the documentation topics. To generate this 
component, the webhelp_top_menu element must be specified in the HTML file as in the 
following example:

In the output, you will find an element with the class: wh_top_menu.

You can control the maximum level of topics that will be included in the menu using 
the webhelp.top.menu.depth transformation parameter (in the Parameters tab of the 
transformation scenario).
For information about customizing the menu, see How to Customize the Menu (on page 1166).

**Index Terms Link (webhelp_indexterms_link)**

This component can be used to generate a link to the index terms page (indexterms.html). If the published documentation does not contain any index terms, then the link will not be generated. To generate this component, the `webhelp_indexterms_link` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_indexterms_link
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_indexterms_link`. This element will contain a link to the `indexterms.html` page.

**Link to Skins Resources (webhelp_skin_resources)**

This component can be used to add a link to resources for the current WebHelp skin (such as the CSS file). To generate this component, the `webhelp_skin_resources` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```xml
<whc:webhelp_skin_resources/>
```

In the output, you will find a link to the skin resources.

Combining WebHelp Responsive and PDF Customizations in a Template Package

An *Oxygen Publishing Template* package can contain both a WebHelp Responsive and PDF customization in the same template package and you can use that same template in both types of transformations. The template descriptor file can define the customization for both types by including both a `webhelp` and `pdf` element and some of the resources can be reused. Resources referenced in elements in the `webhelp` element will only be used for WebHelp transformations, and resources referenced in the elements in the `pdf` element will only be used in PDF transformations.

```xml
<publishing-template>
    <name>Flowers</name>
    <description>Flowers themed light-colored template</description>

    <webhelp>
        <tags>
            <tag>purple</tag>
            <tag>light</tag>
        </tags>
    </webhelp>
</publishing-template>
```
Generating WebHelp Responsive Output

The publishing process can be initiated from a transformation scenario within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, from a command line outside Oxygen XML Editor/Author, or from an integration server.

Running from Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To publish to the WebHelp Responsive output from a transformation scenario inside Oxygen XML Editor/Author, use one of the following procedures, depending on whether or not you want a feedback section in your output.
WebHelp Responsive Output

To publish a DITA map (on page 1621) as WebHelp Responsive output, follow these steps:

1. Select the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) action from the toolbar.
2. Select the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive scenario from the DITA Map section.
3. If you want to configure the transformation, click the Edit button.

Step Result: This opens an Edit scenario configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in the following tabs:

- Templates Tab - This tab contains a set of built-in skins that you can use for the layout of your WebHelp system output.
- Parameters Tab - This tab includes numerous transformation parameters that can be set to customize your WebHelp system output.
- Filters Tab - This tab allows you to filter certain content elements from the generated output.
- Advanced Tab - This tab allows you to specify some advanced options for the transformation scenario.
- Output Tab - This tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

4. Click Apply associated to process the transformation.

When the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation is complete, the output is automatically opened in your default browser.

WebHelp Responsive with Feedback Output

To publish a DITA map (on page 1621) as a WebHelp Responsive with Feedback system, follow these steps:

1. Select the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) action from the toolbar.
2. Select the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive with Feedback scenario from the DITA Map section.
3. If you want to configure the transformation, click the Edit button.

Step Result: This opens an Edit scenario configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in the following tabs:

- Templates Tab - This tab contains a set of built-in skins that you can use for the layout of your WebHelp system output.
- Parameters Tab - This tab includes numerous transformation parameters that can be set to customize your WebHelp system output.
- Filters Tab - This tab allows you to filter certain content elements from the generated output.
4. Click **Apply associated** to begin the transformation.
5. Enter the documentation product ID (value for the `webhelp.product.id` parameter) and the documentation version (value for the `webhelp.product.version` parameter).

When the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive with Feedback** transformation is complete, your default browser opens the `installation.html` file. This file contains information about the output location, system requirements, installation instructions, and deployment of the output. Follow the instructions to complete the system deployment *(on page 1085)*.

**Running from Command Line**

To publish to the WebHelp Responsive output from a command line outside of **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, you can use the `dita` startup script that comes bundled with **DITA-OT** distribution.

**dita Command Format**

`DITA-OT` `dita` command has the following format:

```
DITA-OT-DIR/bin/dita --format=webhelp-responsive --input=input-file options
```

where the arguments are as follows:

```
dita
```

**Windows** - The `dita.bat` script located in: `DITA-OT-DIR (on page 1622)/bin\`.

**Linux/Mac OS X** - The `dita` script file located in: `DITA-OT-DIR (on page 1622)/bin/`.

`--format = webhelp-responsive`

Specifies the output format (transformation type) for WebHelp Responsive transformation.

`--input = input-file`

The `input-file` represents the path to the DITA map that you want to process.

`options`

`options` include the following optional build parameters:

`--output =dir`

`-o dir`
Specifies the path of the output directory; the path can be absolute or relative to the current directory. By default, the output is written to the `out` subdirectory of the current directory.

```
--filter =file
```

Specifies filter file(s) used to include, exclude, or flag content.

Relative paths are resolved against the current directory and internally converted to absolute paths.

```
--temp =dir
--t dir
```

Specifies the location of the temporary directory.

```
--verbose
--v
```

Verbose logging.

```
--debug
--d
```

Debug logging.

```
--logfile =file
--l file
```

Write logging messages to a file.

```
--parameter =value
--p parameter=value
```

Specify a value for a DITA-OT or Ant build parameter.

```
--propertyfile =file
```

Use build parameters defined in the referenced `.properties` file.

Build parameters specified on the command line override those set in the `.properties` file.

**WebHelp and DITA-OT parameters**

In addition to the transformation parameters that are specific to WebHelp Responsive *(on page 1215)*, you can use the common DITA-OT transformation parameters and the HTML-based Output Parameters.
Command-Line Example

• Windows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dita.bat</td>
<td>--format=webhelp-responsive --input=c:\path\to\mySample.ditamap --output=c:\path\to\output -Dwebhelp.logo.image=myLogo.jpg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Linux/Mac OS X:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dita</td>
<td>--format=webhelp-responsive --input=/path/to/mySample.ditamap --output=/path/to/output -Dwebhelp.logo.image=myLogo.jpg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Information:

• DITA-OT Documentation: Building Output Using the dita Command

• DITA-OT Documentation: Publishing DITA Content

• DITA-OT Documentation: HTML-based output parameters

• WebHelp Responsive Output Parameters *(on page 1215)*

Running from an Integration Server

Oxygen XML Developer plugin can be processed from an automatic publishing system, such as Jenkins or Travis.

Automating DITA to WebHelp Output with Jenkins

To integrate WebHelp output with the Jenkins continuous integration tool, follow these steps:

1. Create a Maven project to incorporate the DITA-OT that already integrates Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
2. Go to the root of your Maven project and edit the pom.xml file to include the following fragment:
3. Go to the Jenkins top page and create a new Jenkins job. Configure this job to suit your particular requirements, such as the build frequency and location of the Maven project.

Automating DITA to WebHelp Output with Travis CI

This topic assumes you have a DITA project hosted on a GitHub public or private repository.

The goal of this tutorial is to help you set up a Travis continuous integration job that automatically publishes your DITA project to GitHub pages after every commit. The published website will contain a feedback link on each page that would allow a contributor to easily suggest changes to the documentation by creating a pull request on GitHub with just a few clicks.

Enable the Travis CI Build

1. Sign in to Travis CI with your GitHub account, accepting the GitHub access permissions confirmation.
2. Once you are signed in, and you have synchronized your GitHub repositories, go to your profile page and enable Travis CI for the repository you want to build.
Configure the Travis CI Build in your GitHub Project

1. Checkout your GitHub project locally.
2. Copy the .travis folder from here to the root directory of your project.
3. In the root of your GitHub project, add a file called .travis.yml with the following content:

```yaml
language: dita
install:
  - echo "Installed"
script:
  - sh .travis/publish.sh
after_success:
  - sh .travis/deploy.sh
env:
  global:
  - DITAMAP=/path/to/your/ditamap/file
  - DITAVAL=/path/to/your/ditaval/file
  - ANT_OPTS=-Xmx1024M
```

**Note:** Replace /path/to/your/ditamap/file and /path/to/your/ditaval/file with the appropriate paths to your DITA map and ditaval files.

4. Create a GitHub personal access token by following this procedure.
5. Define an environment variable in the repository settings that has the name GH_TOKEN and the value equal with the GitHub personal access token created earlier.

Register Your License Key

1. Edit your .gitignore file (or create it if it does not already exist) and add the following line:

```
licenseKey.txt
```

2. Copy your WebHelp license to the root of your GitHub project in a file called licenseKey.txt.

**Important:** The licenseKey.txt file should not be committed to GitHub as it contains a license key that is issued only to you.

3. Encrypt the license key file and add it to the .travis.yml configuration file. This way only the Travis CI server will be able to decrypt it during the build process.

Commit to GitHub

1. Commit the following files and folders and push the commit to GitHub:
git add .gitignore licenseKey.txt.enc .travis.yml .travis/
git commit -m "Set up the Travis CI publishing system"
git push

2. Create a `gh-pages` branch in your GitHub project where the WebHelp output will be published. You can follow the procedure here.

Customizing the WebHelp Responsive Output

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for customizing the WebHelp Responsive output to suit your specific needs. The WebHelp Responsive output is based upon the Bootstrap responsive front-end framework and is available for DITA document types. The WebHelp Responsive with Feedback variant allows your users to add comments to your output.

To change the overall appearance of your WebHelp Responsive output, you can use several different customization methods or a combination of methods. If you are familiar with CSS and coding, you can style your WebHelp output through your own custom stylesheets. You can also customize your output by modifying existing templates, create your own layout pages, or by configuring certain options and parameters in the transformation scenario.

This section includes topics that explain various ways to customize your WebHelp Responsive system output, such as how to configure the tiles on the main page, add logos in the title area, integrate with social media, localizing the interface, and much more.

Working with Publishing Templates

An Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1624) defines all aspects of the layout and styles of the WebHelp Responsive output. It is a self-contained customization package stored as a ZIP archive or folder that can easily be shared with others. It provides the primary method for customizing the output. The recommended method for customizing the WebHelp Responsive output is to use a custom publishing template.

This section contains topics about how to create, edit, publish, and share publishing templates.

Related Information:

Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations (on page 1107)
How to Create a Publishing Template

To create a customization, you can start from scratch or from an existing template, and then adapt it according to your needs.

Creating a Template Starting from Scratch

To create a new Oxygen Publishing Template, follow these steps:

1. Create a folder that will contain all the template files.
2. In Oxygen XML Editor/Author, open the new document wizard (use File > New or the New toolbar button), then choose the Publishing Template Descriptor template.

Figure 381. Choosing the Publishing Template Descriptor Document Template

3. Save the .opt file into your customization directory.
4. Open the .opt file in the editor and customize it to suit your needs.

Creating a Template Starting from an Existing Template

If you are using a WebHelp Responsive or DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation, the easiest way to create a new Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1624) is to select an existing template in the transformation scenario dialog box and use the Save template as button to save that template into a new template package that can be used as a starting point.

To create a new Oxygen Publishing Template, follow these steps:
1. Open the transformation scenario dialog box and select the publishing template you want to export and use as a starting point.

2. **Optional:** You can set one or more transformation parameters from the **Parameters** tab and the edited parameters will be exported along with the selected template. You will see which parameters will be exported in the dialog box that is displayed after the next step.

3. Click the **Save template as** button.

   **Step Result:** This opens a template package configuration dialog box that contains some options and displays the parameters that will be exported to your template package.

4. Specify a name for the new template.

5. **Optional:** Specify a template description.

6. **Optional:** The same publishing template package can contain both a WebHelp Responsive and PDF customization and you can use the same template in both types of transformations (**DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** or **DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS**). You can use the **Include WebHelp customization** and **Include PDF customization** options to specify whether your custom template will include both types of customizations.

7. **Optional:** For **WebHelp Responsive** customizations, you can select the **Include HTML Page Layout Files** option if you want to copy the default **HTML Page Layout Files** in your template package. They are helpful if you want to change the structure of the generated HTML pages.

8. In the **Save as** field, specify the name and path of the ZIP file where the template will be saved.

   **Step Result:** A new ZIP archive will be created on disk in the specified location with the specified name.

9. Open the `.opt` file in the editor and customize it to suit your needs.

For more information about creating and customizing publishing templates, watch our video demonstration:

[https://www.youtube.com/embed/zNmXfKWXwO8](https://www.youtube.com/embed/zNmXfKWXwO8)

**Related Information:**

- [Publishing Template Package Contents for PDF Customizations](on page 1235)
- [Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations](on page 1107)
How to Edit a Packed Publishing Template

To edit an existing *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1624)* package, follow these steps:

1. Unzip the ZIP archive associated with the *Oxygen Publishing Template* in a separate folder.
2. Link the folder associated with the template in the **Navigator** view.
3. Using the **Navigator** view, you can modify the resources (CSS, JS, fonts) within the *Oxygen Publishing Template* folder to fit your needs.
4. Open the publishing template descriptor file (.opt extension) in the editor and modify to suit your needs.
5. **Optional:** Once you finish your customization, you can archive the folder as a ZIP file.

**Related Information:**

- [Publishing Template Package Contents for PDF Customizations (on page 1235)]
- [Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations (on page 1107)]

How to Add a Publishing Template to the Publishing Templates Gallery

To add the publishing template to your templates gallery, follow these steps:

1. Open the transformation scenario dialog box by editing a WebHelp Responsive transformation.
2. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Configure Publishing Templates Gallery** link to.
   - This will open the preferences page.
3. Click the **Add** button and specify the location of your template directory.
   - Your template directory is now added to the **Additional Publishing Templates Galleries** list.
4. Click **OK** to return to the transformation scenario dialog box.
   - All the templates contained in your template directory will be displayed in the preview pane along with all the built-in templates.

How to Use a Publishing Template from a Command Line

Before you run the transformation, you need to know if the publishing template has a single or multiple template descriptor files (on page 1107). If you don't know, open the ZIP archive or folder and check for files with the .opt extension.
Using a Publishing Template with a Single Descriptor

A template with a single descriptor is used for a single customization.

To run from a command line, you need to use the `webhelp.publishing.template` parameter (on page 1215). This parameter specifies the path to the ZIP archive (or root folder) that contains your custom WebHelp Responsive template.

**Command-Line Example:**

- **Windows**:

```bash
    dita.bat
    --format=webhelp-responsive
    --input=c:\path\to\mySample.ditamap
    --output=c:\path\to\output
    -Dwebhelp.publishing.template=custom-template
```

- **Linux/Mac OS X**:

```bash
    dita
    --format=webhelp-responsive
    --input=/path/to/mySample.ditamap
    --output=/path/to/output
    -Dwebhelp.publishing.template=custom-template
```

Using a Publishing Template with Multiple Descriptors

A template with multiple descriptors contains multiple customizations.

Because the publishing template is self-contained, it is used to reuse resources that are common to multiple publications.

To run from a command line, you need to use the `webhelp.publishing.template` (on page 1215) and `webhelp.publishing.template.descriptor` (on page 1215) parameters.

The `webhelp.publishing.template` (on page 1215) parameter specifies the path to the ZIP archive (or root folder) while the `webhelp.publishing.template.descriptor` (on page 1215) parameter specifies the name of the descriptor you want to use.

**Command-Line Example:**

- **Windows**:

```bash
    dita.bat
```

- **Linux/Mac OS X**:

```bash
    dita
    --format=webhelp-responsive
    --input=/path/to/mySample.ditamap
    --output=/path/to/output
    -Dwebhelp.publishing.template=custom-template
    -Dwebhelp.publishing.template.descriptor=sampleDescriptor`
How to Share a Publishing Template

To share a publishing template with others, following these steps:

1. Copy your template in a new folder in your project.
2. Go to Options > Preferences > DITA > Publishing and add that new folder to the list.
3. Switch the option as the bottom of that preferences page to Project Options.
4. Share your project file (.xpr).

Converting Old Templates to Version 20.0 and Newer

With the introduction of the Publishing Template concept in Oxygen XML Developer plugin version 20.0, the old WebHelp output template formats (version 19.1 and older) are no longer supported. However, they can be easily converted to the new format by following this procedure:

1. Set Oxygen XML Developer plugin to point to the DITA-OT distribution that contains your old template:
   a. Go to Options > Preferences > DITA.
   b. Select Custom in the DITA Open Toolkit section and specify the DITA-OT directory that contains your old template.
2. Edit a WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.
3. Select your old custom template in the Templates tab.
4. Click on the Save Template as button, complete the required fields, and save the template.
5. Edit the WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario again.
6. This time, use the Choose custom template button to select your old template.
7. Save the scenario and use it to generate the WebHelp Responsive output.
Converting Old Templates with Custom HTML Page Layout Files to Version 21

If you have a custom Publishing Template that was created in Oxygen XML Developer plugin version 20.0 or 20.1 and it includes custom HTML page layout files, the following conversion procedure is required for the template to be compatible with Oxygen XML Developer plugin version 21.0:

1. In the Navigator view, add the root directory for your custom Publishing Template (you can use a linked folder and the easiest way to do this is to drag and drop the folder).

   **Note:** If your template is stored as a ZIP archive, you first need to unzip it.
2. Expand your template directory, right-click the **page-templates** subfolder, and select **Refactoring > XML Refactoring**.
3. In the **XML Refactoring** dialog box, scroll to the **Publishing Template** section and select **Migrate HTML Page Layout Files to v21**, then click **Next**.
4. The **Scope** should be left as **Selected project resources**.
5. You can use the **Preview** button to open a comparison panel where you can review all the changes that will be made by the refactoring operation before applying the changes.
6. Click **Finish** to perform the conversion.

Related Information:

- Converting Old Templates to Version 20.0 and Newer

Troubleshooting: Errors Encountered when Loading Templates

When the **Templates** tab of a **WebHelp Responsive** transformation scenario dialog box is opened, all templates (built-in and custom) are loaded and validated. Specifically, certain elements in the **template descriptor file** are checked for validity. If errors are encountered that prevents the template from loading, the following message will be displayed toward the bottom of the dialog box:

![Some templates could not be loaded. More details](image)
If you click the More details link, a window will open with more information about the encountered error. For example, it might offer a hint for which element is missing from the expected descriptor file structure (on page 1107).

Also, if a template could be loaded, but certain elements could not be found in the descriptor file (on page 1107), a warning icon (⚠️) will be displayed on the template's image (in the Templates tab of the transformation dialog box). For example, this happens if a valid preview-image element (on page 1110) cannot be found.

Changing the Layout and Styles

This section contains topics that explain how to customize the output using CSS, inserting HTML fragments, changing the layout of the main page, and more.

How to Use CSS Styling to Customize the Output

The most common way to customize WebHelp Responsive output is to use custom CSS styling. This method can be used to make small, simple styling changes or more advanced, precise changes. To implement the styling in your WebHelp output, you simply need to create the custom CSS file and reference it in your transformation scenario (using an Oxygen Publising Templater (on page 1624) or a transformation parameter). This custom file will be the final CSS to be applied so its content will override the styles in the other pre-existing CSS files.

Using CSS Inspector to Identify Content for Custom CSS File

You can use your browser’s CSS inspector to identify the pertinent code in the current CSS files and you can even make changes directly in the CSS inspector to test the results so that you know exactly what content to use in your custom CSS file.

In most popular browsers (such as Chrome, Firefox, and Edge), you can access the CSS inspector by using F12 or by selecting Inspect Element (or simply Inspect) from the contextual menu.

Tip: When using Safari on Mac OS X, you must first enable the Develop menu by going to the Advanced settings and selecting Show Develop menu in menu bar. Then you can select Show Web Inspector from the Develop menu or click Command + Option + l.

Create the Custom CSS

As a practical example, the following procedure would change the background color of the footer bar in the WebHelp output:

1. Use the browser’s CSS inspector to identify the current CSS code that styles the footer bar. In this particular case, the pertinent code that would be identified is:
2. If you want to test the color you want to apply as the background of this particular element, use the browser's CSS inspector to change the value of the `background-color` attribute. After you find a suitable color, copy that new code.

3. Create a custom CSS file and paste or enter the copied code. For example:

```css
.wh_footer {
    background-color: #255890;
}
```

4. Save the custom CSS file at a location of your convenience.

5. Reference the CSS file in a WebHelp Responsive transformation using an Oxygen Publishing Template (/on page 1155) or the `args.css` parameter (/on page 1156).

Referencing the CSS Using a Publishing Template

1. If you haven't already created a Publishing Template, see Working with Publishing Templates (/on page 1147).

2. Using the Navigator view, copy your custom CSS in a folder inside the publishing template root folder (for example, in the `custom_footer_template/resources` folder).

3. Open the template descriptor file (/on page 1107) associated with your publishing template and add your custom CSS in the `resources` section.

```xml
<publishing-template>
...
  <webhelp>
    ...
    <resources>
      ...
      <css file="resources/MyCustom.css"/>
    </resources>
  </webhelp>
...
</publishing-template>
```

4. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.

5. Click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.

6. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.

7. Run the transformation scenario.

**Result:** Your custom CSS will be applied as a final layer on top of any existing CSS rules and the output will reflect the changes you made.
Referencing the CSS Using the args.css Parameter

1. Edit the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario and open the Parameters tab.
2. Set the args.css parameter to the path of your custom CSS file.
3. Set the args.copycss parameter to yes to automatically copy your custom CSS in the output folder when the transformation scenario is processed.
4. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
5. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: Your custom CSS will be applied as a final layer on top of any existing CSS rules and the output will reflect the changes you made.

How to Insert HTML Content in WebHelp Responsive Output

You can add custom HTML content in the WebHelp Responsive output by inserting it in a well-formed XML file that will be referenced in the transformation (either from an Oxygen Publishing Template on page 1624 or using one of the HTML fragment parameters on page 1216). This content may include references to additional JavaScript, CSS, and other types of resources, or such resources can be inserted inline within the HTML content that is inserted in the XML file.

The XML File

There are several things to consider regarding this XML file:

- **Well-Formedness** - If the file is not a Well-formed XML document (on page 421) (or fragments are not well-formed), the transformation will fail.

  A common use case is if you want to include several script or link elements. In this case, the XML fragment has multiple root elements and to make it well-formed, you can wrap it in an html element. This element tag will be filtered out and only its children will be copied to the output documents. Similarly, you can wrap your content in head, body, html/head, or html/body elements.

- **Referencing Resources in the XML File** - You can include references to local resources (such as JavaScript or CSS files) by using the built-in ${oxygen-webhelp-output-dir} macro to specify their paths relative to the output directory:

```xml
<html>
  <script type="text/javascript" src="${oxygen-webhelp-output-dir}/js/test.js"></script>
  <link rel="stylesheet" type="text/css" href="${oxygen-webhelp-output-dir}/css/test.css" />
</html>
```
If you want that the path of your resource to be relative to the templates directory (on page 1104), you can use the `${oxygen-webhelp-template-dir}` macro.

To copy the referenced resources to the output directory, follow the procedure in: How to Copy Additional Resources to Output Directory (on page 1173).

- **Inline JavaScript or CSS Content**:

  **JavaScript**:

  ```
  <script type="text/javascript">
    /* Include JavaScript code here. */

    function myFunction() {
      return true;
    }
  </script>
  ```

  **CSS**:

  ```
  <style>
    /* Include CSS style rules here. */

    *{
      color:red
    }
  </style>
  ```

  **Note**: If you have special characters (for example, &, < ) that break the well-formedness of the XML fragment, it is important to place this content inside an XML comment:

  ```
  <script type="text/javascript">
    <!--
    /* Include JavaScript code here. */

    function myFunction() {
      return true;
    }
  --></script>
  ```
Using WebHelp Macros Inside an HTML Fragment File

The XML file can use WebHelp macros, which are variables that will be expanded when the content of the HTML fragment file will be copied in the final output.

There are two possibilities for using macros:

- **Directly in attribute values** - For example, if you want to reference a JavaScript file from the Publishing Template directory, you can use the following construct:

  ```xml
  <script type="text/javascript" src="${path(oxygen-webhelp-template-dir)}/">
  </script>
  ```

- **In text content** - Using the `<whc:macro/>` template component:

  ```xml
  <script type="text/javascript" xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components">
    var outDirPath = '${whc:macro value="${path(oxygen-webhelp-output-dir)}"}/';
    console.log("The output directory path is:", outDirPath);
  </script>
  ```

The following *macros* are supported:

- **i18n**
  
  For localizing a string.

  ```xml
  ${i18n(string.id)}
  ```

- **param**
  
  Returns the value of a transformation parameter.

  ```xml
  ${param(webhelp.show.main.page.tiles)}
  ```

- **env**
  
  Returns the value of an environment variable.

  ```xml
  ${env(JAVA_HOME)}
  ```

- **system-property**
  
  Returns the value of a system property.

  ```xml
  ${system-property(os.name)}
  ```

- **timestamp**
Can be used to format the current date and time. Accepts a string (as a parameter) that determines how the date and time will be formatted (format string or picture string as it is known in the XSLT specification). The format string must comply with the rules of the XSLT format-dateTime function specification.

```xml
${timestamp([h1]:[m01] [P] [M01]/[D01]/[Y0001])}
```

**path**

Returns the path associated with the specified path ID. The following paths IDs are supported:

- **oxygen-webhelp-output-dir** - The path to the output directory. The path is relative to the current HTML file.
- **oxygen-webhelp-assets-dir** - The path to the oxygen-webhelp subdirectory from the output directory. The path is relative to the current HTML file.
- **oxygen-webhelp-template-dir** - The path to the template directory. The path is relative to the current HTML file.

```xml
${path(oxygen-webhelp-template-dir)}
```

**Note:** New paths IDs can be added by overriding the `wh-macro-custom-path` template from `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\template\macroExpander.xsl`:

```xml
<!-- Extension template for expanding a custom path macro. -->
<xsl:template name="wh-macro-custom-path">
  <xsl:param name="pathId"/>
  <xsl:value-of select="$pathId"/>
</xsl:template>
```

**map-xpath**

Can be used to execute an XPath expression over the DITA map file from the temporary directory.

**Tip:** Available in all template layout HTML pages.

```xml
${map-xpath(/map/title)}
```

**topic-xpath**

Can be used to execute an XPath expression over the current topic.

**Tip:** Available only in the topic HTML page template (`wt_topic.html`).
Referencing the HTML fragment using a Publishing Template

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see Working with Publishing Templates (on page 1147).
2. Insert the HTML content in a well-formed XML file (for example, custom-html.html).
3. Using the Navigator view, copy your custom HTML fragment in a folder inside publishing the template root folder (for example, in the custom_footer_template/html-fragments folder).
4. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1107) associated with your publishing template and add a reference to the custom HTML fragment in the html-fragments section.

<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
    ...
    <html-fragments>
      ...
      <fragment
        file="html-fragments/custom-html.html"
        placeholder="webhelp.fragment.head"/>
    </html-fragments>
  </webhelp>
  ...
</publishing-template>

Note: If you want to insert the content in another location within the output document, you can reference the XML file from any other HTML Fragment extension points (on page 1114).

5. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.
6. Click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.
7. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
8. Run the transformation scenario.

Results: Your additional content will be included at the end of the head element of your output document.

Referencing the HTML Fragment using a Transformation Parameter

1. Insert the HTML content in a well-formed XML file.
2. Edit the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario and open the Parameters tab.
3. Edit the value of the `webhelp.fragment.head` parameter and set it to the absolute path of your XML file.

**Note:** If you want to insert the content in another location within the output document, you can reference the XML file from any other HTML Fragment extension points (on page 1114).

4. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.

5. Run the transformation scenario.

**Results:** Your additional content will be included at the end of the `head` element of your output document.

### Related Information:

- HTML Fragment Extension Points (on page 1114)
- Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations (on page 1107)

---

### How to Insert JavaScript AMD Modules in WebHelp Responsive Output

In the WebHelp Responsive output, you may want to include a JavaScript module that uses the Asynchronous Module Definition (AMD) format. Unlike the traditional JavaScript resources that are loaded using `<script>` tags, these modules are loaded using the **RequireJS** library. For the traditional JavaScript libraries, the standard procedure to contribute your script to the output would be to use an HTML fragment file as described here (on page 1156).

Although following the procedure that uses HTML fragments (on page 1156) would result in having your JS file included in the output, loading the JS code in the browser will result in an error. Since your JS module uses the **AMD API**, it cannot be loaded using a `<script>` element. For example, because many jQuery plugins use the AMD format, it will be difficult for you to use those libraries in your custom WebHelp output.

Normally, a JavaScript AMD module can be loaded in one of the following ways:

- **As a top-level script**, using the `data-main` attribute of the `<script>` element used to load the **RequireJS** library.

```html
<script data-main="js/template-main.js" src="js/require.js"></script>
```

However, since WebHelp already loads its internal JS modules using **RequireJS**, a top level script is already specified and you cannot specify another top level script in the same page. Therefore,
this approach can not be used to load your custom JS module in Oxygen XML WebHelp, leaving you with only the following option.

- **As a dependency module**, using a `require()` call from the top level (main) script or from one of its dependency modules. This means that you would have to alter one of the WebHelp core JS libraries and inject a `require()` call to load your custom module:

```javascript
require(['js/template-main.js']);
```

**Note:** Altering the WebHelp core libraries is not recommended because when you will upgrade the WebHelp plugin to a newer version, those modifications will be lost.

### Contributing JavaScript AMD Modules Using a Publishing Template

Oxygen XML WebHelp provides the ability to contribute a custom JavaScript Asynchronous Module Definition (AMD) resource in the output by referencing it in the Publishing Template descriptor file (on page 1107). This module is automatically copied to the output directory and it is automatically loaded in the output HTML pages using a `require()` call. Thus, you can include your scripts in the output without altering WebHelp's core JavaScript libraries.

This module may contain all of your custom functionality or can be used to load other AMD JavaScript modules. The additional sub-modules can be stored either locally in your custom Publishing Template or on a remote web server.

**Important:** To enable loading of a JS module you should set the `webhelp.enable.template.js.module.loading` parameter to `yes` (the default value is `no`) in the Publishing Template descriptor file or in the transformation scenario.

### The JavaScript Modules

The JS Modules sample template contains a main JavaScript module (`template-main.js`) that loads other modules stored in the template package or in a remote location on the Internet.

```javascript
define(['require'], function (require) {
    require(['./red', './italic', './tables']);
});
```

Besides the main JavaScript example, the template contains 3 other sub-modules:

- **red.js** - Changes the font color of the publication title.

```javascript
define(['jquery'], function ($) {
    $(document).ready(function () {
        // Make the title red
```
• **italic.js** - Changes the font style of your publication title.

```javascript
define(['jquery'], function ($) {
  $(document).ready(function () {
    // Make the title italic
    $('h1.wh_publication_title a').attr('style', 'color:red');
  });
});
```

• **tables.js** - Loads the DataTables jQuery plugin from a CDN.

```javascript
define(['jquery', 'https://cdn.datatables.net/1.10.16/js/jquery.dataTables.min.js'], function ($) {
  $(document).ready(function () {
    $('.table').DataTable();
  });
});
```

The JavaScript modules are stored in the Publishing Template package as follows:

```javascript
[template-dir]
[js]
  template-main.js
  italic.js
  red.js
  tables.js
```

**Note:**

- The main module should be referenced in the Publishing Template descriptor file *on page 1107* by specifying its path relative to the base directory of the template.

```xml
<js-amd-module file="js/template-main.js"/>
```

- The main JS module is copied automatically to the output directory, but the sub-modules are not. To instruct the Publishing Template engine to copy those modules to the output directory you should include a `<fileset>` section in the Publishing Template descriptor file *on page 1107*.

```xml
<fileset/>
```
<include name="js/*.js"/>
</fileset>

- The main module can reference other modules bundled in the publishing template package as follows:
  - **Relative to template directory** - Prefix their paths with the ID of the template directory: `template-base-dir` (for example: `template-base-dir/js/italic`).
  - **Relative to the name of the current JS module** - Use `./*` to prefix the paths of the referenced modules.
  - The `.js` extension **should be omitted** for local modules, because the `RequireJS` library will add it automatically.

**Related Information:**

- [How to Insert HTML Content in WebHelp Responsive Output](#) (on page 1156)

---

**How to Change Numbering Styles for Ordered Lists**

Ordered lists (`ol`) are usually numbered in XHTML output using numerals. If you want to change the numbering to alphabetical, follow these steps:

1. Define a custom `outputclass` value and set it as an attribute of the ordered list, as in the following example:

   ```xml
   <ol outputclass="number-alpha">
       <li>A</li>
       <li>B</li>
       <li>C</li>
   </ol>
   ```

2. Add the following code snippet in a custom CSS file:

   ```css
   ol.number-alpha{
       list-style-type:lower-alpha;
   }
   ```

3. Reference the CSS file in a WebHelp Responsive transformation using an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1165) or the `args.css` parameter (on page 1165).
Referencing the Custom CSS from a Publishing Template

1. If you haven't already created a Publishing Template, see Working with Publishing Templates (on page 1147).
2. Using the Navigator view, copy your custom CSS in a folder inside the publishing template root folder (for example, in the custom_footer_template/resources folder).
3. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1107) associated with your publishing template and add your custom CSS in the resources section.

```xml
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
    ...
    <resources>
      ...
      <css file="resources/MyCustom.css"/>
    </resources>
  </webhelp>
  ...
</publishing-template>
```
4. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.
5. Click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.
6. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
7. Run the transformation scenario.

**Result:** Your custom CSS will be applied as a final layer on top of any existing CSS rules and the output will reflect the changes you made.

Referencing the CSS Using the `args.css` Parameter

1. Edit the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario and open the Parameters tab.
2. Set the `args.css` parameter to the path of your custom CSS file.
3. Set the `args.copycss` parameter to `yes` to automatically copy your custom CSS in the output folder when the transformation scenario is processed.
4. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
5. Run the transformation scenario.

**Result:** Your custom CSS will be applied as a final layer on top of any existing CSS rules and the output will reflect the changes you made.

How to Show or Hide Navigation Links in Topic Pages

The topic pages (on page 1075) in WebHelp Responsive output can contain navigation links (← Previous / → Next arrows) that can be used to navigate to the previous or next topic.
How to Control Which Topic Pages Include Navigation Links

The navigation links are controlled by the `collection-type` attribute. For example, if you set `collection-type="sequence"` on a parent topic reference in your DITA map, navigation links will be generated in the output for all of its child topics (from children to parent, and from child to previous sibling and next sibling).

```xml
<map id="example_map" title="Example Map">
  <topicref href="../topics/ParentTopic.dita" collection-type="sequence">
    <topicref href="../topics/Childtopic.dita"/>
  </topicref>
</map>
```

How to Generate Navigation Links for All Topics (Ignoring the Collection Type Attribute)

You can use the `webhelp.default.collection.type.sequence` parameter in the transformation and set its value to `yes` to generate navigation links for all topics, regardless of whether or not the `collection-type` attribute is present.

How to Hide All Navigation Links

To hide all navigation links, use the `webhelp.show.navigation.links` parameter in the transformation and set its value to `no`.

How to Change the Main Page Layout

This section contains topics that explain how to customize the layout of the main page in the WebHelp Responsive output.

How to Customize the Menu

By default, the menu component is displayed in all WebHelp Responsive pages. However, you might want to hide it completely, or only display some of its menu entries.

How to Hide Some of the Menu Entries

There are two methods for doing this. One of them involves editing the `DITA map (on page 1621)` and marking the topics that do not need to be included in the menu, and another one that uses a small CSS customization.

Editing the DITA Map
To edit the metadata in the *DITA map* to control which topics will not be displayed in the menu, follow these steps:

1. Open the *DITA map* in the **Text** editing mode of Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
2. Add the following metadata information in the *topicref* element (or any of its specializations) for each topic you do not want to be displayed in the menu:

```xml
<topicmeta>
  <data name="wh-menu">
    <data name="hide" value="yes"/>
  </data>
</topicmeta>
```

### Customizing the CSS

To customize the CSS to control which topics will not be displayed in the menu, follow these steps:

1. Make sure you set an ID on the topic that you do not want to include in the menu.
2. Create a new CSS file that contains a rule that hides the menu entry generated for the topic (identified by the topic ID *growing-flowers* in the following example). The CSS file should have content that is similar to this:

   ```css
   .wh_top_menu *[data-id='growing-flowers'] {
     display: none;
   }
   ```

3. Reference the CSS file in a **WebHelp Responsive** transformation using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1155)* or the *args.css parameter (on page 1156).*

### How to Hide the Entire Menu

If you do not want to include a main menu in the pages of the WebHelp Responsive output, you can instruct the transformation scenario to skip the menu generation completely.

**Using a Publishing Template**

To hide the menu using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1104)*, follow this procedure:

1. If you haven't already created a Publishing Template, see **Working with Publishing Templates (on page 1147).**
2. Open the **template descriptor file (on page 1107)** associated with your publishing template and add the *webhelp.show.top.menu* parameter in the **parameters** section with its value set to *no*. 
3. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.
4. Click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.
5. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
6. Run the transformation scenario.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To hide the menu using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Edit the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario and choose a template.
2. Open the Parameters tab and set the webhelp.show.top.menu parameter to no.
3. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
4. Run the transformation scenario.

How to Add a Welcome Message in the WebHelp Responsive Main Page

The main page of the WebHelp Responsive output contains a set of empty placeholders (on page 1114) that can be used to display customized text fragments. These placeholders are available to you through WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario parameters. For example, the placeholder identified through the webhelp.fragment.welcome parameter displays text content above the search box in the main page.

Using a Publishing Template

To add a customized welcome message in the main page of the WebHelp Responsive output using an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1104), follow this procedure:

1. If you haven't already created a Publishing Template, see Working with Publishing Templates (on page 1147).
2. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1107) associated with your publishing template and add the webhelp.fragment.welcome parameter in the parameters section with its value set to one of the following:
   - A small well-formed XHTML fragment (such as: <i>Welcome to the User Guide</i>).
   - A path to a file that contains well-formed XHTML content.
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
    ...
    <parameters>
      <parameter name="webhelp.fragment.welcome" value="c:\myMessage.xhtml"/>
    </parameters>
  </webhelp>
</publishing-template>

3. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.
4. Click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.
5. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
6. Run the transformation scenario.

**Result:** In the WebHelp output, your custom message will be displayed above the search box in the main page.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

⚠️ **Important:** Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author requires an additional license and some additional setup:

- You must have a valid license for the Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin (https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html).
- The Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.

To add a customized welcome message in the main page of the WebHelp Responsive output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Edit the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario and choose a template.
2. Open the Parameters tab and set the webhelp.fragment.welcome parameter with its value set to one of the following:
   - A small well-formed XHTML fragment (such as: `<i>Welcome to the User Guide</i>`).
   - A path to a file that contains well-formed XHTML content.
3. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
4. Run the transformation scenario.

**Result:** In the WebHelp output, your custom message will be displayed above the search box in the main page.
How to Create a Custom Footer

The main page of the WebHelp Responsive output contains a set of empty placeholders (on page 1114) that can be used to display customized text fragments. These placeholders are available to you through WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario parameters. For example, the placeholder identified through the webhelp.fragment.footer parameter displays the custom content at the bottom of the page.

Using a Publishing Template

To create a custom footer in the WebHelp Responsive output using an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1104), follow this procedure:

1. If you haven't already created a Publishing Template, see Working with Publishing Templates (on page 1147).
2. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1107) associated with your publishing template and add the webhelp.fragment.footer parameter in the parameters section with its value set to one of the following:
   - A small well-formed XHTML fragment.
   - A path to a file that contains well-formed XHTML content.

   ```xml
   <publishing-template>
     ...
     <webhelp>
       ...
       <parameters>
         <parameter name="webhelp.fragment.footer" value="c:\myFooter.xhtml"/>
       </parameters>
     </webhelp>
   </publishing-template>
   ```

3. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.
4. Click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.
5. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
6. Run the transformation scenario.

   **Result:** In the WebHelp output, your custom footer will be displayed at the bottom of the page.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

**Important:** Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author requires an additional license and some additional setup:
• You must have a valid license for the **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** ([https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html](https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html)).

• The **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** must be installed and integrated for the DITA Open Toolkit or a DocBook XSL Distribution.

To create a custom footer in the WebHelp Responsive output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Edit the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario and choose a *template*.
2. Open the **Parameters** tab and set the `webhelp.fragment.footer` parameter with its value set to one of the following:
   - A small well-formed XHTML fragment.
   - A path to a file that contains well-formed XHTML content.
3. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
4. Run the transformation scenario.

**Result:** In the WebHelp output, your custom footer will be displayed at the bottom of the page.

### How to Configure the Tiles on the WebHelp Responsive Main Page

The *tiles* version of the main page of the WebHelp Responsive output displays a tile for each topic found on the first level of the *DITA map* ([on page 1621](#)). However, you might want to customize the way they look or even to hide some of them.

Depending on your particular setup, you can choose to customize the tiles either by setting metadata information in the *DITA map* or by customizing the CSS that is associated with the *DITA map*.

### How to Hide Some of the Tiles

If your documentation is very large or there is a large number of topics on the first level, you might want to hide some of the tiles. Also, this might be useful if you only want to display the topics in the first page that are most relevant to your intended audience.

There are two methods for doing this. One of them involves editing the *DITA map* and marking the topics that do not need to be displayed as tiles, and another one that uses a small CSS customization level to hide some tiles identified by the ID of the topic.

#### Editing the DITA Map

To edit the metadata in the *DITA map* to control which topics on the first level of the *DITA map* will not be displayed as a tile, follow these steps:

1. Open the *DITA map* in the **Text** editing mode of Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
2. Add the following metadata information in the `topicref` element (or any of its specializations) for each first-level topic that you do not want to be displayed as a tile:

```xml
     <topicmeta>
     <data name="wh-tile">
         <data name="hide" value="yes"/>
     </data>
     </topicmeta>
```

**Customizing the CSS**

To customize the CSS to control which topics on the first level of the DITA map will not be displayed as a tile, follow these steps:

1. Make sure you set an ID on the topic you want to hide.
2. Create a new CSS file that contains a rule that hides the tile generated for the topic (identified in the following example by the topic ID `growing-flowers`). The CSS file should have content that is similar to this:

```css
    .wh_tile [data-id='growing-flowers'] {
        display:none;
    }
```
3. Reference the CSS file in a WebHelp Responsive transformation using an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1155) or the `args.css` parameter (on page 1156).

**How to Add an Image to the Tiles**

There are two methods that you can use to add an image to a tile. One of them involves editing the DITA map, and the other uses a CSS customization.

**Editing the DITA Map**

To edit the metadata in the DITA map to set an image to be displayed in a tile, follow these steps:

1. Open the DITA map in the Text editing mode of Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
2. Add the following metadata information in the `topicref` element (or any of its specializations) for each first-level topic that will have an image displayed in the corresponding tile:

```xml
     <topicmeta>
     <data name="wh-tile">
         <data name="image" href="img/tile-image.png" format="png">
             <data name="attr-width" value="64"/>
             <data name="attr-height" value="64"/>
         </data>
     </data>
     </topicmeta>
```
Customizing the CSS

To customize the CSS to set an image to be displayed in a tile, follow these steps:

1. Make sure you set an ID on the topic that you want the tile include an image.
2. Create a new CSS file that contains a rule that associates an image with a specific tile. The CSS file should have content that is similar to this:

   ```html
   .wh_tile[data-id='growing-flowers'] > div {
       background-image: url('resources/flower.png');
   }
   ```

3. Reference the CSS file in a WebHelp Responsive transformation using an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1155) or the `args.css` parameter (on page 1156).

Adding Graphics and Media Resources

This section contains topics that explain how to add media resources to the published output or the output directory.

How to Copy Additional Resources to Output Directory

You can copy additional resources (such as JavaScript, CSS, or other resources) to the output directory either by using an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1624) or the `webhelp.custom.resources` parameter.

Copying Additional Resources to the Output Directory using a Publishing Template

1. If you haven't already created a Publishing Template, see Working with Publishing Templates (on page 1147).
2. Add a new `<fileset>` element in the resources section of the template descriptor file (on page 1111).

   ```xml
   <publishing-template>
       ...
   <webhelp>
   ```
3. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.

4. Click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.

5. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.

6. Run the transformation scenario.

Results: All files from the custom resources directory will be copied to the WebHelp Output Directory/oxygen-webhelp/template folder.

Copying Additional Resources to the Output Directory using a Transformation Parameter

1. Place all your resources in the same directory.

2. Edit the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario and open the Parameters tab.

3. Edit the value of the webhelp.custom.resources parameter and set it to the absolute path of the directory in step 1.

4. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.

5. Run the transformation scenario.

Results: All files from the new directory will be copied to the root of the WebHelp output directory.

How to Add a Logo Image in the Title Area

You can customize WebHelp Responsive output to include a logo in the title area. It will be displayed before the publication title. You can also specify a URL that can be used to send users to a specific website when they click the logo image.

This customization can be done using an Oxygen Publishing Template or using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author.

Using a Publishing Template

To add a logo in the title area of your WebHelp output using an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1104), follow this procedure:
1. If you haven't already created a Publishing Template, see Working with Publishing Templates (on page 1147).

2. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1107) associated with your publishing template and add the `webhelp.logo.image` parameter in the `parameters` section with its value set to path of your logo.

3. If you also want to add a link to your website when you click the logo image, set its URL in the `webhelp.logo.image.target.url` parameter.

4. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.

5. Click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.

6. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.

7. Run the transformation scenario.

**Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

To add a logo in the title area of your WebHelp output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Edit the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario and choose a template.
2. Open the Parameters tab and set the `webhelp.logo.image` parameter to the path of your logo.
3. If you also want to add a link to your website when you click the logo image, set its URL in the `webhelp.logo.image.target.url` parameter.
4. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
5. Run the transformation scenario.

**How to Add a Favicon in WebHelp Systems**

You can add a custom favicon to your WebHelp output by simply using a parameter in the transformation scenario to point to your favicon image.
This customization can be done using an *Oxygen Publishing Template* or using a transformation scenario from within *Oxygen XML Editor/Author*.

**Using a Publishing Template**

To add a **favicon** to your WebHelp output using an *Oxygen Publishing Template* (on page 1104), follow this procedure:

1. If you haven't already created a Publishing Template, see *Working with Publishing Templates* (on page 1147).
2. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1107) associated with your publishing template and add the `webhelp.favicon` parameter in the `parameters` section with its value set to path of your image.

   ```xml
   <publishing-template>
     ...
     <webhelp>
       ...
       <parameters>
         <parameter name="webhelp.favicon" value="c:\myFavicon.jpg"/>
       </parameters>
     </webhelp>
   </publishing-template>
   ```

3. Open the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation scenario.
4. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
5. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
6. Run the transformation scenario.

**Result**: Browsers that provide favicon support will display the favicon (typically in the browser's address bar, in the list of bookmarks, and in the history).

**Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

To add a **favicon** to your WebHelp output using a transformation scenario from within *Oxygen XML Editor/Author*, follow this procedure:

1. Edit the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation scenario and choose a **template**.
2. Open the **Parameters** tab and set the `webhelp.favicon` parameter to the path of your image.
3. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
4. Run the transformation scenario.
How to Add Video and Audio Objects in DITA WebHelp Output

You can insert references to video and audio media resources (such as videos, audio clips, or embedded HTML frames) in your DITA topics and then publish them to WebHelp output. The media objects can be played directly in all HTML5-based outputs, including WebHelp systems.

To add media objects in the WebHelp output generated from DITA documents, follow the procedures below.

**Adding Videos to DITA WebHelp Output**

1. Edit the DITA topic and insert a reference to the video by adding an `object` element, as in one of the following examples:

```xml
<object outputclass="video" type="video/mp4" data="MyVideo.mp4"/>
```

or, instead of the `data` attribute, you can specify the video using a parameter like this:

```xml
<object outputclass="video">
  <param name="src" value="videos/MyVideo.mp4"/>
</object>
```

2. Apply a DITA to WebHelp transformation to obtain the output.

**Result:** The transformation converts the `object` element to an HTML5 `video` element.

```xml
<video controls="controls">
  <source type="video/mp4" src="MyVideo.mp4"></source>
</video>
```

**Adding Audio Clips to DITA WebHelp Output**

1. Edit the DITA topic and insert a reference to the audio clip by adding an `object` element, as in one of the following examples:

```xml
<object outputclass="audio" type="audio/mpeg" data="MyClip.mp3"/>
```

or, instead of the `data` attribute, you can specify the video using a parameter like this:

```xml
<object outputclass="audio">
  <param name="src" value="audio/MyClip.mp3"/>
</object>
```

2. Apply a DITA to WebHelp transformation to obtain the output.

**Result:** The transformation converts the `object` element to an HTML5 `audio` element.

```xml
<video controls="controls">
  <source type="audio/mpeg" src="MyClip.mp3"></source>
</video>
```
Adding Embedded HTML Frames (such as YouTube videos) to DITA WebHelp Output

1. Edit the DITA topic and insert a reference to the embedded object by manually adding an object element, as in one of the following examples:

   <object outputclass="iframe" data="https://www.youtube.com/embed/m_vv2s5Trn4"/>

   or, instead of the data attribute, you can specify the object using a parameter like this:

   <object outputclass="iframe">
     <param name="src" value="http://www.youtube.com/embed/m_vv2s5Trn4"/>
   </object>

2. If you want the video to be allowed to play in full screen mode once the document is converted to XHTML output, also add an allowfullscreen parameter and set its value to true:

   <object outputclass="iframe" data="https://www.youtube.com/embed/m_vv2s5Trn4"/>
   <param name="allowfullscreen" value="true"/>
   </object>

3. Apply a DITA to WebHelp transformation to obtain the output.

   Result: The transformation converts the object element to an HTML5 iframe element.

   <iframe controls="controls" src="https://www.youtube.com/embed/m_vv2s5Trn4"></iframe>

How to Publish MathML Formulas when Generating WebHelp from a Command Line

The DITA-OT distribution that comes bundled with Oxygen includes some additional pre-installed DITA-OT plugins that add support for properly displaying MathML formulas in the WebHelp output. However, if you are generating your WebHelp output from a command line, MathML formulas will not be displayed properly unless you install these plugins manually.

These plugins can be downloaded and installed from DITA 1.3 Support for Open Toolkit (https://github.com/dita-community/dita13-dita-ot-1.x-support). This plugin package adds DITA 1.3 support, including MathML.
How to Add Support for MathML when Generating WebHelp from a Command Line

1. Download and unzip the DITA 1.3 Support for Open Toolkit 1.x distribution package. It includes 4 DITA-OT plugins.
2. Copy the four plugin directories to your DITA-OT-DIR/plUGINS directory.
3. In the home directory of your DITA-OT installation, run the ant -f integrator.xml command.

Searching the Output

This section contains topics that explain how to use some of the search features in WebHelp Responsive output.

How to Change Element Scoring in Search Results

The WebHelp Search feature is enhanced with a rating mechanism that computes scores for every page that matches the search criteria. HTML tag elements are assigned a scoring value and these values are evaluated for the search results. The WebHelp directory includes a properties file that defines the scoring values for tag elements and this file can be edited to customize the values according to your needs.

To edit the scoring values of HTML tag element for enhancing WebHelp search results, follow these steps:

1. Edit the scoring properties file for DITA. The properties file includes instructions and examples to help you with your customization. The file is located in: DITA-OT-DIR/plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\indexer\scoring.properties.

The values that can be edited in the scoring.properties file:

```
  h1 = 10
  h2 = 9
  h3 = 8
  h4 = 7
  h5 = 6
  h6 = 5
  b = 5
  strong = 5
  em = 3
  i = 3
  u = 3
  div.toc = -10
  title = 20
```
2. Save your changes to the file.

3. Re-run your WebHelp transformation.

### How to Exclude Certain DITA Topics from Search Results

There are several ways to exclude certain DITA resources from your WebHelp system's search results. This is useful if you have topics in your DITA map (on page 1621) structure that you do not want to be included in search results for your WebHelp system. The first method involves setting a parameter in the WebHelp transformation scenario and the second involves setting an attribute for each DITA topic reference that you want to exclude.

#### Transformation Parameter Method

To exclude DITA topics from WebHelp search results using a transformation parameter, follow these steps:

1. Create a simple text file that will contain your excluded file patterns. Each pattern must be on a new line. The patterns are considered to be relative to the output directory and they accept wildcards such as `*` (matches zero or more characters) or `?` (matches one character). For more information about the patterns, see [https://ant.apache.org/manual/dirtasks.html#patterns](https://ant.apache.org/manual/dirtasks.html#patterns).

   **Example:** Suppose that in your project, you want to exclude all files located in the `resources` directory and all files located in the `topics` directory that have a `.bak` file extension. You could create a simple text file (for example, named `exclude.properties`), and add the following lines:

   ```
   resources/*
   topics/*.bak
   ```

2. Set the `webhelp.search.custom.excludes.file` parameter to specify the path to the file that contains the excluded file patterns (for example, `exclude.properties` in step 1). The parameter can be specified in the *parameters section of the template descriptor file (on page 1113)* associated with your publishing template or in the Parameters tab of the transformation scenario dialog box in Oxygen XML Editor/Author.

3. Run the transformation.
Search Attribute Method

The WebHelp Search engine does not index DITA topics that have the `@search` attribute set to `no`.

To exclude DITA topics from WebHelp search results using this attribute, follow these steps:

1. Edit the DITA map and for any `topicref` that you want to exclude from search results, set the `search` attribute to `no`. For example:

   ```xml
   <topicref href="../topics/internal-topic1.dita" search="no"/>
   ```

2. Save your changes to the DITA map.

3. Run your WebHelp system transformation.

How to Optimize Search Results

A DITA Map WebHelp transformation scenario can be configured to produce a `sitemap.xml` file that is used by search engines to aid crawling and indexing mechanisms. A `sitemap` lists all pages of a WebHelp system and allows webmasters to provide additional information about each page, such as the date it was last updated, change frequency, and importance of each page in relation to other pages in your WebHelp deployment.

The structure of the `sitemap.xml` file looks like this:

```xml
<urlset xmlns="http://www.sitemaps.org/schemas/sitemap/0.9">
  <url>
    <loc>http://www.example.com/topics/introduction.html</loc>
    <lastmod>2014-10-24</lastmod>
    <changefreq>weekly</changefreq>
    <priority>0.5</priority>
  </url>
  <url>
    <loc>http://www.example.com/topics/care.html#care</loc>
    <lastmod>2014-10-24</lastmod>
    <changefreq>weekly</changefreq>
    <priority>0.5</priority>
  </url>
  .  .  .
</urlset>
```

Each page has a `url` element structure containing additional information, such as:
• **loc** - The URL of the page. This URL must begin with the protocol (such as `http:`), if required by your web server. It is constructed from the value of the `webhelp.sitemap.base.url` parameter from the transformation scenario and the relative path to the page (collected from the `href` attribute of a `topicref` element in the DITA map).

  **Note:** The value must have fewer than 2,048 characters.

• **lastmod** (optional) - The date when the page was last modified. The date format is `YYYY-MM-DD`.

• **changefreq** (optional) - Indicates how frequently the page is likely to change. This value provides general information to assist search engines, but may not correlate exactly to how often they crawl the page. Valid values are: `always`, `hourly`, `daily`, `weekly`, `monthly`, `yearly`, and `never`. The first time the `sitemap.xml` file is generated, the value is set based upon the value of the `webhelp.sitemap.change.frequency` parameter in the DITA WebHelp transformation scenario. You can change the value in each `url` element by editing the `sitemap.xml` file.

  **Note:** The value `always` should be used to describe documents that change each time they are accessed. The value `never` should be used to describe archived URLs.

• **priority** (optional) - The priority of this page relative to other pages on your site. Valid values range from 0.0 to 1.0. This value does not affect how your pages are compared to pages on other sites. It only lets the search engines know which pages you deem most important for the crawlers. The first time the `sitemap.xml` file is generated, the value is set based upon the value of the `webhelp.sitemap.priority` parameter in the DITA WebHelp transformation scenario. You can change the value in each `url` element by editing the `sitemap.xml` file.

### Creating and Editing the `sitemap.xml` File

Follow these steps to produce a `sitemap.xml` file for your WebHelp system, which can then be edited to fine-tune search engine optimization:

1. **Edit** the transformation scenario you currently use for obtaining your WebHelp output. This opens the **Edit DITA Scenario** dialog box.

2. Open the **Parameters** tab and set a value for the following parameters:

   • **webhelp.sitemap.base.url** - The URL of the location where your WebHelp system is deployed.

     **Note:** This parameter is required for Oxygen XML Developer plugin to generate the `sitemap.xml` file.

   • **webhelp.sitemap.change.frequency** - How frequently the WebHelp pages are likely to change (accepted values are: `always`, `hourly`, `daily`, `weekly`, `monthly`, `yearly`, and `never`).

   • **webhelp.sitemap.priority** - The priority of each page (value ranging from 0.0 to 1.0).

3. Run the transformation scenario.
4. Look for the sitemap.xml file in the transformation's output folder. Edit the file to fine-tune the parameters of each page, according to your needs.

How to Index Japanese Content

To optimize the indexing of Japanese content in WebHelp pages, the Lucene Kuromoji Japanese analyzer can be used. This analyzer is included in the Oxygen XML Editor/Author installation kit.

Using a Publishing Template

To add a logo in the title area of your WebHelp output using an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1104), follow this procedure:

1. If you haven't already created a Publishing Template, see Working with Publishing Templates (on page 1147).
2. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1107) associated with your publishing template and add the default.language parameter in the parameters section with its value set to ja-jp.

   ```xml
   <publishing-template>
     ...
     <webhelp>
       ...
       <parameters>
         <parameter name="default.language" value="ja-jp"/>
       </parameters>
     </webhelp>
   </publishing-template>
   ``

3. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.
4. Click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.
5. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
6. Run the transformation scenario.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To activate the Japanese indexing in your WebHelp output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Edit a DITA to WebHelp transformation scenario and in the Parameters tab, set the value of the default.language parameter to ja-jp.

   Note: Alternatively, you could set the xml:lang attribute on the root of the DITA map (on page 1621) and the referenced topics to ja-jp. Another alternative for DITA output is to use the

webhelp.search.japanese.dictionary parameter to specify a path to a Japanese dictionary that will be used by the Kuromoji morphological engine (note that the encoding for the dictionary must be UTF8).

2. Run the WebHelp transformation scenario to generate the output.

Localization

This section contains topics that explain how to use the localization support in WebHelp Responsive output.

How to Localize Email Notifications of Feedback System

The feedback-enabled WebHelp Responsive systems use emails to notify users when comments are posted. These emails are based on templates stored in the WebHelp directory. The default messages are in English, French, German, and Japanese. These messages are copied into the WebHelp system deployment directory during the execution of the corresponding transformation scenario.

Using a Publishing Template

To change the language of the emails for DITA Map WebHelp Responsive with Feedback output using an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1104), follow this procedure:

1. Create the following directory:

   DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\oxygen-webhelp\resources\php\templates\nl

2. Copy all English template files from DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\oxygen-webhelp\resources\php\templates\en and paste them into the directory you just created.

3. Edit the HTML files from the DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\oxygen-webhelp\resources\php\templates\nl directory and translate the content into your language.

4. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1107) associated with your publishing template and add the default.language parameter in the parameters section with its value set to the appropriate language code (for example, nl for Dutch).

Note: If you set the parameter to a value such as LanguageCode-CountryCode (for example, en-us), the transformation scenario will only use the language code.

<publishing-template>
...
<webhelp>
5. Open the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation scenario.
6. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
7. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
8. Run the transformation scenario.

**Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

To change the language of the emails for DITA Map WebHelp Responsive with Feedback output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Create the following directory:

   \DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\oxygen-webhelp
   \resources\php\templates\nl

2. Copy all English template files from \DITA-OT-DIR\plugins
   \com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\oxygen-webhelp\resources\php
   \templates\en and paste them into the directory you just created.

3. Edit the HTML files from the \DITA-OT-DIR\plugins
   \com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\oxygen-webhelp\resources\php
   \templates\nl directory and translate the content into your language.

4. Edit a **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation scenario and open the **Parameters** tab.
5. In the **Parameters** tab, look for the **default.language** parameter and set its value to the appropriate language code (for example, `nl` for Dutch).

   **Note:** If you set the parameter to a value such as **LanguageCode-CountryCode** (for example, `en-us`), the transformation scenario will only use the language code.

6. Run the transformation scenario.

**Related Information:**

- **Feedback System** *(on page 1084)*
How to Localize the Interface of WebHelp Responsive Output

Static labels used in the WebHelp output are stored in translation files that have the \textit{strings-lang1-lang2.xml} name format, where \textit{lang1} and \textit{lang2} are ISO language codes. For example, the US English labels are kept in the \textit{strings-en-us.xml} file.

These translation files are collected from two locations:

- \texttt{DITA-OT-DIR/xsl/common} folder - DITA-OT's default translations (generated text for note, fig, and table elements).
- \texttt{DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/oxygen-webhelp/resources/localization} folder - These translations are contributed by the WebHelp plugin and extend the default ones provided by DITA-OT. The labels defined in this folder take precedence over the DITA-OT defaults.

There are two major reasons you may want to modify the translation files: to modify the existing strings or to translate to a new language.

Related Information:

- How to Index Japanese Content (on page 1183)
- Customizing Generated Text

Modifying the Existing Strings

To modify the generated text for WebHelp transformations, you need to create a DITA-OT extension plugin that uses the \textit{dita.xsl.messages} extension point. The following procedure is for changing English labels, but you can adapt it for any language:

1. Create a \texttt{com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization} plugin directory inside the \texttt{DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/} location.
2. Create a \texttt{plugin.xml} file inside the \texttt{com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization} directory with the following content:

```xml
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization">
  <require plugin="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic"/>
  <require plugin="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive"/>
  <feature extension="dita.xsl.strings" file="webhelp-extension-strings.xml"/>
</plugin>
```
3. Create a `webhelp-extension-strings.xml` file with the following content:

```xml
<langlist>
  <lang xml:lang="en" filename="strings-en-us.xml"/>
  <lang xml:lang="en-us" filename="strings-en-us.xml"/>
</langlist>
```

4. Copy the strings you want to change from the translation files (on page 1185) to the `strings-en-us.xml` file. Make sure you leave the name attribute unchanged because this is the key used to look up the string. A sample content might be:

```xml
<strings xml:lang="en-US">
  <str name="Figure">Fig</str>
  <str name="Draft comment">ADDRESS THIS DRAFT COMMENT</str>
</strings>
```

5. Use the Run DITA-OT Integrator transformation scenario (on page 882) found in the DITA Map section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).

**Adding a New Language**

To add a new language for WebHelp transformations, you need to create a DITA-OT extension plugin that uses the `dita.xsl.messages` extension point. The following sample procedure is for adding translation files for the Polish language, but you can adapt it for any language:

1. Create a `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization` plugin directory inside the `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins` location.
2. Create a `plugin.xml` file inside that `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization` directory with the following content:

```xml
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization">
  <require plugin="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.classic"/>
  <require plugin="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive"/>
  <feature extension="dita.xsl.strings" file="webhelp-extension-strings.xml"/>
</plugin>
```

3. Create a `webhelp-extension-strings.xml` file with the following content:

```xml
<langlist>
  <lang xml:lang="pl" filename="strings-pl-pl.xml"/>
  <lang xml:lang="pl-PL" filename="strings-pl-pl.xml"/>
</langlist>
```
4. Copy the WebHelp strings file \(\text{DITA-OT-DIR}/\text{plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/oxygen-webhelp/resources/localization/strings-en-us.xml}\) to your plugin directory, and rename it as \(\text{strings-pl-pl.xml}\).

5. In the \(\text{strings-pl-pl.xml}\) file, change the \(\text{@xml:lang}\) attribute on the root element that conforms with the new language.

   \[
   \begin{aligned}
   \text{<strings xml:lang="pl-PL">} \\
   \text{...} \\
   \text{</strings>}
   \end{aligned}
   \]

6. Translate the content of each \(\text{<str>}\) element (make sure to leave the \(\text{name}\) attribute unchanged).

   \[
   \begin{aligned}
   \text{<strings xml:lang="pl-PL">} \\
   \text{...} \\
   \text{<str name="webhelp.content" js="true" php="false">Polish translation for "Content".</str>} \\
   \text{<str name="webhelp.search" js="true" php="false">Polish translation for "Search"</str>} \\
   \text{...} \\
   \text{</strings>}
   \end{aligned}
   \]

7. Copy the common DITA-OT strings defined in the \(\text{DITA-OT-DIR}/\text{xsl/common/strings-en-us.xml}\) file. It defines a set generated text available for HTML-based transformations (such as \text{note}, \text{fig}, and \text{table} elements). Translate the content of each \(\text{<str>}\) element.

   \[
   \begin{aligned}
   \text{<strings xml:lang="pl-PL">} \\
   \text{...} \\
   \text{<str name="webhelp.content" js="true" php="false">Polish translation for "Content".</str>} \\
   \text{<str name="webhelp.search" js="true" php="false">Polish translation for "Search"</str>} \\
   \text{...} \\
   \text{<str name="Figure">Polish translation for "Figure"</str>} \\
   \text{<str name="Table">Polish translation for "Table"</str>} \\
   \text{...} \\
   \text{</strings>}
   \end{aligned}
   \]

8. Use the Run DITA-OT Integrator transformation scenario (on page 882) found in the DITA Map section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).
How to Activate Support for Right-to-Left (RTL) Languages

To activate support for RTL (right-to-left) languages in WebHelp output, edit the DITA map (on page 1621) and set the xml:lang attribute on its root element (map). The corresponding attribute value can be set for following RTL languages:

- ar-eg - Arabic
- he-il - Hebrew
- ur-pk - Urdu

Integrating Social Media and Google Tools in the WebHelp Output

This section contains topics that explain how to integrate some of the most popular social media sites in WebHelp output.

How to Add a Facebook Like Button in WebHelp Responsive Output

It is possible to integrate Facebook into your WebHelp Responsive output and you can specify where you want the widget to appear in your WebHelp page.

Using a Publishing Template

To add a Facebook Like widget to your WebHelp output using an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1104), follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Facebook Developers website.
2. Fill in the displayed form, then click the Get Code button.
3. Copy the two code snippets and paste them into a <div> element inside an XML file called facebook-widget.xml. Make sure you follow these rules:
   - The file must be well-formed.
   - The code for each script element must be included in an XML comment.
   - The start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line.

The content of the XML file should look like this:

```xml
<div id="facebook">
  <div id="fb-root"/>
  <script>
    <!--
    (function(d, s, id) {
      var js, fjs = d.getElementsByTagName(s)[0];
      if (d.getElementById(id)) return;
      js = d.createElement(s); js.id = id;
```
4. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1107) associated with your publishing template.

5. Use one of the parameters that begin with webhelp.fragment (on page 1114) in the html-fragments section of the descriptor file. Set the value of that parameter to reference the facebook-widget.xml file that you created earlier.

6. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.

7. Click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.

8. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.

9. Run the transformation scenario.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To add a Facebook Like widget to your WebHelp output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Facebook Developers website.

2. Fill in the displayed form, then click the Get Code button.

3. Copy the two code snippets and paste them into a <div> element inside an XML file called facebook-widget.xml. Make sure you follow these rules:
   - The file must be well-formed.
   - The code for each script element must be included in an XML comment.
   - The start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line.
The content of the XML file should look like this:

```xml
<div id="facebook">
  <div id="fb-root" />
  <script>
    !--
      (function(d, s, id) {
        var js, fjs = d.getElementsByTagName(s)[0];
        if (d.getElementById(id)) return;
        js = d.createElement(s); js.id = id;
        js.src = "//connect.facebook.net/en_US/sdk.js#xfbml=1&version=v2.0";
        fjs.parentNode.insertBefore(js, fjs);
      })(document, 'script', 'facebook-jssdk');
    -->
  </script>
  <div class="fb-like" data-layout="standard" data-action="like"
    data-show-faces="true" data-share="true"/>
</div>
```

4. Edit the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario and choose a template.
5. Switch to the Parameters tab. Depending on where you want to display the button, edit one of the parameters that begin with webhelp.fragment (on page 1114). Set that parameter to reference the facebook-widget.xml file that you created earlier.
6. Click Ok and run the transformation scenario.

How to Add a Google+ Button in WebHelp Responsive Output

It is possible to integrate Google into your WebHelp Responsive output and you can specify where you want the widget to appear in your WebHelp page.

Using a Publishing Template

To add a Google+ widget to your WebHelp Responsive output using an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1104), follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Google Developers website.
2. Fill in the displayed form. The preview area on the right side displays the code and a preview of the widget.
3. Copy the code snippet displayed in the preview area and paste it into a div element inside an XML file called google-plus-button.xml. Make sure that the content of the file is well-formed. The content of the XML file should look like this:
Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To add a Google+ widget to your WebHelp Responsive output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Google Developers website.
2. Fill in the displayed form. The preview area on the right side displays the code and a preview of the widget.
3. Copy the code snippet displayed in the preview area and paste it into a `div` element inside an XML file called `google-plus-button.xml`. Make sure that the content of the file is well-formed. The content of the XML file should look like this:

   `<div id="google-plus">
      <!-- Place this tag in your head or just before your close body tag. -->
      <script src="https://apis.google.com/js/platform.js" async defer></script>
      <!-- Place this tag where you want the +1 button to render. -->
      <div class="g-plusone" data-annotation="inline" data-width="300"></div>
   </div>`
4. Edit the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario and choose a template.
5. Switch to the Parameters tab. Depending on where you want to display the button, edit one of the parameters that begin with webhelp.fragment (on page 1114). Set that parameter to reference the google-plus-button.xml file that you created earlier.
6. Click Ok and run the transformation scenario.

How to Add Tweet Button in WebHelp Responsive Output

It is possible to integrate Twitter into your WebHelp Responsive output and you can specify where you want the widget to appear in your WebHelp page.

Using a Publishing Template

To add a Twitter Tweet widget to your WebHelp Responsive output using an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1104), follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Tweet button generator page.
2. Fill in the displayed form. The Preview and code area displays the code that you will need.
3. Copy the code snippet displayed in the Preview and code area and paste it into a div element inside an XML file called tweet-button.xml. Make sure you follow these rules:
   • The file must be well-formed.
   • The code for each script element must be included in an XML comment.
   • The start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line.

The content of the XML file should look like this:

```xml
<!-- Place this tag in your head or just before your close body tag. -->
<script src="https://apis.google.com/js/platform.js" async defer></script>

<!-- Place this tag where you want the +1 button to render. -->
<div class="g-plusone" data-annotation="inline" data-width="300"></div>
</div>
```
4. Open the `template descriptor file` *(on page 1107)* associated with your publishing template.

5. Use one of the parameters that begin with `webhelp.fragment` *(on page 1114)* in the `html-fragments` section of the descriptor file. Set the value of that parameter to reference the `tweet-button.xml` file that you created earlier.

```xml
<webhelp>
  ...
  <html-fragments>
    <fragment file="HTML-fragments/tweet-button.xml" placeholder="webhelp.fragment.after.toc_or_tiles"/>
  </html-fragments>
</webhelp>
```

6. Open the `DITA Map WebHelp Responsive` transformation scenario.

7. Click the `Choose Custom Publishing Template` link and select your template.

8. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.

9. Run the transformation scenario.

**Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

To add a Twitter Tweet widget to your WebHelp Responsive output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the `Tweet button generator` page.
2. Fill in the displayed form. The `Preview and code` area displays the code that you will need.
3. Copy the code snippet displayed in the `Preview and code` area and paste it into a `div` element inside an XML file called `tweet-button.xml`. Make sure you follow these rules:
   - The file must be well-formed.

The code for each `script` element must be included in an XML comment.

The start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line.

The content of the XML file should look like this:

```xml
<div id="twitter">
  <a href="https://twitter.com/share" class="twitter-share-button">Tweet</a>
  <script>
    <!--
    !function (d, s, id) {
      var js, fjs = d.getElementsByTagName(s)[0], p = /^http:/.test(d.location) ? 'http' : 'https';
      if (! d.getElementById(id)) {
        js = d.createElement(s);
        js.id = id;
        js.src = p + '//platform.twitter.com/widgets.js';
        fjs.parentNode.insertBefore(js, fjs);
      }
    }
    (document, 'script', 'twitter-wjs');
    -->
  </script>
</div>
```

4. Edit the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation scenario and choose a template.

5. Switch to the **Parameters** tab. Depending on where you want to display the button, edit one of the parameters that begin with `webhelp.fragment` (on page 1114). Set that parameter to reference the `tweet-button.xml` file that you created earlier.

6. Click **Ok** and run the transformation scenario.

**How to Integrate Google Analytics in WebHelp Responsive Output**

You can use **Google Analytics** to track and report site data for your **WebHelp Responsive** output.

**Using a Publishing Template**

To integrate **Google Analytics** into your WebHelp Responsive output using an **Oxygen Publishing Template** (on page 1104), follow this procedure:

1. Create a new **Google Analytics account** (if you do not already have one) and log on.
2. Choose the Analytics solution that best fits the needs of your website.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to obtain a Tracking Code that contains your Tracking ID. A Tracking Code looks like this:

```html
<script>
(function(i,s,o,r,a,m){i['GoogleAnalyticsObject']=r;i[r]=i[r]||function(){
(i[r].q=i[r].q||[]).push(arguments)},i[r].l=1*new Date();a=s.createElement(o),m=s.getElementsByTagName(o)[0];a.async=1;a.src=g;m.parentNode.insertBefore(a,m)
}(window,document,'script','//www.google-analytics.com/analytics.js','ga'));

ga('create', 'UA-XXXXXXXX-X', 'auto');
ga('send', 'pageview');
</script>
```

4. Save the Tracking Code (obtained in the previous step) in a new XML file called `googleAnalytics.xml`. Note that the file should only contain the tracking code.

5. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1107) associated with your publishing template.

6. Use the `webhelp.fragment.after.body` parameter (on page 1216) in the `html-fragments` section of the descriptor file. Set the value of that parameter to reference the `googleAnalytics.xml` file that you created earlier. The content of this file will be copied at the end of all generated output pages, right before the ending `<body>` element. This ensures that the page is loaded before the Google Analytics servers are contacted, thus reducing page loading time.

```xml
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
    ...
    <html-fragments>
      <fragment
        file="HTML-fragments/googleAnalytics.xml"
        placeholder="webhelp.fragment.after.body"/>
    </html-fragments>
  </webhelp>
</publishing-template>
```

7. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.

8. Click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.

9. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.

10. Run the transformation scenario.

**Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

To integrate Google Analytics into your WebHelp Responsive output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:
1. Create a new Google Analytics account (if you do not already have one) and log on.
2. Choose the Analytics solution that best fits the needs of your website.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to obtain a Tracking Code that contains your Tracking ID. A Tracking Code looks like this:

```html
<script>
(function(i,s,o,r,a,m){i['GoogleAnalyticsObject']=r;i[r]=i[r]||function(){
(i[r].q=i[r].q||[]).push(arguments)},i[r].l=1*new Date();a=s.createElement(o),
m=s.getElementsByTagName(o)[0];a.async=1;a.src=g;m.parentNode.insertBefore(a,m)
})(window,document,'script','//www.google-analytics.com/analytics.js','ga');

ga('create', 'UA-XXXXXXXX-X', 'auto');
ga('send', 'pageview');
</script>
```

4. Save the Tracking Code (obtained in the previous step) in a new XML file called googleAnalytics.xml. Note that the file should only contain the tracking code.
5. Edit the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario and choose a template.
6. Switch to the Parameters tab. Edit the webhelp.fragment.after.body parameter (on page 1216) and set it to reference the googleAnalytics.xml file that you created earlier. The content of this file will be copied at the end of all generated output pages, right before the ending </body> element. This ensures that the page is loaded before the Google Analytics servers are contacted, thus reducing page loading time.
7. Click Ok and run the transformation scenario.

How to Integrate Google Search in WebHelp Responsive Output

It is possible to integrate the Google Search Engine into your WebHelp Responsive output and you can specify where you want the results to appear in your WebHelp page.

Using a Publishing Template

To integrate the Google Search Engine into your WebHelp Responsive output using an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1104), follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Google Custom Search Engine page using your Google account.
2. Select the Create a custom search engine button.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to create a search engine for your site. At the end of this process you should obtain a code snippet that looks like this:

```html
<script>
(function() {
```
4. Save the script into a well-formed HTML file called googlecse.html.

5. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1107) associated with your publishing template and add the webhelp.google.search.script parameter in the parameters section with its value set to reference the googlecse.html file that you created earlier.

6. You can also use the webhelp.google.search.results parameter to choose where to display the search results.
   a. Create an HTML file with the following content: `<div class="gcse-searchresults-only" data-autoSearchOnLoad="true" data-queryParameterName="searchQuery"></div>` (you must use the HTML5 version for the GCSE). For more information about other supported attributes, see Google Custom Search: Supported Attributes.
   b. Set the value of the webhelp.google.search.results parameter to the file path of the file you just created. If this parameter is not specified, the following code is used:

7. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.

8. Click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.

9. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.

10. Run the transformation scenario.
Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To integrate the Google Search Engine into your WebHelp Responsive output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Google Custom Search Engine page using your Google account.
2. Select the Create a custom search engine button.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to create a search engine for your site. At the end of this process you should obtain a code snippet that looks like this:

   ```html
   (function() {
       var cx = '000888210889775888983:8mn4x_mf-yg';
       var gcse = document.createElement('script');
       gcse.type = 'text/javascript';
       gcse.async = true;
       var s = document.getElementsByTagName('script')[0];
       s.parentNode.insertBefore(gcse, s);
   }());
   ```

4. Save the script into a well-formed HTML file called googlecse.html.
5. Edit the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario and choose a template.
6. Switch to the Parameters tab and edit the webhelp.google.search.script parameter to reference the googlecse.html file that you created earlier.
7. You can also use the webhelp.google.search.results parameter to choose where to display the search results.
   a. Create an HTML file with the following content:

   ```html
   <div class="gcse-searchresults-only" data-autoSearchOnLoad="true" data-queryParameterName="searchQuery"></div>
   ```
   (you must use the HTML5 version for the GCSE). For more information about other supported attributes, see Google Custom Search: Supported Attributes.
   b. Set the value of the webhelp.google.search.results parameter to the file path of the file you just created. If this parameter is not specified, the following code is used:

   ```html
   <div class="gcse-searchresults-only" data-autoSearchOnLoad="true" data-queryParameterName="searchQuery"></div>
   ```

8. Click Ok and run the transformation scenario.
XSLT Extensions for WebHelp Responsive Transformations

Since WebHelp Responsive output is primarily obtained by running XSLT transformations over the DITA input files, one customization method would be to override the default XSLT templates that are used by the WebHelp Responsive transformations.

There are two methods available to override the XSLT stylesheets implied by the WebHelp Responsive transformation.

• Use XSLT-import extension points from an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1624).

  Note: Use this method if you want to affect only the transformations that use this publishing template.

• Use XSLT-import extension points from a DITA-OT extension plugin.

  Note: This method will affect all the outputs generated with the WebHelp system.

Related Information:

• WebHelp Responsive XSLT-Import and XSLT-Parameter Extension Points (on page 1222)

How to Use XSLT Extension Points from a Publishing Template

This example demonstrates how to use WebHelp XSLT-import Extension Points from an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1233).

Use Case 1: Add Copyright Information Extracted from a DITA Bookmap

Suppose you want to customize the WebHelp Responsive main page by adding information about the legal rights associated with the book in the footer (for example, copyright dates and owner). This information is specified in the bookmap:

```xml
<bookrights>
  <copyrfirst>
    <year>2002</year>
  </copyrfirst>
  <copyrlast>
    <year>2017</year>
  </copyrlast>
  <bookowner>
    <organization>SyncRO Soft SRL</organization>
  </bookowner>
</bookrights>
```
The XSLT stylesheet that generates the main page is located in: `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\mainFiles\createMainPage.xsl`. This XSLT stylesheet declares the `copy_template` mode that processes the main page template (on page 1122) to expand its components. The main page template declares a component for the footer section that looks like this:

```
<div class="footer-container text-center">
  <whc:include_html href="${webhelp.fragment.footer}"/>
</div>
```

In the following example, the extension stylesheet will add a template that matches this component. It applies the default processing and adds the copyright information at the end.

```
<xsl:template match="*:div[contains(@class, 'footer-container')]" mode="copy_template">
  <!-- Apply the default processing -->
  <xsl:next-match/>

  <!-- Add a div containing the copyright information -->
  <div class="copyright_info">
    <xsl:choose>
      <!-- Adds the start-end years if they are defined -->
      <xsl:when test="exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst) and exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrlast)">
        <span class="copyright_years">
          ©<xsl:value-of select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst"/>
          -
          <xsl:value-of select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrlast"/>
        </span>
      </xsl:when>
    </xsl:choose>
  </div>
</xsl:template>
```
To add this functionality using an Oxygen Publishing Template, follow these steps:

1. If you haven't already created a Publishing Template, see Working with Publishing Templates (on page 1147).

2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the Navigator view.
   You should have the custom_footer_template folder linked in your project.

3. Using the Navigator view, create an xslt folder inside the project root folder.
   You should have the custom_footer_template/xsl folder in your project.

4. Create your customization stylesheet (for example, custom_mainpage.xsl) in the custom_footer_template/xsl folder. Edit it to override the template that produces the footer section:

```xml
<xsl:template match="*:div[contains(@class, 'footer-container')]" mode="copy_template">
  <!-- Apply the default processing -->
  <xsl:next-match/>

  <!-- Add a div containing the copyright information -->
</xsl:template>
```
5. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 1107)* associated with your publishing template and set the XSLT stylesheet created in previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage` XSLT extension point.
...<webhelp>
  ...
  <xslt>
    <extension
      file="xslt/customMainPage.xsl"
      id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage"/>
  </xslt>

6. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.

7. Click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.

8. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.

9. Run the transformation scenario.

Use Case 2: Add generation time in the output footer

Another possible customization for the main page is to add the generation time in its footer. A transformation parameter is used to control whether or not this customization is active.

Figure 383. Generation time added in the WebHelp footer

To add this functionality, follow these steps:

1. In the customization stylesheet that you just created (for example, custom_mainpage.xsl), modify the template by adding the following XSLT code at the end.

```xml
<xsl:if test="oxyf:getParameter('webhelp.footer.add.generation.time') = 'yes'">
  <div class="generation_time">
    Generation date: <xsl:value-of
      select="format-dateTime(
        current-dateTime(),
        '[h1]:[m01] [P] on [M01]/[D01]/[Y0001].'"/>
  </div>
</xsl:if>
```
Note: You can read the value of a WebHelp transformation parameter from your XSLT extension stylesheets by using the `getParameter(param.name)` function from the `http://www.oxygenxml.com/functions` namespace.

2. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1107) associated with your publishing template and set the `webhelp.footer.add.generation.time` parameter to the default value.

```xml
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <parameters>
            <parameter
                name="webhelp.footer.add.generation.time"
                value="yes"/>
        </parameters>
    </webhelp>
    ...
</publishing-template>
```

3. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.

4. In the Parameters tab, you can change the value of the `webhelp.footer.add.generation.time` parameter.

5. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.

6. Run the transformation scenario.

How to Use XSLT Extension Points from a DITA-OT Plugin

In this example, the main page footer is modified by adding copyright information extracted from the DITA bookmap or by adding the output generation time. The first use-case uses an XSLT-Import extension point while the second uses an XSLT-Parameter extension point.

Note: This customization is available as a GitHub project at: https://github.com/oxygenxml/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive.custom.footer.

Use Case 1: WebHelp XSLT-Import extension point to add copyright information extracted from a DITA Bookmap

Suppose you want to customize the WebHelp Responsive main page by adding information about the legal rights associated with the book in the footer (for example, copyright dates and owner). This information is specified in the bookmap:

```xml
<bookrights>
    <copyrfirst>
The XSLT stylesheet that generates the main page is located in: `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\mainFiles\createMainPage.xsl`. This XSLT stylesheet declares the `copy_template` mode that processes the main page template to expand its components. The main page template (on page 1122) declares a component for the footer section that looks like this:

```xml
<div class="footer-container text-center">
  <whc:include_html href="${webhelp.fragment.footer}"/>
</div>
```

In the following example, the extension stylesheet will add a template that matches this component. It applies the default processing and adds the copyright information at the end.

```xml
<xsl:template match="*:div[contains(@class, 'footer-container')]" mode="copy_template">
  <!-- Apply the default processing -->
  <xsl:next-match/>

  <!-- Add a div containing the copyright information -->
  <div class="copyright_info">
    <xsl:choose>
      <!-- Adds the start-end years if they are defined -->
      <xsl:when test="exists($toc/*/topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst) and exists($toc/*/topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrlast)">
      
```
You can implement this functionality with a WebHelp extension plugin that uses the
com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage extension point (on page 1223). This extension point allows you to specify a customization stylesheet that will override the template described above.

To add this functionality as a DITA-OT plugin, follow these steps:

1. In the DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\ folder, create a folder for this plugin (for example, com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive.custom.footer).

2. Create a plugin.xml file (in the folder you created in step 1) that specifies the extension point and your customization stylesheet. For example:

```xml
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive.custom.footer">
  <feature extension="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage"
    file="custom_mainpage.xsl"/>
</plugin>
```
3. Create your customization stylesheet (for example, custom_mainpage.xsl), and edit it to override the template that produces the footer section:

```xml
<xsl:template match="*:div[contains(@class, 'footer-container')]" mode="copy_template">
  <!-- Apply the default processing -->
  <xsl:next-match/>
</xsl:template>

<!-- Add a div containing the copyright information -->

<div class="copyright_info">
  <xsl:choose>
    <!-- Adds the start-end years if they are defined -->
    <xsl:when test="exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst) and exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrlast)">
      <span class="copyright_years">
        ©<xsl:value-of select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst"/>
        -<xsl:value-of select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrlast"/>
      </span>
    </xsl:when>
    <!-- Adds only the first year if last is not defined. -->
    <xsl:when test="exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst)">
      <span class="copyright_years">
        ©<xsl:value-of select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst"/>
      </span>
    </xsl:when>
  </xsl:choose>
  <xsl:if test="exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:bookowner/*:organization)">
    <span class="organization">
      <xsl:text> </xsl:text><xsl:value-of select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:bookowner/*:organization"/>
    </span>
  </xsl:if>
  . All rights reserved.<xsl:text/>
</div>
```
4. Use the Run DITA-OT Integrator transformation scenario (on page 882) found in the DITA Map section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box (on page 976).

5. Run a DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario to obtain the customized side TOC.

Use-Case 2: WebHelp XSLT-Parameter extension point to control if generation time is displayed in the output

Another possible customization for the main page is to add the generation time in its footer. You can use an XSLT-Parameter extension point to control whether or note this customization is active. In this case, you can use the com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage.param extension point (on page 1224).

Figure 385. Generation time added in the WebHelp footer

To add this functionality, follow these steps:

1. Create a DITA-OT plugin structure by following the first 3 steps in the procedure above (on page 1205).

2. In the customization stylesheet that you just created (for example, custom_mainpage.xsl), declare webhelp.footer.add.generation.time as a global parameter and modify the template by adding the following XSLT code at the end.

```xslt
<xsl:if test="$webhelp.footer.add.generation.time = 'yes'">
  <div class="generation_time">
    Generation date: <xsl:value-of select="format-dateTime(
      current-dateTime(), '[h1]:[m01] [P] on [M01]/[D01]/[Y0001].' )"/>
  </div>
</xsl:if>
</xsl:template>
```

3. Edit the plugin.xml file to specify the com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage.param extension point and a custom parameter file by adding the following line:

```xml
<feature extension="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage.param" file="params.xml"/>
```

4. Create a custom parameter file (for example, params.xml). It should look like this:
5. Use the **Run DITA-OT Integrator** transformation scenario *(on page 882)* found in the **DITA Map** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 976).*

6. Edit a **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation scenario and in the **Parameters** tab *(on page )*, specify the desired value *(yes or no)* for your custom parameter *(webhelp.footer.add.generation.time).*

7. Run the transformation scenario.

Related Information:

- [DITA-OT] XSLT-Import Extension Points
- [DITA-OT] XSLT-Parameter Extension Points

Miscellaneous Customization Topics

This section contains miscellaneous topics about how to customize the WebHelp Responsive output.

**How to Add an Edit Link to Launch Oxygen XML Web Author**

You can embed *Edit* links in the DITA WebHelp Responsive output that will automatically launch a particular document in Oxygen XML Web Author. A reviewer can then simply click the link and they will be redirected to the Oxygen XML Web Author editing page with that particular file open and editable.

**Using a Publishing Template**

To embed an *Edit* link in the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive output using an **Oxygen Publishing Template** *(on page 1104)*, follow this procedure:

1. If you haven't already created a Publishing Template, see **Working with Publishing Templates** *(on page 1147).*

2. Open the **template descriptor file** *(on page 1107)* associated with your publishing template and add the following parameters with their values set to the URLs:

   - **editlink.remote.ditamap.url** - The URL of the DITA Map suitable for opening in Oxygen XML Web Author.
- **editlink.web.author.url** - The URL of the Oxygen XML Web Author installation.

```xml
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
    ...
    <parameters>
      <parameter name="editlink.remote.ditamap.url" value="webdav-https://dav.box.com/dav/my.ditamap"/>
      <parameter name="editlink.web.author.url" value="https://www.oxygenxml.com/webauthor.html"/>
    </parameters>
  </webhelp>
</publishing-template>
```

3. Open the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation scenario.
4. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
5. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
6. Run the transformation scenario.

**Result:** In the WebHelp output, all topics will have an **Edit** link to the right side of the title and clicking the link will launch that particular document in Oxygen XML Web Author.

For example:

- **Windows**:

  ```bash
  
  ```

- **Mac OS X/ Linux**:

  ```bash
  
  ```

**Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

To embed an **Edit** link in the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Edit a **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation scenario and open the **Parameters** tab.
2. Set values for the following parameters:
• **editlink.remote.ditamap.url** - The URL of the DITA Map suitable for opening in Oxygen XML Web Author.
• **editlink.web.author.url** - The URL of the Oxygen XML Web Author installation.

3. Run the transformation scenario.

**Result:** In the WebHelp output, all topics will have an **Edit** link to the right side of the title and clicking the link will launch that particular document in Oxygen XML Web Author.


**Related Information:**

• [Web Author Customization Guide: Embedding an Edit Link that will Launch Web Author](https://www.oxygenxml.com/doc/ug-waCustom/topics/webauthor-integrate-embedded-launch.html)

**How to Flag DITA Content in WebHelp Output**

Flagging content in WebHelp output involves defining a set of images that will be used for marking content across your information set.

To flag DITA content, you need to create a filter file that defines properties that will be applied on elements to be flagged. Generally, flagging is supported for **block elements** ([on page 1619](#)) (such as paragraphs), but not for phrase-level elements within a paragraph. This ensures that the images that will flag the content are easily scanned by the reader, instead of being buried in the text.

**Using a Publishing Template**

To flag content in DITA Map to WebHelp output using an **Oxygen Publishing Template** ([on page 1104](#)), follow this procedure:

1. Create a DITA filter file (DITAVAL) and add it in a directory of your choice (for example, named `myFile.ditaval`).
2. Define the property for the elements you want to be flagged. For example, if you want to flag any element that has the **audience** attribute set to **programmer**, the content of the DITAVAL file should look like this:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<val>
  <prop att="audience" val="programmer" action="flag"
    img="D:\resource\delta.gif" alt="sample alt text"/>
</val>
```
Note that for an element to be flagged, at least one attribute-value pair needs to have a property declared in the DITAVAL file.

3. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1107) associated with your publishing template and add the `args.filter` parameter in the `parameters` section with its value set to the path of the DITAVAL file you created.

```xml
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
    ...
    <parameters>
      <parameter name="args.filter" value="resources/myFile.ditaval" />
    </parameters>
  </webhelp>
</publishing-template>
```

4. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.

5. Click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.

6. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.

7. Run the transformation scenario.

**Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

To flag content in the DITA Map to WebHelp output using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Create a DITA filter file (DITAVAL) and add it in a directory of your choice (for example, named `myFile.ditaval`.

2. Define the property for the elements you want to be flagged. For example, if you want to flag any element that has the `audience` attribute set to `programmer`, the content of the DITAVAL file should look like this:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<val>
  <prop att="audience" val="programmer" action="flag"
  img="D:\resource\delta.gif" alt="sample alt text"/>
</val>
```

Note that for an element to be flagged, at least one attribute-value pair needs to have a property declared in the DITAVAL file.

3. Edit a DITA Map to WebHelp transformation scenario.

4. Specify the DITAVAL file in the Filters tab (with the Use DITAVAL File option).

5. Run the transformation scenario.
How to Deploy the Output on a SharePoint Site

Since WebHelp output must be published locally, on the same machine where the WebHelp process is running, to publish your files directly to a SharePoint library you need to map a network drive to connect to SharePoint and change your file extensions to .aspx, as described in the steps below.

Using a Script Outside of Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To publish WebHelp Responsive output on a SharePoint site using an Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1104), follow this procedure:

1. Map a network drive to connect to your SharePoint library. For more information, see: https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/2616712.
2. To allow browsers to open your published files (rather than downloading them), you need to change the file extensions from .html to .aspx.
3. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1107) associated with your publishing template and add the args.outext parameter in the parameters section with its value set to .aspx.

```xml
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
    ...
    <parameters>
      <parameter name="args.outext" value=".aspx"/>
    </parameters>
  </webhelp>
</publishing-template>
```

4. Open the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario.
5. Click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.
6. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
7. Run the transformation scenario.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To publish WebHelp Responsive output on a SharePoint site using a transformation scenario from within Oxygen XML Editor/Author, follow this procedure:

1. Map a network drive to connect to your SharePoint library. For more information, see: https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/2616712.
2. To allow browsers to open your published files (rather than downloading them), you need to change the file extensions from .html to .aspx. Fortunately, this can be done in the transformation.
a. Edit the WebHelp transformation scenario and open the **Parameters** tab.
b. Set the `args.outext` parameter to `.aspx`.
c. Run the transformation scenario.

WebHelp Responsive Transformation Parameters

In addition to the common DITA-OT transformation parameters and the HTML-based Output Parameters, there are numerous other supported parameters that are specific to the WebHelp Responsive output.

**Publishing Template Parameters**

`webhelp.publishing.template`

Specifies the path to the ZIP archive (or root folder) that contains your custom WebHelp Responsive template.

**Note:** The built-in templates are stored in the `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/templates` folder.

**Note:** Relative paths are resolved based on the current working directory.

`webhelp.publishing.template.descriptor`

Specifies the name of the descriptor to be loaded from the WebHelp Responsive template package. If it is not specified, the first encountered descriptor will be automatically loaded.

**Custom Resource Parameters**

`webhelp.custom.resources`

The file path to a directory that contains resources files. All files from this directory will be copied to the root of the WebHelp output.

`webhelp.favicon`

The file path that points to an image to be used as a *favicon* in the WebHelp output.

`webhelp.logo.image.target.url`

Specifies a target URL that is set on the logo image. When you click the logo image, you will be redirected to this address.

`webhelp.logo.image`

Specifies a path to an image displayed as a logo in the left side of the output header.

`webhelp.logo.image.alt`
Specifies a value that will be set in the `alt` attribute of the logo image. If the parameter is not specified, the `alt` attribute will contain the publication title. Note that this parameter makes sense only in conjunction with the `webhelp.logo.image` parameter.

**Feedback-Enabled Parameters**

`webhelp.product.id` *(available only for Feedback-enabled systems)*

This parameter specifies a short name for the documentation target, or product (for example, `mobile-phone-user-guide`, `hvac-installation-guide`).

**Note:** You can deploy documentation for multiple products on the same server.

**Restriction:** The following characters are not allowed in the value of this parameter:

`<>\'{}[];*+&`.

`webhelp.product.version` *(available only for Feedback-enabled systems)*

Specifies the documentation version number (for example, 1.0, 2.5, etc.). New user comments are bound to this version.

**Note:** Multiple documentation versions can be deployed on the same server.

**Restriction:** The following characters are not allowed in the value of this parameter:

`<>\'{}[];*+&`.

**HTML Fragment Extension Parameters**

`webhelp.fragment.after.body`

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the page body. The value of the parameter can be either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment.

`webhelp.fragment.after.logo_and_title`

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the logo and title. The value of the parameter can be either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment.

`webhelp.fragment.after.main.page.search`

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the search field. The value of the parameter can be either a well-formed XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a well-formed XHTML fragment.

`webhelp.fragment.after.toc_or_tiles`
In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the table of contents or tiles in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.fragment.after.top_menu**

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment after the top menu. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.fragment.before.body**

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the page body. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.fragment.before.logo_and_title**

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the logo and title. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.fragment.before.main.page.search**

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the search field. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.fragment.before.toc_or_tiles**

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the table of contents or tiles in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.fragment.before.top_menu**

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment before the top menu. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.fragment.footer**

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment as the page footer. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**webhelp.fragment.head**

In the generated output it inserts a given XHTML fragment in the `<head>` element. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.
**webhelp.fragment.welcome**

In the generated output it displays a given XHTML fragment as a welcome message (or title). The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

**Output Component Parameters**

**webhelp.default.collection.type.sequence**

Specifies if the **sequence** value will be used by default when the **collection-type** attribute is not specified. This option is helpful if you want to have *Next* and *Previous* navigational buttons generated for all HTML pages. Allowed values are **no** (default) and **yes**.

**webhelp.merge.nested.topics.related.links**

Specifies if the related links from nested topics will be merged with the links in the parent topic. Thus the links will be moved from the topic content to the related links component and all of the links from the same group (for example, *Related Tasks*, *Related References*, *Related Information*) are merged into a single group. The default value is **yes**.

**webhelp.show.breadcrumb**

Specifies if the breadcrumb component will be presented in the output. The default value is **yes**.

**webhelp.show.changes.and.comments**

When set to **yes**, user comments, replies to comments, and tracked changes are published in the WebHelp output. The default value is **no**.

**webhelp.show.child.links**

Specifies if child links will be generated in the output for all topics that have subtopics. The default value is **no**.

**webhelp.show.full.size.image**

Specifies if responsive images that are displayed with a smaller dimension than their original size can be clicked to see an enlarged version of the image. The default value is **yes**.

**webhelp.show.indexterms.link**

Specifies if an icon that links to the index will be presented in the output. The default value is **yes**.
Specifies if the tiles component will be presented in the main page of the output. For a tree style layout, this parameter should be set to no.

`webhelp.show.main.page.toc`

Specifies if the table of contents will be presented in the main page of the output. The default value is yes.

`webhelp.show.navigation.links`

Specifies if navigation links will be presented in the output. The default value is yes.

`webhelp.show.print.link`

Specifies if a print link or icon will be presented within each topic in the output. The default value is yes.

`webhelp.show.publication.toc`

Specifies if a table of contents will be presented on the left side of each topic in the output. The default value is yes.

`webhelp.show.topic.toc`

Specifies if a topic table of contents will be presented on the right side of each topic in the output. This table of contents contains links to each `<section>` within the current topic that contains an `@id` attribute and the section corresponding to the current scroll position is highlighted. The default value is yes.

`webhelp.show.top.menu`

Specifies if a menu will be presented at the topic of the main page in the output. The default value is yes.

`webhelp.publication.toc.hide.chunked.topics`

Specifies if the table of contents will contain links for chunked topics. The default value is yes.

`webhelp.publication.toc.links`

Specifies which links will be included in the table of contents. The possible values are:

- **chapter** (default) - The TOC will include links for the current topic, its children, its siblings, and its direct ancestor (including the direct ancestor's siblings), and the parent chapter.
- **topic** - The TOC will only include links for the current topic and its direct children.
- **all** - The TOC will include all links.

`webhelp.publication.toc.tooltip.position`

By default, if a topic contains a `shortdesc` element, its content is displayed in a tooltip when the user hovers over its link in the table of contents. This parameter controls
whether or not this tooltip is displayed and its position relative to the link. The possible values are:

- **left** (default)
- right
- top
- **bottom**
- **hidden** - The tooltip will not be displayed.

`webhelp.top.menu.depth`

Specifies the maximum depth level of the topics that will be included in the top menu. The default value is 3. A value of 0 means that the menu has unlimited depth.

`webhelp.topic.collapsible.elements.initial.state`

Specifies the initial state of collapsible elements (tables with titles, nested topics with titles, sections with titles, index term groups). The possible values are **collapsed** or **expanded** (default value).

**Search-Related Parameters**

`webhelp.search.japanese.dictionary`

The file path of the dictionary that will be used by the *Kuromoji* morphological engine for indexing Japanese content in the WebHelp pages. The encoding for the dictionary must be **UTF8**.

`webhelp.search.ranking`

If this parameter is set to **false** then the 5-star rating mechanism is no longer included in the search results that are displayed on the **Search** tab (default setting is **true**).

`webhelp.search.stop.words.exclude`

Specifies a list of words that will be excluded from the default list of **stop words** that are filtered out before the search processing. Use comma separators to specify more than one word (for example: *if,for,is*).

`webhelp.sitemap.base.url`

Base URL for all the **loc** elements in the generated **sitemap.xml** file. The value of a **loc** element is computed as the relative file path from the **href** attribute of a **topicref** element from the **DITA map**, appended to this base URL value. The **loc** element is mandatory in **sitemap.xml**. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the **sitemap.xml** file is not generated.

`webhelp.enable.searchautocomplete`
Specifies if the Autocomplete feature is enabled in the WebHelp search text field. The default value is yes.

**webhelp.search.enable.pagination**

Specifies whether or not search results will be displayed on multiple pages. Allowed values are yes or no.

**webhelp.search.page.numberOfItems**

Specifies the number of search results items displayed on each page. This parameter is only used when the `webhelp.search.enable.pagination` parameter is enabled.

**webhelp.sitemap.change.frequency**

The value of the `changefreq` element in the generated `sitemap.xml` file. The `changefreq` element is optional in `sitemap.xml`. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the `changefreq` element is not added in `sitemap.xml`. Allowed values: <empty string> (default), always, hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, never.

**webhelp.sitemap.priority**

The value of the `priority` element in the generated `sitemap.xml` file. It can be set to any fractional number between 0.0 (least important priority) and 1.0 (most important priority). For example, 0.3, 0.5, or 0.8. The `priority` element is optional in `sitemap.xml`. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the `priority` element is not added in `sitemap.xml`.

**webhelp.google.search.results**

A file path that specifies the location of a well-formed XHTML file containing the Google Custom Search Engine element `gcse:searchresults-only`. You can use all supported attributes for this element. It is recommend to set the `linkTarget` attribute to `frm` for frameless (`iframe`) version of WebHelp or to `contentWin` for the frameset version of WebHelp. The default value for this attribute is `_blank` and the search results will be loaded in a new window. If this parameter is not specified, the following code will be used: `<gcse:searchresults-only linkTarget="frm"></gcse:searchresults-only>`.

**webhelp.google.search.script**

A file path that specifies the location of a well-formed XHTML file containing the Custom Search Engine script from Google.

**Note:** The `fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml` parameter is not supported when running the transformation from a command line. This parameter is normally used to specify whether or not the application tries to fix such references in a temporary files folder before the DITA Open Toolkit is invoked on the fixed references.
WebHelp Responsive XSLT-Import and XSLT-Parameter Extension Points

XSLT extension points can be used from either from an Oxygen Publishing Template or from a DITA-OT extension plug-in.

**Extension Points from an Oxygen Publishing Template**

The publishing template allows you to specify one or more XSLT extension points. These extension points will affect only the transformations that use the particular template.

For an example of how to use these extension in a publishing template, see: How to Use a XSLT Extension Point from a Publishing Template (on page 1200) topic.

**Example:**

```xml
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <xslt>
            <extension
                id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage"
                file="xsl/customMainPage.xsl"/>
        </xslt>
    </webhelp>
    ...
</publishing-template>
```

**Extension Points from a DITA-OT Extension Plug-in**

The DITA-OT plug-in installer adds an XSLT import statement in the default WebHelp XSLT so that the XSLT stylesheet referenced by the extension point becomes part of the normal build. You can use these extension points to override XSLT processing steps.

**Example:**

```xml
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive.extension">
    <feature extension="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive.xsl.dita2webhelp"
```
XSLT-Import Extension Points

The following extension points are available:

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.dita2webhelp

Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheet (dita2webhelp.xsl) that produces an HTML file for each DITA topic. The location of this file is DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\dita2webhelp\dita2webhelp.xsl

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage

Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheet (createMainPage.xsl) that produces the WebHelp Responsive main HTML page (index.html). The location of this file is DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\mainFiles\createMainPage.xsl

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createNavLinks

Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheets that are used to generate navigation links in the WebHelp Responsive pages. These stylesheets can be found in the navLinks folder: DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\navLinks

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createSearchPage

Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheet (createSearchPage.xsl) that produces the WebHelp Responsive search HTML page (search.html). The location of this file is DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\mainFiles\createSearchPage.xsl

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createIndextermsPage

Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheet (createIndextermsPage.xsl) that produces the WebHelp Responsive index terms HTML page (indexterms.html). The location of this file is DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\mainFiles\createIndextermsPage.xsl

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createTocXML

Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheet (tocDita.xsl) that produces the toc.xml file. This file contains information extracted from the DITA map (on page 1621) and it is mainly used to construct the WebHelp Table of Contents.
and navigational links. The path to this stylesheet is: $DITA-OT-DIR$\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\toc\tocDita.xsl.

**XSLT-Parameter Extension Points**

If your customization stylesheet declares one or more XSLT parameters and you want to control their values from the transformation scenario, you can use one of the following XSLT parameter extension points:

- **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.dita2webhelp.param**
  Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the 
  [com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.dita2webhelp](#) extension point (on page 1223).

- **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage.param**
  Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the
  [com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage](#) extension point (on page 1223).

- **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createNavLinks.param**
  Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the
  [com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createNavLinks](#) extension point (on page 1223).

- **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createSearchPage.param**
  Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the
  [com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createSearchPage](#) extension point (on page 1223).

- **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createIndextermsPage.param**
  Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the
  [com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createIndextermsPage](#) extension point (on page 1223).

- **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createTocXML.param**
  Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the
  [com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createTocXML](#) extension point (on page 1223).

**Related Information:**

- How to Override an XSLT-processing step (on page 1199)
- [DITA-OT] XSLT-Import Extension Points
- [DITA-OT] XSLT-Parameter Extension Points
DITA to PDF Output Customization

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for generating PDF output using transformation scenarios for certain types of documents (for example, DITA, DocBook, TEI, and JATS) and Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports several different types of processors. There are numerous ways to customize the published output to fit your specific needs.

CSS-based DITA to PDF Customization

Oxygen XML Developer plugin comes bundled with a DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing Plugin that combines all the topics from a map or bookmap and styles the resulting document using CSS. It is the base of the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation scenario.

DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 and CSS Transformation Type

This transformation type uses a CSS-based processing engine and HTML5 as an intermediate format. For this transformation, the pdf-css-html5 transtype is used. Because the structure of the HTML5 intermediate format resembles the one used in WebHelp output, it is possible to reuse parts of your CSS file you developed for a WebHelp customization.

DITA Map PDF - based on DITA and CSS (WYSIWYG) Transformation Type (Deprecated)

This transformation type converts DITA maps to PDF using a CSS-based processing engine and a merged DITA map (one with all topics expanded inline) as an intermediate format. For this transformation, the pdf-css transtype is used. This transformation scenario was deprecated starting with version 21.0. It is recommended to use the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation scenario (on page 874) instead.

Related Information:

- DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 and CSS Transformation (on page 874)

Overview

This section contains topics that provide a basic overview of the DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing Plugin, technical details, and some additional resources to help you with your customizations.
Resources

Customizing the PDF output requires knowledge of CSS, Paged Media, and DITA. The following list provides some resources to help you:

- **CSS** - You can find a good tutorial here: https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Learn/CSS/Introduction_to_CSS. Also, the specification is available on the W3C website: https://www.w3.org/Style/CSS/Overview.en.html.

- **CSS Paged Media** - This is a part of the CSS specification that shows how to organize your publication in pages, how to use headers/footers, page breaks, and other page-related issues. The specification is available here: https://www.w3.org/TR/CSS2/page.html. Also, there is a set of hands-on examples in the Oxygen PDF Chemistry user guide: https://www.oxygenxml.com/doc/ug-chemistry/.


- **HTML5** - For the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type, you will need a good knowledge of HTML5. You can find resources here: https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/Guide/HTML/HTML5

Related Information:

- DITA-OT DAY 2017: Using CSS to Style PDF Output

Supported Processors

The **DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing Plugin** supports the following CSS processors:

- **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** - This is recommended processor because the built-in CSS files were fine-tuned for this processor. For example, metadata extraction (on page 1281) only functions with this processor. If the plugin is started from an Oxygen XML Editor/Author distribution, a Chemistry installation is not needed.


Technical Details


It has two transformation types:

- **pdf-css-html5** (*DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation*) - CSS styling applied over a merged HTML5 document (the merged DITA converted to HTML5).
- **pdf-css** (*DITA Map PDF - based on DITA & CSS - WYSIWYG transformation*) - CSS styling applied directly over a merged DITA document. This transformation type was deprecated started with version 21.

This is how it works:

1. It expands all the topic references into a temporary clone of the map, resolving keys and reused content. This is the standard DITA-OT pre-processing procedure.
2. It generates a structure for the table of contents and index. The result is a merged map with all the references resolved. This is a standard DITA-OT processing procedure, based on the PDF2 plugin.
3. Then it post-processes the merged map. It fixes some of the structure in the TOC and index, moves the *frontmatter* and *backmatter* to the correct places, transforms any change tracking and review processing instructions to elements that can be styled later, etc. The result is another merged map.
4. When using the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type, the merged DITA map is transformed to a single HTML5 file. The generated HTML elements copy the class attributes from the original DITA elements. In this way you can either use selectors that were designed for DITA structure, or ones for the HTML structure - see: Reusing the Styling for WebHelp and PDF Output (on page 1356). This step can apply customization XSLT extension points (on page 1245) that change the default processing.

5. In the last phase, it uses a collection of CSS files to style the merged map (or for the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type, the merged map in the HTML5 format with the help of the CSS processor).

- **Note:** For the DITA Map PDF - based on DITA & CSS (WYSIWYG) transformation type, the used CSS files are those selected in the Styles drop-down menu from the toolbar in Oxygen XML Editor/Author, and they are processed along with the CSS files specified with the args.css parameter set in the transformation scenario.

- **Note:** For the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type, references to the CSS files are collected from the publishing template (on page 1235).
Increasing Memory Allocation for Java

If you are working with a large project with extensive metadata or key references, you may need to increase the amount of memory that is allocated to the Java process that performs the publishing.

**When the Transformation is Started from Oxygen**

It is possible to alter the memory allocation setting from the transformation scenario:

1. Open the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box.
2. Select your transformation scenario, then click Edit.
3. Go to the Advanced tab.
4. Locate the JVM Arguments, and increase the default value. For instance, to set 1GB as maximum of memory, you can specify: `-Xmx1024m`.

**When the Transformation is Started from the Command Line**

You can change the value of the `ANT_OPTS` environment variable from a command line for a specific session.

**Example**: To increase the JVM memory allocation to 1024 MB for a specific session, issue the following command from a command prompt (depending on your operating system):

- **Windows**
  
  ```
  set ANT_OPTS=%ANT_OPTS% -Xmx1024M
  ```

- **Linux/Mac OS X**
export ANT_OPTS=$ANT_OPTS -Xmx1024M

Tip: To persistently change the memory allocation, change the value allocated to the `ANT_OPTS` environment variable on your system.

Transformation Parameters

This list includes the most common customization parameters that are available in the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation scenario. Other standard DITA-OT parameters were omitted for clarity, but they are still supported.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>args.css</code></td>
<td>You can use this to specify a list of CSS URLs to be used in addition to those specified in the <code>dita.css.list</code> parameter or publishing template. The files must have URL syntax and be separated using semicolons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>args.css.param.*</code></td>
<td>You can use this parameter pattern to set attributes on the root of the merged map. This means you can activate specific CSS rules from your custom CSS using custom attributes. For examples, see: Styling Through Custom Parameters (on page 1375).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `args.css.param.numbering` | You can use this parameter to change the numbering of the chapters and sections. Allowed values:  
  - **shallow** - Only the topics from the first level will be numbered (chapters).  
  - **deep** - All the topics from the map will be numbered (chapters and sections).  
  - **deep-chapter-scope** - Similar to deep, but in addition, the page numbers, figures, and table numbers are reset at the start of each chapter. The table and figure titles (and the links to them) are prefixed with the chapter numbers. The generic cross reference links contain both the chapter numbers and the page numbers to avoid ambiguity. This parameter value is only available for the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation scenario.  
  - **deep-chapter-scope-no-page-reset** - Similar to deep-chapter-scope, but the page numbers do not reset at the start of each chapter. The generic cross reference links contain only the page number. This parameter value is only available for the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation scenario. |

For more details, see Numbering Types (on page 1304).
| args.draft          | Specifies whether or not the content of `<draft-comment>` and `<required-cleanup>` elements is included in the output. Allowed values:  
|                    | • **no** - No draft information is shown in the output. This is the default.  
|                    | • **yes** - The draft information is shown in the output.  
| args.figurelink.style | Specifies how cross references to figures are styled in output. Allowed values:  
|                    | • **NUMBER** - Only the number of the figures will be shown in links.  
|                    | • **TITLE** - Only the title of the figures will be shown in links.  
|                    | • **NUMTITLE** (default) - Both the title and number of the figures will be shown in links.  
| args.chapter.layout | Specifies whether chapter level TOCs are generated for bookmaps. When set to **MINITOC**, a small section with links is added at the beginning of each chapter. The default is **BASIC**. For details, see: Table of Contents for Chapters (Mini TOC) (on page 1314). Allowed values:  
|                    | • **BASIC** - No chapter TOC is created.  
|                    | • **MINITOC** - A chapter level TOC will be generated.  
| args.gen.task.lbl  | Specifies whether or not to generate headings for sections within task topics. Allowed values: **YES** or **NO** (default). When set to yes, headings like "About this task", "Procedure", or "What to do next", are shown in the task contents.  
| args.input         | Specifies the master DITA map file for your documentation project.  
| args.output.base   | Specifies the name of the output file without a file extension. By default, the name of the PDF file is derived from the name of the DITA map file. This parameter allows you to override it.  
| args.tablelink.style | Specifies how cross references to tables are styled in output. Allowed values:  
|                    | • **NUMBER** - Only the number of the tables will be shown in links.  
|                    | • **TITLE** - Only the title of the tables will be shown in links.  
|                    | • **NUMTITLE** (default) - Both the title and number of the tables will be shown in links.  
| clean.temp         | Specifies whether the DITA-OT deletes the files in the temporary directory after it finishes a build. Allowed values: **yes** (default) / **no**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>css.processor.path.antenna-house</td>
<td>Path to the Antenna House executable file that needs to be run to generate the PDF (for example, C:\path\to\AHFCmd.exe on Windows).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>css.processor.path.chemistry</td>
<td>Path to the Oxygen PDF Chemistry executable file that needs to be run to generate the PDF (for example, C:\path\to\chemistry.bat on Windows). If this parameter is not set, the plugin will use the system's PATH environment variable to locate and start Oxygen PDF Chemistry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>css.processor.path.prince</td>
<td>Path to the Prince executable file that needs to be run to generate the PDF (for example, C:\path\to\prince.exe on Windows).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>css.processor.type</td>
<td>Specifies the processor to use for the transformation. Allowed values: chemistry (default) / antenna-house / prince.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default.language</td>
<td>Specifies the default language for source documents. Examples: fr, de, zh, etc. Depending on the transformation type, the actual number of supported languages can vary, see: Localization (on page 1344).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>editlink.remote.ditamap.url</td>
<td>Use this parameter in conjunction with editlink.web.author.url to add an Edit link next to the topic title in the PDF output. When a user clicks the link, the topic is opened in Oxygen XML Web Author where they can make changes that can be saved to a file server. The value should be set as the custom URL of the main DITA map. For example, a GitHub custom URL might look like this: <a href="https://getFileContent/oxyengxml/userguide/master/UserGuide.ditamap">https://getFileContent/oxyengxml/userguide/master/UserGuide.ditamap</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>editlink.web.author.url</td>
<td>This parameter needs to be used in conjunction with editlink.remote.ditamap.url to add an Edit link next to the topic title in the PDF output. When a user clicks the link, the topic is opened in Oxygen XML Web Author where they can make changes that can be saved to a file server. The value should be set as the URL of the Web Author installation. For example: <a href="https://www.oxygenxml.com/oxygen-xml-web-author/">https://www.oxygenxml.com/oxygen-xml-web-author/</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>figure.title.placement</td>
<td>Controls the title placement of the figures, relative to the image. Possible values include top (default) and bottom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generate.named.destinations</td>
<td>When set to yes (default), the @id attributes from the DITA content are used as PDF named destinations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide.frontpage.toc.index.glossary</td>
<td>When set to yes, the generated structures (table of contents, index list, front page, etc.) are removed from the output. The default is no.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show.changes.and.comments</td>
<td>When set to yes, the user comments, colored highlights and track-changes are shown in the output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show.changes.and.comments.as.pdf.sticky.notes</td>
<td>When set to yes (default) and the show.changes.and.comments parameter is also set to yes, the user comments and tracked...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
changes are shown in the PDF output as stick note annotations. When set to no, the comments and tracked changes are left in the document model and are styled by the default CSS rules as footnotes. You can override this from your customization CSS (on page 1253).

The following parameters can be used to specify a publishing template:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pdf.publishing.template</td>
<td>Specifies the path to the folder containing the custom PDF template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pdf.publishing.template.descriptor</td>
<td>Specifies the name of the descriptor to be loaded from the PDF template folder or package. If it is not specified, the first encountered descriptor will be loaded.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Publishing Templates

An Oxygen Publishing Template defines all aspects of the layout and styles for output obtained from the following transformation scenarios:

- WebHelp Responsive
- WebHelp Responsive with Feedback
- DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS

It is a self-contained customization package stored as a ZIP archive or folder that can easily be shared with others. It provides the primary method for customizing the output.

Some possible customization methods include:

- Add additional template resources to customize the output (such as logos, Favicons, or CSS files).
- Extend the default processing by specifying one or more XSLT extension points.
- Specify one or more transformation parameters to customize the output.
- Customize various aspects of the output through simple CSS styling.
- For WebHelp Responsive output, change the layout of the main page or topic pages by customizing which components will be displayed and where they will be positioned in the page.

The following graphics are possible sample structure for Oxygen Publishing Template packages:

Figure 386. Oxygen Publishing Template Package (WebHelp Responsive)
Figure 387. Oxygen Publishing Template Package (PDF)

For information about creating and customizing publishing templates, and how to adjust the WebHelp and PDF output through CSS styling and other customization methods, watch our Webinar: Creating Custom Publishing Templates for WebHelp and PDF Output. The Webinar slides and sample project are also available from that webpage.

Related Information:

- How to Create a Publishing Template (on page 1147)
- How to Edit a Packed Publishing Template (on page 1149)
- How to Add a Publishing Template to the Publishing Templates Gallery (on page 1150)
- How to Share a Publishing Template (on page 1244)
Publishing Template Package Contents for PDF Customizations

An Oxygen Publishing Template for PDF output must contain a template descriptor file and at least one CSS file, and may contain other resources (such as graphics, XSLT files, etc.). All the template resources can be stored in either a ZIP archive or in a folder. It is recommended to use a ZIP archive because it is easier to share with others.

Template Descriptor File

Each publishing template includes a descriptor file that defines the meta-data associated with template. It is an XML file with certain elements that defines all the resources included in a template (such as CSS files, images, and transformation parameters).

The template descriptor file must have the .opt file extension and must be located in the templates’ root folder.

A PDF template descriptor might look like this:

```
<publishing-template>
  <name>Flowers</name>

  <pdf>
    <tags>
      <tag>purple</tag>
      <tag>light</tag>
    </tags>
    <preview-image file="flowers-preview.png"/>
    <resources>
      <css file="flowers.css"/>
    </resources>
    <parameters>
      <parameter name="figure.title.placement" value="top"/>
    </parameters>
  </pdf>
</publishing-template>
```

Tip: It is recommended to edit the template descriptor in Oxygen XML Editor/Author because it provides content completion and validation support.
Template Name and Description

Each template descriptor file requires a `name` element. This information is displayed as the name of the template in the transformation scenario dialog box.

Optionally, you can include a `description` and it displayed when the user hovers over the template in the transformation scenario dialog box.

```xml
<publishing-template>
  <name>Flowers</name>
  <description>Flowers themed light colored template</description>
  ...
</publishing-template>
```

Template Author

Optionally, you can include author information in the descriptor file and it displayed when the user hovers over the template in the transformation scenario dialog box. This information might be useful if users run into an issue or have questions about a certain template.

If you include the `author` element, a `name` is required and optionally you can include `email`, `organization`, and `organizationUrl` information.

```xml
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <author>
    <name>John Doe</name>
    <email>jdoe@example.com</email>
    <organization>ACME</organization>
    <organizationUrl>http://www.example.com/jdoe</organizationUrl>
  </author>
  ...
</publishing-template>
```

PDF Element

The `pdf` element contains various details about the template and its resources that define the PDF output. It is a required element if you intend on using a DITA Map to PDF transformation scenario. The elements that are allowed in this `pdf` section specify the template tags (on page 1237), template preview image (on page 1237), resources (on page 1238) (such as CSS files), transformation parameters (on page 1238), or XSLT extensions (on page 1239).

```xml
<pdf>
```
<tags>
    ...
</tags>
<preview-image file="MyPreview.png"/>

<resources>
    ...
</resources>

<parameters>
    ...
</parameters>
</pdf>

**Template Tags**

The **tags** section provides meta information about the template (such as color theme). Each **tag** is displayed at the top of the **Templates** tab window in the transformation scenario dialog box and they help the user filter and find particular templates.

<publishing-template>
    ...
    <pdf>
        <tags>
            <tag>purple</tag>
            <tag>light</tag>
        </tags>
    </pdf>
</publishing-template>

**Template Preview Image**

The **preview-image** element is used to specify an image that will be displayed in the transformation scenario dialog box. It provides a visual representation of the template to help the user select the right template. The image dimensions should be 200 x 115 pixels and the supported image formats are: JPEG, PNG, or GIF.

You can also include an **online-preview-url** element to specify the URL of a published sample of your template. This will display an Online preview icon in the bottom-right corner of the image in the transformation scenario dialog box and if the user clicks that icon, it will open the specified URL in their default browser.

<publishing-template>
Template Resources

The `resources` section of the descriptor file specifies a set of resources (CSS files) that are used to customize various components in generated output. These resources will be copied to the output folder during the transformation process. At least one CSS file must be included, while the other types of resources are optional.

```xml
<resources>
  <css file="css/custom_styles.css"/>
  <css file="css/custom_fonts.css"/>
</resources>
```

**Note:** All relative paths specified in the descriptor file are relative to the template root folder.

Transformation Parameters

You can also set one or more transformation parameters in the descriptor file.

```xml
<parameters>
  <parameter name="show.changes.and.comments" value="yes"/>
</parameters>
```

The following information can be specified in the `parameter` element:

**Parameter name**
The name of the parameter. It may be one of the transformation parameters listed in the Parameters tab of the DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation scenario or a DITA-OT PDF-based output parameter.

Note: It is not recommended to specify an input/output parameter in the descriptor file (such as the input Map, DITAVAL file, or temporary directory).

Attention: JVM arguments like -Xmx cannot be specified as a transformation parameter.

Parameter Value

The value of the parameter. It should be a relative path to the template root folder for file paths parameters.

Parameter Type

The type of the parameter: string or filepath. The string value is default.

After creating a publishing template (on page 1241) and adding it to the templates gallery (on page 1243), when you select the template in the transformation scenario dialog box, the Parameters tab will automatically be updated to include the parameters defined in the descriptor file. These parameters are displayed in italics.

XSLT Extension Points

The publishing templates support one or more XSLT extension points. They can be specified in the descriptor file using the following structure:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <xslt>
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5"
        file="xslt/merged2html5Extension.xsl"/>
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged"
        file="xslt/merged2mergedExtension.xsl"/>
    </xslt>
  </pdf>
  ...
</publishing-template>
```

For more information about the available extension points, see: XSLT Extensions for PDF Transformations (on page 1245).
Combining PDF and WebHelp Responsive Customizations in a Template Package

An Oxygen Publishing Template package can contain both a PDF and WebHelp Responsive customization in the same template package and you can use that same template in both types of transformations. The template descriptor file can define the customization for both types by including both a `webhelp` and `pdf` element and some of the resources can be reused. Resources referenced in elements in the `webhelp` element will only be used for WebHelp transformations, and resources referenced in the elements in the `pdf` element will only be used in PDF transformations.

```xml
<publishing-template>
  <name>Flowers</name>
  <description>Flowers themed light-colored template</description>

  <webhelp>
    <tags>
      <tag>purple</tag>
      <tag>light</tag>
    </tags>
    <preview-image file="flowers-preview.png"/>
    <resources>
      <css file="flowers-wh.css"/>
      <css file="flowers-page-styling.css"/>
    </resources>
    <parameters>
      <parameter name="webhelp.show.main.page.tiles" value="no"/>
      <parameter name="webhelp.show.main.page.toc" value="yes"/>
    </parameters>
  </webhelp>

  <pdf>
    <tags>
      <tag>purple</tag>
      <tag>light</tag>
    </tags>
    <preview-image file="flowers-preview.png"/>
    <resources>
      <css file="flowers-pdf.css"/>
      <css file="flowers-page-styling.css"/>
    </resources>
    <parameters>
      <parameter name="show.changes.and.comments" value="yes"/>
    </parameters>
  </pdf>
</publishing-template>
```
How to Create a Publishing Template

To create a customization, you can start from scratch or from an existing template, and then adapt it according to your needs.

Creating a Template Starting from Scratch

To create a new Oxygen Publishing Template, follow these steps:

1. Create a folder that will contain all the template files.
2. In Oxygen XML Editor/Author, open the new document wizard (use File > New or the New toolbar button), then choose the Publishing Template Descriptor template.

Figure 388. Choosing the Publishing Template Descriptor Document Template

3. Save the .opt file into your customization directory.
4. Open the .opt file in the editor and customize it to suit your needs.
Creating a Template Starting from an Existing Template

If you are using a WebHelp Responsive or DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation, the easiest way to create a new Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1624) is to select an existing template in the transformation scenario dialog box and use the Save template as button to save that template into a new template package that can be used as a starting point.

To create a new Oxygen Publishing Template, follow these steps:

1. Open the transformation scenario dialog box and select the publishing template you want to export and use as a starting point.
2. Optional: You can set one or more transformation parameters from the Parameters tab and the edited parameters will be exported along with the selected template. You will see which parameters will be exported in the dialog box that is displayed after the next step.
3. Click the Save template as button.

   **Step Result:** This opens a template package configuration dialog box that contains some options and displays the parameters that will be exported to your template package.

4. Specify a name for the new template.
5. Optional: Specify a template description.
6. Optional: The same publishing template package can contain both a WebHelp Responsive and PDF customization and you can use the same template in both types of transformations (DITA Map WebHelp Responsive or DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS). You can use the Include WebHelp customization and Include PDF customization options to specify whether your custom template will include both types of customizations.
7. Optional: For WebHelp Responsive customizations, you can select the Include HTML Page Layout Files option if you want to copy the default HTML Page Layout Files (on page 1121) in your template package. They are helpful if you want to change the structure of the generated HTML pages.
8. In the Save as field, specify the name and path of the ZIP file where the template will be saved.

   **Step Result:** A new ZIP archive will be created on disk in the specified location with the specified name.

9. Open the .opt file in the editor and customize it to suit your needs.

For more information about creating and customizing publishing templates, watch our video demonstration:

[https://www.youtube.com/embed/zNmXfKWXwO8](https://www.youtube.com/embed/zNmXfKWXwO8)

Related Information:
How to Edit a Packed Publishing Template

To edit an existing *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1624)* package, follow these steps:

1. Unzip the ZIP archive associated with the *Oxygen Publishing Template* in a separate folder.
2. Link the folder associated with the template in the **Navigator** view.
3. Using the **Navigator** view, you can modify the resources (CSS, JS, fonts) within the *Oxygen Publishing Template* folder to fit your needs.
4. Open the publishing template descriptor file (*opt* extension) in the editor and modify to suit your needs.
5. **Optional:** Once you finish your customization, you can archive the folder as a ZIP file.

Related Information:

- **Publishing Template Package Contents for PDF Customizations (on page 1235)**
- **Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations (on page 1107)**

How to Use a Publishing Template in a PDF Transformation

**From Oxygen XML Editor/Author**

A publishing template can be used for PDF output from the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.

The **Templates** tab in the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario dialog displays all the templates that are available in your template gallery. To use a particular template in the transformation scenario, simply select it from this tab and then continue configuring the transformation using the other tabs to suit your needs.

To add the publishing template to your templates gallery, follow these steps:
1. Open the transformation scenario dialog box by editing a DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation.

2. In the Templates tab, click the Configure Publishing Templates Gallery link to.

**Step Result:** This will open the preferences page.

3. Click the Add button and specify the location of your template directory.

**Step Result:** Your template directory is now added to the Additional Publishing Templates Galleries list.

4. Click OK to return to the transformation scenario dialog box.

**Step Result:** All the templates contained in your template directory will be displayed in the preview pane along with all the built-in templates.

**From Command Line**

You can use the simpler form, in which you use only the `pdf.publishing.template` parameter to point to the *.opt (publishing template) file:

```bash
dita.bat
--input=map\test.ditamap
"-Dpdf.publishing.template=full_path_to_template_dir/my_template.opt"
--format=pdf-css-html5
...
```

Or use the two parameters to indicate the folder containing the publishing templates and the name of the publishing template file relative to that folder:

```bash
dita.bat
--input=map\test.ditamap
"-Dpdf.publishing.template=full_path_to_template_dir"
"-Dpdf.publishing.template.descriptor=my_template.opt"
--format=pdf-css-html5
...
```

**Related Information:**

- Transformation Parameters *(on page 1230)*
How to Share a Publishing Template

To share a publishing template with others, following these steps:

1. Copy your template in a new folder in your project.
2. Go to Options > Preferences > DITA > Publishing and add that new folder to the list.
3. Switch the option as the bottom of that preferences page to Project Options.
4. Share your project file (.xpr).

XSLT Extensions for PDF Transformations

Since PDF output is primarily obtained by running XSLT transformations over the DITA input files, one customization method would be to override the default XSLT templates that are used by the PDF transformation.

The pdf-css-html5 transformation type uses two stages to transform the merged DITA map (the one that aggregates all the topics) to HTML5:

1. Stage 1: Makes some changes on the merged map (on page 1254) and the result is a modified merged map. This stage can be altered by implementing the
   com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged XSLT extension point. This extension overrides the stylesheets found in the following folder: DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.pdf.css\xsl\merged2merged.
   
   Note: Use this when you need to filter DITA content.

2. Stage 2: Transforms the merged map (on page 1254) to HTML5 and the result is a single HTML document. This stage can be altered by implementing the
   com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5 XSLT extension point. This extension overrides the stylesheets found in the following folder: DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\com.oxygenxml.pdf.css\xsl\merged2html5.
   
   Note: Use this when you need to change the HTML structures generated for a specific DITA element.

These extension points can be used either from a Publishing Template or a DITA-OT extension plugin.

How to Use XSLT Extension Points for PDF Output from a Publishing Template

These examples demonstrate how to use XSLT extension points from an Oxygen Publishing Template.
Use Case 1: Styling Codeblocks with a Zebra Effect

Suppose you want your codeblocks to have a particular background color for one line, and another color for the next line. One advantage of this coloring technique is that you can clearly see when text from the codeblock is wrapped.

This effect can be done by altering the HTML5 output, creating a div for each line from the code block, then styling them.

To add this functionality using an Oxygen Publishing Template, follow these steps:

1. If you haven’t already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template (on page 1241).

2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the Navigator view.

3. Using the Navigator view, create an xslt folder inside the project root folder.

4. In this folder, create an XSL file (for example, named merged2html5Extension.xsl) with the following content:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
                 xmlns:xm="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
                 exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
                 version="2.0">

   <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' pr-d/codeblock ')]">
      <div class='zebra'>
         <xsl:analyze-string regex="\n" select=".">
            <xsl:matching-substring/>
            <xsl:non-matching-substring>
              <div><xsl:value-of select="."/></div>
            </xsl:non-matching-substring>
         </xsl:analyze-string>
      </div>
   </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1235) associated with your publishing template (the .opt file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in previous step with the com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5 XSLT extension point:

```xml
<publishing-template>
   ...
</publishing-template>
```
6. Create a css folder in the publishing template directory. In this directory, save a custom CSS file with rules that style the codeblock structure. For example:

```
div.zebra {
    font-family: courier, fixed, monospace;
    white-space: pre-wrap;
}
div.zebra > *:nth-of-type(odd){
    background-color: silver;
}
```

7. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1235) associated with your publishing template (the .opt file) and reference your custom CSS file in the resources element:

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <pdf>
        ...
        <resources>
            <css file="css/custom.css"/>
        </resources>
    </pdf>
</publishing-template>
```

8. Edit the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation scenario.

9. In the Templates tab, click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.

10. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.

11. Run the transformation scenario.

**Use Case 2: Removing the Related Links Section**

Suppose you want the related links sections to be removed from the PDF output.

To add this functionality using an Oxygen Publishing Template, follow these steps:
1. If you haven’t already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template (on page 1241).

2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the Navigator view.

3. Using the Navigator view, create an xslt folder inside the project root folder.

4. In this folder, create an XSL file (for example, named merged2mergedExtension.xsl) with the following content:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
    version="2.0">

    <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' topic/related-links ')]">
        <!-- Remove. -->
    </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the template descriptor file (on page 1235) associated with your publishing template (the .opt file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in previous step with the com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged XSLT extension point:

```xml
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <pdf>
        ...
        <xslt>
            <extension id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged"
                        file="xslt/merged2mergedExtension.xsl"/>
        </xslt>
    </pdf>
    ...
</publishing-template>
```

6. Edit the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation scenario.

7. In the Templates tab, click the Choose Custom Publishing Template link and select your template.

8. Click OK to save the changes to the transformation scenario.

9. Run the transformation scenario.

How to Use XSLT Extension Points for PDF Output from a DITA-OT Plugin

These examples demonstrate how to use XSLT extension points from a DITA-OT plugin.
Use-Case 1: Styling Codeblocks with a Zebra Effect

Suppose you want your codeblocks to have a particular background color for one line, and another color for the next line. One advantage of this coloring technique is that you can clearly see when text from the codeblock is wrapped.

This effect can be done by altering the HTML5 output, creating a div for each line from the codeblock, then styling them.

To add this functionality using a DITA-OT plugin, follow these steps:

1. In the DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\ folder, create a folder for this plugin (for example, com.oxygenxml.pdf.custom.codeblocks).

2. Create a plugin.xml file (in the folder you created in step 1) that specifies the extension point and your customization stylesheet. For example:

   ```xml
   <plugin id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.custom.codeblocks">
     <feature extension="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5"
              file="custom_codeblocks.xsl"/>
   </plugin>
   ```

3. Create your customization stylesheet (for example, custom_codeblocks.xsl) with the following content:

   ```xml
   <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
   <xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
                   xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
                   exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
                   version="2.0">
     <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' pr-d/codeblock ')]">
       <div class='zebra'>
         <xsl:analyze-string regex="\n" select=".">
           <xsl:matching-substring/>
           <xsl:non-matching-substring>
             <div><xsl:value-of select="."/></div>
           </xsl:non-matching-substring>
         </xsl:analyze-string>
       </div>
     </xsl:template>
   </xsl:stylesheet>
   ```

4. Use the Run DITA-OT Integrator transformation scenario (on page 882) found in the DITA Map section in the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) dialog box.
5. Create a custom CSS file with rules that style the `codeblock` structure. For example:

```css
div.zebra {
  font-family: courier, fixed, monospace;
  white-space: pre-wrap;
}

div.zebra > *:nth-of-type(odd) {
  background-color: silver;
}
```

6. Edit a DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation scenario and reference your custom CSS file (using the `args.css` parameter).
7. Run the transformation scenario.

**Use-Case 2: Removing the Related Links Section**

Suppose you want the `related links` sections to be removed from the PDF output.

To add this functionality using a DITA-OT plugin, follow these steps:

1. In the `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\` folder, create a folder for this plugin (for example, `com.oxygenxml.pdf.custom.codeblocks`).
2. Create a `plugin.xml` file (in the folder you created in step 1) that specifies the extension point and your customization stylesheet. For example:

```xml
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.custom.related.links">
  <feature extension="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged">
    file="custom_related_links.xsl"/>
</plugin>
```

3. Create your customization stylesheet (for example, `custom_related_links.xsl`) with the following content:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
  version="2.0">

  <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' topic/related-links ')]">
    <!-- Remove. -->
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```
4. Use the **Run DITA-OT Integrator** transformation scenario *(on page 882)* found in the **DITA Map** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box.

5. Run the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.

**Sample Use-cases: Using XSLT and CSS for PDF Transformations**

In this section, you will find a series of use-cases that can be used as starting points for other customizations.

**How to Use a Bullet Instead of Numbers for Tasks Containing a Single Step**

If a DITA Task only contains one step (`<step>` element), you probably want it to be rendered like an unordered list (displayed with a bullet instead of a number).

```xml
...<steps>
  <step>
    <cmd>The step</cmd>
  </step>
</steps>
...
```

Should be rendered as:

```
  o The step
```

Instead of:

```
  1. The step
```

To achieve this, you need to create an XSLT template that adds a special `@outputclass` attribute (with its value set to `single`) for the single step, then you need to match this attribute from the CSS and change its aspect.

1. In the customization XSL, add:

```xml
<xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' task/step ')]*[count(../*[contains(@class, ' task/step ')]) = 1]">  
  <xsl:copy>
    <xsl:copy-of select="@*"/>
    <xsl:attribute name="outputclass" select="concat(@outputclass, ' single ')"/>
  </xsl:copy>
</xsl:template>
```
2. In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add:

```css
*[outputclass =~ "single"] { 
  list-style-type: circle !important;
  margin-left: 2em;
}
```

Related Information:

- How to Use XSLT Extension Points for PDF Output from a Publishing Template (on page 1245)

**DITA-OT Extension Points**

The **DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing Plugin** supports DITA-OT extension points that can be used to expand the functionality of the transformation. The extension points are defined in the plugin.xml file. For more information, see **DITA Open Toolkit Extension Points**.

Related Information:

- XSLT Extensions for PDF Transformations (on page 1245)

**How to Contribute a Custom CSS to the Transformation from a DITA-OT Plugin**

This topic is intended for publishing architects/developers that need to deploy a customized DITA-OT.

Usually, the CSS styles can be passed to the transformation by referencing the CSS files using the `args.css` parameter. However, there are cases where you want to add some sort of "built-in" CSS that is applied in conjunction with the publishing template or CSS files referenced in the transformation.

For this, you need to use the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.init` extension point and set the value of the `extension.css` ANT property to the path of the custom CSS file:

1. In your `plugin.xml` file, add:

```xml
<feature extension="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.init" file="init.xml"/>
```
2. Create a file named `init.xml` with the following ANT content:

```xml
<root>
  <property name="extension.css" value="${dita.plugin.[com.my.plugin.id].dir}/css/my-custom.css"/>
  <!-- add here more init stuff if needed -->
</root>
```

**Note:** The name of the root element does not matter. The content of this element will be copied in an initialization template.

**Important:** Make sure all file references begin with the ANT variable that is expanded to the base directory of your plugin.

**Related Information:**
- How to Use XSLT Extension Points for PDF Output from a DITA-OT Plugin (on page 1248)

### Customization CSS

The publishing process is driven by a customization CSS.

To change the styling of the output for the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation scenario:

1. Create the CSS file that will contain all your customizations. It is recommended to create this file in your project directory so you can edit it easily.
2. Add the custom CSS rules. See the various topics in this section for assistance with specific types of customizations.
3. For linking the CSS file, you have two options:
   a. Create a publishing template, create the customization CSS file inside the template folder and link it into the publishing template descriptor. See Publishing Templates (on page 1104).
   b. Choose an existing publishing template, then edit the scenario and set the full path to the custom CSS file as the value of the `args.css` parameter. The rules from custom CSS will override the rules from the template CSS files.
4. Run the transformation scenario.

### Debugging the CSS

If you notice that some of the CSS properties were not applied as expected, some of the tips offered in this topic might help you with the debugging process.
Merged Map File

Depending on the type of transformation, one or more merged map files are created at some point during the transformation stages. These files could be used to help debug unexpected results.

1. The first thing you should try is to check the file structure of the merged map file. This can be found in the out/pdf-css directory and it has the .merged.xml file extension. For the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type, you will also find a .merged.html file. You can open these files in Oxygen XML Editor/Author to examine the structure. Optionally, you can use the pretty print feature (Format and Indent) to make the structure easier to read.
2. Check that the CSS selectors are written correctly against the document structure.
3. If you still cannot identify the problem, then inspect how the styles are applied (you can try any of the methods listed below).

Inspecting the Applied Styles Using the Chrome Browser

To inspect the applied CSS styles using Chrome:

1. In Chrome, open the file ending in .merged.xml or .merged.html (for the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type).
2. Click on the element you want to inspect.
3. Activate the Chrome Developer Tools by using More Tools > Developer Tools, or press CTRL +SHIFT+I.
4. Activate the Rendering pane by using More Tools > Rendering:
5. In the **Rendering** pane, select **print** from the **Emulate CSS media** section. This will activate the CSS selectors enclosed in `@media print {...}`.

   ![Emulate CSS media](image)

**Note:** This allows you to debug the styling of elements, table of contents, and index, but not the styles of the page margin boxes (headers, footers) or page breaks.

**Tip:** In the left pane of the **Developer Tools** interface, you can inspect elements and their styles in the **Elements** tab. You can click on any of the links to display the applied CSS files in the **Styles** tab in the right pane. Editing the styles in that pane results in a live preview of how the change will affect the output.

**CAUTION:** Do not modify the built-in rules directly in the CSS files from the **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** installation. Instead, copy the rules to your own customization CSS.

### Inspecting the Applied Styles Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To inspect styles:

1. In **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, open the file ending in `.merged.xml` or `.merged.html` (for the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation type).
2. [Optional] From the **Styles** toolbar, choose the **+ Print Ready** entry. This will activate certain CSS selectors enclosed in `@media print {...}`.
3. Click on the element you want to style. Use the **Inspect Styles** action from the Contextual Menu. A specialized **CSS Inspector** view will show the built-in CSS rules.

**Tip:** With this file opened in **Author** mode, it might be helpful to switch the **Tags Display Mode** to **Full Tags with Attributes**. You might be able to identify the selector you need to style without using the **CSS Inspector** view.

**Note:** This allows you to debug styling of elements, but not of the page margin boxes (headers, footers) or page breaks.
**CAUTION:** Do not modify the built-in rules directly in the CSS files from the Oxygen XML Editor/Author installation. Instead, copy the rules to your own customization CSS.

**Other techniques**

These are some other techniques you may find useful:

- Add background and borders properties to the specific CSS rule. If they do not appear in the output then there is a problem with the rule selector.
- Try to use the `!important` notation to the property that is not applied, or make the selector more specific (you can add more parent selectors).
- To figure out how the elements are mapped into PDF, you can use this fragment in the customization CSS:

```css
* {
    border: 1pt solid blue !important;
}

*:before(1000) {
    content: oxy_name() !important;
    color: orange;
}

*:before(999) {
    content: "[ class= '" attr(class) "'] " !important;
    color: orange;
}
```

This will show the element name, its class attribute, and will paint a blue border around each of the elements in the output. It will not show the page margin boxes or some content elements that were hidden.

**How to Speed up CSS Development and Debugging**

You can speed up your CSS development considerably by not invoking the entire pipeline of transforming your DITA maps to PDF. Instead, you can use the merged map *(on page 1254)* and transform it directly to PDF.

1. Transform your DITA Map to PDF using the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS or DITA Map PDF - based on DITA & CSS transformation scenario.
2. Open the merged file (on page 1254) (*.merged.html or *.merged.xml) that is located in the output directory in the editor.

3. Configure an XML to PDF transformation with CSS scenario. Do not set CSS files here since the merged file already contains pointers to the stylesheets. This scenario uses the Chemistry CSS processor.

4. Optional: Enable the output of the CSS processor using the following preferences page: Options > Preferences > XML > PDF Processors > CSS Processor.

Now you can make incremental changes to the CSS stylesheet and quickly see the results by transforming the merged file directly.

**Fastpath:** If your changes involve only element styling, with no specific paged media CSS rules and properties, you can simply open the merged file in a browser (such as Chrome or Firefox) and refresh at each CSS change, as shown in: Debugging the CSS (on page 1253).

### How to Write XPath Expressions

This topic contains some guidelines for writing XPath expressions. They are used to extract the content from the merged DITA map document.

This is an example where the product name meta-information is placed before the front page title:

```xml
*[class~="front-page/front-page-title"]:before {
    text-align: left;
    content: oxy_xpath("//*[contains(@class, 'topic/prodname')]/text() )[1]" );
    display:block;
}
```

**Notes:**

- Do not use the DITA element names directly. You must use the DITA `@class` attribute instead, as these attributes are propagated to the merged elements (including HTML `<div>` elements) while the element names can be lost. By using the class selectors, you also cover DITA specializations.
- Use the `[1]` XPath predicate to select the first value from the document. For example, 
  `oxy_xpath("//*[contains(@class, 'topic/prodname')]/text() )[1]" `.
  The meta-information might be copied multiple times in the output, inherited by the `<topicref>` elements, so you can get many more values than expected.
- Do not use strings as values for the pseudo elements content, as the string values are not supported for pseudo elements. Instead, use the XPath directly.
- Use the Oxygen XPath Builder view to test the XPath expressions.
Related Information:

- How to Debug XPath Expressions (on page 1258)

How to Debug XPath Expressions

You can use the content extracted from the document using the `oxy_xpath` function in your pseudo elements (`:before`, `:after`) or in `string-set` variables.

For example, the following XPath finds the publication author, set in the DITA map:

```xml
<map>
  <title>The Art of Bike Repair</title>
  <topicmeta>
    <author>John Doe</author>
  </topicmeta>
  ...

:root {
  string-set: author oxy_xpath('//*[contains(@class, "front-page/front-page")]/ *[contains(@class, "map/topicmeta")]/*[contains(@class, "topic/author")]/text()');
}
```

To debug an XPath expression:

1. Read the XPath Expressions Guidelines (on page 1257).
2. Begin by transforming your document using your customization CSS.
3. In the output folder, you will find a `[MAP_NAME].merged.xml` file (or if you are using the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation, a `[MAP_NAME].merged.html` file).
4. Open the merged file in the Oxygen XML Editor/Author.
5. Activate the XPath Builder view (Window > Show View > XPath/XQuery Builder).
6. Paste your XPath expression and press the Execute XPath button. Check if it returns the expected results.

The XPath builder has a function that allows it to display the document path of the current element from the editor (Settings drop-down menu > Update on cursor move). Alternatively, you can right-click the element in the merged document and select the Copy XPath action, then paste it in the XPath builder.

Related Information:
Default Page Definitions

All page definitions are found in: `[PLUGIN_DIR]css/print/p-pages-and-headers.css`.

**Note:** This is listed solely for illustration purposes, as the plugin might use something different.

There are pages for the default page, chapter page, front matter page, back matter page, blank pages, index page, and large tables page.

**Default Page**

The default page imposes a header that contains the publication title, chapter, and section title. They alternate on the left or right side of the page:

```xml
@page :left {  
    @top-left {  
        content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);  
        font-size:8pt;  
    }  
}  

@page :right {  
    @top-right {  
        content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);  
        font-size:8pt;  
    }  
}  
```

**Tip:** To override the default rules defined for named pages (such as chapter or table of contents), you need to use more specific page rules that contain the page name:

```xml
@page :left, table-of-contents:.left, chapter:.left {  
    @top-left {  
        content: "...";  
    }  
}  
```
Chapter Page

This is inherited from the default page. The chapter page is associated to the topics marked as chapters, usually direct children of the map. It clears the header from the first page of each chapter.

Front Matter and Back Matter page

The bookmap front matter and back matter page. It clears the headers.
Blank Pages

The following example clears the header for the blank pages that may be created by a `page-break-before`, `page-break-after`, or by using double side pagination (on page 1321):

```xml
@page :blank{
    @top-left {
        content: none;
    }
    @top-right {
        content: none;
    }
}
```

Index Page

The page that contains the index terms (appears only if there are such items in your topics). It uses a lower roman page number in the footer:

```xml
@page index {
    @top-left-corner {
        content:none }
    @top-left {
        content:none }
    @top-center {
        content:none }
    @top-right {
        content:none }
    @top-right-corner {
        content:none }
    @bottom-left-corner {
        content:none }
    @bottom-left {
        content:none }
    @bottom-center {
        content: counter(page, lower-alpha) }
    @bottom-right {
        content:none }
    @bottom-right-corner{
        content:none }
}
@media oxygen-chemistry {
    @page index {
        column-count: 2;
        column-fill: auto;
    }
```
When transformed, the page layout is spread on two columns.

Large Tables Page

The big tables are placed on a rotated page, with orientation landscape:

```xml
@page landscape-page :right {
  size: landscape;

  @top-left {
    content: none
  }
  @top-center {
    content: none
  }
  @top-right {
    content: none
  }

  @right-bottom {
    content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle)
    string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
    font-size: 8pt;
    transform: rotate(90);
    vertical-align: middle;
    text-align: right;
  }
}

@page landscape-page :left {
  size: landscape;

  @top-left {
    content: none
  }
  @top-center {
    content: none
  }
  @top-right {
    content: none
  }
```
Page Size

This is where you can find information on how the page sizes are defined.

Page Size - Built-in CSS rules

The [PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-page-size.css file contains the default page rules. It uses the US-LETTER size (8.5 X 11 inches). The content of this file is:

```css
@page {
    padding-top: 0.2em;
    padding-bottom: 0.2em;
    size: us-letter;
    margin: 1in;
}
```

⚠️ Note: This is listed solely for illustration purposes, as the plugin might use something different.

How to Change the Page Size

Suppose you want to publish using the standard A4 page size, with a margin of 2cm.

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), use:

```css
@page {
    size: A4;
    margin: 2cm;
}
```

If you need different margins depending on the page side:
This would only increase the gutter margins or the inside margins needed for binding of the final book. The other margins would remain 2cm.

How to Change the Page Orientation

Suppose you want to publish on a landscape page. The default is portrait, so you need to change it by using the size property. This will contain both the physical measurements and the orientation. In your customization CSS (on page 1253), use:

```css
@page {
    size: us-letter landscape;
}
```

How to Change the Page Settings for a Specific Element

Suppose your publication is mainly using a portrait page orientation, but there are some topics that have wide images. To avoid having the images bleeding outside of the page, you could use a wider page setting (landscape).

1. Mark the topic with an `@outputclass` attribute and give it a distinct value (for example, `wide`).
   You can set the attribute on the root element of the topic, or on the `<topicref>` element from the map.

   Note: The `outputclass` values from the `topicref` automatically propagate to the root of the topic from the merged map (on page 1254).

2. In your customization CSS (on page 1253), match the output class and associate it with a named page. This page has landscape orientation and small margins. This technique works for any element (consider a table or a list) not necessarily a topic.

   ```css
   *[outputclass = 'wide'] { 
       page: wide-page;
   }
   ```
Page Headers and Footers

The page headers and footers use the string sets defined for publication, chapter, and section titles. These string-sets are defined in the numbering CSS (on page 1300):

- **parttitle**
  - Set to the title of the current part (only for DITA bookmaps that use parts).

- **chapt标题**
  - Set to the title of the current chapter (Shallow and Deep numbering).

- **sectiontitle**
  - Set to the title of each section (Deep numbering only).

Although you may define string sets in your customization CSS, you need to take into account the fact that the string-set CSS property is not additive, and matching the same elements will end up breaking the current definitions. A very common use-case is to match the title element that is also used in the default CSS. The best approach in this case is to take a look at the rules from the numbering CSS (on page 1300), copy the ones dealing with string sets to your customization, then alter the property definition by adding your definition to the existing ones (and not removing the existing ones).

Related Information:

- Numbering (on page 1300)

Page Headers and Footers - Built-in CSS

The headers and footers are part of the page definitions. To see how the default page layouts are defined, see: Default Page Definitions (on page 1259).

How to Position Text in the Headers and Footers

By default, the name of the publication and chapter titles are placed in the top-left or top-right page margin boxes:
If you want to change this, you should use the `content` CSS properties of other page margin boxes, and inhibit the ones in the above content. For example, to set the chapter title in the page top left corner, you can use:

```xml
@page :left {
    @top-left {
        content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle)
        string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
    }
}

@page :right {
    @top-right {
        content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle)
        string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
    }
}
```

```xml
@page :left {
    @top-left {
        content: none;
    }
    @top-left-corner {
        content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle)
        string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
        white-space: nowrap;
        text-align: left;
    }
}

@page :right {
    @top-right {
        content: none;
    }
    @top-right-corner {
        content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle)
        string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
        white-space: nowrap;
        text-align: right;
    }
}
**Note:** The corner page margin boxes are fixed and limited as the available space. Above, the `text-align` and `white-space` properties are used to make the text bleed out of these boxes towards the center of the page. If you plan to add an image or artwork background, you should consider using the technique described in: How to Decorate the Header by Using a Background Image on the Entire Page (on page 1271).

How to Change the Size of Headers and Footers

This is directly related to the page margins and size.

The headers and footers are placed in the so called page margin boxes, a series of rectangular areas residing in the page margins.

To affect the margins of all page definitions, you may use the following rule:

```css
@page {
    margin-top:3cm !important;
    margin-bottom:3cm !important;
    margin-left:2cm !important;
    margin-right:2cm !important;
}
```

If you want to affect only a specific page, like the first page from chapters for instance, you must use more specific page selectors. See the Default Page Definitions (on page 1259) for details.

Note that the page margin boxes fill the entire page margin. This means the `margin-top`, for example, dictates the height of the `@top-left-corner`, `@top-left`, `@top-center`, `@top-right`, `@top-right-corner` margin boxes. These cannot have margins on themselves, so to change the position of the content inside them, you must use `padding` properties:

```css
@page {
    @top-left {
        content:"...
        padding: 1cm;
    }
    ..
}
```
How to Change the Font of the Headers and Footers

To change the font for all the headers and footers, in your customization CSS (on page 1253), add a CSS rule similar to this:

```css
@page {
  font-size: 12pt;
  font-family: "Arial";
}
```

⚠️ Important: These settings apply to all page margin boxes, but not to the text inside the page.

If you want to change the settings only for a specific page type (for example, the table of contents), use the name of the page:

```css
@page table-of-contents {
  font-size: 12pt;
  font-family: "Arial";
}
```

Related Information:

- How to Change the Header of the Table of Contents (on page 1311)

How to Add a Multi-line Copyright Notice to the Footer

Suppose you want to add a footer with the following two lines of text at the end of each page that is shown on the right side:

© 2017 - My Company Ltd
All rights reserved

For this, you need to specify a rule that matches all the right pages and adds that content in the bottom-center. In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following CSS rule:

```css
@page :right {
  @bottom-center {
    content: "© 2017 - My Company Ltd \A All rights reserved";
    font-size: 0.5em;
    color: silver;
  }
}
```
Note: Other page rules (such as the table-of-contents) override the contents of the @bottom-center because they are more specific. If you need to also print the copyright in the TOC pages, then use this as the selector:

```css
@page :right, table-of-contents:right {
  ...
}
```

Note: To use new lines (\n characters) in your headers or footers, use the \A notation, as in the example above.

How to Add a Group of Topics to the Footer

To create a footer that contains the content of several topic files, but only on the last page, there are two possible approaches:

**Method 1: Using the position:fixed CSS Property**

1. Group all the footer topics under a single parent topic, under the last topic from your DITA map. For example, you can have the following map structure:

   ```xml
   ...
   End topic
       Footer container topic
           Footer content topic 1
           Footer content topic 2
   ```

2. Add an `@outputclass = footer` on the `<topic>` root element of the footer container topic, or on its `<topicref>` in the map.

3. Use the CSS `position: fixed` property to position this topic to the bottom of the page:

   ```css
   *[outputclass = "footer"] {
     position: fixed;

     bottom: 0.5in;
     left: 0.5in;

     width:5in;
     height:200pt;
   }
   ```
Note: Make sure the width and height are enough for the content of the footer to fit. Be careful because the content might bleed out of the page. Use bottom and left values to position the block in the page.

Method 2: Using the float:footnote CSS Property

The second approach would be to declare the footer block as a footnote. Assuming the same DITA Map structure as above, you can use the following CSS fragment:

```css
*[outputclass ~= "footer"] { 
  float:footnote;
}

*[outputclass ~= "footer"]:footnote-call{ 
  color:transparent;
  font-size:0;
}

*[outputclass ~= "footer"]:footnote-marker{ 
  color:transparent;
  font-size:0;
}
```

Note: Use transparent colors and/or zero size font to avoid the display of the footnote counters.

How to Add a Background Image to the Header

A common use-case is to add a background image to one of the page corners.

```css
@page :left { 
  @bottom-left-corner{ 
    content: " ";
    background-image: url('https://www.oxygenxml.com/resellers/resources/OxygenXMLEditor_icon.svg');
    background-repeat:no-repeat;
    background-position:50% 50%;
  }
}
```

Important: Always specify a `content` property. If not, the page margin box will not be generated.
Another use-case is to use one of the `@top-left` or `@top-right` page margin boxes. These boxes have an automatic layout and they can be very small if they have no content. If there is no text to be placed over the image, use a series of non-breaking spaces (`\A0`) to increase the box width as in the following example (alternatively, you can use the technique described in How to Decorate the Header by Using a Background Image on the Entire Page (on page 1271)):

```xml
@page :left {
    @top-left{
        content: '\A0\A0\A0\A0\A0\A0\A0\A0\A0\A0';
        background-image: url('https://www.oxygenxml.com/resellers/resources/OxygenXMLEditor_icon.svg');
        background-repeat:no-repeat;
        background-position:50% 50%;
    }
}
```

**Note:** You can use raster image formats (such as PNG or JPEG), but it is best to use vector images (such as SVG or PDF). They scale very well and produce better results when printed. In addition the text from these images is searchable and can be selected (if the glyphs have not been converted to shapes) in the PDF viewer.

**Related Information:**

- Images and Figures (on page 1362)
- How to Add a Background Image for the Cover (on page 1290)

How to Decorate the Header by Using a Background Image on the Entire Page

If you want to precisely position artwork and the page margin boxes are not sufficient, it is possible to use a background image for the entire page.

This technique consists of creating an image (SVG is the best since it is a vector image) as wide as the page that would contain the logo and placing other decorations at the desired locations. This offers the best results and the position of the artwork does not depend on the page margin contents.

**Example:**

```xml
@page :left, chapter:left, chapter:first:left {
    background-image: url('img/page_background_image_with_logos_and_artwork_for_left_page.svg');
}
```

For a list of all the possible page names, see: Default Page Definitions (on page 1259).

Related Information:

- How to Add a Background Image for the Cover (on page 1290)

How to Style a Part of the Text from the Header

If you need to style a fragment of text (for example, a company slogan) with certain colors or font styles, you have several options:

- Use an SVG image as background for a page margin box or for the entire page. See: How to Add a Background Image to the Header (on page 1270).
- Use the oxy_label constructor. This is a function that creates a text label with a set of styles.

```css
@page {
    @top-right {
        content: oxy_label(text, "My Company", styles, "color:red; font-size: larger;")
        ' ' oxy_label(text, "Product", styles, "color:blue; text-decoration:underline;"));
    }
}
```

You can combine the oxy_label with oxy_xpath, to extract and style a piece of text from the document:

```css
content: oxy_label(text, oxy_xpath("/some/xpath"), styles, "color:blue; ");
```

Note: These functions work only with the Chemistry CSS processor.

Note: You cannot use string() inside an oxy_label(). As a workaround, to apply styling on the dynamic text retrieved by a string() function you can define some overall styles for the entire page margin box and then use the oxy_label to style differently the static text.

```css
@page {
    @top-right {
        color: red;
    }
}
```
• Use two adjacent page margin boxes, and style them differently:

```css
@page {
    @top-center {
        content: "First part";
        color: red;
        text-align: right;
    }
    @top-left {
        content: "- Second part";
        color: blue;
        text-align: left;
    }
}
```

How to Simplify the Header (Keep Only the Chapter Title)

The headers display information such as map title, part title, chapter title, and section title, ending in the page number.

```css
content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
```

This might be too much if you have long titles. The solution is to override the default header content.

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following CSS rule:

```css
@page :left {
    @top-left {
        content: string(chaptertitle) " | " counter(page);
    }
}
@page :right {
    @top-right {
        content: string(chaptertitle) " | " counter(page);
    }
```
Important: Some of the CSS default page rules are more important. If you see that the content does not change:

- Try to also specify the name of the page, to increase the specificity of the rules:

```
@page :left, table-of-contents:left, chapter:left{
  ...
}
@page :right, table-of-contents:right, chapter:right{
  ...
}
```

- Add an !important classifier just before the semi-colon.

```
@top-right {
  content: string(chapertitle) " | " counter(page) !important;
}
```

How to Change the Header Separators (Between Sections and Chapter Titles)

There are some strings defined for part, chapter, and sections. Each of these strings start with the " | " character as a separator. For example, in the header of a page, you may find a sequence of strings:

```
My Publication | Introduction | Getting Started
```

1. "My Publication" is the value of the `maptitle` string.
2. "Introduction" is the value of the `chaptertitle` string.
3. "Getting Started" is the value of the `sectiontitle` string.

There might be cases where you want to change this separator. You will need to recompose the header content using the above string sets. Suppose you want to use " - " as a separator. In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following CSS rule:

```
*[class ~= "topic/topic"]{is-part} > *[class ~= "topic/title"] {
  string-set: parttitle " - " counter(part, upper-roman) " - " content(),
  chapertitle ""; /* Avoid propagating a past chapter title on a new part */
}
*[class ~= "topic/topic"]{is-chapter}:not([is-part]) > *[class ~= "topic/title"] {
  string-set: chapertitle " - " counter(chapter) " - " content();
}
```
If you enabled the deep numbering for chapters and subsections (on page 1304), then use:

```xml
/*
* Alter the string sets that are shown in the header of the page.
*/

*[class =~ "map/map"]*[p|numbering~='deep'] *[class =~ "topic/topic"]*[is-part] > *[class =~ "topic/title"] {  
  string-set: parttitle " - " counter(part, upper-roman) " - " content(),  
  chaptertitle "" ; /* Avoid propagating a past chapter title on a new part */
}

*[class =~ "map/map"]*[p|numbering~='deep']*[class =~ "topic/topic"]*[is-chapter]:not([is-part]) > *[class =~ "topic/title"] {  
  string-set: chaptertitle " - " counter(chapter) " - " content(), sectiontitle "" ;
}

*[class =~ "map/map"]*[p|numbering~='deep']*[class =~ "topic/topic"]*[is-chapter]:not([is-part]) > *[class =~ "topic/topic"] > *[class =~ "topic/title"] {  
  string-set: sectiontitle " - " counter(chapter) "." counter(section1) " - " content();
}
```

How to Change the Header Styling Depending on Page Side

To modify the styling of the default page headers, add the following CSS rule in your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```css
@page :left {  
  @top-left {  
    color:navy;
    font-style:italic;
  }  
  @top-right {  
    color:red;
  }
}
```

If you intend to modify just the headers of the table of contents, use the table-of-contents page rule selector:

```css
@page table-of-contents: left {  
  @top-left {  
    color:navy;
    font-style:italic;
  }
```
How to Use XPath Computed Data or Images in the Header or Footer

A very simple approach is to use the `oxy_xpath` directly in the `content` property:

```xml
@page front-page {
    @top-center {
        content: "Created: " oxy_xpath('//*[contains(@class, " topic/created ")[1]]');
    }
}
```

**Example 1: Compute the Number of Words**

The following example computes the number of words from the publication. It counts all the words, including the ones from the TOC, but does not take the static labels into account:

```xml
@page front-page {
    @bottom-center {
        content: "Number of words: ">
            oxy_xpath("string-length(normalize-space(/)) - \n            string-length(translate(normalize-space(/),' ','')) +1");
    }
}
```

⚠️ **Note:** The XPath expression from the page rules is evaluated in the context of the document root element, so you will need to use absolute expressions starting with `/` or `//`. This is different from the case when the `oxy_xpath` is used in CSS rules that match an element. In this case, the XPath expressions are evaluated in the context of the matched element and you can use relative paths.

ℹ️ **Tip:** XPath 2.0 is supported (not schema aware).

**Example 2: Retrieve Image from a Document and Insert it in the Header**

Another example is to use an image from the document in the publication header:

```xml
<bookmeta>
    <metadata>
        ...
    </metadata>
</bookmeta>
```
If the URL returned by \texttt{oxy\_xpath} is not absolute, it is considered to be relative to the CSS file. To obtain an absolute URL from one relative to the XML document, you can use in the XPath expression functions like \texttt{resolve-uri} and \texttt{document-uri}:

```xml
@page {
    @top-center {
        content: url(oxy_xpath("resolve-uri(//*[contains(@outputclass, 'cover-image')]/@href), document-uri(/))");
    }
}
```

Example 3: Insert the Current Date in the Footer

Another example is to use the \texttt{oxy\_xpath} function to compute the current date and insert it in the publication footer:

```xml
@page {
    @bottom-left {
        content: oxy_xpath('current-date()');
    }
}
```

Related Information:

- Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide: Headers and Footers
- http://zvon.org/xxl/XPathTutorial/General/examples.html
How to Change Header Images for Each Chapter

It is possible to dynamically change an image in the header depending on the chapter. For this, you need to define an image reference in the metadata section of each chapter. One way is to specify it in the DITA map by using the `<topicmeta>` element for the `<chapter>` topic reference:

```xml
...<chapter href="topics/installing.dita">
<topicmeta>
  <data name="header-image" value="img/installing.png"/>
</topicmeta>
...```

In the above example, there is a set of key value pairs with the name `header-image`. The `img/installing.png` is an image reference relative to the DITA map URI. This information is automatically copied into the content in the merged map file (on page 1254), like this:

```xml
<topic is-chapter="true" ...>
  <title class="- topic/title ">Installing</title>
  <shortdesc class="- topic/shortdesc ">You install components to make them available for your solution.</shortdesc>
  <prolog class="- topic/prolog ">
    ...
  </prolog>
  <data class="- topic/data " name="header-image" value="img/installing.png"/>
  ...
</topic>
```

This information can be picked up from CSS:

```css
/* Define the string set variable that contains an URL */
*[class =~ "topic/topic"] *[class =~ "topic/data"] [name="header-image"] { 
  string-set: imgst oxy_url(oxy_xpath("/*/xtrf"), attr(value));
}

/* Using the value='none' stops applying the image. */
*[class =~ "topic/topic"] *[class =~ "topic/data"] [name="header-image"] [value="none"] {
  string-set: imgst "";
}
```
/* Use the string set variable in one of the page margin boxes. */

```xml
@page chapter {
    @top-left-corner {
        content: string(imgst);
        font-size: 0; /* remove the font ascent and descent */
    }
}
```

**Details:** The `@value` attribute is used to build a URL relative to the URI of the DITA map. To determine the base URI of the DITA map, the `@xtrf` attribute was used from the root element of the merged map document, extracted using the `oxy_xpath` function.

**Notes:**

- The image is always aligned vertically to the middle of available space from the page margin box.
- Make sure you use an image of the correct size. For example, if you want to place the image in the top-left corner of the page, assuming the top and left page margins are 1 in, then make sure the image is a square having a size of 1 in.
- The image is applied to all pages that follow the data element, until another data element changes it:

```xml
...<chapter href="topics/installing.dita">
    <topicmeta>
        <data name="header-image" value="img/installing.png"/>
    </topicmeta>
</chapter>

<chapter href="..."> <!-- Uses the same installing.png image --></chapter>
<chapter href="..."> <!-- Uses the same installing.png image --></chapter>
<chapter href="..."> <!-- Uses the same installing.png image --></chapter>
<chapter href="topics/change.dita">
    <topicmeta>
        <data name="header-image" value="img/change.png"/>
    </topicmeta>
</chapter>

<chapter href="..."> <!-- Uses the same change.png image --></chapter>
<chapter href="..."> <!-- Uses the same change.png image --></chapter>
<chapter href="..."> <!-- Uses the same change.png image --></chapter>
```

To clear the image, use the `none` value:
How to Add a Line Under the Header

There are two ways to add a horizontal line under the header.

Method 1: Add a Border in the Page Margin Boxes

To add a horizontal line that would stretch across the width of the page, add a bottom border to each of the 5 margin boxes in the top side of the page (top-left-corner, top-left, top-center, top-right, top-right-corner).

If you consider that the space between the header and the bottom border is too large, you could also change the alignment by adding a `vertical-align: bottom;` declaration in the page margin boxes.

For example, if you need to set some text as a header in the top-left margin box and insert a horizontal line under it, the customization CSS would look something like this:

```css
@page chapter, chapter:first: left:right, front-page{
    padding-top: 1em;

    @top-left {
        content: "Custom header";
        color: gray;
        border-bottom: 1px solid black;
        vertical-align: bottom;
    }

    @top-center{
        content: " ";
        border-bottom: 1px solid black;
        vertical-align: bottom;
    }

    @top-right{
        content: " ";
        border-bottom: 1px solid black;
        vertical-align: bottom;
    }
```
}{@top-right-corner{
  content: " ";
  border-bottom: 1px solid black;
  vertical-align: bottom;
}]

}{@top-left-corner{
  content: " ";
  border-bottom: 1px solid black;
  vertical-align: bottom;
}]

Note: The padding-top: 1em; is used to avoid the border at the bottom of the header that joins with the page content.

Method 2: Use a Background Image

An alternative method is to add a horizontal line/border under an existing header (or in any other part of the page) using an SVG image, as described in How to Add a Background Image to the Header (on page 1270).

Metadata

DITA has a solid vocabulary for specifying metadata. There are <prolog> elements in the topics, and <topicmeta>, <bookmeta> elements in the bookmaps. They can be used to define authors, dates, audiences, organizations, etc. See: https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/archSpec/base/metadata-in-maps-and-topics.html

It is up to you to decide where this information should be presented, in the PDF content or in the PDF document properties.

Metadata - XML Fragment

In the merged map file (on page 1254), the metadata section is placed inside the <oxy:front-page> element. This is different from the original placement in the map or bookmap - after the title, but allows usage of information from it in the title page.
Bookmaps

This is an example of a section taken from a merged bookmap. It only contains some of the possible metadata elements. The bookmeta metadata section is inherited from topicmeta:

```xml
         xmlns:opentopic-index="http://www.idiominc.com/opentopic/index"
         cascade="merge"
         ditaarch:DITAArchVersion="1.3">


<bookmeta xmlns:dita-ot="http://dita-ot.sourceforge.net/ns/201007/dita-ot"
           class="- map/topicmeta bookmap/bookmeta">
  <author class="- topic/author">Howe Tuduit</author>
  <bookid class="- topic/data bookmap/bookid">
    <isbn class="- topic/data bookmap/isbn">071271271X</isbn>
    <booknumber class="- topic/data bookmap/booknumber">SG99-9999-00</booknumber>
    <maintainer class="- topic/data bookmap/maintainer">
      <organization class="- topic/data bookmap/organization">ACME Tools</organization>
      <person class="- topic/data bookmap/person"/>
    </maintainer>
  </bookid>
  <bookrights class="- topic/data bookmap/bookrights">
    ...
  </bookrights>
  <bookowner class="- topic/data bookmap/bookowner">
    <organization class="- topic/data bookmap/organization">ACME Tools, Inc.</organization>
  </bookowner>
</bookmeta>

<oxy:front-page-title>
...
</oxy:front-page-title>
```

For the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type, the merged map is further processed resulting in a collection of HTML5 `<div>` elements. These elements preserve the original DITA `<class>` attribute values and add a new value derived from the DITA element name.
Maps

The maps have a more simple structure, they use the `<topicmeta>` element for metadata sections. This is also a simplified example, as there may be many more elements in the metadata section:

```xml
    xmlns:opentopic-index="http://www.idiominc.com/opentopic/index"
    cascade="merge"
    class="- map/map">
  <ditaarch:DITAArchVersion>1.3</ditaarch:DITAArchVersion>
  ...
</map>
```
For the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type, the merged map is further processed resulting in a collection of HTML5 `<div>` elements:

```
  <topicmeta class="- map/topicmeta ">
    <author class="- topic/author ">Dan C</author>
    <metadata class="- topic/metadata ">
      <prodinfo class="- topic/prodinfo ">
        <prodname class="- topic/prodname ">oXygen PDF CSS DITA Plugin</prodname>
      </prodinfo>
    </metadata>
    <audience class="- topic/audience "/>
  </topicmeta>
```

Metadata - Built-in CSS rules

The `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-meta.css` file contains the rules that extract metadata.
How to Add the Publication Audience to the Custom PDF Metadata

The audience element indicates the users the publication is addressing. This can be placed inside a `<topicmeta>` element in a `<map>` as in the following example:

```xml
<map>
  ...
  <topicmeta>
    ...
    <audience type="programmer" job="programming" experiencelevel="expert"/>
  </topicmeta>
  ...
</map>
```

To collect the `@type` attribute, add the following in your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```css
*[^class ~= "map/map"] >[^class ~= "map/topicmeta"] >[^class ~= "topic/audience"] { -oxy-pdf-meta-custom: "Audience" attr(type); }
```

**Note:** It is best to use the class selector (such as `^[class "map/topicmeta"]`) instead of `topicmeta` to cover cases where the elements are specialized (for instance, in a bookmap the `bookmeta` is a `topicmeta`, so your selector will also function for bookmaps, not only simple maps.

**Note:** The selector begins with `map >` to choose the `<topicmeta>` that is a direct child of the `<map>`, not other `<topicmeta>` elements from other `<topicref>` elements.

The metadata is displayed in the Custom tab of the Document Properties dialog box from Acrobat Reader:
How to Show Metadata in the Cover Page

Suppose you need to present the author and the ISBN just under the publication title. Your bookmap contains:

```xml
<bookmap id="taskbook">
    <booktitle>
        <booklibrary>Retro Tools</booklibrary>
        <mainbooktitle>Product tasks</mainbooktitle>
        <booktitlealt>Tasks and what they can do</booktitlealt>
    </booktitle>
    <bookmeta>
        <author>Howe Tuduit</author>
        <critdates>
            <created date="1/1/2015"/>
            <revised modified="3/4/2016"/>
            <revised modified="3/5/2016"/>
        </critdates>
        <bookid>
            <isbn>071271271X</isbn>
            <booknumber>SG99-9999-00</booknumber>
        </bookid>
    </bookmeta>
</bookmap>
```
The entire `<booktitle>` element content is displayed on the first page of the PDF, so suppose you need to add the information after it.

In your **customization CSS (on page 1253)**, add the following CSS rules:

```css
 *[class ~="bookmap/booktitle"]:after {
    display:block;
    content: "by " oxy_xpath('///*[contains(@class, " bookmap/bookmeta ")]'/
     *[contains(@class, " topic/author ")]//text()');
    margin-top: 4em;
    text-align: center;
    color: gray;
}
 *[class ~="bookmap/booktitle"]:after(2) {
    display:block;
    content: "ISBN ",oxy_xpath('///*[contains(@class, " bookmap/isbn ")]'/text()');
    text-align: center;
    color: gray;
}
```

The following CSS extensions were used in this example:

- **oxy_xpath** - Executes an XPath expression and returns a string content. Use this whenever you need to extract data from elements other than the one matched by the CSS rule selector.
- **:after(N)** - Creates more than one `after` pseudo element. The argument value represents how far the generated content is from the real content. In the example above, the content of the :after is closer to the title (upper) than the content of the :after(2).

Note: The `attr()` CSS function can also be used but is limited to extracting attribute values from the matched element.

**Generating Synthetic Pages for Metadata.**

Suppose you need to show this information on a page that follows the title page, instead of on the title page. In this case, you need to prepare a named page and place the content on it. In your **customization CSS (on page 1253)**, add the following CSS rules:

```css
@page page-for-meta {
    background-color: yellow; /* Just to see it better*/
    @top-left-corner {
        content:""; /* Remove the default header */
    }
```
How to Show Metadata in the Header or Footer

The header and footer are composed of page margin boxes that can be populated with static text by using string-sets.

If you need to add some of the map metadata to the header of the front page (for example, the creation date), add the following CSS rules in your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```css
*[class ~="bookmap/booktitle!"]\:after {
  page: page-for-meta;
}
*[class ~="bookmap/booktitle!"]\:after(2) {
  page: page-for-meta;
}
```

```css
*[class ~="front-page/front-page"] >
  *[class ~="map/topicmeta"] >
    *[class ~="topic/critdates"] >
      *[class ~="topic/created"]{
        string-set: mapcreated attr(date);
      }

@page front-page {
  @top-center {
    content: "Created: " string(mapcreated);
  }
}
```

**Note:** The front-page is the name of a page that used to present the element with the class “front-page/front-page”. The above page rule is combined with the default styles.

Cover (Title) Page

Customizing the cover page is one of the most requested customization requests.
The merged map file (on page 1254) contains the `<oxy:front-page>` element, as a child of the root element. This contains the metadata and an `<oxy:front-page-title>` element with the title structure.

```xml
         xmlns:oxygen="http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author">
  <bookmeta xmlns:dita-ot="http://dita-ot.sourceforge.net/ns/201007/dita-ot">
    ...
  </bookmeta>
  <oxy:front-page-title>
    <booktitle xmlns:dita-ot="http://dita-ot.sourceforge.net/ns/201007/dita-ot"
               class="- topic/title bookmap/booktitle ">
      <booklibrary class="- topic/ph bookmap/booklibrary ">Retro Tools</booklibrary>
      <mainbooktitle class="- topic/ph bookmap/mainbooktitle ">Tasks</mainbooktitle>
      <booktitlealt class="- topic/ph bookmap/booktitlealt ">Product tasks</booktitlealt>
    </booktitle>
  </oxy:front-page-title>
</oxy:front-page>
```

For the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type, the merged map is further processed resulting in a collection of HTML5 `<div>` elements. These elements preserve the original DITA `@class` attribute values and add a new value derived from the DITA element name.

```xml
<div class="- map/map bookmap/bookmap bookmap" ... >
  <div class="- front-page/front-page front-page">
    ...
  </div>
  <div class="- front-page/front-page-title front-page-title">
    <div class="- topic/title bookmap/booktitle booktitle">
      <booklibrary class="- topic/ph bookmap/booklibrary booklibrary">Retro Tools</booklibrary>
      <mainbooktitle class="- topic/ph bookmap/mainbooktitle bookmainbooktitle ">Tasks</mainbooktitle>
      <booktitlealt class="- topic/ph bookmap/booktitlealt booktitlealt">Product tasks</booktitlealt>
    </div>
  </div>
...
```
Cover Page - Built-in CSS rules

The element with the class `frontpage/frontpage` is associated with a page named `front-page` with no headers or footers. The front page title is styled with a bigger font. The built-in CSS rules are in `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-front-page.css`.

```css
@media print {
  *[class~="front-page/front-page"] {
    page: front-page;
  }

  *[class~="front-page/front-page-title"] {
    display:block;
    text-align:center;
    margin-top:3in;
    font-size:2em;
    font-family:arial, helvetica, sans-serif;
    font-weight:bold;
  }

  @page front-page {
    @top-left-corner { content:none }
    @top-left { content:none }
    @top-center { content:none }
    @top-right { content:none }
    @top-right-corner { content:none }
    @bottom-left-corner { content:none }
    @bottom-left { content:none }
    @bottom-center { content:none }
    @bottom-right { content:none }
    @bottom-right-corner{ content:none }
  }
}
```

**Note:** This is listed solely for illustration purposes, as the plugin might use something different.

How to Add a Background Image for the Cover

The simplest way is to create an SVG image as large as the entire physical page and set it as the background for the `front-page`. This makes it very easy to accomplish a good positioning of the
graphical elements or artwork. In the foreground, you can place text fragments using a series of :after pseudo elements bound to the front page title.

To set the size to an SVG image, you should specify the @width and @height attributes on the <svg> root element using specified unit values (in, cm, etc.) This should be enough only if all the coordinates from your drawing have unit identifiers.

If you are using unit-less coordinates in your drawing like the following:

```xml
<svg xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg" width="8.5in" height="11in" viewBox="0 0 600 850">
</svg>
```

then make sure you also specify a @viewBox attribute on the <svg> root element that defines the abstract rectangle that contains the drawing:

```xml
<svg xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg" width="8.5in" height="11in" viewBox="0 0 110 110">
   <desc>A gradient as big as a page.</desc>
   <defs>
      <linearGradient id="lc"
         x1="0%" y1="0%"
         x2="0%" y2="100%"
         spreadMethod="pad">
         <stop offset="0%" stop-color="#00DD00" stop-opacity="1"/>
         <stop offset="100%" stop-color="#00AA00" stop-opacity="1"/>
      </linearGradient>
   </defs>
   <rect x="5" y="5" width="100" height="100" rx="10" ry="10"
      style="fill:url(#lc);
      stroke: #005000;
      stroke-width: 3;"/>
   <text x="33%" y="50%" color="#FFFFAA"> Sample </text>
</svg>
```
This example shows a gradient. It is the size of a US-LETTER page and can be used in a publication using this page size.

**Note:** You can use raster image formats (such as PNG or JPEG), but it is best to use vector images (such as SVG or PDF). They scale very well and produce better results when printed. In addition, the text from these images is searchable and can be selected (if the glyphs have not been converted to shapes) in the PDF viewer.

In your **customization CSS (on page 1253)**, add the following:

```css
@page front-page {
    background-image: url("us-letter.svg");
    background-position:center;
}
```

For smaller artworks, you can use `background-position` with percentage values to position and center the artwork (for example, a company logo):

```css
@page front-page {
    background-image: url("company-logo.svg");
    background-position:50% 5%; /* The first is the alignment on the X axis, the second on the Y axis.*/
    background-repeat:no-repeat;
}
```

**Note:** The text from the SVG or PDF background images are searchable in the PDF reader.

**Related Information:**

- Oxygen PDF Chemistry: Graphics

**How to Change Styling of the Cover Page Title**

Match the front page title element in your **customization CSS (on page 1253)** based on its class attribute:

```css
*[class =~ "front-page/front-page-title"] {
    margin-top: 1in;
    font-size: 3em;
}
```
How to Add Text to the Cover Page

If you need to add arbitrary text to the cover page, you can use the front page title element as an anchor and add as many blocks of text as you need after it, and style them differently.

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following:

```css
*{class ~="front-page/front-page-title":after(1)} {
  display:block;
  content:"DRAFT VERSION";
  font-size: large;
  color: red;
  text-align:center;
}

*{class ~="front-page/front-page-title":after(2)} {
  display:block;
  content:"DO NOT DISTRIBUTE WITHOUT PERMISSION";
  font-size: large;
  color: red;
  text-align:center;
  font-style: italic;
}
```

The result is:

![Cover page with "DRAFT VERSION" and "DO NOT DISTRIBUTE WITHOUT PERMISSION"](image)

To use content from the document, you can use the `oxy_xpath` function in the `content` property. For a more complex example, including the generation of a new page for the synthetic `:after` elements, see: How to Show Metadata in the Cover Page (on page 1286).

Related Information:
How to Place Cover on the Right or Left Side

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following CSS rules:

```css
* [class =~ "front-page/front-page"]{
    page-break-before: left;
}
```

**Note:** This will create an empty page at the beginning of the publication, moving the cover content on the needed side.

For more information, see: Oxygen PDF Chemistry: Controlling Page Breaks.

Related Information:

- Double Side Pagination (on page 1321)

How to Add a Specific Number of Empty Pages After the Cover Page

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following CSS rules:

```css
@page my-blank-page {
    /* Hide the page numbers */
    @top-left { content: none; }
    @top-right { content: none; }
}

*[class =~ 'front-page/front-page']::after(1){
    page:my-blank-page;
    display:block;
    content: '\2002';
    color:transparent;
    page-break-after:always;
}

*[class =~ 'front-page/front-page']::after(2){
    page:my-blank-page;
    display:block;
```
Note: The \2002 character is a space that is not shown on the pages, but gives a value for the content property.

Related Information:

- How to Force an Odd or Even Number of Pages in a Chapter (on page 1322)

How to Add a Copyright Page after the Map Cover (Not for Bookmaps)

Regular DITA maps do not have the concept of a copyright notice. This is available only in the DITA bookmap structure.

If you are constrained to using a regular map and you need to add a copyright page between the front cover and the TOC, use the following technique:

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), declare a new page layout:

```css
@page copyright-notice-page {
  @top-left {
    content:none; /* Clear the headers for the copyright page */
  }
  @top-right {
    content:none;
  }
}
```

The oxy:front-page element contains the title of the publication and generates the cover page. A synthetic :after element is created that follows this element and it is placed on a different page.
display:block;

page: copyright-notice-page; /* Moves the synthetic element on a new page. */

margin-top:90%; /* use margins to position the text in the page */
margin-left: 5em;
margin-right: 5em;

content: "Copyright 2018-2019 MyCorp Inc. \A All rights reserved";

text-align:center; /* More styling */
color:blue;
}

If you need to add more content as blocks, use the :after(2), :after(3) pseudo elements:

front-page:after(2){
    display:block;
    page: copyright-notice-page; /* Continue on the same page as the first ':after'. */
    content: "Some more styled text";
    color:red;
}

If you want to extract information from the document, use the oxy_xpath() function. For example, if the copyright info is stored in the map like this:

<map ...>
    <topicmeta>
        <copyright>
            <copyryear year="2018"/>
            <copyrholder>MyCorp Inc.</copyrholder>
        </copyright>
    </topicmeta>
    ...
</map>

Use:

front-page:after(3){
    display:block;
    page: copyright-notice-page;
    content: "Year: " oxy_xpath('//*:front-page/topicmeta/copyright/copyryear/@year')
How to Remove the Cover Page and TOC

If you need to hide or remove the cover page, the table of contents or other structures, match the elements with a "front-page/front-page" and "toc/toc" classes in your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```css
/*[class ~='map/map'] > *[class ~='toc/toc'] { display:none !important; }
*/[class ~='map/map'] > *[class ~='front-page/front-page']{
    display:none !important;
}
*[class~='topic/topic'][is-chapter] {
    -oxy-page-group : auto;
}
```

Front Matter and Back Matter

The **front matter** is a series of topics that are usually placed after the cover page and before the TOC or the content.

The **back matter** is a series of topics that are usually placed after the content of the book.

Front Matter and Back Matter - XML Fragment

In the merged map file (on page 1254), the frontmatter topics are wrapped in an `<oxy:front-matter>` element that has the class `bookmap/frontmatter` (it is a clone of the original `<frontmatter>` element from the map):

```xml
<bookmap xmlns:ditaarch="http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/" ...>
        class=" front-page/front-page ">
        ...
    </oxy:front-page>

        class=" map/topicref bookmap/frontmatter ">
        <concept xmlns:dita-ot="http://dita-ot.sourceforge.net/ns/201007/dita-ot"
            class="- topic/topic concept/concept ">
            ...
        </concept>
    </oxy:front-matter>
</bookmap>
```
For the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation type, the merged map is further processed resulting in a collection of HTML5 `<div>` elements. These elements preserve the original DITA `@class` attribute values and add a new value derived from the DITA element name.

```xml
<div xmlns:ditaarch="http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/" ...>
  <div class=" front-page/front-page front-page">
    ...
  </div>
  <div class=" map/topicref bookmap/frontmatter frontmatter">
    <div class=" topic/topic concept/concept " id="unique_1" oid="concept-1">
      ...
    </div>
  </div>
</div>
```

**Front Matter and Back Matter - Built-in CSS**

The built-in CSS rules are in `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-bookmap-frontmatter-backmatter.css`. By default, it associates the top-level topics that do not represent chapters to a `matter-page` style of page layout. Each child topic starts on a new page.

**Related Information:**

- Page Headers and Footers *(on page 1265)*

**How to Remove Page Breaks Between Front Matter Child Topics**

If you do not like the fact that all the topics that enter a bookmap frontmatter start on a new page, you can disable this by using the following rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1253)*:

```css
*[class ~="map/map"] > *[class ~="topic/topic":not([is-chapter])]{
  page-break-before: auto;
}
```
How to Style the Front Matter and Back Matter Topics

**Style all the Topics with the Same Aspect**

All the topics referenced from the `<frontmatter>` and `<backmatter>` bookmap elements are formatted using the `matter-page` as defined in Default Page Definitions (on page 1259). In the merged file, the `<backmatter>` and `<frontmatter>` elements are omitted, and their child topic content is matched using a CSS rule like the one below:

```
*[^class ~ "map/map"] > *[^class ~ "topic/topic"]:not([is-chapter]){
  page: matter-page;
...
}
```

**Style the Topics Depending on Their Role**

There might be cases when you need to distinguish between different topics having different roles in your publication:

- Preface
- Notice
- Abstract
- Copyright

These are referenced from the DITA map by specialized `<topicref>` elements, with different class attribute values.

The class attribute values are then passed by the transformation process onto the corresponding topic elements from the merged map content. For example, a topic that was referenced by a `<preface>` map element now has a "bookmap/preface" value in its `topicrefclass` attribute:

```
<topic
  class="- topic/topic"
  id="unique_1"
  topicrefclass="- map/topicref bookmap/preface "..>
...
</topic>
```

This can be used to match and apply different styling, or even a different page layout:

```
@page preface-page {
    background-color:silver;
    @top-center{
```
Numbering

The topics in this section contain some technical details in case you need to fine-tune the way the numbering works.

Numbering - Built-in CSS

The built-in CSS rules are in:

- `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-numbering-shallow.css`
- `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-numbering-deep.css`
- `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-numbering-deep-chapter-scope.css`
- `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-numbering-deep-chapter-scope-no-page-reset.css`

The first CSS (shallow) contains rules that add a "Chapter NN" before the first-level topics from the publication, the second one (deep) contains rules that add a deep structure of counters on all topics referenced from the map (at any level), the third one (chapter-scope) creates a chapter scope-oriented numbering (meaning that the numbering for pages, tables, figures, and links to them are reset for each chapter), and the last one is similar to the third except that page numbers do not reset. For more details, see Numbering Types (on page 1304).

Numbering - Input XML Fragments

The numbering affects multiple logical parts of your publication, the table of contents, headers/footers, chapter titles, figures and tables titles:

The Table of Contents

The table of contents is a tree of `<topicref>` elements.
Note: The `<opentopic:map>` element contains the effective table of contents structure.

Note: The TOC items are the elements with the class: `- map/topicref`.

Note: The ones identified as chapters have the `@is-chapter` attribute set.

For the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type, the merged map is further processed resulting in a collection of HTML5 `<div>` elements. These elements preserve the original DITA `<class>` attribute values and add a new value derived from the DITA element name.

```
<div class="- map/map map" ...>
  
  <div
    class=" front-page/front-page front-page">
    ...
  
  </div>

  <div class=" toc/toc toc">
    
    <div class="- topic/title title">Publication Title</div>

    <div is-chapter="true" class="- map/topicref topicref" ... >
      
      <div class="- map/topicmeta topicmeta" ... >

        <div href="#unique_1" class="- topic/navtitle navtitle">Overview</div>

        ...

      </div>

    </div>

  </div>

</div>
```
The Header and Footers

These are based on string sets generated for the titles. The complete set of strings is defined in: [INSTALLATION_DIR]/css/print/p-pages-and-headers.css.

The CSS rules that build the string sets are matching the map title from the front page and the titles from the content.

For the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformations:

The main content is organized as follows:
For the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformations:

```
<opentopic:map>
  ...
  ...
</opentopic:map>
```

**Note:** The topic content comes after the `<opentopic:map>` element.

**Note:** The child topics are the elements that have the class `-topic/topic` included in the parents.
Note: The ones identified as chapters have the @is-chapter attribute set.

### The Titles of Chapters

The titles from the content are children of the topics:

```
<topic class="- topic/topic" id="unique_2" oid="dcpp_parameters">
  <title class="- topic/title">Parameters</title>
  ...
</topic>
```

For the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformations:

```
<div class="- topic/topic topic" id="unique_2" oid="dcpp_parameters">
  <div class="- topic/title title">Parameters</div>
  ...
</div>
```

Note: The title elements have the class: - topic/title. The actual element name can be different.

### Numbering Types

The type of numbering is controlled by the parameter `args.css.param.numbering`.

This parameter activates various sets of CSS rules from the built-in CSS. By default, only the first-level topics (the chapters) are numbered (shallow numbering). The following values are accepted:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Chapters</th>
<th>Sections</th>
<th>Figures &amp; Tables</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shallow</td>
<td>numberedno</td>
<td>counted from the start of the publication</td>
<td>from the start of the publication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deep</td>
<td>numberednumbered</td>
<td>counted from the start of the publication</td>
<td>from the start of the publication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deep-chapter-scope</td>
<td>numberednumbered</td>
<td>numbering is restarted at the beginning of each chapter, adds the chapter number in their titles (and in the links to them), and in the list of tables and list of figures sections</td>
<td>restarted at the beginning of each chapter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deep-chapter-scope-no-page-reset</td>
<td>numberednumbered</td>
<td>numbering is restarted at the beginning of each chapter, adds the chapter number in their titles</td>
<td>from the start of the publication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Value | Chapters | Sections | Figures & Tables | Pages
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
(and in the links to them), and in the list of tables and list of figures sections

Note: The deep-chapter-scope and deep-chapter-scope-no-page-reset values are only available for the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation scenario.

Examples

Shallow

Each chapter is numbered, but sections are not numbered. Figures, tables, and pages are numbered sequentially from the start of the publication and they do not reset.

1. First Chapter
   Page 1
   Section
   Table 1
   Table 2
   Section
   Page 2
   Table 3
2. Second Chapter
   Page 3
   Section
   Table 4
   Table 5
   Section
   Page 4

Deep

Each chapter and section is numbered (sections are prefixed with the chapter number). Figures, tables, and pages are numbered sequentially from the start of the publication and they do not reset.

1. First Chapter
   Page 1
   Section 1.1
   Table 1
   Section 1.2
   Table 2
   Page 2
Deep Chapter Scope

Each chapter is independent (so it can be read separately, as a separate part of your publication). The section, page, figure, and table counters (and links to them) restart at each chapter. The general cross reference links also display the chapter number before the page number to clearly specify the target.

Deep Chapter Scope No Page Reset

Each chapter is independent (so it can be read separately, as a separate part of your publication). The section, figure, and table counters (and links to them) restart at each chapter, but the page numbers do not reset. The generic cross reference links contain only the page number.
How to Remove the 'Chapter NN' Prefix from Table of Contents and Content

If you are using the shallow numbering CSS (this is the default), and you want to hide the "Chapter" prefix, use the following rules in your customization CSS (on page 1253):

For the TOC:

```css
*[class ~="map/topicmeta"] > *[class ~="topic/navtitle"]:before {
    display:none !important;
}
```

For the titles in the content, change the content of the title :before (this example just uses the chapter number):

```css
*[class ~="topic/topic"]>[is-chapter]:not([is-part]) > *[class ~="topic/title"]:before {
    content: counter(chapter) ". " !important;
}
```

Table of Contents

The table of contents is a hierarchy of topic titles with links to the topic content.

For plain maps, the TOC is automatically generated. For DITA bookmaps, you will need to add a `<toc>` element in the `<booklists>` element (inside the `<frontmatter> `):
Related Information:

- Table of Contents for Chapters (Mini TOC) (on page 1314)
- List of Tables/Figures (on page 1318)
- Index (on page 1326)

Table of Contents - XML Fragment

In the merged map file (on page 1254), the `<opentopic:map>` contains a hierarchy of `<topicref>` elements, or other elements (such as `<chapter>` or `<part>`) that are specializations of `<topicref>`. Each of the `<topicref>` elements include a metadata section that includes the topic title.
For the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation type, the merged map is further processed resulting in a collection of HTML5 `<div>` elements. These elements preserve the original DITA `@class` attribute values and add a new value derived from the DITA element name.
Note: The `<oxy:toc-title>` element is used as a placeholder for the name of the TOC. For instance, you can use the string "Contents", specified on a pseudo element, in the CSS.

Table of Contents - Built-in CSS

The built-in CSS rules are in: `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-toc.css`.

Related Information:

- Page Headers and Footers (on page 1265)

How to Style the Table of Contents Entries

Note: Each of the items from the table of contents is an element that has the `map/topicref` class.

The following example uses the italic font for the label and changes the color and style of the connecting line between the title and the page number.

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following two selectors:
And if you need to alter the indent of the nested table of content items, use the following selector:

```html
*[^ "map/topicref"]^*[^ "map/topicref"] { 
  margin-left: 1em;
}
```

The numbers can be styled like this:

```html
*[^ "map/topicref"]^*[^ "map/topicmeta"]^*[^ "map/topicmeta"]^*[^ "topic/navtitle"]^*[^ "topic/navtitle"]^*[^ "topic/navtitle"] { 
  color: blue;
}
```

The following is an example of customizing the font size for the items representing chapters. The chapters are level one topics and are marked in the merged DITA document TOC with the attribute `@is-chapter`.

```html
[^ "map/topicref"]^[is-chapter = "true"]^*[^ "map/topicmeta"]^*[^ "map/topicmeta"]^*[^ "topic/navtitle"] { 
  font-size: 2em;
}
```

How to Change the Header of the Table of Contents

In the built-in CSS, there is a page named `table-of-contents`. The default is to have the word 'Contents' in its header (this is localized, using the `toc-header` string defined in the `p-18n.css`) alternating in the left or right side of the header:

```html
@page table-of-contents: left {
  @top-left {
```
If you need to change this string, or change the color, you should use the following \texttt{@page} selectors as a starting point in your customization CSS \textit{(on page 1253)}:

\begin{verbatim}
@page table-of-contents: left {
    @top-left {
        content: "My publication table of contents | " counter(page, lower-roman);
        color:red;
    }
}

@page table-of-contents: right {
    @top-right {
        content: "My publication table of contents | " counter(page, lower-roman);
        color:red;
    }
}
\end{verbatim}

Related Information:

- Localization \textit{(on page 1344)}

How to Make the Table of Contents Start on an Odd Page

In your customization CSS \textit{(on page 1253)}, add the following snippet for the \texttt{table-of-contents} page:

\begin{verbatim}
@page table-of-contents{
    -oxy-initial-page-number: auto-odd;
}
\end{verbatim}

Related Information:
How to Display a Topic Before the Table of Contents

To display a topic before the table-of-contents page, follow these steps:

1. Make sure the topic is referenced on the first level in the DITA map.
2. Set the `@outputclass` to `before-toc` on the `<topicref>`.

```xml
<topicref href="pathToMyTopic" outputclass="before-toc">
```

**Result:** When the PDF is processed, the topic will automatically appear before the table of contents.

Related Information:

- Controlling the Publication Content (on page 1376)

How to Display Short Descriptions in the TOC

To display the short descriptions from the topics in the table of contents, you need to make the `<shortdesc>` element visible.

The following example only makes the short descriptions associated with the chapters visible. The chapters are level one topics and are marked in the merged DITA document TOC with the attribute `@is-chapter`.

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following CSS selector:

```css
*[class ^= "map/topicref"]][is-chapter = "true"] > *[class ^= "map/topicmeta"] > *[class ^= "map/shortdesc"] { 
  display:block; /* The default is none - the shortdesc is hidden. */
  color:gray;
}
```

**Note:** If you need all the TOC item short descriptions to be visible, remove the `[@is-chapter]` condition.
How to Remove Entries from the TOC

To remove entries from the table of contents, set the `@toc="no"` attribute on the topicrefs from the map that need to be removed. This is sometimes desirable for the topics listed in the frontmatter or backmatter when using a bookmap.

How to Hide the TOC

To hide the TOC, you have multiple options:

- Use a DITA bookmap instead of a DITA map, and omit the `<toc>` element from the `<booklists>`.
  An example bookmap can be found in the DITA 1.3 Spec. This is the best approach.
- Use the transformation parameter: `hide.frontpage.toc.index.glossary` (on page 1232).
- Use a `display:none` property to hide the element that contains the TOC structure, and also remove it from the PDF bookmarks tree:

  ```plaintext
  *[class =~ "map/map"] > *[class =~ "toc/toc"] { display:none; }
  *[class =~ "map/map"] > *[class =~ "toc/toc"] > *[class =~ "toc/title"]{ bookmark-label: none; -ah-bookmark-label: none; }
  ```

Related Information:

- Transformation Parameters (on page 1230)

Table of Contents for Chapters (Mini TOC)

To add a mini table of contents for each chapter, you need to:

- Use DITA bookmaps instead of regular maps.
- Set the `args.chapter.layout` transformation parameter to the value: MINITOC.

This table of contents is positioned between the chapter title and the chapter child topics. It consists of a list of links pointing to the child topics, positioned in the left side of the page, and a description in the right side. This content is collected from the topic file referenced by the chapter `<topicref>` in the map.
Chapter 1. Introduction

About this framework.
The framework is DITA.

Description
The framework is composed by a large set of modules.

The above chapter example has the following DITA map fragment:

```xml
<chapter href="topics/chapter-introduction.dita">
  <topicref href="topics/introduction-about.dita" />
  <topicref href="topics/introduction-description.dita" />
</chapter>
```

The `chapter-introduction.dita` file provides the description content that is in the right side of the page. The children `<topicref>` elements generate the mini TOC links.

Table of Contents for Chapters (Mini TOC) - XML Fragment

In the merged XML file, the mini TOC is built from a related links section and some `<div>` elements that wrap the entire mini TOC and the description area.

- **chapter/minitoc**
  Wraps the entire structure, including the content of the chapter `<topicref>`.

- **chapter/minitoc-links**
  Wraps the `<related-links>` element. Note that the label of the related links list is internationalized.

- **chapter/minitoc-desc**
  Contains the entire content of the topic file referenced by the chapter `<topicref>` element in the map.
When using the pdf-css-html5 transformation, this structure is converted to a set of HTML elements, preserving the class values:
Table of Contents for Chapters (Mini TOC) - Built-in CSS

The built-in CSS rules are in: [PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-chapters-minitoc.css.

How to Style the Table of Contents for Chapters (Mini TOC)

Suppose that you do not want the links and the chapter description to be side by side, but instead place the links above the description. Also, you may choose to remove the label above the links, and put all the links in a colored rectangle, with decimal numbers before them.
In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following selectors:

```css
/* Change from inline to blocks to stack them one over the other. */

*[class~="chapter/minitoc-desc"],
*[class~="chapter/minitoc-links"] {
  display: block;
  width: 100%;
}

/* No need for the 'Topics:' label. */

*[class~="chapter/minitoc-links"] *[class~="topic/desc"] {
  display: none;
}

/* Add background for the links list. */

*[class~="chapter/minitoc-links"] {
  background-color:silver;
  padding:0.5em;
}

/* Remove the border and the padding from the description. We do not need that separator. */

*[class~="chapter/minitoc-desc"] {
  border-left:none;
  padding-left:0;
}

/* Add a number before each of the links. */

*[class~="chapter/minitoc-links"] *[class="topic/link"] {
  display:list-item;
  list-style-type:decimal;
  margin-left:1em;
}

Related Information:

- How to Speed up CSS Development and Debugging (on page 1256)
List of Tables/Figures

To activate these:

1. The map must be a DITA bookmap.
2. There must be a `<figurelist>` or `<tablelist>` in the frontmatter or backmatter. In the following example, both of the lists are added just after the table of contents (the `<toc>` element is the placeholder where the table of contents will be created):

```xml
<frontmatter>
  <booklists>
    <toc/>
    <figurelist/>
    <tablelist/>
  </booklists>
</frontmatter>
```

How to Set a Header for a List of Tables/Figures

Suppose you want to set the headline "Figure List" on the second and subsequent pages associated to a list of figures and something similar for a list of tables.

Start by associating pages to the list of figures and tables from the merged file:

```xml
*[class~="placeholder/tablelist"] {
  page:tablelist;
  color:green;
}
*[class~="placeholder/figurelist"]{
    page:figurelist;
    color:green;
}
```

**Note**: The "placeholder/tablelist" is the class name of the output generated from the `<tablelist>` bookmap element.

Then define the pages:

```xml
@page figurelist {
  @top-left { content: none; }
  @top-center { content: "Figure List"; }
  @top-right { content: none; }
```
How to Remove the Numbers Before a List of Tables or Figures

Suppose you need to remove the "Figure NN" prefix before each entry of a list of figures.

An entry in the generated list of figures from the merged map looks like this:

```xml
<entry class="- listentry/entry " href="#unique_6_Connect_42_fig_rjy_spn_xgb">
  <prefix class="- listentry/prefix ">Figure</prefix>
  <number class="- listentry/number ">4</number>
  <title class="- topic/title ">This is another figure</title>
</entry>
```

For the HTML merged map, the element names are all `div` elements but they have the same class.

So, to hide the label and the number, use:

```css
*{class="listentry/prefix"},
*{class="listentry/number"} {
  display:none;
}
```

This works for both a list of tables and list of figures since the structure of each entry is the same.
To make it more specific (for example, to apply it only for the list of figures), you can add the selector:

```html
*[class~="placeholder/figurelist"] *[class~="listentry/prefix"],
*[class~="placeholder/figurelist"] *[class~="listentry/number"] {
    display:none;
}
```

**Double Side Pagination**

By default, the processor generates pages that are mirror images (the right page has the header on the right side, the left pages have the header on the left side). The chapters follow one another with no constraint on the page side.

**Note:** For a plain DITA map, the chapters are the `<topicref>` elements that are placed on the first level. For bookmaps, the chapters are the topics referenced by a `<chapter>` element.

This section contains information about how to position the start of the chapters on an odd folio number. Some of the CSS rules given here as examples are already listed in: [INSTALLATION_DIRECTORY]/css/print/p-optional-double-side-pagination.css. You may choose to import this file from your customization CSS (on page 1253).

**How to Start Chapters on Odd Pages**

A common use case is to arrange the chapters of the publication to start on an odd page number.

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following:

```css
@page chapter {
    -oxy-initial-page-number: auto-odd;
}
@page table-of-contents {
    -oxy-initial-page-number: auto-odd;
}
```

Supported values for `-oxy-initial-page-number` include: auto, auto-even, auto-odd, or a number.

**How to Style the Empty (Blank) Pages**

By making the chapters start on an odd page, the CSS processor might add blank pages to the previous page sequence as padding.

To style those blank pages add the following code in your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```css
@page chapter:blank, table-of-contents:blank {
    @top-left { content: none; }
```
Note: This just removes the headers and footers, but you can use a background image or a header with "Intentionally left blank" text.

Related Information:

- How to Add a Background Image for the Cover (on page 1290)

How to Force an Odd or Even Number of Pages in a Chapter

Another use case is to specify a number of pages for a section. Suppose that you have a table of contents that follows the cover page and you need to have an even number of pages. Hence, the next chapter would start on an even page.

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), use the -oxy-force-page-count property with an even value:

```css
@page table-of-contents {
  -oxy-force-page-count: even;
}
```

Supported values for -oxy-force-page-count include: even, odd, end-on-even, end-on-odd, auto, no-force.

How to Style the First page of a Chapter

You can use the :first page rule selector to control how the first page of a chapter looks. Suppose that you have defined the following layout for your default page and you want to put the publication title (the maptile string) on the header of the first page (instead of the chapter name that is displayed on this page):

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following:

```css
@page chapter:first {
  @top-right-corner { content: string(maptitle); }
  @top-left { content: none; }
}
```
Multiple Column Pages

This section contains information about how to deal with pages that have multiple columns.

How to Use a Two Column Layout

Change Layout for Predefined Pages.

First you need to identify which of the pages need to be changed. Pages are already defined for the cover page, table of contents, chapter content, and others. The complete list is here: Default Page Definitions (on page 1259).

Next, add the `column-count` and `column-gap` properties to that page. For example:

```xml
@page chapter{
  column-count:2;
  column-gap:1in;
}
```

If you need some of the elements to expand on all the columns, use the `column-span:all` CSS property. The next snippet makes the chapter titles span both columns:

```xml
*[class ~="topic/topic"]>[is-chapter]>*[class ~="topic/title"] {
  column-span:all;
}
```

⚠️ Limitation: You cannot use multiple column configurations on the same page. Oxygen XML Developer plugin only takes the `column-count` and `column-gap` properties into account if they are set on `@page` rules, not on elements from the content.

Change Layout for a Specific Topic.

If you need to have a different column layout just for one topic, you can use the following technique:

1. Define an `outputclass` on the topic root element.

```xml
<topic outputclass="two_columns" ...>
```

2. Define a CSS rule that changes the `page` property for the matching element.

```xml
*[class ~= "two_columns"],
*[outputclass ~= "two_columns"]{
```
Tip: In the selector, use the `class` attribute for the HTML transformation, or `outputclass` for the direct transformation, or leave them both if you are not sure.

Note: The topics from the first level use the `chapter` page. You must use `!important` because the built-in rules are more specific and you need to override the `page` property.

3. Define a page layout.

```css
@page two_column_page {
  column-count: 2;
}
```

Note that the topic will be separated from other sibling topics with different page layouts by page breaks.

Related Information:

- [Page Formatting in oXygen PDF Chemistry](#)

PDF Bookmarks

The PDF Bookmarks are used to generate a hierarchical structure similar to a table of contents in a specialized view of your PDF Reader.

By default, the titles defined in the topics are used as bookmark labels.

PDF Bookmarks - Built-in CSS

The PDF bookmarks are generated by matching the titles from the topics in the content. The built-in CSS rules are in: `[/PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-bookmarks.css`.

How to Change the Bookmark Labels using the Navigation Title

To change the bookmark labels, you can specify a navigation title in a DITA map or topic.

This will be used as the bookmark label instead of the topic title in the table of contents and the bookmark views. There are two possibilities to do specify it:

1. Place a `<navtitle>` element in the topic reference in the DITA map:
Note: As a best practice, a `@locktitle` attribute with the value 'yes' is needed to activate the navigation title. The plugin applies the navigation title even if the attribute is missing.

2. Place a `<navtitle>` element in the topic, as a title alternative.

How to Control the Depth of the Sections From the PDF Bookmarks.

By default, the PDF bookmarks are generated for up to 7 levels. If you need to limit them (for example to 2 levels), you can use the following CSS rules in your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```css
* [class~="topic/topic"] * [class~="topic/topic"] * [class~="topic/title"] { bookmark-label: none; }
```

These rules clear the labels generated by the titles starting with the depth 3 (the topic nesting level is given by the selectors `* [class~="topic/topic"]`).
How to Specify the Open/Closed PDF Bookmark State

If you want to specify the initial state for the bookmarks (opened/expanded or closed/collapsed), you can use the `bookmark-state` property in your customization CSS (on page 1253).

For example, to specify that all bookmarks for the first three levels are opened (expanded) in the initial state, use:

```css
*[class~="topic/topic"] > *[class="topic/title"],
*[class="topic/topic"] *[class="topic/topic"] > *[class="topic/title"],
*[class="topic/topic"] *[class="topic/topic"] *[class="topic/topic"] >
  *[class="topic/title"] {
    bookmark-state:open;
  }
```

How to Remove the Numbering From the PDF Bookmarks

By default, the PDF bookmark labels are generated while taking the text set before the chapters titles into account. Since this usually contains the part, chapter, or section numbers, the PDF Bookmarks will make use of them.

The solution is to remove the `content(before)` from the `bookmark-label`, leaving just the `content(text)`.

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following CSS rules:

```css
*[class="topic/topic"] > *[class="topic/title"] {
  bookmark-label: content(text);
  -ah-bookmark-label: content();
}
```

⚠️ Important: This is a simple example that does not use the possible navigation titles, just the content of the `<title>` element. Copy and modify the built-in CSS for the full CSS rule that matches the `<title>` and `<titlealts>` elements:

```css
*[class="topic/topic"]:has([class="topic/titlealts"]) > *[class="topic/title"]
{
  ...
}
```

Related Information:

- Numbering (on page 1300)
The content of an `<indexterm>` element is used to produce an index entry in the generated index. You can nest `<indexterm>` elements to create multi-level indexes. The content is not output as part of the topic content, only as part of the index tree.

To add an index to your publication, you just need to add `<indexterm>` elements inside the `<prolog>` section (inside a `<metadata>` element):

```xml
<title>The topic title.</title>
<prolog>
    <metadata>
        <keywords>
            <indexterm>Installing Water Pump</indexterm>
        </keywords>
    </metadata>
</prolog>
<body>
    ..... 
```

or in the content itself:

```xml
... 
<p>Open the lid then turn the body pump to the right.
<indexterm>Installing Water Pump</indexterm>
</p> 
... 
```

If you are using a bookmap, you need to specify where the index list should be presented (for instance in the `backmatter` of the book. Technically, it is possible to also add it to the frontmatter, but this is unusual). This is done using an `<indexlist>` element in the `<booklists>` element (inside the `<backmatter>`):

```xml
<bookmap>
    ...
    <chapter href="tasks/troubleshooting.dita">
        ...
    </chapter>
    <backmatter>
        <booklists>
            <indexlist/>
        </booklists>
    </backmatter>
```
For plain maps, the index list is automatically added at the end of the publication, with no need to modify the map.

Index - XML Fragment

In the merged map file (on page 1254), the structure that holds the index tree is the `<opentopic-index:index.groups>` element.

```
<map class="- map/map ">
  <oxy:front-page>...
  </oxy:front-page>
  <opentopic:map xmlns:opentopic="http://www.idiominc.com/opentopic">
    ...
  </opentopic:map>
  <topic class="- topic/topic ">
    <title class="- topic/title ">Request Support</title>
    ...
  </topic>
  <opentopic-index:index.groups id="d16e5548">
    ...
  </opentopic-index:index.groups>
</map>
```

Each of the groups contain:

- A label, the starting letter ("T" in the following example).
- A tree of `<opentopic-index:index.entry>` elements.

```
<opentopic-index:index.group>
  <opentopic-index:index.label>T</opentopic-index:index.label>
  <opentopic-index:index.entry value="table of contents">
    <opentopic-index:formatted-value>table of contents</opentopic-index:formatted-value>
    <opentopic-index:refID value="table of contents:">
      <oxy:index-link xmlns:oxy="http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author" href="#d16e3988">[d16e3988]
```
Each of the entries contain:

- The formatted value (<opentopic-index:formatted-value>).
- A link to the publication content (<opentopic-index:refID> / <oxy:index-link>).
- Possibly other child entries.

For the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type, the merged map is further processed resulting in a collection of HTML5 <div> elements. These elements preserve the original DITA @class attribute values and add a new value derived from the DITA element name.
The index group content becomes:

```xml
<div class="index/group group">
  <div class="index/label label">T</div>
  <div class="index/entry entry">
    <div class="index/formatted-value formatted-value">table of contents</div>
    <div class="index/refid refid">
      <div class="index/link link" href="#d16e3988">[d16e3988]</div>
    </div>
  </div>
</div>

<div class="index/entry entry">
  <div class="index/formatted-value formatted-value">change header</div>
  <div class="index/refid refid">
    <div class="index/link link" href="#d16e4176">[d16e4176]</div>
  </div>
</div>

<div class="index/entry entry">
  <div class="index/formatted-value formatted-value">style</div>
  <div class="index/refid refid">
    <div class="index/link link" href="#d16e4120">[d16e4120]</div>
  </div>
</div>

Index - Built-in CSS

All index styling is found in: [PLUGIN_DIR]css/print/p-index.css.
How to Style the Index Page Title and the Grouping Letters

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following CSS rules:

```css
*.[index/groups] *.[index/group] *.[index/label] {
    font-size: 1.5em;
    color: navy;
}

*.[index/groups]:before {
    content: "- Index - ";
    color: navy;
    font-size: 4em;
}
```

The result is:

```
- Index -
```

How to Style the Index Terms Labels

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following CSS rule:

```css
*.[index/groups] *.[index/formatted-value] {
    font-style: oblique;
    color: gray;
}
```

The result is:
How to Add Filling Dots Between the Index Labels and the Page Numbers

Suppose you want the leader CSS content to generate a row of dots. It is necessary that the parent entry has the text justified.

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following CSS rule:

```css
/* Hide the sequences of links that actually do not contain links. */ */
*[class~="index/group"] *[class ~="index/entry"] > *[class="index/refid"]{
  display:none;
}
*[class~="index/group"] *[class ~="index/entry"] > *[class="index/refid"]:has(*[class="index/link"]){
  display:inline;
}
*[class~="index/group"] *[class ~="index/entry"] {
  text-align:justify;
}
*[class~="index/group"] *[class ~="index/entry"] > *[class="index/refid"]:before{
  content:leader('.');
}
```

The output now contains the dots:
How to Change the Index Page Number Format and Reset its Value

The page number is reset at the beginning of the index page by the built-in CSS rule:

```
* [class ~="index/groups"] {
    counter-reset: page 1;
}
```

If you want to start the page counter from a different initial number, just change the value of this counter. For example, to continue the normal page counting, use:

```
* [class ~="index/groups"] {
    counter-reset: none;
}
```

If you need to style the page number differently (for example, using decimals), add the following CSS rule in your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```
@page index {
    @bottom-center { content: counter(page, decimal) }
}
```

How to Impose a Table-like Index Layout

In case you need to place the index labels and links on the same line but with some extra alignment constraints, you can use inline blocks to give the index a table-like appearance:
### Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C</th>
<th>8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Close programs</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer cover</td>
<td>7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure</td>
<td>10, 10, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>8, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>database</td>
<td>8, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>7, 7, 8, 10, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>7, 8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>11.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maintain</td>
<td>11.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hdd</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You need to place the elements that have the following class on the same line:

- **index/formatted-value**
  
  This is the text of the index term.

- **index/refid**
  
  This element contains a list of links.

A fixed width is used for the formatted value and the links container (almost half of the available width). To achieve the index hierarchical layout, set progressive padding to the formatted value text.

In your **customization CSS (on page 1253)**, add the following CSS rule:

```css
*[class~="index/formatted-value"], *[class~="index/refid"]{
    display:inline-block;
}

*[class~="index/formatted-value"]{
    width:45%;
}

*[class~="index/refid"] {
    width:45%;
}

/* Hide the sequences of links that actually do not contain links. */
```
To avoid bleeding of the index term label, you may need to mark it as being hyphenated:

*[class="index/formatted-value"] {
    padding: 0.2em;
    background-color: #EEEEEE;
}
To activate hyphenation, see: How to Enable Hyphenation for Entire Map (on page 1340).

Footnotes

Footnotes are pieces of information placed at the bottom of the page. A footnote has a number that is left in the content (the footnote call) and the same value placed before the footnote text (the footnote marker).

Footnotes - Built-in CSS

Footnote properties are defined in [PLUGIN_DIR]css/print/p-foot-notes.css.

How to Change Style of the Footnote Markers and Footnote Calls

To bold the footnotes numbers and use some colors, add the following rules to your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```
*[class =~ "topic/fn"]:footnote-call {
  font-weight: bold;
  color:red;
}

*[class =~ "topic/fn"]:footnote-marker {
  font-weight: bold;
  color:red;
}
```

Related Information:


How to Add a Separator Above the Footnotes

The @footnote part of a @page declaration controls the style of the separator between the page content and the footnotes. For the content, you should set a leader. The leader uses a letter or a line style to fill the entire width of the page.

```
@page {
  margin:0.5in;
  ....
```
To create a dotted line, you can use the dot character: `leader('.')`. Other commonly used characters are: `"-"` (dash) and `"_"` (underscore).

**How to Reset the Footnotes Counter**

There are cases where you want to reset the footnote counter.

For example, if you need to reset it at the beginning of each chapter, add the following rules to your customization CSS *(on page 1253)*:

```css
*[class ~= "bookmap/chapter"],
*[class ~= "topic/topic"](is-chapter) {
  counter-reset: footnote 1;
}
```

Or you can mark any element with an `@outputclass` value, match that value, and reset the counter at any point in your counter:

```xml
<p outputclass="reset-footnotes"/>
```

```css
*[outputclass ~= "reset-footnotes"] {
  counter-reset: footnote 1;
}
```

**Page Breaks**

The page breaks can be controlled in multiple ways:

1. By creating an `@page` and assigning it to an element will create a page break between this element and the sibling elements that have a different page.
3. In your DITA topic, set the `@outputclass` attribute on the topic root (or any element) to contain one of the `page-break-before`, `page-break-after`, or `page-break-avoid` values. If you want to control the page breaking from the DITA map, use the `@outputclass` attribute on the `<topicref>`, with any of the values mentioned above.
Page Breaks - Built-in CSS

Page break properties are used in: [PLUGIN_DIR]css/print/p-page-breaks.css.

How to Avoid Page Breaks in Lists and Tables

To avoid splitting elements over two pages, you can use the `page-break-inside` CSS property. For example, if you want to impose this on tables and lists, then add the following rules to your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```css
*[class =~ "topic/table"] {
  page-break-inside:avoid;
}
*[class =~ "topic/ol"] {
  page-break-inside:avoid;
}
*[class =~ "topic/ul"] {
  page-break-inside:avoid;
}
```

**Note:** Since the task steps are inherited from `topic/ol`, they will also not be split over two separate pages. However, if you want to allow this, add the following CSS rule:

```css
*[class =~ "task/steps"] {
  page-break-inside:auto;
}
```

**Note:** Another way to do this is to mark the element with an `@outputclass` set to `page-break-avoid`.

How to Force a Page Break Before or After a Topic or Another Element

If you want to force a page break, mark the topic (or any other element you need to control page breaking for) with an `@outputclass` set to one of these values:
Page break elements:

**page-break-before**
Use this for a page break before the marked element.

**page-break-after**
Use this for a page break after the marked element.

**page-break-avoid**
Use this to avoid page breaks inside the marked element.

For example, to force a page break before a certain topic, you should use:

```
<topic outputclass="page-break-before" ... >
```

**Note:** You can set the output class on the `<topicref>` element from the DITA map instead of the `<topic>` element. In this way you can reuse the topic in another context where the page breaking is not necessary.

You can also control page breaking for lists, paragraphs, or any other block type elements. The following example avoids page breaks inside an ordered list:

```
<ol outputclass="page-break-avoid" ... >
```

### How to Add a Blank Page After a Topic

If you want to add a new blank page after a topic, add the following rules to your customization CSS (on page 1253).

**Style the separating blank page:**

```
@page topic-separating-page{
    @top-left {  
        content: "";
    }
    @top-right {  
        content: "";
    }
    @top-center {  
        content: "This page is blank";
    }
}
```

**Associate this page to the :after pseudo element of the topic:**

```
*[class~="topic/topic"][outputclass="add-separator-page"]:after {
```
In the XML content, on the `<topic>` element, set the `@outputclass` to the `add-separator-page` value.

```xml
<topic outputclass="add-separator-page"> ...
</topic>
```

The `:after` pseudo element will be created next to the topic content and will be placed on the `topic-separating-page`.

Use the page margin box selectors to override the default content from the headers/footers.

Note: You can set the output class on the `<topicref>` element from the DITA map instead of the `<topic>` element. This allows you to reuse the topic in another context where the page breaking is not necessary.

How to Enforce a Number of Lines from Paragraphs that Continue in Next Page

In typography, an orphan is the first line of a paragraph that appears alone at the bottom of a page (the paragraph continues on a following page), while a widow is the last line of a paragraph that appears alone at the top of a page. The default is 2 for each of them. You can control this number by adding the following to your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```css
:root {
  widows: 4;
  orphans: 4;
}
```

Hyphenation

Hyphenation specifies how words should be hyphenated when text wraps across multiple lines.

How to Enable Hyphenation for Entire Map

To enable hyphenation for your entire map:

1. Make sure you set an `@xml:lang` attribute on the root of your map, or set the `default.language` parameter in the transformation.
2. In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add:

```css
:root {
  hyphens: auto;
}
```
3. To except certain elements from being hyphenated, use `hyphens:none`. The following example excludes the `<keyword>` elements from being hyphenated:

```
*[class =~ "topic/keyword"] {  
    hyphens: none;  
}
```

### How to Enable/Disable Hyphenation for Tables

**To enable hyphenation for your entire map:**

1. Make sure you set an `@xml:lang` attribute on the root of your map or your table elements.
2. In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add:

```
*[class =~ "topic/table"] {  
    hyphens: auto;  
}
```
3. To except certain elements from being hyphenated, use `hyphens:none`. The following example excludes the `<keyword>` elements from being hyphenated:

```
*[class =~ "topic/keyword"] {  
    hyphens: none;  
}
```

### Accessibility

By default, the PDF documents produced using this plugin are partially accessible in the sense that most of the paragraphs, tables, lists, headers, and footers are tagged automatically so a PDF reader can use this information to present the content.

**Related Information:**

- Oxygen PDF Chemistry: Accessibility

### Accessibility - Built-in CSS

Accessibility properties are defined in `[PLUGIN_DIR]css/print/p-accessibility.css`. 
How to Create Fully Accessible Documents

To make your documents fully accessible (PDF/UA1), do the following:

1. In your customization CSS (on page 1253), specify fonts for all elements and for all page margin boxes. There should be no text that falls back to the basic provided fonts (Times, Courier, etc.). For instance, you can use:

```css
:root { font-family: Arial }
@page {
  @top-left {font-family: Arial }
  ...
}
```

2. Specify an `@alt` attribute with a description on any image, or better, use the `<alt>` DITA element.

3. Change the Chemistry invocation from the `build.xml` file, adding the argument `-pdf-ua`. There are two targets to change: `chemistry` and `chemistry.embedded`.

Fonts

Fonts are an important part of the publication. Your font selection should take into consideration both design and the targeted ranges of characters.

To use them in the customization CSS (on page 1253):

- You can place the font files in the same folder as your CSS and use a `@font-face` definition to reference them.
- You can use web fonts (for example, Google Fonts), and import the CSS snippet into your CSS.
- You can use system fonts.

All these techniques are explained in: Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Manual: Fonts.

How to Avoid Characters Being Rendered as #

When the processor renders text with a font that does not include certain characters, those characters are replaced with the `#` symbol.

To prevent this, make sure you use the proper font.

As an example, suppose the right arrow character is used in a definition list like this:

```xml
<dlentry>
  <dt>&#8594;</dt>
  <dd><ph>This is the right arrow.</ph></dd>
</dlentry>
```
If the font does not include this character, the output will look something like this:

```
#
This is the right arrow.
```

To fix this, use a fallback font. For example, if you use *Times New Roman* for the entire publication, you could add *Symbol* as the fallback font. In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add:

```
*[class ~= "topic/dlentry"] {
  font-family: "Times New Roman", Symbol;
}
```

**Tip:** On Windows, one simple way to determine the font needed to display the text is to copy the text fragment that has rendering problems from the DITA source document and paste it into Microsoft WordPad or Word. It will automatically select a font capable of rendering the text. Simply click on the text to see the name of the font from the "Font" ribbon toolbar. Then you can use it as a fallback font in the CSS. Make sure there are no licensing restrictions on that particular font.

### How to Set Fonts in Titles and Content

Suppose that in your customization CSS (on page 1253), you have defined your font (for example, *Roboto*) using a Google web font:

```
@import url('https://fonts.googleapis.com/css?family=Roboto');
```

You can force a font on all elements, then style the ones that need to be different. The advantage of this method is that you do not need to trace all elements that have a font family defined in the built-in CSS files, you just reset them all.

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add an `!important` rule that associates a font to all the elements from the document:

```
*{
  font-family: "Roboto" !important;
}
```

**Note:** If you want to use the `:root` selector instead of the `*` sector, without the `!important` qualifier, the elements that have a predefined font specified in the built-in CSS will keep that font. If your content uses non-Latin glyphs, it is possible that the built-in fonts do not render them.

Next, identify the selectors for the elements that need to be styled with a different font than the one associated above. For information on how to do this, see: Debugging the CSS (on page 1253).
For example, if you want the titles or the pre-formatted text to have a different font from the rest, matched by the above * selector, you need to use more specific CSS selectors:

```css
*[^class~="front-page/front-page-title"],
*[^class="topic/title"] {  
  font-family: Arial !important;
}

*[^class~="pr-d/codeph"],
*[^class="topic/pre"] {  
  font-family: monospace !important;
}
```

Related Information:

- How to Change the Font of the Headers and Footers (on page 1267)

How to Use Fonts for Asian Languages

For Asian languages, you must use a font or a sequence of fonts that cover the needed character ranges. If the characters are not found, the # symbol is used.

When you specify a sequence of fonts, if the glyphs are not found in the first font, the next font is selected until one that includes all the glyphs is found. A common font sequence for Asian languages is as follows:

```css
font-family: Calibri, SimSun, "Malgun Gothic", "Microsoft JhengHei";
```

To apply this font sequence, see: How to Set Fonts in Titles and Content (on page 1343).

Some of the Asian fonts do not have italic, bold, or bold-italic variants. In this case, you may use the regular font file with multiple font face definitions to simulate (synthesize) the missing variants. You need to use the -oxy-simulate-style:yes CSS property in the font face definition as explained in: Using Simulated/Synthetic Styles in Oxygen Chemistry

Localization

Depending on the transformation type, based on HTML5 or using a direct DITA transformation, there are different localization capabilities. If you are just starting your customization, we strongly recommend using the pdf-css-html5 transformation, since it supports out of the box a large number of languages
Localization - Transformation Based on HTML5 and CSS

This section applies to the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type.

In this type of transformation, the intermediary merged DITA map is transformed to HTML5 using the DITA-OT built-in support, so the customization of the internationalization (the labels for chapters, parts, figures, tables, notes, etc.) can be achieved by following the DITA-OT recommendations: Customizing Generated Text.

It is recommended that you do this customization on a DITA-OT distribution deployed outside of the Oxygen installation. Otherwise, you will lose the customization when upgrading Oxygen. You can contact the Oxygen support team to ask for the Oxygen Publishing Engine package.

Supported Languages (HTML5 and CSS)

There are supported over 20 languages. For the full list of supported languages (and their codes), see the list: https://www.dita-ot.org/3.2/topics/globalization-languages.html.

How to Select a Language (HTML5 and CSS)

There are two ways to switch the labels to a specific language:

- Alter the DITA maps and/or topics to have the @xml:lang attribute set to the root element, to one of a supported value (i.e. "fr", "de", "zh", "ru").
- If changing the files is not an option, you can alter the value of the transformation parameter default.language to the desired language code.

How to Add Support for a New Language (HTML5 and CSS)

If the list of supported languages does include the language you need, you can create a custom dictionary for this transformation.

The DITA-OT documentation offers a good insight on how to do it: https://www.dita-ot.org/3.2/topics/plugin-addgeneratedtext.html

In addition to that, you need to alter your CSS. Some of the labels come from CSS files located in: 

[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/i18n/

You should use one of the files as a template and copy its rules to your customization CSS (on page 1253) and translate the labels. Make sure you change also the :lang selector to match your language code.
Localization - Transformation Based on DITA and CSS

The *DITA Map PDF* - *based on DITA & CSS - WYSIWYG* transformation type supports fewer languages than the one based on HTML5 *(on page 1344)*.

Supported Languages (DITA and CSS)

The list of supported languages for the *DITA Map PDF* - *based on DITA & CSS - WYSIWYG* transformation type includes: English, German, French (en, de, fr).

How to Select a Language (DITA and CSS)

There are two ways to switch the labels to a specific language for the *DITA Map PDF* - *based on DITA & CSS - WYSIWYG* transformation type:

- Alter the DITA maps and/or topics to have the `@xml:lang` attribute set to the root element, to one of a supported value (i.e. "fr","en", "de").
- If changing the files is not an option, you can alter the value of the transformation parameter `default.language` to the desired language code.

How to Add Support for a New Language (DITA and CSS)

For the *DITA Map PDF* - *based on DITA & CSS - WYSIWYG* transformation type, the built-in CSS rules are in two directories. For example, the French translation is in:

```
[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/core/-i18n-fr.css
[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/i18n/p-i18n-fr.css
```

1. Copy and then rename the English translation files next to your customization CSS *(on page 1253)*.

   `-il8n-en.css -> -il8n-nl.css
   `p-il8n-en.css -> p-il8n-nl.css

2. Reference these two files from your customization CSS *(on page 1253)*.

3. Change the rules to match your language code and translate each of the strings. For example, for Dutch, the rules should contain the `:lang(nl)` selector:

   ```
   /* Title in the Index page */
   *[class ~= "index/groups"]:lang(nl):before {
       content: "Trefwoordenregister";
   }
   ```
Comments and Tracked Changes

The comments and tracked changes can be made visible in the PDF output by setting the `show.changes.and.comments` transformation parameter to `yes`.

Figure 389. Chemistry Annotations in Acrobat Reader

By default, they are shown as PDF text annotations (sticky notes). These are graphical markers in the document content and are also listed in the Comments section when opening the output file in Acrobat Reader.

**Note:** Comments with the Mark as Done flag selected appear with a checkmark in the Comments section and with a Completed label (✓)

To avoid rendering the elements as PDF annotations and show them as footnotes instead, you can use the `show.changes.and.comments.as.pdf.sticky.notes` transformation parameter set to `no`.

The comments and changes are included in the merged map file (on page 1254) either as XML elements (`<oxy-insert>`, `<oxy-delete>`, `<oxy-comment>`, `<oxy-attributes>`) in the case of the XML merged map, or as HTML elements with similar classes (`oxy-insert`, `oxy-delete`, `oxy-comment`, `oxy-attributes`) in the case of the HTML merged map. Sub-elements contain meta-information about each change.

**Tip:** These elements are automatically recognized and transformed in PDF annotations when using Chemistry as PDF processor.

**Note:** The inserted text, deleted text, and deleted markup are included in the sticky notes.

Related Information:

- Transformation Parameters (on page 1230)
Comments and Tracked Changes - XML Fragment

This section contains information about how each type of tracked change is structured in the merged map XML file (on page 1254).

**Insertions**

For an insertion type of tracked change, the structure that defines the insertion details is inside the `range` (<oxy-range-start> to <oxy-range-end>), the inserted text is highlighted by an `<oxy-insert-hl>` element, and the details are stored in the `<oxy-insert>` element.

```xml
<oxy:oxy-range-start id="sc_1" hr_id="1"/>

<oxy:oxy-insert href="#sc_1" hr_id="1">
  <oxy:oxy-author>dan</oxy:oxy-author>
  <oxy:oxy-content>insert</oxy:oxy-content>
  <oxy:oxy-date>2018/03/15</oxy:oxy-date>
  <oxy:oxy-hour>09:38:29</oxy:oxy-hour>
  <oxy:oxy-tz>+02:00</oxy:oxy-tz>
</oxy:oxy-insert>

<oxy:oxy-insert-hl>This is an insert!!</oxy:oxy-insert-hl>

<oxy:oxy-range-end hr_id="1"/>
```

**Comments**

Similar to insertions, comments are defined in a `range` (<oxy-range-start> to <oxy-range-end>), the comment details is in the `<oxy-comment>` element, and the highlighted content is wrapped in the `<oxy-comment-hl>` element.

```xml
<oxy:oxy-range-start id="sc_1" hr_id="1"/>

<oxy:oxy-comment href="#sc_1" hr_id="1">
  <oxy:oxy-author>dan</oxy:oxy-author>
  <oxy:oxy-comment-text>This is a comment.</oxy:oxy-comment-text>
  <oxy:oxy-date>2018/03/15</oxy:oxy-date>
  <oxy:oxy-hour>09:56:59</oxy:oxy-hour>
</oxy:oxy-comment>
```
Attribute changes

The attribute changes are more complex. The range is empty, and is directly above the affected element (the one that has modified attributes). The <oxy-attributes> element contains details about multiple attribute changes, each stored in the <oxy-attributed-change> element.
Deletions

For a deletion, there are some elements that define the start and end of the deletion, and the highlighted text is wrapped in the `<oxy-delete-hl>` element.

```
<oxy:oxy-range-start id="sc_2" hr_id="2"/>
<oxy:oxy-delete-hl>This is a deleted text. </oxy:oxy-delete-hl>
<oxy:oxy-range-end hr_id="2"/>
```

There is a structure that offers details about the deletion change, using the `<oxy-delete>` element. This is linked to the above deletion range by the same ID value:

```
<oxy:oxy-delete href="#sc_2" hr_id="2">
  <oxy:oxy-author>dan</oxy:oxy-author>
  <oxy:oxy-content><image href="../img/ex.gif"></oxy:oxy-content>
  <oxy:oxy-date>2018/03/14</oxy:oxy-date>
  <oxy:oxy-hour>11:38:06</oxy:oxy-hour>
  <oxy:oxy-tz>+02:00</oxy:oxy-tz>
</oxy:oxy-delete>
```

Colored Highlights

To show some text as highlighted with a background color:

```
<oxy:oxy-color-hl color="rgba(140,255,140,50)">Some colored text.</oxy:oxy-color-hl>
```

Comments and Tracked Changes - HTML Fragment

This section contains information about how each type of tracked change is structured in the merged map HTML file (on page 1254).

Insertions

For an insertion type of tracked change, the structure that defines the insertion details is inside a range, the inserted text is highlighted by a `<span>` element with the class `oxy-insert-hl`, and the details are stored in a `<span>` element with the `oxy-insert` class.

```
<span class="oxy-range-start" id="sc_1" hr_id="1"/>
  <span class="oxy-insert" href="#sc_1" hr_id="1">
  <span class="oxy-author">dan</span>  
```


Comments

Similar to insertions, comments are defined in a range (`oxy-range-start` to `oxy-range-end`), the comment details in an element with the class `oxy-comment`, and the highlighted content is wrapped in the `oxy-comment-hl` element.

```
<element>
  <span class="oxy-range-start" id="sc_1" hr_id="1"/>
  
  <span class="oxy-comment" href="#sc_1" hr_id="1" flag="done">
    <span class="oxy-author">dan</span>
    <span class="oxy-comment-text">This is a comment.</span>
    
    <span class="oxy-range-end" hr_id="1"/>
  </span>
  
  <span class="oxy-comments-deleted">
    The commented text.
  </span>
  
  <span class="oxy-range-end" hr_id="1"/>
</element>
```

**Note:** Comments that are marked as done have a `flag="done"` attribute:

```
<element>
  <span class="oxy-comment" href="#sc_6" hr_id="6" flag="done">
    
    <span class="oxy-comment-text">The commented text.</span>
    
    <span class="oxy-range-end" hr_id="1"/>
  </span>
</element>
```

Attribute changes

The attribute changes are more complex. The range is empty, and is directly above the affected element (the one that has modified attributes). The element with the class `oxy-attributes` contains details about multiple attribute changes, each stored in an element with the class `oxy-attribute-change`.

```
<element>
</element>
```
Deletions

For a deletion, there are some elements that define the start and end of the deletion, and the highlighted text is wrapped in an element with the class `oxy-delete-hl`.

```xml
<span class="oxy-range-start" id="sc_2" hr_id="2"/>
<span class="oxy-delete-hl">This is a deleted text. </span>
<span class="oxy-range-end" hr_id="2"/>
```

There is a structure that offers details about the deletion change, using the element with the class `oxy-delete`. This is linked to the above deletion range by the same ID value:

```xml
<span class="oxy-delete" href="#sc_2" hr_id="2">
  <span class="oxy-author">dan</span>
  <span class="oxy-content"><img src="../img/ex.gif"/></span>
  <span class="oxy-date">2018/03/14</span>
  <span class="oxy-hour">11:38:06</span>
  <span class="oxy-tz">+02:00</span>
</span>
```
Colored Highlights

To show some text as highlighted with a background color:

```html
<span class="oxy-color-hl" color="rgba(140,255,140,50)">Some colored text.</span>
```

Comments and Tracked Changes - Built-in CSS

The built-in CSS that controls the way tracked changes and comments are displayed is found in: `[PLUGIN_DIR]css/print/p-side-notes.css`.

How to Style Changed or Commented Text

To style the highlighted text from the document content, use the `<oxy-comment-hl>` element (or `<oxy-delete-hl>`, `<oxy-insert-hl>`, respectively, by local name or class name):

```css
oxy-comment-hl,
.oxy-comment-hl {
  color:magenta;
}
```

**Note:** The class name selector is useful when using the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation scenario.

If you want to change the small labels that define the affected start and end ranges (they are a number formatted like: “[n] .. [/n]” where n is the number of the change), you can use the following selectors:

```css
oxy-range-start:before,
.oxy-range-start:before {
  display:inline;
  content: '[' attr(hr_id) ']';
  color:red;
}
oxy-range-end:before,
.oxy-range-end:before {
  display:inline;
  content: ']' attr(hr_id) ']';
  color:red;
}
```

Use `display:none` if you want to hide them.
If you want to change the background color of the comment footnote (assuming you set the `show.changes.and.comments.as.pdf.sticky.notes` transformation to `no`), add the following snippet in your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```
oxy-comment,
.oxy-comment {
    background-color: inherit;
    border: 2pt solid yellow;
}
```

Similarly, you can style the other footnotes for `<oxy-attributes>`, `<oxy-delete>`, and `<oxy-insert>` elements.

**How to Hide Tracked Change Footnotes**

This topic is relevant if you have set the `show.changes.and.comments.as.pdf.sticky.notes` transformation parameter to `no`, and therefore the changes are shown as footnotes instead of PDF annotations.

In some cases, when your document contains a lot of tracked changes, you may need to hide the footnotes associated with the insertions, deletions, or attribute changes. Using the following example, the deletions and insertions are hidden, but the comments remain visible. In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add:

```
oxy-attributes,
oxy-delete,
oxy-insert{
    float:none;
    display:none;
}
```

**Draft Watermarks**

A *watermark* is an image displayed as the background of a printed document and it is faded enough to keep the publication text readable. *Draft watermarks* are used to indicate that a document is under construction or has not yet been approved.

**How to Add a Draft Watermark on All Pages**

To add a draft watermark to all of your publication pages, you can use the following page selector in your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```
@page {
```
If you have already set a background image for other pages (for example, the front-page or table-of-contents), the above selector won’t change them, as they are more specific.

The best practice is to use a different draft.css CSS file that imports the customization CSS where the rest of the style changes reside. If you need to publish as draft, use the draft.css in your transformation scenario, otherwise directly reference the customization CSS (on page 1253).

Related Information:

- Images and Figures (on page 1362)

How to Add a Draft Watermark Depending on Metadata

Suppose you want to apply a Draft watermark until your DITA bookmap is approved and the map is approved when an <approved> element has been added to the metadata section (for example, in the bookmeta/bookchangehistory element).

```
<bookmeta>
  <author>John</author>
  <critdates>
    <created date="1/1/2015"/>
    <revised modified="3/4/2016"/>
    <revised modified="3/5/2016"/>
  </critdates>
  <bookchangehistory>
    <approved/>
  </bookchangehistory>
  ...
```

Use oxy_xpath every time you need to probe the value from an element other than the one matched by the CSS selector, and test the expression on the merged HTML file using the Oxygen XPath Builder view.

You can either use a page selector that imposes the draft watermark on the entire page surface (recommended):
or use an element selector that restricts the watermark image only to the page area covered by that element:

```
:root, body{
    (...) /* same as properties above */
}
```

The `body` selector is used here in case you want to apply the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type. You can use another element selector to target a specific part of your publication (for example, marking only the tables as drafts).

Related Information:

- Metadata (on page 1281)
- How to Debug XPath Expressions (on page 1258)

Styling the Content

If you need to change the styles of the elements from the topic contents, you should create a customization CSS (on page 1253) and then add CSS rules. To create the CSS rules, you can use the development tools described in Debugging the CSS (on page 1253).

Reusing the Styling for WebHelp and PDF Output

If you are using the `pdf-css-html5` transformation type, then the generated HTML5 document that is later converted to PDF is very similar to the generated HTML5 pages from the WebHelp Responsive output.

This is an output example from the WebHelp transformation:

```
<h1 class="title topictitle1" id="ariaid-title2">Care and Preparation</h1>
```
When caring for your flower garden you want ...

It makes sense to reuse the same CSS rules you developed for one transformation type to the other. The main rule is to use the short class names instead of the long ones. For example, to style the short descriptions with italic font, use:

```
.shortdesc {
    font-style: italic;
}
```

The rule of thumb is that if you have a CSS rule that successfully styles an element in WebHelp, it should apply without any modification in the PDF output.

**Equations**

This processor supports MathML equations.

**How to Change the Font of MathML Equations**

Suppose that you need to change the font of MathML equations from the documentation, and also add some padding. The MathML fragments are wrapped in elements that have the class `equation-d/equation-block` or `equation-d/equation-inline`, so you can match them with:

```
*[class ~="equation-d/equation-block"],
*[class ~="equation-d/equation-inline"]{
    font-family: "courier new";
    font-size: 1.5em;
    padding: 1em;
}
```

**Note:** Some of the fonts may not be supported. In that case, a default serif font is used.
Lists

You can style the list item markers, or other properties.

How to Style the List Markers

For the media print, the default CSS rules for the list items use the :marker pseudo-class.

```css
@media print {
* [class~="topic/li"]::marker {
    text-align: center;
    font-weight: bold;
}
* [class~="topic/li"] {
    margin-left: 0.25in;
}
}
```

To eliminate the bold font weight for the items form ordered lists then add the following rules to your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```css
* [class="topic/ol"] > * [class="topic/li"]::marker {
    font-weight: normal;
}
```

For the unordered lists:

```css
* [class="topic/ul"] > * [class="topic/li"]::marker {
    font-weight: normal;
}
```

How to Change the Numbering System of Ordered Lists

It is possible to change all lists to have a different numbering system and there are several methods that can be used to achieve this.

Use the list-style-type CSS Property.

The Chemistry engine supports the following types: decimal, decimal-leading-zero, lower-roman, upper-roman, lower-latin, upper-latin, lower-alpha, upper-alpha.

```css
* [class~="topic/ol"] {
    list-style-type: lower-roman;
}
```
Change the Content of the :marker CSS Pseudo Element.

The following example emulate the Cyrillic numbering for the list items for an ordered list that has the @outputclass attribute set to cyrillic:

⚠️ Important: This example will work only for lists up to 28 items. You will have to extend it for longer lists!

```css
*[class ~="topic/ol"] [outputclass ~="cyrillic"] > *[class ~="topic/li"]:marker {
    width:3em;
}
```

```css
*[class ~="topic/ol"] [outputclass ~="cyrillic"] > *[class ~="topic/li"]:nth-of-type(1):marker{ content:"а" }
*[class ~="topic/ol"] [outputclass ~="cyrillic"] > *[class ~="topic/li"]:nth-of-type(2):marker{ content:"б" }
*[class ~="topic/ol"] [outputclass ~="cyrillic"] > *[class ~="topic/li"]:nth-of-type(3):marker{ content:"в" }
*[class ~="topic/ol"] [outputclass ~="cyrillic"] > *[class ~="topic/li"]:nth-of-type(4):marker{ content:"г" }
*[class ~="topic/ol"] [outputclass ~="cyrillic"] > *[class ~="topic/li"]:nth-of-type(5):marker{ content:"д" }
*[class ~="topic/ol"] [outputclass ~="cyrillic"] > *[class ~="topic/li"]:nth-of-type(6):marker{ content:"е" }
*[class ~="topic/ol"] [outputclass ~="cyrillic"] > *[class ~="topic/li"]:nth-of-type(7):marker{ content:"ё" }
*[class ~="topic/ol"] [outputclass ~="cyrillic"] > *[class ~="topic/li"]:nth-of-type(8):marker{ content:"ж" }
*[class ~="topic/ol"] [outputclass ~="cyrillic"] > *[class ~="topic/li"]:nth-of-type(9):marker{ content:"з" }
*[class ~="topic/ol"] [outputclass ~="cyrillic"] > *[class ~="topic/li"]:nth-of-type(10):marker{ content:"и" }
*[class ~="topic/ol"] [outputclass ~="cyrillic"] > *[class ~="topic/li"]:nth-of-type(11):marker{ content:"й" }
*[class ~="topic/ol"] [outputclass ~="cyrillic"] > *[class ~="topic/li"]:nth-of-type(12):marker{ content:"ю" }
*[class ~="topic/ol"] [outputclass ~="cyrillic"] > *[class ~="topic/li"]:nth-of-type(13):marker{ content:"я" }
```
Related Information:

- Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide: Lists

Links

Links allow the users to navigate through the documentation.
How to Remove 'on page NNN' Link Label

For printed material, it is usually desirable for the links to display a label after the text content (such as "on page 54"). This makes it easier the user to identify the target page. However, if the produced PDF is not printed and is intended only for electronic use, this label may create clutter and make the document harder to read. To eliminate this label, add the following in your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```css
* [class =~ "topic/xref"] [href]:after, 
* [class =~ "topic/link"] [href]:after {
  content: none !important;
}
```

Another use-case is to remove the labels only from links shown in tables cells, and leave the others as they are. For this, you could use a more specific selector:

```css
* [class =~ "topic/entry"] * [class =~ "topic/xref"] [href]:after{
  content: none !important;
}
```

How to Change Link Styles

Suppose you want the links to be bold and with an underline. In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add this snippet:

```css
* [class =~ "topic/xref"] [href]:after, 
* [class =~ "topic/link"] [href]:after {
  font-weight: bold;
  text-decoration: underline;
}
```

How to Hide Descriptions in Related Links Sections

The link descriptions that come from DITA relationship tables or related link elements within topics, are structured in the merged map (on page 1254) like this:

```xml
<related-links class="- topic/related-links ">
  <linkpool class="- topic/linkpool ">
    <link class="- topic/link "
      role="friend" scope="local" type="topic">
      <linktext class="- topic/linktext ">Salvia</linktext>
      <desc class="- topic/desc ">The salvia plant</desc>
    </link>
  </linkpool>
</related-links>
```
Images and Figures

Images are an important part of a publication.

**Note:** You can use raster image formats (such as PNG or JPEG), but it is best to use vector images (such as SVG or PDF). They scale very well and produce better results when printed. In addition the text from these images is searchable and can be selected (if the glyphs have not been converted to shapes) in the PDF viewer.

**Images - Built-in CSS**

Image properties are defined in [PLUGIN_DIR]css/print/p-images.css.

```css
[class ~="topic/image"] {  
  prince-image-resolution: 120dpi;  
  -ah-image-resolution: 120dpi;  
  image-resolution: 120dpi;  
  /* The US-letter page size minus page margins. See p-page-size.css for the current page size. */  
  max-width: 6.5in;  
}
```

**How to Fix Image Bleeding - Control Image Size**

Sometimes the images may be too big for the page. The built-in CSS rules specify a maximum size for images, limiting to the width of the parent block. But if the parent block is itself too wide and bleeds out of page, you might consider specifying a length.

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add the following snippet:

```css
[class ~="topic/image"] {  
}
```
How to Change Image Resolution

This is a good technique to change the size of all raster images from your documentation. This will not work for vector images, such as PDF or SVG. If the images (PNG, for example) contain the image resolution in their metadata, this will be taken into account. For all other images, the default resolution is 120dpi.

If the default resolution is not good (suppose you need a higher pixel density of 300dpi), you can change it by adding the following in your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```css
*[class ~="topic/image"] {  
  prince-image-resolution: 300dpi;  
  -ah-image-resolution: 300dpi;  
  image-resolution: 300dpi;  
}
```

How to Place Big Images on Rotated Pages

Very wide images may bleed out of the page. One solution for this is to use landscape pages for these wide images.

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add:

```css
*[class~="topic/image"] [outputclass='land'] {  
  page: landscape-page;  
}
```

Setting the attribute `@outputclass = 'land'` on the table element will force the table on a new landscape page.

Another solution is to set an `@outputclass` attribute on the image, then create a rule that matches it, and associate a landscape page for it.

How to Place a Text and Image Side by Side

If you need to align text and an image side by side, you can use the following technique:

1. Organize your text and image under a `<div>` element like this:
...<div outputclass="side-by-side">
  <p>This will be in the left side, the next figure in the right. </p>
  <fig>
    <image href="cactus.jpeg"/>
  </fig>
</div>
...

Note: You can use the @outputclass attribute to mark the <div> elements that have this special layout.

2. In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add:

```css
*[outputclass "side-by-side"] > *[class "topic/p"] {
  display:inline-block;
  width:45%;
}

*[outputclass "side-by-side"] > *[class "topic/fig"] {
  display:inline-block;
  width:45%;
}
```

The image should fill the entire width of the parent <fig> element:

```css
*[outputclass "side-by-side"] > *[class "topic/fig"] > *[class "topic/image"] {
  width:100%;
}
```

By default, the bottom of the image is on the same line as the text baseline. If you want the text and the image to be aligned at the top, add these lines:

```css
*[outputclass "side-by-side"] > *[class "topic/p"] {
  vertical-align:top;
}

*[outputclass "side-by-side"] > *[class "topic/fig"] {
  vertical-align:top;
  font-size:0pt;
}
```
Note: The font-size:0pt is needed to remove the font ascent and descent around the image rectangle.

How to Control the Image Size in Complex Static Content

It is common to have text and images mixed together in a :before or :after pseudo element. For example, for notes you may have both artwork and text:

```css
*[class =~ "topic/note"]::before {
    content: url('note.png') "Some text";
}
```

If you want to change the size of the image, you have two options:

- Use the image-resolution CSS property:

  ```css
  *[class =~ "topic/note"] {
    image-resolution:300dpi;
  }
  ```

- Separate the image from the text and apply the width and height CSS properties only on the image, using the width and height properties. You could use multiple :before pseudo-elements for that, considering that the farthest content presented before the actual content of an element is matched by the :before with the highest number in the brackets:

  ```css
  *[class =~ "topic/note"]:before(2) {
    content: url('note.png') ;
    width:0.5in;
  }
  
  *[class =~ "topic/note"]:before(1) {
    content: "Some text";
  }
  ```

How to Center Images

DITA defines a @placement attribute for the <image> elements. The implicit value is inline. Suppose that you need to center the images that have the placement set to break (for example, they are not on the same line with other content and the images from the <fig> element).

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add:
How to Change/Reset the Figure Numbering

Note: This topic is applicable for the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type.

There are cases when you need to change the aspect of the figure counter that is shown before the figure titles. By default, the figure titles are formatted like this:

```
Figure NN. Lore Ipsum Title
```

NN is the number of the figure that starts being counted from the beginning of the publication.

One use-case is to have the NN counter be incremented only within one chapter (for example, the first chapter contains "Figure 1" and "Figure 2", and second chapter starts over with "Figure 1" instead of incrementing to "Figure 3").

You should reset the figure counter on each topic marked as chapter, then hide the label from the figure `<figcaption>` (this is an HTML element generated by the XSL transformation), and create another label using a :before selector on the `<figcaption>`.

```
*[class ~="topic/topic"][is-chapter] { 
  counter-reset: figcount;
}
```
Tables

Tables are widely used in technical documentation. This section contains information about the CSS rules that are used to style them and how to fix some problems.

Tables - Built-in CSS

There is a combination of CSS files that address tables:

- `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/core/-table-html-cals.css`
- `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-tables.css`

How to Deal With Wide Tables - Page Rotation

Some of the tables can have a large number of columns. In this case, the table may bleed out of the page. One solution is to use landscape pages for these tables.

Setting the attribute `@orient = 'land'` on the table element will force the table on a new landscape page.

Another solution is to use automatic detection of wide tables (5 or more columns):

```css
*[class="topic/table"] > *[class="topic/tgroup"][cols='5'],
*[class="topic/table"] > *[class="topic/tgroup"][cols='6'],
*[class="topic/table"] > *[class="topic/tgroup"][cols='7'],
*[class="topic/table"] > *[class="topic/tgroup"][cols='8'] {

    page: landscape-page;
    max-width: 100%;
    page-break-before: avoid;
}
```
Note: The landscape-page page layout is defined in the [PLUGIN_DIR]css/print/p-pages-and-headers.css.

If you want to rotate the entire topic that contains the big table, use:

```html
*[class="topic/table"] > *[class="topic/tgroup"]{cols='5'},
*[class="topic/table"] > *[class="topic/tgroup"]{cols='6'},
*[class="topic/table"] > *[class="topic/tgroup"]{cols='7'},
*[class="topic/table"] > *[class="topic/tgroup"]{cols='8'} {
  max-width: 100%;
  table-layout: auto;
}
*[class="topic/topic"]:has(*:not([class="topic/topic"])) > *[class="topic/table"] > *[class="topic/tgroup"]{cols='5'},
*[class="topic/topic"]:has(*:not([class="topic/topic"])) > *[class="topic/table"] > *[class="topic/tgroup"]{cols='6'},
*[class="topic/topic"]:has(*:not([class="topic/topic"])) > *[class="topic/table"] > *[class="topic/tgroup"]{cols='7'},
*[class="topic/topic"]:has(*:not([class="topic/topic"])) > *[class="topic/table"] > *[class="topic/tgroup"]{cols='8'};
```
How to Fix Text Bleeding From Table Cells

Slim tables or tables that have many columns make the text from the cells to be confined to a small horizontal space. Long words would bleed outside the cell boundaries. To fix this, you should enable hyphenation in your tables, thus making the words spread on multiple lines. In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add:

```
[class~="topic/table"] {  
    hyphens: auto;}
```

Related Information:

- Hyphenation (on page 1340)

How to Enable the Automatic Table Layout

The DITA specification indicates that tables should have a fixed layout. However, you can get a more optimal arrangement of the cells using the automatic layout. In your customization CSS (on page 1253), add:

```
*[class~="topic/tgroup"] {  
    table-layout:auto !important;
}
```

If you want to control which table you want this layout, you can set the `@outputclass` attribute on the `<table>` element:

```
<table outputclass='auto_tbl'> ... </table>
```

Then, in the CSS, use a rule that matches the `@outputclass`:

```
*[class~="topic/table"][outputclass='auto_tbl'] > *[class~="topic/tgroup"] {  
    table-layout:auto !important;
}
```

⚠️ Important: Make sure the tables have no column width specified.
How to Rotate Content from a Table Cell

There are cases where you want to style the first column as a kind of table header, with vertical text.

There is an important thing to remember: you can rotate an element from a table cell, but not the cell itself. So, your DITA table cell should contain a `<div>` or a `<p>` element that will be rotated. The cell has to be marked somehow so that it can be matched from the CSS. One way is to set an `@outputclass` attribute on it, another will be to mark the table and then match the first entries from it.

```
<row>
  ...
  <entry outputclass="rotated">
    <p>Rotated</p>
  </entry>
  ...
</row>
```

In your customization CSS (on page 1253), use the following rule that matches the child of the entry:

```
*[outputclass ~= "rotated"] > * {
  display: block;
  transform: rotate(-90deg) !important;
  text-align: left !important;
  padding:0;
  margin:0;
  white-space: nowrap;
  width:150px;
  height:80px;
}
```

The padding and margins are set to zero to clear any space that may come from other rules. The width is required - it will become the height of the cell. If this is not specified, the vertical rotated text will bleed out of the cell. The height is optional.

How to Add Horizontal Lines to a Choice Table

To add horizontal lines that separate the options within a `<choicetable>`, you can use borders set on each of the rows. The following CSS styles the top header and the first column with some background colors. In a choice table, the first column represents the choice labels.
Note: Using the frame attribute on the choice table will make these selectors apply partially. Please make sure you are designing your customization CSS taking into account all possible values for the frame attribute.

Code Blocks

Code blocks are used to render section of programming code.

How to Enable Code Syntax Highlighting

This topic refers only to the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type.

You can use syntax highlighting to make it easier to read your code snippets by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts. In the DITA topics, set the @outputclass attribute on the <codeblock> elements to one of these values:

- language-bourne
- language-c
- language-cpp
For example, for a java snippet:

```xml
define <codeblock outputclass="language-java">
  for (int i=0; i <100; i++) {
     // do something
  }
</codeblock>
```

The resulting HTML fragment in the merged HTML5 document is:

```xml
<pre class="+ topic/pre pr-d/codeblock pre codeblock language-java">
  <strong class="hl-keyword" style="color:#7f0055">for</strong> (<strong class="hl-keyword" style="color:#7f0055">int</strong> i=<span class="hl-number">0</span>; i &lt;100; i++) {
     <em class="hl-comment" style="color:#006400">// do something</em>
  }
</pre>
```

And in the output, it will be rendered as:

```java
for (int i=0; i <100; i++) {
     // do something
}
```
Changing the Colors for the Syntax Highlighting

As you can see in the above example, the HTML elements `<span>` and `<strong>` are used to color the content. Since they have a `@style` attribute set, the overriding properties need to be marked with `!important`.

Suppose you want to color the keywords in red and the comments in blue. To do so, add the following to your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```
.hl-keyword {
  color: red !important;
}
.hl-comment {
  color: blue !important;
}
```

How to Disable Line Wrapping in Code Blocks

By default, code blocks have the content wrapped to avoid the bleeding of long lines out of the page. To avoid wrapping, add the following in your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```
*[class~="pr-d/codeblock"] {
  white-space: pre;
}
```

For the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type, the best solution to distinguish between lines is to leave them wrapped, but color each line with a different background (zebra coloring). An example is provided here: XSLT Extensions for PDF Transformations (on page 1245).

How to Deal with Unwanted Returns in Code Blocks

There are cases where the source file contains long lines of code that need to continue onto the next line in the rendered PDF (to wrap visually).

When the user copies the block from the PDF reader, they get two separated lines. This means that the command fails when users copy it from the PDF to the command-line terminal (because it comes in as two commands).

For example, the command:

```
$gist = ls -l * | count -n | some more
```

May be rendered in the PDF on two lines:
And this is invalid when used in the terminal.

There is no CSS workaround for this, but to manually format the command line, add a line continuation character like this:

```bash
$gist = ls -l * | count -n \n | some more
```

**Note:** For Linux/Mac OSX, the continuation character is the backslash \. For Windows, this is the shift character ^.

The command-line processor will now recognize that the first line is continuing on to the next one.

**Notes**

Notes contain an additional piece of information that calls attention to particular content. They may have various types (tip, caution, danger, restriction, important, warning).

For information on how to add and manage mixed content before the note icons and labels, see How to Control the Image Size in Complex Static Content *(on page 1365)*.

**How to Change Note Icons**

The recommended icon format is SVG.

To change the default icons for notes that do not have a `type` attribute, add the following rule to your customization CSS *(on page 1253)*:

```css
div.note > span.note__title{
    background-image:url("../img/note.svg") !important;
}
```

For a note with a `type` attribute set to `warning`, `caution`, or `trouble`, add the following corresponding CSS rule:

```css
div.warning > span.note__title{
    background-image:url("../img/warning.svg") !important;
}
div.caution > span.note__title{
    background-image:url("../img/caution.svg") !important;
}
```
Abbreviated Forms

When using the `<abbreviated-form>` element in your content, it is possible to style the subsequent occurrences differently than the first occurrence. To achieve this, add something similar to the following rule in your customization CSS (on page 1253):

```css
a:has(dfn[@class = "abbreviated-form"]) {
    color: oxy_xpath("let $cdf:= dfn return if (preceding::dfn[@keyref = $cdf/@keyref]) then 'black' else 'red'");
    text-decoration: oxy_xpath("let $cdf:= dfn return if (preceding::dfn[@keyref = $cdf/@keyref]) then 'none' else 'underline'");
}
```

This example would render the first occurrence with a red color and an underline, while the subsequent occurrences would be rendered with a black color and no underline.

Styling Through Custom Parameters

You can activate parts of your CSS by using custom transformation parameters that start with the `args.css.param` prefix.

These parameters are recognized by the publishing pipeline and are forwarded as synthetic attributes on the root element of the merged map. The last part of the parameter name will become the attribute name, while the value of the parameter will become the attribute value. The namespace of these synthetic attributes is: `http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/publishing/dita/css/params`.

**Notes:**

- Use only Latin alphanumeric characters for parameter names.
- You can set multiple styling parameters at the same time.

How to Limit the Depth of the TOC Using a Parameter

In the following example, a custom parameter is used to switch from a full depth table of contents to a flat one that shows only the titles of the first-level topics (such as chapters, preface, notices).

The custom parameter is:
The CSS that hides the topicrefs at level 2 or more:

```css
@namespace a "http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/publishing/dita/css/params";

:root[a|only-chapters-in-toc='yes'] *[class ~= "toc/toc"]
   > *[class ~= "map/topicref"]> *[class ~= "map/topicref"] { display:none; }
```

The selector `:root[a|only-chapters-in-toc='yes']` makes the rule activate only when the attribute is set.

**How to Change the Page Size Using a Parameter**

In the next example, a custom parameter is used to modify the page size. The parameter is defined in the transformation scenario:

```xml
args.css.param.page-size="A4"
```

Then in the CSS, the attribute value is extracted and used:

```css
@page {
    size: oxy_xpath('/*/[@local-name()="page-size"]');
}
```

**Controlling the Publication Content**

Using a plain DITA map, the transformation will produce a publication with a front page, a table of contents, chapters with content, and an index at the end. This is appropriate for most cases, but there are use cases where some adjustments are necessary. For example, if you want to do one of the following:

- Remove the TOC or index.
- Add a glossary.
- Change the position of the TOC or the index relative to the sibling topics.
- Add a preface, frontmatter, or backmatter with copyright notices, abstracts, list of tables, list of figures, etc.

All of these can be achieved using a DITA **bookmap**.
A bookmap has a more elaborate structure than a regular map. You should start by defining the title structure, with a main title and alternative title:

```xml
<!DOCTYPE bookmap PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DITA BookMap//EN" "bookmap.dtd">
<bookmap id="taskbook">
  <booktitle>
    <mainbooktitle>Publication Title</mainbooktitle>
    <booktitlealt>A very short description of the publication</booktitlealt>
  </booktitle>
</bookmap>
```

Then you may define a front matter. In this, you may link the topics that need to appear before the main content. You may also define the location where the table of contents will be placed. In the example below, it appears between the "abstract" and "foreword" topics:

```xml
<frontmatter>
  <topicref href="topics/abstract.dita"/>
  <booklists>
    <toc/>
  </booklists>
  <topicref href="topics/foreword.dita"/>
</frontmatter>
```

**Note:** To remove the TOC from the publication, just omit the `<toc>` element from the `<booklists>`.

Next, the topics are grouped into chapters:

```xml
...<chapter href="topics/installation.dita"/>
...
```

At the end, you could define the structure of the backmatter. Just like for the frontmatter, you can include some topics and some generated content, such as the index. In the example below, it is defined that the glossary should come after the index, followed by a list of figures and list of tables. At the very end, there is a topic with some thank you notes.

```xml
<backmatter>
  <topicref href="topics/conclusion.dita"/>
  <booklists>
    <indexlist/>
    <glossarylist>
      <topicref href="topics/xp.dita" keys="xp" print="yes"/>
    </glossarylist>
  </booklists>
</backmatter>
```
As you can see, the bookmap offers a much better control over the final content of the publication. It also offers more options in controlling the metadata that will go into the PDF (see the Metadata (on page 1281) topic).

**How to Omit the Front Page, TOC, Glossary, Index for a Plain DITA Map**

For a plain DITA map, there are no elements that allow you to control if and where to place the generated content such as the title page, table of contents, list of tables, glossary, or index. For the most common use-case, when you want to hide them all and just keep the content, you can use the transformation parameter `hide.frontpage.toc.index.glossary`. See: Transformation Parameters (on page 1230).

**Related Information:**

- How to Remove Entries from the TOC (on page 1313)
- How to Hide the TOC (on page 1314)

**How to Make Chapters Look Like Individual Publications**

**Note:** This topic is only applicable for the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation scenario.

Sometimes you want to make each chapter independent (i.e. it can be read separately, as a separate part of your publication). For this, you need the page counter, figure, and table counters to restart at each chapter. You can control this by using the `args.css.param.numbering` command line parameter.

In addition to numbering, you can force the creation of a chapter TOC (on page 1314).
Troubleshooting

This section contains information about fixing various publishing problems.

Error Parsing CSS File - Caused by a Networking Problem

Problem

My custom styles are not applied and in the transformation results console, I get an error containing one of the following: I/O exception, Unknown host, Error parsing.

Cause

One of the CSS files contains references to resources from another website that is currently inaccessible. These resources may include:

- Fonts
- Images
- Other CSS files

Note: If you exported one of the built-in publishing templates from the transformation scenario dialog, it is possible that the associated CSS files use an imported Google Font.

Remedy

1. Check your proxy settings (ask the system administrator for help).

2. If the server is still inaccessible from the transformation process, download the remote resources using a web browser, save them in the customization CSS file folder, and refer them directly from your CSS.

Note: If the problem is caused by a remote font, see Using Local Fonts.

XSL FO-based DITA to PDF Customization

Oxygen XML Developer plugin comes bundled with the DITA Open Toolkit that provides a mechanism for converting DITA maps (on page 1621) to PDF output. Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a built-in DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO (on page 879) transformation scenario that converts DITA maps to PDF using an xsl:fo processor.

There are several methods that can be used to customize DITA to PDF output:
• Create a customization directory that contains your customized files and reference that directory in the PDF transformation scenario (using the \texttt{customization.dir} parameter).
• Creating a DITA Open Toolkit plugin that adds extensions to the PDF output. More details can be found in the DITA Open Toolkit Documentation.

\textbf{Tip:} Some sample plugins are available on GitHub that could help you to get started with creating a plugin:

- Sample Plugin: DITA-OT PDF Customization Plugin for Oxygen User Manual
- Sample Plugin: DITA-OT PDF2 - Generate Numbers Before Topic's Title

### Using a Customization Directory

One way to customize the PDF output generated by the DITA Map to PDF - based on XSL-FO (on page 879) transformation scenario is to create a dedicated folder to store customized files. With this approach, you will copy the contents of the built-in customization directory to a new directory where you can customize the files according to your needs and reference the new directory using the \texttt{customization.dir} parameter in the transformation scenario. The biggest advantage of this method is that the contents of your customization directory will remain unaffected when the DITA-OT is upgraded.

### How to Create a Customization Directory

Follow this procedure to create a customization directory:

1. Copy all the entire \texttt{DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\org.dita.pdf2\Customization} directory to another location where you have write access.
2. Modify any of the files in whatever way necessary to achieve your specific goal. For inspiration, see Embedding a Company Logo (on page 1381) for a specific example of how you can modify contents of the directory to embed a logo in the output.

\textbf{Tip:} For other specific examples, see DITA-OT Documentation - PDF Customization Plugin.
3. Edit the DITA Map to PDF - based on XSL-FO (on page 879) transformation scenario, go to the Parameters tab, and set the \texttt{customization.dir} parameter to point to the location of your customization directory.

### Related Information:

- Automatic PDF plugin customization generator by Jarno Elovirta.
Embedding a Company Logo

The following procedure explains how to embed a company logo image in the front matter of the book.

1. Create a customization directory (on page 1380) (if you haven't already done so).
2. Create a `cfg\common\artwork` directory structure in your customization directory and copy your logo to that directory (for example, `C:\Customization\cfg\common\artwork \logo.png`).

   **Important:** Make sure that your logo image is named: `logo.png`.

3. Rename `Customization\catalog.xml.orig` to: `Customization\catalog.xml`.
4. Open the `catalog.xml` in Oxygen XML Developer plugin and *uncomment* this line:

   ```xml
   <!--uri name="cfg:fo/xsl/custom.xsl" uri="fo/xsl/custom.xsl"/>
   ```

   It now looks like this:

   ```xml
   <uri name="cfg:fo/xsl/custom.xsl" uri="fo/xsl/custom.xsl"/>
   ```

5. Rename the file `Customization\fo\xsl\custom.xsl.orig` to: `C:\Customization\fo \xsl\custom.xsl`
6. Open the `custom.xsl` file in Oxygen XML Developer plugin and create the template called `createFrontCoverContents` for DITA-OT 3.3.1.

   **Tip:** You can copy the same template from `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins \org.dita.pdf2\xsl\fo\front-matter.xsl` and modify it in whatever way necessary to achieve your specific goal. This new template in the `custom.xsl` file will override the same template from `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\org.dita.pdf2\xsl\fo\front-matter.xsl`.

   **Example:**

   For example, the `custom.xsl` could look like this:

   ```xml
   <?xml version='1.0'?>
   <xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
   xmlns:fo="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format"
   version="2.0">

   <xsl:template name="createFrontCoverContents">
   <!-- set the title -->
   ```
7. Edit the **DITA Map to PDF - based on XSL-FO** (on page 879) transformation scenario, go to the **Parameters** tab, and set the **customization.dir** parameter to point to the location of your customization directory.
Customizing the Header and Footer in PDF Output

The XSLT stylesheet `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/xsl/fo/static-content.xsl` contains templates that output the static header and footers for various parts of the PDF such as the prolog, table of contents, front matter, or body.

The templates for generating a footer for pages in the body are called `insertBodyOddFooter` or `insertBodyEvenFooter`.

These templates get the static content from resource files that depend on the language used for generating the PDF. The default resource file is `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/cfg/common-vars/en.xml`. These resource files contain variables (such as `Body odd footer`) that can be set to specific user values.

Instead of modifying these resource files directly, they can be overwritten with modified versions of the resources in a PDF customization directory.

1. Create a customization directory (on page 1380) (if you haven't already done so).
2. Locate the stylesheets and templates listed above in your customization directory and modify them in whatever way necessary to achieve your specific goal.

   Tip: For more information and examples, see the Oxygen PDF Customization Plugin project on GitHub.

3. Edit the DITA Map to PDF - based on XSL-FO (on page 879) transformation scenario, go to the Parameters tab, and set the customization.dir parameter to point to the location of your customization directory.

Related Information:

- Using a Customization Directory (on page 1380)
Adding a Watermark to PDF Output

To add a watermark to the PDF output of a DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO (on page 879) transformation scenario, follow this procedure:

1. Create a customization directory (on page 1380) (if you haven’t already done so).
2. Create a `cfg\common\artwork` directory structure in your customization directory and copy your watermark image to that directory (for example, `C:\Customization\cfg\common\artwork\watermark.png`).
3. Rename the `Customization\catalog.xml.orig` file to `Customization\catalog.xml`.
4. Open the `catalog.xml` in Oxygen XML Developer plugin and uncomment this line:

   ```xml
   <!--uri name="cfg:fo/xsl/custom.xsl" uri="fo/xsl/custom.xsl"/>
   ``

   The uncommented line should look like this:

   ```xml
   <uri name="cfg:fo/xsl/custom.xsl" url="fo/xsl/custom.xsl"/>
   ``

5. Rename the file: `Customization\fo\xsl\custom.xsl.orig` to `Customization\fo\xsl\custom.xsl`.
6. Open the `Customization\fo\xsl\custom.xsl` file in Oxygen XML Developer plugin to overwrite two XSLT templates:

   • The first template is located in the XSLT stylesheet `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\org.dita.pdf2\xsl\fo\static-content.xsl`. Override by copying the original template content in the `custom.xsl` and specifying a watermark image for every page in the PDF content, using a block-container element that references the watermark image file:

   ```xml
   <fo:static-content flow-name="odd-body-header">
     <fo:block-container absolute-position="absolute"
                          top="-2cm" left="-3cm" width="21cm" height="29.7cm"
                          background-image="{concat($artworkPrefix, 'Configuration/OpenTopic/cfg/common/artwork/watermark.png')}">
       <fo:block/>
     </fo:block-container>
     <fo:block xsl:use-attribute-sets="__body__odd__header">
       <xsl:call-template name="insertVariable">
         <xsl:with-param name="theVariableID" select="'Body odd header'"/>
         <xsl:with-param name="theParameters"/>
       </xsl:call-template>
       <prodname>
         <xsl:value-of select="$productName"/>
       </prodname>
       <heading>
   ```
The second template to override is located in the XSLT stylesheet `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\org.dita.pdf2\xsl\fo\commons.xsl` and is used for styling the first page of the output. Override it by copying the original template content in the `custom.xsl` and adding the `block-container` element that references the watermark image file:

```xml
<xsl:template name="createFrontMatter_1.0">
  <fo:page-sequence master-reference="front-matter"
    xsl:use-attribute-sets="__force__page__count">
    <xsl:call-template name="insertFrontMatterStaticContents"/>
    <fo:flow flow-name="xsl-region-body">
      <fo:block-container absolute-position="absolute"
        top="-2cm" left="-3cm" width="21cm" height="29.7cm"
        background-image="{concat($artworkPrefix,
          'Configuration/OpenTopic/cfg/common/artwork/watermark.png')}">
        <fo:block/>
      </fo:block-container>
      <fo:block xsl:use-attribute-sets="__frontmatter">
        <!-- set the title -->
      </fo:block>
    </fo:flow>
    </fo:page-sequence>
</xsl:template>
```
7. Edit the DITA Map to PDF - XSL-FO (on page 879) transformation scenario, go to the Parameters tab, and set the customization.dir parameter to point to the location of your customization directory.
Adding an Edit Link in PDF Output to Launch Oxygen XML Web Author

You can embed _Edit_ links in the DITA Map PDF output that will automatically launch a particular document in **Oxygen XML Web Author**. A reviewer can then simply click the link and they will be redirected to the Oxygen XML Web Author editing page with that particular file open and editable.

To embed an _Edit_ link in the DITA Map PDF output, follow these steps:

1. Edit a **DITA Map to PDF - based on XSL-FO** (on page 879) transformation scenario and open the **Parameters** tab.
2. Set values for the following parameters:
   - **editlink.remote.ditamap.url** - The URL of the DITA Map suitable for opening in Oxygen XML Web Author.
   - **editlink.web.author.url** - The URL of the Oxygen XML Web Author installation, for example https://www.oxygenxml.com/oxygen-xml-web-author/
3. Run the transformation scenario.

**Result:** In the PDF output, all topics will have an _Edit_ link to the right side of the title and clicking the link will launch that particular document in Oxygen XML Web Author.

Force Page Breaks Between Two Block Elements in PDF Output

Suppose that in your DITA content you have two **block elements** (on page 1619), such as two paragraphs:

```xml
<p>First para</p>
<p>Second para</p>
```

and you want to force a page break between them in the PDF output.

Here is how you can implement a DITA Open Toolkit plugin (on page 1625) that would achieve this:

1. Define your custom processing instruction that marks the place where a page break should be inserted in the PDF, for example:

   ```xml
   <p>First para</p>
   <?pagebreak?>
   <p>Second para</p>
   ```

2. Locate the DITA Open Toolkit distribution and in the plugins directory create a new plugin folder (for example, `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/pdf-page-break`).
3. In this new folder, create a new `plugin.xml` file with the following content:

   ```xml
   <plugin id="com.yourpackage.pagebreak">
   ```
The most important feature in the plugin is that it will add a new XSLT stylesheet to the XSL processing that produces the PDF content.

4. In the same folder, create an XSLT stylesheet named `pageBreak.xsl` with the following content:

```xml
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform" xmlns:fo="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format" version="1.0">
  <xsl:template match="processing-instruction('pagebreak')">
    <fo:block break-after="page"/>
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

The source code for the plugin can be found on GitHub here: https://github.com/dita-community/org.dita-community.pdf-page-break.

### Customizing Note Images in PDF

To customize the images that appear next to each type of note in the PDF output, use a PDF customization folder (on page 1380) with the following procedure:

1. Create a customization directory (on page 1380) (if you haven't already done so).
2. Create a `cfg\common\vars` directory structure in your customization directory and copy the contents of `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\org.dita.pdf2\cfg\common\vars` into that created directory.
3. Locate the `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\org.dita.pdf2\cfg\common\vars\en.xml` file in your customization directory (for example, `custom_org.dita.pdf2\cfg\common\vars\en.xml`).
4. Create a `cfg\common\artwork` directory structure in your customization directory and add your custom `notice` image (for example, `Customization\cfg\common\artwork\notice.gif`).
5. Locate and edit the `Customization\cfg\common\vars\en.xml` file and modify the appropriate note element. For example, modify the path to the image for `<note>` element with the `type` attribute set to `notice` from:

```xml
<variable id="notice Note Image Path">Configuration/OpenTopic/cfg/common/artwork/important.png</variable>
```

...to:
6. Edit the **DITA Map to PDF - based on XSL-FO** (on page 879) transformation scenario, go to the **Parameters** tab, and set the path for the **customization.dir** property to point to the customization folder. Also, set the **com.oxygenxml.use.custom.note.images** parameter to **no**.

Show Comments and Tracked Changes in PDF Output

To include comments and **tracked changes** (stored within your DITA topics) in the PDF output, follow these steps:

1. Edit a **DITA Map to PDF** transformation scenario.
2. In the **Parameters** tab, set the value of the **show.changes.and.comments** parameter to **yes**.
3. Optionally, you can configure any of these other parameters to adjust the colors of the comments and tracked changes:
   - **ct.insert.color** - Specifies the color for insertion type tracked changes, as a plain color (e.g. red, yellow, blue), or with a hexadecimal equivalent (e.g. FFFFFF). The default value is 'blue'.
   - **ct.delete.color** - Specifies the color for deletion type tracked changes, as a plain color (e.g. red, yellow, blue), or with a hexadecimal equivalent (e.g. FFFFFF). The default value is 'red'.
   - **ct.comment.bg.color** - Specifies the background color for comment type tracked changes, as a plain color (e.g. red, yellow, blue), or with a hexadecimal equivalent (e.g. FFFFFF). The default value is 'yellow'.
4. Click **OK** and then the **Apply Associated** button to run the transformation scenario.

   **Result:** Comment threads and tracked changes will now appear in the PDF output. Details about each comment or change will be available in the footer section for each page.

Set a Font for PDF Output Generated with FO Processor

When a **DITA map** (on page 1621) is transformed to PDF using an FO processor and it contains some Unicode characters that cannot be rendered by the default PDF fonts, a font that is capable of rendering these characters must be configured and embedded in the PDF result.

The settings that must be modified for configuring a font for the built-in FO processor are detailed in **Add a Font to the Built-in FO Processor - Advanced Version** (on page 955).
DITA OT PDF Font Mapping

The DITA OT contains a file `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/cfg/fo/font-mappings.xml` that maps logical fonts used in the XSLT stylesheets to physical fonts that will be used by the FO processor to generate the PDF output.

The XSLT stylesheets used to generate the XSL-FO output contain code like this:

```xml
<xsl:attribute name="font-family">monospace</xsl:attribute>
```

The font-family is defined to be `monospace`, but `monospace` is just an alias. It is not a physical font name. Therefore, another stage in the PDF generation takes this `monospace` alias and looks in the `font-mappings.xml`.

If it finds a mapping like this:

```xml
<aliases>
  <alias name="monospace">Monospaced</alias>
</aliases>
```

then it looks to see if the `monospace` has a `logical-font` definition and if so, it will use the `physical-font` specified there:

```xml
<logical-font name="Monospaced">
  <physical-font char-set="default">
    <font-face>Courier New, Courier</font-face>
  </physical-font>
  .........
</logical-font>
```

⚠️ Important:

If no alias mapping is found for a font-family specified in the XSLT stylesheets, the processing defaults to Helvetica.

Related Information:

Adding Libraries to the Built-in FO Processor (DITA-OT)

Starting with Oxygen XML Developer plugin version 20.0, both hyphenation and PDF image support are enabled by default in the built-in DITA-OT FO processor. For older version of Oxygen XML Developer plugin, use the following procedures to enable such support.

Adding Hyphenation Support for DITA-OT Transformation Scenarios

1. Download the pre-compiled JAR (on page 1623) from OFFO.
2. Edit the DITA-OT transformation scenario and switch to the Advanced tab.
3. Click the Libraries button and add the path to the fop-hyph.jar library.

Adding Support for PDF Images

1. Download the fop-pdf-images JAR libraries.
2. Edit the DITA-OT transformation scenario and switch to the Advanced tab.
3. Click the Libraries button and add the path to the libraries.

Adding Support for CGM Images

1. Go to the JCGM page and download the jcgm-image-0.1.1.jar and jcgm-core-0.2.0.jar libraries.
2. Edit the DITA-OT transformation scenario and switch to the Advanced tab.
3. Click the Libraries button and add the path to the libraries.

Debugging DITA PDF Transformations

To debug a DITA PDF transformation scenario using the XSLT Debugger follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to XML > XML Catalog, click Add, and select the file located at DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\org.dita.pdf2\cfg\catalog.xml.
2. Open the map and create a DITA Map PDF - XSL-FO transformation scenario.
3. Edit the scenario, go to the Parameters tab and change the value of the clean.temp parameter to no.
4. Run the transformation scenario.
5. Open the stage1.xml file located in the temporary directory and format and indent (on page 395) it.
6. Create a transformation scenario for this XML file by associating the `topic2fo_shell_fop.xsl` stylesheet located at `DITA-OT-DIR\plugins\org.dita.pdf2\xsl\fo\topic2fo_shell_fop.xsl`. If you are specifically using the RenderX XEP or Antenna House FO processors to build the PDF output, you should use the XSL stylesheets `topic2fo_shell_xep.xsl` or `topic2fo_shell_axf.xsl` located in the same folder.

   **Note:** For validation purposes, you need to add the main debugged stylesheet (usually `topic2fo_shell_fop.xsl`) to the Master Files folder (on page 339) in the Navigator view.

7. In the transformation scenario edit the XSLT Processor combo box choose the Saxon EE XSLT processor (the same processor used when the DITA OT transformation is executed).

8. In the transformation scenario, edit the Parameters list and set the parameter locale with the value `en_GB` and the parameter customizationDir.url to point either to your customization directory or to the default DITA OT customization directory. Its value should have a URL syntax like this: `file://c:/path/to/DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/cfg`.

9. Debug the transformation scenario.

**Related Information:**

- Debugging XSLT Stylesheets and XQuery Documents (on page 1495)
- How to Enable Debugging for FO Processor Transformations (on page 957)

---

**DocBook to PDF Output Customization**

When the default layout and output of the DocBook to PDF transformation needs to be customized, follow these steps:


   You should start from a copy of the file `[DocBook XSL directory]/fo/titlepage.templates.xml` and customize it. The instructions for the spec file can be found here.

   An example of spec file:

   ```xml
   <t:titlepage-content t:side="recto">
   <mediaobject/>
   ```
2. Generate a new XSLT stylesheet from the title spec file from the previous step.
   Apply [DocBook XSL directory]/template/titlepage.xsl to the title spec file. The result is an XSLT stylesheet (for example, mytitlepages.xsl).

3. Import mytitlepages.xsl in a DocBook customization layer.
   The customization layer is the stylesheet that will be applied to the XML document. The mytitlepages.xsl should be imported with an element like this:

   ```xml
   <xsl:import href="dir-name/mytitlepages.xsl"/>
   ```

4. Insert a logo image in the XML document.
   The path to the logo image must be inserted in the book/info/mediaobject element of the XML document.

5. Apply the customization layer to the XML document.
   A quick way is to duplicate the transformation scenario DocBook PDF that is included with Oxygen XML Developer plugin and set the customization layer in the XSL URL property of the scenario (on page 891).

Related Information:


- Video demonstration for creating a DocBook customization layer in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
11. Working with XPath Expressions

XPath is a language for addressing specific parts of a document. XPath models an XML document as a tree of nodes. An XPath expression is a mechanism for navigating through and selecting nodes from the document. An XPath expression is, in a way, analogous to an SQL query used to select records from a database.

**Note:** If an XPath expression is run over a JSON document, it is converted to XML and the XPath is executed over the converted XML document.

There are various types of nodes, including element nodes, attribute nodes, and text nodes. XPath defines a way to compute a string-value for each type of node.

XPath defines a library of standard functions for working with strings, numbers and boolean expressions.

**Examples:**

- `child::*` - Selects all children of the root node.
- `./name` - Selects all elements having the name "name", descendants of the current node.
- `/catalog/cd[price>10.80]` - Selects all the `cd` elements that have a price element with a value larger than 10.80.

To find out more about XPath, see [http://www.w3.org/TR/xpath](http://www.w3.org/TR/xpath).

**Related Information:**

- Content Completion in XPath Expressions *(on page 527)*

**XPath Builder View**

The **XPath/XQuery Builder** view allows you to compose complex XPath expressions and execute them over the currently edited XML document. For XPath 2.0 / 3.1, you can use the `doc()` function to specify the source file for which the expressions are executed. When you connect to a database, the expressions are executed over that database. If you are using the XPath/XQuery Builder view and the current file is an XSLT document, Oxygen XML Developer plugin executes the expressions over the XML document in the associated scenario.
Note: If an XPath expression is run over a JSON document, it is converted to XML and the XPath is executed over the converted XML document.

If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

The upper part of the view contains the following actions:

**XPath version chooser drop-down menu**

A drop-down menu that allows you to select the type of the expression you want to execute. You can choose between:

- XPath 1.0 (Xerces-driven)
- XPath 2.0, XPath 2.0 SA, XPath 3.1, XPath 3.1 SA, Saxon-HE XQuery, Saxon-PE XQuery, or Saxon-EE XQuery (all of them are Saxon-driven)
- Custom connection to XML databases that can execute XQuery expressions

Note: The results returned by XPath 2.0 SA and XPath 3.1 SA have a location limited to the line number of the start element (there are no column information and no end specified).

Note: Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses Saxon to execute XPath 3.1 expressions. Since Saxon implements a part of the 3.1 functions, when using a function that is not implemented, Oxygen XML Developer plugin returns a compilation error.

**Execute XPath button**

Use this button to start the execution of the XPath or XQuery expression you are editing. The result of the execution is displayed in the Results view (on page 226).

**Favorites button**

Allows you to save certain expressions that you can later reuse. To add an expression as a favorite, press the star button and enter a name for it. The star turns yellow to confirm that the expression was saved. Expand the drop-down menu next to the star button to see all your favorites. Oxygen XML Developer plugin automatically groups favorites in folders named after the method of execution.

**History drop-down menu**

Keeps a list of the last 15 executed XPath expressions. Use the Clear history action from the bottom of the list to remove them.

**Settings drop-down menu**

Contains the following three options:
Update on cursor move

When selected and you navigate through a document, the XPath expression corresponding to the XML node at the current cursor position is displayed. For JSON documents, it displays the XPath expression for the current property.

Evaluate as you type

When you select this option, the XPath expression you are composing is evaluated in real time.

Note: This option and the automatic validation are disabled when the scope is other than Current file.

Options

Opens the Preferences page of the currently selected processing engine.

XPath scope menu

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to define a scope for which the XPath operation will be executed. You can choose where the XPath expression will be executed:

- Current file - Current selected file only.
- Enclosing project - All the files of the project that encloses the current edited file.
- Workspace selected files - The files selected in the workspace. The files are collected from the last selected resource provider view (Navigator (on page 210), Project Explorer or Package Explorer).
- All opened files - All files opened in the application.
- Opened archive - Files open in the Archive Browser view (on page 1401).
- Working sets - The selected working sets (on page 1627).

At the bottom of the scope menu the following scope configuration actions are available:

- Configure XPath working sets - Allows you to configure and manage collections of files and folders, encapsulated in logical containers called working sets (on page 1627).
- XPath file filter - You can filter the files from the selected scope for which the XPath expression will be executed. By default, the XPath expression will be executed only on XML or JSON files, but you can also define a set of patterns that will filter out files from the current scope.
When you hover your cursor over the version icon, a tooltip is displayed to let you know what engine Oxygen XML Developer plugin currently uses.

While you edit an XPath or XQuery expression, Oxygen XML Developer plugin assists you with the following features:

- **Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620)** - It offers context-dependent proposals and takes into account the cursor position in the document you are editing. The set of functions proposed by the Content Completion Assistant also depends on the engine version. Select the engine version from the drop-down menu available in the toolbar.
- Syntax Highlighting - Allows you to identify the components of an expression. To customize the colors of the components of the expression, open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Editor > Syntax Highlight (on page 112).
- Automatic validation of the expression as you type.

**Note:** When you type invalid syntax, a red serrated line underlines the invalid fragments.

- Function signature and documentation balloon, when the cursor is located inside a function.

Related Information:
XPath Expression Results View

When you run an XPath expression, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the results of its execution in the XPath Results view.

This view contains the following columns:

- **Description** - The result that Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays when you run an XPath expression.
- **XPath location** - The path to the matched node.
- **Resource** - The name of the document that you run the XPath expression on.
- **System ID** - The path to the document itself.
- **Location** - The location of the result in the document.

To arrange the results depending on a column, click its header. If no information regarding location is available, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays Not available in the Location column. Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays the results in a valid XPath expression format.

Xpath - /node[value]/node[value]/node[value] -

XPath Results View Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available when the contextual menu is invoked in this view:

**Select All**

Extends the selection to all the messages from the view.

**Copy**

Copies information associated with the selected messages in case you want to paste it elsewhere.

**Save Results**

Saves the complete list of messages in a file in text format. For each message, the included details are the same as the ones for the Copy action (on page 1398).

**Save Results as XML**

Saves the complete list of messages in a file in XML format. For each message, the included details are the same as the ones for the Copy action (on page 1398).

**Save Results as HTML**
Saves the complete list of messages in a file in HTML format. For each message, the included details are the same as the ones for the Copy action (on page 1398).

**Example:**

The following snippets are taken from a DocBook book based on the DocBook XML DTD. The book contains a number of chapters. To return all the chapter nodes of the book, enter `//chapter` in the XPath expression field and press (Enter). This action returns all the chapter nodes of the DocBook book in the Results View. Click a record in the Results View to locate and highlight its corresponding chapter element and all its children nodes in the document you are editing.

To find all example nodes contained in the sect2 nodes of a DocBook XML document, use the following XPath expression: `//chapter/sect1/sect2/example`. Oxygen XML Developer plugin adds a result in the Results View for each example node found in any sect2 node.

For example, if the result of the above XPath expression is:

```
- /chapter[1]/sect1[3]/sect2[7]/example[1]
```

it means that in the edited file, the example node is located in the first chapter, third section level one, seventh section level 2.

Figure 391. XPath Results Highlighted in Editor Panel with Character Precision
XPath and XML Catalogs

The evaluation of the XPath expression tries to resolve the locations of documents referenced in the expression through XML Catalogs (on page 1627). These catalogs are configured in the XML Catalog preferences (on page 133) pages and the XML Parser preferences (on page 135).

**Example:**

As an example, consider the evaluation of the `collection(URIofCollection)` function (XPath 2.0). To resolve the references from the files returned by the `collection()` function with an XML catalog, specify the class name of the catalog-enabled parser for parsing these collection files. The class name is `ro.sync.xml.parser.CatalogEnabledXMLReader`. Specify it as it follows:

```xml
let $docs := collection(iri-to-uri(
    "file:///D:/temp/test/XQuery-catalog/mydocsdir?recurse=yes;select=*.xml;
    parser=ro.sync.xml.parser.CatalogEnabledXMLReader"))
```

XPath Prefix Mapping

To define default mappings between prefixes and namespace URIs go to the XPath preferences page (on page 146) and enter the mappings in the Default prefix-namespace mappings table. The same preferences panel allows you to configure the default namespace used in XPath 2.0 expressions.

⚠️ **Important:** If you define a default namespace, Oxygen XML Developer plugin binds this namespace to the first free prefix from the list: default, default1, default2, and so on. For example, if you define the default namespace `xmlns="something"` and the prefix `default` is not associated with another namespace, you can match tags without prefix in an XPath expression typed in the XPath toolbar by using the prefix `default`. To find all the `level` elements when you define a default namespace in the root element, use this expression: `//default:level` in the XPath toolbar.
12.

Working with Archives

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a useful Archive Browser view (on page 1401) that offers the means to work with files directly from various types of archives (for example, opening and saving files directly in archives, or browsing and modifying archive structures). The archive support is available for all ZIP-type archives, including:

- ZIP archives
- EPUB books
- JAR archives (on page 1623)
- Office Open XML (OOXML) files
- Open Document Format (ODF) files
- IDML files (on page 1622)

You can transform, validate, and perform many other operations on files directly from an archive. For instance, you can transform, or validate files directly from OOXML or ODF packages, and the structure and content of the ZIP archives can be opened, edited, and saved, similar to any other ZIP archive browsing tool. Also, when browsing for a URL in various dialog boxes, you can use the Browse for archived file action to browse and select files from a particular archive.

For more information about working with an EPUB archive in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/OIGTNQw0CI8

Browsing Archives

To view the contents and structure of an archive, use one of the following methods:

- Open an archive from the Navigator view (on page 210). This will open the archive in the main editing pane. The archive will be unmounted when the editor is closed.
- Use the Eclipse File System (EFS) by right-clicking the archive in the Navigator view and choosing Expand Zip Archive. This will expand the archive in the Navigator view. All the standard Navigator actions are available on the mounted archive. To close the archive, you can use the Collapse ZIP Archive action and any file opened from the expanded archive will be closed when the archive in unmounted.
Tip: If a file is not recognized by Oxygen XML Developer plugin as a supported archive type, you can add it from the Archive preferences page (on page 44).

Figure 392. Browsing an Archive

![Browsing an Archive]

**Archive Contextual Menu Actions**

The following additional actions are available from the contextual menu for archives:

- **Open**
  
  Opens a resource from the archive in the editor.

- **Extract**
  
  Extracts a resource from the archive in a specified folder.

- **New folder**
  
  Creates a folder as child of the selected folder in the browsed archive.

- **New file**
  
  Creates a file as child of the selected folder in the browsed archive.

- **Add files**
  
  Adds existing files as children of the selected folder in the browsed archive.

  **Note:** On OS X, the **Add file** action is also available and it allows you to add one file at a time.

- **Rename**
  
  Renames a resource in the archive.

- **Cut**
  
  Cuts the selected archive resource.
Copy
Copies the selected archive resource.

Paste
Pastes a file or folder into the archive.

Delete
Removes a file or folder from archive.

Copy location
Copies the URL location of the selected resource.

Refresh
Refreshes the selected resource.

Properties
Shows the properties of the selected resource.

For more information, watch our video demonstration about working with an EPUB in the Archive Browser view:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/OIGTNQwOCl8

Working with Archive Files
Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for working with various types of archives, including the following:

- **EPUB** - An e-book file format that can be used on many types of devices, such as smart phones, tablets, e-readers, or computers.
- **OOXML** - An XML-based file format for representing spreadsheets, charts, presentations, and word processing documents.
- **ODF** - An free and open-source XML-based file format for electronic office documents, such as spreadsheets, charts, presentations, and word processing documents.

When these types of files are opened in the Navigator view or the main editing pane, their internal components are expanded:

- Document content (XHTML and image files).
- Packaging files.
- Container files.
When an archive is expanded, you can add or delete files that compose the archive structure. All changes made to the structure of an archive are saved immediately. You can open files from within the archive to edit them in the main editing pane and save changes (on page 1405) back to the archive. You can also use the Open in System Application action to open the archive in the default system application that is associated with that type of file.

**EPUB-Specific Validation**

When working with EPUB archives, Eclipse includes a Validate action on the toolbar that checks the EPUB archive to make sure the structure and content are valid. Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the open-source EpubCheck validator to perform the validation. This validator detects many types of errors, including OCF container structure, OPF and OPS mark-up, as well as internal reference consistency.

For more information about working with an EPUB archive in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/OIGTNQwOCl8

**Related Information:**
Creating an Archive

To create an archive from scratch, follow these steps:

1. Go to File > New > New from Templates.

2. Choose your particular type of archive template. For example, select one of the ODF, OOXML, or EPUB templates.

3. Click Next and choose the name and location of the file.

4. Click Finish.

A skeleton archive is saved on disk and opened in Eclipse.

Tip: Use toolbar and contextual menu actions to edit, add, and remove resources from the archive. For EPUB archives, you can use the Validate action to verify the integrity of the EPUB archive.

Editing and Saving Files Inside an Archive

You can open files directly from an archive and then edit them in the main editor pane. To open a file, simply double-click it or select Open from the contextual menu.

When saving the file back to the archive, you are prompted to choose if you want the application to make a backup copy of the archive before saving the new content. If you choose Never ask me again, you will not be asked again to make backup copies. You can re-enable the pop-up message from the Archive preferences page (on page 44).

Migrating Archives to DITA or TEI

Certain types of archives can be converted to DITA or TEI. For example, OOXML (Office Open XML) archive files with the DOCX file extension can be migrated to DITA or TEI.

To migrate DOCX files to DITA or TEI, follow these steps:

1. Open and expand the archive in Eclipse.
2. Open the `document.xml` file contained in the archive.

3. Run one of the following built-in transformation scenarios:
   a. **DOCX DITA** to migrate to DITA.
   b. **DOCX TEI P5** to migrate to TEI.

4. You may need to do some manual reconfiguring to map DOCX styles to DITA or TEI content.

   **Tip:** Oxygen XML Developer plugin also includes a built-in transformation scenario called **ODT TEI P5** for converting ODF archive files with the ODT file extension to TEI and a similar process can be used to migrate ODT files to TEI.
Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for connecting and integrating with various databases and Microsoft SharePoint. This section includes information about the database-related features in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. It explains how to connect with the supported databases, presents the actions that are available for each type, and includes information about SharePoint integration.

Working with Databases

XML is a storage and interchange format for structured data and is supported by all major database systems. Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers the means for managing the interaction with some of the most commonly used databases (both Relational and Native XML databases). Through this interaction, Oxygen XML Developer plugin helps users with browsing, content editing, importing from databases, using XQuery with databases, SQL execution, and generating XML Schema from a database structure.

The types of connections that are supported in Oxygen XML Developer plugin include:

- IBM DB2 (on page 1413)
- Microsoft SQL Server (on page 1418)
- Oracle Database (on page 1422)
- PostgreSQL (on page 1427)
- Berkeley DB XML (on page 1432)
- eXist (on page 1438)
- MarkLogic (on page 1443)
- MySQL (on page 1453)
- Generic JDBC (on page 1455)
- JDBC-ODBC (on page 1456)
- BaseX (on page 1458)
- WebDAV (on page 1463)
- Microsoft SharePoint (on page 1477)

Related Information:
Data Source Explorer View

The **Data Source Explorer** view displays your database connections. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the `Window > Show View` menu.

You can connect to a database simply by expanding the connection node (click the connection). The database structure can be expanded to resource level, or even all the way to column level for tables inside relational databases. Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports multiple simultaneous database connections and the connection tree in the **Data Source Explorer** view provides an easy method for browsing them.

Figure 394. Data Source Explorer View

The objects (nodes) that are displayed in the **Data Source Explorer** view depend on the connection type and structure of the database. Various contextual menu actions are available for each hierarchical level and for some connections you can add or move resources in a container by simply dragging them from the **Navigator view** (on page 210), a file browsing application, or another database.

**Toolbar Actions**

The following actions are available in the toolbar of this view:

- Filters
Opens the Data Sources / Table Filters preferences page (on page 52), allowing you to decide which table types are displayed in the Data Source Explorer view.

- Configure Database Sources

Opens the Data Sources preferences page (on page 47) where you can configure both data sources and connections.

Database-Specific Contextual Menu Actions

Each specific type of database will also include its own specific contextual menu actions in the Data Source Explorer view. The actions depend on the type of database, the type of node, or the hierarchical level of the node in which the contextual menu is invoked.

For more information on the specific actions that are available, see the topics in this section for each specific type of database.

Related Information:

- Data Sources Preferences (on page 47)

Table Explorer View

Relational databases tables in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) can be displayed and edited in the Table Explorer view by selecting the Edit action from the contextual menu of a Table node or by double-clicking one of its fields. To modify the content of a cell, double-click it and start typing. When editing is complete, Oxygen XML Developer plugin attempts to update the database with the new cell content.

Figure 395. Table Explorer View
You can sort the content of a table by one of its columns by clicking its column header.

Note the following:

- The first column is an index (not part of the table structure).
- Every column header contains the field name and its data type.
- The primary key columns are marked with this symbol: ✱.
- Multiple tables are presented in a tabbed manner.

For performance issues, you can set the maximum number of cells that are displayed in the **Table Explorer** view (using the **Limit the number of cells** option in the **Data Sources** Preferences page (on page 51)). If a table that has more cells than the value set in the options is displayed in the **Table Explorer** view, a warning dialog box informs you that the table is only partially shown.

You are notified if the value you have entered in a cell is not valid (and thus cannot be updated).

- If the content of the edited cell does not belong to the data type of the column, an information dialog box appears, notifying you that the value you have inserted cannot be converted to the SQL type of that field. For example, if you have a column that contains **LONG** (numerical) values, and a character or string is inserted into one of its cells, you would get the error message that a string value cannot be converted to the requested SQL type (NUMBER).
- If the constraints of the database are not met (for instance, primary key constraints), an information dialog box will appear, notifying you of the reason the database has not been updated. For example, in the table below, trying to set the second record in the primary key **propID** column to 8, results in a duplicate entry error since that value has already been used in the first record:

![Table Explorer Example](image)

Figure 396. Duplicate Entry for Primary Key
Table Explorer Contextual Menu Actions

Common editing actions (Cut, Copy, Paste, Select All, Undo, Redo) are available in the contextual menu of an edited cell.

The contextual menu, available on every cell in the Table Explorer view, also includes the following actions:

**Set NULL**
Sets the content of the cell to null. This action is not available for columns that cannot have a value of null.

**Insert row**
Inserts an empty row in the table.

**Duplicate row**
Makes a copy of the selected row and adds it in the Table Explorer view. Note that the new row will not be inserted in the database table until all conflicts are resolved.

**Commit row**
Commits the selected row.

**Delete row**
Deletes the selected row.

**Copy**
Copies the content of the cell.

**Paste**
Pastes copied content into the selected cell.

**Table Explorer Toolbar Actions**

The toolbar of the **Table Explorer** view also includes the following actions:

- **Export to XML**
  
  Opens the Export Criteria dialog box (a thorough description of this dialog box can be found in the Import from database (on page 1488) chapter).

- **Refresh**

  Performs a refresh for the sub-tree of the selected node.

- **Insert row**

  Inserts an empty row in the table.

- **Duplicate row**

  Makes a copy of the selected row and adds it in the **Table Explorer** view. Note that the new row will not be inserted in the database table until all conflicts are resolved.

- **Commit row**

  Commits the selected row.

- **Delete row**

  Deletes the selected row.

**Related Information:**

- Data Source Explorer View (on page 1408)

**Database Connection Support**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers support for a variety of Relational and Native XML database connections. The database drivers and connections for various types of database are configured in the Data Sources preferences page (on page 47) and once configured, the database connections can be viewed and managed in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408). Oxygen XML Developer plugin also includes a Database perspective (on page 181) that helps you to manage databases.

The database support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers a variety of capabilities, including:

- Browsing the structure of databases in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408).
• Viewing relational tables in the **Table Explorer view** *(on page 1409).*
• Executing SQL queries against databases.
• Calling stored procedures with input and output parameters.
• XQuery execution with databases.
• Exporting data from databases to XML.

**Relational Database Support**

Relational databases use a relational model and are based on tables linked by a common key. Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers support for the most commonly used relational databases, including:

- IBM DB2
- Oracle 11g
- Microsoft SQL Server
- PostgreSQL
- MySQL

Oxygen XML Developer plugin also offers generic support (table browsing and execution of SQL queries) for any JDBC-compliant database (for example, *MariaDB*).

**Native XML Database Support**

Native XML databases have an XML-based internal model and their fundamental unit of storage is XML. They use XML as an interface to specify documents as tree structured data that may contain unstructured text, but on disk the data is stored as optimized binary files. This makes query and retrieval processes faster. Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers support for the most commonly used native XML databases, including:

- Berkeley DB XML
- eXist
- MarkLogic
- Oracle XML DB
- Base X

**Related Information:**

- [WebDAV Connections](on page 1463)
- [Integration with Microsoft SharePoint](on page 1477)
IBM DB2 Database Connections

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for IBM DB2 database connections. Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to browse the structure of an IBM DB2 database in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), open tables in the Table Explorer view (on page 1409), and perform various operations on the resources in the repository.

Figure 397. IBM DB2 Database Connection

Configuring an IBM DB2 Database Connection

To configure the support for the IBM DB2 database, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the IBM website and in the DB2 Clients and Development Tools category select the DB2 Driver for JDBC and SQLJ download link. Fill out the download form and download the zip file. Unzip the zip file and use the db2jcc.jar and db2jcc_license_cu.jar files in Oxygen XML Developer plugin for configuring a DB2 data source (on page 1414).
2. Configure IBM DB2 Data Source drivers (on page 1414).
3. Configure an IBM DB2 Server Connection (on page 1416).
4. To view your connection, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu) or switch to the Database perspective (on page 1624).

How to Configure IBM DB2 Data Source Drivers

Available in the Enterprise edition only.
To configure a data source for connecting to an IBM DB2 server, follow these steps:

1. Go to the IBM website and in the DB2 Clients and Development Tools category select the DB2 Driver for JDBC and SQLJ download link. Fill out the download form and download the zip file.

2. Unzip the downloaded archive.

3. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.

4. Click the + New button in the Data Sources panel.

The dialog box for configuring a data source is opened.

5. Enter a unique name for the data source.

6. Select DB2 in the driver Type drop-down menu.

7. Click the Add Files button and select the IBM DB2 driver files from the archive that you downloaded and unzipped.

The IBM DB2 driver files are:

- db2jcc.jar
- db2jcc_license_cisuz.jar
- db2jcc_license_cu.jar
8. Select the most appropriate **Driver class**.

9. Click the **OK** button to finish the data source configuration.

10. Continue on to **configure your IBM DB2 connection (on page 1416)**.

### How to Configure an IBM DB2 Connection

The support to create an IBM DB2 connection is available in the Enterprise edition only.

To configure a connection to an IBM DB2 server, follow these steps:

1. **Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42)** and go to **Data Sources**.

2. Click the **+ New** button in the **Connections** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a database connection is displayed.

   **Figure 399. Connection Configuration Dialog Box**

3. Enter a unique name for the connection.

4. Select an **IBM DB2** data source in the **Data Source** drop-down menu.

5. Enter the connection details.
   a. Enter the URL to the installed IBM DB2 engine.
   b. Enter the user name to access the IBM DB2 engine.
   c. Enter the password to access the IBM DB2 engine.
6. Click the **OK** button to finish the connection configuration.

7. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer view** (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database perspective (on page 1624)**.

**IBM DB2 Contextual Menu Actions**

**General Contextual Menu Actions**

For relational databases, the following general actions are available in the contextual menu of the **Data Source Explorer view** (on page 1408), depending on the node in which it is invoked:

- **Refresh**
  
  Performs a refresh on the selected node.

- **Disconnect (available on Connection nodes)**
  
  Closes the current database connection. If a table is already open, you are warned to close it before proceeding.

- **Configure Database Sources (available on Connection nodes)**
  
  Opens the **Data Sources preferences page** (on page 47) where you can configure both data sources and connections.

- **Edit (available on Table nodes)**
  
  Opens the selected table in the **Table Explorer view** (on page 1409).

- **Export to XML (available on Table nodes)**
  
  Opens the **Export Criteria** dialog box (a thorough description of this dialog box can be found in the **Import from Database** (on page 1488) chapter).

**Database-Specific Contextual Menu Actions**

In addition to the general contextual menu actions in the **Data Source Explorer view** (on page 1408), the various nodes in IBM DB2 connections include the following additional contextual menu actions:

- **XML Schema Repository Level Nodes**
  
  - **Register**
    
    Opens a dialog box for adding a new schema file in the DB XML repository.
    
    In this dialog box, you enter a collection name and the necessary schema
files. Schema dependencies management can be done by using the Add and Remove buttons.

### Schema Level Nodes

**Unregister**

Removes the selected schema from the XML Schema Repository.

**View**

Opens the selected schema in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

---

**Microsoft SQL Server Database Connections**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for Microsoft SQL Server database connections. Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to browse the structure of a SQL Server database in the **Data Source Explorer view** (on page 1408), open tables in the **Table Explorer view** (on page 1409), and perform various operations on the resources in the repository.

**Configuring a Microsoft SQL Server Connection**

To configure the support for a Microsoft SQL Server database, follow this procedure:

2. **Configure MS SQL Server Data Source drivers** (on page 1418).
3. **Configure a MS SQL Server Connection** (on page 1419).
4. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer view** (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database perspective** (on page 1624).

---

**How to Configure Microsoft SQL Server Data Source Drivers**

Available in the Enterprise edition only.

To configure a data source for connecting to a Microsoft SQL server, follow these steps:

2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box  (on page 42) and go to **Data Sources**.
3. Click the **New** button in the **Data Sources** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a data source is opened.

Figure 400. Data Source Drivers Configuration Dialog Box

4. Enter a unique name for the data source.

5. Select **SQLServer** in the driver **Type** drop-down menu.

6. Click the **Add Files** button and select the Microsoft SQL Server driver file that you downloaded. The SQL Server driver file is called `sqljdbc.jar`.

7. Select the most appropriate **Driver class**.

8. Click the **OK** button to finish the data source configuration.

9. Continue on to configure your Microsoft SQL Server connection (on page 1419).

How to Configure a Microsoft SQL Server Connection

The support to configure a Microsoft SQL Server connection is available in the Enterprise edition only.

To configure a connection to a Microsoft SQL Server, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box (on page 42) and go to **Data Sources**.
2. Click the **New** button in the **Connections** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a database connection is displayed.

   Figure 401. Connection Configuration Dialog Box

   ![Connection Configuration Dialog Box](image)

   3. Enter a unique name for the connection.

   4. Select the **SQL Server** data source in the **Data Source** drop-down menu.

   5. Enter the connection details.

      a. Enter the URL of the SQL Server server.

         If you want to connect to the server using Windows integrated authentication, you must add **;integratedSecurity=true** to the end of the URL. The URL will look like this:

         ```
         jdbc:sqlserver://localhost;instanceName=SQLExpress;integratedSecurity=true;
         ```

         **Note:** For integrated authentication, leave the **User** and **Password** fields empty.

      b. Enter the user name for the connection to the SQL Server.

      c. Enter the password for the connection to the SQL Server.

   6. Click the **OK** button to finish the connection configuration.

   7. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1408)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database perspective (on page 1624)**.
Microsoft SQL Server Contextual Menu Actions

General Contextual Menu Actions

For relational databases, the following general actions are available in the contextual menu of the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), depending on the node in which it is invoked:

- **Refresh**
  Performs a refresh on the selected node.

- **Disconnect (available on Connection nodes)**
  Closes the current database connection. If a table is already open, you are warned to close it before proceeding.

- **Configure Database Sources (available on Connection nodes)**
  Opens the Data Sources preferences page (on page 47) where you can configure both data sources and connections.

- **Edit (available on Table nodes)**
  Opens the selected table in the Table Explorer view (on page 1409).

- **Export to XML (available on Table nodes)**
  Opens the Export Criteria dialog box (a thorough description of this dialog box can be found in the Import from Database (on page 1488) chapter).

Database-Specific Contextual Menu Actions

In addition to the general contextual menu actions in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), the resource level nodes in Microsoft SQL Server connections include the following additional contextual menu action:

- **XML Schema Repository Level Nodes**
  - **Register**
    Opens a dialog box for adding a new schema file in the DB XML repository. In this dialog box, you enter a collection name and the necessary schema files. Schema dependencies management can be done by using the Add and Remove buttons.

- **Schema Level Nodes**
  - **Add**
Adds a new schema to the XML Schema files.

**Unregister**

Removes the selected schema from the XML Schema Repository.

**View**

Opens the selected schema in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Oracle Database Connections

The Oracle database is a common relational type of database system. Oxygen XML Developer plugin comes with built-in support for the 11g version of the database system. The Oracle database also includes a Oracle XML DB component that adds native XML support. Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to browse Oracle repositories in the **Data Source Explorer view** (on page 1408), open tables in the **Table Explorer view** (on page 1409), and perform various operations on the resources in the repository.

![Figure 402. Oracle Database Connection](image)

**Related Information:**

- Using XQuery with Oracle XML DB

**Configuring an Oracle 11g Database Connection**

To configure the support for a Oracle 11g database, follow this procedure:

2. Configure Oracle 11g **Data Source drivers** (on page 1423).
3. Configure an Oracle 11g **Connection** (on page 1424).
4. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1408)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database perspective** *(on page 1624).*

**How to Configure Oracle 11g Data Source Drivers**

Available in the Enterprise edition only.

To configure a data source for connecting to an Oracle 11g server, follow these steps:


2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 42)* and go to **Data Sources**.

3. Click the `New` button in the **Data Sources** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a data source is opened.

   ![Figure 403. Data Source Drivers Configuration Dialog Box](image)

4. Enter a unique name for the data source.

5. Select **Oracle** in the driver **Type** drop-down menu.

6. Click the **Add Files** button and select the Oracle driver file that you downloaded.
The Oracle driver file is called `ojdbc5.jar`.

7. Select the most appropriate **Driver class**.

8. Click the OK button to finish the data source configuration.

9. Continue on to **configure your Oracle connection (on page 1424)**.

**How to Configure an Oracle 11g Connection**

Available in the Enterprise edition only.

To configure a connection to an Oracle 11g server, follow these steps:

1. **Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42)** and go to **Data Sources**.

2. Click the **New** button in the **Connections** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a database connection is displayed.

   **Figure 404. Connection Configuration Dialog Box**

3. Enter a unique name for the connection.

4. Select the **Oracle 11g** data source in the **Data Source** drop-down menu.

5. Enter the connection details.
   a. Enter the URL of the Oracle server.
b. Enter the user name for the connection to the Oracle server.
c. Enter the password for the connection to the Oracle server.

6. Click the OK button to finish the connection configuration.

7. To view your connection, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu) or switch to the Database perspective (on page 1624).

Oracle Database Contextual Menu Actions

General Contextual Menu Actions

For relational databases, the following general actions are available in the contextual menu of the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), depending on the node in which it is invoked:

- **Refresh**
  Performs a refresh on the selected node.

- **Disconnect (available on Connection nodes)**
  Closes the current database connection. If a table is already open, you are warned to close it before proceeding.

- **Configure Database Sources (available on Connection nodes)**
  Opens the Data Sources preferences page (on page 47) where you can configure both data sources and connections.

- **Edit (available on Table nodes)**
  Opens the selected table in the Table Explorer view (on page 1409).

- **Export to XML (available on Table nodes)**
  Opens the Export Criteria dialog box (a thorough description of this dialog box can be found in the Import from Database (on page 1488) chapter).

Database-Specific Contextual Menu Actions

In addition to the general contextual menu actions in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), the various nodes in Oracle database connections include the following additional contextual menu actions:

- **XML Schema Repository Level Nodes**
  Register
Opens a dialog box for adding a new schema file in the XML repository. To add an XML Schema, enter the schema URI and location on your file system. *Local* scope means that the schema is visible only to the user who registers it. *Global* scope means that the schema is public.

**Note:** Registering a schema may involve dropping/creating types. Hence you need type-related privileges such as DROP TYPE, CREATE TYPE, and ALTER TYPE. You need privileges to delete and register the XML schemas involved in the registering process. You need all privileges on XMLType tables that conform to the registered schemas. For XMLType columns, the ALTER TABLE privilege is needed on corresponding tables. If there are schema-based XMLType tables or columns in other database schemas, you need privileges such as the following:

- CREATE ANY TABLE
- CREATE ANY INDEX
- SELECT ANY TABLE
- UPDATE ANY TABLE
- INSERT ANY TABLE
- DELETE ANY TABLE
- DROP ANY TABLE
- ALTER ANY TABLE
- DROP ANY INDEX

To avoid having to grant all these privileges to the schema owner, Oracle recommends that the registration be performed by a DBA if there are XML schema-based XMLType table or columns in other user database schemas.

**XML Repository Level Nodes**

**Add container**

Adds a new child container to the current one.

**Add resource**

Adds a new resource to the folder.

**Container Level Nodes**

**Add container**

Adds a new child container to the current one.

**Add resource**
Adds a new resource to the folder.

× Delete

Deletes the current container.

Properties

Shows various properties of the current container.

Resource Level Nodes

Open

Opens the selected resource in the editor.

Open in System Application

When you use this action, Oxygen XML Developer plugin downloads the selected resource to a local temporary folder and opens the selected resource in the system application that is currently set as the default application associated with that type of resource. You can then edit the resource, save it, and when you switch the focus back to the Data Source Explorer view, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will detect that there was a change and will ask if you want to upload the edited resource to the server.

Rename

 Renames the current resource

Move

Moves the current resource to a new container (also available through drag and drop).

× Delete

Deletes the current container.

Copy location

 Allows you to copy (to the clipboard) an application-specific URL for the resource that can then be used for various actions, such as opening or transforming the resources.

Properties

 Shows various properties of the current container.

Compare

 Compares two selected resources.
PostgreSQL Database Connections

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for PostgreSQL database connections. Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to browse the structure of a PostgreSQL database in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), open tables in the Table Explorer view (on page 1409), and perform various operations on the resources in the repository.

Figure 405. PostgreSQL Database Connection

Configuring a PostgreSQL Database Connection

To configure the support for a PostgreSQL database, follow this procedure:

1. Go to http://jdbc.postgresql.org/download.html and download the PostgreSQL 8.3 JDBC3 driver.
2. Configure PostgreSQL Data Source drivers (on page 1428).
3. Configure a PostgreSQL Connection (on page 1430).
4. To view your connection, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu) or switch to the Database perspective (on page 1624).

How to Configure PostgreSQL 8.3 Data Source Drivers

To configure a data source for connecting to a PostgreSQL server, follow these steps:

1. Go to http://jdbc.postgresql.org/download.html and download the PostgreSQL 8.3 JDBC3 driver.
2. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.
3. Click the **New** button in the **Data Sources** panel.

The dialog box for configuring a data source is opened.

Figure 406. Data Source Drivers Configuration Dialog Box

Figure 407. Data Source Drivers Configuration Dialog Box
4. Enter a unique name for the data source.

5. Select PostgreSQL in the driver Type drop-down list.

6. Click the Add Files button and select the PostgreSQL driver file that you downloaded. The PostgreSQL driver file is called `postgresql-8.3-603.jdbc3.jar`.

7. Select the most appropriate Driver class.

8. Click the OK button to finish the data source configuration.

9. Continue on to configure your PostgreSQL connection (on page 1430).

How to Configure a PostgreSQL 8.3 Connection

To configure a connection to a PostgreSQL 8.3 server, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.

2. Click the + New button in the Connections panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a database connection is displayed.

   Figure 408. Connection Configuration Dialog Box

3. Enter a unique name for the connection.

4. Select the PostgreSQL 8.3 data source in the Data Source drop-down menu.
5. Enter the connection details.
   a. Enter the URL of the PostgreSQL 8.3 server.
   b. Enter the user name for the connection to the PostgreSQL 8.3 server.
   c. Enter the password for the connection to the PostgreSQL 8.3 server.

6. Click the OK button to finish the connection configuration.

7. To view your connection, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu) or switch to the Database perspective (on page 1624).

PostgreSQL Contextual Menu Actions

General Contextual Menu Actions

For relational databases, the following general actions are available in the contextual menu of the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), depending on the node in which it is invoked:

- **Refresh**
  Performs a refresh on the selected node.

- **Disconnect (available on Connection nodes)**
  Closes the current database connection. If a table is already open, you are warned to close it before proceeding.

- **Configure Database Sources (available on Connection nodes)**
  Opens the Data Sources preferences page (on page 47) where you can configure both data sources and connections.

- **Edit (available on Table nodes)**
  Opens the selected table in the Table Explorer view (on page 1409).

- **Export to XML (available on Table nodes)**
  Opens the Export Criteria dialog box (a thorough description of this dialog box can be found in the Import from Database (on page 1488) chapter).

Database-Specific Contextual Menu Actions

In addition to the general contextual menu actions in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), the resource level nodes in PostgreSQL connections include the following additional contextual menu action:

- **Resource Level Nodes**
Compare

Compares two selected resources.

Berkeley DB XML Database Connections

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for Berkeley DB XML database connections. Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to browse the structure of a Berkeley DB XML database in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) and perform various operations on the resources in the repository.

Oracle Berkeley DB XML is an open source, embeddable XML database with XQuery-based access to documents stored in containers and indexed based on their content. It is built on top of the Oracle Berkeley DB and inherits its features and attributes, along with native XML support. A detailed description can be found at: http://www.oracle.com/us/products/database/berkeley-db/xml/overview/index.html.

Figure 409. Berkeley DB XML Connection

Configuring a Berkeley DB XML Database Connection

Follow this procedure to configure the support for a Berkeley DB XML database:

1. Configure Berkeley DB XML Data Source drivers (on page 1433).
2. Configure a Berkeley DB XML Connection (on page 1433).
3. To view your connection, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu) or switch to the Database perspective (on page 1624).
How to Configure Berkeley DB XML Data Source Drivers

For this procedure, you need to already have a Berkeley DB XML database installed on your system.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports Berkeley DB XML versions 2.3.10, 2.4.13, 2.4.16 & 2.5.16. To configure a data source for a Berkeley DB XML database, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.
2. Click the + New button in the Data Sources panel.
3. Enter a unique name for the data source.
4. Select Berkeley DBXML from the driver Type drop-down menu.
5. Click the Add Files button to add the Berkeley DB driver files.
   The driver files for the Berkeley DB database (and their locations) are as follows:
   • db.jar (check for it in [DBXML_DIR]/lib or [DBXML_DIR]/jar)
   • dbxml.jar (check for it in [DBXML_DIR]/lib or [DBXML_DIR]/jar)

   Where [DBXML_DIR] is the Berkeley DB XML database root directory. For example, in Windows it is: C:\Program Files\Oracle\Berkeley DB XML <version>.
6. Click the OK button to finish the data source configuration.
7. Continue on to configure your Berkeley DB XML connection (on page 1433).

How to Configure a Berkeley DB XML Connection

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports Berkeley DB XML versions 2.3.10, 2.4.13, 2.4.16 & 2.5.16. To configure a connection to a Berkeley DB XML database, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.
2. Click the + New button in the Connections panel.
3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select a previously configured Berkeley data source from the Data Source drop-down menu.
5. Enter the connection details.
   a. Set the path to the Berkeley DB XML database directory in the Environment home directory field. Use a directory with write access. DO NOT use the installation directory where Berkeley DB XML is installed if you do not have write access to that directory.
   b. Select the Verbosity level: DEBUG, INFO, WARNING, or ERROR.
c. Optionally, you can select the **Join existing environment** checkbox. If selected, an attempt is made to join an existing environment in the specified home directory and all the original environment settings are preserved. If that fails, try reconfiguring the connection with this option unchecked.

6. Click the **OK** button to finish the connection configuration.

7. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer view** *(on page 1408)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database perspective** *(on page 1624)*.

**Berkeley DB XML Contextual Menu Actions**

While browsing Berkeley DB XML connections in the **Data Source Explorer view** *(on page 1408)*, the various nodes include the following contextual menu actions:

- **Connection Level Nodes**
  - **Configure Database Sources**
    
    Opens the **Data Sources preferences page** *(on page 47)* where you can configure both data sources and connections.
  
  - **Disconnect**
    
    Stops the connection.

- **New Collection**
  
    Opens a **Container configuration** dialog box that allows you to adds a new container in the repository.

**Figure 410. Container Configuration Dialog Box**

![Container configuration dialog box](image)

This dialog box allows you to configure the following:

- **Name** - The name of the new container.
• **Container type** - At creation time, every container must have a type defined for it. This container type identifies how XML documents are stored in the container. As such, the container type can only be determined at container creation time. You cannot change it when subsequent container opens. You can select one of the following types:
  - **Node container** - XML documents are stored as individual nodes in the container. Each record in the underlying database contains a single leaf node, its attributes and attribute values (if any), and its text nodes (if any). Berkeley DB XML also keeps the information it requires to reassemble the document from the individual nodes stored in the underlying databases. This is the default selection and is the preferred container type.
  - **Whole document container** - The container contains entire documents. The documents are stored without any manipulation of line breaks or whitespace.

• **Allow validation** - If selected, documents will be validated when they are loaded into the container. The default behavior is to not validate documents.

• **Index nodes** - If selected, indices for the container will return nodes rather than documents. The default is to index at the document level. This property has no meaning if the container type is **Whole document container**.

**Refresh**
Performs a refresh on the selected node.

**Properties**
Shows various properties of the current container.

**Container Level Nodes**

**Import Files**
Allows you to add a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

**Export**
Allows you to export the folder on the remote connection to a local folder.

**Cut**
Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.

**Paste**
Pastes the copied selection.

**Rename**

Renames the current resource

**Delete**

Deletes the current container.

**Edit indices**

Opens a **Container Indices** dialog box that allows you to configure indices properties for the selected Berkeley container.

*Figure 411. Container Indices Dialog Box*

This dialog box allows you to configure the following properties:

- **Granularity** - A measure of the level of details of your data in the database. You can select one of the following:
  - **Document level** - Good option for retrieving large documents.
  - **Node level** - Good option for retrieving nodes from within documents.
- **Node** - The name of the node.
- **Namespace** - The index namespace.
- **Index type**:
  - **Uniqueness** - Indicates whether or not the indexed value must be unique within the container.
Path type - Drop-down menu that allows you to select from the following:
- node - Indicates that you want to index a single node in the path.
- edge - Indicates that you want to index the portion of the path where two nodes meet.

Node type - Drop-down menu that allows you to select from the following:
- element - An element node in the document content.
- attribute - An attribute node in the document content.
- metadata - A node found only in the metadata content of a document.

Key type - Drop-down menu that allows you to select from the following:
- equality - Improves the performances of tests that look for nodes with a specific value.
- presence - Improves the performances of tests that look for the existence of a node regardless of its value.
- substring - Improves the performance of tests that look for a node whose value contains a given sub-string.

Syntax - The syntax describes the type of data the index contains and is mostly used to determine how indexed values are compared. The default value is string.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Properties

Shows various properties of the current container.

Resource Level Nodes

Open

Opens the selected resource in the editor.

Open in System Application

When you use this action, Oxygen XML Developer plugin downloads the selected resource to a local temporary folder and opens the selected resource in the system application that is currently set as the default application associated with that type of resource. You can then edit the resource, save it, and when you switch the focus back to the Data Source
Explorer view, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will detect that there was a change and will ask if you want to upload the edited resource to the server.

**Cut**

Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.

**Copy location**

Allows you to copy (to the clipboard) an application-specific URL for the resource that can then be used for various actions, such as opening or transforming the resources.

**Rename**

Renames the current resource

**Delete**

Deletes the current container.

**Refresh**

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

**Properties**

Shows various properties of the current container.

**Compare**

Compares two selected resources.

**Debugging with Berkeley DB XML**

The Berkeley DB XML database added a debugging interface starting with version 2.5. The current version is supported in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin XQuery Debugger. The same restrictions and peculiarities (on page 1450) apply for the Berkeley debugger as for the MarkLogic debugger.

**eXist Database Connections**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for eXist database connections. Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to browse the structure of a eXist database in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) and perform various operations on the resources in the repository.

Figure 412. eXist Database Connection
Configuring an eXist Database Connection

There are two ways to configure the support for an eXist database:

- Use the dedicated Create eXist-db XML connection wizard.
- Use the Data Sources preferences page to manually configure your connection.

How to Configure an eXist Connection Using the Built-in Wizard

To configure a connection for an eXist database using the dedicated Create eXist-db XML connection wizard, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to Data Sources and click the Create eXist-db XML connection link.
2. Enter your connection details in the connection wizard and click OK.

⚠️ Important: To create an eXist connection using this wizard, Oxygen XML Developer plugin expects the exist/webstart/exist.jnlp path to be accessible at the provided Host and Port.
3. To view your connection, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu) or switch to the Database perspective (on page 1624).

How to Configure an eXist Connection Manually

⚠️ Attention: For this manual procedure, you need to already have an eXist database server installed.
Tip: There is an easier way to configure an eXist database connection using a built-in wizard. For more information, see How to Configure an eXist Connection Using the Built-in Wizard (on page 1439).

Step 1: Configure eXist Data Source Drivers

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports eXist database server versions up to and including version 4.5. To configure a data source for an eXist database, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.
2. Click the + New button in the Data Sources panel.
3. Enter a unique name for the data source.
4. Select eXist from the driver Type drop-down menu.
5. Click the Add Files button to add the eXist driver files. The following driver files should be added and they are found in the installation directory of the eXist database server. Make sure you copy the files from the installation of the eXist server where you want to connect from Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
   - The exist.jar file located in the base directory.
   - All JAR files in the lib/core/ directory.
6. Click the OK button to finish the data source configuration.

Step 2: Configure an eXist Connection

To configure a connection to an eXist database, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.
2. Click the + New button in the Connections panel.
3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select a previously configured eXist data source from the Data Source drop-down menu.
5. Enter the connection details:
   a. Set the URI to the installed eXist engine in the XML DB URI field.
   b. Set the user name in the User field.
   c. Set the password in the Password field.
   d. Enter the start collection in the Collection field.

   eXist organizes all documents in hierarchical collections. Collections are like directories. They are used to group related documents together. This text field allows the user to set the default collection name.
6. Click the OK button to finish the connection configuration.
7. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer view** *(on page 1408)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database perspective** *(on page 1624)*.

For more information about running XQuery against an eXist XML database, watch our video demonstration:

[https://www.youtube.com/embed/Yoc5h1zSddA](https://www.youtube.com/embed/Yoc5h1zSddA)

**eXist Contextual Menu Actions**

While browsing eXist database connections in the **Data Source Explorer view** *(on page 1408)*, the various nodes include the following contextual menu actions:

**Connection Level Nodes**

- **Configure Database Sources**
  
  Opens the **Data Sources preferences page** *(on page 47)* where you can configure both data sources and connections.

- **Disconnect**
  
  Stops the connection.

- **Refresh**
  
  Performs a refresh on the selected node.

**Container Level Nodes**

- **New File**
  
  Creates a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

- **New Collection**
  
  Creates a new collection on the connection.

- **Import Folders**
  
  Imports folders on the server.

- **Import Files**
  
  Allows you to add a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

- **Export**
  
  Allows you to export the folder on the remote connection to a local folder.

- **Cut**
  
  Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.
**Paste**

Pastes the copied selection.

**Refresh**

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

**Properties**

Shows various properties of the current container.

**Resource Level Nodes**

**Open**

Opens the selected resource in the editor.

**Open in System Application**

When you use this action, Oxygen XML Developer plugin downloads the selected resource to a local temporary folder and opens the selected resource in the system application that is currently set as the default application associated with that type of resource. You can then edit the resource, save it, and when you switch the focus back to the Data Source Explorer view, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will detect that there was a change and will ask if you want to upload the edited resource to the server.

**Save As**

Allows you to save the selected resource as a file on disk.

**Cut**

Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.

**Copy**

Copies the current selection into the clipboard.

**Copy location**

Allows you to copy (to the clipboard) an application-specific URL for the resource that can then be used for various actions, such as opening or transforming the resources.

**Rename**

 Renames the current resource

**Delete**

Deletes the current container.

**Refresh**
Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Properties

Shows various properties of the current container.

Compare

Compares two selected resources.

MarkLogic Database Connections

Oxygen XML Developer plugin Enterprise edition includes support for MarkLogic database connections. Once you configure a MarkLogic connection (on page 1444), you can use the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) to display all the application servers that are configured on the MarkLogic server. You can expand each application server and view all of its configured modules, and the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) allows you to open and edit these modules.

Note: To browse modules located in a database, directory properties must be associated with them. These directory properties are generated automatically if the directory creation property of the database is set to automatic. If this property is set to manual or manual-enforced, add the directory properties of the modules manually, using the XQuery function xdmp:directory-create(). For example, for two documents with the /code/modules/main.xqy and /code/modules/imports/import.xqy IDs, run the following query:

```xquery
(xdmp:directory-create('/code/modules/'), xdmp:directory-create('/code/modules/imports/'))
```

For more information about directory properties, go to: http://blakeley.com/blogofile/2012/03/19/directory-assistance/.

MarkLogic and XQuery

MarkLogic connections can be used in conjunction with XQuery scripts to debug and solve problems with XQuery transformations. XQuery modules can also be validated using a MarkLogic server to allow to you to spot possible issues without the need of actually executing the XQuery script.

When debugging XQuery files with MarkLogic (on page 1448), you can use the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) to open the files from the application server that is involved in the debugging process. By using the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), any imported modules are better identified by the MarkLogic server. You can also use step actions and breakpoints (on page 1449) in the modules to help identify problems.
Modules Container

For each Application server (for example: Bill (HTTP port:8060)), you have access to the XQuery modules that are visible to that server. When editing, executing, or debugging XQuery it is recommended to open the XQuery files from this Modules container.

**Note:** You can also manage resources for a MarkLogic database through a WebDAV connection, although it is not recommended if you work with XQuery files since imported modules may not be resolved correctly.

Requests Container

Each MarkLogic application server includes a Requests container. In this container, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays both queries that are stopped for debugging purposes and queries that are still running. To clean up the entire Requests container at the end of your session, right-click it and use the Cancel all requests action (on page 1452).

Figure 413. MarkLogic Connection in Data Source Explorer

Configuring a MarkLogic Database Connection

Note that this feature is available in Oxygen XML Developer plugin Enterprise edition only.

Follow this procedure to configure the support for a MarkLogic database connection:

1. Download the MarkLogic driver from MarkLogic Community site.
2. Configure MarkLogic Data Source drivers (on page 1445).
3. Configure a MarkLogic Connection (on page 1445).
4. To view your connection, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu) or switch to the Database perspective (on page 1624).
How to Configure MarkLogic Data Source Drivers

Available in the Enterprise edition only.

Note: Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports MarkLogic version 4.0 or later.

To configure a data source for MarkLogic, follow this procedure:

2. Unzip the downloaded archive.
3. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.
4. Click the New button in the Data Sources panel.
5. Enter a unique name for the data source.
6. Select MarkLogic from the driver Type drop-down list.
7. Click the Add Files button and select the MarkLogic driver file from the lib folder of the archive that you downloaded and unzipped. The driver file name is marklogic-xcc-
{server_version}.jar, where {server_version} is the MarkLogic server version.
8. Click the OK button to finish the data source configuration.
9. Continue on to configure your MarkLogic Connection (on page 1445).

How to Configure a MarkLogic Connection

Available in the Enterprise edition only.

Note: Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports MarkLogic version 4.0 or later.

To configure a connection to a MarkLogic database, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.
2. Click the New button in the Connections panel.
3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select a previously configured MarkLogic data source from the Data Source drop-down menu.
5. Enter the connection details.
   a. The host name or IP address of the installed MarkLogic engine in the XDBC Host field.
   Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses XCC connector to interact with MarkLogic XDBC server and requires the basic authentication schema to be set. Starting with version MarkLogic 4.0
the default authentication method when you create an HTTP or WebDAV Server is digest, so make sure to change it to basic.

b. Set the port number of the MarkLogic engine in the Port field. A MarkLogic XDBC application server must be configured on the server on this port. This XDBC server will be used to process XQuery expressions against the server. Later, if you want to change the XDBC server, instead of editing the configuration just use the Use it to execute queries action (on page 1451) from Data Source Explorer.

c. Set the user name to access the MarkLogic engine in the User field.

d. Set the password to access the MarkLogic engine in the Password field.

e. Optionally, in the WebDAV URL field, set the URL used for browsing the MarkLogic database in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408). The Database field specifies the database for which the XQuery expressions are executed. If you set this option to default, the database associated to the application server of the configured port is used.

6. Click the OK button to finish the connection configuration.

7. To view your connection, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu) or switch to the Database perspective (on page 1624).

MarkLogic Development in Oxygen XML Developer plugin

The Oxygen XML Developer plugin support for MarkLogic includes features designed for developers, such as debugging XQuery transformations, remote and collaborative debugging, XQuery editing and validation, and an XQuery builder (on page 660) that helps to improve productivity.

Working with XQuery Files

MarkLogic supports working with XQuery files to create queries over stored XML content. You can open an XQuery file, configure a transformation scenario to match your MarkLogic connection, write the XQuery, and then execute it.

When editing XQuery modules stored on the MarkLogic server, the Outline view (on page 658) collects and displays all the functions from all imported modules. The Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) also presents all of these functions along with the latest built-in XQuery functions in accordance with the server version.

When developing queries for MarkLogic, it is best to open the resources from the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408). When you execute or debug XQuery files opened from this view,
imported modules can be resolved better by the MarkLogic server. Another advantage is that validation is automatically performed on the MarkLogic server, including any imported modules.

**XQuery Debugging**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to use MarkLogic connections to debug real applications that use XQuery (for example, web applications that trigger XQuery executions). By setting the server in debug mode, you can intercept all the XQuery scripts that run on that server. Oxygen XML Developer plugin connects to the MarkLogic server, shows you the running XQuery scripts, and allows you to debug them. The remote debugging support also allows you to debug collaboratively. Multiple users can participate in the same debugging session. You can start a debugging session and another user can continue it, and vice versa.

**Working with Modules**

MarkLogic has a concept of two types of XQuery modules, *library* and *main* modules. A *library* module is used to define functions. Library modules cannot be evaluated directly. They are imported, either from other library modules or from main modules. A *main* module is used as an entry point that can be executed as an XQuery program. For more information on these types of modules, see [XQuery Library Modules and Main Modules](on page 433).

When working with *library* modules, you need to create a validation scenario and associate it with the module. In the validation scenario you need to specify a main module as the entry point for validation. The modules need to be deployed on a MarkLogic server because Oxygen XML Developer plugin will request the server to validate the modules.

To validate *library* modules stored on a MarkLogic server, follow these steps:

1. **Configure a MarkLogic database connection** *(on page 1444).*
2. Expand the MarkLogic connection in the Data Source Explorer view *(on page 1408)* and open the *library* modules. The *main* module must also be opened from the Data Source Explorer view *(on page 1408).*
3. **Configure a validation scenario** *(on page 433)* for each *library* module. Specify the *main* module in the URL of the file to validate field.

**Result:** Validation is done on the server that contains the *main* module. The *main* module and all other *library* modules involved in the validation must be saved. Otherwise, the server will validate what was saved on the server, without the uncommitted changes. Also, the [Content Completion Assistant](on page 1620) and the Outline view *(on page 658)* should now present the functions from all the modules.

**Related Information:**
Debugging with MarkLogic

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for debugging XQuery transformations that are executed against a MarkLogic database.

To use a debugging session against the MarkLogic engine, follow these steps:

1. Configure a MarkLogic data source (on page 1445) and a MarkLogic connection (on page 1445).

2. Make sure that the debugging support is enabled in the MarkLogic server that Oxygen XML Developer plugin accesses. On the server side, debugging must be activated in the XDBC server and in the Task Server section of the server control console (the switch debug allow). If the debugging is not activated, the MarkLogic server reports a DBG-TASKDEBUGALLOW error.

   Note: An XDBC application server must be running to connect to the MarkLogic server and this XDBC server will be used to process XQuery expressions against the server. You can change the XDBC application server that Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses to process XQuery expressions by selecting the Use it to execute queries action (on page 1451) from the contextual menu in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408).

3. Open the XQuery file and start the debugging process.

   • If you want to debug an XQuery file stored on the MarkLogic server, it is recommend to use the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) and open the file from the application server that is involved in the debugging process. This improves the resolving of any imported modules.
   
   • The MarkLogic XQuery debugger integrates seamlessly into the XQuery Debugger perspective (on page 179). If you have a MarkLogic validation scenario configured for the XQuery file, you can choose to debug the scenario (on page 1513) directly.
   
   • Otherwise, switch to the XQuery Debugger perspective (on page 1624), open the XQuery file in the editor, and select the MarkLogic connection in the XQuery engine selector from the debug control toolbar (on page 1497).

For general information about how a debugging session is started and controlled, see the Working with the Debugger (on page 1513) section.

   Note: Before starting a debugging session, it is recommend that you link the MarkLogic connection with an Eclipse project. To do this, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) and select Link to project in the contextual menu of the MarkLogic connection. The
major benefit of linking a debugging session with a project is that you can add breakpoints (on page 1517) in the XQuery modules stored on the server. You are also able to access these modules from the Eclipse Navigator view and run debugging sessions from them.

In a MarkLogic debugging session, you can use step actions and breakpoints (on page 1516) to help identify problems. When you add a breakpoint (on page 1517) on a line where the debugger never stops, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays a warning message. These warnings are displayed for breakpoints you add either in the main XQuery (which you can open locally or from the server) or for breakpoints you add in any XQuery that is opened from the connection that participates in the debugging session. For more information, see Using Breakpoints for Debugging Queries that Import Modules with MarkLogic (on page 1449).

Related Information:

- MarkLogic Development in Oxygen XML Developer plugin (on page 1446)
- Configuring a MarkLogic Database Connection (on page 1444)

Using Breakpoints for Debugging Queries that Import Modules with MarkLogic

When debugging queries that imports modules stored in the database, it is recommended to place breakpoints (on page 1516) in the modules. When starting a new debugging session, make sure
that the modules that you will debug are already opened in the editor. This is necessary so that the breakpoints in all the modules will be considered. Also, make sure that there are no other opened modules that are not involved in the current debugging session.

To place breakpoints in the modules, use the following procedure:

1. In the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), open all the modules from the Modules container of the XDBC application server (on page 1445) that performs the debugging.
2. Set breakpoints (on page 1517) in the module as needed.
3. Continue debugging (on page 1513) the query.

If you get a warning that the breakpoints failed to initialize, try the following solutions:

- Check the Breakpoints view (on page 1501) and make sure there are no older breakpoints (set on resources that are not part of the current debugging context).
- Make sure you open the modules from the context of the application server that does the debugging and place breakpoints there.

Related Information:

- MarkLogic Database Connections (on page 1443)
- MarkLogic Development in Oxygen XML Developer plugin (on page 1446)

Peculiarities and Limitations of the MarkLogic Debugger

MarkLogic debugger has the following peculiarities and limitations:

- Debugging support is only available for MarkLogic server versions 4.0 or newer.
- For MarkLogic server versions 4.0 or newer, there are three XQuery syntaxes that are supported: '0.9-ml' (inherited from MarkLogic 3.2), '1.0-ml', and '1.0'.
- All declared variables are presented as strings. The Value column of the Variables view contains the expression from the variable declaration. It can be evaluated by copying the expression with the Copy value action from the contextual menu of the Variables view (on page 1511) and pasting it in the XWatch view (on page 1503).
- There is no support for output to source mapping (on page 1514).
- There is no support for showing the trace (on page 1508).
- You can only set breakpoints (on page 1501) in imported modules in one of the following cases:
  - When you open the module from the context of the application server involved in the debugging, using the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408).
When the debugger automatically opens the modules in the Editor.

- No breakpoints (on page 1516) are set in modules from the same server that are not involved in the current debugging session.
- No support for profiling (on page 1518) when an XQuery transformation is executed in the debugger.

**MarkLogic Contextual Menu Actions**

While browsing MarkLogic connections in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), the various nodes include the following contextual menu actions:

- **Connection Level Nodes**
  - **Configure Database Sources**
    - Opens the Data Sources preferences page (on page 47) where you can configure both data sources and connections.
  - **Disconnect**
    - Stops the connection.
  - **Link to Project**
    - Links the connection to a project. This is helpful for MarkLogic debugging sessions (on page 1448).
  - **Refresh**
    - Performs a refresh on the selected node.

- **Container Level Nodes**
  - **Enable Debug Mode**
    - Switches the server to a debugging mode. For more information, see MarkLogic debugging sessions (on page 1448).
  - **Use it to Execute Queries**
    - The server will be used to process XQuery expressions against it.
  - **Refresh**
    - Performs a refresh on the selected node.

- **Module or Folder Level Nodes**
  - **Export**
    - Allows you to export the folder on the remote connection to a local folder.
  - **Refresh**
Performs a refresh on the selected node.

**Requests Level Nodes**

**Refresh**

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

**Cancel all requests**

Cancels all queries that are either running or stopped on the application server. You can use this action to clean up the entire Requests container at the end of your sessions.

**Resource Level Nodes**

**Open**

Opens the selected resource in the editor.

**Open in System Application**

When you use this action, Oxygen XML Developer plugin downloads the selected resource to a local temporary folder and opens the selected resource in the system application that is currently set as the default application associated with that type of resource. You can then edit the resource, save it, and when you switch the focus back to the Data Source Explorer view, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will detect that there was a change and will ask if you want to upload the edited resource to the server.

**Copy location**

Allows you to copy (to the clipboard) an application-specific URL for the resource that can then be used for various actions, such as opening or transforming the resources.

**Refresh**

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

**Compare**

Compares two selected resources.

**Related Information:**

- Configuring a MarkLogic Database Connection *(on page 1444)*
- MarkLogic Development in Oxygen XML Developer plugin *(on page 1446)*
MySQL Database Connections

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for MySQL database connections. Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to browse the structure of a SQL Server database in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), open tables in the Table Explorer view (on page 1409), and perform various operations on the resources in the repository.

Configuring a MySQL Database Connection

To configure the support for a MySQL database, follow this procedure:

1. Configure MySQL Data Source drivers (on page 1453).
2. Configure a MySQL Connection (on page 1454)
3. To view your connection, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu) or switch to the Database perspective (on page 1624).

How to Configure MySQL Data Source Drivers

To connect to a MySQL server, you need to create a generic JDBC type data source based on the MySQL JDBC driver available on the MySQL website.

To configure this data source, follow these steps:

1. Go to https://www.oxygenxml.com/database_drivers.html and download the appropriate MySQL driver.

2. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.

3. Click the ✪ New button in the Data Sources panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a data source is opened.

   Figure 414. Data Source Drivers Configuration Dialog Box
4. Enter a unique name for the data source.

5. Select Generic JDBC in the driver Type drop-down list.

6. Click the Add Files button and select the MySQL driver file that you downloaded. The driver file for the MySQL server is called mysql-com.jar.

7. Select the most appropriate Driver class.

8. Click the OK button to finish the data source configuration.

9. Continue on to configure your MySQL connection (on page 1454).

How to Configure a MySQL Connection

To configure a connection to a MySQL server, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.

2. Click the New button in the Connections panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a database connection is displayed.

   Figure 415. Connection Configuration Dialog Box
3. Enter a unique name for the connection.

4. Select the MySQL data source in the Data Source drop-down list.

5. Enter the connection details.
   a. Enter the URL of the MySQL server.
   b. Enter the user name for the connection to the MySQL server.
   c. Enter the password for the connection to the MySQL server.

6. Click the OK button to finish the connection configuration.

7. To view your connection, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu) or switch to the Database perspective (on page 1624).

Generic JDBC Database Connections

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for Generic JDBC database connections.

Configuring a Generic JDBC Database Connection

To configure the support for a generic JDBC database, follow this procedure:

1. Configure Generic JDBC Data Source drivers (on page 1456).
2. Configure a Generic JDBC Connection (on page 1456).
3. To view your connection, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu) or switch to the Database perspective (on page 1624).

How to Configure Generic JDBC Data Source Drivers

Starting with version 17, Oxygen XML Developer plugin comes bundled with Java 8, which does not provide built-in access to JDBC-ODBC data sources. To access such sources, you need to find an alternative JDBC-ODBC bridge or use a platform-independent distribution of Oxygen XML Developer plugin along with a Java VM version 7 or 6.

To configure a generic JDBC data source, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.
2. Click the + New button in the Data Sources panel.
3. Enter a unique name for the data source.
4. Select Generic JDBC in the driver Type drop-down list.
5. Add the driver file(s) using the Add Files button.
6. Select the most appropriate Driver class.
7. Click the OK button to finish the data source configuration.
8. Continue on to configure a generic JDBC connection (on page 1456).

How to Configure a Generic JDBC Connection

To configure a connection to a generic JDBC database, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.
2. Click the + New button in the Connections panel.
3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select the Generic JDBC data source in the Data Source drop-down menu.
5. Enter the connection details.
   a. Enter the URL of the generic JDBC database, with the following format: jdbc:<subprotocol>:<subname>.
   b. Enter the user name for the connection to the generic JDBC database.
   c. Enter the password for the connection to the generic JDBC database.
6. Click the OK button to finish the connection configuration.
7. To view your connection, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu) or switch to the Database perspective (on page 1624).
JDBC-ODBC Database Connections

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for JDBC-ODBC database connections.

How to Configure a JDBC-ODBC Connection

Starting with version 17, Oxygen XML Developer plugin comes bundled with Java 8, which does not provide built-in access to JDBC-ODBC data sources. To access such sources, you need to find an alternative JDBC-ODBC bridge or use a platform-independent distribution of Oxygen XML Developer plugin along with a Java VM version 7 or 6.

To configure a connection to an ODBC data source, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.

2. Click the + New button in the Connections panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a database connection is displayed.

   Figure 416. Connection Configuration Dialog Box

3. Enter a unique name for the connection.

4. Select JDBC-ODBC Bridge in the Data Source drop-down list.

5. Enter the connection details.
   a. Enter the URL of the ODBC source.
   b. Enter the user name of the ODBC source.
c. Enter the password of the ODBC source.

6. Click the OK button to finish the connection configuration.

7. To view your connection, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu) or switch to the Database perspective (on page 1624).

BaseX Database Connections

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for BaseX database connections using a WebDAV connection. BaseX is a light-weight XML database engine and XQuery processor. Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to browse the structure of a BaseX database in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) and perform XQuery executions.

How to Configure a BaseX Connection

To configure a BaseX connection, follow these steps:

1. First of all, make sure the BaseX HTTP Server is started. For details about starting the BaseX HTTP server, go to http://docs.basex.org/wiki/Startup#BaseX_HTTP_Server. The configuration file for the HTTP server is named .basex and is located in the BaseX installation directory. This file helps you to find out which port the HTTP server using. The default port for BaseX WebDAV is 8984.

2. To ensure that everything is functioning, open a WebDAV URL inside a browser and check to see if it works. For example, the following URL retrieves a document from a database named TEST:

3. Once you are sure that the BaseX WebDAV service is working, you can configure the WebDAV connection in Oxygen XML Developer plugin as described in How to Configure a WebDAV Connection (on page 1463). The WebDAV URL should resemble this: http://{hostname}:{port}/webdav/. If the BaseX server is running on your own machine and it has the default configuration, the data required by the WebDAV connection is:
   - WebDAV URL: http://localhost:8984/webdav
   - User: admin
   - Password: admin

4. Once the WebDAV connection is created, to view your connection, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu) or switch to the Database perspective (on page 1624).
**BaseX Contextual Menu Actions**

While browsing BaseX connections in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), the various nodes include the following contextual menu actions:

### Connection Level Nodes

- **Configure Database Sources**
  - Opens the Data Sources preferences page (on page 47) where you can configure both data sources and connections.

- **Disconnect**
  - Stops the connection.

- **New Folder**
  - Creates a new folder on the connection.

- **Import Files**
  - Allows you to add a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

- **Refresh**
  - Performs a refresh on the selected node.

### Folder Level Nodes

- **New File**
  - Creates a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

- **New Folder**
  - Creates a new folder on the connection.

- **Import Folders**
  - Imports folders on the server.

- **Import Files**
  - Allows you to add a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

- **Export**
  - Allows you to export the folder on the remote connection to a local folder.

- **Cut**
  - Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.

- **Copy**
  - Copies the current selection into the clipboard.
Paste

 Pastes the copied selection.

 Rename

 Renames the current resource

 Delete

 Deletes the current container.

 Refresh

 Performs a refresh on the selected node.

 Resource Level Nodes

 Open

 Opens the selected resource in the editor.

 Open in System Application

 When you use this action, Oxygen XML Developer plugin downloads the selected resource to a local temporary folder and opens the selected resource in the system application that is currently set as the default application associated with that type of resource. You can then edit the resource, save it, and when you switch the focus back to the Data Source Explorer view, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will detect that there was a change and will ask if you want to upload the edited resource to the server.

 Cut

 Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.

 Copy

 Copies the current selection into the clipboard.

 Copy location

 Allows you to copy (to the clipboard) an application-specific URL for the resource that can then be used for various actions, such as opening or transforming the resources.

 Rename

 Renames the current resource

 Delete

 Deletes the current container.

 Refresh
Performs a refresh on the selected node.

**Properties**

Shows various properties of the current container.

**Compare**

Compares two selected resources.

### BaseX XQJ Connection

XQuery execution is possible in a BaseX connection through an XQJ connection.

**Important:** The XQJ connector is only capable of running XQuery 1.0 scrips, therefore XQuery 3.0 and 3.1 scripts are not supported.

### BaseX XQJ Data Source

First of all, create an XQJ data source as described in *How to Configure an XQJ Data Source (on page 1462).* The BaseX XQJ API-specific files that must be added in the configuration dialog box are `xqj-api-1.0.jar`, `xqj2-0.1.0.jar` and `basex-xqj-1.2.3.jar` (the version names of the JAR file may differ). These libraries can be downloaded from `xqj.net/basex/basex-xqj-1.2.3.zip`. As an alternative, you can also find the libraries in the BaseX installation directory, in the `lib` sub-directory.

### BaseX XQJ Connection

The next step is to create an XQJ connection (on page 1462).

For a default BaseX configuration, the following connection details apply (you can modify them when necessary):

- **Port:** 1984
- **serverName:** localhost
- **user:** admin
- **password:** admin

### XQuery Execution

Now that the XQJ connection is configured, open the XQuery file you want to execute in Oxygen XML Developer plugin and create an XQuery Transformation (on page 963). In the Transformer drop-down menu, select the name of the XQJ connection you created. Apply the transformation scenario and the XQuery will be executed.
How to Configure an XQJ Data Source

Any transformer that offers an XQJ API implementation can be used when validating XQuery or transforming XML documents. An example of an XQuery engine that implements the XQJ API is Zorba.

1. If your XQJ Implementation is native, make sure the directory containing the native libraries of the engine is added to your system environment variables: to **PATH** - on Windows, to **LD_LIBRARY_PATH** - on Linux, or to **DYLD_LIBRARY_PATH** - on OS X. Restart Oxygen XML Developer plugin after configuring the environment variables.

2. **Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42)** and go to **Data Sources**.

3. Click the **New** button in the **Data Sources** panel.

4. Enter a unique name for the data source.

5. Select **XQuery API for Java (XQJ)** in the **Type** combo box.

6. Press the **Add** button to add XQJ API-specific files. You can manage the driver files using the **Add**, **Remove**, **Detect**, and **Stop** buttons. Oxygen XML Developer plugin detects any implementation of `javax.xml.xquery.XQDataSource` and presents it in **Driver class** field.

7. Select the most suited driver in the **Driver class** combo box.

8. Click the **OK** button to finish the data source configuration.

9. Continue on to **configure the XQJ connection (on page 1462)**.

How to Configure an XQJ Connection

The steps for configuring an XQJ connection are the following:

1. **Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42)** and go to **Data Sources**.

2. Click the **New** button in the **Connections** panel.

3. Enter a unique name for the connection.

4. Select one of the previously configured **XQJ data sources (on page 1462)** in the **Data Source** combo box.

5. Fill-in the connection details.
The properties presented in the connection details table are automatically detected depending on the selected data source.

6. Click the OK button to finish the connection configuration.

WebDAV Connections

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for WebDAV server connections. Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to browse the structure of a WebDAV connection in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) and perform various operations on the resources in the repository.

How to Configure a WebDAV Connection

By default, Oxygen XML Developer plugin contains built-in data source drivers for WebDAV connections. Based on this data source, you can create a WebDAV connection for browsing and editing data from a database that provides a WebDAV interface. The connection is available in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408).

To configure a WebDAV connection, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.

2. Click the + New button in the Connections panel.

3. Enter a unique name for the connection.

4. Select one of the WebDAV data sources in the Data Source drop-down menu.

5. Enter the connection details:
   a. Set the URL to the WebDAV repository in the field WebDAV URL.
   b. Set the user name that is used to access the WebDAV repository in the User field.
   c. Set the password that is used to access the WebDAV repository in the Password field.

6. Click the OK button to finish the connection configuration.

7. To view your connection, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu) or switch to the Database perspective (on page 1624).

For more information about the WebDAV support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/vDXO36CqbvM
WebDAV Contextual Menu Actions

While browsing WebDAV connections in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), the various nodes include the following contextual menu actions:

**Connection Level Nodes**

- **Configure Database Sources**
  
  Opens the Data Sources preferences page (on page 47) where you can configure both data sources and connections.

- **Disconnect**
  
  Stops the connection.

- **New Folder**
  
  Creates a new folder on the connection.

- **Import Files**
  
  Allows you to add a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

- **Refresh**
  
  Performs a refresh on the selected node.

**Folder Level Nodes**

- **New File**
  
  Creates a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

- **New Folder**
  
  Creates a new folder on the connection.

- **Import Folders**
  
  Imports folders on the server.

- **Import Files**
  
  Allows you to add a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

- **Export**
  
  Allows you to export the folder on the remote connection to a local folder.

- **Cut**
  
  Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.

- **Copy**
  
  Copies the current selection into the clipboard.
Paste

Paste the copied selection.

Rename

Renames the current resource.

Delete

Deletes the current container.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Resource Level Nodes

Open

Opens the selected resource in the editor.

Open in System Application

When you use this action, Oxygen XML Developer plugin downloads the selected resource to a local temporary folder and opens the selected resource in the system application that is currently set as the default application associated with that type of resource. You can then edit the resource, save it, and when you switch the focus back to the Data Source Explorer view, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will detect that there was a change and will ask if you want to upload the edited resource to the server.

Cut

Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.

Copy

Copies the current selection into the clipboard.

Copy location

Allows you to copy (to the clipboard) an application-specific URL for the resource that can then be used for various actions, such as opening or transforming the resources.

Rename

Renames the current resource.

Delete

Deletes the current container.

Refresh
Performs a refresh on the selected node.

**Properties**

Shows various properties of the current container.

**Compare**

Compares two selected resources.

### SQL Execution Support

The database support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for writing SQL statements, syntax highlighting, *folding (on page 1622)*, and dragging and dropping from the *Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408)*. It also includes transformation scenarios for executing the statements, and the results are displayed in the *Table Explorer view (on page 1409)*.

#### Drag and Drop from Data Source Explorer View

Dragging operations from the *Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408)* and dropping them in the SQL Editor allows you to create SQL statements quickly by inserting the names of tables and columns in the SQL statements.

1. Configure a database connection (see the specific procedure for your database server in the *Database Connection Support (on page 1412)* section).

2. Browse to the table you will use in your statement.

3. Drag the table or a column of the table into the editor where a SQL file is open.

   Drag and drop actions are available both on the table and on its fields. A pop-up menu is displayed in the SQL editor.

   Figure 417. SQL Statement Editing with Drag and Drop
4. Select the type of statement from the pop-up menu.

Depending on your choice, dragging a table results in one of the following statements being inserted into the document:

- **SELECT `field1`, `field2`, ..., FROM `catalog`.`table`** (for example: `SELECT `DEPT`, `DEPTNAME`, `LOCATION` FROM `camera`.`cameraDesc`)
- **UPDATE `catalog`.`table` SET `field1` =, `field2` =, ...** (for example: `UPDATE `camera`.`cameraDesc` SET `DEPT` =, `DEPTNAME` =, `LOCATION` =)
- **INSERT INTO `catalog`.`table` (`field1`, `field2`, ...) VALUES (, , )** (for example: `INSERT INTO `camera`.`cameraDesc` (`DEPT`, `DEPTNAME`, `LOCATION`) VALUES (, , )`)
- **DELETE FROM `catalog`.`table`** (for example: `DELETE FROM `camera`.`cameraDesc`)

Depending on your choice, dragging a column results in one of the following statements being inserted into the document:

- **SELECT `field` FROM `catalog`.`table`** (for example: `SELECT `DEPT` FROM `camera`.`cameraDesc`)
- **UPDATE `catalog`.`table` SET `field` =** (for example: `UPDATE `camera`.`cameraDesc` SET `DEPT` =)
- **INSERT INTO `catalog`.`table` (`field1`) VALUES ()** (for example: `INSERT INTO `camera`.`cameraDesc` (`DEPT`) VALUES ()`)
- **DELETE FROM `catalog`.`table`** (for example: `DELETE FROM `camera`.`cameraDesc` WHERE `DEPT` =)
SQL Validation

SQL validation support is offered for IBM DB2. Note that if you choose a connection that does not support SQL validation, you will receive a warning when trying to validate. The SQL document is validated using the connection from the associated transformation scenario.

Executing SQL Statements

The steps for executing an SQL statement on a relational database are as follows:

1. Configure a transformation scenario (on page 857) using the Configure Transformation Scenario(s) action from the toolbar or the XML menu.
   
   A SQL transformation scenario needs a database connection. You can configure a connection using the Preferences button from the SQL transformation dialog box.
   
   The dialog box contains the list of existing scenarios that apply to SQL documents.

2. Set parameter values for SQL placeholders using the Parameters button from the SQL transformation dialog box.
   
   For example, in `SELECT * FROM `test`.`department` where DEPT = ? or DEPTNAME = ?` the two parameters can be configured for the placeholders (?) in the transformation scenario.
   
   When the SQL statement is executed, the first placeholder is replaced with the value set for the first parameter in the scenario, the second placeholder is replaced by the second parameter value, and so on.

   **Restriction:** When a stored procedure is called in an SQL statement executed on an SQL Server database, mixing inline parameter values with values specified using the Parameters button of the scenario dialog box is not recommended. This is due to a limitation of the SQL Server driver for Java applications. An example of stored procedure that is not recommended: `call dbo.Test(22, ?)`.

3. Execute the SQL scenario by clicking the OK or Apply associated button.
   
   The result of a SQL transformation is displayed in a view (on page 226) at the bottom of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin window.

4. View more complex return values of the SQL transformation in a separate editor panel.
   
   A more complex value returned by the SQL query (for example, an XMLTYPE or CLOB value) cannot be displayed entirely in the result table.
   
   a. Right-click the cell containing the complex value.
   
   b. Select the action Copy cell from the contextual menu.
The action copies the value in the clipboard.

c. Paste the value into an appropriate editor.
   For example, you can paste the value in an opened XQuery editor panel of Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

XQuery and Databases

XQuery is a native XML query language that is useful for querying XML views of relational data to create XML results. It also provides the mechanism to efficiently and easily extract information from Native XML Databases (NXD) and relational data. The following database systems supported in Oxygen XML Developer plugin offer XQuery support:

• **Native XML Databases:**
  - Berkeley DB XML
  - eXist
  - MarkLogic (validation support available starting with version 5)

• **Relational Databases:**
  - IBM DB2
  - Microsoft SQL Server (validation support not available)
  - Oracle (validation support not available)

Build Queries with Drag and Drop from the Data Source Explorer View

When a query is edited in the XQuery editor, the XPath expressions can be composed quickly by dragging them from the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) and dropping them into the editor panel.

1. Configure the data source drivers (on page 1412) for the particular relational database in the Data Sources preferences page (on page 47).
2. Configure the connection (on page 1412) for the particular relational database in the Data Sources preferences page (on page 47).
3. Browse the connection in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), expanded to the table or column that you want to insert in the query.
4. Drag the table or column name to the XQuery editor panel.
5. Drop the table or column name where the XPath expression is needed.

An XPath expression that selects the dragged name is inserted in the XQuery document at the cursor position.

XQuery Validation When Connected to a Database

With Oxygen XML Developer plugin, you can validate your XQuery documents when connected to a database. When you open an XQuery document from a connection that supports validation (for example, MarkLogic, or eXist), by default Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses this connection for validation. If you open an XQuery file using a MarkLogic connection, the validation resolves imports better.

Related Information:

• XQuery Validation (on page 655)

XQuery Transformation for Databases

XQuery is designed to retrieve and interpret XML data from any source, whether it is a database or document. Data is stored in relational databases but it is often required that the data be extracted and transformed as XML when interfacing to other components and services. Also, it is an XPath-based querying language supported by most NXD vendors. To perform a query, you need an XQuery transformation scenario.

1. Configure the data source drivers and the connection (on page 1412) for the particular database.

2. Configure an XQuery transformation scenario.

   a. Click the Configure Transformation Scenario toolbar button or go to menu Document > Transformation > Configure Transformation Scenario.

      The Configure Transformation Scenario dialog box (on page 976) is opened.

   b. Click the New button toward the bottom of the dialog box.

   c. Select XML Transformation with XQUERY (on page 908).

      The New Scenario dialog box for configuring an XQuery scenario is opened.

      Figure 418. New Scenario Dialog Box
d. Insert the scenario name in the dialog box for editing the scenario.

e. Choose the database connection in the **Transformer** drop-down list.

f. Configure any other parameters as needed.
   
   For an XQuery transformation, the output tab has an option called **Sequence** that allows you to run an XQuery in lazy mode. The amount of data extracted from the database is controlled from the **Size limit on Sequence view** option (on page 147) in the XQuery preferences page. If you choose **Perform FO Processing** in the **FO Processor** tab, the **Sequence** option is ignored.

   g. Click the **OK** button to finish editing the scenario.

Once the scenario is associated with the XQuery file, the query can include calls to specific XQuery functions that are implemented by that engine. The available functions depend on the target database engine selected in the scenario. For example, for eXist and Berkeley DB XML, the **Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620)** lists the functions supported by that database engine. This is useful for only inserting calls to the supported functions (standard XQuery functions or extension ones) into the query.

**Note:** An XQuery transformation is executed against a Berkeley DB XML server as a transaction using the query transaction support of the server.

3. Run the transformation scenario.
To view a more complex value returned by the query that cannot be entirely displayed in the XQuery query result table at the bottom of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin window (for example, an XMLTYPE or CLOB value), do the following:

- Right-click that table cell.
- Select the **Copy cell** action from the contextual menu to copy the value into the clipboard.
- Paste the value wherever you need it (for example, in an opened XQuery editor panel of Oxygen XML Developer plugin).

### Related Information:

- [XML Transformation with XQuery](#)
- [XQuery XQJ Transformation](#)

### XQuery XQJ Transformation

XQuery API for Java (XQJ) refers to the common Java API for the XQuery 1.0 specification. The XQJ API enables you to execute XQuery against an XML data source.

**Important:** The XQJ connector is only capable of running XQuery 1.0 scripts, therefore XQuery 3.0 and 3.1 scripts are not supported.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports any transformer that offers an XQJ API implementation and it be used for validating XQuery or transforming XML documents.

To configure the support for XQJ, do the following:

1. Configure an **XQJ Data Source**.
2. Configure an **XQJ Connection**.
3. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer view** (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database perspective**.

**How to Configure an XQJ Data Source**

Any transformer that offers an XQJ API implementation can be used when validating XQuery or transforming XML documents. An example of an XQuery engine that implements the XQJ API is **Zorba**.
1. If your XQJ Implementation is native, make sure the directory containing the native libraries of the engine is added to your system environment variables: to PATH - on Windows, to LD_LIBRARY_PATH - on Linux, or to DYLD_LIBRARY_PATH - on OS X. Restart Oxygen XML Developer plugin after configuring the environment variables.

2. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.

3. Click the + New button in the Data Sources panel.

4. Enter a unique name for the data source.

5. Select XQuery API for Java (XQJ) in the Type combo box.

6. Press the Add button to add XQJ API-specific files.
   You can manage the driver files using the Add, Remove, Detect, and Stop buttons.
   Oxygen XML Developer plugin detects any implementation of javax.xml.xquery.XQDataSource and presents it in Driver class field.

7. Select the most suited driver in the Driver class combo box.

8. Click the OK button to finish the data source configuration.

9. Continue on to configure the XQJ connection (on page 1462).

How to Configure an XQJ Connection

The steps for configuring an XQJ connection are the following:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.

2. Click the + New button in the Connections panel.

3. Enter a unique name for the connection.

4. Select one of the previously configured XQJ data sources (on page 1462) in the Data Source combo box.

5. Fill-in the connection details.
   The properties presented in the connection details table are automatically detected depending on the selected data source.

6. Click the OK button to finish the connection configuration.
XQuery Database Debugging

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a debugging interface that helps you to detect and solve problems with XQuery transformations that are executed against MarkLogic and Berkeley DB XML databases.

For more information about the debugging support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, see Debugging XSLT Stylesheets and XQuery Documents (on page 1495).

Debugging with MarkLogic

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes support for debugging XQuery transformations that are executed against a MarkLogic database.

To use a debugging session against the MarkLogic engine, follow these steps:

1. Configure a MarkLogic data source (on page 1445) and a MarkLogic connection (on page 1445).
2. Make sure that the debugging support is enabled in the MarkLogic server that Oxygen XML Developer plugin accesses. On the server side, debugging must be activated in the XDBC server and in the Task Server section of the server control console (the switch debug allow). If the debugging is not activated, the MarkLogic server reports a DBG-TASKDEBUGALLOW error.

   Note: An XDBC application server must be running to connect to the MarkLogic server and this XDBC server will be used to process XQuery expressions against the server. You can change the XDBC application server that Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses to process XQuery expressions by selecting the Use it to execute queries action (on page 1451) from the contextual menu in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408).

3. Open the XQuery file and start the debugging process.
   - If you want to debug an XQuery file stored on the MarkLogic server, it is recommend to use the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) and open the file from the application server that is involved in the debugging process. This improves the resolving of any imported modules.
   - The MarkLogic XQuery debugger integrates seamlessly into the XQuery Debugger perspective (on page 179). If you have a MarkLogic validation scenario configured for the XQuery file, you can choose to debug the scenario (on page 1513) directly.
   - Otherwise, switch to the XQuery Debugger perspective (on page 1624), open the XQuery file in the editor, and select the MarkLogic connection in the XQuery engine selector from the debug control toolbar (on page 1497).

For general information about how a debugging session is started and controlled, see the Working with the Debugger (on page 1513) section.
Note: Before starting a debugging session, it is recommend that you link the MarkLogic connection with an Eclipse project. To do this, go to the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408) and select Link to project in the contextual menu of the MarkLogic connection. The major benefit of linking a debugging session with a project is that you can add breakpoints (on page 1517) in the XQuery modules stored on the server. You are also able to access these modules from the Eclipse Navigator view and run debugging sessions from them.

In a MarkLogic debugging session, you can use step actions and breakpoints (on page 1516) to help identify problems. When you add a breakpoint (on page 1517) on a line where the debugger never stops, Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays a warning message. These warnings are displayed for breakpoints you add either in the main XQuery (which you can open locally or from the server) or for breakpoints you add in any XQuery that is opened from the connection that participates in the debugging session. For more information, see Using Breakpoints for Debugging Queries that Import Modules with MarkLogic (on page 1449).

Remote Debugging with MarkLogic

Oxygen XML Developer plugin allows you to debug remote applications that use XQuery (for example, web applications that trigger XQuery executions). Oxygen XML Developer plugin connects to a MarkLogic server, shows you the running XQuery scripts and allows you to debug them. You can even pause the scripts so that you can start the debugging queries in the exact context of the application. You can also switch a server to debug mode to intercept all XQuery scripts.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin also supports collaborative debugging. This feature allows multiple users to participate in the same debugging session. You can start a debugging session and at a certain point, another user can continue it.

Important: When using the remote debugging feature, the HTTP and the XDBC servers involved in the debugging session must have the same module configuration.

For more information about the XQuery debugger for MarkLogic, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/eQ4ThDZq1bk

Related Information:

- MarkLogic Development in Oxygen XML Developer plugin (on page 1446)
- Configuring a MarkLogic Database Connection (on page 1444)
Using Breakpoints for Debugging Queries that Import Modules with MarkLogic

When debugging queries that imports modules stored in the database, it is recommended to place breakpoints in the modules. When starting a new debugging session, make sure that the modules that you will debug are already opened in the editor. This is necessary so that the breakpoints in all the modules will be considered. Also, make sure that there are no other opened modules that are not involved in the current debugging session.

To place breakpoints in the modules, use the following procedure:

1. In the Data Source Explorer view, open all the modules from the Modules container of the XDBC application server that performs the debugging.
2. Set breakpoints in the module as needed.
3. Continue debugging the query.

If you get a warning that the breakpoints failed to initialize, try the following solutions:

- Check the Breakpoints view and make sure there are no older breakpoints (set on resources that are not part of the current debugging context).
- Make sure you open the modules from the context of the application server that does the debugging and place breakpoints there.

Related Information:

- MarkLogic Database Connections
- MarkLogic Development in Oxygen XML Developer plugin

Peculiarities and Limitations of the MarkLogic Debugger

MarkLogic debugger has the following peculiarities and limitations:

- Debugging support is only available for MarkLogic server versions 4.0 or newer.
- For MarkLogic server versions 4.0 or newer, there are three XQuery syntaxes that are supported: '0.9-ml' (inherited from MarkLogic 3.2), '1.0-ml', and '1.0'.
- All declared variables are presented as strings. The Value column of the Variables view contains the expression from the variable declaration. It can be evaluated by copying the expression with the Copy value action from the contextual menu of the Variables view and pasting it in the XWatch view.
- There is no support for output to source mapping.
• There is no support for showing the trace (on page 1508).
• You can only set breakpoints (on page 1501) in imported modules in one of the following cases:
  ◦ When you open the module from the context of the application server involved in the debugging, using the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408).
  ◦ When the debugger automatically opens the modules in the Editor.
• No breakpoints (on page 1516) are set in modules from the same server that are not involved in the current debugging session.
• No support for profiling (on page 1518) when an XQuery transformation is executed in the debugger.

Debugging with Berkeley DB XML

The Berkeley DB XML database added a debugging interface starting with version 2.5. The current version is supported in the Oxygen XML Developer plugin XQuery Debugger. The same restrictions and peculiarities (on page 1450) apply for the Berkeley debugger as for the MarkLogic debugger.

Integration with Microsoft SharePoint

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides support for browsing and managing SharePoint connections in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408). You can easily create new resources on the repository, copy and move them using contextual actions or the drag and drop support, or edit and transform the documents in the editor.

Note: You can access documents stored on SharePoint Online for Office 365 sites that use either Cloud identity (default) or Federated identity (ADFS) as the authentication method.

Restriction: The SharePoint connection is only available in the Enterprise edition of Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Figure 419. SharePoint Connection
How to Configure a SharePoint Connection

By default, Oxygen XML Developer plugin contains built-in data source drivers for SharePoint. Use this data source to create a connection to a SharePoint server that will be available in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408).

To configure a SharePoint connection, follow these steps:

1. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to Data Sources.
2. In the Connections panel click the + New button.
3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select SharePoint in the Data Source combo box.
5. Fill-in the connection details:
   a. Set the URL to the SharePoint repository in the field SharePoint URL.
   b. Set the server domain in the Domain field. If you are using a SharePoint 365 account, leave this field empty.
   c. Set the user name to access the SharePoint repository in the User field.
d. Set the password to access the SharePoint repository in the Password field.

SharePoint Contextual Menu Actions

While browsing SharePoint connections in the Data Source Explorer view (on page 1408), the various nodes include the following contextual menu actions:

**Connection Level Nodes**

- **Configure Database Sources**
  
  Opens the Data Sources preferences page (on page 47) where you can configure both data sources and connections.

- **Disconnect**
  
  Stops the connection.

- **New Folder**
  
  Creates a new folder on the connection.

- **Import Files**
  
  Allows you to add a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

- **Refresh**
  
  Performs a refresh on the selected node.

**Folder Level Nodes**

- **New File**
  
  Creates a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

- **New Folder**
  
  Creates a new folder on the connection.

- **Import Folders**
  
  Imports folders on the server.

- **Import Files**
  
  Allows you to add a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

- **Export**
  
  Allows you to export the folder on the remote connection to a local folder.

- **Cut**
  
  Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.
Copy

Copies the current selection into the clipboard.

Paste

Pastes the copied selection.

Rename

Renames the current resource.

Delete

Deletes the current container.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Resource Level Nodes

Open

Opens the selected resource in the editor.

Open in System Application

When you use this action, Oxygen XML Developer plugin downloads the selected resource to a local temporary folder and opens the selected resource in the system application that is currently set as the default application associated with that type of resource. You can then edit the resource, save it, and when you switch the focus back to the Data Source Explorer view, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will detect that there was a change and will ask if you want to upload the edited resource to the server.

Cut

Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.

Copy

Copies the current selection into the clipboard.

Copy location

Allows you to copy (to the clipboard) an application-specific URL for the resource that can then be used for various actions, such as opening or transforming the resources.

Check Out

Checks out the selected document on the server.

Check In
Checks in the selected document on the server. This action opens the **Check In** dialog box. In this dialog box, the following options are available:

- **Minor Version** - Increments the minor version of the file on the server.
- **Major Version** - Increments the major version of the file on the server.
- **Overwrite** - Overwrites the latest version of the file on the server.
- **Comment** - Allows you to comment on a file that you check in.

**Discard Check Out**

Discards the previous checkout operation, making the file available for editing to other users.

**Rename**

Renames the current resource

**Delete**

Deletes the current container.

**Refresh**

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

**Properties**

Shows various properties of the current container.

**Compare**

Compares two selected resources.
14. Importing Data

Computer systems and databases contain data in incompatible formats and exchanging data between these systems can be very time consuming. Converting the data to XML can greatly reduce the complexity and create data that can be read by various types of applications.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers support for importing text files, MS Excel files, Database Data, and HTML files into XML documents. The XML documents can be further converted into other formats using the Transform features (on page 857).

Figure 420. Import Wizards of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin Plugin

Import from Text Files

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes the possibility of importing text files (txt or csv file extensions) as XML documents.

To import a text file into an XML file, follow these steps:

1. Go to File > Import > Oxygen XML Developer plugin > Text File and click Next.
A Select text file dialog box is displayed.

2. Select the URL of the text file (txt or csv file extensions).

3. Select the encoding of the text file.

4. Click the Next button.

   The Import from text file dialog box is displayed.

Figure 421. Import from Text File Dialog Box

5. Configure the settings for the conversion.
   a. Select the Field delimiter for the import settings. You can choose between the following:
      Comma, Semicolon, Tab, Space, Or Pipe.
   b. The Import settings section presents the input data in a tabular form. By default, all data items are converted to element content ( symbol), but this can be overridden by clicking the individual column headers. Clicking a column header once causes the data from this column to be converted to attribute values ( symbol). Clicking a second time causes the
column data to be ignored (x symbol) when generating the XML file. You can cycle through these three options by continuing to click the column header.

c. **First row contains field names** - If this option is selected, the default column headers are replaced (where such information is available) by the content of the first row. In other words, the first row is interpreted as containing the field names. The changes are also visible in the preview panel.

d. **Customize** - This button opens a **Presentation Names** dialog box that allows you to edit the name, XML name, and conversion criterion for the root and row elements. The XML names can be edited by double-clicking the desired item and entering the label. The conversion criteria can also be modified by selecting one of the following options in the drop-down menu: **ELEMENT**, **ATTRIBUTE**, or **SKIPPED**.

e. **Import Settings** - Clicking this button opens the **Import** preferences page (on page 124) that allows you to configure more import options.

f. The **XML Import Preview** panel contains an example of what the generated XML document looks like.

g. **Save in file** - If selected, the new XML document is saved in the specified path.

6. Click **Finish** to generate the XML document.

### Import from MS Excel Files

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides several methods for importing MS Excel files into an XML file. You can copy data from Excel and paste it into inserted cells in **Grid** mode. If you want to import an entire Excel file, Oxygen XML Developer plugin also offers a configurable import wizard that works with any type of XML document.

#### Grid Mode Method

The **Grid** mode in Oxygen XML Developer plugin displays all content in an XML document as a structured grid of nested tables and you can work with the cells in those tables much like you would with any spreadsheet application. When importing Excel data into **Grid** mode, you first need to insert new cells in the particular nested table and then you can paste data from Excel the same as you would in any table or spreadsheet.

1. Copy the particular cells from your Excel spreadsheet that you want to import into an XML file.
2. Switch to **Grid** mode in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
3. Expand the particular nodes and locate the nested table where you want to insert the copied cells.
4. Right-click a particular row or column where you want to insert the data and select 📋, **Insert row** or 📋, **Insert column**, depending on the structure of the copied cells.
5. Paste the copied cells from the clipboard into the newly inserted cells in Grid mode.
6. You may need to make some manual adjustments. For example, if the selection of copied cells contained an empty cell, Oxygen XML Developer plugin might ignore that cell.

**Import Wizard Method**

By default, this method supports importing Excel 97/2000/XP/2003 formats out-of-the-box. To import spreadsheet data from Excel 2007 or newer, additional libraries are needed before using this procedure. See Import Data from MS Excel 2007 or Newer (on page 1487) for instructions on adding more libraries.

To use the Import wizard to import an Excel file into an XML file, follow these steps:

2. Select the URL of the Excel file. The sheets of the document you are importing are presented in the Available Sheets section of this dialog box.
3. Click the Next button to proceed to the next stage of the wizard.

Figure 422. Import Wizard
4. Configure the settings for the conversion. This stage of the wizard offers the following options:

**Import settings section**

Presents the input data in a tabular form. By default, all data items are converted to element content ( symbol), but this can be overridden by clicking the individual column headers. Clicking a column header once causes the data from this column to be converted to attribute values ( symbol). Clicking a second time causes the column data to be ignored ( symbol) when generating the XML file. You can cycle through these three options by continuing to click the column header.

**First row contains field names**

If this option is selected, the default column headers are replaced (where such information is available) by the content of the first row. In other words, the first row is interpreted as containing the field names. The changes are also visible in the preview panel.

**Customize**
This button opens a **Presentation Names** dialog box that allows you to edit the name, XML name, and conversion criterion for the root and row elements. The XML names can be edited by double-clicking the desired item and entering the label. The conversion criteria can also be modified by selecting one of the following option in the drop-down menu: **ELEMENT**, **ATTRIBUTE**, or **SKIPPED**.

**Import Settings**

Clicking this button opens the **Import preferences page (on page 124)** that allows you to configure more import options.

**Import formatted data (as displayed in Excel)**

If this option is selected, the imported data retains the Excel data formatting (such as the representation of numeric values or dates). If deselected, the data formatting is not imported.

**XML Import Preview panel**

Contains an example of what the generated XML document will look like.

**Save in file**

If selected, the new XML document is saved in the specified path.

5. Click **Finish** to generate the XML document.

For more information about exchanging data between Oxygen XML Developer plugin and spreadsheet applications, watch our video demonstration:

[https://www.youtube.com/embed/8VwsF58zLkU](https://www.youtube.com/embed/8VwsF58zLkU)

**Related Information:**

- [Exporting XML Content to Excel (on page 419)](on_page_419)

---

**Import Data from MS Excel 2007 or Newer**

To import spreadsheet data from Excel 2007 or newer (.xlsx), Oxygen XML Developer plugin needs additional libraries from the release 3.10 of the Apache POI project.

**Manually Add the Libraries**

To manually add the libraries, follow these steps:
3. Copy the following .jar files into the plugin.xml file of the Oxygen XML Developer plugin Eclipse plugin (if you installed the plugin via the Eclipse update site, you will find it in the eclipse/plugins/com.oxygenxml... folder, and if you installed it via the dropins ZIP distribution, it is located in the eclipse/dropins/plugins/com.oxygenxml... folder):
   - dom4j-1.6.1.jar
   - poi-ooxml-3.10-FINAL-20140208.jar
   - poi-ooxml-schemas-3.10-FINAL-20140208.jar
   - xmlbeans-2.3.0.jar

   Note: The .jar files can be found in either the root folder where you unpacked the archive, or in the ooxml-lib subfolder.

Result: You can now use the Import wizard (on page 1485) to import data from Excel 2007 or newer.

Related Information:

- Exporting XML Content to Excel (on page 419)

Import Database Data as an XML Document

To import the data from a relational database table as an XML document, follow these steps:

1. Go to File > Import > Oxygen / Database Data and click Next to start the Import wizard.

   This opens a Select database table dialog box that lists all the defined database connections:

   Figure 423. Select Database Table Dialog Box
2. Select the connection to the database that contains the appropriate data. Only connections configured in relational data sources can be used to import data.

3. If you want to edit, delete, or add a data source or connection, click the **Configure Database Sources** button. The Preferences/Data Sources option page is opened.

4. Click **Connect**.

5. In the list of sources, expand a schema and choose the required table.

6. Click the **Next** button.

The Import Criteria dialog box is opened with a default query string in the SQL Query pane.

Figure 424. Import from Database Criteria Dialog Box
7. Configure the settings for the conversion.

   a. **SQL Preview** - If this button is pressed, the **Import settings** pane displays the labels that are used in the XML document and the first five lines from the database. By default, all data items are converted to element content (symbol), but this can be overridden by clicking the individual column headers. Clicking a column header once causes the data from this column to be converted to attribute values (symbol). Clicking a second time causes the column data to be ignored (symbol) when generating the XML file. You can cycle through these three options by continuing to click the column header.

   b. **Customize** - This button opens a **Presentation Names** dialog box that allows you to edit the name, XML name, and conversion criterion for the root and row elements. The XML names can be edited by double-clicking the desired item and entering the label. The conversion criteria can also be modified by selecting one of the following option in the drop-down menu: **ELEMENT**, **ATTRIBUTE**, or **SKIPPED**.
c. **Import Settings** - Clicking this button opens the **Import** preferences page (on page 124) that allows you to configure more import options.
d. The **XML Import Preview** panel contains an example of what the generated XML document looks like.
e. **Save in file** - If selected, the new XML document is saved in the specified path.
f. **Generate XML Schema** - Allows you to specify the path of the generated XML Schema file.

8. Click **Finish** to generate the XML document.

### Import from HTML Files

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers support for importing HTML files into an XML document.

#### Import Wizard Method

To use the **Import** wizard to import from HTML files, follow these steps:

1. Go to **File > Import > Oxygen XML Developer plugin > HTML File**. The **Import HTML** wizard is displayed.
2. Select a parent folder and file name for the resulting XHTML document.
3. Enter the URL of the HTML document.
4. Select the type of the resulting XHTML document:
   - XHTML5
   - XHTML 1.0 Transitional
   - XHTML 1.0 Strict
5. Click the **Finish** button.

**Result**: The resulting document is an XHTML file containing a DOCTYPE declaration that references the XHTML DTD definition on the Web. The parsed content of the imported file is transformed to XHTML5, XHTML Transitional, or XHTML Strict depending on the option you chose.

### Import Content Dynamically

Along with the built-in support for various useful URL protocols (such as HTTP or FTP), Oxygen XML Developer plugin also provides special support for a **convert** protocol that can be used to chain predefined processors to dynamically import content from various sources.

A **dynamic conversion URL** chains various processors that can be applied, in sequence, on a target resource and has the following general syntax:
The previous example first applies a processor (excel) on a target identified by the identifier (urn:files:sample.xls) and converts the Excel™ resource to XML. The second applied processor (xslt) applies an XSLT stylesheet identified using the identifier (urn:processors:excel2d.xsl) over the resulting content from the first applied processor. These identifiers are all mapped to real resources on disk via an XML catalog that is configured in the application, as in the following example:

```xml
<catalog xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog">
  <rewriteURI uriStartString="urn:files:" rewritePrefix="/resources/"/>
  <rewriteURI uriStartString="urn:processors:" rewritePrefix="/processors/"/>
</catalog>
```

The target resource part of the conversion URL must always follow the :/ pattern. It can be any of the following:

- An absolute URL that points to a resource.
- An identifier that will be resolved to an actual resource via the XML Catalog (on page 1627) support in the application. In the example above, the urn:files:sample.xls target resource is resolved via the XML catalog.
- A relative location. This location can only be resolved to an actual resource URL when the application has enough information about the location where the URL is referenced.

For example, for a DITA map (on page 1621) with a `topicref` such as:

```xml
<topicref href="convert:./processor=xslt!/urn:files:my.xls"/>
```

the resources/sample.xls path will be resolved relative to the DITA map location.

This type of URL can be opened in the application by using the Open URL action from the File menu. It can also be referenced from existing XML resources via `xi:include` or as a topic reference from a DITA map.

A GitHub project that contains various dynamic conversion samples for producing DITA content from various sources (and then publishing it) can be found here: https://github.com/oxygenxml/dita-glass.

Conversion Processors

A set of predefined conversion processors is provided in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. Each processor has its own parameters that can be set to control the behavior of the conversion process. All parameters that are resolved to resources are passed through the XML catalog mapping.

The following predefined conversion processors are included:
- **xslt Processor** - Converts an XML input using the Saxon EE XSLT processor. The `ss` parameter indicates the stylesheet resource to be loaded. All other specified parameters will be set as parameters to the XSLT transformation.

  ```convert:/processor=xslt;ss=urn:processors:convert.xsl;pl=v1!;/urn:files:sample.xml```

- **xquery Processor** - Converts an XML input using the Saxon EE XQuery processor. The `ss` parameter indicates the XQuery script to be loaded. All other specified parameters will be set as parameters to the XSLT transformation.

  ```convert:/processor=xquery;ss=urn:processors:convert.xquery;pl=v1!;/urn:files:sample.xml```

- **excel Processor** - Converts an Excel™ input to an XML format that can later be converted by other piped processors. It has a single parameter `sn`, which indicates the name of the sheet that needs to be converted. If this parameter is missing, the XML will contain the combined content of all sheets included in the Excel™ document.

  ```convert:/processor=excel;sn=test!;/urn:files:sample.xls```

- **java Processor** - Converts an input to another format by applying a specific Java method. The `jars` parameter is a comma-separated list of JAR (on page 1623) libraries, or folders that libraries will be loaded from. The `ccn` parameter is the fully qualified name of the conversion class that will be instantiated. The conversion class needs to have a method with the following signature:

  ```
  public void convert(String systemID, String originalSourceSystemID,
  InputStream is, OutputStream os, LinkedHashMap<String, String> properties)
  throws IOException
  ```

  ```convert:/processor=java;jars=libs;ccn=test.JavaToXML!/urn:files:java/WSEditorBase.java```

- **js Processor** - Converts an input to another format by applying a JavaScript method. The `js` parameter indicates the script that will be used. The `fn` parameter is the name of the method that will be called from the script. The method must take a string as an argument and return a string. If any of the parameters are missing, an error is thrown and the conversion stops.

  ```convert:/processor=js;js=urn:processors:md.js;fn=convertExternal!/urn:files:sample.md```

- **json Processor** - Converts a JSON input to XML. It has no parameters.

  ```convert:/processor=json!/urn:files:personal.json```

- **xhtml Processor** - Converts HTML content to well-formed XHTML. It has no parameters.

  ```convert:/processor=xhtml!/urn:files:test.html```
**wrap Processor** - Wraps content in a tag name making it well-formed XML. The `rn` parameter indicates the name of the root tag to use. By default, it is `wrapper`. The `encoding` parameter specifies the encoding that should be used to read the content. By default, it is `UTF8`. As an example, this processor can be used if you want to process a comma-separated values file with an XSLT stylesheet to produce XML content. The CSV file is first wrapped as well-formed XML, which is then processed with an `xslt` processor.

```plaintext
convert:/processor=wrap!/urn:files:test.csv
```

**cache Processor** - Caches the converted content obtained from the original document to a temporary file. The cache will be used on subsequent uses of the same URL, thus increasing the speed for the application returning the converted content. If the original URL points to the local disk, the cache will be automatically invalidated when the original file content gets modified. Otherwise, if the original URL points to a remote resource, the cache will need to be invalidated by reloading (`File > C ⊔ Reload (F5)`) the URL content that is opened in the editor.

```plaintext
convert:/processor=cache/processor=xslt;...!/urn:files:test.csv
```

### Reverse Conversion Processors

All processors defined above can also be used for saving content back to the target resource if they are defined in the URL as reverse processors. Reverse processors are evaluated right to left. These reverse processors allow round-tripping content to and from the target resource.

As an example, the following URL converts HTML to DITA when the URL is opened using the `h2d.xsl` stylesheet and converts DITA to HTML when the content is saved in the application using the `d2h.xsl` stylesheet.

```plaintext
convert:/processor=xslt;ss=h2d.xsl/rprocessor=xslt;ss=d2h.xsl!/urn:files:sample.html
```

⚠️ **Important:** If you are publishing a DITA map that has such conversion URL references inside, you need to edit the transformation scenario and set the value of the parameter `fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml` to **true**. This will instruct Oxygen XML Developer plugin to resolve such references during a special pre-processing stage. Depending on the conversion, you may also require additional libraries to be added using the **Libraries** button in the **Advanced** tab of the transformation scenario.

**Related Information:**

- [https://github.com/oxygenxml/dita-glass](https://github.com/oxygenxml/dita-glass)
Debugging XSLT Stylesheets and XQuery Documents

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a powerful debugging interface that helps you to detect and solve problems with XSLT and XQuery transformations.

**XSLT Debugger Perspective**

The XSLT Debugger perspective (on page 1624) allows you to detect problems in an XSLT transformation by executing the process step by step. To switch the focus to this perspective, select Window > Open Perspective > Other > Oxygen XSLT Debugger.

**XQuery Debugger Perspective**

The XQuery Debugger perspective (on page 1624) allows you to detect problems in an XQuery transformation process by executing the process step by step in a controlled environment and inspecting the information provided in the special views. To switch the focus to this perspective, select Window > Open Perspective > Other > Oxygen XQuery Debugger.

**XSLT/XQuery Debugging Overview**

The XSLT Debugger and XQuery Debugger perspectives (on page 1624) allows you to test and debug XSLT 1.0 / 2.0 / 3.0 stylesheets and XQuery 1.0 / 3.0 documents including complex XPath 2.0 / 3.0 expressions. The interface presents simultaneous views of the source XML document, the XSLT/XQuery document and the result document. As you go step by step through the XSLT/XQuery document the corresponding output is generated step by step, and the corresponding position in the XML file is highlighted. At the same time, special views provide various types of debugging information and events useful to understand the transformation process.

The following set of features allow you to test and solve XSLT/XQuery problems:

- Support for XSLT 1.0 stylesheets (using Saxon 6.5.5 and Xalan XSLT engines), XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 stylesheets and XPath 2.0 / 3.0 expressions that are included in the stylesheets (using Saxon 9.8.0.12 XSLT engine) and XQuery 1.0 / 3.0 (using Saxon 9.8.0.12 XQuery engine).
- Stepping capabilities: step in, step over, step out, run, run to cursor, run to end, pause, stop.
- Output to source mapping between every line of output and the instruction element / source context that generated it.
• Breakpoints (on page 1516) on both source and XSLT/XQuery documents.
• Call stack on both source and XSLT/XQuery documents.
• Trace history on both source and XSLT/XQuery documents.
• Support for XPath expression evaluation during debugging.
• Step into imported/included stylesheets as well as included source entities.
• Available templates and hits count.
• Variables view.
• Dynamic output generation.

For even more information, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/m9d8c4V-LJw

Debugger Layout

The XML and XSL files are displayed in Text mode (on page 364). The Grid mode (on page 251) is available only in the Editor perspective (on page 176).

The XSLT/XQuery Debugger perspective (on page 1624) contains the following components:

• Source Document View (XML) - Displays and allows the editing of XML files (documents).
• XSLT/XQuery Document View (XSLT/XQuery) - Displays and allows the editing of XSL files (stylesheets) or XQuery documents.
• Output View - Displays the output that results from inputting a document (XML) and a stylesheet (XSL) or XQuery document in the transformer. The transformation result is written dynamically while the transformation is processed (using the Run button on the Control toolbar (on page 1499)). Several actions are available in the contextual menu for this view, including Find/Replace, Copy, and Format and Indent. There are two types of output views: a text-based Output view (with XML syntax highlights) and HTML view.
• Control Toolbar (on page 1497) - Contains a variety of actions to help you configure and control the debugging process.
• Information Views (on page 1500) - The information views at the bottom of the editor display various types of information to help you understand the transformation process.

Tip: The Output view and the various other information views are dockable (on page 1620) so that you can configure the workspace according to your preferences.

Figure 425. Debugger Interface
XML documents and XSL stylesheets or XQuery documents that were opened in the Editor perspective (on page 1624) are automatically sorted into the first two panes. When multiple files of each type are opened, the individual documents and stylesheets are separated using the familiar tab management system that you are used to in the Editor perspective. Selecting a tab brings the document or stylesheet into focus and enables editing without the need to go back to the Editor perspective.

During debugging, the current execution node is highlighted in both document (XML) and XSLT/XQuery views.

Related Information:

- Steps in a Typical Debugging Process (on page 1513)
- Identify the XSLT / XQuery Expression that Generated Particular Output (on page 1514)
- Supported Processors for XSLT / XQuery Debugging (on page 1523)
- Performance Profiling of XSLT Stylesheets and XQuery Documents (on page 1518)
Control Toolbar

The Control toolbar contains all the actions that you need to configure and control the debugging process. The following actions are described as they appear in the toolbar from left to right.

Figure 426. Control Toolbar

**XML source selector**

The current selection represents the source document used as input by the transformation engine. The selection list contains all opened files (XML files being emphasized). This option allows you to use other file types also as source documents. In an XQuery debugging session this selection field can be set to the default value `NONE`, because usually XQuery documents do not require an input source.

**XSL / XQuery selector**

The current selection represents the stylesheet or XQuery document to be used by the transformation engine. The selection list contains all opened files (XSLT / XQuery files being emphasized).

**Link with editor**

When selected, the XML and XSLT/XQuery selectors display the names of the files opened in the central editor panels. This button is toggled off by default.

**Output selector**

The selection represents the output file specified in the associated transformation scenario. You can specify the path by using the text field, the `Insert Editor Variables (on page 162)` button, or the `Browse` button.

**Configure parameters**

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure the XSLT / XQuery parameters to be used by the transformation.

**Edit extensions**

Allows you to add and remove the Java classes and JARS (on page 1623) used as XSLT extensions.

**Turn on/off profiling**

Enables / Disables current transformation profiling.

**Enable XHTML output**
Enables the rendering of the output in the **HTML output view (on page 1496)** during the transformation process. For performance issues, disable XHTML output when working with very large files. Note that only XHTML conformant documents can be rendered by this view. To view the output result of other formats, such as HTML, save the **Text output** area to a file and use an external browser for viewing.

When starting a debug session from the **Editor perspective (on page 1624)** by using the **Debug Scenario** action, the state of this toolbar button reflects the state of the **Show as XHTML** output option from the scenario.

**Turn on/off output to source mapping**

Enables or disables the output to source mapping between every line of output and the instruction element / source context that generated it.

**Debugger preferences**

Quick link to **Debugger preferences page (on page 144)**.

**XSLT / XQuery engine selector**

Lists the processors available for debugging XSLT and XQuery transformations (on page 1523).

**XSLT / XQuery engine advanced options**

If Saxon HE/PE/EE is selected, you can click this button to open the **Advanced Saxon Transformation Options page (on page 895)**.

**Step into F7**

Starts the debugging process and runs until the next instruction is encountered.

**Step over F8 (Alt + F8 on OS X)**

Run until the current instruction and its sub-instructions are over. Usually this will advance to the next sibling instruction.

**Step out Shift + F7 (Command + F8 on OS X)**

Run until the parent of the current instruction is over. Usually this will advance to the next sibling of the parent instruction.

**Run Shift + F5**

Starts the debugging process. The execution of the process is paused when a **breakpoint (on page 1501)** is encountered or the transformation ends.

**Run to cursor Ctrl + F5**
Starts the debugging process and runs until one of the following conditions occur: the line of cursor is reached, a valid breakpoint (on page 1516) is reached or the execution ends.

Run to end Alt + F5

Runs the transformation until the end, without taking into account enabled breakpoints (on page 1516), if any.

Pause Shift + F6

Request to pause the current transformation as soon as possible.

Stop F6

Request to stop the current transformation without completing its execution.

Show current execution nodes

Reveals the current debugger context showing both the current instruction and the current node in the XML source. Possible displayed states:

- Entering (→) or leaving (←) an XML execution node.
- Entering (→) or leaving (←) an XSL execution node.
- Entering (→) or leaving (←) an XPath execution node.

Note: When you set a MarkLogic server as a processor, the Show current execution nodes button is named Refresh current session context from server. Click this button to refresh the information in all the views.

Note: For some of the XSLT processors (Saxon-HE/PE/EE) the debugger could be configured to step into the XPath expressions affecting the behavior of the following debugger actions: Step into, Step over or Step Out.

Related Information:

- Advanced Saxon HE/PE/EE XQuery Transformation Options (on page 912)

Debugging Information Views

The information views at the bottom of the editor is comprised of two panes that are used to display various types of information used to understand the transformation process. For each information type there is a corresponding tab. While running a transformation, relevant events are displayed in the various information views. This enables the developer to obtain a clear view of the transformation
progress. By using the debug controls, developers can easily isolate parts of stylesheet. Therefore, they may be more easily understood and modified.

The information types include the following:

Left side information views

- **Breakpoints** view (on page 1501)
- **XWatch** view (on page 1503)
- **Context** view (on page 1503)
- **Messages** view (on page 1504) (XSLT only)
- **Variables** view (on page 1511)
- **Invocation Tree** view (on page 1519)

Right side information views

- **Stack** view (on page 1505)
- **Output Mapping Stack** view (on page 1506)
- **Trace** view (on page 1508)
- **Templates** view (on page 1509) (XSLT only)
- **Nodes/Values Set** view (on page 1510)
- **Hotspots** view (on page 1521)

Tip: The information views are dockable (on page 1620) so that you can configure the workspace according to your preferences.

Breakpoints View

The **Breakpoints** view lists all breakpoints (on page 1516) that are set on opened documents. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu. Breakpoints can be inserted (on page 1517) in the XML source document or the XSLT/XQuery document in debugging sessions.

Once you insert a breakpoint, it is automatically added to the list in the Breakpoints view and you can edit its associated condition. A breakpoint can have an associated break condition that represents an XPath expression evaluated in the current debugger context. For them to be processed, their evaluation result should be a boolean value. A breakpoint with an associated condition only stops the execution of the Debugger if the breakpoint condition is evaluated as true.

Figure 427. Breakpoints View
The **Breakpoints** view contains the following columns:

- **Enabled** - If selected, the current condition is evaluated and taken into account.
- **Resource** - Resource file and number of the line where the breakpoint is set.
- **Condition** - XSLT/XQuery expression to be evaluated during debugging. The expression will be evaluated at every debug step.

Clicking a record highlights the breakpoint line in the document.

**Note:** The breakpoints list is not deleted at the end of a transformation (it is preserved between debugging sessions).

The following actions are available in the contextual menu of the table:

- **Go to**
  
  Moves the cursor to the source of the breakpoint.

- **Run to Breakpoint**

  Runs the debugger up to the point of this particular breakpoint and ignores the others (regardless of whether they were previously enabled or disabled).

- **Enable**

  Enables the breakpoint.

- **Disable**

  Disables the breakpoint. A disabled breakpoint will not be evaluated by the Debugger.

- **Add**

  Allows you to add a new breakpoint and breakpoint condition.

- **Edit**

  Allows you to edit an existing breakpoint.

- **Remove**

  Deletes the selected breakpoint.

- **Enable all**
Enables all breakpoints.

**Disable all**

Disables all breakpoints.

**Remove all**

Removes all breakpoints.

**Related Information:**

- Using Breakpoints *(on page 1516)*

**Context View**

The context node is valid only for XSLT debugging sessions and is a source node corresponding to the XSL expression that is evaluated. It is also called the context of execution. The context node implicitly changes as the processor hits various steps (at the point where XPath expressions are evaluated). This node has the same value as evaluating ‘.’ (dot) XPath expression in XWatch view *(on page 1503).* The value of the context node is presented as a tree in the Context view. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

**Figure 428. Context node view**

The context nodes are presented in a tree-like fashion. Nodes from a defined namespace bound to a prefix are displayed using the qualified name. If the namespace is not bound to a prefix, the namespace URI is presented before the node name. The value of the selected attribute or node is displayed in the right side panel. The Context view also presents the current mode of the XSLT processor if this mode differs from the default one.
XPath Watch (XWatch) View

The XWatch view shows XPath expressions evaluated during the debugging process. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Expressions are evaluated dynamically as the processor changes its source context. When you type an XPath expression in the Expression column, Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports you with syntax highlight and content completion assistance (on page 527).

Figure 429. XPath Watch View

Table 63. XWatch columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expression</td>
<td>XPath expression to be evaluated (XPath 1.0 or 2.0 / 3.0 compliant).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Result of XPath expression evaluation. Value has a type (see the possible values (on page 1511) in the section Variables View (on page 1511)). For Node Set results, the number of nodes in the set is shown in parenthesis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ Important: Notes about working with the XWatch view:

- Expressions that reference variable names are not evaluated.
- The expression list is not deleted at the end of the transformation (it is preserved between debugging sessions).
- To insert a new expression, click the first empty line of the Expression column and start typing.
- To delete an expression, click its Expression column and delete its content.
- If the expression result type is a Node Set, click it (Value column) and its value is displayed in the Nodes/Values Set view (on page 1510).

Messages View

Using an xsl:message instruction is one way to signal special situations encountered during transformation as well as a raw way of doing the debugging. The Messages view is available only for
XSLT debugging sessions and shows all `xsl:message` calls executed by the XSLT processor during transformation. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Figure 430. Messages View

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Terminate</th>
<th>Resource</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Message 1</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>personal.xml [line: 8]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message 2</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>personal.xml [line: 12]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message 3</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>personal.xml [line: 25]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 64. Messages columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Message content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminate</td>
<td>Signals whether or not the processor terminates the transformation once it encounters the message (yes/no respectively).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource</td>
<td>Resource file where <code>xsl:message</code> instruction is defined and the message line number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following actions are available in the contextual menu:

**Go to**

Highlight the XSL fragment that generated the message.

**Copy**

Copies to clipboard message details (system ID, severity info, description, start location, terminate state).

**Clear all**

Removes all messages from the view.

**Important:**

- Clicking a record from the table highlights the `xsl:message` declaration line.
- Message table values can be sorted by clicking the corresponding column header. Clicking the column header switches the sorting order between: ascending, descending, no sort.

Stack View

The Stack view shows the current execution stack of both source and XSLT/XQuery nodes. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

During the transformation, two stacks are managed. One for source nodes being processed and the other for XSLT/XQuery nodes being processed. Oxygen XML Developer plugin shows both node types in one common stack. The source (XML) nodes are preceded by a red color icon while XSLT/XQuery
nodes are preceded by a green color icon. The advantage of this approach is that you can always see the source scope on which an XSLT/XQuery instruction is executed (the last red color node on the stack). The stack is oriented upside down.

Figure 431. Stack View

The contextual menu contains one action: Go to, which moves the selection in the editor panel to the line containing the XSLT element that is displayed on the selected line from the view.

Table 65. Stack Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#</td>
<td>Order number, represents the depth of the node (0 is the stack base).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XML/XSLT/XQuery Node</td>
<td>Node from source or stylesheet document currently being processed. One particular stack node is the document root, noted as #document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td>Attributes of the node (a list of id=&quot;value&quot; pairs).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource</td>
<td>Resource file where the node is located.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Important: Remarks:

• Clicking a record from the stack highlights that node's location inside resource.
• Using Saxon, the stylesheet elements are qualified with XSL proxy, while using Xalan you only see their names. (example: xsl:template using Saxon and template using Xalan).
• Only the Saxon processor shows element attributes.
• The Xalan processor shows also the built-in rules.

Output Mapping Stack View

The Output Mapping Stack view displays context data (on page 1514) and presents the XSLT templates/XQuery elements that generated specific areas of the output. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Figure 432. Output Mapping Stack view
The Go to action of the contextual menu takes you to the line that contains the XSLT element displayed in the Output Mapping Stack view.

Table 66. Output Mapping Stack Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#</td>
<td>The order number in the stack of XSLT templates/XQuery elements. Number 0 corresponds to the bottom of the stack in the status of the XSLT/XQuery processor. The highest number corresponds to the top of the stack.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XSL/XQuery Node</td>
<td>The name of an XSLT template/XQuery element that participated in the generation of the selected output area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td>The attributes of the XSLT template/XQuery node.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource</td>
<td>The name of the file containing the XSLT template/XQuery element.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ Important: Remarks:

- Clicking a record highlights that XSLT template definition/XQuery element inside the resource (XSLT stylesheet file/XQuery file).
- Saxon only shows the applied XSLT templates having at least one hit from the processor. Xalan shows all defined XSLT templates, with or without hits.
- The table can be sorted by clicking the corresponding column header. When clicking a column header the sorting order switches between: ascending, descending, no sort.
- Xalan shows also the built-in XSLT rules.

Related Information:

- Identify the XSLT / XQuery Expression that Generated Particular Output (on page 1514)
- Stack View (on page 1505)
- Trace View (on page 1508)
Trace View

Usually, the XSLT/XQuery processors signal the following events during transformation:

- \( \rightarrow \) - Entering a source (XML) node.
- \( \leftarrow \) - Leaving a source (XML) node.
- \( \rightarrow \) - Entering an XSLT/XQuery node.
- \( \leftarrow \) - Leaving an XSLT/XQuery node.

The Trace view catches all of these events, so you can see how the process evolved. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

The red icon lines denote source nodes while the green icon lines denote XSLT/XQuery nodes. It is possible to save the element trace in a structured XML document (using the Export to XML action in the contextual menu). Thus, you have the possibility of comparing the trace results from multiple debug sessions.

Figure 433. Trace History View

The contextual menu contains the following actions:

**Go to**

Moves the selection in the editor panel to the line containing the XSLT element or XML element that is displayed on the selected line from the view;

**Export to XML**

Saves the entire trace list in XML format.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Depth</td>
<td>Shows you how deep the node is nested in the XML or stylesheet structure. The bigger the number, the more nested the node is. A depth 0 node is the document root.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Description

| XML/XSLT/XQuery Node | Represents the node from the processed source or stylesheet document. One particular node is the document root, noted as 
#document. Every node is preceded by an arrow that represents what action was performed on it (entering or leaving the node). |
| Attributes | Attributes of the node (a list of id="value" pairs). |
| Resource | Resource file where the node is located. |

⚠️ **Important:** Remarks:

- Clicking a record highlights that node's location inside the resource.
- Only the Saxon processor shows the element attributes.
- The Xalan processor shows also the built-in rules.

#### Templates View

The **xsl:template** is the basic element for stylesheets transformation. The **Templates** view is only available during XSLT debugging sessions and shows all **xsl:template** instructions used by the transformation. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Being able to see the number of **hits** for each of the templates allows you to get an idea of the stylesheet coverage by template rules with respect to the input source.

**Figure 434. Templates view**

The contextual menu contains one action: **Go to**, which moves the selection in the editor panel to the line that contains the XSLT template displayed on the selected line from the view.

#### Table 68. Templates columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Match</td>
<td>The <em>match</em> attribute of the <em>xsl:template</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits</td>
<td>The number of hits for the <em>xsl:template</em>. Shows how many times the XSLT processor used this particular template.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>The template priority as established by XSLT processor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>The <code>mode</code> attribute of the <code>xsl:template</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The <code>name</code> attribute of the <code>xsl:template</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource</td>
<td>The resource file where the template is located.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Important:** Remarks:

- Clicking a record highlights that template definition inside the resource.
- Saxon only shows the applied templates having at least one hit from the processor. Xalan shows all defined templates, with or without hits.
- Template table values can be sorted by clicking the corresponding column header. When clicking a column header the sorting order switches between: ascending, descending, no sort.
- Xalan shows also the built-in rules.

### Nodes/Values Set View

The **Nodes/Values Set** view is always used in relation with the **Variables** view (on page 1511) and **XWatch** view (on page 1503). If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu. It shows an XSLT node set value in a tree form. This view is updated as a response to the following events:

- You click a variable that has a node set value in the **Variables** (on page 1511) or **XWatch** view (on page 1503).
- You click a tree fragment in the **Variables** (on page 1511) or **XWatch** view (on page 1503).
- You click an XPath expression evaluated to a node set in the **Variables** (on page 1511) or **XWatch** view (on page 1503).

![Figure 435. Node Set view](image)

The nodes / values set is presented in a tree-like fashion. Nodes from a defined namespace bound to a prefix are displayed using the qualified name. If the namespace is not bound to a prefix, the namespace URI is presented before the node name. The value of the selected attribute or node is displayed in the right side panel.
Important: Remarks:

- For longer values in the right side panel, the interface displays it with an ellipsis (...) at the end. A more detailed value is available as a tooltip when hovering over it.
- Clicking a record highlights the location of that node in the source or stylesheet view.

Variables View

The Variables view displays variables and parameters (local and global), along with their values. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Variables and parameters play an important role during an XSLT/XQuery transformation. Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the following icons to differentiate variables and parameters:

- $ - Global variable.
- #{ } - Local variable.
- $ - Global parameter.
- #{ } - Local parameter.

The following value types are available:

- Boolean
- String
- Date - XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 only.
- Number
- Set
- Object
- Fragment - Tree fragment.
- Any
- Undefined - The value was not yet set, or it is not accessible.

Note:

When Saxon 6.5 is used, if the value is unavailable, then the following message is displayed in the Value field: "The variable value is unavailable".

When Saxon 9 is used:

- If the variable is not used, the Value field displays "The variable is declared but never used".
- If the variable value cannot be evaluated, the Value field displays "The variable value is unavailable".

- Document
- Element
• Attribute
• ProcessingInstruction
• Comment
• Text
• Namespace
• Evaluating - Value under evaluation.
• Not Known - Unknown types.

Figure 436. Variables View

Table 69. Variables Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of variable / parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value Type</td>
<td>Type of variable/parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Current value of variable / parameter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The value of a variable (the **Value** column) can be copied to the clipboard for pasting it to other editor areas with the **Copy value** action from the contextual menu. This is useful if you have long and complex values that cannot be easily remembered just by looking at them once.

⚠️ **Important**: Remarks:

• Local variables and parameters are the first entries presented in the table.
• Clicking a record highlights the variable definition line.
• Variable values could differ depending on the transformation engine used or stylesheet version set.
• If the value of the variable is a node set or a tree fragment, clicking it causes the **Node Set view (on page 1510)** to be shown with the corresponding set of values.
• Variable table values can be sorted by clicking the corresponding column header. Clicking the column header switches between the orders: ascending, descending, no sort.
Multiple Output Documents in XSLT 2.0 and XSLT 3.0

For XSLT 2.0 and XSLT 3.0 stylesheets that store the output in multiple files by using the `xsl:result-document` instruction, the content of the file created in this way is displayed dynamically while the transformation is running in an output view. There is one tab for each `xsl:result-document` instruction in the Result Documents view so that the output is not mixed while still being presented in multiple views.

Steps in a Typical Debugging Process

Depending on your situation and needs, the debugging process might be more complex, but the following procedure is an example of a typical debugging process:

1. Open the source XML document and the XSLT/XQuery document.

2. If you are in the Editor perspective (on page 1624), switch to the XSLT Debugger or XQuery Debugger perspective (on page 1624) with one of the following actions:
   • Select Window > Open Perspective > Other > Oxygen XSLT Debugger/XQuery Debugger.
   • Select the 🎨 Debug scenario action on the toolbar. This action initializes the Debugger perspective (on page 1624) with the parameters of the transformation scenario. Any modification applied to the scenario parameters (the transformer engine, XSLT parameters, transformer extensions, etc.) will be saved back in the scenario when exiting from the Debugger perspective.

3. Select the source XML document in the XML source selector of the Control toolbar (on page 1498). In the case of XQuery debugging, if your XQuery document has no implicit source, set the source selector value to NONE.

4. Select the XSLT/XQuery document in the XSL/XQuery selector of the Control toolbar (on page 1498).

5. Set XSLT/XQuery parameters using the Configure parameters button on the Control toolbar (on page 1498).

6. Set one or more breakpoints (on page 1516).

7. Step through the stylesheet using the following buttons available on the Control toolbar (on page 1499):
   • ⬤ Step into
   • ⬤ Step over
   • ⬤ Step out
8. Examine the data in the information views to find the bug in the transformation process.
For more information about fixing bugs in the transformation, see: Identify the XSLT / XQuery Expression that Generated Particular Output (on page 1514).

Related Information:
- Identify the XSLT / XQuery Expression that Generated Particular Output (on page 1514)

Identify the XSLT / XQuery Expression that Generated Particular Output

To quickly spot the XSLT templates or XQuery expressions with problems, it is important to know what XSLT template in the XSLT stylesheet (or XQuery expression in the XQuery document) and what element in the source XML document generated a specified area in the output.

Some of the debugging capabilities (for example, Step in) can be used for this purpose. Using Step in, you can see how output is generated and link it with the XSLT/XQuery element being executed in the current source context. However, this can become difficult on complex XSLT stylesheets or XQuery documents that generate a large output.

You can click particular text in the Output view and the editor will select the XML source context and the XSLT template/XQuery element that generated that text. Also, inspecting the whole stack of XSLT templates/XQuery elements that determined the state of the XSLT/XQuery processor at the moment of generating the specified output area speeds up the debugging process.

This is an example of a typical procedure for identifying an expression that generated particular output:

1. Switch to the XSLT Debugger or XQuery Debugger perspective (on page 1624) with one of the following actions:
   - Select Window > Open Perspective > Other > Oxygen XSLT Debugger/XQuery Debugger.
   - Select the Debug scenario action on the toolbar. This action initializes the Debugger perspective (on page 1624) with the parameters of the transformation scenario. Any
modification applied to the scenario parameters (the transformer engine, XSLT parameters, transformer extensions, etc.) will be saved back in the scenario when exiting from the Debugger perspective.

2. Select the source XML document in the XML source selector of the Control toolbar (on page 1498). In the case of XQuery debugging, if your XQuery document has no implicit source, set the source selector value to NONE.

3. Select the XSLT/XQuery document in the XSL/XQuery selector of the Control toolbar (on page 1498).

4. Select the appropriate engine in the XSLT/XQuery engine selector of the Control toolbar (on page 1499).

5. Set XSLT/XQuery parameters using the Configure parameters button on the Control toolbar (on page 1498).

6. Apply the XSLT stylesheet or XQuery transformation using the Run to end button that is available on the Control toolbar (on page 1500).

7. Inspect the mapping by clicking a section of the output in the Output view.

Figure 437. Text Output to Source Mapping
This action will highlight the XSLT / XQuery element and the XML source context. This XSLT template/XQuery element that is highlighted in the XSLT/XQuery editor represents only the top of the stack of XSLT templates/XQuery elements that determined the state of the XSLT/ XQuery processor at the moment of generating the clicked output section. In the case of complex transformations, inspecting the whole stack of XSLT templates/XQuery elements speeds up the debugging process. This stack is available in the Output Mapping Stack view (on page 1506).

Related Information:

- Output Mapping Stack View (on page 1506)
- Trace View (on page 1508)
- Templates View (on page 1509)
Using Breakpoints

The Oxygen XML Developer plugin XSLT/XQuery Debugger allows you to interrupt XSLT/XQuery processing to gather information about variables and processor execution at particular points. To ensure breakpoints are persistent between work sessions, they are saved at project level. You can set a maximum of 100 breakpoints per project.

Inserting Breakpoints

To insert a breakpoint, follow these steps:

1. Click the line where you want to insert the breakpoint in the XML source document or the XSLT/XQuery document. Breakpoints are automatically created on the ending line of a start tag, even if you click a different line.
2. Right-click the vertical stripe on the left side of the editor panel and select Add breakpoint.

Result:

Once you insert a breakpoint, it is automatically added to the list in the Breakpoints view and you can edit its associated condition. A breakpoint can have an associated break condition that represents an XPath expression evaluated in the current debugger context. For them to be processed, their evaluation result should be a boolean value. A breakpoint with an associated condition only stops the execution of the Debugger if the breakpoint condition is evaluated as true.

Figure 438. Example: Breakpoints

Tip: You can configure the color and how breakpoints are shown from the Eclipse Annotations preferences page (Window ('Eclipse' on Mac OSX) > Preferences > General > Editors > Text Editors > Annotations).

Removing Breakpoints

To remove a breakpoint, Right-click the breakpoint icon (●) in the vertical stripe on the left side of the editor panel and select Remove breakpoint.

Related Information:
Performance Profiling of XSLT Stylesheets and XQuery Documents

Whether you are trying to identify a performance issue that is causing your production XSLT/XQuery transformation to not meet customer expectations or you are trying to proactively identify issues prior to deploying your XSLT/XQuery transformation, using the XSLT/XQuery profiler feature is essential to helping you save time and ultimately ensure a better performing, more scalable XSLT/XQuery transformation.

The XSLT/XQuery profiling feature can use any available XSLT/XQuery processor that can be used for debugging and it is available from the debugging perspective (on page 1624).

Enabling the Profiler

Enabling and disabling the profiler is controlled by the Profiler button from the debugger Control toolbar (on page 1498). The XSLT/XQuery profiler is off by default. This option is not available during a debugger session so you need to set it before starting the transformation. For information about a common debugging procedure, see Steps in a Typical Debugging Process (on page 1513).

Profiling Information Views

Immediately after enabling the profiler, two new information views are added to the current debugger information views (on page 1500):

- Invocation tree view (on page 1519) on left side
- Hotspots view (on page 1521) on right side

Profiling data is available only after the transformation ends successfully.

On the left side (Invocation tree view (on page 1519)), you can examine how style instructions are processed. This result view is also named call-tree, as it represents the order of style processing. The profiling result shows the duration time for each of the style-instruction including the time needed for its called children.

On the right side (Hotspots view (on page 1521)), you can immediately spot the time the processor spent in each instruction. As an instruction usually calls other instructions, the used time of the called instruction is extracted from the duration time of the caller (the hotspot only presents the inherent time of the instruction).
**Source Backmapping**

In either the **Invocation tree** *(on page 1519)* or **Hotspots view** *(on page 1521)*, you can use the backmapping feature to find the XSLT stylesheet or XQuery expression definition. Clicking the selected item causes Oxygen XML Developer plugin to highlight the XSLT stylesheet or XQuery expression source line where the instruction is defined.

![Figure 439. Source Backmapping](image)

**Saving and Customizing Profiling Data**

The profiling data can be saved (exported) into XML and HTML format. In either the **Invocation tree** *(on page 1519)* or **Hotspots view** *(on page 1521)*, right-click anywhere in the view and select **Export to XML** or **Export to HTML**. The HTML report can be customized based upon the profiling raw data. When you select **Export to HTML**, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will save it as XML and apply an XSLT stylesheet to render the report as XML. You can customize these stylesheets to suit your needs. By default, they are located in: `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/profiler/`.

**Other Profiling Notes**

- If you want to change the XSLT/XQuery profiler settings *(on page 145)*, use the contextual menu and choose the corresponding **View settings** entry.
- Profiling exhaustive transformations may run into an **OutOfMemory** error due to the large amount of information being collected. If this is the case, you can close unused projects when running the profiling or use high values for Java VM options `-Xms` and `-Xmx`. If this does not help you can shorten your source XML file and try again.
- For more information about the XSLT/XQuery Profiler, watch our video demonstration:

  [https://www.youtube.com/embed/4ftHschjLqA](https://www.youtube.com/embed/4ftHschjLqA)
Invocation Tree View

The Invocation Tree view shows a top-down call tree that represents how XSLT instructions or XQuery expressions are processed. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Figure 440. Invocation Tree View

The entries in the invocation tree include a few possible icons that indicate the following:

- Points to a call whose inherent time is insignificant compared to its total time.
- Points to a call whose inherent time is significant compared to its total time (greater than 1/3rd of its total time).

Every entry in the invocation tree includes textual information that depends on the XSLT/XQuery profiler settings (on page 145):

- A percentage number of the total time that is calculated with respect to either the root of the tree or the calling instruction.
- A total time measurement in milliseconds or microseconds. This is the total execution time that includes calls into other instructions.
- A percentage number of the inherent time that is calculated with respect to either the root of the tree or the calling instruction.
- An inherent time measurement in milliseconds or microseconds. This is the inherent execution time of the instruction.
- An invocation count that shows how often the instruction has been invoked on this call-path.
- An instruction name that contains also the attributes description.

The Invocation Tree view also includes the following contextual menu actions:

Export to HTML

Selecting this option will save the profiling data as XML and then apply an XSLT stylesheet to render the report as HTML. These stylesheets are included in the subfolder: [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/profiler/. You can use them to customize your own report based on the profiling raw data.
Export to XML

Use this option to save the profiling data as an XML file in a specified location.

View settings

Opens the XSLT/XQuery Profiler preferences page (on page 145) that allows you to configure various profiling settings.

Hotspots View

The **Hotspots** view displays a list of all instruction calls that lie above the threshold defined in the XSLT/XQuery profiler settings (on page 145). If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the Window > Show View menu.

Figure 441. Hotspots View

By opening a hotspot instruction entry, the tree of back-traces leading to that instruction call are calculated and shown.

Every hotspot is described by the values from the following columns:

- **Instruction** - The name of the instruction.
- **Percentage** - The percentage number for this hotspot entry with respect to the total time.
- **Time** - The inherent time in milliseconds or microseconds of how much time has been spent in the hotspot. All calls into this instruction are summed up regardless of the particular call sequence.
- **Calls** - The invocation count of the hotspot entry.

If you click the ▶️ handle on the left side of a hotspot, a tree of back-traces will be shown.

Every entry in the backtrace tree has textual information attached to it that depends on the XSLT/ XQuery profiler settings (on page 145):
• A percentage number that is calculated with respect to either the total time or the called instruction.
• A time measured in milliseconds or microseconds of how much time has been contributed to the parent hotspot on this call-path.
• An invocation count that shows how often the hotspot has been invoked on this call-path.

Note: This is not the number of invocations of this instruction.
• An instruction name that also contains its attributes.

The Hotspots view also includes the following contextual menu actions:

Export to HTML
Selecting this option will save the profiling data as XML and then apply an XSLT stylesheet to render the report as HTML. These stylesheets are included in the subfolder: [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/profiler/. You can use them to customize your own report based on the profiling raw data.

Export to XML
Use this option to save the profiling data as an XML file in a specified location.

View settings
Opens the XSLT/XQuery Profiler preferences page (on page 145) that allows you to configure various profiling settings.

Debugging XSLT that Call Java Extensions
It is possible to debug XSLT that call Java extensions. This is achieved through a transformation scenario in which the Java extensions are specified, and the debugging can be done based upon the same scenario.

To debug XSLT with Java extensions, follow this procedure:

1. Create an XSLT transformation scenario (on page 937) for your XSLT document (select Configure Transformation Scenario(s) action from the toolbar, then click New, and select XSLT transformation).
2. In the New scenario dialog box, click the Extensions button (in the XSLT tab), specify the Java extensions (JAR libraries) that are needed, and click OK.
3. Once you are finished configuring the transformation scenario, click OK, then select Save and close.
4. Use the Debug scenario action on the toolbar and the debugging will be based upon the same transformation scenario you just configured and saved.
Tip: You could achieve this during a typical debugging process (on page 1513) by specifying the Java extensions using the Edit extensions button on the debugger control toolbar (on page 1498).

Related Information:

- Validating XSLT Stylesheets that Call Java Extensions (on page 522)

Debugging Java Extensions

The XSLT/XQuery debugger does not step into Java classes that are configured as XSLT/XQuery extensions of the transformation. To step into Java classes, inspect variable values, and set breakpoints (on page 1516) in Java methods, you can set up a Java debug configuration in an IDE (such as the Eclipse SDK) as described in the following steps:

1. Create a debug configuration.
   a. Set at least 256 MB as heap memory for the Java virtual machine (recommended 1024 MB) by setting the \-Xmx parameter in the debug configuration (for example, \-Xmx1024m).
   b. Make sure the [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/lib/oxygen.jar file and your Java extension classes are on the Java classpath. The Java extension classes should be the same classes that were set as an extension (on page 1498) of the XSLT/XQuery transformation in the debugging perspective (on page 1624).
   c. Set the class ro.sync.exml.Oxygen as the main Java class of the configuration. The main Java class ro.sync.exml.Oxygen is located in the oxygen.jar file.

2. Start the debug configuration.
   Now you can set breakpoints and inspect Java variables as in any Java debugging process executed in the selected IDE (Eclipse SDK, and so on.).

Supported Processors for XSLT / XQuery Debugging

The following built-in XSLT processors are integrated in the debugger and can be selected in the Control Toolbar (on page 1497):

- Saxon 9.8.0.12 HE (Home Edition) - a limited version of the Saxon 9 processor, capable of running XSLT 1.0, XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 basic and XQuery 1.0 transformations, available in both the XSLT debugger and the XQuery one,
• **Saxon 9.8.0.12 PE (Professional Edition)** - capable of running XSLT 1.0 transformations, XSLT 2.0 basic ones and XQuery 1.0 ones, available in both the XSLT debugger and the XQuery one,

• **Saxon 9.8.0.12 EE (Enterprise Edition)** - a schema aware processor, capable of running XSLT 1.0 transformations, XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 basic ones, XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 schema aware ones and XQuery 1.0 / 3.0 ones, available in both the XSLT debugger and the XQuery debugger,

• **Saxon 6.5.5** - capable of running only XSLT 1.0 transformations, available only in the XSLT debugger,

• **Xalan 2.7.2** - capable of running only XSLT 1.0 transformations, available only in the XSLT debugger.
16. Extension Points for Oxygen XML Developer plugin

The Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a number of extension points, which can be implemented by other Eclipse plugins that depend on it. All of them are listed in the plugin.xml file, along with samples of usage code. The following is a list with short descriptions for some of the most useful extension points:

**Extension point: XMLRefactoringContributor**

Contributes a folder that contains the additional XML Refactoring operation descriptor files and XQuery scripts that can be used by the batch XML refactoring actions. Its EXSD schema can be found in: `OXYGEN_PLUGIN_DIR/exsd-schema/xmlRefactoringContributor.exsd`.

**Extension point: workspaceAccessPlugin**

Use this extension point to be notified when Oxygen XML Developer plugin has started. Its EXSD schema can be found in: `OXYGEN_PLUGIN_DIR/exsd-schema/exsd-schema/workspaceAccessExtension.exsd`. 
17. Tools

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a variety of helpful tools to help you accomplish XML-related tasks. This section presents many of those tools. These tools are available in the Tools menu and some of them can be launched through keyboard shortcuts or command-line scripts.

Refactoring XML Documents

In the life cycle of XML documents there are instances when the XML structure needs to be changed to accommodate various needs. For example, when an associated schema is updated, an attribute may have been removed, or a new element added to the structure.

These types of situations cannot be resolved with a traditional Find/Replace tool, even if the tool accepts regular expressions. The problem becomes even more complicated if an XML document is computed or referenced from multiple modules, since multiple resources need to be changed.

To assist you with these types of refactoring tasks, Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a specialized XML Refactoring tool that helps you manage the structure of your XML documents.

XML Refactoring Tool

The XML Refactoring tool is presented in the form of an easy to use wizard that is designed to reduce the time and effort required to perform various structure management tasks. For example, you can insert, delete, or rename an attribute in all instances of a particular element that is found in all documents within your project.

To access the tool, select the XML Refactoring action from one of the following locations:

- The XML Tools menu.
- The Refactoring submenu from the contextual menu in the Navigator view (on page 210).

Note: The built-in refactoring operations are also available from the Refactoring submenu in the contextual menu of Text mode. This is useful because by selecting the operations from the contextual menu, Oxygen XML Developer plugin considers the editing context to skip directly to the wizard page of the appropriate operation and to help you by preconfiguring some of the parameter values.
XML Refactoring Wizard

The XML Refactoring tool includes the following wizard pages:

**Refactoring operations**

The first wizard page presents the available operations, grouped by category. To search for an operation, you can use the filter text box at the top of the page.

Figure 442. XML Refactoring Wizard

![XML Refactoring Wizard](image)

**Configure Operation Parameters**

The next wizard page allows you to specify the parameters for the refactoring operation. The parameters are specific to the type of refactoring operation that is being performed. For example, to delete an attribute you need to specify the parent element and the qualified name of the attribute to be removed.

Figure 443. XML Refactoring 2nd Wizard Page (Delete Attribute Operation)
Scope and Filters

The last wizard page allows you to select the set of files that represent the input of the operation.

Figure 444. XML Refactoring - Scope and Filters Wizard Page

Scope section

In the Scope section, you can select from predefined resource sets (such as the current file, your whole project, the current DITA map (on page 1621) hierarchy for DITA projects, etc.) or you can define your own set of resources by creating a working set (on page 1627).

Filters

The Filters section includes the following options:
• **Include files** - Allows you to filter the selected resources by using a file pattern. For example, to restrict the operation to only analyze build files you could use `build*.xml` for the file pattern.

• **Restrict only to known XML file types** - When selected, only resources with a known XML file type will be affected by the operation.

**Preview**

You can use the **Preview** button to open a comparison panel where you can review all the changes that will be made by the refactoring operation before applying the changes.

**Finish**

After clicking the **Finish** button, the operation will be processed and Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides no automatic means for reverting the operations. Any **Undo** action will only revert changes on the current document.

⚠️ **Troubleshooting**: If an operation fails, a notification will be displayed in the **Results** panel with some information about the error. For example, if the operation was invoked on a read-only resource, the error will indicate that a read-only file cannot be converted.

⚠️ **Tip**: If an operation takes longer than expected you can use the ✿ **Stop** button in the progress bar to cancel the operation.

⚠️ **Restriction**: XML refactoring operations cannot preserve CDATA sections. If your document contains XML CDATA sections, the refactoring operations will convert them to plain text nodes.

**Built-in Refactoring Operations**

The XML Refactoring tool includes a variety of built-in operations that can be used for common refactoring tasks. They are grouped by category in the **Refactoring operations** wizard page. You can also access the operations from the **Refactoring** submenu in the contextual menu of **Text** mode. The operations are also grouped by category in this submenu. When selecting the operations from the contextual menu, Oxygen XML Developer plugin considers the editing context to get the names and namespaces of the current element or attribute, and uses this information to preconfigure some of the parameter values for the selected refactoring operation.

⚠️ **Tip**: Each operation includes a link in the lower part of the wizard that opens the **XML / XSLT-FO-XQuery / XPath** preferences page where you can configure XPath options and declare namespace prefixes.
The following built-in operations are available:

**Refactoring Operations for Attributes**

**Add/Change attribute**

Use this operation to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

**Parent element section**

**Element**

The parent element of the attribute to be changed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

**Attribute section**

**Local name**

The local name of the affected attribute.

**Namespace**

The namespace of the affected attribute.

**Value**

The value for the affected attribute.

**Options section**

You can choose between one of the following options for the Operation mode:

**Add the attribute in the parent elements where it is missing**

Adds the attribute to all instances of the specified parent element.

**Change the value in the parent elements where the attribute already exists**

Replaces the value of the already existing attribute in all instance of the specified parent element.

**Both**

Adds the attributes to the instances where it is missing and replaces the value in instances where the attribute already exists.
Convert attribute to element

Use this operation to convert a specified attribute to an element. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

**Parent element section**

**Element**

The parent element of the attribute to be converted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

**Attribute section**

**Local name**

The local name of the affected attribute.

**Namespace**

The namespace of the affected attribute.

**New element section**

**Local name**

The local name of the new element.

**Namespace**

The namespace of the new element.

Delete attribute

Use this operation to remove one or more attributes. This operation requires you to specify the following parameters:

**Element**

The parent element of the attribute to be deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

**Attribute**

The name of the attribute to be deleted.

Rename attribute

Use this operation to rename an attribute. This operation requires you to specify the following parameters:

**Element**
The parent element of the attribute to be renamed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

**Attribute**

The name of the attribute to be renamed.

**New local name**

The new local name of the attribute.

**Replace in attribute value**

Use this operation to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

**Target attribute section**

**Element**

The parent element of the attribute to be modified, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

**Attribute**

The name of the attribute to be modified.

**Find / Replace section**

**Find**

The text fragments to find. You can use Perl-like regular expressions.

**Replace with**

The text fragment to replace the target with. This parameter can bind regular expression capturing groups (\$1, \$2, etc.) from the find pattern.

**Refactoring Operations for Comments**

**Delete comments**

Use this operation to delete comments from one or more elements. This operation requires you specify the following parameter:

**Element**
The target element (or elements) for which comments will be deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

**Note:** Comments that are outside the root element will not be deleted because the serializer preserves the content before and after the root.

**Refactoring Operations for DITA**

**Change topic ID to file name**

Use this operation to change the ID of a topic to be the same as its file name.

**Convert CALS tables to simple tables**

Use this operation to convert DITA CALS tables to simple tables.

**Convert conref to conkeyref**

Use this operation to convert `conref` attributes to `conkeyref` attributes.

**Convert simple tables to CALS tables**

Use this operation to convert DITA simple tables to CALS tables.

**Convert Nested Topics to New Topics**

Use this operation on topics that contain nested `<topic>` elements to convert each nested topic to a new topic.

**Convert Sections to New Topics**

Use this operation on topics that contain multiple sections to convert each section to a new topic.

**Convert to Concept**

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Concept topic type (for example, Topic to Concept).

**Convert to General Task**

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA General Task topic type (for example, Task to General Task).

**Convert to Reference**

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Reference topic type (for example, Topic to Reference).

**Convert to Task**

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Task topic type (for example, Topic to Task).
Convert to Topic
Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Topic (for example, Task to Topic).

Convert to Troubleshooting
Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Troubleshooting topic type (for example, Topic to Troubleshooting).

Rename Key
Use this operation to rename a key. It also updates all references to it. Note that it does not work on DITA 1.3 key scopes.

All of these DITA refactoring actions allow you to choose a scope for the operation and some filters:

Scope
Select from a variety of options to define the scope for which resources will be affected by the operation. For example, you can choose to affect all resources in the Project, All opened files, Current DITA map hierarchy, or just the Current file.

Filters section

Include files
Specifies files to be excluded from the operation. You can specify multiple files by separating them with commas and the patterns can include wildcards (such as * or ?).

Restrict to known XML file types only
Excludes non-XML file types from the operation.

Refactoring Operations for Elements

Delete element
Use this operation to delete elements. This operation requires you to specify the following parameter:

Element
The target element to be deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Delete element content
Use this operation to delete the content of elements. This operation requires you to specify the following parameter:
Element
The target element whose content is to be deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Insert element
Use this operation to insert new elements. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Element section

Local name
The local name of the element to be inserted.

Namespace
The namespace of the element to be inserted.

Location section

XPath
An XPath expression that identifies an existing element to which the new element is relative, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

Position
The position where the new element will be inserted, in relation to the specified existing element. The possible selections in the drop-down menu are: After, Before, First child, or Last child.

Rename element
Use this operation to rename elements. This operation requires you to specify the following parameters:

Target elements (XPath)
The target elements to be renamed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

New local name
The new local name of the element.
Unwrap element

Use this operation to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged. This operation requires you to specify the following parameter:

**Target elements (XPath)**

The target elements whose surrounding tags will be removed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

Wrap element

Use this operation to surround elements with element tags. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

**Target elements (XPath)**

The target elements to be surrounded with tags, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

**Wrapper element section**

- **Local name**
  
  The local name of the *Wrapper element*.

- **Namespace**
  
  The namespace of the *Wrapper element*.

Wrap element content

Use this operation to surround the content of elements with element tags. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

**Target elements (XPath)**

The target elements whose content will be surrounded with tags, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

**Wrapper element section**

- **Local name**
  
  The local name of the *Wrapper element* that will surround the content of the target.

- **Namespace**
The namespace of the *Wrapper element* that will surround the content of the target.

### Refactoring Operations for *Fragments*

#### Insert XML fragment

Use this operation to insert an XML fragment. This operation allows you to specify the following:

- **XML Fragment**
  - The XML fragment to be inserted.

- **Location section**

  - **XPath**
    - An XPath expression that identifies an existing element to which the inserted fragment is relative, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

  - **Position**
    - The position where the fragment will be inserted, in relation to the specified existing element. The possible selections in the drop-down menu are: *After*, *Before*, *First child*, or *Last child*.

#### Replace element content with XML fragment

Use this operation to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

- **Target elements (XPath)**
  - The target elements whose content will be replaced, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

- **XML Fragment**
  - The XML fragment with which to replace the content of the target element.

#### Replace element with XML fragment

Use this operation to replace elements with an XML fragment. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:
Target elements (XPath)

The target elements to be replaced, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

XML Fragment

The XML fragment with which to replace the target element.

Refactoring Operations for JATSKit

Add BITS DOCTYPE - NLM/NCBI Book Interchange 2.0

Use this operation to add an NLM 'BITS' 2.0 DOCTYPE declaration.

Add Blue DOCTYPE - NISO JATS Publishing 1.1

Use this operation to add a JATS 'Blue' 1.1 DOCTYPE declaration.

Normalize IDs

Use this operation to normalize assigned IDs and assigned IDs to elements that are missing them.

All of these JATSKit refactoring actions allow you to choose a scope for the operation and some filters:

Scope

Select from a variety of options to define the scope for which resources will be affected by the operation. For example, you can choose to affect all resources in the Project, All opened files, or just the Current file.

Filters section

Include files

Specifies files to be excluded from the operation. You can specify multiple files by separating them with commas and the patterns can include wildcards (such as * or?).

Restrict to known XML file types only

Excludes non-XML file types from the operation.

Refactoring Operations for Publishing Template

These operations are for those who use Oxygen Publishing Templates for WebHelp Responsive output customization.
Migrate HTML Page Layout Files to v21

Use this operation to convert custom HTML page layout files (on page 1121) that are included in a custom Publishing Template that was created in Oxygen XML Developer plugin version 20.0 or 20.1 so that they will be compatible with Oxygen XML Developer plugin version 21.0.

Update HTML Pages

⚠️ Attention: This operation is only used by Oxygen XML Developer plugin and should not be used manually.

Additional Notes

Note: There are some operations that allow `<ANY>` for the local name and namespace parameters. This value can be used to select an element or attribute regardless of its local name or namespace. Also, the `<NO_NAMESPACE>` value can be used to select nodes that do not belong to a namespace.

Note: Some operations have parameters that accept XPath expressions to match elements or attributes. In these XPath expressions you can only use the prefixes declared in the Options > Preferences > XML > XSLT-FO-XQUERY >XPath (on page 146) page. This preferences page can be easily opened by clicking the link in the note (Each prefix used in an XPath expression must be declared in the Default prefix-namespace mappings section) at the bottom of the Configure Operation Parameters wizard page.

Custom Refactoring Operations

While Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a variety of built-in XML refactoring operations to help you accomplish particular tasks, you can also create custom operations according to your specific needs. For example, you could create a custom refactoring operation to convert an attribute to an element and insert the element as the first child of the parent element.

An XML Refactoring operation is defined as a pair of resources:

• An XQuery Update script or XSLT stylesheet that Oxygen XML Developer plugin will run to refactor the XML files.
• An XML Operation Descriptor file that contains information about the operation (such as the name, description, and parameters).

Figure 445. Diagram of an XML Refactoring Operation
All the defined custom operations are loaded by the XML Refactoring Tool and presented in the Refactoring Operations wizard page (on page 476), along with the built-in operations.

After the user chooses an operation and specifies its parameters, Oxygen XML Developer plugin processes an XQuery Update or XSLT transformation over the input file. This transformation is executed in a safe mode, which implies the following:

• When loading the document:
  ◦ The XInclude mechanism is disabled. This means that the resources included by using XInclude will not be visible in the transformation.
  ◦ The DTD entities will be processed without being expanded.
  ◦ The associated DTD will be not loaded, so the default attributes declared in the DTD will not be visible in the transformation.

• When saving the updated XML document:
  ◦ The DOCTYPE will be preserved.

  **Note:** This can be changed using Saxon extension functions in XSLT (on page 505).
  ◦ The DTD entities will be preserved as they are in the original document when the document is saved.
  ◦ The attribute values will be kept in their original form without being normalized.
  ◦ The spaces between attributes are preserved. Basically, the spaces are lost by a regular XML serialization since they are not considered important.

The result of this transformation overrides the initial input file.
Note: To achieve some of the previous goals, the XML Refactoring mechanism adds several attributes that are interpreted internally. The attributes belong to the `http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/xmlRefactoring/additional_attributes` namespace. These attributes should not be taken into account when processing the input XML document since they are discarded when the transformed document is serialized.

Restriction: Comments or processing instructions that are in any node before or after the root element cannot be modified by an XML Refactoring operation. In other words, XML Refactoring operations can only be applied on the root element and the nodes inside it. However, as a work around to this limitation, you can use Saxon extension functions and the XSLT stylesheet method (on page 505) to implement the new custom XML refactoring operation.

Creating a Custom Refactoring Operation

To create a custom refactoring operation, follow these steps:

1. Create an XQuery Update script (on page 496) or XSLT stylesheet file (on page 500).
2. Create an XML Refactoring Operation Descriptor file contains the path to the XQuery Update script (on page 498) or XSLT stylesheet (on page 503).
3. Store both files in one of the locations that Oxygen XML Developer plugin (on page 507) scans when loading the custom operations.

Result: Once you run the XML Refactoring tool again, the custom operation appears in the Refactoring Operations wizard page (on page 476).

Related Information:

- Storing and Sharing Refactoring Operations (on page 507)

Custom Refactoring Script

The first step in creating a custom refactoring operation is to create an XQuery Update script (on page 496) or XSLT stylesheet (on page 500) that is needed to process the refactoring operations. The easiest way to create this script file is to use the New document wizard to create a new XQuery or XSLT file and you can use the XQuery method example (on page 496) or XSLT method example (on page 500) to help you with the content.

There are cases when it is necessary to add parameters in the XQuery script (on page 496) or XSLT stylesheet (on page 500). For instance, if you want to rename an element, you may want to declare an external parameter associated with the name of the element to be renamed. To allow you to specify
the value for these parameters, they need to be declared in the *refactoring operation descriptor file* that is associated with this operation.

**Note:** The XQuery Update processing is disabled by default in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. Thus, if you want to create or edit an XQuery Update script you have to enable this mechanism by creating an *XQuery transformation scenario* (on page 963) and choose *Saxon EE* as the transformation engine. Also, you need to make sure the *Enable XQuery update* option is selected in the Saxon processor advanced options (on page 914).

**Note:** If you are using an XSLT file, XPath expressions that are passed as parameters will automatically be rewritten to conform with the mapping of the namespace prefixes declared in the *XML /XSLT-FO-XQuery / XPath preferences page* (on page 146).

The next step in creating a custom refactoring operation is to create an *XML Refactoring Operation Descriptor* file contains the path to the *XQuery Update script* (on page 498) or *XSLT stylesheet* (on page 503).

### Related Information:

- XQuery Update Script for Creating a Custom Operation (on page 496)
- XSLT Stylesheet for Creating a Custom Operation (on page 500)

## Custom Refactoring Operation Descriptor File

The second step in creating a custom refactoring operation is to create an operation descriptor file. The easiest way to do this is to use the **New** document wizard and choose the *XML Refactoring Operation Descriptor* template.

### Introduction to the Descriptor File

This file contains information (such as `name`, `description`, and `id`) that is necessarily when loading an XML Refactoring operation. It also contains the path to the *XQuery Update script* (on page 496) or *XSLT stylesheet* (on page 500) that is associated with the particular operation through the `script` element.

You can specify a `category` for your custom operations to logically group certain operations. The `category` element is optional and if it is not included in the descriptor file, the default name of the `category` for the custom operations is *Other operations*. 
The descriptor file is edited and validated against the following schema: `frameworks/xml_refactoring/operation_descriptor.xsd`.

Declaring Parameters in the Descriptor File

If the XQuery Update script or XSLT stylesheet includes parameters, they should be declared in the `parameters` section of the descriptor file. All the parameters specified in this section of the descriptor file will be displayed in the XML Refactoring tool within the Configure Operation Parameters wizard page (on page 476) for that particular operation.

The value of the first `description` element in the `parameters` section will be displayed at the top of the Configure Operation Parameters wizard page (on page 476).

To declare a parameter, specify the following information:

- **label** - This value is displayed in the user interface for the parameter.
- **name** - The parameter name used in the XQuery Update script or XSLT stylesheet and it should be the same as the one declared in the script.
- **type** - Defines the type of the parameter and how it will be rendered. There are several types available:
  - `TEXT` - Generic type used to specify a simple text fragment.
  - `XPATH` - Type of parameter whose value is an XPATH expression. For this type of parameter, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will use a text input with corresponding content completion and syntax highlighting.

  **Note:** The value of this parameter is transferred as plain text to the XQuery Update or XSLT transformation without being evaluated. You should evaluate the XPath expression inside the XQuery Update script or XSLT stylesheet. For example, you could use the `saxon:evaluate` Saxon extension function.

  **Note:** A relative XPath expression is converted to an absolute XPath expression by adding `//` before it (`//XPathExp`). This conversion is done before transferring the XPath expression to the XML refactoring engine.

  **Note:** When writing XPath expressions, you can only use prefixes declared in the Options > Preferences > XML > XSLT-FO-XQUERY > XPath (on page 146) options page.
  - `NAMESPACE` - Used for editing namespace values.
  - `REG_EXP_FIND` - Used when you want to match a certain text by using Perl-like regular expressions.
  - `REG_EXP_REPLACE` - Used along with `REG_EXP_FIND` to specify the replacement string.
XML_FRAGMENT - This type is used when you want to specify an XML fragment. For this type, Oxygen XML Developer plugin will display a text area specialized for inserting XML documents.

NC_NAME - The parameter for NC_NAME values. It is useful when you want to specify the local part of a QName (on page 1625) for an element or attribute.

BOOLEAN - Used to edit boolean parameters.

TEXT_CHOICE - It is useful for parameters whose value should be from a list of possible values. Oxygen XML Developer plugin renders each possible value as a radio button option.

• description - The description of the parameter. It is used by the application to display a tooltip when you hover over the parameter.

• possibleValues - Contains the list with possible values for the parameter and you can specify the default value, as in the following example:

```
<possibleValues onlyPossibleValuesAllowed="true">
  <value name="before">Before</value>
  <value name="after" default="true">After</value>
  <value name="firstChild">First child</value>
  <value name="lastChild">Last child</value>
</possibleValues>
```

Specialized Parameters to Match Elements or Attributes

If you want to match elements or attributes, you can use some specialized parameters, in which case Oxygen XML Developer plugin will propose all declared elements or attributes based on the schema associated with the currently edited file. The following specialized parameters are supported:

**elementLocation**

This parameter is used to match elements. For this type of parameter, the application displays a text field where you can enter the element name or an XPath expression. The text from the label attribute is displayed in the application as the label of the text field. The name attribute is used to specify the name of the parameter from the XQuery Update script or XSLT stylesheet. If the value of the useCurrentContext attribute is set to true, the element name from the cursor position is used as proposed values for this parameter.

Example of an elementLocation:

```
<elementLocation name="elem_loc" useCurrentContext="false">
  <element label="Element location">
    <description>Element location description.</description>
  </element>
</elementLocation>
```
attributeLocation

This parameter is used to match attributes. For this type of parameter, the application displays two text fields where you can enter the parent element name and the attribute name (both text fields accept XPath expressions for a finer match). The text from the `label` attributes is displayed in the application as the label of the associated text fields. The `name` attribute is used to specify the name of the parameter from the XQuery Update script or XSLT stylesheet. The value of this parameter is an XPath expression that is computed by using the values of the expression from the `element` and `attribute` text fields. For example, if `section` is entered for the element and `title` is entered for the attribute, the XPath expression would be computed as `//section/@title`. If the value of the `useCurrentContext` attribute is set to `true`, the element and attribute name from the cursor position is used as proposed values for the operation parameters.

Example of an `attributeLocation`:

```xml
<attributeLocation name="attr_xpath" useCurrentContext="true">
  <element label="Element path">
    <description>Element path description.</description>
  </element>
  <attribute label="Attribute" >
    <description>Attribute path description.</description>
  </attribute>
</attributeLocation>
```

elementParameter

This parameter is used to specify elements by local name and namespace. For this type of parameter, the application displays two combo boxes with elements and namespaces collected from the associated schema of the currently edited file. The text from the `label` attribute is displayed in the application as label of the associated combo. The `name` attribute is used to specify the name of the parameter from the XQuery Update script or XSLT stylesheet. If you specify the `allowsAny` attribute, the application will propose `<ANY>` as a possible value for the `Name` and `Namespace` combo boxes. You can also use the `useCurrentContext` attribute and if its value is set to `true`, the element name and namespace from the cursor position is used as proposed values for the operation parameters.

Example of an `elementParameter`:

```xml
<elementParameter id="elemID" useCurrentContext="true">
```
attributeParameter

This parameter is used to specify attributes by local name and namespace. For this type of parameter, the application displays two combo boxes with attributes and their namespaces collected from the associated schema of the currently edited file. The text from the label attribute is displayed in the application as the label of the associated combo box. You can also use the useCurrentContext attribute and if its value is set to true, the attribute name and namespace from the cursor position is used as proposed values for the operation parameters.

**Note:** An attributeParameter is dependant upon an elementParameter.

The list of attributes and namespaces are computed based on the selection in the elementParameter combo boxes.

Example of an attributeParameter:

```xml
<attributeParameter dependsOn="elemID" useCurrentContext="true">
  <localName label="Name" name="attribute_localName"/>
  <description>The name of the attribute to be converted.</description>
</localName>

<namespace label="Namespace" name="attribute_namespace" allowsAny="true"/>
  <description>Namespace of the attribute to be converted.</description>
</namespace>
</attributeParameter>
```

**Note:** All built-in operations are loaded from the \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/refactoring folder.

Related Information:
XSLT Stylesheet for Creating a Custom Operation

To demonstrate creating a custom operation, suppose that you have a task where you need to convert an attribute into an element and insert it inside another element. A specific example would be if you have a project with a variety of `image` elements where a deprecated `alt` attribute was used for the description and you want to convert all instances of that attribute into an element with the same name and insert it as the first child of the `image` element.

Thus, the task is to convert this attribute into an element with the same name and insert it as the first child of the `image` element.

Figure 446. Example: Custom XML Refactoring Operation

```
<image
   href="../image/insertBattery.jpg"
   place="Insert the battery into the battery compartment."
   placement="break"/>
```

```
<image
   href="../image/insertBattery.jpg"
   placement="break">
   <alt>Insert the battery into the battery compartment.</alt>
</image>
```

An XSLT stylesheet can be used to implement the new custom XML refactoring operation. The second requirement is an XML Refactoring operation descriptor file (on page 503) that contains the path to the XSLT stylesheet.

**Example of an XSLT Script for Creating a Custom Operation to Convert an Attribute to an Element**

The XSLT stylesheet does the following:

- Iterates over all elements from the document that have the specified local name and namespace.
• Finds the attribute that will be converted to an element.
• Adds the new element as the first child of the parent element.

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet
xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
xmlns:xr="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/xmlRefactoring"
version="2.0">


<xsl:param name="element_localName" as="xs:string" required="yes"/>
<xsl:param name="element_namespace" as="xs:string" required="yes"/>
<xsl:param name="attribute_localName" as="xs:string" required="yes"/>
<xsl:param name="attribute_namespace" as="xs:string" required="yes"/>
<xsl:param name="new_element_localName" as="xs:string" required="yes"/>
<xsl:param name="new_element_namespace" as="xs:string" required="yes"/>

<xsl:template match="node() | @*">
  <xsl:copy>
    <xsl:apply-templates select="node() | @*"/>
  </xsl:copy>
</xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```
<xsl:copy>
  <xsl:for-each select="@*[empty(. intersect $attributeToConvert)]">
    <xsl:copy-of select="."/>
  </xsl:for-each>
  <!-- The new element namespace -->
  <xsl:variable name="nsURI" as="xs:string">
    <xsl:choose>
      <xsl:when test="$new_element_namespace eq $xr:NO-NAMESPACE">
        <xsl:value-of select="''"/>
      </xsl:when>
      <xsl:otherwise>
        <xsl:value-of select="$new_element_namespace"/>
      </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
  </xsl:variable>
  <xsl:element name="{$new_element_localName}" namespace="{$nsURI}">
    <xsl:value-of select="$attributeToConvert"/>
  </xsl:element>
  <xsl:apply-templates select="node()"/>
</xsl:copy>
</xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>

**Note:** The XSLT stylesheet imports a module library that contains utility functions and variables. The location of this module is resolved via an XML Catalog (on page 1627) set in the XML Refactoring framework (on page 1622).

**Example of an Operation Descriptor File That References the XSLT Stylesheet for Creating a Custom Operation to Convert an Attribute to an Element**

After you have developed the XSLT stylesheet, you have to create an XML Refactoring operation descriptor. This descriptor is used by the application to load the operation details such as name, description, or parameters.

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<refactoringOperationDescriptor
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/xmlRefactoring"
```
<description>Converts the specified attribute to an element.

The new element will be inserted as first child of the attribute's parent element.</description>

<!-- For the XSLT stylesheet option uncomment the following line and comment the line referring the XQuery Update script -->
<!-- <script type="XSLT" href="convert-attribute-to-element.xsl"/>

<script type="XQUERY_UPDATE" href="convert-attribute-to-element.xq"/>

<parameters>
  <description>Specify the attribute to be converted to element.</description>

  <section label="Parent element">
    <elementParameter id="elemID">
      <localName label="Name" name="element_localName" allowsAny="true">
        <description>Local name of the parent element.</description>
      </localName>
      <namespace label="Namespace" name="element_namespace" allowsAny="true">
        <description>Local name of the parent element</description>
      </namespace>
    </elementParameter>
  </section>

  <section label="Attribute">
    <attributeParameter dependsOn="elemID">
      <localName label="Name" name="attribute_localName">
        <description>Name of the attribute to be converted.</description>
      </localName>
      <namespace label="Namespace" name="attribute_namespace" allowsAny="true">
        <description>Namespace of the attribute to be converted.</description>
      </namespace>
    </attributeParameter>
  </section>

  <section label="New element">
    <elementParameter>
      <localName label="Name" name="new_element_localName">
        <description>The name of the new element.</description>
      </localName>
      <namespace label="Namespace" name="new_element_namespace">
        <description>The namespace of the new element.</description>
      </namespace>
    </elementParameter>
  </section>
</parameters>
Note: If you are using an XSLT file, the line with the `<script>` element would look like this:

```xml
<script type="XSLT" href="convert-attribute-to-element.xsl"/>
```

### Results

After you have created these files, copy them into a folder scanned by Oxygen XML Developer plugin when it loads the custom operation (on page 507). When the XML Refactoring tool is started again, you will see the created operation.

Since various parameters can be specified, this custom operation can also be used for other similar tasks. The following image shows the parameters that can be specified in the example of the custom operation to convert an attribute to an element:

Figure 447. Example: XML Refactoring Wizard for a Custom Operation

Using Saxon Extension Functions to Allow Custom Refactoring Operations to Read and Modify Content Outside the Root Node

One advantage to using an XSLT stylesheet is that there is limitation when using an XQuery Update script (on page 496) in that refactoring operations can only be performed on comments or processing instructions that are inside the root element. Thus, using the XQuery method, comments or processing instructions that are in any node before or after the root element cannot be modified by an XML Refactoring operation.
The XSLT stylesheet method offers a work-around to this limitation through the use of some Saxon extension functions.

To illustrate the use of these functions, consider the following sample XML file:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!-- comment before root -->
<?pi before root ?>
<root>
  <child></child>
</root>
<!-- comment after root -->
<?pi after root ?>
```

The following Saxon extension functions can be used to read and modify content outside the root node:

- **get-content-after-root()** - Returns the content after root as `xs:string`.

  For the XML above, the call of this function will return the following string value:

  ```xml
  <!-- comment after root -->
  <?pi after root ?>
  ```

- **set-content-after-root(xs:string)** - Updates the content that will be serialized in the refactored document after the root node.

  The function call `set-content-after-root('<!-- Inserted comment -->')` will result in replacing the nodes after the root element with the comment passed as string argument. The XML document will be modified as follows:

  ```xml
  <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
  <!-- comment before root -->
  <?pi before root ?>
  <root>
    <child></child>
  </root>
  <!-- Inserted comment -->
  ```

- **get-content-before-root()** - Returns the content before root as `xs:string`.

  For the XML above, the call of this function will return the following string value:

  ```xml
  <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
  <!-- comment before root -->
  ```

Note: They belong to the [http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/xmlRefactoring/functions](http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/xmlRefactoring/functions) namespace.
• set-content-before-root(xs:string) - Updates the content that will be serialized in the refactored document after the root node.

The function call set-content-before-root('<!-- Inserted comment -->') will result in replacing the nodes before the root element with the comment passed as string argument. The XML document will be modified as follows:

```xml
<!-- Inserted comment -->
<root>
  <child/>
</root>
<!-- comment after root -->
```

**XSLT Example:**

To process content after the root node, the XSLT would look like this:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
    xmlns:xrf="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/xmlRefactoring/functions" version="3.0">
  <xsl:template match="/">
    <!-- The comment content that will be inserted after the root element -->
    <xsl:variable name="commentAsText">&lt;!-- COMMENT ADDED FROM XR OPERATION-->
    </xsl:variable>
    <!-- Retrieve the content after the root element as is -->
    <xsl:variable name="after-root-content" as="xs:string"
        select="xrf:get-content-after-root()"/>
    <xsl:variable name="processedContent"
        select="concat($after-root-content, $commentAsText)"/>
    <!-- Update the content after the root element -->
    <xsl:value-of select="xrf:set-content-after-root($processedContent)"/>
    <xsl:apply-templates/>
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```
<xsl:template match="/*">
  <xsl:copy>
    <xsl:apply-templates select="node() | @*"/>
  </xsl:copy>
</xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>

Note: The above XSLT retrieves the nodes after the root element as string, appends a new comment, and then sets back the updated content into the XML document.

Storing and Sharing Refactoring Operations

Oxygen XML Developer plugin scans the following locations when looking for XML Refactoring operations to provide flexibility:

- A refactoring folder, created inside a directory that is associated to a framework you are customizing. To associate the parent directory to the framework, you need to add it in the Classpath tab of the Document type configuration dialog box (on page 61).
- A folder that you specify in the Load additional refactoring operations from text box (on page 140) in the XML Refactoring preferences page (on page 140).
- The refactoring folder from the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation directory ([OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/refactoring/).

Sharing Custom Refactoring Operations

The purpose of Oxygen XML Developer plugin scanning multiple locations for the XML Refactoring operations is to provide more flexibility for developers who want to share the refactoring operations with the other team members. Depending on your particular use case, you can attach the custom refactoring operations to other resources, such as framework (on page 1622) or projects.

After storing custom operations, you can share them with other users by sharing the resources.

Localizing XML Refactoring Operations

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes localization support for the XML refactoring operations.

The translation keys for the built-in refactoring operations are located in [OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/refactoring/i18n/translation.xml.

The localization support is also available for custom refactoring operations. The following information can be translated:

- The operation name, description, and category.
- The description of the parameters element.
• The label, description, and possibleValues for each parameter.

Translated refactoring information uses the following form:

\${i18n(translation_key)}

Oxygen XML Developer plugin scans the following locations to find the translation.xml files that are used to load the translation keys:

• A refactoring/i18n folder, created inside a directory that is associated to a customized framework.
• A i18n folder, created inside a directory that is associated to a customized framework.
• An i18n folder inside any specified folder. In this case, you need to open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to XML > XML Refactoring, and specify the folder in the Load additional refactoring operations from text box.
• The refactoring/i18n folder from the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation directory (\[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\]/refactoring/i18n).

Example: Refactoring Operation Descriptor File with i18n Support

```xml
<refactoringOperationDescriptor
    xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/xmlRefactoring" id="remove_text_content"
    name="\${i18n(Remove_text_content)}">
    <description>\${i18n(Remove_text_content_description)}</description>
    <script type="XQUERY_UPDATE" href="remove_text_content.xq"/>
    <parameters>
        <description>\${i18n(parameters_description)}</description>
        <parameter label="\${i18n(Element_name)}" name="element_localName"
            type="NC_NAME">
            <description>\${i18n(Element_name_descriptor)}</description>
        </parameter>
        <possibleValues>
            <value default="true" name="value1">\${i18n(value_1)}</value>
            <value name="value2">\${i18n(value_2)}</value>
        </possibleValues>
    </parameters>
</refactoringOperationDescriptor>
```
Generating Sample XML Files

Oxygen XML Developer plugin offers support to generate sample XML files both from XML schema 1.0 and XML schema 1.1, depending on the XML schema version set in XML Schema preferences page (on page 139).

To generate sample XML files from an XML Schema, use the Generate Sample XML Files action from the XML Tools menu. This action is also available in the contextual menu of the schema Design mode (on page 572). The action opens the Generate Sample XML Files dialog box that allows you to configure a variety of options for generating the files.

The Generate Sample XML Files dialog box contains three tabs with various configurable options. Default values for these options can be set in the Sample XML Files Generator preferences page (on page 130).

Schema Tab (Generate Sample XML Files Tool)

The Generate Sample XML Files tool includes a dialog box that allows you to configure a variety of options for generating the XML files. The first set of options are found in the Schema tab.

Figure 448. Generate Sample XML Files Dialog Box (Schema Tab)

This tab includes the following options:

URL
Specifies the URL of the Schema location. You can specify the path by using the text field, the history drop-down menu, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

**Namespace**
Displays the namespace of the selected schema.

**Root Element**
After the schema is selected, this drop-down menu is populated with all root candidates gathered from the schema. Choose the root of the output XML documents.

**Output folder**
Path to the folder where the generated XML instances will be saved.

**Filename prefix and Extension**
You can specify the prefix and extension for the file name that will be generated. Generated file names have the following format: `prefixN.extension`, where `N` represents an incremental number from 0 up to the specified Number of instances (on page 627).

**Number of instances**
The number of XML files to be generated.

**Open first instance in editor**
When selected, the first generated XML file is opened in the editor.

**Namespaces section**
You can specify the Default Namespace, as well as the prefixes for the namespaces.

**Export settings**
Use this button to save the current settings for future use.

**Import settings**
Use this button to load previously exported settings.

You can click OK at any point to generate the sample XML files.

**Options Tab (Generate Sample XML Files Tool)**
The Generate Sample XML Files tool includes a dialog box that allows you to configure a variety of options for generating the XML files. The Options tab allows you to set specific options for namespaces and elements.

Figure 449. Generate Sample XML Files Dialog Box (Options Tab)
This tab includes the following options:

**Namespace / Element table**

Allows you to set a namespace for each element name that appears in an XML document instance. The following prefix-to-namespace associations are available:

- All elements from all namespaces ( `<ANY>` - `<ANY>` ). This is the default setting.
- All elements from a specific namespace.
- A specific element from a specific namespace.

**Settings subtab**

**Namespace**

Displays the namespace specified in the table at the top of the dialog box.

**Element**

Displays the element specified in the table at the top of the dialog box.

**Generate optional elements**

When selected, all elements are generated, including the optional ones (having the `minOccurs` attribute set to 0 in the schema).
Generate optional attributes

When selected, all attributes are generated, including the optional ones (having the use attribute set to optional in the schema).

Values of elements and attributes

Controls the content of generated attribute and element values. The following choices are available:

- **None** - No content is inserted.
- **Default** - Inserts a default value depending on the data type descriptor of the particular element or attribute. The default value can be either the data type name or an incremental name of the attribute or element (according to the global option from the Sample XML Files Generator preferences page). Note that type restrictions are ignored when this option is selected. For example, if an element is of a type that restricts an `xs:string` with the `xs:maxLength` facet to allow strings with a maximum length of 3, the XML instance generator tool may generate string element values longer than 3 characters.
- **Random** - Inserts a random value depending on the data type descriptor of the particular element or attribute.

⚠️ **Important:** If all of the following are true, the Generate Sample XML Files tool outputs invalid values:

- At least one of the restrictions is a regexp.
- The value generated after applying the regexp does not match the restrictions imposed by one of the facets.

Preferred number of repetitions

Allows you to set the preferred number of repeating elements related to `minOccurs` and `maxOccurs` facets defined in the XML Schema.

- If the value set here is between `minOccurs` and `maxOccurs`, then that value is used.
- If the value set here is less than `minOccurs`, then the `minOccurs` value is used.
- If the value set here is greater than `maxOccurs`, then `maxOccurs` is used.

Maximum recursion level

If a recursion is found, this option controls the maximum allowed depth of the same element.
Type alternative strategy

Used for the \texttt{xs:alternative} element from XML Schema 1.1. The possible strategies are:

- \textbf{First} - The first valid alternative type is always used.
- \textbf{Random} - A random alternative type is used.

Choice strategy

Used for \texttt{xs:choice} or \texttt{substitutionGroup} elements. The possible strategies are:

- \textbf{First} - The first branch of \texttt{xs:choice} or the head element of \texttt{substitutionGroup} is always used.
- \textbf{Random} - A random branch of \texttt{xs:choice} or a substitute element or the head element of a \texttt{substitutionGroup} is used.

Generate the other options as comments

If selected, generates the other possible choices or substitutions (for \texttt{xs:choice} and \texttt{substitutionGroup}). These alternatives are generated inside comments groups so you can uncomment and use them later. Use this option with care (for example, on a restricted namespace and element) as it may generate large result files.

Element values subtab

Allows you to add values that are used to generate the content of elements. If there are multiple values, then the values are used in a random order.

Attribute values subtab

Allows you to add values that are used to generate the content of attributes. If there are multiple values, then the values are used in a random order.

Export settings

Use this button to save the current settings for future use.

Import settings

Use this button to load previously exported settings.

You can click \textbf{OK} at any point to generate the sample XML files.
Advanced Tab (Generate Sample XML Files Tool)

The Generate Sample XML Files tool includes a dialog box that allows you to configure a variety of options for generating the XML files. The Advanced tab allows you to set some options regarding output values and performance.

Figure 450. Generate Sample XML Files Dialog Box (Advanced Tab)

This tab includes the following options:

**Use incremental attribute / element names as default**

If selected, the value of an element or attribute starts with the name of that element or attribute. For example, for an `a` element the generated values are: `a1`, `a2`, `a3`, and so on. If not selected, the value is the name of the type of that element / attribute (for example: `string`, `decimal`, etc.).

**Maximum length**

The maximum length of string values generated for elements and attributes.

**Discard optional elements after nested level**

The optional elements that exceed the specified nested level are discarded. This option is useful for limiting deeply nested element definitions that can quickly result in very large XML documents.

**Export settings**

Use this button to save the current settings for future use.

**Import settings**

Use this button to load previously exported settings.

Generate Sample JSON Files

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a tool for generating sample JSON files. To generate sample JSON files from a JSON Schema, select Generate Sample JSON Files from the XML Tools menu. The action opens a dialog box where you can configure a variety of options for generating the files.
Figure 451. Generate Sample JSON Files Dialog Box

The Generate Sample JSON Files dialog box includes the following fields and options:

**Schema URL**

The URL of the Schema location. You can specify the path by using the text field, the history drop-down menu, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

**Output folder**

Path to the folder where the generated JSON instances will be saved.

**File name**

The name of the instance(s) that will be generated. By default, instance.json is used.

**Number of instances**

The desired number of JSON instances to be generated. When more than one instance is generated, the index of the instance will be added to its file name.

**Property Value**

You can specify the way the values of the properties are generated. The following options are available:

- *None* - Assigns empty values for properties (a template file will be generated). This is the default value.
- *Default* - Assigns the name of the property as the value (for strings) or assigns the specified minimum value (for numbers).
- *Random* - Assigns random values according to schema restrictions.

**Generate optional properties**
If selected, the JSON instance will be generated with optional properties that are defined in the JSON schema. Otherwise, only the required properties will be generated.

**Generate additional content**

If selected, the JSON instance will be generated with additional properties that are defined in the JSON schema as `additionalProperties` and additional items that are defined as `additionalItems` (in the case of an Array).

**Choice strategy**

You can specify the way an instance will be generated from a schema that contains a `CombinedSchema` (with either `oneOf` or `anyOf`). The following options are available:

- **First** - The first defined schema in `oneOf` or `anyOf` will be used.
- **Random** - A random schema defined in `oneOf` or `anyOf` will be used.

**Recursion level**

This option controls the maximum allowed depth (must be a number), in case the selected schema contains recursive calls of `$ref` schemas referencing one another. By default, it is set to 1, meaning that the generation for the recursive calls will stop after the first iteration.

**Open first instance in editor**

If selected, the first generated instance is opened in the editor.

You can click **OK** at any point to generate the sample JSON files.

### Converting Schema to Another Schema Language

The **Generate/Convert Schema** tool allows you to convert a DTD or Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema or a set of XML files to an equivalent XML Schema, DTD or Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema. Where perfect equivalence is not possible due to limitations of the target language, Oxygen XML Developer plugin generates an approximation of the source schema. Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses **Trang multiple format converter** to perform the actual schema conversions.

To use this tool, select the **Generate/Convert Schema (Ctrl + Shift + BackSlash (Command + Shift + BackSlash on OS X))** action from the **XML Tools** menu. This action opens the **Generate/Convert Schema** dialog box that allows you to configure various options for conversion.

*Figure 452. Generate/Convert Schema Dialog Box*
The **Generate/Convert Schema** dialog box includes the following options:

**Input section**

Allows you to select the language of the source schema. If the conversion is based on a set of XML files, rather than just a single XML file, select the **XML Documents** option and use the file selector to add the XML files involved in the conversion.

**Output section**

Allows you to select the language of the target schema.

**Options**

You can choose the **Encoding**, the maximum **Line width**, and the **Indent size** (in number of spaces) for one level of indentation.

**Output file**

Specifies the path for the output file that will be generated.

**Close dialog when finished**

If you deselect this option, the dialog box will remain opened after the conversion so that you can easily continue to convert more files.

**Advanced options**

If you select **XML 1.0 DTD** for the input, you can click this button to access more advance options to further fine-tune the conversion. The following advanced options are available:

**XML 1.0 DTD Input section**
These options apply to the source DTD:

- **xmlns** - Specifies the default namespace, that is the namespace used for unqualified element names.
- **attlist-define** - Specifies how to construct the name of the definition representing an attribute list declaration from the name of the element. The specified value must contain exactly one percent character. This percent character is replaced by the name of element (after colon replacement) and the result is used as the name of the definition.
- **colon-replacement** - Replaces colons in element names with the specified chars when constructing the names of definitions used to represent the element declarations and attribute list declarations in the DTD.
- **any-name** - Specifies the name of the definition generated for the content of elements declared in the DTD as having a content model of ANY.
- **element-define** - Specifies how to construct the name of the definition representing an element declaration from the name of the element. The specified value must contain exactly one percent character. This percent character is replaced by the name of element (after colon replacement) and the result is used as the name of the definition.
- **annotation-prefix** - Default values are represented using an annotation attribute `prefix:defaultValue` where prefix is the specified value and is bound to `http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0` as defined by the RELAX NG DTD Compatibility Committee Specification. By default, the conversion engine will use a for prefix unless that conflicts with a prefix used in the DTD.
- **inline-attlist** - Instructs the application not to generate definitions for attribute list declarations, but instead move attributes declared in attribute list declarations into the definitions generated for element declarations. This is the default behavior when the output language is XSD.
- **strict-any** - Preserves the exact semantics of ANY content models by using an explicit choice of references to all declared elements. By default, the conversion engine uses a wildcard that allows any element
- **generate-start** - Specifies whether or not the conversion engine should generate a start element. DTD’s do not indicate what elements are allowed as document elements. The conversion engine assumes
that all elements that are defined but never referenced are allowed as
document elements.

• **xmlns mappings** table - Each row specifies the prefix used for a
namespace in the input schema.

**W3C XML Schema Output section**

This section is available if you select **W3C XML Schema** for the output.

• **disable-abstract-elements** - Disables the use of abstract elements
and substitution groups in the generated XML Schema. This can also
be controlled using an annotation attribute.

• **any-process-contents** - One of the values: strict, lax, skip. Specifies
the value for the `processContents` attribute of any elements. The
default is skip (corresponding to RELAX NG semantics) unless the
input format is DTD, in which case the default is strict (corresponding
to DTD semantics).

• **any-attribute-process-contents** - Specifies the value for the
`processContents` attribute of `anyAttribute` elements. The default is
skip (corresponding to RELAX NG semantics).

**Converting Database to XML Schema**

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a tool that allows you to create an XML Schema from the
structure of a database.

To convert a database structure to an XML Schema, use the following procedure:

1. Select the **Convert DB Structure to XML Schema** action from the **Tools** menu.

   **Result:** The **Convert DB Structure to XML Schema** dialog box is opened and your current
database connections are displayed in the **Connections** section.

2. If the database source is not listed, click the **Configure Database Sources** button to open the **Data
   Sources preferences page (on page 47)** where you can configure data sources and connections.

3. In the **Format for generated schema** section, select one of the following formats:
   - **Flat schema** - A flat structure that resembles a tree-like view of the database without
     references to elements.
   - **Hierarchical schema** - Display the table dependencies visually, in a type of tree view where
dependent tables are shown as indented child elements in the content model. Select this
   option if you want to configure the database columns of the tables to be converted.

4. Click **Connect**.
Result: The database structure is listed in the Select database tables section according to the format you chose.

5. Select the database tables that you want to be included in the XML Schema.

6. If you selected Hierarchical schema for the format, you can configure the database columns.
   a. Select the database column you want to configure.
   b. In the Criterion section you can choose to convert the selected database column as an Element, Attribute, or to be Skipped in the resulting XML Schema.
   c. You can also change the name of the selected database column by changing it in the Name text field.

7. Click Generate XML Schema.

Result: The database structure is converted to an XML Schema and it is opened for viewing and editing.

JSON to XML Converter

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a useful and simple tool for converting JSON files to XML. It can be found in the XML Tools menu.

To convert a JSON document to XML, follow these steps:

1. Select the JSON to XML action from the XML Tools menu. The JSON to XML dialog box is displayed:

   Figure 453. JSON to XML Dialog Box

2. Choose or enter the Input URL of the JSON document.

3. Choose the path of the Output file that will contain the resulting XML document.

4. Select the Open in Editor option to open the resulting XML document in the main editing pane.

5. Click the Convert button.

The original JSON document is now converted to an XML document.

Figure 454. Example: XML to JSON Operation Result
Conversion Details

- If the JSON document has more than one property on the first level, the converted XML document will have an additional root element called `<JSON>`.

For example, the following JSON document:

```json
{
  "personnel": {
    "person": [
      {
        "name": "Boss"
      },
      {
        "name": "Worker"
      }
    ],
    "id": "personnel-id"
  }
}
```

it is converted to:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<JSON>
  <personnel>
```

```xml
```
• If the JSON document is an array, the converted XML document will have a root element called `<array>` and for each item within the array, another `<array>` is created.

```json
[
  {
    "name": "Boss"
  },
  {
    "name": "Worker"
  }
]
```

it is converted to:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<array>
  <array>
  <name>Boss</name>
  </array>
  <array>
  <name>Worker</name>
  </array>
</array>
```

• If the name of a JSON property contains characters that are not valid in XML element names (for example, $), then the invalid characters will be escaped as its hexadecimal equivalent in the converted XML.

```json
{"$id": "personnel-id"}
```

is converted to:

```xml
<_X24_id>personnel-id</_X24_id>
```

**Online JSON to XML Converter**

For a simple ONLINE tool for converting a single JSON file to XML, or vice versa, go to: [https://www.oxygenxml.com/xml_json_converter.html](https://www.oxygenxml.com/xml_json_converter.html).
Related Information:

- XML to JSON Converter (on page 752)

XML to JSON Converter

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a useful and simple tool for converting XML files to JSON. It can be found in the XML Tools menu.

To convert an XML document to JSON, follow these steps:

1. Select the XML to JSON action from the XML Tools menu. The XML to JSON dialog box is displayed:

   Figure 455. XML to JSON Dialog Box

   ![XML to JSON Dialog Box](image)

2. Choose or enter the Input URL of the XML document.
3. Choose the path of the Output file that will contain the resulting JSON document.
4. Select the Open in Editor option to open the resulting JSON document in the main editing pane.
5. Click the Convert button.

The original XML document is now converted to a JSON document.

Figure 456. Example: XML to JSON Operation Result
Conversion Details

• If any elements contain attributes in the XML document, the attributes are converted to properties in the converted JSON document. If the XML document contains more than one element with the same name, they will be converted into an array of object in the converted JSON document.

For example, the following XML document:

```
<personnel>
  <person id="person.one">
    <name>Boss</name>
  </person>
  <person id="person.two">
    <name>Worker</name>
  </person>
</personnel>
```

it is converted to:

```
{
  "personnel": {
    "person": [
      {
        "id": "person.one",
        "name": "Boss"
      },
      {
        "id": "person.two",
        "name": "Worker"
      }
    ]
  }
}
```
• If the XML document contains elements with mixed content (text plus elements), the converted JSON document will contain a `content` property with its value set as the text content.

```xml
<person>
  <name>Boss <i>One</i></name>
</person>
```

is converted to:

```json
{
  "person": {
    "name": {
      "content": "Boss",
      "i": "One"
    }
  }
}
```

• If the XML document contains element names that contains hexadecimal codes (for example, if they were escaped during a JSON to XML conversion (on page 750)), it will be converted to the normal character value in the converted JSON document.

```xml
<_X24_id>personnel-id</_X24_id>
```

is converted to:

```json
{"$id": "personnel-id"}
```

**Online XML to JSON Converter**

For a simple ONLINE tool for converting a single XML file to JSON, or vice versa, go to: [https://www.oxygenxml.com/xml_json_converter.html](https://www.oxygenxml.com/xml_json_converter.html).
Related Information:

- JSON to XML Converter (on page 749)

Compiling an XSL Stylesheet for Saxon

As of Saxon 9.7, it is possible to export a compiled form of a stylesheet as an XML file (called a stylesheet export file or SEF). Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a simple tool called Compile XSL Stylesheet for Saxon (found in the XML Tools menu) that does this for you.

Use-Cases for a Stylesheet Export File (SEF)

- Use Saxon-JS to run transformations in a browser - A stylesheet export file (SEF) is needed if you want to use the Saxon-JS product to run transformations in a browser, as in the following example:

  ```html
  <script type="text/javascript" src="SaxonJS/SaxonJS.min.js"></script>
  <script>
    window.onload = function() {
      SaxonJS.transform({
        stylesheetLocation: "books.sef",
        sourceLocation: "books.xml"
      });
    }
  </script>
  ```

- Use SEF to run transformations in Oxygen XML Developer plugin - You can also use a stylesheet export file (SEF) in Oxygen XML Developer plugin to apply an XSLT transformation over an XML file. This requires Saxon-EE or Saxon-PE versions of the Saxon product and you must select one of those two versions for the Target when you configure the SEF file (on page 568). When configuring the XSLT transformation, you will specify the SEF file in the XSL URL field (on page 892).

Compiling an SEF File

The Compile XSL Stylesheet for Saxon tool can be found in the XML Tools menu and it compiles a specified stylesheet as an XML file (stylesheet export file with a file extension of .sef).

Selecting this tool opens the Compile XSL Stylesheet for Saxon dialog box that allows you to configure some options for conversion.
This dialog box includes the following options:

**XSL URL**

Allows you to select URL of the source XSL stylesheet. You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, or the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

**Target**

Allows you to select the type of Saxon product that the export file will be used with. You can choose Saxon-JS, Saxon-EE, Saxon-PE, or Saxon-HE.

**Relocatable**

Can be used to control the Saxon -relocate parameter. You can select this option to produce a relocatable export package (SEF) that can be deployed to a different location, with a different base URI.

**Output file**

You can specify the path where the output file will be saved by entering it in the text field, using the Insert Editor Variables button, or using the browsing actions in the Browse drop-down list.

**Open in Editor**

Select this option to open the resulting stylesheet export file in the main Oxygen XML Developer plugin editing pane.

**Use a configuration file ("-config")**

Select this option if you want to use a Saxon 9.8.0.12 configuration file that will be executed for the XSLT transformation and validation processes. You can specify the path to the configuration file by entering it in the URL field, or by using the Insert button.
Editor Variables button, or using the browsing actions in the ➔ Browse drop-down list.

Compile

Use this button to generate the stylesheet export file according the options selected in this dialog box.

Generate Documentation

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a tool for generating documentation for XSLT, XML Schema, XQuery, and WSDL documents.

Generating Documentation for an XML Schema

Oxygen XML Developer plugin can generate detailed documentation for the components of an XML Schema in HTML, PDF, DocBook, or other custom formats. You can select the components and the level of detail. The components are hyperlinked in both HTML and DocBook documents.

Note: You can generate documentation for both XML Schema version 1.0 and 1.1.

To generate documentation for an XML Schema document, select XML Schema Documentation from the XML Tools > Generate Documentation menu or from the Generate XML Schema Documentation action from the contextual menu of the Navigator view (on page 210).

Figure 458. XML Schema Documentation Dialog Box
The **Schema URL** field of the dialog box must contain the full path to the XML Schema (XSD) file for which you want to generate documentation. The schema may be a local or a remote file. You can specify the path to the schema by entering it in the text field, or by using the **Insert Editor Variables** button or the options in the **Browse** drop-down menu.

**Output Tab**

The following options are available in the **Output** tab:

- **Format** - Allows you to choose between the following formats:
  - **HTML** - The documentation is generated in **HTML output format** (on page 636).
  - **PDF** - The documentation is generated in **PDF output format** (on page 639).
  - **DocBook** - The documentation is generated in **DocBook output format** (on page 639).
  - **DITA** - The documentation is generated in **DITA output format** (on page 639).
  - **Custom** - The documentation is generated in a **custom output format** (on page 639), allowing you to control the output. Click the **Options** button to open a **Custom format options** dialog box where you can specify a custom stylesheet for creating the output. There is also an option to **Copy additional resources to the output folder** and you can select the path to the additional **Resources** that you want to copy. You can also choose to keep the intermediate XML files created during the documentation process by deselecting the **Delete intermediate XML file** option.
• **Output file** - You can specify the path of the output file by entering it in the text field, or by using the Insert Editor Variables button or the options in the Browse drop-down menu.

• **Split output into multiple files** - Instructs the application to split the output into multiple files. You can choose to split them by namespace, location, or component name.

• **Open in Browser/System Application** - Opens the result in the system application associated with the output file type. For DITA and DocBook documents, this option appears as **Open in Editor** and the result will be opened in Oxygen XML Developer plugin (in the current editor).

   **Note:** To set the browser or system application that will be used, go to Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser and specify it there. This will take precedence over the default system application settings.

• **Keep only the annotations with xml:lang set to** - The generated output will contain only the annotations with the xml:lang attribute set to the selected language. If you choose a primary language code (for example, en for English), this includes all its possible variations (en-us, en-uk, etc.).

### Settings Tab

When you generate documentation for an XML schema you can choose what components to include in the output and the details to be included in the documentation.

Figure 459. Settings Tab of the XML Schema Documentation Dialog Box
The **Settings** tab allows you to choose whether or not to include the following components: **Global elements**, **Global attributes**, **Local elements**, **Local attributes**, **Simple Types**, **Complex Types**, **Groups**, **Attribute Groups**, **Redefines**, **Referenced schemas**, **Include notations**.

You can choose whether or not to include the following other details:

- **Diagram** - Displays the diagram for each component. You can choose the image format (JPEG, PNG, SVG) to use for the diagram section. The generated diagrams are dependent on the options from the **Schema Design Properties** *(on page 97)* page.
- **Diagram annotations** - This option controls whether or not the annotations of the components presented in the diagram sections are included.
- **Namespace** - Displays the namespace for each component.
- **Location** - Displays the schema location for each component.
- **Type** - Displays the component type if it is not an anonymous one.
- **Type hierarchy** - Displays the types hierarchy.
- **Model** - Displays the model (sequence, choice, all) presented in BNF form. The separator characters that are used depend upon the information item used:
  - **xs:all** - Its children will be separated by space characters.
  - **xs:sequence** - Its children will be separated by comma characters.
  - **xs:choice** - Its children will be separated by / characters.
- **Children** - Displays the list of component's children.
• **Instance** - Displays an XML instance generated based on each schema element.
• **Used by** - Displays the list of all the components that reference the current one. The list is sorted by component type and name.
• **Properties** - Displays some of the component's properties.
• **Facets** - Displays the facets for each simple type
• **Identity constraints** - Displays the identity constraints for each element. For each constraint there are presented the name, type (unique, key, keyref), reference attribute, selector and field(s).
• **Attributes** - Displays the attributes for the component. For each attribute there are presented the name, type, fixed or default value, usage and annotation.
• **Asserts** - Displays the `assert` elements defined in a complex type. The test, XPath default namespace, and annotation are presented for each assert.
• **Annotations** - Displays the annotations for the component. If you choose **Escape XML Content**, the XML tags are present in the annotations.
• **Source** - Displays the text schema source for each component.
• **Generate index** - Displays an index with the components included in the documentation.
  ○ **Include local elements and attributes** - If selected, local elements and attributes are included in the documentation index.
  ○ **Include resource hierarchy** - Specifies whether or not the resource hierarchy for an XML Schema documentation is generated. It is deselected by default.

**Export settings** - Save the current settings in a settings file for further use (for example, with the exported settings file you can generate the same documentation from the command line interface *(on page 641)*.)

**Import settings** - Reloads the settings from the exported file.

**Generate** - Use this button to generate the XML Schema documentation.

**Related Information:**

Customizing PDF or DocBook Output of Generated XML Schema Documentation *(on page 640)*

**Generating Documentation for an XSLT Stylesheet**

You can use Oxygen XML Developer plugin to generate detailed documentation in HTML format for the elements (top-level elements whose names are in the XSLT namespace) of an XSLT stylesheet. You can select what XSLT elements to include in the generated documentation and also the level of details to present for each of them. The elements are hyperlinked. To generate documentation
in a custom output format (on page 563), you can edit the XSLT stylesheet used to generate the documentation, or create your own stylesheet.

To open the XSLT Stylesheet Documentation dialog box, select XSLT Stylesheet Documentation from the XML Tools > Generate Documentation menu or from the Generate Stylesheet Documentation action from the contextual menu of the Navigator view (on page 210).

Figure 460. XSLT Stylesheet Documentation Dialog Box

The XSL URL field of the dialog box must contain the full path to the XSL Stylesheet file you want to generate documentation for. The stylesheet may be a local or a remote file. You can specify the path to the stylesheet by entering it in the text field, or by using the Insert Editor Variables button or the options in the Browse drop-down menu.

Output Tab

The following options are available in the Output tab:

• **Format** - Allows you to choose between the following formats:
  ◦ **HTML** - The documentation is generated in HTML output format (on page 561).
  ◦ **Custom** - The documentation is generated in a custom output format (on page 563), allowing you to control the output. Click the Options button to open a Custom format options dialog box (on page 564) where you can specify a custom stylesheet for creating the output. There is also an option to Copy additional resources to the output folder and you can select the path to the additional Resources that you want to copy. You can also choose to keep the intermediate XML files created during the documentation process by deselecting the Delete intermediate XML file option.
• **Output file** - You can specify the path of the output file by entering it in the text field, or by using the Insert Editor Variables button or the options in the Browse drop-down menu.

• **Split output into multiple files** - Instructs the application to split the output into multiple files. For large XSLT stylesheets, choosing another split criterion may generate smaller output files, providing faster documentation browsing. You can choose to split them by namespace, location, or component name.

• **Open in Browser/System Application** - Opens the result in the system application associated with the output file type.

**Note:** To set the browser or system application that will be used, go to Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser and specify it there. This will take precedence over the default system application settings.

**Settings Tab**

When you generate documentation for an XSLT stylesheet you can choose what XSLT elements to include in the output (templates, functions, global parameters, global variables, attribute sets, character maps, keys, decimal formats, output formats, XSLT elements from referenced stylesheets) and the details to include in the documentation.

**Figure 461. Settings Tab of the XSLT Stylesheet Documentation Dialog Box**

The **Settings** tab allows you to choose whether or not to include the following components: Templates, Functions, Global parameters, Global variables, Attribute sets, Character maps, Keys, Decimal formats, Output formats, Referenced stylesheets.

You can choose whether or not to include the following other details:
• **Documentation** - Shows the documentation for each XSLT element. For HTML format, the user-defined data elements that are recognized and transformed in documentation blocks of the XSLT elements they precede, are the ones from the following schemas:
  - Oxygen XML Developer plugin built-in XSLT documentation schema.
  - A subset of DocBook 5 elements. The recognized elements are: *section, sect1 to sect5, emphasis, title, ulink, programlisting, para, orderedlist, itemizedlist.*
  - A subset of DITA elements. The recognized elements are: *concept, topic, task, codeblock, p, b, i, ul, ol, pre, sl, sli, step, steps, li, title, xref.*
  - Full XHTML 1.0 support.
  - XSLStyle documentation environment. XSLStyle uses DocBook or DITA languages inside its own user-defined data elements. The supported DocBook and DITA elements are the ones mentioned above.
  - DOXSL documentation framework (on page 1622). Supported elements are: *codefrag, description, para, docContent, documentation, parameter, function, docSchema, link, list, listitem, module, parameter, template, attribute-set;*

Other XSLT documentation blocks that are not recognized will just be serialized inside an HTML `pre` element. You can change this behavior by using a custom format (on page 563) instead of the built-in HTML format (on page 561) and providing your own XSLT stylesheets.

• **Use comments** - Controls whether or not the comments that precede an XSLT element is treated as documentation for the element they precede. Comments that precede or succeed the `xsl:stylesheet` element, are treated as documentation for the whole stylesheet. Note that comments that precede an import or include directive are not collected as documentation for the imported/included module. Also, comments from within the body of the XSLT elements are not collected at all.

• **Namespace** - Shows the namespace for named XSLT elements.

• **Location** - Shows the stylesheet location for each XSLT element.

• **Parameters** - Shows parameters of templates and functions.

• **References** - Shows the named XSLT elements that are referenced from within an element.

• **Used by** - Shows the list of all the XSLT elements that reference the current named element.

• **Supersedes** - Shows the list of all the XSLT elements that supersede the current element.

• **Overriding** - Shows the list of all the XSLT elements that override the current element.

• **Return type** - Shows the return type of the function.

• **Source** - Shows the text stylesheet source for each XSLT element.

• **Import precedence** - Shows the computed import precedence as declared in the XSL transformation specifications.

• **Generate index** - Creates an index with all the XSLT elements included in the documentation.
**Export settings** - Save the current settings in a settings file for further use (for example, with the exported settings file you can generate the same documentation from the command-line interface (on page 564).)

**Import settings** - Reloads the settings from the exported file.

**Generate** - Use this button to generate the XSLT documentation.

### Related Information:
- [XSLT Stylesheet Component Documentation Support (on page 544)]

---

**Generating HTML Documentation for an XQuery Document**

To generate HTML documentation for an XQuery document, use the XQuery Documentation dialog box. It is opened with the XQuery Documentation action that is available from the XML Tools > Generate Documentation menu or from the Generate XQuery Documentation action from the contextual menu of the Navigator view (on page 210).

The dialog box allows you to configure a set of parameters for the process of generating the HTML documentation.

Figure 462. XQuery Documentation Dialog Box

---
The following options are available:

- **Input** - The full path to the XQuery file must be specified in one of the two fields in this section:
  - **URL** - The URL of the file in which you want to generate the documentation.
  - **Folder** - The directory that contains the files for which you want to generate the documentation. You can also specify the XQuery file extensions to be searched for in the specified directory.

- **Default function namespace** - Optional URI for the default namespace for the submitted XQuery.

- **Predefined function namespaces** - Optional, engine-dependent, predefined namespaces that the submitted XQuery refers to. They allow the conversion to generate annotation information to support the presentation component hypertext linking (only if the predefined modules have been loaded into the local xqDoc XML repository).

- **Open in Browser/System Application** - Select this option if you want the result to be opened in the system application associated with that file type.

  **Note:** To set the browser or system application that will be used, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there. This will take precedence over the default system application settings.

- **Output** - Allows you to specify where the generated documentation is saved on disk.
Generating Documentation for WSDL Documents

You can use Oxygen XML Developer plugin to generate detailed documentation for the components of a WSDL document in HTML format. You can select the WSDL components to include in your output and the level of details to present for each of them. Also, the components are hyperlinked. You can also generate the documentation in a custom output format (on page 693) by using a custom stylesheet.

**Note:** The WSDL documentation includes the XML Schema components that belong to the internal or imported XML schemas.

To generate documentation for a WSDL document, select **WSDL Documentation** from the XML Tools > Generate Documentation menu or from the Generate WSDL Documentation action from the contextual menu of the Navigator view (on page 210).

Figure 463. WSDL Documentation Dialog Box

![WSDL Documentation Dialog Box](image)

The **Input URL** field of the dialog box must contain the full path to the WSDL document that you want to generate documentation for. The WSDL document may be a local or a remote file. You can specify the path to the WSDL file by entering it in the text field, or by using the ➔ Insert Editor Variables button or the options in the ➔ • Browse drop-down menu.

**Output Tab**

The following options are available in the **Output** tab:
• **Format** - Allows you to choose between the following formats:
  - **HTML** - The documentation is generated in **HTML output format** *(on page 691)*.
  - **Custom** - The documentation is generated in a **custom output format** *(on page 693)*, allowing you to control the output. Click the **Options** button to open a **Custom format options** dialog box where you can specify a custom stylesheet for creating the output. There is also an option to **Copy additional resources to the output folder** and you can select the path to the additional **Resources** that you want to copy. You can also choose to keep the intermediate XML files created during the documentation process by deselecting the **Delete intermediate XML file** option.

• **Output file** - You can specify the path of the output file by entering it in the text field, or by using the **Insert Editor Variables** button or the options in the **Browse** drop-down menu.

• **Split output into multiple files** - Instructs the application to split the output into multiple files. For large WSDL documents, choosing a different split criterion may generate smaller output files providing a faster documentation browsing. You can choose to split them by namespace, location, or component name.

• **Open in Browser/System Application** - Opens the result in the system application associated with the output file type.

  **Note:** To set the browser or system application that will be used, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there. This will take precedence over the default system application settings.

• **Keep only the annotations with xml:lang set to** - The generated output will contain only the annotations with the **xml:lang** attribute set to the selected language. If you choose a primary language code (for example, **en** for English), this includes all its possible variations (**en-us, en-uk**, etc.).

### Setting Tab

When you generate documentation for a WSDL document, you can choose what components to include in the output and the details to be included in the documentation.

Figure 464. Settings Tab of the WSDL Documentation Dialog Box
The **Settings** tab allows you to choose whether or not to include the following:

- **Components**
  - **Services** - Specifies whether or not the generated documentation includes the WSDL services.
  - **Bindings** - Specifies whether or not the generated documentation includes the WSDL bindings.
  - **Port Types** - Specifies whether or not the generated documentation includes the WSDL port types.
  - **Messages** - Specifies whether or not the generated documentation includes the WSDL messages.
  - **XML Schema Components** - Specifies whether or not the generated documentation includes the XML Schema components.
  - **Only global elements and types** - Specifies whether or not the generated documentation includes only global elements and types.

- **Component Details**
  - **Namespace** - Presents the namespace information for WSDL or XML Schema components.
  - **Location** - Presents the location information for each WSDL or XML Schema component.
  - **Used by** - Presents the list of components that reference the current one.
  - **Documentation** - Presents the component documentation. If you choose **Escape XML Content**, the XML tags are presented in the documentation.
  - **Source** - Presents the XML fragment that defines the current component.
  - **Instance** - Generates a sample XML instance for the current component.

**Note:** This option applies to the XML Schema components only.
- **XML Schema Diagram** - Displays the diagram for each XML Schema component. You can choose the image format (JPEG, PNG, SVG) to use for the diagram section.
- **Diagram annotations** - Specifies whether or not the annotations of the components presented in the diagram sections are included.
- **Generate index** - Displays an index with the components included in the documentation.
  - **Include local elements and attributes** - If selected, local elements and attributes are included in the documentation index.
  - **Include resource hierarchy** - Specifies whether or not the resource hierarchy for an XML Schema documentation is generated. It is deselected by default.

**Export settings** - Save the current settings in a settings file for further use (for example, with the exported settings file you can generate the same documentation from the command-line interface. (on page 693.))

**Import settings** - Reloads the settings from the exported file.

**Generate** - Use this button to generate the WSDL documentation.

### Canonicalizing Files

You can select the **canonicalization (on page 1620)** algorithm to be used for a document from the dialog box that is displayed by using the **Canonicalize** action that is available from the Source submenu when invoking the contextual menu in **Text** mode or from the **XML Tools** menu.

![Figure 465. Canonicalization Settings Dialog Box](image)

The **Canonicalize** dialog box allows you to set the following options:
• **Input URL** - Available if the Canonicalize action was selected from the XML Tools menu. It allows you to specify the location of the input file.

• **Exclusive** - If selected, the exclusive (uncommented) canonicalization (on page 1620) method is used.

  Note: Exclusive Canonicalization just copies the namespaces you are actually using (the ones that are a part of the XML syntax). It does not look into attribute values or element content, so the namespace declarations required to process these are not copied. This is useful if you have a signed XML document that you want to insert into other XML documents (or you need self-signed structures that support placement within various XML contexts), as it will ensure the signature is verified correctly each time.

• **Exclusive with comments** - If selected, the exclusive with comments canonicalization (on page 1620) method is used.

• **Inclusive** - If selected, the inclusive (uncommented) canonicalization (on page 1620) method is used.

  Note: Inclusive Canonicalization copies all the declarations, even if they are defined outside of the scope of the signature, and all the declarations you might use will be unambiguously specified. Inclusive Canonicalization is useful when it is less likely that the signed data will be inserted in other XML document and it is the safer method from the security standpoint because it requires no knowledge of the data that are to be secured to safely sign them. A problem may occur if the signed document is moved into another XML document that has other declarations because the Inclusive Canonicalization will copy them and the signature will be invalid.

• **Inclusive with comments** - If selected, the inclusive with comments canonicalization (on page 1620) method is used.

• **XPath** - The XPath expression provides the fragments of the XML document to be signed.

• **Output** - Available if the Canonicalize action was selected from the XML Tools menu. It allows you to specify the output file path where the signed XML document will be saved.

• **Open in editor** - If selected, the output file will be opened in the editor.

Related Information:

• Digital Signatures Overview (on page 509)

Signing Files

You can select the type of signature to be used for documents from a signature settings dialog box. To open this dialog box, select the Sign action from the Source submenu when invoking the contextual menu in Text mode or from the XML Tools menu.
Figure 466. Signature Settings Dialog Box

The following options are available:

- **Input** - Available if the **Sign** action was selected from the **XML Tools** menu. Specifies the location of the input URL.

- **Transformation Options** - See the **Digital Signature Overview** (on page 509) section for more information about these options.
  - **None** - If selected, no canonicalization (on page 1620) algorithm is used.
  - **Exclusive** - If selected, the exclusive (uncommented) canonicalization (on page 1620) method is used.

**Note:** Exclusive Canonicalization just copies the namespaces you are actually using (the ones that are a part of the XML syntax). It does not look into attribute values or element content, so the namespace declarations required to process these are not copied. This is useful if you have a signed XML document that you want to insert into other XML documents.
(or you need self-signed structures that support placement within various XML contexts), as it will ensure the signature is verified correctly each time.

- **Exclusive with comments** - If selected, the exclusive with comments canonicalization (on page 1620) method is used.
- **Inclusive** - If selected, the inclusive (uncommented) canonicalization (on page 1620) method is used.

**Note:** Inclusive Canonicalization copies all the declarations, even if they are defined outside of the scope of the signature, and all the declarations you might use will be unambiguously specified. Inclusive Canonicalization is useful when it is less likely that the signed data will be inserted in other XML document and it is the safer method from the security standpoint because it requires no knowledge of the data that are to be secured to safely sign them. A problem may occur if the signed document is moved into another XML document that has other declarations because the Inclusive Canonicalization will copy them and the signature will be invalid.

- **Inclusive with comments** - If selected, the inclusive with comments canonicalization (on page 1620) method is used.

- **XPath** - The XPath expression provides the fragments of the XML document to be signed.
- **ID** - Provides ID of the XML element to be signed.
- **Envelope** - If selected, the enveloped signature is used. See the Digital Signature Overview (on page 509) for more information.
- **Detached** - If selected, the detached signature is used. See the Digital Signature Overview (on page 509) for more information.
- **Append KeyInfo** - If this option is selected, the ds:KeyInfo element will be added in the signed document.
- **Signature algorithm** - The algorithm used for signing the document. The following options are available: RSA with SHA1, RSA with SHA256, RSA with SHA384, and RSA with SHA512.
- **Output** - Available if the Sign action was selected from the XML Tools menu. Specifies the path of the output file where the signed XML document will be saved.
- **Open in editor** - If selected, the output file will be opened in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Related Information:

- Digital Signatures Overview (on page 509)
- Verifying Signature (on page 516)
- Example of How to Digitally Sign XML Files or Content (on page 517)
Verifying Signature

You can verify the signature of a file by selecting the **Verify Signature** action from the **Source** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in **Text** mode or from the **XML Tools** menu. The **Verify Signature** dialog box then allows you to specify the location of the file whose signature is verified.

If the signature is valid, a dialog box displays the name of the signer. Otherwise, an error shows details about the problem.

**Related Information:**

- Digital Signatures Overview *(on page 509)*
- Signing Files *(on page 514)*
- Example of How to Digitally Sign XML Files or Content *(on page 517)*

WSDL SOAP Analyzer

**WSDL SOAP Analyzer** is a tool that helps you test if the messages defined in a Web Service Descriptor (WSDL) are accepted by a Web Services server.

After you edit and validate your Web service descriptor against a mix of the XML Schemas for WSDL and SOAP, it is easy to check if the defined SOAP messages are accepted by the remote Web Services server by using the integrated **WSDL SOAP Analyzer** tool (available from the toolbar or **WSDL** menu).

Oxygen XML Developer plugin provides two ways of testing, one for the currently edited WSDL document and another for the remote WSDL documents that are published on a web server. To open the **WSDL SOAP Analyzer** tool for the currently edited WSDL document do one of the following:

- Click the **WSDL SOAP Analyzer** toolbar button.
- Use the **WSDL SOAP Analyzer** action from the **WSDL** menu.
- Go to **Open with > WSDL Editor** in the contextual menu of the **Navigator** *(on page 210)* view.

Figure 467. WSDL SOAP Analyzer View
This tool contains a SOAP analyzer and sender for Web Services Description Language file types. The analyzer fields are as follows:

- **Services** - The list of services defined by the WSDL file.
- **Ports** - The ports for the selected service.
- **Operations** - The list of available operations for the selected service.
- **Action URL** - The script that serves the operation.
- **SOAP Action** - Identifies the action performed by the script.
- **Version** - Choose between 1.1 and 1.2. The SOAP version is selected automatically depending on the selected port.
- **Request Editor** - It allows you to compose the web service request. When an action is selected, Oxygen XML Developer plugin tries to generate as much content as possible for the SOAP request. The envelope of the SOAP request has the correct namespace for the selected SOAP version, that is http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/ for SOAP 1.1 or http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope for SOAP 1.2. Usually you just have to change a few values for the request to be valid. The Content Completion Assistant (on page 1620) is available for this editor and is driven by the schema that defines the type of the current message. While selecting various operations, Oxygen XML Developer plugin remembers the modified request for each one. You can press the Regenerate button to overwrite your modifications for the current request with the initial generated content.
- **Attachments List** - You can define a list of file URLs to be attached to the request.
- **Response Area** - Initially it displays an auto generated server sample response so you can have an idea about how the response looks like. After pressing the Send button, it presents the message received from the server in response to the Web Service request. It may show also error messages. If the response message contains attachments, Oxygen XML Developer plugin prompts you to save them, then tries to open them with the associated system application.
- **Errors List** - There may be situations where the WSDL file is respecting the WSDL XML Schema, but it fails to be valid (for example, in the case of a message that is defined by means of an
element that is not found in the types section of the WSDL). In such a case, the errors are listed here. This list is presented only when there are errors.

- **Send Button** -Executes the request. A status dialog box is displayed when Oxygen XML Developer plugin is connecting to the server.

The testing of a WSDL file is straight-forward: click the WSDL analysis button, then select the service, the port, and the operation. The editor generates the skeleton for the SOAP request. You can edit the request, eventually attach files to it and send it to the server. Watch the server response in the response area. You can find more details in the Testing Remote WSDL Files (on page 695) section.

**Note:** SOAP requests and responses are automatically validated in the WSDL SOAP Analyzer using the XML Schemas specified in the WSDL file.

Once defined, a request derived from a Web Service descriptor can be saved with the **Save** button to a Web Service SOAP Call (WSSC) file for later reuse. In this way, you save time in configuring the URLs and parameters.

You can open the result of a Web Service call in an editor panel using the **Open** button.

### Testing Remote WSDL Files

To open and test a remote WSDL file the steps are the following:

1. Go to **Window > Show View > Other > Oxygen XML Developer plugin > WSDL SOAP Analyzer**.

2. Press the **Choose WSDL** button and enter the URL of the remote WSDL file.
   - You enter the URL:
     - by typing
     - by browsing the local file system
     - by browsing a remote file system
     - by browsing a UDDI Registry (on page 696)

3. Press the **OK** button.
   - This will open the **WSDL SOAP Analyzer tool** (on page 694). In the **Saved SOAP Request** tab you can open directly a previously saved Web Service SOAP Call (WSSC) file, thus skipping the analysis phase.

### UDDI Registry Browser

Pressing the button in the **WSDL File Opener** dialog box (menu **Tools > WSDL SOAP Analyzer**) opens the **UDDI Registry Browser** dialog box.
The fields of the dialog box are as follows:

- **URL** - Type the URL of an UDDI registry or choose one from the default list.
- **Keywords** - Enter the string you want to be used when searching the selected UDDI registry for available Web services.
- **Rows to fetch** - The maximum number of rows to be displayed in the result list.
- **Search by** - You can choose to search either by company or by provided service.
- **Case sensitive** - When selected, the search takes into account the keyword case.
- **Search** - The WSDL files that matched the search criteria are added in the result list.

When you select a WSDL from the list and click the **OK** button, the **UDDI Registry Browser** dialog box is closed and you are returned to the **WSDL File Opener** dialog box.

**XML Schema Regular Expressions Builder**

The XML Schema regular expressions builder allows you to test regular expressions on a fragment of text as they are applied to an XML instance document. Start the tool by selecting **XML Schema Regular Expressions Builder** from the **XML Tools** menu.
The dialog box contains the following:

**Regular expressions editor**

Allows you to edit the regular expression to be tested and used. Content completion is available and presents a list with all the predefined expressions. It is triggered by pressing **Ctrl + Space (Command + Space on OS X)**.

**Error display area**

If the edited regular expression is incorrect, an error message will be displayed here. The message contains the description and the exact location of the error. Also, clicking the quick navigation button (←) highlights the error inside the regular expression.

**Category**

You can choose from several categories of predefined expressions. The selected category influences the displayed expressions in the **Available expressions** table.

**Available expressions**

This table includes the available regular expressions and a short description for each of them. The set of expressions depends on the category selected in the previous **Category** combo box. You can add an expression in the **Regular expressions editor** by double-clicking the expression row in the table. You will notice that in the case of **Character categories** and **Block names**, the expressions are also listed in complementary format.
Evaluate expression on

You can choose between two options:

- **Evaluate expression on each line** - The edited expression will be applied on each line in the Test area.
- **Evaluate expression on all text** - The edited expression will be applied on the whole text.

Test

A text editor that allows you to enter a text sample for which the regular expression will be applied. All matches of the edited regular expression will be highlighted.

After editing and testing your regular expression you can insert it in the current editor. The **Insert** button will become active when an editor is opened in the background and there is an expression in the **Regular expressions editor**.

The regular expression builder cannot be used to insert regular expressions in the **Grid mode** or **schema Design mode**. Accordingly, the **Insert** button will be not available if the current document is edited in these modes.

**Note:** Some regular expressions may indefinitely block the Java Regular Expressions engine. If the execution of the regular expression does not end in about five seconds, the application displays a dialog box that allows you to interrupt the operation.
Common Problems

This section provides a collection of common performance and other types of problems that might be encountered when using Oxygen XML Developer plugin, along with their possible solutions.

Performance Problems and Solutions

This section contains solutions for some common performance problems that may appear when running Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Out of Memory on External Processes

Problem

Oxygen XML Developer plugin throws an Out Of Memory error when trying to generate PDF output with the built-in Apache FOP processor.

Cause

The amount of allocated memory might be insufficient.

Solutions

• Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42), go to XML > XSLT-FO-XQuery > FO Processors, and increase the value of the Memory available to the built-in FOP option (on page 127).
• For external XSL-FO processors, XSLT processors, and external tools, the maximum value of the allocated memory is set in the command line of the tool using the -Xmx parameter set to the Java virtual machine.

Related Information:

• FO Processors Preferences (on page 126)
• Custom Engines Preferences (on page 142)
Performance Issues with Large Documents

**Problem**

The performance of the application slows down considerably over time when working with large documents.

**Cause**

A possible cause is that the application needs more memory to run properly.

**Solutions**

- You can increase the maximum amount of memory available to Oxygen XML Developer plugin by setting the `-vmargs` and `-Xmx` parameters in the command used to launch the Eclipse platform.

  **Attention:** The maximum amount of memory should be less than 75% of the physical amount of memory available on the machine. Otherwise, the operating system and other applications will have no memory available.

  **Note:**

**Misc Problems and Solutions**

This chapter presents common problems that may appear when running the application along with solutions for these problems.

'Address Family Not Supported by Protocol Family; Connect' Error

**Problem**

I have experienced the following error: "Address Family Not Supported by Protocol Family; Connect". How do I solve it?
Cause

This seems to be an IPv6 connectivity problem. By default, the Java runtime used by Oxygen XML Developer plugin prefers to create connections via IPv6, if the support is available. However, even though it is available in appearance, IPv6 sometimes happens to be configured incorrectly on some systems.

Solution

A quick solution for this problem is to set the `java.net.preferIPv4Stack` Java property to `true` (``java.net.preferIPv4Stack=true``), by following this procedure:

1. Create a file named `custom_commons.vmoptions` and on a single line, add `-Djava.net.preferIPv4Stack=true`. Then save the file and copy it to the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation folder (may need admin access).
2. Restart Oxygen XML Developer plugin.
3. Make sure the procedure was successful by going to Help > About > System properties and check that the value of the `java.net.preferIPv4Stack` property is `true`.

Application Takes Several Minutes to Start

Problem

Oxygen XML Developer plugin seems to take an abnormally long amount of time to start.

Cause

Some anti-virus software can cause Java applications, such as Oxygen XML Developer plugin, to start very slowly due to scanning compressed archives (such as the JAR libraries that all Java applications use).

Solution

A possible solution is to add the Oxygen XML Developer plugin folder to the list of exceptions in the anti-virus software settings.
Compatibility Issue Between Java and Certain Graphics Card Drivers

Problem

Under certain settings, a compatibility issues can appear between Java and some graphics card drivers, which results in the text from the editor (in Author or Text mode) being displayed garbled.

Solution

If you encounter this problem, update your graphics card driver.

Damaged File Associations on OS X

Problem

After upgrading OS X and Oxygen XML Developer plugin, it is no longer associated to the appropriate file types (such as XML, XSL, XSD). How can I re-create the file associations?

Cause

The upgrade damaged the file associations in the LaunchService Database on your OS X machine.

Solution

You can rebuild the LaunchService Database with the following procedure. This will reset all file associations and rescan the entire file system searching for applications that declare file associations and collect them in a database used by Finder.

1. Find all the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installations on your hard drive.
2. Delete them by dragging them to the Trash.
3. Clear the Trash.
4. Unpack the Oxygen XML Developer plugin installation kit on your desktop.
5. Copy the contents of the archive into the folder /Applications/Oxygen.
6. Run the following command in a Terminal:

   
   ```
   /System/Library/Frameworks/CoreServices.framework/Versions/A/Frameworks/LaunchServices.framework/Versions/A/Support/lsregister -kill -r -domain local -domain system -domain user
   ```

7. Restart Finder with the following command:
8. Create an XML or XSD file on your desktop. It should have the Oxygen XML Developer plugin icon.


10. Accept the confirmation.

Result: When you start Oxygen XML Developer plugin, the file associations should work correctly.

Details to Submit in a Request for Technical Support Using the Online Form

Problem

What details should I add to my request for technical support on the online form in the product website?

Solution

When completing a request for Technical Support using the online form, include as many details as possible about your problem. For problems where a simple explanation may not be enough for the Technical Support team to reproduce or address the issue (such as server connection errors, unexpected delays while editing a document, an application crash, etc.), you should generate a log file and attach it to the problem report. In the case of a crash, you should also attach the crash report file generated by your operating system.

If the text content of an XML document you want to send to the support team contains sensitive or private information, you can use the Randomize XML text content action (on page 8) to create filler content. Before using this action, you need to copy the initial XML resources and save them in a separate folder. Otherwise, you might lose your original information.

To generate an Oxygen XML Developer plugin log file, follow these steps:

1. Create a text file called log4j.properties in the lib folder of the installed plugin folder, with the following content:

``` properties
log4j.rootCategory= debug, R2
log4j.appenders.R2=org.apache.log4j.RollingFileAppender
log4j.appenders.R2.file=${user.home}/Desktop/oxygenLog/oxygen.log
log4j.appenders.R2.maxFileSize=12000KB
log4j.appenders.R2.maxBackupIndex=20
log4j.appenders.R2.layout=org.apache.log4j.PatternLayout
```
2. Restart the application.
3. Reproduce the error.
4. Close the application.
5. Delete the `log4j.properties` file because it might cause performance issues if you leave it in the `lib` folder.

⚠️ **Important:** The logging mode may severely decrease the performance of the application. Therefore, do not forget to delete the `log4j.properties` file when you are done with the procedure.

**Result:** The resulting log file is named `oxygen#.log` (for example, `oxygen.log`, `oxygen.log.1`, `oxygen.log.2`, etc.) and is located in the `Desktop\oxygenLog` folder.

## DITA Map Transformation Fails (Cannot Connect to External Location)

### Problem

*DITA map* *(on page 1621)* transformation fails because it cannot connect to an external location.

### Solution

The transformation is run as an external Ant process so you can continue using the application as the transformation unfolds. All output from the process appears in the *DITA Transformation* tab.

The HTTP proxy settings are used for the Ant transformation, so if the transformation fails because it cannot connect to an external location, you can check the Network Connections.

## DITA Map WebHelp Transformation Fails (Duplicate Topic References Found)

### Problem

*DITA Map WebHelp* transformation fails with a message that indicates duplicate topic references were found.

### Cause

By default the WebHelp transformation uses the `force-unique` parameter set to `true` to force the transformation to create unique output files for each instance of a resource when a map contains
multiple references to a single topic. However, there are cases when this feature does not work as expected and the duplicate topic references are not handled properly.

**Solution**

To solve this issue, you should manually set a unique `copy-to` attribute on any duplicate topic reference that was not handled automatically by DITA-OT:

```
<map>
  ...
  <topicref href="../topics/MyTopic.dita"/>
  ...
  <topicref href="../topics/MyTopic.dita" copy-to="../topics/MyTopic-2.dita"/>
</map>
```

**DITA OT Transformation Takes a Long Time to Process**

**Problem**

A DITA transformation takes an extremely long time to process (over an hour, for example).

**Cause**

Large delays in DITA OT processing are usually caused by intensive disk operations, CPU usage, or connections to remote websites. The DITA OT processing is very disk-intensive, each stage takes the entire content from the transformation temporary files folder, reads it, modifies it, and then writes it back.

**Solution**

There are several things you can try to troubleshoot this problem:

- If you are using a shared or remote drive, it is recommended to specify a local drive for the output and temporary files directory (edit the transformation scenario and in the **Output** tab, select a local directory for **Temporary files directory** and **Output directory**).
- If you want to test if the publishing has a problem downloading remote resources, you could disable the network adapter on the computer and then try to publish. The purpose is to see if the publishing finishes without any reported error about obtaining a certain HTTP resource.
- Using DTDs instead of XML Schemas is faster. This is because of a default transformation parameter called `args.grammar.cache` that only works for DTD-based DITA topics.
• You can increase the memory available to Oxygen XML Developer plugin (on page 1599).
Sometimes, just increasing the amount of memory available to the DITA OT process may be enough to lower the time necessary for the publishing to run.
• You can enable some logging to help you determine which stage in the process is taking a long time. Edit the transformation scenario and in the Advanced tab, enter logger org.apache.tools.ant.listener.ProfileLogger in the Additional arguments field. Then go to Options > Preferences > DITA > Logging and select Always for the Show console output option.
• You could try disabling antivirus applications since the publishing process is very disk intensive and certain antivirus application might slow down the process.
• If the published DITA map is part of a larger DITA project with lots of maps and topics, references from topics in the current map to topics in other sub-projects might result in problems resolving those references. You could look in the output folder to see if the number of HTML documents match the number of DITA topics in your map.

DITA PDF Transformation Fails

Problem

The DITA to PDF transformation fails.

Cause

To generate the PDF output, Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses the DITA Open Toolkit. This process sometimes results in errors. For information about some of the most common errors, see DITA PDF Processing Common Errors (on page 1606).

Solution

You can analyze the Results tab of the DITA transformation and search for messages that contain text similar to [fop] [ERROR]. If you encounter this type of error message, edit the transformation scenario you are using and set the clean.temp parameter to no and the retain.topic.fo parameter to yes. Run the transformation, go to the temporary directory of the transformation, open the topic.fo file and go to the line indicated by the error. Depending on the XSL FO context try to find the DITA topic that contains the text that generates the error.

If none of the above methods helps you, go to Help > About > Components > Frameworks and check what version of the DITA Open Toolkit you are using. Copy the whole output from the DITA OT console output and either report the problem on the DITA User List or send it to support@oxygenxml.com.

Related Information:
DITA PDF Processing Common Errors

There are cases when the PDF processing fails when trying to publish DITA content to a PDF file. This topic lists some of the common problems and possible solutions.

**Problem: Cannot Save PDF**

The FO processor cannot save the PDF at the specified target. The console output contains messages like this:

```
[fop] [ERROR] Anttask - Error rendering fo file: C:samples\dita\temp\pdf\oxygen_dita_temp\topic.fo
  <Failed to open C:samples\dita\out\pdf\test.pdf>
  Failed to open samples\dita\out\pdf\test.pdf
  ............
[fop] Caused by: java.io.FileNotFoundException: C:Users\default\Desktop\bev\out\pdf\test.pdf
  (The process cannot access the file because it is being used by another process)
```

**Solution: Cannot Save PDF**

Such an error message usually means that the PDF file is already opened in a PDF reader application. The solution is to close the open PDF before running the transformation.

**Problem: Table Contains More Cells Than Defined in Colspec**

One of the DITA tables contains more cells in a table row than the defined number of `colspec` elements. The console output contains messages like this:

```
[fop] [ERROR] Anttask - Error rendering fo file: D:\projects\eXml\samples\dita\flowers\temp\pdf\oxygen_dita_temp\topic.fo
  <net.sf.saxon.trans.XPathException: org.apache.fop.fo.ValidationException: The column-number or number of cells in the row overflows the number of fo:table-columns specified for the table.
  (See position 179:-1)>net.sf.saxon.trans.XPathException: org.apache.fop.fo.ValidationException: The column-number or number of cells in the row overflows the number of fo:table-columns specified for the table.
  (See position 179:-1)}
```


Solution: Table Contains More Cells Than Defined in Colspec

To resolve this issue, correct the `colspec` attribute on the table that caused the issue. To locate the table that caused the issue:

1. Edit the transformation scenario and set the parameter `clean.temp` to `no`.
2. Run the transformation, open the `topic.fo` file in Oxygen XML Developer plugin, and look in it at the line specified in the error message (See position 179:-1).

Related Information:

- How to Enable Debugging for FO Processor Transformations (on page 957)

DITA to CHM Transformation Fails - Cannot Open File

Problem

The DITA to CHM transformation fails with the following error: [exec] HHC5010: Error: Cannot open "fileName.chm". Compilation stopped.

Cause

This error occurs when the CHM output file is opened and the transformation scenario cannot rewrite its content.

Solution

To solve this issue, close the CHM help file and run the transformation scenario again.
DITA to CHM Transformation Fails - Compilation Failed

Problem

The DITA to CHM transformation fails with the following error:

```
[exec] HHC5003: Error: Compilation failed while compiling fileName.
```

Cause 1

One possible cause for this error is that the processed file does not exist.

Solution 1

To solve this issue, fix the file reference before executing the transformation scenario again.

Cause 2

Another possible cause for this error is that the processed file has a name that contains space characters.

Solution 2

To solve the issue, remove any spacing from the file name and run the transformation scenario again.

Error After Switching Oxygen Products in Eclipse

Problem

On an Eclipse deployment, after installing and using the Editor product, I later decided to uninstall it and use Author or Developer instead. After installing the new product, I received an error that looked like this:

```
java.lang.Exception
    at org.eclipse.ui.internal.ViewReference.createErrorPart(ViewReference.java:112)
    at org.eclipse.ui.internal.ViewReference.createPart(ViewReference.java:98)
    at org.eclipse.ui.internal.e4.compatibility.CompatibilityPart.createPart
        (CompatibilityPart.java:279)
    at org.eclipse.ui.internal.e4.compatibility.CompatibilityPart.create
        (CompatibilityPart.java:317)
    at sun.reflect.NativeMethodAccessorImpl.invoke0(Native Method)
    at sun.reflect.NativeMethodAccessorImpl.invoke(NativeMethodAccessorImpl.java:62)
```
Solution

You need to manually delete the perspective for the product you uninstalled by following this procedure:

1. Go to Window > Preferences > General > Perspectives.
2. Select the perspective for the product you uninstalled (for example, `<oxygen/> XML`) and click Delete.
3. Restart Eclipse.
4. Go to Window > Open Perspective and select the perspective for the new product (for example, `<oxygen/> XML Author`).

Hunspell Spell Checker is Unusable on Your Platform Error

Problem

When trying to use the Check Spelling option, I receive the error Hunspell spell checker is unusable on your platform. It has crashed the application in a previous session.

Cause

There are instances where Oxygen XML Developer plugin determines that an internal component (such as the spell checker) has crashed the application and disables that component from running in the future (to prevent a possible future crash).

Solution

To re-enable the spell checker component, follow these steps:

2. Open the `%APPDATA%/com.oxygenxml` folder and look for a file called something like `HunspellCrashGuard*.txt`. Delete that file.
High Resolution Scaling Issues

Problem
I encounter scaling detection issues in a high resolution display. For example, some GUI components are too small.

Cause
This sometimes happens when using multiple displays with different resolutions because the application cannot detect the correct scaling setting.

Solution
You can use the `com.oxygenxml.hidpi.scaling` custom system property (on page 173) to force a specific scaling setting. For example: `-Dcom.oxygenxml.hidpi.scaling=1.5` for 150% scaling.

Images Appear Stretched Out in the PDF Output

Problem
When publishing XML content (DITA, DocBook, etc.), images are sometimes scaled up in the PDF outputs but are displayed perfectly in the HTML (or WebHelp) output.

Solution
PDF output from XML content is obtained by first obtaining an intermediary XML format called XSL-FO and then applying an XSL-FO processor to it to obtain the PDF. This stretching problem is caused by the fact that all XSL-FO processors take into account the DPI (dots-per-inch) resolution when computing the size of the rendered image.

The PDF processor that comes out of the box with the application is the open-source Apache FOP processor. Here is what Apache FOP does when deciding the image size:

1. If the XSL-FO output contains width, height or a scale specified for the image `external-graphic` tag, then these dimensions are used. This means that if in the XML (DITA, DocBook, etc.) you set explicit dimensions to the image they will be used as such in the PDF output.
2. If there are no sizes (width, height or scale) specified on the image XML element, the processor looks at the image resolution information available in the image content. If the image has such a
resolution saved in it, the resolution will be used and combined with the image width and height to obtain the rendered image dimensions.

3. If the image does not contain resolution information inside, Apache FOP will look at the FOP configuration file for a default resolution. The FOP configuration file for XSLT transformations that output PDF is located in the \[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/lib/fop.xconf. DITA publishing uses the DITA Open Toolkit that has the Apache FOP configuration file located in \[DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/org.dita.pdf2.fop/fop/conf/fop.xconf. The configuration file contains two XML elements called source-resolution and target-resolution. The values set to those elements can be increased (usually a DPI value of 110 or 120 should render the image in PDF the same as in the HTML output).

The commercial RenderX XEP XSL-FO processor behaves similarly but as a fallback it uses 120 as the DPI value instead of using a configuration file.

Tip: It is best to save your images without any DPI resolution information. For example, when saving a PNG image in the open-source GIMP image editor, you do not want to save the resolution.

This allows you to control the image resolution from the configuration file for all referenced images.

Increasing the Memory for the Ant Process

**Problem**

The Ant build process runs out of memory.

**Solution**

For details about setting custom JVM arguments to the Ant build process, see JVM Arguments (on page ).
Mac Touch Bar Function Keys Do Not Work

Problem
I am using a Mac that has a Touch Bar but its function keys do not work in Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Causes
By default, the Touch Bar function keys are not enabled for Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

Solution
To enable the Touch Bar function keys for Oxygen XML Developer plugin, follow these steps:

1. Go to System Preferences and select Keyboard.
2. Click Shortcuts.
3. From the left sidebar, select Function Keys.
4. Click the + symbol, select Oxygen from the list of apps, and click Add.

Machine Signature Mismatch Error

Problem
I receive an error indicating that the current license was already activated on a License Server or that the License Server's Machine Signature does not match.

During the license activation process, the license key becomes bound to a particular license server deployment. This means that a code that uniquely identifies your license server deployment (called Machine Signature) is sent to the Oxygen XML Developer plugin servers, which in turn will sign the license key. The Machine Signature is computed from the list of network interfaces of the machine where you deployed the license.

When starting the license server, if you receive an error stating that your server's Machine Signature does not match, there are several possible causes:

Possible Cause 1
The license key was moved to a new machine that hosts your license server.
Solution

Revert to your previous configuration.

Possible Cause 2

A new network interface was changed, added, or activated in the machine that hosts your license server.

Note: A specific example of when this could happen is if the Bluetooth or the WiFi module is activated/deactivated.

Solution

If reverting is not possible, contact the Oxygen support team.

Possible Cause 3

The license server was restarted from a different location as the previous restart. For example, some server configurations will have the Apache Tomcat server installed in a versioned folder (/usr/local/apache-tomcat-V.V.V) with a symbolic link to the typical folder (/usr/local/tomcat). The server can be restarted from either location, but it is recommended to always restart from the typical folder (/usr/local/tomcat) and always restart from the same location.

Solution

The server simply needs to always be restarted from the same location.

MSXML 4.0 Transformation Issues

Problem

When running a transformation scenario that uses the MSXML 4.0 transformer, I receive an error that looks like this:

Could not create the 'MSXML2.DOMDocument.4.0' object.

Make sure that MSXML version 4.0 is correctly installed on the machine.

Cause

It is likely that the latest MSXML 4.0 service pack is not installed on your computer.
Solution

To fix this issue, go to the Microsoft website and get the latest MSXML 4.0 service pack.

Navigation to a Web Page is Canceled when Viewing CHM on a Network Drive

Problem

When viewing a CHM on a network drive, I only see the TOC and an empty page that displays the message: Navigation to the web page was canceled.

Cause

This is actually normal behavior. The Microsoft viewer for CHM does not display the topics for a CHM opened on a network drive.

Solution

As a workaround, copy the CHM file on your local system and view it there.

References Outside the Main DITA Map Folder

Problem

A reference to a DITA topic, map, or binary resource (for example, an image) that is located outside of the folder where the main DITA map (on page 1621) is located leads to problems when publishing the content using the DITA Open Toolkit.

Cause

DITA-OT often has trouble resolving references that are outside the directory where the published DITA map is found. By default, it does not even copy the referenced topics to the output directory.

Solution

To solve this, try one of the following solutions:

• Create another DITA map that is located in a folder path above all referenced folders and reference the original DITA map from this new map. Then transform this DITA map instead.
• Edit the transformation scenario and in the Parameters tab, change the value of the fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml parameter to true. This parameter is used to specify whether or not the application tries to fix such references in a temporary files folder before the DITA Open Toolkit is invoked on the fixed references. The fix has no impact on your edited DITA content.

⚠️ Important: The fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml parameter is only supported when the DITA OT transformation process is started from Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

• For PDF output, you can edit the transformation scenario and in the Parameters tab set the value of the generate.copy.outer parameter to 3. This parameter specifies whether to generate output files for content that is not located in or beneath the directory containing the DITA map file. By setting the value of this parameter to 3, the transformation scenario shifts the output directory so that it contains all output for the publication.

⚠️ Important: This method is recommended for transformation scenarios that use an external DITA-OT.

Syntax Highlights Not Available in Eclipse Plugin

Problem

I associated the .ext extension with Oxygen XML Developer plugin in Eclipse but an .ext file opened with the Oxygen XML Developer plugin plugin does not have syntax highlights.

Solution

Associate an extension with Oxygen XML Developer plugin in Eclipse versions 3.6-3.8, 4.2-4.10 by following these steps:

1. Associate the .ext extension with the Oxygen XML Developer plugin plugin:
   a. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to General > Editors > File Associations.
   b. Add *.ext to the list of file types.
   c. Select *.ext in the list by clicking it.
   d. Add Oxygen XML Developer plugin to the list of Associated editors and make it the default editor.

2. Associate the .ext extension with the Oxygen XML content type:
   a. Open the Preferences dialog box (on page 42) and go to General > Content Types.
   b. Add *.ext to the File associations list for the Text > XML > Oxygen XML Developer plugin content type.

3. Press the OK button in the Eclipse preferences dialog box.
Result: Now when an *.ext file is opened, the icon and the syntax highlights should be the same as for XML files opened with the Oxygen XML Developer plugin.

TocJS Transformation Does not Generate All Files for a Tree-Like TOC

Problem

The TocJS transformation of a DITA map (on page 1621) does not generate all the files needed to display the tree-like table of contents.

Solution

To get a complete set of output files, follow these steps:

1. Run the XHTML transformation on the same DITA map. Make sure the output gets generated in the same output folder as for the TocJS transformation.
2. Copy the content of the DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.sophos.tocjs/basefiles folder to the transformation output folder.
3. Copy the DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.sophos.tocjs/sample/basefiles/frameset.html file to the transformation output folder.
5. Locate element <frame name="contentwin" src="concepts/about.html">.
6. Replace "concepts/about.html" with "index.html".

Windows Service Reports Incorrect Function Error When Starting (TCP Server)

Problem

My TCP floating license server reports an "Incorrect Function" error message when starting the Windows service.

Cause

This usually appears because the Windows service launcher cannot locate a Java virtual machine on your system.
Solution

Make sure that you have installed a 32-bit Java SE from Oracle (or Sun) on the system: http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html.

Windows Service Reports Process Terminated Unexpectedly Error (TCP Server)

Problem

My TCP floating license server reports a "Process Terminated Unexpectedly" error message for the Windows service.

Cause

This error message appears if the Windows service launcher quits immediately after being started. This problem usually happens because the license key has not been correctly deployed (license.txt file in the license folder).

Solution

Re-deploy your license key. For more information, see the Setting up a Floating License Server section (on page 32).

XSLT Debugger Is Very Slow

Problem

When I run a transformation in the XSLT Debugger perspective (on page 1624), it is very slow.

Solution

If the transformation produces HTML or XHTML output, you can disable rendering of output in the XHTML output view (on page 144) during the transformation process. To view the XHTML output result do one of the following:

- Run the transformation in the Editor perspective (on page 1624) and make sure the Open in Browser/System Application option (on page 901) is selected.
• Run the transformation in the **XSLT Debugger perspective (on page 1624)**, save the text output area to a file, and use a browser application for viewing it (for example, Firefox or Internet Explorer).
19. Glossary

Active Cell

Active cell refers to the selected cell where data is entered when you begin typing. Only one cell is active at a time. The active cell is bounded by a heavy border.

Anchor

An Anchor is used in various types of links to take the user to a specific location within the target document. It is designated in a URL or in the value of the href attribute with a # symbol followed by the anchor that is defined in a target ID (for example href="MyTopic.dita#anchor").

Apache Ant

Apache Ant (Another Neat Tool) is a software tool for automating software build processes.

Block Element

A block element is intended to be visually separated from its siblings, usually vertically. For instance, paragraphs and list items are block elements. It is distinct from a inline element, which has no such separation.

Bookmap

A bookmap is a specialized DITA map used for creating books. A bookmap supports book divisions such as chapters and book lists such as indexes.

Callout

A callout is a string of text inside a graphic and is connected to a specific location in a document by a line. Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses callouts to present comments and other types of review modifications.
Canonicalize

To **canonicalize** something means to convert it to a standard format that everyone generally uses. When using the term with regard to XML, it refers to the process of converting data that has more than one possible representations into a standardization that conforms to the specification of an XML document or document subset. It is helpful for applications that require the ability to test whether or not the content of an XML document or subset has been changed.

Content Completion Assistant

The **Content Completion Assistant** refers to a very helpful mechanism in Oxygen XML Developer plugin that offers a list of proposed items that could be inserted at the current location, depending on the current context, editing mode, and type of document. It also tries to determine the most logical choice in the current editing context and displays that proposal at the beginning of the list.

For more information about this feature and how to invoke it, depending on your editing context, see the following:

- Content Completion Assistant in Text Mode *(on page 378)*
- Content Completion Assistant in Grid Mode *(on page 419)*
- Content Completion in XSLT Stylesheets *(on page 525)*
- Content Completion in XML Schema *(on page 608)*
- Content Completion in XQuery *(on page 655)*
- Content Completion Assistance in WSDL Documents *(on page 674)*
- Content Completion in CSS Stylesheets *(on page 698)*
- Content Completion in Relax NG Schemas *(on page 708)*
- Content Completion in NVDL Schemas *(on page 725)*
- Content Completion in JavaScript Documents *(on page 763)*
- Content Completion in Schematron Documents *(on page 773)*
- Content Completion in SQF *(on page 800)*

Dockable

A **Dockable** window is one that can be moved and resized, and either floated or pinned to a location, allowing you to configure the workspace according to your preferences.

Document Fragment

A **document fragment** represents a portion of an XML document's tree of nodes or content.
Document Type Association

In general terms, a Document Type Association is a set of rules that associate a document type with a framework (on page 1622). In Oxygen XML Developer plugin, Document Type Association also specifically refers to a preferences page (on page 55) where you can create new custom frameworks or edit existing ones. Note that frameworks (document types) that come built-in with Oxygen XML Developer plugin are read-only, but you can Extend (on page 56) or Duplicate (on page 56) them to configure them as custom frameworks.

DITA Map

A DITA map is a component of the DITA framework (on page 1622) that provides the means for a hierarchical collection of DITA topics that can be processed to form an output. Maps do not contain the content of topics, but only references to them. These are known as topic references. Usually the maps are saved on disk or in a CMS with the extension .ditamap.

Maps can also contain relationship tables that establish relationships between the topics contained within the map. Relationship tables are also used to generate links in your published document.

You can use your map or bookmap (on page 1619) to generate a deliverable using an output type such as XHTML, PDF, HTML Help, or Eclipse Help.

DITA Open Toolkit

DITA Open Toolkit is an open-source publishing engine for content authored in the Darwin Information Typing Architecture. It is a vendor-independent, open-source implementation of the DITA standard, released under the Apache License, Version 2.0.

The toolkit supports all versions of the OASIS DITA specification, including 1.0, 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3.

DITA-OT

Related Information:

- http://www.dita-ot.org/
**DITA-OT-DIR**

*DITA_OT_DIR* refers to the default directory that is specified for your DITA Open Toolkit distribution in the *Window > Preferences > Oxygen XML Developer plugin > DITA preferences page* (on page 53).

For example, if you are using DITA OT 3.3.1 that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Developer plugin, the default directory is: `{OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR}/frameworks/dita/DITA-OT3.x`. You can also specify a custom directory.

**Foldable Element**

A *foldable element* refers to elements that can be collapsed and expanded in Oxygen XML Developer plugin. *Foldable elements* are marked with a small triangle (/vnd/) on the left side of the editor panel and you can use that triangle to quickly collapse or expand them. This feature is helpful when you are working with large documents and you want to temporarily hide blocks of content. You can right-click the triangle to access additional collapse and expand actions (*Collapse Other Folds, Collapse Child Folds, Expand Child Folds, Expand All*).

**Framework**

A *framework* refers to a package that contains resources and configuration information to provide ready-to-use support for an XML vocabulary or document type. A *framework* is associated to an XML document type according to a set of rules. It also includes a variety of settings that improve editing capabilities for its particular file type. Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes a *Document Type Configuration Dialog Box* (on page 57) that allows you to define the set of rules and customize various authoring mechanisms for new or existing *frameworks*.

**IDML**

*IDML* is an abbreviation for Adobe InDesign Markup files.

**Inline Element**

An *inline element* is intended to be displayed in the same line of text as its siblings or the surrounding text. For instance, strong and emphasis in HTML are *inline elements*. It is distinct from a *block element*, which is visually separated from its siblings.
Java Archive

*Java Archive (JAR)* is an archive file format. JAR files are built on the ZIP file format and have the `.jar` file extension. Computer users can create or extract JAR files using the `jar` command or an archive tool.

Key Space

The concept of a *Key Space* in DITA refers to a set of all possible keys that can be used in a *DITA map* structure. A *Key Space* is established when a *root map (on page 1626)* defines a set of effective key bindings.

Keystore

A *Keystore* is an encrypted file that contains private keys and certificates. There are two types of *keystores* that are supported in Oxygen XML Developer plugin:

- Java Key Store (JKS)
- Public-Key Cryptography Standards version 12 (PKCS-12)

Master File

A *Master File* typically refers to the root of an imported or included tree of modules and this support helps you simplify the configuration and development of XML projects. For more information, see the *Master Files Support (on page 337)* section.

Named User

*Named User* is defined as an individual full or part-time employee who is authorized by *You* (the individual or entity who owns the rights for Oxygen XML Developer plugin) to use the software regardless of whether or not the individual is actively using the software at any given time. To avoid any doubt, *Named User* licenses cannot be shared among multiple individuals and separate *Named User* licenses must be purchased for each individual user.

A *Named User* license may not be reassigned to another employee except in the following circumstances:

- (a) Upon termination of the *Named User’s* employment with your company.
• (b) Permanent reassignment of a *Named User* to a position that does not involve the use of the Software.

For example, suppose Jane has been assigned an *Oxygen* license and she leaves your company. When she leaves, you can simply reassign her license to John, her replacement. In the event that you do reassign the *Named User* license in accordance with the restrictions above, you do not need to notify Syncro of such a reassignment.

**Note:** This definition is taken from the Oxygen XML Developer plugin *End User License Agreement*.

### Oxygen Publishing Template

*Oxygen Publishing Template* defines all the aspects related with the *look and feel (layout and styles)* for the *WebHelp Responsive* output.

The template is self-contained and packed as a ZIP archive making it easy to share with others. It represents the main method for customizing the *WebHelp Responsive* output.

**Related Information:**

- Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations *(on page 1107)*

### Perspective

In Oxygen XML Developer plugin, a *perspective* refers to an interface layout geared towards a specific editing environment. Each *perspective* includes a unique set of interface objects, toolbars, views, and features. You can change the *perspective* by selecting the *perspective* from the *Window > Open Perspective* menu.

The *perspectives* that are available in Oxygen XML Developer plugin are:

- **Editor** *(on page 176)* - The most commonly used *perspective* and it is used to edit XML documents.
- **XSLT Debugger** *(on page 178)* - Used to detect problems in an XSLT transformation by executing the process step by step in a controlled environment.
- **XQuery Debugger** *(on page 179)* - Used to detect problems in an XQuery transformation process by executing the process step by step in a controlled environment.
• **Database (on page 181)** - Used to browse and manage databases.

**Plugin**

A **plugin** (also referred to as *add-on* or *extension*) is a component that adds specific features to an existing application. Oxygen XML Developer plugin supports **plugins** to enable numerous customizations.

**Pretty-Print**

**Pretty-print** refers to formatting and indenting the source code in **Text** mode to make the content easier to view and analyze. The formatting actions that are available in Oxygen XML Developer plugin include:

- **Format and Indent Element** - Available in the **Source** submenu of the contextual menu for the current element.
- **Format and Indent** - Available on the toolbar for the entire currently opened document.
- **Format and Indent** - Available in the contextual menu of the **Text view (on page 903)** and applies to all the content in that view.
- **Format and Indent Files** - Available in the contextual menu of the **Navigator view (on page 210)** for one or more selected files.

**QName**

**QName** stands for "qualified name" and defines a valid identifier for elements and attributes. **QNames** are used as URI references to reference particular elements or attributes within XML documents.

**Quick Assist**

The **Quick Assist** feature gives you easy access to some of the most commonly used actions for the specific type of document you are editing. If one or more actions are available in the current context, they are accessible via a yellow bulb help (_GUIDE) placed at the current line in the stripe on the left side of the editor in **Text** mode. You can also invoke the quick assist menu by using the **Ctrl + 1 (Meta 1 on Mac OS X)** keyboard shortcuts.
Quick Fix

The **Quick Fix** support in Oxygen XML Developer plugin helps you resolve errors that appear in an XML document by offering proposals to fix problems such as missing required attributes or invalid elements. **Quick Fixes** are available in **Text** mode and they can be presented and activated in several ways.

- When hovering over an area of text where a validation error or warning occurs, the **Quick Fix** proposals can be presented as links in a tooltip pop-up window.
- If you place the cursor in the highlighted area where a validation error or warning occurs, a **Quick Fix** icon (🔍) is displayed in the stripe on the left side of the editor. Clicking that icon will allow you to select from the available proposals.
- If you place the cursor in the highlighted area where a validation error or warning occurs, you can also access the **Quick Fix** menu by pressing **Ctrl + 1 (Command + 1 on OS X)** on your keyboard.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin also provides support for defining and customizing a library of **Quick Fixes using the Schematron language (on page 787)**.

Root Map

A **Root Map** (or master map) specifies a **DITA map (on page 1621)** that defines a hierarchical structure of submaps that are contained within the root map. Essentially, the root map defines a scope and provides the mechanism to allow your defined keys to be propagated throughout the entire map structure (this mechanism is also known as a **key space (on page 1623)**).

Space-Preserved Element

A **spaced-preserved element** refers to elements that require white spaces and line endings to be preserved (for example, DITA codeblock and pre elements).

Subject Scheme Map

A **Subject Scheme Map** allows you to create custom controlled attribute values and to manage metadata. **Subject scheme maps** use a key definition to define a collection of controlled values rather than a collection of topics. The highest level of map that uses the set of controlled values must reference the subject scheme map in which those controlled values are defined.

A controlled value is a keyword that can be used as a value in a metadata attribute. For example, the **@audience** metadata attribute may take a value that identifies the user group associated with
a particular content unit (for medical equipment, that might include therapist, oncologist, surgeon, radiologist, and so on).

WebHelp Output Directory

_WebHelp_OUTPUT_DIR_ refers to the output directory where WebHelp transformation files will be generated.

The output directory can be specified using the _Output Directory_ text field in the _Output_ tab of the transformation scenario dialog box.

When running the WebHelp transformation from a command line, the output directory can be specified using the `-o` or `--output` option.

Working Set

A _Working Set_ refers to a set of files that will be used for the scope of search and refactoring operations. Many of the search and refactoring wizards include a step where you can specify the scope for the operation and you can choose one or more _working sets_ to restrict the scope to that specified set of files.

XML Catalog

An _XML Catalog_ maps a system ID or a URI reference for a resource (stored either remotely or locally) to a local copy of the same resource. Whenever XML processing relies on external resources (such as referenced schemas and stylesheets), the use of an _XML Catalog_ becomes a necessity when Internet access is not available or the connection is slow.

Oxygen XML Developer plugin includes default global catalogs as well as default catalogs for each of the built-in frameworks (on page 1622), and you can also create your own. Oxygen XML Developer plugin uses these _XML Catalogs_ to resolve references for document validation and transformations. For more information, see Working with XML Catalogs (on page 460).
Add fonts to built-in FO processor
954, 955
Add hyphenation libraries to built-in DITA-OT FO processor
1390
Add hyphenation libraries to built-in FO processor
956
Add PDF image support to built-in DITA-OT FO processor
1390
Add PDF image support to built-in FO processor
956
Add Schematron Quick Fix
787
Addon
1625
Addons
1625
Annotation preferences
88
Ant transformation scenario
934
  Options tab
  935
  Output tab
  937
  Parameters tab
  936
Antenna House Formatter processor
876
Archive preferences
44
Archives
1401
  Browse
  1401
  Edit files
  1405
  EPUB
  1403
  File browser
  1401
  Migrate OOXML to DITA
  1405
  Migrate OOXML to TEI
  1405
  Modify
  1401
  ODF
  1403
  OOXML
  1403
Associate schema directly in JSON documents
743
Associate schema directly in XML documents
457
Associate schema in a framework configuration
458
Associate schema in a validation scenario defined in framework
455
Associate schema through a validation scenario
451, 741
Associate schema to a JSON document
740
Associate schema to an XML document
449
Attributes view in Design mode
266, 612
Attributes view in Text mode
204, 221, 385
Author Action dialog box
Author editing mode
Entities view
207, 225, 387
Model view
203, 223, 383
Automatic Spell Check
352
Automatic validation
423
Automatic validation in JSON
734
BaseX database connection
1458
BaseX database contextual menu actions
1458
BaseX XQJ connection
1461
Batch transformation
980
Berkeley DB XML database connection
1432
Berkeley DB XML database contextual menu actions
1434
Berkeley DB XML debugging
1438, 1477
Bidirectional text in Grid mode
254, 357
Built-in frameworks
DITA Map
845
DITA Topic
843
DocBook 4
830
DocBook 5
835
DocBook 5.1
835
DocBook 5.1 Assembly
840
DocBook 5.1 Topic
842
DocBook Targetset Map
843
EPUB
853
JATS
852
jTEI
851
TEI ODD
850
TEI P5
848
XHTML
846
Built-in XML refactoring operations
478, 1529
Canonicalize files tool
512, 1588
Certificates preferences
140
Change file permissions on remote FTP server
320
Change language for interface
174
Changing the font size in Text mode
188, 368
Character Map dialog box
358
Check Spelling
342
Check Spelling in multiple Files
353
Check Well-Formedness action
421
Checking Well-Formedness in JSON
733
Chemistry processor
876
CHM Error HHC5003: Compilation failed while compiling file
1607,1607
CHM Error HHC5010: Cannot open file
1607,1607
Close file
324
Code template preferences
113
Code templates
208,389
Common problems and solutions
1599
Compile XSL Stylesheet for Saxon tool
567,1573
Configure Calabash with XEP
961
Configure the Application
scenarios management
122
Configure transformation scenario
972
Configure Transformation Scenario dialog box
976
Configuring options
159
Configuring Oxygen
42
Console view
362
Console view preferences
123
Content Completion Assistant in Grid Mode
260,419
Content completion helper views
202,383
Content completion in HTML
805
Content completion in JSON
744
Content completion in Text Mode
197,378
Content completion preferences
85
Contextual menu actions in JSON
755
Contextual menu actions in Text Mode
240,403
Contextual menu of current editor tab
325
Convert database to XML Schema
646,1566
Convert JSON to XML
749,1567
Convert schema to another schema language
643,1563
Convert XML to JSON
752,1570
Copy/Paste in Grid Mode
258,417
Create DTD from learned document structure
459
Create new transformation scenario
890
Create new validation scenario
433
Create Schematron Quick Fix
787
Creating Markdown documents
810
Creating new documents
305
Creating publishing templates
1147,1241
CSS processors preferences
129
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSS stylesheets</td>
<td>1408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content completion</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom CSS properties</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing features</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folding</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Format and indent (pretty print)</td>
<td>1407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minifying</td>
<td>1412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outline view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntax highlighting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSS validation preferences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current license was already activated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom editor variables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom system properties</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom validation engine preferences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom XML refactoring operations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom XSLT/XQuery transformation engine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preferences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Source Explorer view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database connection preferences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database perspective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Databases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database perspective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contextual menu actions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eXist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generic JDBC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eXist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generic JDBC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eXist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generic JDBC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM DB2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1456</td>
<td>MarkLogic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1443</td>
<td>Contextual menu actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1451</td>
<td>Debugging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1448,1474</td>
<td>MarkLogic development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1446</td>
<td>Microsoft SQL Server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1418</td>
<td>Contextual menu actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1421</td>
<td>MySQL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1453</td>
<td>Oracle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1422</td>
<td>Contextual menu actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1425</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1427</td>
<td>Contextual menu actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1431</td>
<td>SharePoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1477</td>
<td>Contextual menu actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1479</td>
<td>WebDAV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1463</td>
<td>Contextual menu actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1463</td>
<td>Data Source Explorer view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1408</td>
<td>SQL support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1466</td>
<td>Table Explorer view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1409</td>
<td>XQuery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1469</td>
<td>Debugging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1473</td>
<td>Berkeley DB XML</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1438,1477</td>
<td>MarkLogic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1448,1474</td>
<td>Transformations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1469</td>
<td>Validation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1469</td>
<td>Debug PDF transformation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1391</td>
<td>Debugger preferences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144</td>
<td>Debugging XQuery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1495</td>
<td>Breakpoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1516</td>
<td>Debugging Java extensions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1523</td>
<td>Identify expressions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1514</td>
<td>Information views</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1500</td>
<td>Breakpoints view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1501</td>
<td>Context view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1503</td>
<td>Messages view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1504</td>
<td>Nodes/Values Set view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1510</td>
<td>Output Mapping Stack view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1506</td>
<td>Stack view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1505</td>
<td>Templates view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1509</td>
<td>Trace view</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Variables view 1508
XPath Watch view 1511
Layout 1496
Performance profiling 1518
Profiling
Hotspots view 1521
Invocation Tree view 1519
Steps in a typical debugging process 1513
Toolbar 1497
Debugging XSLT 1495
Breakpoints 1516
Debugging Java extensions 1523
Debugging XSLT that call Java extensions 1522
Identify expressions 1514
Information views 1500
Breakpoints view 1501
Context view 1503
Messages view 1504
Nodes/Values Set view 1510
Output Mapping Stack view 1506
Stack view 1505
Templates view 1509
Trace view 1508
Variables view 1511
XPath Watch view 1503
Layout 1496
Performance profiling 1518
Profiling
Hotspots view 1521
Invocation Tree view 1519
Steps in a typical debugging process 1513
Toolbar 1497
Debugging XSLT 1495
Breakpoints 1516
Debugging Java extensions 1523
Debugging XSLT that call Java extensions 1522
Identify expressions 1514
Information views 1500
Breakpoints view 1501
Context view 1503
Messages view 1504
Nodes/Values Set view 1510
Output Mapping Stack view 1506
Attributes view 266,612
Components 280,581
Grouping components 301,603
xs:all 295,597
xs:alternative 292,593
xs:any 296,598
Contextual menu actions
Editing actions
Facets view
Navigation
Outline view
Palette view
Design mode preferences
Detect Master Files
Detect Master Files from Project
Digital Signature
Canonicalize files
Certificates
Sign files
Verify signature
Digital Signatures
Example of how to digitally sign XML content
Overview
DITA
Automate WebHelp Output with Jenkins
Automate WebHelp Output with Travis CI
DITA and Markdown documents
DITA Logging preferences
DITA Map document type
DITA Map to CHM (Compiled Help)
DITA Map to Kindle transformation
DITA Map to MS Office Word transformation
DITA Map to PDF - based on DITA & CSS (WYSIWYG) transformation
DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation
DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformations
abbreviated-form element
Accessibility
Back matter
Style topics
Bookmap styling
Bookmarks
Change labels
Initial state
Limit section depth
Remove numbering
Code Blocks
Comments
Styling
Cover page
Add empty pages
Add text
Background image
Copyright page
Place cover on left side
Place cover on right side
Title styling
Custom transformation parameters
Customization CSS
Debugging
XPath expressions
Deep numbering
Double sided pagination
Force even number of pages
Force odd number of pages 1322
Start chapters on odd page 1321
Style blank pages 1321
Style first page 1322
Draft watermarks 1354
Conditional draft watermark 1355,1355
Error parsing 1379
Figures 1366
Figure numbering
Fonts 1342,1343
Asian languages 1344
Footer 1265
Add copyright 1268
Add topics 1269
Footnotes 1336
Reset Counter 1337
Style Markers and Calls 1336
Front matter 1297
Page breaks 1298
Style topics 1298
Header
1265 Add background image 1270
Change header at each chapter 1278
Change separators 1274
Only keep chapter title 1273
Style text 1272
Styling 1275
Underlined header 1280, 1319,1320
XPath 1276
Header and Footer
Font 1267
Size 1267
Hyphenation 1340
Enable or disable for tables 1341
 Entire map 1340
I/O exception 1379
i18n 1344,1344
Images 1362
Centering 1365
Control image size 1365
Resolution 1363
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rotate</td>
<td>1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SControl image size</td>
<td>1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side by side with text</td>
<td>1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
<td>1362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wide</td>
<td>1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>1326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add a leader</td>
<td>1332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change number format</td>
<td>1333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change style and letters</td>
<td>1330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Style labels</td>
<td>1331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table style layout</td>
<td>1333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Links</td>
<td>1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Figures</td>
<td>1318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Tables</td>
<td>1318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Localization</td>
<td>1344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MathML equation customization</td>
<td>1357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metadata</td>
<td>1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cover page</td>
<td>1286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom</td>
<td>1284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Footer</td>
<td>1288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Header</td>
<td>1288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>1374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbering</td>
<td>1300,1304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove prefix</td>
<td>1307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page breaks</td>
<td>1337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add a blank page after a topic</td>
<td>1339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avoid in lists and tables</td>
<td>1338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enforce number of lines</td>
<td>1340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Force before or after topic</td>
<td>1338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page size</td>
<td>1364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change setting for an element</td>
<td>1264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing</td>
<td>1263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orientation</td>
<td>1264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Styling</td>
<td>1356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table of contents</td>
<td>1307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change header</td>
<td>1311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display short description in TOC</td>
<td>1313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display topic before TOC</td>
<td>1313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove TOC entries</td>
<td>1313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start on odd page</td>
<td>1312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Style</td>
<td>1356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tables</td>
<td>1310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1367</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic layout</td>
<td>1369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotate</td>
<td>1367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text bleeding</td>
<td>1369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wide</td>
<td>1367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracked changes</td>
<td>1347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide footnotes</td>
<td>1354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Styling</td>
<td>1353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translation</td>
<td>1344,1344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown host</td>
<td>1379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DITA Map to PDF transformation</td>
<td>879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DITA Map to WebHelp Classic transformation</td>
<td>869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DITA Map to WebHelp Responsive transformation</td>
<td>860</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DITA Map transformations</td>
<td>859</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DITA Maps</td>
<td>859</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transformation scenarios</td>
<td>859</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DITA new topics preferences</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DITA OT preferences</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DITA OT transformation scenario</td>
<td>919</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced tab</td>
<td>930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feedback tab</td>
<td>929</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filters tab</td>
<td>930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FO Processor tab</td>
<td>926</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output tab</td>
<td>932</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameters tab</td>
<td>928</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skins tab</td>
<td>920</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Templates tab</td>
<td>921</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DITA preferences</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DITA publishing preferences</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DITA to Word</td>
<td>879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DITA Topic document type</td>
<td>843</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocBook 4 document type</td>
<td>830</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocBook 5 document type</td>
<td>835</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocBook 5.1 Assembly</td>
<td>840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocBook 5.1 document type</td>
<td>835</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocBook 5.1 Topic document type</td>
<td>842</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocBook olink</td>
<td>831,837</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocBook Targetset Map document type</td>
<td>843</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocBook to DITA transformation</td>
<td>887</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocBook to EPUB transformation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Editing XSLT

Compile XSL Stylesheet for Saxon tool
567,1573

Editor perspective
176

Editor preferences
84

Editor variables
162

Custom editor variables
169

Elements view in Text mode
206, 224,387

Entities view
207, 225,387

EPUB document type
853

Error: 1248 WARN
org.apache.fop.apps.FOUserAgent
1606

Error: Anttask - Error rendering fo file
1606

Error: Could not create MSXML object
1613

Error: Incorrect Function Windows service error
38,1616

Error: java.io.FileNotFoundException
1606

Error: Navigation to the web page was canceled
1614

Error:
org.eclipse.ui.internal.ViewReference.createErrorPart
1608

Executing SQF in Other Documents
795

eXist database

Connection wizard
1439

Manual configuration
1439
eXist database connection
1438
eXist database contextual menu actions
1441

Export Global Options
161

Export Global Transformation Scenarios
161

Export Global Validation Scenarios
161

Export to Excel
260,419

Exporting Markdown documents
807

Extension points
1525

Facets view in Design mode
268,615

File properties
325

Find All Elements action
340

Find All Elements dialog box
340

Flatten Schema tool
646
Floating license server 22
FO processor preferences 126
Folding in Text Mode 194,375
Font preferences 120
Font size configuration in Text mode 188,368
FOP Error 1605,1606
Format and Indent Files tool 238,400
Format and Indent in Text Mode 232,395
Format/Indent multiple files 238,400
Formatting preferences 99
Formatting Schematron Quick Fix Content 795
Framework directory locations 57
Frameworks 830
FTP connection settings 121

Generate Documentation tools 1575
Generate Sample JSON Files tool 1561
Generate Sample XML Files tool 625,1555
Advanced tab 630,1560
Options tab 627,1557
Schema tab
Contextual menu actions 755
Folding 746
Grid mode editing features 731
JSON to XML converter 749,1567
Outline view 746
Presenting validation errors 735
Schema annotations 745
Syntax highlighting 746
Text mode editing features 730
Validating JSON schema 758
Validation 733
  Against a schema 734
  Automatic validation 734
  Check Well-formedness 733
Manual validation 734
Resolving references to remote schemas 740
Sharing scenarios 740
Validation scenarios 737
XML to JSON converter 752,1570
JSON schema 734,758

JSON Schema 758
JSON to XML tool 749,1567
JSON validation scenarios 737
jTEI document type 851
K
  Kerberos 323
L
  License key configuration 44
  License options 44
  Licensing Oxygen 16
    Floating license
      Reserve floating license 22
    Floating licenses 18
    Named-user license 17
    Release a floating license 21
    Request a floating license
      HTTP license server 19
      TCP license server 20
  Localizing frameworks 73
  Localizing SQF messages 796
  Localizing the user interface 174
  Localizing XML refactoring operations 508,1554
Locking a floating license
22

M
Mac Function Keys
1611
Mac Touch Bar
1611
Machine signature does not match
36, 1612
Manual validation actions
423
Manual validation in JSON
734
Markdown documents
807
   Actions in Markdown Editor
   810
   Creating Markdown documents
   810
   DITA
   814
   Markdown Editor
   807
   Rules and specifications
   815
   Syntax highlighting
   813
   Validation
   813
MarkDown Editor
807
MarkLogic database connection
1443
MarkLogic database contextual menu actions
1451
MarkLogic debugging
1448, 1474
MarkLogic for the developer
1446
Master Files
337
Add files
339
Detecting
338
Enabling
338
Overview
337
Microsoft SQL Server database connection
1418
Microsoft SQL Server database contextual menu actions
1421
Model view
203, 223, 383
Modular XML files
463
Move XML resources
469
MSXML 3.0 and 4.0 preferences
151
MSXML.NET preferences
152
MySQL database connection
1453
Navigating in Text Mode
185, 365
Navigator view
210, 328
Navigator view preferences
123
Network connection preferences
120
New document from templates
311, 312
New Document Wizard
305
New from Templates Wizard

107
XQuery Profiler
145
XSD Content Completion
90
XSLT
150
XSLT Content Completion
90
XSLT Profiler
145
XSLT-XQuery
142
XSLTProc
157
Presenting validation errors in JSON
735
Prince Print with CSS processor
876
Problems and solutions
1599
Process overview
1226
Projects
327
 Adding items to projects
6,327
 Creating new projects
6,327
 Managing resources
210,328
 Master files
337
 Add files
339
 Detecting
338
 Enabling
338
 Overview
337
 Move resources
335
 Navigator view
210,328
 Rename resources
335
 Publishing
857
Q
Quick Assist feature in Text Mode
239,401
Quick fix support in XML documents
447
R
Read-only files
361
Rectangular Selection feature
196,376
Refactoring XML Documents
475,1526
Regular expressions syntax
341
Relax NG schemas
701
 Component Dependencies View
716
 Content completion
708
 Custom datatype library
721
 Diagram Editor
703
 Contextual menu actions
706
 Full Model view
703
 Introduction
703
 Logical Model view
Symbols

Editing in Master Files context

Moving resources

Outline view

Quick Assist feature

Refactoring actions

Renaming resources

Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view

Search actions

Syntax highlighting

Validation

Release a floating license

Rename XML resources

Request a floating license from a TCP license server

Request a floating license from an HTTP license server

Reserving a floating license

Reset Global Options

Resolve schemas through XML catalogs

Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view for XML documents

Restricting Schematron Quick Fix operations

Results view

Run DITA OT Integrator transformation

Sample XML File Generator preferences

Save file

Save preferences

Save remote document

Save template as button

Saxon 6 XSLT preferences

Saxon HE/PE/EE advanced XQuery preferences

Saxon HE/PE/EE advanced XSLT preferences

Saxon HE/PE/EE XQuery preferences

Saxon HE/PE/EE XSLT preferences

Schema annotations in JSON

Schema annotations in Text Mode

Schema Design mode

Schema Diagram Editor

Schematron
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Editing features</td>
<td>767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing in Master Files context</td>
<td>769</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integrating in a framework</td>
<td>771</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharing</td>
<td>771</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit test (XSpec)</td>
<td>784</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validation</td>
<td>784</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Against Schematron</td>
<td>784</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schematron Quick Fix Operations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add</td>
<td>789</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>789</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace</td>
<td>789</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>String Replace</td>
<td>789</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schematron Quick Fixes</td>
<td>449, 786, 786</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content Completion</td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customizing</td>
<td>787</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining</td>
<td>787</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embedded</td>
<td>802</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executing SQF in Other Documents</td>
<td>795</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formatting and Indenting</td>
<td>795</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlight occurrences</td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integrating in a framework</td>
<td>797</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Localization</td>
<td>796</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple similar quick fixes</td>
<td>796</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refactoring actions</td>
<td>801</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restricting operations</td>
<td>794</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search actions</td>
<td>801</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharing</td>
<td>797</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQF Operations</td>
<td>797</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use-When Condition</td>
<td>794</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Entry operation</td>
<td>793</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validation</td>
<td>799</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schematron schemas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content completion</td>
<td>773</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntax highlighting</td>
<td>773</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schematron Schemas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embedded</td>
<td>445, 774</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlight occurrences</td>
<td>780</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moving resources</td>
<td>780</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outline view</td>
<td>776</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick Assist feature</td>
<td>783</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refactoring actions</td>
<td>781</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renaming resources</td>
<td>780</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view</td>
<td>778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search actions</td>
<td>781</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validation</td>
<td>772</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search actions for IDs</td>
<td>464</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Searching in current file</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting content in Text Mode</td>
<td>196,376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set indent to zero in Text Mode</td>
<td>237,399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SFTP connection settings</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Share transformation scenarios</td>
<td>981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Share validation scenarios</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SharePoint contextual menu actions</td>
<td>1479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SharePoint database connection</td>
<td>1477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharing document templates</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharing JSON validation scenarios</td>
<td>740</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharing publishing templates</td>
<td>1152,1244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharing Schematron Quick Fixes</td>
<td>797</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharing Schematron rules</td>
<td>771</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharing XML refactoring operations</td>
<td>507,1554</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shortcut actions in Text Mode</td>
<td>188,368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show change tracking/comments in DocBook PDF</td>
<td>890</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sign files tool</td>
<td>514,1589</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signing XML document preferences</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple text editor</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single sign-on</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smart Editing in Text Mode</td>
<td>187,367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special character preferences</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special characters</td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character Map</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fallback Font Support</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inserting symbols</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unrecognized characters</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unsupported characters</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special characters in Grid mode</td>
<td>254,357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spell check preferences</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spell checking</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add dictionaries</td>
<td>346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add term lists</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom list of terms</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customizing dictionaries and term lists</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dictionaries and term lists</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Forbidden words
Ignored words
Learned words
Multiple files
Replace dictionaries
Spell Checking
Automatic spell check
SQF
Content Completion
Customizing
Defining
Embedded
Executing SQF in Other Documents
Formatting and Indenting
Highlight occurrences
Integrating in a framework
Localization
Multiple similar quick fixes
Operations
Refactoring actions

Restricting operations
Search actions
Sharing
Use-When Condition
User Entry operation
Validation
SQF attribute: use-for-each
SQF multi-lingual support
SQL transformation scenario
StackTraceException error
Status information
Storing XML refactoring operations
StratML documents
Editing features
Supported document types
Supported processors for XSLT/XQuery
debugging
Syntax highlight preferences
Syntax highlighting in Text Mode
Syntax highlights in Text mode
System properties
Table Explorer view
TEI ODD document type
TEI P5 document type
Templates tab
Text Diagram preferences
Text editing mode
Attributes view
Content completion
Contextual menu actions
Drag and Drop
Editing XML markup
Elements view
Entities view
Folding
Format and indent
Format and indent multiple files
Highlight ID occurrences
Model view
Navigation
Rectangular selection
Schema annotations
Selecting content
Set indent to zero
Shortcut actions
Smart Editing
Syntax highlighting
Syntax highlights
Validation errors
Views
Touch Bar on Mac
Transform DITA document to MS Word
Transformation parameters
Transformation Scenarios
Ant
Apply transformation scenarios
Batch transformation
Built-in transformation scenarios
Configure
Configure Transformation Scenario dialog box
Configure XSLT processor extension paths
908,953
Custom XSLT processor
907,952
Debugging PDF transformations
1391
DITA map
859
DITA Map to CHM (Compiled Help
880
DITA Map to Kindle
881
DITA Map to MS Office Word
879
DITA Map to PDF
879
DITA Map to PDF - based on DITA & CSS (WYSIWYG)
876
DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS
874
DITA Map to WebHelp Classic
869
DITA Map to WebHelp Responsive
860
DITA OT
919
DocBook
884
DocBook PDF - Show Change Tracking and Comments
890
DocBook to DITA
887
DocBook to EPUB
889
DocBook to PDF
888
DocBook to WebHelp
884
Duplicate
974
Integrate external XProc engine
962
New
890
Run DITA OT Integrator
882
Sharing
981
SQL
971
Supported XSLT processors
904,949
XML to PDF with CSS
916
XML with XQuery
908
XML with XSLT
890
XProc
890
XQuery
963
XSLT
937
Transformation Scenarios view
981
Transformation types
972
Transforming Documents
857
Trusted hosts connection settings
122
Unicode support
355
Uninstalling Oxygen
41
Upgrading Oxygen
39
Use-When SQF Condition
794
User Entry SQF operation
793
Using a floating license offline
22

V
Validating JSON Documents
Automatic validation
734
Check Well-formedness
733
Manual validation
734
Resolving references to remote schemas
740
Sharing scenarios
740
Validating JSON Documents against a schema
734
Validating JSON schema
758
Validating XML Documents
420
Against a schema
422
Against a schema with embedded
Schematron
445,774
Against Schematron
770
Automatic validation
423
Check Well-formedness
421
Create new validation scenarios
433
Custom validators
428

Customizing error messages
427
Edit validation scenarios
438
Manual validation
423
Resolving references to remote schemas
443
Sharing scenarios
443
Text Mode
229,425
Validating XSLT that call Java extensions
522
Validation engine ‘StackOverflowException’ error
93
Validation errors in Text mode
229,425
Validation preferences
93
Verify Signature tool
516,1591

W
WebDAV connection
1463
WebDAV connection settings
121
WebDAV contextual menu actions
1463
WebDAV over HTTPS
320
WebHelp Classic
986
Add custom HTML content
1023
Add Favicon
1031
Add logo image
1032
Add video and audio objects in DITA
1034
Add videos in DocBook
1035
Adding additional resources
1036
Changing icons in the table of contents
1028
Context-Sensitive
999
Customize highlights in the table of contents
1030
Customize ordered lists
1027
Customizing
   Overriding the XSLT processing step
   1060
Disable caching
1066
Edit scoring in search results
1037
Exclude DITA topics from search results
1038
Flag DITA content
1067
Indexing Japanese content
1041
Integrate Facebook
1049
Integrate Google +
1051
Integrate Google Analytics
1056
Integrate Google Search
1058
Integrate Twitter
1053
Layout and features
986
Localize email notifications
1043
Localizing the interface for DITA transformations
1045
Localizing the interface for DocBook transformations
1048
MathML
1037,1178
Navigation links
1031
Overriding the XSLT processing step
1060
Previous/Next arrows
1031
Publishing on SharePoint Site
1069
Right-to-Left languages
1049
Search engine optimization
1039
Skin Builder
1019
Use custom CSS
1022
WebHelp Classic with Feedback
Deploying
993,1085
Installing
993,1085
WebHelp feature matrix
985
WebHelp Jenkins integration
1012,1144
WebHelp Responsive
1070
Adding audio objects
1176
Adding favicon
Adding logo
Adding publishing templates to gallery
Adding videos
Adding welcome message
Built-in templates
Changing numbers for ordered lists
Changing scoring values in search results
Context-sensitive help
Converting old publishing templates
Copy resources to output directory
Creating publishing templates
CSS styling
Custom templates
Customizing main page layout
Customizing output with CSS
Customizing output with HTML content
Customizing the footer
Customizing the menu
Customizing the tiles
Deploying on SharePoint
Edit link to launch Web Author
Editing publishing templates
Excluding topics from search results
Facebook Like button
Flagging DITA content
Google Analytics
Google Search
Google+ button
Index terms layout page
Inserting HTML
Localizing interface
Main layout page
MathML
Navigation links
Optimizing Japanese content indexing
Optimizing search results
Previous/Next arrows
Publishing template descriptor file
Publishing template HTML fragment extensions
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Publishing template HTML page layout files</td>
<td>1121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publishing template package</td>
<td>1107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publishing template resources</td>
<td>1111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publishing template transformation parameters</td>
<td>1113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publishing template XSLT extensions</td>
<td>1114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publishing templates could not be loaded</td>
<td>1153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publishing templates troubleshooting</td>
<td>1153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right-to-left languages</td>
<td>1188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search features</td>
<td>1082</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search layout page</td>
<td>1077</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search rules</td>
<td>1082</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharing publishing templates</td>
<td>1152, 1244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharing templates</td>
<td>1105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic layout page</td>
<td>1075</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transformation parameters</td>
<td>1215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tweet button</td>
<td>1193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using publishing templates from command line</td>
<td>1150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XSLT-Import extension point</td>
<td>1222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XSLT-import extension points</td>
<td>1199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XSLT-Parameter extension point</td>
<td>1222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WebHelp Responsive Templates tab</td>
<td>924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save template as button</td>
<td>924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WebHelp Responsive with Feedback</td>
<td>1184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comments section</td>
<td>1084</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deploying</td>
<td>993, 1085</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installing</td>
<td>993, 1085</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Localizing email notifications</td>
<td>1184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WebHelp Travis CI integration</td>
<td>1013, 1145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WSDL documents</td>
<td>672</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component Dependencies view</td>
<td>683</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content completion</td>
<td>674</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing in Master Files context</td>
<td>673</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generate documentation for WSDL documents</td>
<td>688, 1584</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom format</td>
<td>693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From command line</td>
<td>693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTML format</td>
<td>691</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlight occurrences</td>
<td>684</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moving resources</td>
<td>682</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outline view</td>
<td>675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick Assist feature</td>
<td>675</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Refactoring actions
Renaming resources
Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view
Search actions
SOAP analyzer
Test remote files
UDDI Registry Browser
Syntax highlighting
Validation
WSDL SOAP Analyzer tool
Test remote files
UDDI Registry Browser
XHTML document type
XInclude
XInclude 1.1 features
XLIFF documents
Editing features
XML catalog preferences
XML Catalogs
XML documents
Associate schema
Associate schema directly in XML documents
Associate schema in a framework configuration
Associate schema in a validation scenario defined in framework
Associate schema through a validation scenario
Author Mode editing
Entities view
Model view
Code templates
DTD Entities
Editing in Master Files context
Grid Mode editing
Content Completion Assistant
Copy/Paste
Drag and Drop
Editing actions
Export to Excel
Learn document structure
Moving resources
469
Outline view
217,391
Quick Assist feature
239,401
Quick fix support
447
Refactoring
475,1526
Built-in operations
478,1529
Custom operations
488,1539
Localizing operations
508,1554
Sharing operations
507,1554
Storing operations
507,1554
Renaming resources
469
Resolve schemas through XML catalogs
463
Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view
467
Search actions for IDs
464
Text Mode editing
365
Attributes view
204, 221,385
Content completion
197,378
Contextual menu actions
240,403
Drag and Drop
195,376
Editing XML markup
189,370

Elements view
206, 224,387
Entities view
207, 225,387
Folding
194,375
Format and indent
232,395
Format and indent multiple files
238,400
Highlight ID occurrences
240,402
Model view
203, 223,383
Navigation
185,365
Rectangular selection
196,376
Schema annotations
200,381
Selecting content
196,376
Set indent to zero
237,399
Shortcut actions
188,368
Smart Editing
187,367
Syntax highlighting
228,391
Validation
420
Against a schema
422
Against a schema with embedded Schematron
445,774
Automatic validation
423
Check Well-formedness
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>421</td>
<td>Create new validation scenario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>433</td>
<td>XML Schema Diagram Editor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>428</td>
<td>Custom validators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>427</td>
<td>Attributes view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>438</td>
<td>Customizing error messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>427</td>
<td>Components</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Edit validation scenario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>423</td>
<td>Contextual menu actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Manually validating scenarios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>423</td>
<td>Edit namespaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Resolving references to remote schemas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Edit actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>229</td>
<td>Sharing scenarios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>460</td>
<td>Facets view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>459</td>
<td>Text Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>266</td>
<td>Navigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>470</td>
<td>XML documents without a schema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>471</td>
<td>Outline view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XML</td>
<td>XML parser preferences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catalogs</td>
<td>XML catalogs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>460</td>
<td>Palette view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>459</td>
<td>XML catalogs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135</td>
<td>Validation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>XML Schemas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>475</td>
<td>XML Schema Design mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1526</td>
<td>XML Schema Regular Expression Builder tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>569</td>
<td>Attributes view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>478</td>
<td>Built-in operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1529</td>
<td>Component Dependencies view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488</td>
<td>Custom operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1539</td>
<td>Content completion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>508</td>
<td>Localizing operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1554</td>
<td>Convert DB Structure to XML Schema tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>507</td>
<td>Sharing operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1554</td>
<td>Design mode editing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>507</td>
<td>Storing operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1554</td>
<td>Components</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>507</td>
<td>XML Refactoring tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1554</td>
<td>Grouping components</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contextual menu actions

Edit namespaces

Facets view

Editing actions

Navigation

Palette view

Validation

Editing in Master Files context

Flatten Schema tool

Generate documentation for XML Schema

Customize PDF output for DITA

Customize PDF output for DocBook

From command line

Output formats

Generate Sample XML Files tool
Format and Indent
657
Generate HTML documentation
666,1583
Input view
663
Outline view
658
Sequence view
668
Syntax highlighting
656
Transformations
667
Sequence view
668
Updating XML documents
671
XQJ
1472
Updating XML documents
671
Validation
655
XQuery Builder view
660
XQuery Debugger perspective
179,1495
Breakpoints
1516
Debugging Java extensions
1523
Identify expressions
1514
Information views
1500
Breakpoints view
1501
Context view
1503
Messages view
1504
Nodes/Values Set view
1510
Output Mapping Stack view
1506
Stack view
1505
Templates view
1509
Trace view
1508
Variables view
1511
XPath Watch view
1503
Layout
1496
Performance profiling
1518
Profiling
Hotspots view
1521
Invocation Tree view
1519
Steps in a typical debugging process
1513
Toolbar
1497
XQuery Documentation tool
666,1583
XQuery preferences
147
XQuery Profiler preferences
145
XQuery transformation scenario
963
FO Processor tab
914,969
Output tab
XQuery tab
XSL-FO processor
XSLT
Component Dependencies view
Component documentation
Content completion
Content completion in XPath expressions
Editing features
Editing in Master Files context
Generate documentation for XSLT stylesheets
Custom format
From command line
HTML format
Highlight occurrences
Input view
Moving resources
Outline view
Quick Assist feature
Quick fix support
Refactoring actions
Renaming resources
Resource Hierarchy/Dependencies view
Search declarations
Search references
Syntax highlighting
Text Value Templates
Unit test (XSpec)
Validating XSLT that call Java extensions
Validating XSLT with custom engines
Validation
XSLT Debugger perspective
Breakpoints
Debugging Java extensions
Debugging XSLT that call Java extensions
Identify expressions
Information views
Breakpoints view
Context view
Messages view
Copyright

Oxygen XML Developer plugin User Manual

Syncro Soft SRL.

Copyright © 2002-2019 Syncro Soft SRL. All Rights Reserved.

All rights reserved. No parts of this work may be reproduced in any form or by any means - graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or information storage and retrieval systems - without the written permission of the publisher. Products that are referred to in this document may be either trademarks and/or registered trademarks of the respective owners. The publisher and the author make no claim to these trademarks.

Trademarks. Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this document, and Syncro Soft SRL was aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been rendered in caps or initial caps.

Notice. While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this document, the publisher and the author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for damages resulting from the use of information contained in this document or from the use of programs and source code that may accompany it. In no event shall the publisher and the author be liable for any loss of profit or any other commercial damage caused or alleged to have been caused directly or indirectly by this document.

Link disclaimer. Syncro Soft SRL is not responsible for the contents or reliability of any linked Websites referenced elsewhere within this documentation, and Syncro Soft SRL does not necessarily endorse the products, services, or information described or offered within them. Syncro Soft cannot guarantee that these links will work all the time and has no control over the availability of the linked pages.

Warranty. Syncro Soft SRL provides a limited warranty on this product. Refer to your sales agreement to establish the terms of the limited warranty. In addition, Oxygen XML Developer plugin End-User License Agreement, as well as information regarding support for this product, while under warranty, is available through the Oxygen XML Developer plugin End-User License Agreement.

Third-party components. Certain software programs or portions thereof included in the Product may contain software distributed under third-party agreements ("Third-Party Components"), which may contain terms that expand or limit rights to use certain portions of the Product ("Third-Party Terms"). Information identifying Third-Party Components and the Third-Party Terms that apply to them is available on the Third-party License Agreements webpage.

Terms and conditions. For the terms and conditions for using Oxygen XML Developer plugin, see Oxygen XML Developer plugin End-User License Agreement.
**Documentation.** For the most current versions of documentation, see the Oxygen XML Developer plugin User Manual.

**Contact Syncro Soft SRL.** Syncro Soft SRL provides telephone numbers and e-mail addresses for you to report problems or to ask questions about your product, see the Oxygen support webpage.